A xxix Bar
686
STC 1514

4 3288

THE METHOD OF PHYSICK, CONTANING THE CAVSES, SIGNES, AND CVRES OF INWARD DISEASES IN MANS BODY, FROM THE HEAD TO THE FOOTE.

Whereunto is added, the forme and rule of making remedies *and medicines, which our Physitions commonly* vse at this day, with the proportion, quantity, and names of each medicine

By Philip Barrough.

The sixth Edition.

LONDON,
Imprinted by *Richard Field*, dwelling in great Woodstreete. 1624.

TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND HIS SINGVLAR GOOD LORD AND MAISTER, THE Lord Burghley, high Treasurer of England, Knight of the most noble order of the Garter, and one of the Queenes Maiesties most honourable priuie Councell.

P. B. wisheth all health, with long life, and increase of honour.

John Edwards

THE chiefest thing (right Honorable and my singular good Lord) that emboldeneth men to dedicate their labours vnto any personage, is the affinity betweene the matter of the worke which they offer, and the mind of him to whom it is presented. And as the ancient comicall Poëts were wont to pen such Enterludes as they thought wold be plausibly heard of all the auditory: so our common writers do fashion and shape the subiect of which they intreate, according to the affection of him, whose patronage they require in countenancing their writings. This (I say) though it be practised of all writers now adaies, and might haue serued as a fit president for me to haue followed: yet I haue swerued and digressed from so generall a custome, in preferring this labour of mine to the view of your Honor (the matter so farre dissenting from your Honors disposition) so that as it may perhaps not without some colour be obiected, that I might haue prouided farre better (had I bene any way sufficient) both for the acceptation of my labour, and also for the fit answering of your Honors affection, if I had treated of the politicke gouernment of our countrey, and of the weilding of a commonwealth: to the necessity of which calling, not Fortune the Queene of the old Philosophers, but

God himselfe hath called, or rather enforced you, if that opinion of Plato be true, that euery good Magistrate taketh vpon him his office vnwillingly. But that obiection will soone be taken away, if we consider how foolish a thing it were to instruct him with his imaginarie precepts, whom (besides a great light of nature) most happie experience hath made a perfect and absolute gouernour. Plato that most graue and wise deemer of the state tyrannicall, was so many times conuicted of folly, how often he aduentured in the presence of Kings to discourse of the regiment of a Commonwealth. Dionysius (of whom it was doubted, whether he did more harme by his extreme cruelties, or good by his prouident wisedome, which both he left alike to his successours to imitate) called that notable Phylosopher (whom I euen now named) into Sicilia, of purpose to heare him, and with great patience listened to him as he disputed of mans felicitie, and admired him as he handled those morall vertues, which Socrates his maister was feigned to haue brought from heauen, and as he treated of the frame and machine of the world: but on a time (taking aduantage by the Kings attention) when he had stolen into the discourse of Policie, Dionysius felt himselfe so moued, that he had exercised his tyrannie against him also, if Dion and Aristomanes had not recouered him out of his iawes, and so rid him out of the land, by selling him to Polis the Lacedæmonian Merchant. And this was the verdict that the wise King (when his furie was somewhat calmed) gaue of that most learned Philosopher for his wholesome counsell (as he thought) namely, that his discourses seemed vnto him to be the prattles of idle old men: so much Experience disdaineth to be controlled by Art, and so impatient is he of institution, whose knowledge is acquired Vsu & Memoria (the two ancient parents of wisedome.) What a great argument of folly therefore shall he giue, that shall go about to lay a plot for your Honour, from whence you may derive an example of gouernment, who haue so many yeares, in so troublesome a commonwealth, and to the most wise and vertuous Princesse in the world, bene retained as a most Honourable and graue Counsellour? I will not say as Zopyrus vnto his Darius, or as Cineas vnto his Pyrrhus, or as Cresus vnto his Cyrus; the one of which by policy aduised his King to circumuent his enemies, the other allured them to his subiection by his eloquence, and the third by his owne vnfortunate ex-

experience, directed him how to conuey any dangerous enterprise; all which serued their Princes to none other vse, but to helpe them to purchase the worst part of glory by bloudie oppression: but rather as a Nestor vnto his Agamemnon, as a Xenophon vnto his Cyrus, and as a Plutarch vnto his Traian, who thought it not so glorious to tie their enemies to them with forced feare, as their friends and neighbours by peaceable amity, the strõgest guard that Princes can trust vnto. I must needs confesse, that these comparisons do faile in representing so much as I do conceiue. For, that I may not feare the suspition of flattery in so manifest a truth, can the whole Scene of mans life, so gorgeously and stately set forth by the Historians of seuerall ages, shew vs at one time, on one stage, two such notable actors; namely, so redoubted, so peerelesse, and so vertuous a Princesse holding the Scepter? so graue, so wise, & so prouident a Counseller sustaining the person of Eubolus? I would I might (my credit saued with your Honour) pursue your praises yet farther; but I know very well, that you (who with an vnwearied affection do not ceasse continually to cõmit such vertuous deeds as deserue to be eternized for euer) are soone tyred, when you heare them remembred by another. And truly I would not haue spoken so much for feare of offence, but that I know for a certaintie, that you ascribe the being of your vertues to God the giuer of al good things; before whom to extenuate our graces, I know not whether it be more blameworthy, then shamlesly to assume vnto our selues what soeuer is wrongfully attributed vnto vs by flattering friends. But to what end (will you say) are all these words? Namely to this: to excuse my selfe, in that I haue not laboured to fit your affection in the presentment of this my labour, which is so impossible, in respect of your singular knowledge in all kind of good learning, that there is no man so selfewise or loftie which feareth not to come vnder your learned censure. Which excellency of yours when I had looked into, and had found my selfe altogether vnable to answer, I purposed (as I thought) more politickly to assay your humanity; which indeed, graceth all the rest of your vertues: which (I thought) I might soone abuse, in offering such a subiect, in which some studie and industrie (besides many yeares) had made me in part able to iudge; and such a one, as the earnest affaires of the commonwealth, in which you are alwayes busied, together with the inconuenient vse of the studie, hath kept your Honour from being acquainted

with. Which bold attempt of mine, your Wisedome shall so much the easier be brought to pardon, by how much the more earnestly your rare clemency encouraged me to enterprise it. For I do plainly confesse, that I haue not thought this booke of mine worthy to be perused of your Honor, as well because of mine owne vnability, who am altogether insufficient to performe any thing that your Honor may like of, as also in respect of those manifold graces wherewith the Lord hath filled you: by the vertue of which you could in a tongue farre more eloquent then this of ours, discerne & know the secrets of Physicke, which I haue now in part reuealed, if the common weale of vs all did not rather carrie you away, then that delight which is otherwise reaped by priuate studie. And yet neuertheless, when I consider with my selfe, that it was not the affectatiõ of any popular praise, but an honest zeale to benefit my countrymen, which begot in me this desire to publish this worke: and also (if I may without the suspect of vainegloríe seeme to deuine of the issue of my labours) perceiuing that they might bring some commodity vnto the more ignorant sort of our common Practitioners and Emperiques (if they were with diligence perused:) and thirdly, when I perceiued in my selfe a certaine earnest willingnesse which I haue alwayes had (though of late it hath bene more vehemently inflamed) to commend some peece of seruice vnto your Honor: I say, these causes meeting thus together, did especially induce me (though many doubts stept afore me in mine enterprise, offring to reinforce my ouer presumptuous determination) with such a bold confidencie as it were to rush into your presence, and to demand without any shew of merite your Honors most fauourable Protection, that this booke of mine (vnable of it selfe) may run vnder your patronage, which as it were Gorgon his buckler, I will obuert and turne against all the venimous bytings of slanderous tongues. The Lord God (who hath made you a notable instrument to worke the aduancement of his glorie, the furtherance and propagation of good learning) lengthen and protract your life beyond your fatall period, and giue you a will to liue, a desire still to beare vp that burthen which her Maiestie hath laid vpon your shoulders; and with these, all good successe in this world, and eternall happinesse in his kingdome.

Your Honors most humble seruant,

PHILIP BARROVGH.

The

The Preface to the Reader.

WHen God had perfected that wonderfull worke of his (I meane the frame of the world) and had assigned to euery part thereof his speciall dutie: namely to the water to harbour fishes, to the aire to vphold all fethered foules, to the earth to foster beasts, and to produce & bring forth good and wholsome herbes and trees: and ouer all these, as regent and gouernour, had appointed man, his last and noblest creature: de demanded of his Angels who were present with him at this worke, what might be desired in this so rare and strange a workmanship: who answered, Nothing but a tongue to vnfold the secrets of his labours, to talke and commune of them; with the which also, he, as workman of all, might be extolled and magnified: who partly moued by this suggestion, perceiuing it to be a notable meanes to aduance his glory; as before he had infused into man a conceiueable minde, apt to vnderstand his mysteries: so now he gaue him a tongue able to vtter the sundry conceptions of the heart, whatsoeuer it imagined. This fable (proceeding I know not from what brain) is remembred of *Philo* the Iew in his Treatise of the world, which seemeth to imply thus much, that as there is nothing within this mortall circuite, that God hath as it were kept to himselfe, and not made subiect to the industrious capacity of man: so there is no meanes by which a man can approch neater vnto the perfection of that nature which he first enioyed, and then lost by his fall, then by the painefull indagation of the secrets of nature, or any way whereby he may more truly glorifie his maker, then in his life time with his tongue to communicate that knowledge which he hath by his industry atchieued, and to haue a care also that it may be faithfully commended to his posterity. And doubtlesse this was the consideration that moued the wise king *Salomon* to wade so farre in the searching of the causes of things, who abandoning all those glistering shewes which his riches & kingdome profered him, applied his mind to the study of nature, and compiled a great volume, wherein he largely discoursed not onely of birds & beasts, but of all herbes and trees, euen from the Cedar of Lebanon, to Hysope that groweth out of the wall. And the selfe same opinion of the excellencie of that kinde of life, hath from time to time inuaded the mindes of many Kings and noble personages, vowing to themselues without any light of their forefathers to go through the cloudie darknesse of nature. And although they sometimes stumbled, yet are they to be pardoned, if we consider both the obscurity, and the length of the way they went in. *Zoroastes* the reputed sonne of *Noah* was the first that of many confused experiments, began to fashion out and as it were to delineate the beginnings of an Art, by setting downe certaine

precepts of the same; and after him *Osiris* the King of Ægypt, and *Zesostris* also King of the same countrey (though rudely) layed the foundation of Astronomy by demonstration of the course of the heauens, and of Physicke, by opening the nature of many herbes, and also the secrets of their water of *Nilus*. To the worthinesse of which secret, *Plato* that great Philosopher did willingly subscribe, when falling into a grieuous malady in Ægypt, and being not able by his owne experiments (though he had assayed many) to cure himselfe, he was preserued by the Priests of that countrey, who taught him the vertue of their water, whereas after in remembrance of this benefit he wrote this verse, rehearsed by *Laertius*: *Mare vniuersa proluit hominum mala*: The sea doth wash away all the infirmities of man. So that by this we may see, that this noble and learned Philosopher had neuer brought this newes out of Ægypt, either of their policie and gouernment of their countrey, or of their rare and exquisite knowledge in Astronomie, if he had not tasted of the benefit which the physicke of that time affoorded him. But we will remember some of those Kings, who had an especiall fantasie to this Art, whose names are deuolued and brought vnto vs by the succession of ages, though their workes haue not escaped the wracke, but haue perished in the sea-gulfe of antiquity, which hath swallowed the doings of many men. And *Mithridates* the King of Pontus shall be the first, who at one time vndertooke two mighty battels, the one with the Romanes, the other with nature. In the last of which, the more dangerous, he preuailed like a conqueror: and in the first he dealt so valiantly, that the glory of his forepassed victories suppressed and killed the remembrance of his last ouerthrow. The which (as *Pliny* remembreth) was alike profitable to the commonwealth and to mans life: for in his Manour where he lay, there were found many bookes written by his owne hands, both of the vertues of herbes, and of the constitution of mans body, with remedies for many infirmities of the same. *Enax* also the King of Arabia wrote a booke of the effects of simples, which he dedicated to *Nero* the Emperour. But what should I reckon particularly the names of euery one, when in former ages there was no King either of Æthiopia, Ægypt, or Arabia, who did not himselfe either write somewhat concerning this Art of Physicke, or else by his liberality encouraged others to employ their time in the same? Which may make much (no doubt) to the credit of the Art, when as Kings haue appropriated it to themselues, and haue thought themselues honored by the profession of the same. And, as many arguments do induce me to beleeue, besides the witnesse of Historians, that Physicke is the Art wherein many Kings haue trauelled and delighted: so nothing more strongly then this, that whereas other gods were tied to their seuerall places, as *Iupiter* to Elis, *Diana* to Ephesus, *Apollo* to Delos, and so forth; *Aesculapius* the sonne of *Apollo* by the daughter of *Phlegias*, made a god for his cunning in Physicke, hath his temple and altars euery where, in Corinth, in Lacedæmon, in Athens, in Thebes, in Epidaure, in Arcadia, Messenia, and in many other countries (as *Pausanias* remembreth:) all which honors so done to him, were instituted (no doubt) by the Kings and rulers of those countries, who especially fauoured that Art, thinking it great reason, that he who inuented an Art so generally auailable for mankind, should be generally honoured of all men. And (I pray you) how much

inferiour

inferiour was the renowne of *Hippocrates*, who descended of his line, saying that the one was placed amongst the gods in heauen, and the other reuerenced as a mortall god vpon earth? Did not he make Coos, the place where he was borne, of an inglorious Iland, a famous countrey, onely by the accesse of other nations, who were brought thither by the report of his wonderfull skill in Physicke? What familiaritie had he with Kings? what estimation among the Philosophers of that time, as *Democrates* and others? And to conclude, how was his fame spread vniuersally throughout all Greece? I will not tarrie vpon the recitall of the famous Physitions who haue liued before vs in seuerall ages; as *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, *Paulus Aetius*, *Aegineta*, and others. For it will easily appeare of what credit this noble science of Physicke was in times past, if you consider the insolency and pride of ancient Physitions, whereof many of them disdained the fellowship of Kings, and some of them emboldened onely by the credit of their science purchased amongst men, grew to such impudency, that they would haue ceremonies and rites performed vnto them as vnto gods. One such was *Themison Cyprius* the daintie of *Antiochus*, another was *Thessalus* whom *Galen* maketh mention of, who went about to innouate and change the method of Physicke set downe by *Hippocrates* and others. But the most famous of all was *Menecrates* the Syracusan, who foolishly vsurped the name of *Iupiter*, oftentimes boasting, that by his Art he could breathe life into mortall men, after the manner of *Iupiter*: which arrogant title the people neuer went about to derogate from him, but rather supposed that it was deserued on his part, because he cured many of the falling euill, which disease especially reigned in his time. This *Menecrates* in a certaine epistle which he wrote to *Philip* the King of Macedon, vseth these words: Thou art King of Macedon, and I of Physicke: it lyeth in thy power at thy pleasure to destroy men which enioy their health, and in mine to preserue sicke men, and restore dead men to life, and to keepe the health of men vnspotted, euen vnto their old age, if they will obey me. Vnreasonable surely and monstrous was the pride of this man; and it was so fed with the applause and approbation of his citizens, who wondred at his rare cunning, that he marched in the City with a traine of gods after him: one in the habite of *Hercules*, another in the shape of *Mercurie*: another tooke vpon him the forme of *Apollo*, and he himselfe supereminent in the midst resembling *Iupiter*, wore a purple robe, and a crowne of gold vpon his head, and held in his hand a mighty Scepter. The opinion of this Science did so possesse the minds of the people in those dayes, that they imagined the professor of the same to be sent immediatly from heauen, for the commodity of the whole countrey, and for the preseruation of mankinde: which made them not to doubt to do vnto them all superstitious reuerence that might be; whereof grew this excessiue pride, which hath arrested as it were the minds of many Physitions. I would not wish that the Physitions of our time should draw this vnto an example, but rather with all lowlinesse to visit euen the poorest, when their helpe is required. For seeing the life of the most miserable vassal is as deare in the sight of God as the life of the most renowned Monarch, shall not the Physition looke to haue a shrewd checke at Gods hand, if he either hath proudly denied his helpe to the poore, or negligently visited them? I will not descend into this common place, though

though (to speake the truth) the arrogancy of many of our Physitions might giue vs sufficient occasion, wishing them to leaue off to imitate the swelling insolency of *Menecrates* and the rest, and to tract rather in the steps of *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, of whom it is thus written: that they neuer disdained to shrowd themselues vnder the simplest roofe in their countrey, to do the poorest man good: and as they themselues said (besides the glory that they purchased by their courteous benignity) they added alwayes to their cunning, and by experience confirmed their Art and knowledge, which might well stagger, if you respect the infinite variety of diseases, and the strange diuersities of mens dispositions. And truly if nothing else, yet the enriching of their knowledge, which is gathered especially by long experience, might be cause good enough to attract and draw them to lay hold of any occasion to go to the diseased person. And in mine opinion, the neglecting of this, which proceedeth either from couetousnesse or pride, hath bene the onely cause, that euen from the beginning there haue bene reckoned so few good Physitions. For (exempt onely *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, *Anicen*, *Ægineta*, *Aetius* and *Soranus*, though the number of common Physitions hath bene great) you shall not finde any that haue climed vp to the perfection of their science: nay farre from that which might chalenge the fist or sixt place. Which although some men will ascribe to the laborious difficultie & confused vastnesse of this Art especially; yet I dare boldly affirme, that there hath not bene, nor is, any such blocke or stay, which hath impeached so much their endeuours, as the defect of experience. And truly I cannot more fitly compare our Emperiques and practitioners, then to him that purposeth to be a sea-man and traueller, who though he studiously striueth to attaine to the perfectiō of his Art, though he carefully busieth himself about the cosmographicall maps, though he industriously peruseth the bookes of Nauigation, nay (which is more) though he conferre diligently with very expert saylers: yet when he hath forsaken the quiet hauen, and launched out into the rough seas, and hath taken vpon him the gouernment of the ship, when he shall behold so many horrible mountaines of water, the roring of so many huge waues, and the outraging surges of the disquieted monster; he will then confesse, that he onely dreamed before, when he imagined of the course of the seas; that his bookes were lame schoolemaisters, that the tales of his cōpanions were a great deale lesse then the things themselues: when he shall cast vp his eyes, and thinke that euery starre which he had hoped to haue vsed as guides and directions, had threatned his ruine and destruction: when he shall looke downe, and tremble at the rising of euery waue: when he shall turne him about, and with great feare seeke to eschue those rocks, which he had read were couched in that part of the sea: and to conclude, when he shall consider the hugenesse of the Ocean sea, and the smalnesse of his barke, he will thinke sure the least perrie or gale were of force to ouerwhelme him, notwithstanding his great cunning he had thought he had gained on the land. Euen so fareth it with our common Physitions, who while they containe themselues within the compasse of their little studie, where they do as it were *è tabula pictos edisce morbos*, where they perceiue their science redacted into a method, where they see *Galen* reaching his hand vnto them, to leade them through the whole body of Physicke, by whom they

they are taught the constitution of the body, the diuersitie of temperatures, the variety of diseases, the causes, signes, and symptomates of the same; they straight way imagine, that they haue runne the race, and that they haue acquired as much knowledge as becometh an Emperique. But after that, when they shall go into the commonwealth to practise, when they shal meet with diseases which *Galen* neuer dreamed of, when they shall view the maruellous and secret affections and properties of mens bodies, the sudden and momentanie changes of the same (which a man can scarcely follow with his mind,) when they shall perceiue that in respect of the strange temperature of the body, and the violent alteration of the same, they scarcely can aime at the disease, when they shall strike vpon so many rockes, besides their great paines and watchfull industrie: will it not (thinke ye) amaze them? will they not confesse then that their Art is vnperfect? will they not acknowledge (thinke you) that as experience was the ancient beginner of Physicke, so that now it is the true and sincere accomplisher of the perfection of the same? Since therefore the case so standeth, that Art is weake without practise, and that (as *Galen* saith) experience is gotten *longo rerum vsu*, let the Physition (if he preferre not lying fame and vile lucre before true and absolute knowledge) let him, I say, that his minde may be enriched, not leaue the poorest house vnfrequented. But to say the truth, nothing derogateth so much from the excelling in their science, as doth the opinion of perfection, which is especially gotten by the iudgement of the multitude, the peruerse determiner of things. For, when a man knoweth his name to flie amongst them, he sitteth still, and admireth himselfe, thinking then that he hath studied enough both for himselfe and his countrey, when he hath gotten his name enrolled amongst the number of excellent Physitions, by that ignorant and vnaduised register. I haue spoken this by the way, and the interiecting of these few lines hath not made me to forget (good Reader) that before I discoursed of the glory of this Science, and how it hath bene accounted of in times past: the dignitie whereof, though it be something lessened and empaired, (which whether it hath happened by the ignorance of our Physitions, or by the sinister opinion of the world, I will not now discusse:) yet if we will vprightly weigh with our selues, we may perceiue that the iudgement of men hath not any whit detracted from the true dignitie of the thing it selfe. For truly, what can be more noble, then to preserue the body of man in a good estate, which of the Philosopher is termed, a litle world, in respect of the variety of his seuerall functions? What can be more excellent, then to be able to maintaine and keepe in order that best workmanship of God, and (which is more) to correct, reforme, and amend it, and as it were a cunning pilote to gouerne and rule it as a litle vessell cast out into the great Ocean, subiect to I know not how many rockes and dangers, if it be not vprightly weilded? And seeing there is nothing giuen vnto vs of God more acceptable then the health of the body, how honorably must we thinke of the meanes by which it is continued, and restored if it be lost? *Pyrrhus* the King of Epire did sacrifice vnto no other god or goddesse, but only vnto Health, to whō he erected a famous temple in his owne country, calling it *Templum Sanitatis*. He contemned, or at the least neglected all oracles, which other Princes busily sought after, as predictions of the euents & successes

of

of the battels which they attempted, or any other the like enterprise. He craued nothing at the hands of the gods, but onely the fruition of his health; thinking that industry and diligence meeting with the health of the body, were able to atchieue any thing, were it beset with neuer so many dangers. And in mine opinion, (as the Historian very grauely discourseth) men do foolishly erre, when they complaine of nature, for limiting the age of man within the compasse of so few yeares, as three or foure score: when as truly, if the matter were well expended, we would confesse, *Industriam potius quàm tempus deesse* (as he saith,) and that there is no Art or science, be it neuer so difficult, but might be perfectly knowne within that short precinct, if the greater part of our life did not passe and vanish away in darkenesse, (slouth and ignorance drowning and ouerwhelming in vs all light of nature,) or if the course thereof were not interrupted and cut off by vntimely death, which is hastned on our parts by our inordinate and heedlesse liuing. The yong man flourishing as it were in the Aprill of his age, cockereth in himselfe a foolish imagination of his owne lustinesse, and reputeth it as a discredit vnto him to seeme to feare the approach of any disease, leauing the prouident gouernment of the body to decrepite and withered old age. In the meane time he layeth the reines vpon his affections, and exposeth himselfe to any inconuenience: either he weltereth in idlenesse, or is tyred with immoderate exercise, or (which is incident specially to that part of our age) he admitteth vnseasonable watchings, surfetting banquets, and the vnsatiate executing of the follies of *Venus*, thinking indeed that there is nothing lesse agreeing vnto youth and adolescency, then to be pliant and obedient to any commendable and wholsome method of life: yea many of them are of this mind, that the time of their youth is infamously ouerslipped, when they do not rush into their voluptuous and inordinate demeanor, at what time the lustie prime of their age doth somewhat enable & support them. And if at any time they be ouertaken with any infirmity (which often happeneth) as vnwilling to be beholding to the science of Physicke, they leaue it to be worne away by the strength of their body; which indeed I confesse hideth many diseases, and for the time taketh away the sense of the̅, but neuer vtterly extinguisheth any. For although in the infancy of the infirmity, in respect of the weakenesse of it, it is easily depressed and ouermaistred by the valour of the body (which in youth is something puissant and forcible,) yet when age cometh on with his stealing steps, or else retchlesse life doth detract from the force of the one, & maketh way for the other to spread and gather power, the disease being as it were the suruiuour, possesseth the whole body, and at the last procureth his vtter subuersion. And many times it hapneth, that a disease breaketh out in old age, the cause whereof perhaps was giuen in our youth. And it fareth with vs as it doth with them that are bitten with the little serpent of Arabia, which striketh a man, but so secretly that he neuer feeleth it, neither doth he know it but by the wound which sheweth it selfe a long time after the foundation thereof was layed. The opinion that the ancient Physitions had of the effect of Snow-water is of force to perswade this, who haue written, that if snow resolued into water be drunke of a yong child, it will as it were maintaine warre against naturall heate, and that with such continuance, as it will not shew his effect, vntill he hath attained vnto extreme

extreame old age. I do not altogether beleeue this, although the great cold which is naturally in that water may leade me to thinke that it is of a mighty operation. But there is nothing more certaine then this, that many men reposing two much truſt in the ſtrength of their bodies, and ſo being careleſſe in gainſtanding and reſiſting the beginnings of maladies (which their diſſolute order of life hath begotten and ingendred) haue bene yoked by old age before the courſe of their yeares did require it, and haue brought it ſo to paſſe, that their bodies haue bene nothing elſe but ſtorehouſes & manſions of diſeaſes. Which kind of men I may well compare to an euill and negligent tenant, who being ſetled in a faire dwelling houſe by his land-lord, ſuffereth it to ruinate, and in the end to fall vpon his owne head for want of repairing: ſo they, when God hath beſtowed their bodies vpon them as gorgeous palaces or mãſion houſes, wherein the mind may dwell with pleaſure and delight, do firſt by this euill demeanour, ſhake and diſcraſe them, and then being altogether careleſſe of repairing them, do ſuffer them to run to deſtruction, or elſe while they go about too late to vnderprop them declining to ruine, (as he that is lodged in an old cabbin, feareth leſt with euery puffe of wind it ſhould be ouerturned) they quake at the leaſt alteration of the bodie, and at euery little paine do expect a finall diſſolution: then they will confeſſe vnto you, that while they rioted vnaduiſedly in their youth, they did but build matter for repentance in age. And what do they elſe but by their examples giue vs to learne, that as the interception and preuenting of diſeaſes is very auailable, which carieth a man throughout his race with pleaſure and delight, euen ſo nothing cometh more neare vnto the goodneſſe thereof, then (if by chance when we be plunged into any diſeaſe) carefully to prouide that the beginning therof may be impeached: the which that thou mayeſt the better do, I haue (good reader) for thy benefit collected out of ſundry Authors, as it were a breuiary or abridgement of Phyſick; & together with thoſe deductions, I haue enterlaced experiments of mine owne, which by long vſe and practiſe I haue obſerued to be true. Throughout the whole booke I haue bin more curious in preſcribing the ſundrie curations and waies to helpe the diſeaſes, then in explaning the nature of them: my reaſon was, becauſe if my books ſhould come to the hands of the vnlearned, a little would ſuffice (the former being more neceſſarie.) Againe, I knew that the learned would not be contented or ſatisfied with it, though it had bene neuer ſo great: and yet I haue not omitted any neceſſarie ſigne, that the diſeaſe may appeare eaſily to any capable braine. I ſhall ſeeme boldly to haue aduentured the Edition of this labour, ſeeing that I ſhal runne into the babble of our countrey Phyſitions, who thinke their Art to be diſcredited, when it is publiſhed in a baſe tongue; and againe, are loath to haue the ſecrets of their ſcience reuealed to euery man. Indeed I know that vnder ſome colour they may obiect ſomewhat, but yet they may vnderſtand, that I haue followed the example of many learned Phyſitions, both of our Engliſhmen and other countrimen alſo, who publiſhed their practiſes in their mother tongue, and in other countries eſpecially it is ſo rife and common, that in Italy and France you ſhall not finde any learned Phyſition that hath not written as much (nay rather more) in his owne countrey language, then in Latin: yea we haue many bookes in Phyſicke, that

haue first bene set out in French and Italian, and afterward for the commodity of other Nations, haue bene translated into Latine, and so made generall, which before the writer had as it were bequeathed to his countreimen. And no doubt they were all touched with an especiall care to profit their owne countrey, being willing that all men (as indeede it concerneth all) should reape the commodities of their labours. For I cannot see how that saying of *Quintilian* can be verified in his owne Art (which is this) That then all Artes should be truly happie, when the professours of the same should onely iudge of them: but I haue alwayes bene of this minde, that it behoueth euery man to be cunning in his owne constitution, and to know so much as may serue to forestall the coming of many ordinary diseases, which commonly light vpon the ignorant: yea and sometime to be able to chase away a malady when it hath alreadie caught hold of the bodie: my reason is, both because euery man may iudge best of his owne bodie, and perceiue the declinings and alterations of the same. And againe we know, how many haue died, and do die continually for want of helpe, (the Physition being not alwaies at their elbow) whereas in the beginning of their sickenesse, a little knowledge might haue stopped the passage of the infirmitie. In the old time when Physicke was brought vnder no forme, but consisted only of a few experiments which passed from hand to hand, yong children, together with other Artes, did receiue certaine precepts and rules, how to order and gouerne the body, and learned also preseruatiues against poyson, and the receipt of salues to cure any greene wound, and the meanes to helpe certaine ordinary diseases, which (indeed) were but few, the age of man being then farre more strong. We reade how *Linus*, who was schoolemaister to *Hercules*, when he had instructed him in the Art of wrastling, (which then was honoured especially) and in Musicke, that he gaue him the receipt of a certaine balme, which he often vsed in many of his aduentures. And what was it that gaue matter to the fable of *Achilles*, how his mother *Thetis* had made his bodie impenetrable, but that knowledge of his which he had learned of his maister *Chyron* the Centaure, who taught him the vertue of an herbe, which to this day beareth his name, by which he healed all the wounds he receiued in battell? What an honorable mention doth *Homer* make of *Machaon* and *Podalirius* the sonnes of *Æsculapius*, in that they could cure themselues when they were at any time hurt of the enemie? This cunning also had *Mithridates*, and *Fabricius* the Romane, he that vanquished *Pyrrhus*, and also *Marcus Curius*, and many other who are recorded by histories, whose names I would remember, if I did not see the enlarging of this common place by examples to be altogether vnnecessary, when there is no man which so farre swarueth from common sense, that will not confesse it to be very expedient and needful for all to know the estate of their owne bodies. I will therefore forsake the prouing of so manifest a thing, and returne vnto thee (good Reader) whom I haue alreadie offended in exceeding the length of a Preface, like vnto that wayfaring man, who when he had purposed to vndertake a long iourney, stumbled euen in the very threshold of his doore. But if it be an offence, I did voluntarily runne into it, chusing rather to be carped at of the Rhetorician for vsing too many words, then to be worthily reprehended

ded of the readers for being too sparing in vttering the reasons whereby I was first induced to publish this my labour. For I know not how it cometh to passe, yet we see it daily, that ridiculous toyes, and absurd pamphlets, being put forth without any colour, be neuertheleſſe plausibly and pleasingly accepted: whereas a man moued with an honest care to profit his countrey, being willing to leaue a testimony of the same behind him, when he offereth any worke, if it hath not a delectable subiect, it behoueth him to shew many graue & substantiall reasons of his doings, or else they will not yeeld their hoped for benefit, which is to be benignely construed, and perused with humanity. So that if a man couet to haue his bookes fauourably accepted and read, he must behaue himselfe so in writing, as *Solon* did in framing his lawes, who (as *Plutarch* saith) did not fashion them according to the true line of equity, but set downe such as he thought the people would willingly obserue: euen so the iniquitie of the time hath brought to passe, that these bookes which are generally perused and read throughout, must not serue the time, but must satisfie the opinion of men. A man may easily discourse of this, but the fantasies of men are too variant to preuaile a whit in disswading them. For mine owne part (that I may now end) I haue not sought nor hunted after any vaineglory by the edition of this my labour, but onely I haue endeuoured by this meanes (being vnable any way else) to do some good to my countrey-men: which desire of mine shall sufficiently comfort me, though I want the outward probation of the world. And yet this one thing I would craue at the hands of the learned, that if by chance my bookes come vnder their censure, they will either giue them their good word, or else suffer themselues to be iudged of by performing the like labour. And as *Martial* pretily sung;

Cum tua non edas, carpis mea carmina Leli:
Carpere vel noli nostra, vel ede tua.

Though indeed this supplication of mine may rather more fitly be preferred vnto the vnlearned, who thinke they haue gotten a goodly meanes to purchase their owne credit, when they can, vnder some colour, maligne the doings of a-ny man, as though others well doings were as impeachments to their estimations, or the errours of other men the subiect of their praises. Those kindes of serpents (I say) which do nothing else but picke quarrels with Authors, I wohld aduise them either to speake themselues, or (if their ignorance will not let them) to lay their fingers on their mouth till other men tell their tale, and not to make their harueſt of other mens offences vnwillingly committed, whileſt they themselues rest vnable to do any whit of good. And thus (good Reader) I will abruptly end, expecting the fauourable acceptation of these my labours; which expectation of mine if it be not deluded, I shall be further encouraged to consecrate the residue of my studies to thy commodity.

Philip Barrough.

OF WEIGHTS.

A briefe declaration of the notes of all those kindes of weights, which are generally vsed, and contained throughout this whole booke, and of the quantitie of them.

FOrasmuch as the true and perfect knowledge in compounding of medicines cannot be attained vnto without the knowledge of the quantity of weights, which are at this present day most commonly vsed in making of medicines: I will therefore here briefly declare the vse of them. For seeing the weights of some medicines be so iustly and certainly ordained and made, that if any man do chance rashly to erre in the true quantity thereof, he doth much hurt to the body, and many times putteth the life in ieopardie: you must therefore diligently endeuour, and apply your minde to study and consider of the medicines, that so you may haue the more full & perfect knowledge thereof. The notes which I (following the order of other Physitions) haue vsed in this my booke in writing of weights, be these, as followeth.

1. Grana.	hath this note,	G.
2. Scripuli.		℈.
3. Drachmæ.		ʒ.
4. Vnciæ.		℥.
5. Quar.		qr.
6. Libræ.		℔.
7. Semis.		ß.
8. Manipuli.		M.
9. Pugilli.		ṗ.
10. Ana.		aa.

A Graine is a barley corne taken out of the middest of the eare.
A Scruple is twenty barley cornes.
Three Scruples containe a Drachme.
Eight Drachmes containe one Ounce.
Quart, signifieth a quart of any thing.
Libra is a pound.
Semis, is the halfe of euery weight.
Manipulus, is a great handfull.
Pugillus, is a small handfull.
Ana, signifieth of euery one alike much.

THE

THE METHOD OF PHISICKE, CONTAINING THE CAVSES, SIGNES, AND CVRES of inward diseases in mans body, from the head to the foote.

The first Booke.

The first Chapter; of Headach.

GALEN the prince of Phisitions affirmeth, that there are onely three sundry paines in the head: whereof the one is called of the Greeks κεφαλαλγία, *Cephalalgia*, & of the Latins *Capitis dolor*: the barbarous sort of Physitions cal it *Soda*: in English it is called commõly the headach. The second kind is called of the Greekes κεφαλαία, and in Latine likewise it is called *Cephalæa*: in English it may be called a long continuing or inueterate headach. The third is called of the Greeks ἡμικρανία, *Hemicrania* also is the Latin name of it: in English it is called the Migrime. Of the two last kinds I shall mention be made hereafter, for now we will intreate of the first kind, declaring only in this Chapter, what it is, and what be the generall causes thereof, and then in the chapters next following, shal the signes and cures of each cause be declared. Vnderstand therefore first, that *Cephalalgia* is nothing else but a laborious and painfull sense and feeling, newly begun in the whole head, through some great mutation thereof: this word newly, is added to make it differ from *Cephalæa*, which is an old paine that hath long continued: and the whole head is added to make it differ frõ *Hemicrania*, which occupieth but the one halfe of the head. Note also that by the head we meane so much as is couered with haire, wherein paine is ingendred, sometime without the scull, and sometime within; sometime in all the outward parts, and sometime in all the inward parts; sometime not in all, but in one part, as in the arteries onely, or the veines, or sinewes, or the filmes, or the skin, or in the braine it selfe: but these differences, as *Galen* testifieth, be very hard to know. But this may easily be knowne, whether the paine be within the scull or without it, if you consider well the headach: for if the paine be extended to the rootes and bottome of the eyes, the paine is within the scull, for vnto the eyes are certaine branches deriued from the braine, and from the filmes, and other vessels that are about it: so that the paine will quickly

Differences of paine in the head three.

1

2

3

What Cephalalgia or Soda is.

The diuersitie of places that paine is in.

Whether the headach be within the scul or without it.

come from them to the roots of the eyes: but if the paine that is felt do not extend to the eye rootes, then is the ach without the scull. This paine of the head generally (as also all other paines) is caused of an vnequall distemper, coming with humours or without, especially when it is hote or cold; or it is caused by solution of parts coherent, or of both. But as for particular and speciall causes of headach there be very many. For sometime it cometh onely of a simple distemper without any humors, and sometime it cometh through the euill quality of humours, sometime it cometh through great abundance of humours, sometime through humours that stop the passage of the vapours and moisture in the head, sometime through windinesse engendred in some part of the head, being weake. And sometime headach is caused of some disease in the stomacke: sometime of an outward cause, as of heate of the Sunne, of great cold, of drunkennesse, or of some stripe or wound. Hereby it appeareth that the headach is engendred of seuen sundry causes, which are to be knowne by their proper signes, whereof we will speake more at large in the chapters following, for in this Chapter they shall be but briefly touched. Note therefore that the headach which is caused of a simple distemper without humours, is not easie to be knowne, except a man be well exercised in Physick, and by much and diligent looking on the griefe: but that paine of the head is most vehement, which is caused of a simple distemper being hote or cold. The headach that is caused of drinesse, is moderate. As for a moist distemper, alone it doth cause no headach, except it be ioyned with heate or cold, or with abundance of humours, or sharpnesse of them. If paine of the head doth come through abundance of humours, contained in one part of the head, or in two, or in all parts, the paine is more vehement that cometh of hote humours or of cold; that which commeth of dry things is more moderate, if there be no manifest heate or cold ioyned with them. As for moist things touching their qualitie, they do cause no paine at all, but with their quantitie they may fill the passages & so cause paine. If abundance of all foure humours equally, or of bloud alone, do cause headach without obstruction and stopping of the passages, it maketh the head heauie and full as it were stretched out and swolne: but if the multitude of humours be with obstruction, it causeth moderate paine if the obstruction be but little, but if the obstruction be great, there shall be very great paine. Also if the multitude of humours haue a sharpe and biting quality, according to that qualitie the paine will be pricking and shooting. If with the heauinesse or stretching of the head, there be beating, and as it were a pulse, it betokeneth inflammation in the head: but if the stretching be present without heauinesse or pulse, it declareth abundance of windie spirits, and in this kind of headach there will be noise in the eares. Those that haue headach coming of an externall cause, as of heate of the Sunne, cold of the aire, drunkennesse, stripes, or of any hote sauours, can easily tell themselues the cause thereof. Seeke for signes more particular in the Chapters next following.

Causes of headach generall.

Causes of headach speciall.

Signes of each cause of headach generally.

CHAP. II.

Of headach caused of heate.

VNderstand, that by heate in this Chapter is meant a hote distemper without any kind of humour. It is engendred for the most part of the burning heate

heate of the Sunne in Sommer, when any body hath taried long in it. Also it is sometime caused of immoderate mouing, or by hote bathes, or by being long nigh the flame of the fire, or through anger, or furiousnes, or last of all through hote diseases, or hote sauours of outward things. The signes which declare headach by burning heate of the Sunne, are, that besides vehement paine, you shall feele their head hote as soone as you touch it, and their skinne drier then it was wont to be; their eyes do looke redde, and they are delighted with the sprinkling or annointing of cold things, and do feele great ease by them. As for the other causes, they may be knowne by relation of the sicke. For the cure of this kinde of headach, you must first prouide that the aire and the chamber where the sicke abideth, be very cold of nature, or else it must be made so by your diligence, as by strewing in the house flowers and branches of cold things (as Roses, Violets, Water-lilly-flowers, and Vine leaues, Bryer boughs, Willow, and such like.) Also it will coole the aire well to sprinkle cold water in the house, or to poure it out of one vessell into another. Great respect must be had to his sleeping, for he must sleepe longer then he was wont to do, he must altogether eschue long watching, and keepe himselfe quiet: he must not retaine his excrements, but auoide them by and by after sleepe if he can, or let nature be helped to expell thē by a lenitiue clister, for their retention increaseth paine in the head. Let him eschue carnall copulation, exercises, and bathes. Let him eschue all perturbations of the minde, especially anger and fury. Let him haue but a little meate, of good digestion, and let it be cold in operation, as is bread dipped in cold water, iuyce of Ptisan, Lettuce, Endiue, Purslaine, flesh of Chickens, Hens or Pigeons, with veriuyce made of Grapes. Fishes are good that come out of stonie riuers, and that are tender. Also Almond milke, Pomgranates, Raisins, and ripe Peares may be giuen to him. He must abstaine from milke, and meates that fume into the head, or that be hard of digestion. For his drinke, let him vse water altogether, if his stomacke will beare it; if not, seeth a little Cinamon in it, or Coriander seed preparate, or mixe with the water, iuyce of soure Pomegranates, or syrupe of Endiue, or *Syrupus Acetosus simplex*, or *Oxysacacharum*: or if they cannot abide that, you may giue them small wine well allayed with water. The paine of the head caused of heate, is cured with such things as do coole without manifest restriction, especially if they be of thinne and piercing substance. Therefore in the beginning nothing is better then to powre on the head good oyle of Roses, made of vnripe oyle, and if a litle vineger be added to it, it wil pierce the faster and the deeper. The places that you must poure or annoint it on, is the forepart of the head, where the seame goeth ouerthwart, for it is the thinnest place of the scull, and the seames haue pores on them: also you must vse it on the top of the forehead, where the haire leaueth growing, and on the sides of the temples where the haire groweth towards the eares. The best thing next oyle of Roses, is oyle of Cammomill to be vsed in like sort, especially in those bodies that we would not coole to much, as womens, eunuches, children, and other that haue soft flesh, and are white in colour. If there be neede of great cooling, you may adde to the oyle of Roses iuyce of Housleek, or Purslaine, or Knotgrasse, or of vnripe grapes, or Nightshade, or Sorrell, or *Psilium*, or such like. Vse not iuyce of Pop-

Signes.

Ayre.

Sleepe.

Meate.

Drinke.

Cura.

Oyle of Roses.

Oyle of Cammomill.

pie, or of Mandrake in this cause, for they do hurt: you may make medicines of the former things, or such like, in this sort: ℞. oyle of Roses, ℥. ij. Rose water, ℥. j. strong vineger, ℥ ß. or iuyce of Housleeke, or Purslaine, or Lettuce, ℥. j. and so commixe them. Or thus, ℞. distilled water of Housleeke, Lettuce, and Nightshade, ana. ℥. ij. water of Cammomill, ℥. j ß. vineger, ℥. j. commixe them and dip a cloth in it, and lay it all ouer the forehead, and the temples where the haire groweth not. But let not this medicine touch the hinder part of the head, for that part cannot suffer cooling without hurt, because the marrow of the backe-bone beginneth there. Those medicines which you will vse for cooling, especially in Sommer, must stand a while in very cold water. This also is good for abundance of humours and vapours that be lifted vp into the head. In like manner also you may vse other oyles that haue vertue to coole, as oyles of Quinces, Violets, Waterlillies, and Gourds. Neither will it be vnprofitable to vse a Liniment made in this sort. ℞. of the muscilage of the seeds of Quinces, and great Mallowes, or of *Psilium*, ana. ℥. iij. iuyce of Purslaine ℥. j. ß. iuyce of Nightshade, ℥ ß. oyle of Roses, ℥. j. commixe them, and make a Liniment: or by putting too Waxe and other medicines, make an ointment in this sort: ℞. *vnguenti Populeon*, ℥. j. oyles of Violets and Roses, of each ℥. iij. dry flowers of white Waterlillies, and of red Roses, ana ℈. j. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint it vpon the forehead and the temples. It profiteth also to vse Embrocations (that is, decoctions made of certaine things to poure vpon any member by little and little, or to let it drop downe:) they may be made of Roses, Violets, flowers of Waterlillies, willow leaues, Vine leaues, Purslaine, Barley, & such like. You must not apply stupefactiue things to the griefe, because they coole, not without hurt, and therefore *Opium*, iuyce of Poppy, & Mandragora are to be eschued. Iuyce of Nightshade also because of his stupefaction is not to be vsed at all, or very little of it at once, as we do vse in the Liniment aforesaid. Also those things that haue manifest astriction and binding with their cooling, are to be refused, except necessitie require it, and therefore the iuyces of sweete Pomgranates, Quinces and Medlars, are to be auoyded, but iuyce of sowre Pomgranates is good, because it cooleth more. Hitherto we haue declared what medicines are to be vsed in the beginning of this griefe. Afterwards you may vse to mixe with the medicines that do coole and driue backe, such things as do mitigate and digest. Make therefore an Embrocation after this sort: ℞. flowers of Roses & Violets, ana M. ß. leaues of Willow, Cammomill, and Melilot, ana M. j. seeds of Mallowes, ℥. iij. Barley husked ℥ j seeth these in two pound of water till the third part be consumed, and make an Embrocatiõ. Or thus: ℞. Mallow leaues, Violets, Roses, ana. pug. ß. the flowers of Waterlillies, ℥ iij. Vine leaues, or the wreaths that they wind about things withall, Purslaine, or Housleeke, of each, M. j. Cammomill, Melilot, Fenugreeke, ana ℥. ij. seeth them as is aboue said, and make an Embroca, adding too a little vineger, especially if the paine be within the scull. Last of all, you may vse most of the discussiue medicins, withdrawing the aforesaid repelling things; such be, Althæa, Dill, Sothernwood, Butter, Cammomill, Barley meale, Fenugreeke, Linseed, Lupines, &c. Of these and such like things you may make quilts, or embrocations, or oyntments, as you list. For inward medicines espe-

A Liniment.

Vnguentum.

Embrochæ.

Stupefacientia

Note.

Embrocha.

Alia.

cially if the headach be cauſed of exercife, anger, or ſuch like) miniſter Iulep of Violets or Roſes, or their conſerues, or *Manus Chriſti*; or giue the ſicke two or three houres before meate in the morning, ℥ j ß. of ſyrupe of infuſion of Roſes, or of ſyrupe of Waterlillies, with ℥ ij. or iij of water of Borage or Cychorie. It is good for the ſicke to ſmell Roſe water, mixed with a litle vineger: alſo it is good to ſnuffe it vp in the noſe. *Inward medicines.* *Odours.*

CHAP. III.

Of headach cauſed of cold.

BY cold, is meant in this Chapter, a cold diſtemper ſimply, without the fluxe of any cold humour. This paine in the head is cauſed of outward cold, as when the aire is very cold, eſpecially when one tarieth in it long time bare headed; as alſo it may be cauſed by the ſudden applying of any cold thing to the head. The ſignes of headach cauſed of cold, are contrary to thoſe ſignes that are cauſed of hote diſtemper. For in this, though the paine be vehement, yet the head when it is felt, is not hote, and the face and eyes do not looke red, nor their face is not drie and ſtrunke, but contrariwiſe full and pale, and their eyes are ſwolne and ſwart. Alſo they neither deſire cold things, nor do feele eaſe by them. Concerning the diet of thoſe that haue this kinde of headach, they muſt eſchue cold aire, and abide altogether in hote ayre. They muſt ſleepe moderately, but no longer then they were wont. They muſt vſe mouing of the whole body, eſpecially walking and riding. Let their bodies be ſoluble rather then coſtiue, ſo that they may each day haue a ſiege either by nature or by art, as by a ſuppoſitarie or a cliſter. Let them eſchue ſadneſſe, and deepe cogitations, and other immoderate affections of the minde. Let them eſchue all meates and drinkes that be cold in operation, as milke, fiſh, and ſuch like. Let them eate reare egges, and fleſh of Hennes, Chicken, Partrich, Pheſants, and ſuch like. For their drinke let them vſe wine that is thinne of ſubſtance, for that doth moderately extenuate and heate. For the ſame cauſe alſo hote baths are to be vſed; and generally for the cure hereof, you muſt vſe things that be hote in operation. But yet in applying medicines to the head, you muſt diligently conſider the naturall temperature of the braine, for it is ſuch a thing as cannot ſuffer medicines vehement hote nor yet vehement cold. Therefore (as *Galen* affirmeth) if oyle of Rew be powred hote vpon the forepart of the head, it healeth the patient perfectly. But if there be need of greater heating, you may put pepper or *Euphorbium* into the oyle; or you may mixe ſome oyle of Pepper or oyle of *Euphorbium* with the oyle of Rew, or in the ſtead of oyle of Rew, you may vſe oyles of Lawrel, *Ireos*, Dill, or Cammomil, of Spikenard, *Serpillum*, Marioram, and ſuch like. Herewith you may annoint the forehead alſo, and the noſthrils, and the holes of the eares. Of the aforeſaid medicines you may make an ointment after this ſort: ℞. oiles of *Ireos* and Rew, ana. ℥ ß. Marioram, Betony, Pepper, ana ϑ j. of *Euphorbium*, gra v. Waxe as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint therewith the forehead and the noſthrils: or make an ointment thus: ℞. of the oyles of Rew, Cammomill, & *Nardinum*, ana ℥ j. Hyſope, Lauender, and flowers of Stæchas, ana ℥ ß. Maſticke and Frankenſenſe, of each ℥ j. Waxe a little, and make an ointment. You may ſometime ad to it, if you wil, *Caſtoreum*, ϑ j. Alſo Embrocations profit much, if they be made *Cauſa.* *Signa.* *Victus ratio.* *Cura.* *Vnguentum.* *Aliud.* *Embrocha.*

of flowers of Melilot and Cammomill, Marioram, Origan, Betonie, Sage, Laurell leaues, *Stæchas*, and such like sodden in water. It is good for the sick to draw vp the vapours of such decoctions by his nosthrils. Also a quilt made in this sort

Sacculus. profiteth much: ℞. leaues of Laurell, *Serpillum*, and Marioram, ana. M. ß. flowers of Rosemarie, M. j. Rew, M. ß. Cloues and *Stæchas*, ana ʒ. j. Peniroyall and Calamint, ana. ʒ. j. ß. beate these to powder, and sew them in silke, or fine linnen cloth, & make a quilt, which must be laid to the head warme, and first sprinkled

Pomum odoriferum. with vineger. It is good also to vse a pomander made in this sort. ℞. of *Storax calamitæ*, ʒ. ij. Cloues, Maces, wood of Aloes, ana. ʒ. ß. Lauender, ʒ. ij. *Gallia moschata*, ʒ. j. ß. of Musk and Amber, ana. gra. iij. powder them ann searce them, and with water of Marioram and *Storax liquida* as much as shall suffice, make pomanders.

CHAP. IIII.

Of headach caused by drineſſe or moiſture.

BY drineſſe, is meant in this place a drie distemper of the quality alone, and by moisture, a moist distemper of the bare quality. Neither of these qualities alone, except heate or cold be ioyned with them, do cause any headach at all (as *Galen* teacheth in the 5. Chapter of his booke *de Symptomatum causis.*) Therefore we do not make mention here of these distempers, as though headach might be caused of them alone, but that the studious in Physick might haue store of medicines, when headach cometh of heate and drineſſe, or moisture with heat, or when cold mixed with drines or moisture causeth headach. Head-

Causæ. ach through drineſſe is caused through drineſſe of the aire, or by drie medicins, by hunger, exercise, lecherie, and perturbations of the minde. And headach of moisture, is caused by moistneſſe of the aire, or by moistening medicines, by baths, hote waters, and other things that moisten ouermuch. Drineſſe is knowne

Signa. by these signes, if there come few excrements, or none at all out of the nose: if the eyes be hollow, and the patient haue watched much before: these be signes of headach of drineſſe. Also in it the skinne of the head is drier when it is felt, then it is wonted to be, and some drie diet hath bene vsed. But in this kind, drie medicines do not ease the paine, but rather increase it. Moistneſſe is knowne by these signes; much filth cometh out of the nose, the eyes be puffed vp and swolne, and the patient sleepeth much: but of this distemper alone there doth no headach ensue. Those that haue headach caused of drineſſe, let them

Victus. remaine in a moist aire, and let them eate meates that do moisten, and that be of good iuyce, as the yolkes of egges, Cocks stones, and the broth of them, Phesants, Partrich, and such like things that do nourish much and moisten. Let them drinke thinne wine allayed with water: let them sleepe largely: let them eschue motion of the body and exercise, and vse quietneſſe and rest: let them eschue carnall copulation, hunger, thirst, and all things that do drie: let them vse baths of sweete waters that are warme: let them be merrie, and eschue all other perturbations of the minde. If headach be caused of moisture, you must vse the contrarie diet to this that is before prescribed (that is, all such things as do drie, which you may easily know by that which hath bene said

Curatio. before.) For paine of the head caused of drineſſe, you must annoint the former seame

seame of the head with oyle of sweet Almonds, or with oyle of Gourds, or with oyle of Violets and Cammomill mixed together. It is also good to drop some of these oyles into the nosthrils. You may also mixe with the said oyles Goose grease, Hens grease, Calues grease, or fresh butter, after this sort: ℞. oiles of violets and Waterlillies, ana ℥. iij. Calues suet, Hens grease and fresh butter, ana. ℥. ij. commixe them, and make a Liniment, and therewith annoint the head. Furthermore, Embrocations profit not a litle, if they be made of Violets, Mallowes and other herbes that haue vertue to moisten. Against headach caused of moisture, you must vse medicines cleane contrary to the aforenamed, which must differ according to the heate or cold which is ioyned to the moisture. You may find sufficient store of such remedies out of the former Chapters. *Linimentum.*

CHAP. V.
Of headach caused of bloud.

Hitherto we haue spoken of the cure of headach which cometh through alteration and distemper of the bare qualitie; but now we will speake of that which is caused of fulnesse, and abundance of bloud. We call plenitude in this place that which the Greekes call in their tongue *plethora*; it chanceth when all the foure humours be increased in their proportion, or when bloud alone doth abound. This kind of headach is caused of all such things as do ingender great abundance of humors in the body, as meates and drinks of great nourishment being plentifully taken: as also the neglecting and omitting of exercises, baths, sweatings, & other naturall and artificiall vacuations, be causes of the said plenitude. The signes be these: the face and the eyes be ruddie, the veines are swolne, so that the least and smallest may easily be seene: the pulse is great & vehement, the vrine reddish and thick, the veines of the temples beate, the paine in the head is a heauinesse. Concerning diet, let the sicke be in a cold and dry aire, let him eschue flesh, reare egges, and such things as nourish plentifully: let him vse Ptisan made of barley, or Alica made of barley: let him vse cold herbs, as Endiue, Scarioll, Purslaine, Lettuce, and such like: let him eschue wine, and let him drinke water wherein a litle Cinamon or Barley hath bene sodden: let him vse meane exercise: let him be rubbed: let him also vse bathing often, but so that his body be first emptied, and the patient free from a feauer. Let his sleepe be meane: let him be merry and ioyfull: and let him abstaine from all perturbations of the minde. The cure must be begun with bloud letting as soone as can be. You must open the vttermost veine, which in the arme is called *Humeralis* or *Cephalica*: it must be on the arme which is of that side that the griefe is most vehement. For this veine is so annexed to the head, that not onely by it you shall pull backe bloud into a contrary part, but also you shall emptie out that bloud by it, as *Hippocrates*, and after him *Galen*, and *Rhases* do teach. But if age or weakneesse do prohibite bloudletting, you must vse boxing: not to the head it selfe, but to the parts adioyning, as the shoulders and breast, to the intent to pull backe the bloud. These being done, you must apply to the head medicines that be cold and astringent, whereof we haue made mention before sufficiently in the second Chapter, so that they needs not here to be repeated.

What is meant by plenitude. πλησμος.
Causæ.
Signa.
Victus ratio.
Curatio.
Venæ sectio.
Cucurbitæ.
Ventosæ.
Localia.

Furthermore, the Phyſition muſt haue ſpecial regard in this caſe, that the patient be kept ſoluble. Therefore if the patient be any thing coſtiue, you may miniſter this decoction, or ſome ſuch like: R. flowers of Bugloſſe, Borage, roſes, and violets, ana. M. ß. the foure great cold ſeeds husked, ana ℥. ij. Sebeſten, damaske proines, of each in number xij. great Raiſins, Tamarinds, ana ℥. j. barks of Myrobalanes. *Citrinorum, Indorum, Chebulorum, Emblicorum, Belliricorum*, ana. ℥ iij. Liquorice, ℥. j. Fumitory, Maidenhaire, ana. M. j. *Tamariſcus*, Harts tongue, ana. ℥. iij. Sene and Polipody, of each ℥. ß. Agarick choſen, ℥. j ß. Ginger, ℥. ß. Seeth all theſe in a ſufficient quantity of water, vntill halfe be conſumed, then ſtraine it and preſſe it hard. Adde to that decoction Sugar ſufficient to make it ſweet, purifie it with the whites of egges, and make a potion, whereof the patient ſhall drinke each morning, ℥ iiij faſting. And if ſo be that the patients coſtiueneſſe require a ſtronger medicine, then you may adde to foure ounces of the ſaid decoction, ℥. j. ß. of fine Reubarbe beaten to powder, and Spikenard, ℥. ß. or you may diſſolue it in *Caſia fiſtula*, ℥ j. ß. newly drawne, or ℥ j. of Manna, or of Diaphænicon, ℥ iij. For the ſame purpoſe it is good alſo to miniſter vnto the patient ſyrupe of Violets, and *Acetoſus ſimplex*. After this you muſt apply ſuch medicins to the head, as be able to diſperſe the remnant of the paine & diſeaſe, as be ſeeds of Mallowes, Fenugreeke, Cammomil, and Melilot flowers. Alſo oyles of Cammomill, Dill, and ſuch like, whereof the Phyſition may at his choiſe make Liniments, Ointments, or Emplaiſters in maner aforeſaid. Note here further that if much bloud abound after you haue let bloud of the *Cephalica*, you may alſo ſtrike the veine in the forehead: as alſo for that purpoſe it is good to vſe cliſters ſometime very ſtrong, and you may vſe frictions and bindings of the neather parts to pull backe the humours. Moreouer gargariſing and ſneeſing may be vſed in time conuenient, and boxing in the hinder part of the head, with ſcarification, at the diſcretion of the Phyſition, as occaſion and time ſhall ſerue.

Decoctum purgans.

Diſcutientia.

CHAP. VI.

Of headach cauſed of Choler.

Cauſe.

HEadach coming of cholericke humours, is cauſed of all ſuch things as do heate and dry the whole body, and eſpecially the head vnnaturally, that is, ſuch things as do ingender choler, (to wit, care, anger, paine, labour, exerciſe, watching, abſtinence, famine, and eating of meates that be cholericke, as Garlicke, Onions, and ſuch like. The ſignes be theſe: the paine is like theirs that haue headach cauſed of burning heate of the Sunne, but they haue a more ſharpe and pricking paine, their head is moderately hote, their face is pale and wanne. Sometime there followeth bitterneſſe of the mouth, drineſſe of the eyes, noſe, and tongue. Moreouer this euill chanceth moſt of all to floriſhing yeares, a hote complexion, and to them that take ouermuch buſineſſe in hand, and ſuch like. Let the patient abide in a cold and moiſt aire, which may be procured by art, as is taught before in the ſecond Chapter, by ſprinkling the floore of the chamber continually with water, or by ſtrewing of flowers and braunches that are cold and moiſt in operation. Let his whole diet be moiſt, let him eate moiſt meates that be of good iuyce; giue him Lettuce and Purſlaine, & ſmall fiſhes of freſh waters: Let his drinke be water alone, or water wherein a little Cinamon hath

Signa.

Victus ratio.

hath bene sodden: Let him altogether abstaine from wine: Let him be quiet, & vse long sleepes, bathes that be temperate, vnctions are good for him; let him be merrie, and refraine from all perturbations of the mind. This cure must be begun with purging of the cholericke humour straightway, because choler is thin and moueable, and therefore will easily purge out. But if it chance that the cholericke humour doth rest quietly in some part of the body, and so doth waxe hote, and burne that part, and by that meanes doth prohibite hote medicines (as purging things be) then before the purgation you must minister such things as do quench and concoct the heate and burning of choler, that is, such things as do alter it. For digestion that we speake of now, is nothing else but an alteration of the humour that causeth the disease: therefore such medicines must be ministred each morning fasting before you do purge, vntil good concoction appeare in the vrine: for by this meanes choler being concoct, and as it were tamed and made milde, is made so obedient vnto nature, that it will soone without any griefe be drawne of the purging medicine to conuenient places that it should auoid by. You shall therefore for a preparatiue vse this or such like medicine: ℞. syrupe of Violets, ℥. j. syrupe of Waterlillies, ℥ ß. distilled waters of Endiue, Succorie and Roses, ana ℥ j. commixe them, and let them be drunke in the morning fasting. For this purpose also you may minister Iulep of Roses & Violets, or *Syrupus Acetosus*, or the decoction of seeds of Cucumbers, Gourds Purslaine, Endiue: roots also of Endiue and Succorie, Roses, Violets, Waterlillies, Lettuce, Damaske proines, Sebesten, Iuiubes, and such like. You may purge the cholericke humour either by infusion of Wormwood, or of Aloes, or with *Hierapicra* ministred alone, or a litle Scammonie mixed with it, or with pilles made of Aloes. Or you shall not do amisse to take of the purging decoction prescribed in the former Chapter, ℥ iiij. and to dissolue therein ℥ iij. of *Electuarium de succo rosarum*, or as much of *Electuarium de Psillio*, & so minister it. It is good also to minister infusion of Reubarbe, made after this sort: ℞. fine Reubarbe, ℥ ij. Spikenard ϑ j. cut them small, and infuse them in distilled waters of Endiue, Doddir, and Buglosse, ana. ℥ j. pure Ale, ℥ ß. the space of twelue houres: then straine it hard, and put thereto of Electuaries *de succo Rosarum* and *Psillio*, ana ℥ j ß commixe them, and make a purging potion. Also you may vse *Pilulæ aureæ* and *Alephanginæ*, or pils of Reubarb, or of *Hiera simplex*, and such like, or else *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaprunes solutiue*. For them that are delicate you may vse this Bole: ℞. of *Diagridium*, ϑ ß. of Maces, Cinamon, and Masticke, ana gr. ij. conserue of Violets and Waterlillies, ana. ℥ j. Sugar as much as sufficeth, and make a Bole. Further, it profiteth now and then to vse clisters made in this or like sort: ℞. Mallowes, *Althæa*, Endiue, Succorie, Violets, ana. M. ß. whole Barley ℥ j. the foure common small cold seeds, that is, Lettuce, Purcelaine, Endiue, and Scarioll, ana. ℥ iij. Seeth all these in running water to the third part, straine them, take of that decoction ℔ j. of the pulpe of *Cassia fistula*, ℥ j. of *Hierapicra*, ℥ ß. of oile of Violets, ℥ ij. oile of Roses, ℥ j. of *Melrosarum* ℥ j. of Salt, ℥ j. ß. commixe all together, and make a clister. After purging of the cholericke humor, you must apply medicines outwardly, which can coole and strengthen the head, whereof you shall finde store in the second Chapter. If the sicke cannot sleepe, annoint the forepart of the head with oyles of Water-

Curatio.

Zulapium.

Purgatio.

Dilutum Rhabarbari.

Bolus purgans.

Cliſter.

Localia.

Sleepe.

lillies, and oile of Poppie, to them you may for a need adde a little *Opium*, that sleepe thereby may be prouoked. Note, that boxing without scarification and frictions of the armes and legs may be well vsed in time conuenient.

CHAP. VII.

Of headach caused of fleame.

Cause. HEadach coming of fleame, is caused of all such things as ingender fleame in the head, as a cold and moist aire, meates that be cold and moist, as fishes, milke, raw herbes, fruit, idleneſſe, and sleeping vpon a full stomacke, and

Signa. such other like. The signes hereof be fulneſſe and heauineſſe of the head, whiteneſſe and moistneſſe of the face. Moreouer the sicke will easily fall asleepe, he is slow, his senses are dull, and his head aboundeth with excrements, as also the signes declared in the third chapter agree with this kind of headach. Let the sicke remaine in an aire that is hote and dry by nature, or if that cannot be had, let the aire be made such by certaine odoriferous things, as with Cinamon,

Victus ratio. Frankensence, Cloues, wood of Aloes, and such like. Let his meate that he eateth for the most part be rosted, and let him eate spices with it. For his drinke, let him vse thinne and small wine, let his exercise be meane: to be short, let him

Curatio. vse such diet as is prescribed in the third Chapter of this booke. The cure must be begun with extenuation and digestion of the flegmatick humour. Therefore you must minister such medicines as are able to extenuate, make thinne, cut and diuide humours: such be *Mel Rosarum*, *Oximel simplex* and *compositum*, and *Scilliticum*, syrupe of *Stœchades*, distilled waters of Hysope, Betonie, Marioram, Sage, and such like; minister therefore vnto him a medicine made in this sort:

Zulapium. ℞. of *Oximel Scilliticum*, ℥. j. of syrupe of *Stœchades*, ℥. ß. of distilled waters of Hysope, Parcely and Marioram, ana. ℥. j. commixe them and make a potion. Or if the vsing of syrupes & distilled waters do not like you, you may minister this

Decoctum extenuans pituitam. or such like decoction: ℞. of the roots of Fenell, Parcely and *Asparagus*, ana. ℥. j. rootes of Piony, ℥. ij. seeds of Anniſe, Fenel, *Siler montanum*, ana. ℥. iij. *Stichados*, Origan, *Serpillum*, Marioram, Calamint, Betonie, Sage, ana. M. ß. fine Cinamon, Mace, ana. ℥. j. ß. Seeth all these in sufficient quantitie of water vntill halfe be consumed, then straine it, and adde Sugar sufficient to make it sweete, clarifie it with the whites of egges, then put thereto syrupe of Hysope, & *Oximel simplex*, ana. ℥. iij. commixe them all together, and make a potion. When the humours

Purgatio. are extenuate, and made thinne and prepared to be purged, then must such medicines be ministred, as are able to purge fleame, for the which cause let the sick

Pilulæ. haue these pilles ministred vnto him: ℞. *Pilularum cochiarum* ℥. j. ß. *Pilularum è hiera composita*, ℥ j *Pil. Alephanginarum* ℥. ß. Agarick made into trochisks, ϑ. ij. *Myrobalanorum Chebulorum*, ϑ j fine Turbith, ϑ. ß. *Stichados* & Ginger, ana. gr. v. Masticke, gr. vij. seeds of Piony in number iij. *Castorei* g. iiij. with Lauender water make pilles. It is good for them that are thus affected, to be purged, not once onely, but twice or thrice, because the grosse and clammy humours will not straight follow a sudden purgation, but they must be drawne out by little

Clyster. and litle with often purging. Also clisters are good, not onely because they emptie out such things as are contained in the intestines, but also for that they pull backe such humours and vapours as do ascend to the head. For clisters therefore the decoction before prescribed is good if you take therof ℥ xij. & dissolue

therein

therein *Benedictæ laxatiuæ*, ℥.ß. *Electuarij Indi maioris*, ℥.iij. Diaphœnicon. ℥.ij. *Mel Rosarum*, ℥.j. oiles of Laurell and Rew, ana. ℥.j.ß. *Sal gemmæ*, ℥.j. commixe them together, and make a cliſter. After the whole bodie is purged, you muſt miniſter ſuch medicins as can purge the head, as be gargariſes made in this ſort: ℞. long Pepper and Nutmegs, ana. ℥.ß. ſeed of Stauiſacre and Pellitorie, ana. ℈.ij. Muſtard ſeed, Origan, ana. ℈.j. beate them to powder, and put thereof in a linnen cloth, and chue it, or with Maſticke or Hony make Trochiskes like Lupines, and let the ſicke chew one of them almoſt halfe an houre. Alſo the head may be purged by the iuyce of Marioram, *Blitum*, coleworts & ſuch like. You may alſo for this purpoſe miniſter gargariſmes made of the diſtilled waters of Hyſope, Betony, Origan, with *Hierapicra* and *Oximel compoſitũ*, or in this ſort: ℞ Pellitorie, long Pepper, ana ℥.j.ß. ſeed of Stauiſacre, ℥.ß. Marioram, Peniroyall, Hyſope, Origan, Betonie, ana. M.ß. Seeth all theſe in ſufficient quantitie of water vnto the third part, ſtraine it, and adde to the liquor *Mel Roſarum*, ℥.j.ß. *Oximel ſcilliticum*, ℥ ß. commixe all, and make a gargariſe. Alſo meditins to prouoke ſneeſing, are good in this caſe. You may make them after this ſort: ℞. Marioram, ℥.j. *Nigella*, ℥ ß. Cloues, white Pepper, Cubebs, ana. ℈.j. Nutmegs, Graines, *Caſtoreum*, *Heleborus albus*, ana. ℈.ß. beate them into very fine powder, and prouoke ſneeſing therewith. For them which are rich, you may ad Muske and Amber, ana. gr.ij. It profiteth alſo to hold hote and ſweet odours to the noſe of the patient, or a Pomander artificially made, ſuch a one as we preſcribed in the end of the third Chapter. Further, you may take *Naſalia* (as they call them) things to be put in the noſe, ſharpe at one end and great at the other like a ſteeple, after this ſort: ℞. Stauiſacre, Pellitory and white Pepper, ana ℈.ß. *Nigella*, Nutmegs, ana. ℈. ij. *Heleborus albus*, ℈. ß powder them, and with Roſin & Waxe make Naſales. After the purging of the head, you may vſe ointments, embrocations, dry quilts, and ſuch like other medicines to diſperſe the remnant of the humor remaining in the head, whereof there be examples ſufficient in the third Chapter before. You may commodiouſly miniſter inwardly, Cubebs condite, or *Diambra*, *Diamoſcha*, *Aromaticum roſaceum*, *Diacuminum*, *Dianthos*, *Theriaca*, *Mithridatum*, *Diacorum*, conſerue of Marioram, Roſemary, Betony, with ſyrupe of *Stichados*. Or miniſter theſe Lozenges which are ſpecially good: ℞. powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*, *Dianthos*, ana. ℈. j. Cubebs, Maces, of each, ℥ ß. wood of Aloes, Cloues, and Fenell ſeed, ana. ℈.ß. fine Cinamon, ℈ ij. *Stichados*, ℈. ß. with Sugar molten in the diſtilled waters of Piony flowers and Lauender, make lozenges. And thus much for the cure of headach cauſed of flegmatick humors. But if ſo be that headach be cauſed of a melancholy humour, then you muſt preſcribe ſuch diet, and vſe ſuch cure as ſhall be declared in the Chapter of melancholy, or madneſſe: and therefore it ſhould be ſuperfluous to intreate hereof in this place: repaire therefore for the cure of headach coming of melancholy, vnto the 28. Chapter of this booke following.

Gargariſe.

Gargariſme.

Sternutamentum.

Naſalia.

Localia.

Lozenges.

Of headach coming of melancholy.

CHAP. VIII.

Of headach cauſed of windineſſe.

IF headach be cauſed of windineſſe, the diet vſed before was ſuch as did ingender wind; beſides, the nature of the body, & other circumſtances were ſuch as were apt to ingender winde. The ſignes be theſe, if there be felt diſtention and

Cauſa.

Signa.

stretching in the head without heauinesse and beating, and if there be a sound & noyse in the eares, then doth it betoken windinesse in the head. The diet of the patient, must altogether be such as doth not ingender windinesse. For the cure, if the windinesse be not onely bred in the head, but doth ascend from some part beneath, first of all you must vse such medicines as do repell and driue backe: such be vineger, Pomegranate rinds and flowers, Wormewood, Melilot, Mints, Plantaine, Walwort, *Bursa pastoris*, Nutmegs, Purslaine, Housleeke, Lawrell leaues, and such like: which being moderately vsed a while, you must then adde to those repulsiue things, some such medicines as do mitigate, concoct, and digest, as be Fenugreeke, Linseed, Cammomil, yolkes of egs, Saffron, Hens grease Goose grease, &c. Last of all adde discussiue medicines, as oile of Dil and Rew, Barley meale, Lupines, Lilly roots, Nigella, &c. It is good therefore first of all to empty the belly with a strong clister, but that must be made of a decoction that doth dissolue windines, by seething in water Annise seeds & caraway seeds, Fenel seed, Comin, dry Figs, bran, and such like: herein you must dissolue *Benedicta laxatiua* ℥. iiij. or *Electuarium Nidum* in like quantity, or *Diaphœnicon*. ℥. iiij. or *Diacatholicon*, or *Hierapicra*, ℥. vij. Such kind of clisters do not onely purge the intestines, and the parts about the liuer, but do also pull backe such things as ascend to the head. Afterward you must strengthen the affected member, that it do ingender wind no more, whether it be the stomacke, the liuer, the spleene, the intestines, or any other member: which being done, if heate abound in the head together with the windinesse, then apply oyle of Roses, which is both repulsiue, digestiue and discussiue, and adde to it vineger, which is both repulsiue and discussiue also, and doth extenuate besides. Also Rose water or iuyce of Purslaine, Knotgrasse or Nightshade may be vsed and applyed with a litle vineger. If there be cold in the head with the windinesse, then vse oyle of Cammomill or Dill, mixed with a litle vineger, or if the griefe increase, apply the iuyce of Rew with vineger and oyle mixed together, or apply the iuyce of the roote of flower-de-luce with vineger: or iuyce of Lawrell berries and Rew mixed with vineger, is good to be applyed. Likewise bitter Almonds beaten with vineger and oyle, and applyed to the forehead in a linnen cloth, are very good when the griefe doth first begin to increase. And if you had rather vse dry quilts, you may make them at the first of *Milium*, Roses, Willow leaues, Knotgrasse, Nightshade and Purslaine, and so apply them to the forehead, & forepart of the head. Afterward you may adde to the aforesaid Marioram, *Serpillum*, Hisope, Rew, tender leaues of Lawrell, *Cyperus*, and such like. It is good also to vse odours and smels, as *Castoreum*, Muske, Amber, and such like. To prouoke sneesing, and to minister inwardly to the sick is good either *Diacuminum* or *Dianisum*, ℥. j. or as much Triacle or *Mithridatum* profiteth. But if the windines be caused through imbecility of some parts of the head it selfe, then you shall not need to vse repulsiue medicines, but rather concoctiue and discussiue medicines, such as are before declared. As for inward medicines, they auaile or profit litle in this case.

Victus ratio.

Cura.

Clyster.

Localia.

CHAP. IX.

Of headach caused of the stomacke.

HItherto we haue declared the causes, signes and cures of headach caused principally in it selfe; now it remaineth that we intreate of paine in the head which

which cometh by conſent. And firſt of that headach which cometh through euill affection of the ſtomacke. And that is cauſed moſt commonly when ſome ſharpe humour aboundeth in the ſtomacke, eſpecially in the mouth of it, from whence the corrupt vapours ariſing do aſcend to the head. It may be knowne by the gnawing and biting paine that they feele which haue that headach, and by the deſire to vomit that the patient hath: eſpecially if the mouth of the ſtomacke be affected. Moreouer in this kind of headach, if the ſicke faſt and ſuffer hunger long, the paine is more vehement, for through long abſtinence the malice of the humour increaſeth. You muſt cure thoſe that are thus grieued, not by applying remedies to the head, but to the humours in the ſtomacke, which raiſe vp vapours to trouble the head. Therefore you muſt with ſpeed purge the noyſome humours that are in the mouth of the ſtomacke. They may be purged out by drinking of warme water, if ſo be the patient can eaſily vomit: if not, he muſt thruſt his finger or a feather down his throate, & ſo prouoke the ſtomacke to vomit. Note that yellow or pale choler, becauſe of his naturall lightneſſe, doth readily aſcend to the mouth of the ſtomacke: but the humours that be flegmaticke, or ſoure, or ſalt, do rather remaine in the middeſt of the ſtomacke, then in the mouth of it. It is beſt when ſuch humours are in the bottome of the ſtomacke, for then they will eaſily auoid the ſtomacke, and paſſe into the guts. It is worſt of all when noyſome humours do cleaue ſo faſt to the filmes and tunicles of the ſtomacke, and do ſo furre them, that they can ſcarcely be ſcoured out. Therefore if any humour do furre the tunicles of the ſtomacke, miniſter *Hierapicra*, which is a ſoueraigne medicine therefore. And after purging, let the patient haue good meates, eaſie of digeſtion, and wholſome for the ſtomack. And for as much as lacke of good digeſtion, and weakneſſe of the mouth of the ſtomacke, be the greateſt cauſes of increaſe of noyſome humours in the ſtomacke, it muſt be prouided that good digeſtion be procured, and that the mouth of the ſtomacke may be ſtrengthened by ſuch medicines as be aſtrictiue, and haue vertue to ſtrengthen, whereof you ſhall finde plentie hereafter in the third booke, and therefore it were ſuperfluous to recite them here. As we haue in this Chapter ſpoken of headach cauſed of the ſtomacke, and referred the cure to the third booke, ſo vnderſtand likewiſe if headach be cauſed of the diſeaſe of the liuer or ſpleene, or any other member: for the affects of thoſe members being cured, the headach ceaſſeth.

Cauſæ. *Signa.* *Curatio.* *Hierapicra.* *Note.*

CHAP. X.

Of headach cauſed by drunkenneſſe.

THe cauſes and ſignes of drunkenneſſe are euident enough, chiefly hote wines and ſtrong drinks are cauſes thereof, for that they fill the braine with vapours, and that ſo much the more (as *Galen* ſaid) if the braine be hote by nature: ſometime alſo hote humours aſcending to the head, do cauſe drunkenneſſe. The cure of drunkenneſſe generally conſiſteth in two points: that is, in euacuation and refrigeration. Therfore if the wine be yet vndigeſt, & do flow in the ſtomacke, cauſe him that hath the headach to vomit, by drinking of hote water. But and if the headach do remaine after digeſtion, you muſt vſe medicines that do refrigerate, and driue backe vapours which aſcend to the

Cauſæ. *Curatio.* *Warme water and a litle ſyr. Acetoſe commixed, cauſeth vomit.*

head: as is oyle of Roſes alone, or mixed with vineger, or with iuyce of Iuie, or Coleworts. Alſo the leaues of Coleworts ſteeped in warme water, and bound about the head, do naturally reſiſt drunkenneſſe. Moreouer the broth of Coleworts being eaten, is good for that purpoſe. To preſerue one from drunkennes (as *Aetius* ſaith) let him eate v. or vij. bitter Almonds faſting, or let him drinke Wormwood wine firſt of all. But to take away drunkenneſſe that is preſent giue the decoction of Centory the leſſe to drinke, or Harts horne, or the ſeed of Veruaine boyled in water. You muſt haue a ſpeciall regard, and procure that the patient do ſleepe and reſt; which being done all day, at night bathe him in a bath of ſweet water, & when thou haſt waſhed him, let him eate meats of good iuyce, but not ouer-hote. Let therefore his food be Priſan broth, ſouppings made of *Alica*, bread dipped in water, reare eggs, and ſuch like. For pot herbs Lettuce is of good iuyce and cooleth, and Coleworts drieth vp vapours. For drinke, let him vſe water onely, if he hath bene accuſtomed thereto, and can wel beare it, otherwiſe giue him ſmall drinke, or a little ſmall white wine. After his meate, giue him of a Pomgranate, or a Peare, or a Quince, or Raiſins. To conclude, let all his diet be meats of good iuyce, pleaſant to the ſtomacke, and that driue away vapours. Let him abſtaine from Dates, for their propertie is to cauſe headach. And if it chance that of the vapours and humours aſcending to the head, there remaine part of them impact and ſtuffed in the thin pores, and ſo do cauſe headach after two or three dayes, then leaue oyle of Roſes, and vſe firſt in ſteed of it, oyle of Cammomill moderatly warme. Afterward, apply oyle of *Ireos*. After that, if need require, you may apply things that heate more, commixing with the oyle of *Ireos*, oyle of Nard, or *oleum coſtinum*, or other oyles and oyntments of that ſort.

Præſeruatio.

Victus ratio.

Dates.

Irium.

Nardinum.

CHAP. XI.

Of headach cauſed by feauers.

IF headach do moleſt thoſe that haue a Feauer, you muſt diligently examine and conſider, whether the ſame began at the firſt beginning of the feauer, or whether it ſprong the feauer increaſing: for if the headach began not with the firſt fit of the feauer, but afterward while the feauer increaſed, and came nigh to the Criſis, then ſeeke not to remedie it, for it portendeth and foretelleth that vomit or a decretorie fluxe of bloud at the noſe will follow ſhortly, as *Hippocrates* declareth in his booke of Predictions, and *Galen* in his third booke *de Criſibus*, and in his firſt booke *ad Glauconem, cap. vltimo*. If the headach began at the firſt with the feauer, it cometh of vapours or humours diſperſed abroad through the greatneſſe of the feauer, and as it were boiling hot eleuate it to the head, and partly alſo through weakneſſe of the braine. Therefore if the paine do come of abundance of humours, you muſt let him bloud after the firſt or ſecond fit (if nothing prohibit it) eſpecially in luſtie bodies, and in ſuch as abound with bloud. Alſo you muſt draw the humours a contrary way, & pull them back by ſharpe cliſters, ſuch as ſhall be preſcribed in the Chapter of *Apoplexia*, and by often binding and much frication in the neather parts. Moreouer you may ſet cupping glaſſes to the hinder part of the head, or to the necke You muſt apply to the head irrigations and ointments, that haue vertue to repell and driue backe

Cauſe.

Cura.

backe from it, and afterward you must vse discussiue medicines: last of all, such things as do strengthen the braine. To repell and driue backe, vse oyle of Roses, and other such like as are rehearsed before in the 2. Chapter. Vse them in Sommer time, and in hote complexions, cold and mixed with a little vineger; but in winter season, and in cold complexions, apply them bloud warme. If the feuer be vehement, and ouermuch watching do trouble the sicke, vse irrigations made of Poppie heads, Housleeke, and such like medicines as haue vertue to coole and prouoke sleep, in this sort: ℞. flowers of Violets, Waterlillies, and Roses, ana M. j. hulled barley, ℥. j. heads of Poppie, ℥. ß. Housleeke, M ß. seeth all these in sufficient quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed, and make an Embrocation. Or if the paine continue vehement, take greene leaues of *Embrocha.* Henbane or Poppie, with oyle of Roses, a little vineger and crummes of bread; commixe them, and apply them to the forepart of the head, and to the forehead. When the braine is sufficiently cooled, then apply those things which *Nota.* can heate the head againe, and so auoid and disperse the humors that remaine. And therefore you may vse oyles of Cammomill, Dill, or *Ireos*, or decoctions of Cammomill, or *Althæa*, or such like. And if the humours be grosse & tough, you may boile with the aforesaid things *Serpillum*, Peniroyall, Calamint, Mints, or such like. Last of all the head must be strengthened by oile of Roses, and such like, that is, Betony, Cammomill, Melilot, &c. The rest of the cure of headach caused through the vehemencie of the feuer, is to be sought out in the treatise of Feauers.

CHAP. XII.

Of inueterate headach.

Cephalæa both in Greeke and Latine is the name of headach which is exceeding painfull, continuing long, and hard to ceasse, which vpon light occasions hath very sharpe and great fits, so that the patient can neither abide *Signa.* noise, nor loud speech, nor cleare light, nor drinking of wine, nor sauours that fill the braine, nor mouing, but desireth for the greatnesse of the paine to sit or lye quiet in the darke, supposing that his head were stroken with a hammer. Also some of them do feele those things that are about their head, as though they were brused or racked. In many the paine proceedeth vnto the rootes of the eyes. This disease sometime doth continue painfull alwayes, sometime it hath fits and intermissions, either ordinate or inordinate. For in some there is intermission in the fits, as in the falling sickneesse, so that for a time they seeme to be perfectly whole. This disease doth vexe women more then men, because of their long haire. In some of them the filmes that couer the braine are pained: but in some, onely the filme that couereth the scull is grieued. It is caused *Cause.* of abundance of bloud and other humours, or by the sharpnesse of humours or vapours contained within or without the scull, and inflaming the head, or it is caused through weaknesse of the head. The paine that inuadeth the sicke with *Signa.* grauity and heauinesse, declareth plenitude and abundance of humours: if it come with pricking, gnawing and shooting, it betokeneth sharpnes of humors or vapours: if it beate like the pulses, it betokeneth inflammation: if there be felt distension and bolning in the head without heauinesse or beating, it declareth

windines. But if there be beating with it, there is inflāmation in the filmes of the head: and if there be heauineſſe with the diſtenſion, then it declareth abundance of humours within the filmes. And if the paine be felt ſuperficially, as it were outward, then it betokeneth that the filme which couereth the ſcull is grieued. *Note.* But if it be felt deepe within, the filmes of the braine are vexed. Note that thoſe that haue paine within the ſcull, they feele griefe at the rootes of their eyes, becauſe that the tunicles of the eyes haue their beginning of the filmes of the braine. And if ſo be that a putrified humour in the head do waxe hotter and hotter, then there is a feuer ioyned to the headach. They alſo are vexed with a feuer which haue headach cauſed by inflammation. *Victus ratio.* As for diet to be vſed in this griefe, you may eaſily preſcribe it out of the former Chapters, according to the diuerſitie of the cauſes thereof: and therefore I omit it here willingly, leſt I ſhould vſe a fond repetition of one thing often. *Curatio.* The cure doth differ according to the diuerſity of the cauſe. For if you find abundance of humours or vapours to be the cauſe, if it be ingendred of plenitude of the whole body, you muſt begin with euacuation of the whole body. *Venæ ſectio.* And therefore you muſt let him bloud on the *Cephalica* on the ſame ſide, if his ſtrength will ſuffer it, and *Reuulſio.* no other thing let it. But if the head doth receiue the humours and vapours that do aſcend, for that it is weake, then you muſt pull backe the matter vnto the whole body, and ſo remedie the part affected. Therefore you muſt vſe very ſharpe cliſters, and bindings of the armes and legges, and many frictions of the neather parts: and ſomtime alſo in this caſe you may let bloud in the arme. And if after that bloud do ſeeme ſtill to abound, you may open a veine in the noſthrils, and draw bloud from thence, as much as ſhall be requiſite. Shortly after you muſt purge the body with *Hierapicra*, or other things that are preſcribed in the former Chapters. After purging of the whole bodie, you may ſafely come to purging of the head, and in the end vſe medicines to ſtrengthen it. The head is to be purged with Gargariſmes, and with medicines put into the noſe, as iuyce of Leekes or of *Cyclaminus*, or ſuch like, which be rehearſed before in the ſeuenth Chapter. To the head it ſelfe you muſt firſt apply things *Localia.* that do repell and driue backe: ſuch be, oyle made of vnripe Oliues, and oyle of Roſes alone, or applyed with vineger, alſo oyle made of Poppy heads and of Iuie berries, and of greene Mints, and ſuch like, whereof we haue ſpoken before. *Note.* But note, if the humours that abound in the head be cold and crude, then apply the former medicines warme; but if the humours abounding be hote and cholericke, then apply thoſe medicines cold. Afterward you muſt apply thoſe medicines that do diſcuſſe and diſperſe humours, as be oyles of Cammomill and Dill, and ſuch like before rehearſed; but if the humors abounding be thicke and tough, boyle *Serpillum*, or Peniroyall, or Calamint, or Mints in oyle, and thou ſhalt extenuate them by applying thereof. Beſides, theſe things do ſtrengthen the part affected, and therefore they are to be vſed vntill the cure be finiſhed. *Verbenacæ rectæ.* Aboue all other things Veruaine doth diſperſe humours, and mightily corroborate the head, eſpecially being greene. Alſo being drie, and boyled in Ale, rootes and all together, with *Serpillum*, it doth the like, if the head be annointed therewith. Moreouer if you boile Veruaine alone in oyle, & do ſprinkle the head therewith, it helpeth all paine of the head of long continuance, if it were

were caused of cold, and grosse and viscous humours, as *Galen* witnesseth, *lib. 2. de Compos. medicam. secundum locos.* Also for the same it profiteth much to vse oyle, wherein Sowes, called in Latine *Millipedæ*, be boyled. And thus much of the cure of *Cephalæa* coming of plenitude. As for the cure thereof coming of other causes, you may gather it out of the former Chapter.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Migrime.

Hemicrania is a painfull euill remaining in one halfe of the head, either on the right halfe or on the left, and is distinguished by the seame that runneth along in the scull, from the middle forehead to the hinder part of the head: this griefe in English is called the Migrime. This paine cometh often by fits, and in some the griefe is felt without the skull, in some within deepe in the braine, and in some other nigh to the temples in the muscles there. This paine is caused by ascending and flowing of many vapours or humours either hote or cold, either by the veines, or by the arteries, or by both. Sometime they onely proceed from the part contained in the skull, that is, from the braine and his filmes, which thrust out their excrements and superfluities from them, and sometime from the parts of the bodie beneath the head, which send vp corrupt vapours and humours from themselues to the braine. The signes whereby you should know whether vapours or humours do abound, and whether they be hote or cold, are to be gathered out of the former Chapters. As also to know in what part of the head the griefe is, whether within the skull or without, reade the former Chap. of *Cephalæa*. Onely this I adde here, that if in this disease the filme that coureth the skul be affected, then is their paine so vehement, that they cannot suffer to be touched with ones hand: so that it seemeth the skin it selfe is affected in this euill. As for their diet what they should vse, & what they should eschue, may readily be gathered and prescribed out of the former Chapters, according to the diuersity of causes: but specially let the patient refraine from such things as do send abundance of sharpe vapours vp to the head, as be Garlicke, Onions, Mustard, Radish roots, and such like. The cure is diuerse according to the diuersity of causes. And therefore when you will cure the Migrime, consider diligently first whether the patient needeth bloudletting or purging. For if the griefe come through plenitude and abundance of bloud & humours, then cut the *Cephalica* in the arme on the same side that the griefe is, but if the Migrime be caused of abundance of one humour, then purge that humour by conuenient medicines, which are prescribed in the former Chapters. The whole body being purged, you may come to locall and outward medicines, and first cause the patient, either with his owne fingers, or with a linnen cloth, to rubbe and chafe the halfe of his forehead which is grieued, and specially about the muscles of his temples, vntill it be red and hote; and this must be done before the fit of paine cometh. After the fit (as *Galen* teacheth in the end of his second booke *De Compos. medic. secundum locos*) you must apply medicines which of the old Physitions were called *Hemicrania*, for that they were vsed for the Migrime: noting this alwayes, that if with the paine there were much heate felt, then you ought to apply such things as would somewhat coole. But

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Localia.

if there were no euident heate felt, then vse those things that are very hote. But you must commixe with either of these somewhat that is restrictiue, and hath vertue to corroborate and strengthen. This ointment following is a very good remedy in a cold affect, ℞. of oiles of Dill and *Ireos*, ana. ℥ ß. of white Pepper, and *Serpillum*, ana. ℈ j. ß. of *Castoreum*, ℈ j. of *Euphorbium*, ℈ ß of Waxe, q. ß. & make an ointment to be applyed vpon the halfe of the forehead, and the muscle of the temples. Also in this case it profiteth much to poure this oile following into the eare. ℞ sweet oyle Oliue, ℥ j. *Euphorbium*, ℈ j commixe them, and drop one drop into the eare warme. You may put in more *Euphorbium* or lesse according as the body is quicke or dull in sense: but beware you vse not this medicine in those that haue the Migrime engendred of hote vapours or humours. *Ætius* saith, that *Euphorbium* dissolued in vineger, and applyed to the left side of the head, if the right side be grieued, or contrariwise on the right side when the paine is on the left side, doth of a certaine hid propertie helpe the Migrime. The same Author also saith, that earth wormes beaten to powder, and applyed to the griefe, as also the flesh of Snailes bruised and applyed, doth profit much. The kernels of Peaches bruised and applied vpon the griefe (as report hath bene) doth profit much. *Marcellus* saith, that the dung of a Goate stamped and commixed with vineger squilliticke, if the forehead and temples be annointed therewith, it ceasseth the paine of the Migrime for euer. Also his counsell is, if there be sudden paine of the Migrime, take Frankensence, Mirrhe, and an egge; beate them together, and apply that to the forehead and temples. If the Migrime be caused of hote humours or vapours, then vse those remedies which were prescribed before in the cure of headach coming of heate or cholericke humours. Here I thinke it requisite to prescribe certaine Pils, good to be vsed against inueterate headach and the Migrime. First if choler abound, ℞. powder of *Hiera simplex Galeni*, ℥. ij. *pilularum Arabicarũ*, ℥. iij. trochiskes of *Myrabolanes citrini*, ℥ j. ß Reubarbe, ℥ j. Spikenard, ℈ j. commixe them with syrupe of Violets, and reserue the composition. When need requireth minister ℥ j or ℈ iiij. fiue or sixe houres after supper, and let the patient sleepe vpon it. This you may do once in ten dayes, or once in fifteene dayes at all times (Sommer excepted.) But if fleame abound make your Pils thus. ℞. of Agaricke trochiscate. ℥ iiij. *pilulæ Arabicæ*, and *Hiera simplex Gal.* ana. ℥ j ß floures of *Stœchados*, and trochiskes of *Myrabolanes Chebulorum*, ana. ℥ j. with syrupe of *Stœchados*, and *Oximel*; commixe them, and when occasion serueth, minister ℥ j. or ℈ iiij. at each time in forme aforesaid. But if melancholy be cause of the Migrime, ℞. of the aforesaid *Pilulæ Arabicæ*, ℥ ij. of powder of Sene and *Epithimum*, ana. ℥ ij. ß. of *Hiera simplex Gal.* ℥ j. ß. of trochiskes of *Myrabolanes Indorum*, ℈ iij. with syrupe of Fumitory and Balme water make Pils and when need requireth, minister them in forme afore said.

Vnguentum.

Oleum.

Note.

Pilulæ.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Vertigo and swimming in the head.

THat which the Latins call *Vertigo*, is a disease wherein the patient doth imagine that his head is turned round about. There is another disease somewhat like vnto this, which in Latine is called, *Tenebricosa Vertigo*, & that is when the

the patient doth thinke that all that he seeth turneth about, and suddenly with it, his sight faileth him, he supposing that he is compassed about with mist and darknes. It is commonly of the Physitions called *Scotoma*. *Fuchsius* doth thinke that they erre greatly that make a difference betweene the former kinds, but it may be confirmed out of good authors, *Hippocrates*, *Galen* and others. Both the aforesaid kinds be engendred after one sort, and that is through the inordinate moving of windy vapours and spirits contained in certaine parts of the braine. This disease is caused either of the braine it selfe being distempered and euill affected, or of the mouth of the stomacke offending the braine. The braine it selfe is euill affected, when a grosse and tough humour is contained in it, from whence a vaporous and windy spirit, being resolued by weake heate, is moued inordinately about in the braine. The mouth of the stomack doth affect the braine, when through corrupt humours being gathered abundantly in it, vapours and windy exhalations are carried vp to the braine, and so turne about the animall spirits contained in it. Those that are troubled with this disease, a darknes and mist appeareth before their eyes vpon euery light occasion, specially if they turne about. For it chanceth to them by turning once about, as it doth to other when they turne often, and therefore the patient many times fals downe. Also it doth astonie him, if he see another man, or a wheele, or any such thing turne about. Also if he see whirlepoles in the water turne about: for the visuall spirits beholding a wheele that turneth about, or any such like things, do also turne about in like sort, and so the moving of the humour and the spirits are troubled, vnequall, and inordinate. When this disease doth proceed of the braine being euill affected, then there proceedeth sound of the eares, vehement paine and heauinesse in the head. Also the smelling and the other senses proceeding from the head are hurt. Their fit is then chiefly, when the Sunne doth heate them, or when their head is hote by some other meanes, and so the humours being dissolued, do turne about in the braine. When the disease proceedeth from the mouth of the stomacke, then they feele before it, a gnawing in the stomacke, as it were the heartburne, and a disposition to vomit. This disease may be discerned from the falling sickenesse, for that this doth neither take away the senses from the patient, nor causeth the crampe and writhing of the members in the fit. This disease is not to be lightly esteemed, for the *Vertigo* (as *Galen* saith) is nigh to the falling sickenesse and the Apoplexie, and therefore it would be well looked to. For the *Vertigo* and *Scotoma* will quickly be changed into pernitious diseases, for that they are very nigh to them, specially to the falling sickenesse and the Apoplexie. And if those things that the patient doth imagine to see before his eyes, appeare bloudy and reddish, he is apt to fal into madnesse, but those that seeme to see purple colours, are disposed to the falling sickenesse. The *Scotoma* or darke *Vertigo* becometh most vehement in Winter, or in the beginning of the Spring. Besides in many it is a signe that the falling sickenesse will follow: and many do vse to call it a little Epilepsie. As concerning diet, let the patient remaine in an aire that is temperate, pure, bright, and cleare; and let him eschue grosse and cloudy aire. Let him eschue windes, specially South windes; let him also auoid the beames of the Sunne and the Moone: as also let him not behold things that moue swiftly,

Causa.

Signa.

Prognostica.

Victus ratio.

as running waters or things that turne about, as wheels, & such like; or to looke into deepe pits is euill for him. Let him eate meates of good iuyce, and of easie digestion, and such as engender no windines, as Partrich, Capon, Phesant, Chicken, veale, scaly fishes, and such like, that be easie of digestion. And let him vse to eate but moderately of them: for satiety, as also long fasting, is not good for him. He must eschue all things that cause vapours to ascend into the head, as Onions, Garlicke, Leekes, and such like. And therefore if he drinke wine, let it not be very old: small white wine may be permitted him. After meate it is good for him to vse some restrictiue thing to stop the vapours that they ascend not to the head, and that specially if the stomacke be cause of this disease. Let his exercise be moderate, let him eschue sleepe of the day, neither let him sleepe within two houres after meate. Let not the place be too hote where he sleepeth, and let him not keepe his head too hote. In his exercises, let him not stirre his head much: and therefore it is good for him to vse frictions often, specially in the morning before he riseth: begin at the vpper parts, and end with the nether. He must refraine from perturbations and affections of the mind, specially from anger, feare, and sadnesse, as also from loud crying, and singing. Carnall copulation is not good for him. If he hath not a stoole once in a day, you must helpe nature either by clister or suppositary. For the cure, if the fit be present, you must reuiue the patient againe with sweet and odoriferous smels, and with frictions and such like. At which time also if need be, you must vse a suppositary or a clister. Afterward if the patient be strong, and no other impediment present, let him bloud on the *Cephalica* veine, whether it be the beginning of the disease or otherwise. But take heed that you draw not much bloud at once, for the patient will quickly fall through euery light occasion. Therefore you must draw away the bloud at sundry times, vntill you haue sufficient. But if any thing do hinder you from bloudletting, first you must purge him with a sharpe clister, whereof you shall haue example afterward in the chap. of Apoplexy. Afterward minister a purgation according as the humour abounding doth require. But forget not first to vse a preparatiue. When the whole body is sufficiently purged, you must vse locall things to the head, and first apply cupping glasses to the hinder part of the head with scarification. Afterward vse to minister gargarismes & sternutations to draw reume from the head. Poure into the nose iuyce of Chickweed, Beets or *Cyclaminus*. Also *Nitrum* beaten with *Nigella* and mixed with old oile, purgeth well by the nosthrils. Also odors made of the decoction of Maricram, Hysope, and flowers of *Stœchados*, a litle *Castoreũ*, Muske, and vineger being added, is good. After that let the patient enter into a bath, specially a naturall bath that is of Alume, and if his head be ouer hote in the bath, you must coole it often with oyle of Roses and vineger applied in clothes to it, specially on the forepart of the head, and about the forehead and the temples. And if the disease do cease by these remedies, then vse no other. But if it continue still, you must cut the arteries that be nigh the temples aboue the eares, specially if the disease come of hote vapours ascending to the braine by the arteries. And this is not onely the precept of *Galen*, but also of *Ætius* and *Paulus Ægineta*. How the arteries should be cut, you shall learne of the said *Ægineta* in his 6. booke and 4. Chapter. Albeit *Galen* affirmeth that some

Curatio.

Vene sectio.

Localia.

some haue not bene helped by cutting of the arteries, partly for that the hote and vaporous spirits do sometime ascend by deeper arteries into the braine, & partly for that a windy spirit may be engendred by an inequall distemper of the braine. And therefore if the disease be caused by any of these meanes before rehearsed, the patient shall feele small ease or none by cutting of the arteries: and therefore be diligent to enquire of the aforesaid causes before you cut the arteries. It profiteth much to apply this cautery behind the eares, ℞. of Canthari- *Cauterium.*
des, their heads, wings and legs being cast away. ℥ j. sharpe leauen, ℥ ß. with vineger and *Aqua vitæ*, commixe them and apply them. If the *Vertigo* be caused by the consent of the stomacke, that is, if humours contained in the mouth of the stomacke do send vp vapours to the braine, and so cause the *Vertigo*, it must be cured by vomit, which you shall prouoke in this sort. ℞. of Dill a handfull, seed of Radish and Rapes, ana. ℥ ij. of radish roots, ℥ ß. boile them in sufficient quantitie of water vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and put thereto *Oximel Scilliticum*, ℥ j. ß. commixe them and make a potion, and minister it bloud warme after meate immedialy: and if this suffice not, it is good to purge him with *Hierapicra Galeni*, or with pils that be good for the stomacke, called *stomachicæ* for that cause, or with the decoction of Myrobalanes citrine, or *Chebuli*, or with Manna, or sirupe of Roses solutiue, according to the diuersity of the humour abounding. Let the patient vse commonly after meate to eate some restrictiue thing that will close the mouth of the stomacke, and hinder the ascending of vapours vp to the head, as is *Diacotoneon sine speciebus*, and Quinces, or restrictiue Peares, or such like. *Marcellus* saith, the iuyce of blacke Beets annointed vpon the temples helpeth the *Vertigo*. And if Sothernwood be boyled in wine, or in *Oximel*, and drunke warme, it is a most effectuall remedie to cure it perfectly. *Cure of the Vertigo that cometh of the stomacke.* *Vomitus.*

CHAP. XV.

Of the Frensie.

PHrenitis in Greeke and in Latine, is a disease wherein the mind is hurt, and doth onely differ from madnesse, which is called in Greeke and Latine *Melancholia*, or *Mania*, for that a feauer is ioyned with the Frensie, and therefore the Frensie may be called a continuall madnesse and fury ioyned with a sharpe feauer. *Galen* saith that the Frensie is an inflammation of the braine, or of the filmes thereof. *Ætius* saith that it is an inflammation of the filmes of the braine with an acute feauer, causing raging and vexation of the mind. There be three kinds of Frensies (as *Galen* doth witnesse in his fourth booke *de locis affectis, cap.* 40.) according to the internall senses, which be three in number, that is, imagination, cogitation, and memory, which may seuerally be hurt. Two of those kinds be simple, and the third is compounded of those two. For some be frenticke which can iudge rightly of those things that they see, as touching common sense and imagination, and yet in cogitation and fantasie they erre from naturall iudgement. Some other being frenticke, are not deceiued in cogitation and reason, but onely in imagination they erre. There be other some frenticke, which do erre both in sense and cogitation, that is, both in imagination and reason, and do therewith also lose their memorie. The Frensie is caused either of abundance of bloud, or of choler, occupying the braine or the *Three kinds of frensies.* *Cause.*

filmes thereof. And if the choler whereof the diſeaſe engendreth be burnt, then the Frenſie is moſt vehement, and more pernitious then any other. Thoſe that be frenticke haue a continuall feuer, and be madde, for the moſt part they cannot ſleepe. Sometime they haue troubleſome ſleepes, ſo that they riſe vp, and leape, and cry out furiouſly: they babble words without order or ſenſe; being aſked a queſtion, they anſwer not directly, or at the leaſt raſhly, and that with loud voice, eſpecially if you ſpeake gently to them. Their eyes be bloudſhotten and bleated, they rub them often, ſometime they are dry, and ſometime full of ſharp teares. Their tongue is rough, and bloud will often drop out of their noſe. Moreouer they pull motes and flockes from the bedding and clothes about them. Their pulſes be ſmall & weake, and ſomewhat hard and ſinewy: they fetch their breath but ſeldome. Note that they which haue the Frenſy cauſed of bloud, do laugh in their madneſſe. But thoſe that be frenticke through choler, do rage furiouſly, ſo that they cannot be ruled without bands, and ſuch do vſe to forget all things that they do or ſay, ſo that ſome of them, when they require the chamber pot, do forthwith forget to make vrine, or when they haue done it, they remember not to reſtore the veſſell againe. As touching the prognoſtication of this diſeaſe, *Galen* and all other learned Phyſitions do confeſſe that it is moſt ſharpe and moſt perillous, and indeed vncurable and deadly, for the moſt part. *Hippocrate* ſaith in his 72. Aphoriſme of his fourth booke, that vrine white and cleare in thoſe that do raue, is a very euill and deadly token. Concerning diet let the ſicke be vſed in this ſort. If it be Winter, let him lye in a warme place, if it be Sommer, let his lodging be in a coole place; let the aire & light be moderate, and let there not be diuerſe pictures in the place. And for that ſome be troubled with the light, and ſome with darkneſſe, it is beſt to try them in both, and to lay him in the light which is afraid of darkneſſe, and contrarily he that is offended at the light, let him be in a darke place. But if the ſicke perſon do finde no difference in the places, then, if he be ſtrong, let him haue light; if weake, keepe him in a darke place. Let his deareſt friends come to him, and let them ſometime ſpeake gently and ſoftly vnto him, and ſometime rebuke him ſharply. Let his meate at the firſt be Ptiſan broth, and husked Barley boiled, or the crumme of bread often dipped in *aqua muſa*, that is, water and Hony ſodden together, or in hony of Roſes. Boile in his broths Eudiue, Succory, Lettuce, Mallowes, and ſuch like, which haue vertue to coole and moiſten. When the diſeaſe decreaſeth, you may giue him ſcaly fiſhes, ſuch as liue in grauelly riuers. If he be very hote within, you may giue him Pomegranates & Cherries. Let his drinke be water wherein a litle Cinamon or barley hath bene boiled, you may commixe with it ſirupe of Violets, or of Roſes, or of water Lillies. But beware you giue them not too much at once, nor oftentimes, but ſeldome, and litle at once. When ſignes of concoction appeare in the vrine, and the vehemency of the feuer is ſlaked, if then the ſicke do lacke ſtrength, you may giue him ſmall ale. Moreouer let the ſicke be kept quiet without mouing as much as is poſſible; if he be rich let his ſeruants hold him, if poore bind him; for inordinate mouing diminiſheth ſtrength. Alſo a bath of ſweet water is good for him, if the body be drie and rimpled, but he muſt vſe it bloud warme: for ſo it cooleth and moiſteneth, and by that meanes it cureth the drineſſe and ouermuch watching;

Signs.

Prognoſtica.

Victus ratio.

watching,but take heed you vse no bathing before the body be purged. Moreouer, perturbations of the minde do hurt frentick persons exceedingly, and therefore you must suffer them to vse nothing that will make them sad, or engender choler. For the cure, if strength of the patient will suffer, let him bleed forthwith, for there is none so present a helpe. You must cut the vttermost veine of the arme called *Cephalica*, and if that appeare not, take the middle veine, and draw out as much bloud as strength will suffer. But take heede you let him not bleed vntill he swound,as many rashly do;for it is better to take lesse then you should do,the body being much weakned by vehement motion. You must take good heed, lest the sicke do priuily take away the band off his arme, to loose it. Afterward also you may strike the veine in the midst of the forehead.But if age or strength do forbid bloudletting,then vse cupping with scarification, behind in the necke or on the backe bone, which be profitable, for that they draw backe the humours that flow to the braine. For that purpose also clisters are specially to be vsed made in this sort ℞. Mallow leaues, Violet leaues,Endiue,and Lettuce,ana.M.j.of Barly decorticate,℥ j. Sebesten,number 11.seeds of Gourds, Melons, and Cucumbers, ana. ℥.iij. seeth all these in sufficient quantitie of water vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it and take of the decoction, ℥.xij. of *Cassia fistula* newly drawne, ℥.j. ß. of *mel Rosarum*,℥.j.oile of Violets,℥.iij.of Salt, ℥.j ß. commixe them all & make a clister. If you will haue it purge more strongly,put to it of *Hierapicra*, or *Electuarium de succo Rosarum* ℥ ß. Binding of the extreme parts of the body profits much to diuert the humors from the head. Also *Mathiolus* doth greatly cõmend *Stubium* with the conserues of Roses, and I my selfe haue proued it in this order to be most excellent,as followeth ℞.g 12 made in very fine powder,and put into claret wine,℥ iiij.& let it stand houres 30 and euery 6.or 7.houre shake it:and at the 30.houres end, powre it from the powder, & let him drink it with a litle sugar. This doth mightily purge the superfluous humors from the head,as also to rub the feet with salt and vineger and such like.You must sprinkle the head with oile of Roses, or vineger of Roses being bloud warme. For the braine or his filmes being inflamed,cannot safely abide actuall cold nor vehement heat. For the same purpose also you may vse iuyce of Nightshade, & of Plantaine,or the distilled waters of them,or such like herbs If the euil be very vehement,moisten his face continually with oile of water wherin the tops of Poppy haue bene sodden. You may also vse odours to his nose of Roses,Violets,water Lillies,and such like. Also annoint his nosthrils within,& his forehead with the iuyce of the foresaid herbes: for you must endeuour to astony and dull the braine (which burneth extremely)by cooling it. If the sick watch ouermuch, then you must apply such things as prouoke sleepe, as this ointment following or such like ℞. *Vaguenti populeon* ℥ ij.oyle of Violets,℥.iij seed of Henbane, and barke of Mandrake roots,ana.ℑ ß of *Opium*.g ij.of Saffron,g.iij. Vineger a litle,wh te Waxe as much as is sufficient,make an ointment & annoint the temples therewith. Also this embrocation may be vsed bloud warme to the head.℞. floures of Violets,red Roses,and water Lillies,ana. M.j. Barly decorticate,℥.j. seeds of white Poppy,℥ij.seeds of Lettuce,℥iij.seeth thē in sufficiēt quantity of water vnto the third part,& make an embrocatiō.You shall make the decoction of more force

Curatio.
Venæ sectio.
Clyster.
A purging potion.
Localia.
Vnguentum.
Embrochæ.

if you adde leaues of Henbane, Nightshade, Poppy heads, Mandrake apples, or roots, and a little vineger. You may also lay vnder his pillow, Poppy heads, or Mandrake apples. You may also for the same purpose, giue him to drinke water wherein Poppy or Henbane seed hath bin sodden, or some somnoriferous cõpound, as is regines *Nicolai*, or *Philoniũ*, or such like; in ministring whereof, you must obserue, that you giue them not in the vehemencie of the fit, but in the declining thereof. Beside, note that you must eschue continuall vse of stupefactiue medicines, as well inwardly as outwardly also. For in this disease by ouermuch cooling you may turne the Frensie into a Lethargie, whereby you may cause him to sleep so, that you can awake him no more. Also if the patient be weake, beware how you minister stupefactiue things to prouoke sleepe: for in such as be weak (as *Trallianus* saith) somnoriferous potions do no small hurt, and sometime they kill. At the last when the disease is aswaged, and waxeth more gentle, which for the most part chanceth the third day, you must apply
Discutientia. discussiue medicines which haue vertue to disperse the remnant of the disease. And for that purpose you may apply the aforesaid embrocation, adding to it before, flowers of Cammomill, Dill, Melilot, marsh Mallowes, and such like. There be some that at that time (the disease declining) do apply to the head Hennes or whelpes cut in the midst, or the lungs of a Weather hote. But take good heed that no such thing be applyed in the beginning of the disease, or in the vehemency thereof, for so you should increase the inflammation & the feauer, & make the sicke in more perill. Moreouer if the euill continue long, you may boile in the embrocation *Serpillum*, that is, wilde Thime, or Sauory. Also in the declination of the inflammation (as *Galen* teacheth) you may vse *Castoreum*, for that it is of subtile substance, & will worke his force through the skull. When the frenticke person is recouered, let him eschue drunkennesse, idlenesse, variety and corruption of meats, & specially the burning heate of the Sun. Hereby you may learne not onely the cure of the Frensie, but also a remedie against immoderate watching, & rauing in any sort ingendred by feuers, when the patient is so vexed by them (although they come by cõsent, & be but accidents of the feuers) that it is necessary to remedie them, lest the braine in time be thereby affected.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Lethargie.

Lethargus in Greeke & in Latin also, is a disease contrary to the Frensie; for it causeth sluggishnes and an inexpugnable desire of sleeping: some call this disease in Latin *veternus*. They that be take with this disease, do forget all things whereupon it hath that name. For *Lethe* in Greeke is forgetfulnesse, and *Arges*
λήθη. ἀργὸς. is slothfull or dul, so that *Lethargus* is nothing else but a dul obliuion, and therefore may be called in Latin *Obliuio iners*. It is
Causæ. caused of fleame, which cooleth the braine ouermuch, and moisteneth it, and thereby prouoketh sleepe. The fleame doth putrifie in the braine, and thereby causeth a feauer which is alwaies annexed with this disease (as *Galen* testifieth in his 13. booke *de Methodo medendi*. Also they haue alwaies a profound and dead sleep. Their pulse is great, &
Signa. striketh seldome, and is watery, that is, it beateth as it were full of water. They fetch their breath seldome and weakly, they are continually sluggish and sleepy, and can scarsly by any meanes be compelled to answer. They will sometime

open

open their eyes if you cry loud to them, and shut them againe forthwith: they are forgetfull and do raue. They gape and gaspe often, and sometime keepe their mouth open still, as though they had forgotten to shut it. Oftentimes being required to make water, & taking the chamber vessel, they forget to make vrine. For the most part their egestions be liquid: but contrariwise many are costiue. Their vrine is like beasts vrine. Some of them do tremble and sweate all ouer. Let the chamber wherein the sicke doth lie be light and warme. Let his meats be such as do extenuate, cut and drie, and let them be seasoned with *Apium*, Annise, Comin, Pepper, Cinamon, Cloues, and such like. Let the sicke eate birds that liue vpon mountaines, and Chickens, Partrich, Thrush, and such like. For pot herbes let him vse *Asparagus*, Fenell, Parcely, and such like. Also giue him broth made with Barley or Oatmeale, or *Alica* with *Oxymel* or Peniroyall. Let his drinke be *Hydromel*, that is, water and honey sodden together, Meade, or watery thin white wine being astringent. After he hath eaten, it is not amisse to bind the extreme parts for a certaine space, that the vapours do not ascend to the head. For the cure (if strength permit, and nothing else do let) it is good forthwith to let bloud. You must cut the middle veine or the inward veine of the arme, and draw out as much bloud as strength will permit. But if you may not safely let bloud, then must the bowels be scoured with sharp clisters, whereof you shall finde examples in the Chapter of *Apoplexia*. Afterward the humour abounding must be prepared with decoction of Hysope in honey and water, or with Thime, Peniroyall, *mel Rosarum*, or *Oximel* commixed with syrupe of Borage, or infusion of Roses, & waters of Hysope, Betony, Marioram, and Borage. And afterward purge him with some medicine that will expell fleame, whereof you shall find examples in the next Chap. following. In the meane season apply to the head *Oxyrhodinum*, that is, vineger of Roses, and that in the beginning, for the humor is to be repelled & driuen back from the head, whatsoeuer it be. For the which purpose also it is good to vse frictions with Pellitory, Pepper, salt, & vineger, and bindings of the extreme parts. Moreouer, apply to the nosthrils odours which will awake him, as be these, *Castoreum*, the snuffe of a candle quenched, Tarre, *Galbanum*, Sulphur, Harts horne, Sothernwood, or Goats horne burnt a litle and holden to the nosthrils. You may pricke their legges, and their extreme parts, and pull them by the haire violently to awake them. Also you may boile Thime, Peniroyall, and Origan in vineger, and hold that decoction to the nose of the sicke, that the fume ascending to the braine, may cut and diuide the tough humours. Also annoint the palat of the mouth with strong and sharp medicines, as with Mustard & Hony, *Mithridatū*, *Theriaca*, powder of Pellitory. And you must endeuour to pluck out the fleame that sticketh there with your finger: sometime also you may prouoke sneesing with *Castoreum*, or Pepper, or *Elleborus*. and if they can vse it, let them gargarise. And if by this meanes the disease be not dissolued, then shaue the head, and apply to it bags of salt, or *Milium*, or such like. Or make this decoction following & let it run on high vpon the forepart of the head. ℞. wild Thime, Hysope, and Sauory, with a litle *Castoreum*, and boile them in oile and vineger, and vse it. Moreouer, it profiteth to apply a *Sinapismus*, made of Figges and Mustard seed beaten together with vineger. Afterward you must apply to the hinder part

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Localia.

of the head cupping glasses with great flame, about the first and second ioynt of the neck, partly easily, & partly with scarification. Also the head must be annointed with *Castoreum*. And (as *Trallianus* saith) *Castoreum* drunke with *Oximel* an houre before the fit, is exceeding good: for (as he saith) he hath knowne many by that one medicine restored to life & health. You may minister ℥.j. therof with ℥.j. of *Oximel*, or with so much white wine astringent, or with *aqua Mulsa*. Besides you must often prouoke nature to expell excrements with Clisters, and such things as prouoke vrine. You must annoint the share with oyle of Rew wherein a little *Castoreum* is mixed. you must giue him in drioke such things as do extenuate and cut grosse and clammy humours, as be decoctions of *Apium*, Fennell, Maidenhaire, and such like. You must admonish the sicke to swallow downe such potions often, and therefore you may drop it into his mouth with a suckling boxe. In the Lethargy it continueth long. If strength do permit, you may minister *Hiera ex Colocynthide*, and prouoke him to sneese with the medicines aforenamed. At the last when the disease beginneth to decline, gestation on horsebacke, or in a litter is profitable, and bathing is exceeding good at that time: but the head of the sicke may not be wet by any meanes. And if the sicke for lacke of strength cannot abide the heate of the bath, at the least let him be washed at home in a vessell of warme water. Let him be scoured in the bath with sharpe Sope, as with wine lies burnt, with Mustard seed, Pellitory, Pepper, Laurell berries, quicke Lime, adding double as much *Nitrum*.

Castoreum.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Memory lost.

Causa.

Memoria deperdita, the losse of memorie chanceth sometime alone, and sometime reason is hurt with it. It is caused of the Lethargie and other soporiferous diseases. It cometh to passe also that the soporiferous diseases being ended, there ensueth forgetfulnesse: which when it chanceth, then a cold distemper is the cause that the memorie is perished or grieuously hurt. This coldnesse hath sometimes moistnesse ioyned with it, and sometime drinesse: somtime any one of the former distempers may cause this disease alone: therefore the Physition must diligently discerne the causes. The causes of this disease be either externall or internall: if they be internall, either abundance of fleame or melancholy is cause of it. If there be no signes of those humours abounding, then must it needs come of some externall cause, especially if it come not through extreme old age. The externall causes you may learne by relation of the sicke, and those that are about him, as if any disease be newly passed, and so turned into obliuion, or if medicines were ministred inwardly, or applyed outwardly to the head, which haue vertue to coole extremely. Or if it came of immoderate labour, with study, and watching, or such like. If the memory be but a little hurt, it betokeneth that the braine is but a little cooled. If reason be lost together with the memory, then the affect is called *Fatuitas* or *stultitia*, that is, foolishnes or doltishnes, and both these do come of one disposition: but that is more vehement where both are hurt. As touching signes, if onely a dry distemper occupying the hinder part of the head do cause this euill, then ouermuch watching troubleth the sicke. If onely a moist distemper be cause of it, then they are heauy & inclined to sleepe, & their sleepes be long and troublesome. If cold

Signa.

be

be ioyned with moisture, it engendreth the Lethargy and *Carus*, whereof we wil intreate in the next Chapter. Therefore in them that haue lost their memory you must obserue their sleepes, whether they be ouer sleepy, or in a meane, or sleepe not at all: for so shall you find what distemper doth most abound. Besides you must marke whether they auoide any thing at the nose, or whether any thing distill from the head by their mouth, or whether those parts be altogether dry. For by them you may likewise coniecture the distemper abounding. And if fleame be cause of the euill, you shall perceiue it not onely by immoderate sleepe, and abundance of excrements descending from the braine (as is aforesaid) but also by the disposition of the sicke, by his age, and his complexion, by the time of the yeare, the region, the state of the aire, and the diet that he vsed before. For all those or the most part of them encline to cold & moisture. Likewise if melancholy abounding be cause of the disease, you shall know it, for that the sicke is not sleepy at all, neither doth he auoid any excrements at all from the braine: besides, the state of his body and all other circumstances aboue rehearsed encline to cold and drinesse. His diet must be diuerse according to the diuersity of the causes. But whatsoeuer the cause be, let the aire that the sicke remaineth in, be inclining to heate, and let his lodging be light: let not his windowes be North nor South, for the one cooleth, and the other filleth the head. Let him eschue much sleepe, specially in the day time, & vpon a full stomacke. But note if the disease be caused of a cold and moist distemper, then the whole order of his diet must be hote and dry. But if the cause be cold and dry, then must the diet be altogether such as wil heate & moisten. As touching the cure, if loose of memory be caused by vehement purgations, or other immoderate euacuations, or by swounding often, and so ouermuch drinesse do hurt the memory, then minister no medicins, but onely restore the body by good diet. For the body being corroborate, & strength renewed, the memory will come againe. If you require to know what things are requisite for such a diet, you shall find it in the Chapter of the feauer hectike. If the memory be lost by extreme age, then physicke will nothing auaile: but onely they must content themselues with diet conuenient. But if the memorie faile suddenly, the other members of the body being safe, then the falling sickenes is to be feared, or the palsey, or the Apoplexy. And therefore in such a case you must prouide diligently by all meanes, that no such thing chāce as is to be feared. You may preuent those diseases by the same remedies that you wold vse in the cure of thē being present. And if the memory faile by meanes of other diseases, as through the Lethargy or Pestilence, then medicins for cure thereof are to be vsed. The whole scope of curing the disease, if it come only of a cold distemper of the braine, consisteth in heating. You must therefore minister medicines that haue vertue to heare as well inwardly as outwardly. Outwardly you must annoint the head with warme oile, & that in Sommer. In winter annoint it with oile of *Ireos* cōmixed with sharpe vineger, & somtime boile wild Thime, & Calamint, & such like in the oile, & so vse it. Some do adde to it Pepper, and Laurell berries. Also *Castoreum* is profitable being commixed with oile and annointed vpon the hinder part of the head. Also this ointment is very good. ℞. of *Oleum de lateribus*, and oile of *Castoreum*, ana. ℥. ß. rootes of *Acorus* and Valerian, ∋. j. Pellitory and Rew, of each ∋. j. ß. with

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vnguentum.

Waxe sufficient make an ointment,& annoint the hinder part of the head therwith being shauen,& apply this quilt vpon it: ℞. flowers of Rosemarie, Balme, & Lauender,ana.M ß flowers of Elder,M.j. *Stæchas*,℥ iij. Nutmegs, wood of *Aloes*, and Maces, ana. ℈ j powder them, and stitch them in silke and make a quilt. You may make many such like medicines by examples in other Chapters.You may minister inwardly conserues of the flowers of Betony,Rosemary, Lauender,Spikenard & Balme,adding to thē Pepper,Cloues, Cinamon, & such like odoraments.If memory be lost by cold and moistnes ioyned together,minister *Hierapicra*,which wil purge out nothing that is good,but only that which is noysome. Afterwards let him vse gargarises, sternutations, and whatsoeuer doth purge by the mouth and the nose. Also a *Sinapismus* may profitably be applied to the head. If obliuion be caused of fleame abounding, then you must first prepare and concoct that humour with *mel Rosarum*, *Oximel*, sirupe of infusion of Roses,with decoction of Betony,Marioram,Hysope,Thime,& such like: after the administration whereof, the matter being concoct and prepared, you may purge it with decoction of Myrobalanes *Chebulorum*, and Agaricke trochiscate, to the which you may adde the sirupe of infusion of Roses, or *Diacatholicon*,or *Diaphenicon*.And if the matter through his grosnesse will not sufficiently purge at once,then you must prepare it againe, & after purge it with pils, *Arabicæ*. *Aureæ*,or *Aggregatiuæ*, commixing some of them with Agaricke trochiscate, and so make pils with hony of Roses,or sirupe of *Stæchados*. After you may particularly purge the head with gargarises & sternutations.After purging it is good to minister vnto thē *Castoreū* or shauing of iuory,℥.j with *aqua mulsa*,or as much *Confectio anacardina*,or *aurea Alexandrina*,or *Diābra*,*Diamoscha dulce*,or *Mithridatū*,or *Theriaca*,with *aqua mulsa* or white wine. Afterward you may vse outwardly embrocations,& powre them down from on high vpon the head being shauen, specially nigh to the seame, where the bone is looseſt or thinneſt.You may make your embrocatiō thus:℞. Hysope,*Serpillū*, & Thime, ana.M.ß.Betony,Marioram,& flowers of Cammomill, ana. pug. ß flowers of *Stæchados*,℥.iij.make a decoction,and adde thereto of *Castoreū*,℥.j.of vineger, ℥ j.& make an embrocatiō.It is good also to annoint the first & second spondill in the necke,and hinder part of the head, with *Oleum nardinum*, oyles of Nutmegs,of *Castoreum*, of Pepper or *Oleum costinum*. And you may apply thereupon a quilt,made in this sort.℞.Hysope,Marioram,& flowers of *Stæchados*, ana. ℥.j *Castoreum*,Nutmegs,Spikenard,Maces,ana.℈.j. the barke of Frankinsence, Masticke,and wood of *Aloes*,ana ℥.j.ß.red Roses dried the weight of all: beate them to powder, and make a quilt. And if the euill ceasse not by this meanes, then last of all,vse a *Sinapismus*.If memory be lost by abundance of melancholy, you must first prepare it to expulsion, by sirupe of Borage and Fumitory mixed together, adding sirupe of infusion of Roses, and waters of Betony, Hops,and Balme, and such like. Afterward minister this potion following. ℞. *Myrobalanorum Indorum*,℥ iij.Sene, & *Epithimum*, ana. ℥ ij. flowers of Hops, Fumitory,& Borage,ana ℥ ij.ß. make a decoction in running water, & hauing strained it,dissolue therein of fine Manna,℥.ij. of *Diacatholicon*, ℥.vij. or *Diasene*,℥.ß.& make a potion.As touching outward medicines,let them rather encline to moisture then drinesse.As by adding to the ointmēts before prescribed oiles

Saeculus.

Embrocha.

Saeculus.

Decoctio.

eyles of Cammomill, Dil, & sweet Almonds. Likewise in making embrocations & quilts, you may withdraw such medicines as dry, & adde moist things in their stead. Hereby a circumspect Physition may not onely haue a reasonable method to cure each kind of obliuion, but also to remedie any dulnesse or weaknesse of the memorie. For that it cometh of the same causes that memory lost doth come, although they be not so vehement where the memorie is weakened.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Carus or Subeth.

Carus. *Subeth.* *Causa.* *Signa.* *Victus.* *Cura.*

Caros in Greeke, and *Carus* in Latin, is a disease in which both sense & moouing is altogether taken away, and yet their breathing remaineth safe. The *Arabians* call this disease *Subeth*. This disease differeth from the Lethargie, for that they that haue the Lethargy will answer to a question demanded, and do not lye altogether downe. But they that haue *Carus*, are occupied with deepe sleepe, and if they be stirred or pricked, although they feele, yet they will say nothing, nor once open their eyes. Besides as *Paulus Ægineta* noteth, a vehement feauer doth vse to go before *Carus*, & in the Lethargy it followeth rather. Also *Carus* vseth to succeed other symptomates and accidents. For it cometh often in the fits of feauers, and in the falling sickenesse, and in pressing of the braine, as well when the braine pan is crushed together, as also if the filmes that couer the foremost ventricle of the braine be thrust downe. But the Lethargy hath a certaine peculiar consistence of himselfe. Also *Carus* doth differ from the Apoplexy, for that in it the breathing is very straight, so that the sicke can with much ado scarce breathe at all. But he that hath *Carus* (as *Galen* witnesseth in his fourth booke *de locis affectis*) hath his breath at libertie. *Carus* is caused of a cold, grosse, and viscous flegmaticke humour filling the braine. You may easily know the signes by that which hath bene rehearsed before. For in this disease they are altogether in a dead sleepe, and their eyes alwayes shut. As for the diet, & the cure of those which haue *Carus*, it agreeth altogether with theirs that haue the Lethargy, whereof we spake before (in the 16. Chapt.) saiuing that in this disease you must vse things that be of great force to extenuate, cut and diuide the grosse humours. Also you must apply Emplaisters, and other medicines to the stomacke which haue vertue to heate, and corroborate it, because it is stuffed with fleame which doth coole it and moisten it: whereof you shall find examples in the beginning of the third Booke.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Congelation or Taking.

Congelatio.

Catoche or *Catalepsis* in Greeke, in Latine may be called *Occupatio*, *Detentio*, & *Deprehensio*. The new writers in Phisicke do call it *Congelatio*: in English it may be called Congelation or Taking. It is a sudden detention and taking both of mind and body, both sense and mouing being lost, the sicke remaining in the same figure of body wherein he was taken, whether he sit, or lie, or stand, or whether his eyes be open or shut. This disease is a meane betweene the Lethargy and the Frensy, for it cometh of a melancholy humour for the most part, as shall be declared afterward. Therefore in respect of coldnesse it agreeth with the Lethargie, and in respect of drinesse with the Frensy. Here-

upon it cometh that they which haue this diſeaſe, are neither like the frenticke altogether, nor like them that haue the Lethargy. This diſeaſe is cauſed ſometime of abundance of bloud flowing to the head and repleniſhing it. But for the moſt part (as *Ætius* witneſleth) it is cauſed of a cold and dry melancholike humour, troubling the hinder part of the head and braine. This diſeaſe inuadeth a man ſuddenly, and taketh away ſpeech and ſenſe from him; he heareth nothing, he anſwereth nothing, his breath is ſcarcely to be perceiued, but he lieth as he were dead. His pulſe is ſmall and weake, and very thicke. His egeſtion and vrine are detained, or elſe they come forth in ſmall quantity: and that is not in reſpect of drineſſe, for the ſicke ſometime doth abound with much moiſture, but for lacke of ſenſe. Their face is ſometime red, and that is when the euill is engendred of bloud; and ſometime it is ſwart, and that is when melancholy cauſeth the diſeaſe. Moreouer the eyes in this diſeaſe remaine immoueable, as though they were frozen. This euill differeth from *Carus* (as *Galen* ſaith) for that in it the eye liddes are euer ſhut, but in this diſeaſe they ſometime remaine open. The diet in this euill muſt be diuerſe according to the diuerſity of cauſes. Let his food be Ptiſan broth, and ſuch like. Let his drinke be *aqua Mulſa* well boyled, or Barley water, or ſmall Ale; for ſeeing they fume not into the head, they do much good. It is hurtfull for them to drinke water, for it cauſeth windineſſe, ſwelleth the ſplene, and quencheth not thirſt. As concerning the cure, if the face of the ſicke be ruddy, and bloud ſeeme to abound, if ſtrength permit and yeares, let him forthwith bleed on the outwardmoſt veine of the arme, and let him bleed according to his ſtrength. Afterward if the head be hote, apply thoſe things that coole. For that purpoſe you may boile the ſhelles of Poppy heads in oyle, and annoint the head therewith. But in other that haue their face ſwart, and ſo haue tokens of melancholy abounding, you muſt firſt cleanſe the guts with cliſters, made of flowers of Borage, Bugloſſe, Fumitory, Time, *Epithimum*, rootes of Polypody, leaues of Sene, adding to it oyles of Cammomill, and Dill, and *Caſia*, *Diacatholicon*, *Diaſena*, or *confectio Hamech*, in conuenient quantitie. Whereof you ſhall finde examples afterward in the Chapter of *Melancholia*. And if the belly become not ſoluble by this meanes, then it is not amiſſe to boile in the former decoction rootes of *Elleborus niger*. The head muſt be annointed with oyle wherein wilde Time is ſodden, or with oile of Lillies or Dill, or ſuch like, and that you muſt do chiefly when the head ſeemeth cold. Moreouer if his vrine appeare groſſe and thicke, you muſt giue him to drinke the decoction of Dill, *Apium*, Calamint, and ſuch like as haue vertue to extenuate. It profiteth alſo to annoint all their whole body with oyle of Dill, ſpecially in Winter. Alſo they that haue trembling with this diſeaſe, may haue ℥.j. of *Caſtoreum* commixed with *aqua mulſa*, and powred into their mouth. The reſt that concerne the cure of this diſeaſe may be gathered partly out of the Chapters of the Frenſie and Lethargy before, and partly out of the Chapter of Melancholy following.

Cauſe.

Signa.

Victus.

Curatio.

CHAP. XX.

Of dead ſleepe.

Coma in Greeke, *Soper*, or *grauis & profundus ſomnus* in Latine. It may be called in Engliſh dead ſleepe. It is a diſeaſe wherein the ſicke cannot awake

nor

not keepe open his eyes, but doth keepe his eyes continually close shut, & is in a sound sleepe. But there be two kinds hereof, the one whereof we haue already spoken, and that is called simply *Coma* or *sopor*, or else *Coma somnolentum*. The other is called *Vigilans sopor*, and it is an euill wherein the sicke cannot hold open his eyes, though he be awake, but he winketh in hope to get sleepe, and yet is altogether awake. Therefore you must make a difference betweene these two kindes. The sleeping *Coma* (as *Galen* witnesseth) is sometime caused by ouer- *Cause.*
much moistening of the braine, as it chanceth to many drunken persons. Also in feauers, onely hote and moist vapours ascending from the inferiour parts, and moistening the braine, do cause this euill. Moreouer sometime onely cold occupying the forepart of the braine is cause of this euill. Sometime profound sleepe is caused of coldnes and moistnesse ioyned together. The other euill called *Vigilans sopor*, or *Coma*, that is, the watching drousinesse, is caused of fleame mixed with choler, and for the most part it cometh for lacke of strength, that they are not able to keepe open their eye liddes. The party that is vexed with *Signa.*
the soporiferous and sleepy *Coma*, doth sleepe with his neather iaw open, and as often as he is awaked, he falleth into a new sleepe forthwith. They that haue the watching *Coma*, speake they wote not what, and they lye with their whole bodie out of order, and they haue partly such signes as appeare in the Frensie, and partly such as in the Lethargy. The cure is of two sorts, according *Curatio.*
to the diuersity of the euils. For in the soporiferous and sleepy *Coma*, you must vse those remedies that are prescribed in the Chapters of *Carus*, and the Lethargy: and to speake briefly, after the whole body is purged, if the euil be caused of moistnesse, then you must apply such things as will drie the braine, made with sharpe vineger, and Roses, and Cammomill commixed, and you may also let the fume thereof go vp into the nosthrils. If it be caused of cold, then apply oile of Dill, and Cammomill warmed; and if the cold be great, you may sometime boile in oile, Peniroyall & Dill, and vse it. But if the euill be caused of cold and moisture ioyned together, then must it be cured as the Lethargy. If it come of weakenesse and lacke of strength, then you may vse restoratiues to recouer it againe. Suppositaries are very good to be vsed in these kinds of diseases, for that they stirre and prouoke nature. For the watching *Coma*, since it consisteth of mixed and contrary causes, it must be cured by contrary medicines, partly as the Frensie, and partly as the Lethargy. And to know which of them you must vse most, you may learne that by the humour most abounding. For if fleame abound more then choler, then you must vse most the remedies against the Lethargy: but if contrariwise choler do abound, then must your remedies be for the most part such as are good against the Frensie. And therefore you may seeke conuenient remedies out of those Chapters, as occasion serueth.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Apoplexy.

Apoplexia in Greeke and Latin, is a disease wherein the fountaine and originall of all the sinewes being affected, euery part of the body doth sodainely lose both mouing and sense. Or it is a depriuing both of sense and mouing throughout the whole body, coming suddenly with let and hurt of all

voluntary functions. If this stopping of the braine come in one halfe of the body onely, then it is called *Paralysis* in Greeke, in English the Palsey, whereof we will speake in the next Chapter. The Apoplexie is caused of a flegmaticke humour that is cold, grosse, and tough, which doth at one time abundantly fill the principall ventricles of the braine, which humour, ouermuch crudities and chiefly drunkennesse doth engender. Also it is caused by a fall or a blow which shaketh and bruiseth the braine, and causeth humours to flow thither. Also very cold aire which doth thicken and congeale the humidities and excrements of the braine, doth sometime cause this disease: it may also be caused of a grosse melancholy humour. Concerning signes, there goeth before this disease a full and sharpe paine of the head, and a swelling of the veines in the necke, the *Vertigo*, and brightnes before the eies, also cold of the extreme partes without cause, panting of the whole body, slownesse to moue, and gnawing of the teeth while they sleepe. Their vrine is litle in quantity, blacke, like rust and canker in mettall, and hath a residence like meale. They that fall into this disease, do lacke sense altogether, they lye as they were asleepe with their eyes shut, and do snort. The vehemency and greatnesse of this disease may be discerned by the impediments that they haue in breathing. For when it is very much differing from natural order, it betokeneth the vehemency of the disease, and that it is a great and strong Apoplexy. But when there is a little impediment in the breathing, then you may iudge that there is but little hurt in the braine, and so you may account it a small and weake Apoplexy. The worst and strongest Apoplexy is, wherein the breathing is so diminished that it can very hardly be perceiued: and that is almost as euill, wherein the breath stoppeth for a while, and then is fetched with great violence. This disease for the most part doth chance to old men, which be of a flegmaticke complexion, and which do vse such a diet as increaseth fleame. But if so be it inuade any yong person, and that in Sommer season, it is most perillous. This disease is vncurable, or at the least is seldome cured. And therefore *Hippocrates* writeth in the 24. Aphor. of his second booke: It is impossible (saith he) to cure a vehement Apoplexy, and not easie to cure a weake one. For it threatneth speedy death. Beside, if it chance by medicines to be taken away, for the most part it departeth leauing the Palsey behind it, either in the whole body, or in some part thereof. Often also it corrupteth the memory, whereupon we may conclude that remedies are not to be vsed against a strong Apoplexy, for that is of nature deadly. But if it be weake, which you may know by the signes aforesaid, although there be small hope to remedie it, yet (as *Galen* testifieth) conuenient remedies being ministred, it may perhaps be cured, as experience hath proued in some. Those therefore whose cure is not altogether desperate, if there be signes of plenitude & fulnes, & strength permit also, must be let bloud on both the *Cephalica* veines. But you must foretell the peril, for bloudletting doth either kill them, or deliuer thē: so that if after bloudletting (saith *Ætius*) both mouing and sense come not vnto him againe, there is no more hope. You must not draw away much bloud at once, but rather at sundry times, and you must haue regard to his pulse, the colour of his face, & his breathing. Beside, you must prouoke him to the stoole with sharpe clisters, in this sort: ℞. Sage, Origan, Betony, and Rew, ana. M. j. Calamint,

Cause.

Signa.

Prognostica.

Curatio.

Calamint, Hyſope and Peniroyall, ana. M. ß. ſeeds of Fennel, *Seſeli*, and Ammi, ana ℥. iij. Centory the leſſe, M. j. roots of Polipody, ℥. vj. fine Agaricke, ℥. iij. Pulpe of *Coloquintida*, ℥ ij. boile theſe in ſufficient quantity of water, vntill halfe be conſumed: then take of that decoction, ℥. xv of *Hierapicra*, and *Benedicta laxatiua*, ana. ℥. ß. of *Electuarium Nidum*, ℥. iij. of *Diaphœnicon*, ℥. ij. of *mel Roſarum* clarified, ℥ j. ß. of oiles of Laurell, Rew, and *Caſtoreum*, ana. ℥. j. of ſalt gemme, ℥. j. ß. commixe thē all, and make a cliſter. Alſo the vſe of ſuppoſitaries in this diſeaſe is very commendable, made of *Coloquintida*, Agaricke, blacke Hellebore, and ſuch like, after this ſort. ℞. of Hony boiled to an height, ℥. ij. of *Coloquintida*, Agarick, and Hellebore, ana. ℈ ij ſal gemme. ℈. j. beate them into powder, commixe them with the Hony, and make ſuppoſitaries, vj. fingers long, and hang a threed in them, that you may draw them out when you liſt. You may alſo put into the ſuppoſitaries *Hierapicra*, or Pils *Cochiæ*. Afterward annoint the whole body with a good quantity of warme oile, wherein wild Thime, Calamint, Dill and ſuch like haue firſt bene boiled. Alſo the extreme parts muſt be bound ſtrongly, and vehemently chafed with the decoction of the roote of Floure de luce: many cupping glaſſes muſt be faſtened to the ſhoulders: the head muſt be ſhaued, and annointed with oiles of Cammomill, Dil and Rew, or with oile wherein the aforenamed herbes haue bene boiled. You muſt apply to the noſthrils ſuch things as by their odour can ſtirre and raiſe vp the ſicke, as be, *Opoponax*, *Caſtoreum*, *Sagapenum*, *Galbanum*. Alſo you may vſe medicines to prouoke neeſing, made of white Hellebore, *Caſtoreum* and ſuch other, rehearſed in the former Chapters. Or it profiteth much to vſe embrocations, made of Cammomill, Melilot, Sage, Peniroyall, Marioram, Origan, Calamint, Sauory, and Hyſope, boiled in equall portions of wine and water. But yet it is better to vſe dry medicines to the head, as be *Sinapiſmi*, made after this ſort, ℞. *Olei coſtini*, ℥ j. oiles of *Caſtoreum* and *Euphorbium*, ana. ℥. iij. Muſtard ſeed, ℥ ij. *Caſtoreum*, ℥. j. *Sagapenum*, ℥. j ß *Euphorbium*, ℈ j. Vineger, ℥. ij. with ſufficient quantity of Waxe, make an Emplaiſter. Alſo you muſt open their mouth by force, and put into it your finger, or a fether dipped in oile of *Ireos*, to prouoke vomit, and ſo cauſe the groſſe humours that be in the mouth to be caſt out. Alſo their fundament muſt be annointed with ſuch medicines as diſſolue windineſſe, as be Rew, Comin, *Nitrum*, and Hony. When the euill is aſſwaged, you muſt giue him meate of eaſie digeſtion, for the moſt part mixed with hony. If his ſpeech come not yet againe, ſo that his ſtrength permit, you muſt faſten cupping glaſſes to the hinder part of the head with ſcarification. And in like ſort vnder the ſhort ribs, if you may. Afterward let the ſicke be caried in a wagon or horſlitter. Let his drinke be *Mulſa*, or *Oximel*. Let him drinke no wine. After 21. dayes be paſt the ſicke may enter a bath, but as touching medicines requiſite for the reſt of the cure, you ſhal find them abundantly in the Chapter following. And this may ſuffice for the cure of the Apoplexy, if ſo be it be curable.

Cliſter acris.

Sinapiſmus.

Vomitus.

Victus.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Palſey.

Paralyſis in Greeke, *Reſolutio* in Latine: in Engliſh the Palſey. It is a diſeaſe wherein the one halfe of the body, either the right ſide or the left, doth loſe

both sense and mouing. Also sometime the Palsey chanceth in one member onely, as for example, in the hand, the legge, or the tongue. But note here that the Palsey which followeth the Apoplexy is particularly called in Greeke Παραλυσία: and therefore the word *Paralysis* is a more general name then *Paraplegia*. But whereas in the Palsey, sometime sense onely is lost, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both sense and mouing: it is specially called resolution of the sinewes or Palsey, when mouing is lost. Why sometime feeling is lost onely, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both together, *Galen* declareth at large in his first book *de symptomatũ causis*, cap. 4. & therefore it need not be here rehearsed: notwithstanding it shall not be amisse to answer briefly to that question. First note, that aswell the faculty of mouing as of sense floweth from the braine as from a fountaine, and is deriued from thence by and in the sinewes to the instruments of motion and sense; and therefore it must needs be, if that faculty of the braine be hindred or stopped by any cause that it cannot descend to the instruments of mouing or sense, that they should lose mouing or sense according as the sinewes be affected. And therefore in those members that participate two kinds of sinewes, as the eyes and the tongue do, the former question is easie to be soluted, for that they haue one kind of sinews for motion, and another kind for sense, & so the one may be hurt and the other safe; or they may be both hurt, and so both sense and motion perish. But in members that haue but one kind of sinew, the question is more obscure to answer. In such mẽbers therfore, if (the skin being taken away) the muscle lying naked cannot moue at all, and yet feeling remaineth in it, you may know that the hurt is not great. But if the sinewes be much stopped, then hath it lost both sense and mouing: for it is vnpossible that the sense of a muscle should be lost, and the motion remaine still. The reason is, for that lesse of the animall faculty is requisite for feeling then for mouing, so that there may come sufficient quantity of that faculty to a muscle to cause feeling in it, and yet not enough to cause it to moue also: and therefore a naked muscle, which hath his faculty both of feeling and mouing of one kinde of sinew, cannot moue and lacke sense; but either it hath sense and lacketh mouing, and then his hurt is but litle, or it hath lost both, and that is when the hurt is great, and the sinew is altogether stopped. But where there is a member that hath sinewes placed in the muscles to cause mouing, and other sinewes spread in the skin to cause feeling, (for the sinewes that are dispersed in the muscles do not send out branches to the skin as some suppose) I say it may come to passe in that member, that sometime it may lose feeling alone, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both together. For it may be that the skin which couereth the muscle may lose his sense of feeling, the sinew being affected which is dispersed in it, and yet the sinew that runneth in the muscle may be safe, and therefore the muscle may moue. But if the sinew which is spread in the muscle be affected, and the sinew that cometh to the skin remaine safe, that member cannot moue, and yet it hath sense and feeling left: and that cometh to passe because the sinew of the one is hurt, and the other hath his sinew safe: although they spring both from one place, yet they are diuided in the way as they come to the member. And if both the sinewes be affected, as well that that cometh to the muscle, as that which cometh to the skin,

Why in the Palsey sometime sense alone, sometime mouing alone, and sometime both together perish.

skin, then both sense of feeling and mouing also perish and are lost; and that is when the common fountaine from whence they do both spring, is affected & hurt. You may discerne that, when you know exactly the common originall and spring of euery sinew, in considering diligently whether the braine it selfe be affected, or the backe bone, at the head of it, or in any of his spondils besides. This is to be knowne by the Anatomy of sinewes, and therefore it behoueth to be well exercised therein, for in the Palsey there is not one certaine place affected, but diuerse places. If the braine it selfe be affected: I meane not the whole braine, for then is the Apoplexy engendred: but if the right halfe or the left be affected, you shall know it, for that the Palsey or resolution will be aswell on the right or left side of the face, as on the right or left side of the body. But if the face be safe, and one halfe of the body be depriued of sense and mouing, then you may know that the place affected is the vpper end and first spondils of the backe bone; but the one halfe onely of the marrow is affected, and that is it that is next to the side taken with the Palsey. But if all the inferiour members, (the face onely excepted) be resolued and paraliticke, then is the backe bone affected in the same place, euen in the beginning and vpper end of it: and then is the hurt vehement, for the whole marrow is affected. But if it chance one onely part to be resolued and taken with the Palsey, you must search from whence the sinewes come that be contained in it, which you may easily finde, if you be well exercised in Anatomy. For if the marrow of the backe be not affected aboue where his first beginning is, but lower among the spondils, then if the affect and hurt be great, all the inferiour parts beneath those spondils affected, be resolued and taken with the Palsey: but if the hurt be but little, and the marrow but halfe affected, then only the inferiour parts of the one side be resolued. Therefore you must first learne by Anatomy to find the place affected, hauing foreknowledge from what part of the backe bone the members resolued haue their sinewes. The Palsey and resolution of members is engendred of abundance of grosse and clammy humours, which stop the sinewes and hinder the animall faculty that it cannot come frō the fountaine to the mēbers. It may also be caused of immoderate cold in snow or vehement frost. Also it may be caused by an inflammation, or a *Scirrus* (which is a hard swelling without sense) chancing in the backe bone, or in parts nigh adioyning, or in other sinewy parts, whereby the sinewes are crushed and pressed, & so stopped that the animall facultie cannot passe. As also the sinewes may be crushed together by some externall cause, as by binding with a cord, or such like meanes, & so cause resolutiō: also whē there is luxatiō or fracture in any of the spondils of the back, or in other ioynts or bones, there may follow resolutiō by means of cōpression and crushing together of sinewes. Also resolution or Palsey may be caused by meanes of a wound, or an vlcer, either in the braine, or in the marrow of the backe, or in any particular sinew. There need not many signes to know this disease by: for any may iudge easily that part or member to haue the Palsey which is destitute of mouing. To know of what cause it proceedeth, you may partly learne by the relatiō of the sick, & partly by the signes rehearsed before in the 7 Chapter, fol. 10. where headach caused of fleame is intreated of. The Palsey is no acute and sharp disease, but of long continuance, & for the most part curable.

To know if the braine be affected.

To know if the marrow of the back cause the Palsey.

Of members particularly taken with the Palsey.

Cause.

Prognostica.

It chanceth for the moſt part in old folke, and in the Winter time. The Palſey that cometh by a ſinew ſeparate and cut aſunder, is (as *Ægineta* ſaith) vncurable, and ſo is that which cometh by ouerthwart inciſions of the backe, or by great luxation of it. Moreouer if the member paralyticke do waxe leſſe, or change his colour, it is hard to be cured, or rather not curable. For it declareth thoſe parts not onely to be deſtitute of the animall faculty, but alſo of the naturall, and after a ſort of the vitall alſo. Their diet muſt be altogether extenuating and drying. Let the ſicke therefore remaine in an aire that is hote and dry, and in the firſt three dayes he may vſe altogether abſtinence, or let him content himſelfe with *aqua muſa*, or a litle Ptiſan broth. Afterwards giue him meates of good iuyce, light of digeſtion, and let them be roſted: let him eate chiefly birds of the mountaines, and Partrich, reare egges, Almonds, and Pine nuts. For potherbs let him vſe Fenell, Parcely, Hyſope, Marioram, Sage, and Sauory. Let him eſchue fiſh, fruite, and all things that be cold and moiſt. Let him drinke but litle, for it is good to ſuſtaine as much thirſt as he can poſſibly. Let him drinke *Muſa*, wherein Sage or Cinamon hath bene boiled, or let him vſe to drinke that which the barbarous Phyſitions at this day call Hippocras, made after this ſort,

Victus ratio.

Hippocras.

℞. of choſen Cinamon, ℥. ij. of Ginger, ℥. ß. of long Pepper, Graines, and Galingale, ana ℥. j. of Cardamomes, ℥. j ß of Nutmegs, and Cloues, and Mace, ana. ℥. j. boile them all in three quarts of running water, vntill a pint and a halfe be conſumed: then ſtraine it hard, and with halfe a pound of Sugar make it pleaſant to drinke. He may drinke no wine at all vntill he be perfectly cured, but if the patient can hardly be kept ſo long time from wine, giue him but a litle in the declining of the diſeaſe, and let it be thinne and allayed. Mouing and exerciſe, if he can vſe them, are very good for him. Let him eſchue ſleepe in the day. Let his night ſleepe be in a meane. Let him be mery and flie perturbations of the mind. For the cure, if age, ſtate of body, time of the yeare, and ſuch like permit, it is good to begin with blond letting, ſpecially if there be ſignes of plenitude. But you muſt draw away bloud moderately, leſt the body be cooled ouermuch, and you muſt let bloud on the whole and ſound ſide. Then a few daies after bloudletting you may cleanſe the inteſtines with cliſters made thus,

Curatio.
Venæ ſectio.

Clyſter.

℞. of Mallowes, Holyhockes, Mercury, Cammomill, Sage and Betony, ana. M. j. of *Stœchas*, ℥ ß. of Rew, and Calamint, ana. M. ß. of ſeeds of Fennell, and Ammeos, ana. ℥. ij. boile theſe in ſufficient water vntill the third part be conſumed, then take of that decoction ℔ j. of *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥. ß. of *Electuarium Nidum* ℥ iij. of hony of Roſes, ℥ ß of oiles of Laurell, *Ireos*, and Rew, ana. ℥. j. of Salt gemme, ℥. j. commixe them together and make a cliſter. Afterward miniſter vnto him decoctions and ſirupes which haue vertue to extenuate flegmaticke humors and make them apt to be purged, whereof you ſhall find examples before in the 7. Chapter. The humours being thus prepared, miniſter medicines which do purge fleame, beginning with gentle ones, and proceeding by litle and litle to ſtronger. Beſides thoſe purgations which are rehearſed in the ſeuenth Chap. aforeſaid, you may vſe *Pilulæ Aſſaieret, Arabicæ, fœtida*, with the which you muſt alwayes commixe Agaricke. Neither doth it ſuffice to purge the patient once, but you muſt do it ſo often, letting 4. or 5. daies paſſe betweene each purging. The next day after he is purged, it profiteth much to

giue

giue vnto him *Theriacam* or *Mithridatum*. The body being well purged, you must vse sternutations, gargarismes, odoraments, and such other like as are rehearsed in the 7. Chap. and that specially when the braine is principally affected: for if the braine be not affected, you must rather minister such medicines as may corroborate and strengthen it, in this sort, ℞. of *Diambra*, *Plirisarcoticon*, and *Diamoschu dulce*, ana. ℈ j. of powder of Swallowes prepared, ℥. ß. of Coriander seeds prepared, ℥. j. of Sugar Roset, ℥. iij. with Sugar dissolued in Rose water make lozenges, and let the patient hold a litle of one of them in his mouth often. It profiteth also in this disease to take ℥. j. of *Castoreum*, or of *Opoponax*, or *Sagapenum*, in *aqua mulsa*. Also *Diatrion pipereon* is good for them. If the braine be chiefly affected, you must annoint the head with hote medicines, as with *Castoreū*, Mints, Laurell berries, oile of *Ireos* boiled with a litle vineger, and such like. Therefore if coldnesse of the weather do not let it, you may shaue the head, and annoint it all ouer the forehead. If the marrow of the back be affected at the vpper end, then after the former purgation you must in the nape of the neck, where the marrow of the back springeth forth of the brain, vse oiles, & ointments which haue vertue to dissolue and discusse, but you must begin with the weakest, as with oiles of Cammomill, Dill, Spike, Lillies, *Ireos*, Nard, Nutmegs, S. Iohns wort, & earth wormes, wherewith you must annoint the nape of the neck, & the resolued side, specially the halfe of the ridge bone: and you must wrap the paralyticke members in warme linnē clothes, or in a fox skin, to keepe them warme: or you may bath them with the decoction of Sage, Marioram, Cammomill, S. Iohns wort, *Stæchas*, and Rosemary. Afterward you may proceed to stronger medicines, as be oiles *Costiuum*, *Vulpinum*, oiles of Rew, and Bayes, oiles of *Castoreum*, *Euphorbium*, & oile of tile stones, called *Oleum è lateribus*, or *Oleum Philosophorum*. To these you may adde these ointments, *Vnguentum Aregon*, *Vnguentum Agrippa*, & *Vnguentum Martiaton*: and hote simples may be added also if you will, as be Betony, Sage, Rosemary, Galingale, Cowslips, Rew, Calamint, Pellitory, Pepper, *Castoreum* & *Euphorbium*. Of these you may make an ointment after this sort, ℞. of *Vng. Aregon*, & *Martiaton*, ana. ℥. j. of *Vnguentum Agrippa*, ℥. ß. of oiles *Costiuum* and *Vulpinum*, ana. ℥. ß. of oile of earthwormes, ℥ ß. of oile of *Castor*, ℥. j. ß. of powders of Betony, Pepper, Sage, ana. ℈. j. of *Castoreum*, & *Euphorbium*, ana. ℈. ß. of Galingale, or roots of *Acorus*, ℈. ij. with Waxe as much as sufficeth, make an ointment. Or thus, ℞. of *Oleum Costiuum*, ℥ ij of oile of Pepper, ℥ j. ß. oile of *Euphorbium*, ℥. ij. of *aqua vitæ*, ℥. ij. ß of iuyce of Sage, and Cowslips, ana. ℥ j. ß. of Galingale, ℥ iij. of *Stæchas* & Rosemary, ana. ℥. ij. of Pellitory and Pepper, ana. ℥. j. of *Euphorbium* ℥ ß bruse them and boile them vntill the *aqua vitæ* and iuyces be consumed, then straine out the oiles, and put to the Waxe, and make a liniment. By example of them you may make a Cerote also after this maner, ℞ of Bay berries, Pellitory, and Pepper, ana. ℥. ij of Galingale, ℥ j. of *Stæchas*, Betony, and Elder, ana. ℥. j. ß. of Mustard seed & *Nigella*, ana. ℥. j. of *Euphorbium* & *Castoreum*, ana. ℈. j. of *Oleum Costiuum*, ℥ j. ß. of oile of Pepper, ℥. j. of oile of *Euphorbium*, ℥. iij. with Waxe & Rosin sufficient make a Cerote. Also you may make a quilt thus, ℞. Hysope, Marioram, S. Iohns wort, Sage, Rew, and Bay leaues, ana ℥ ij Spike, Masticke, *Castoreum* and *Stæchas*, ana ℈. ij. Cloues, Maces, Nutmegs, ana. ℈. ß. red

Capitis purgatio.

Lozenges.

Vnguentum.

Aliud.

Cerotum.

Sacculus.

Rose leaues dried, M. ß. beate them all to powder, and make a quilt with them.

Fomentum. Also a fomentation may conueniently be made thus: ℞. Sage, Rosemary, S. Iohns wort, Cowslip, Hyssop, Mariorā, Betony, Peniroyall and Calamint, of each M. ß. boile them in white wine, and adde to the decoction of *Castoreum*, ℥ ij. of flowers of *Stœchas*, and Lauender, ana. ℥. j. ß. wherewith you may often bath the members affected before you vse the aforesaid ointments or quilt. Moreouer you may set cupping glasses lightly without scarification to the members affected, that they may draw thither bloud and heate, and spirits; and if the members themselues cannot aptly haue cupping glasses applyed to them, apply thē at the least to the parts next adioyning. After cupping you may vse the aforesaid ointments and cerotes: so that the members affected be first rubbed & chafed.

Balneum. If the disease relent not by all these meanes, (as *Ætius* doth counsell) you may vse sinapismes or cauterization by fire where the originall of the affect is. Last of all, an hote house or dry bath will profit much, or, if they may conueniently come to them, natural baths which spring from brimstone, Alume and Salt, such as be the baths in Germany called *Badeniæ*, *Feriuæ*, *Cellences*, and others in England at Bath. But it is good for them before bathing, to be caried vp & downe in a wagon or horslitter. And this may suffice for the cure of the Palsey occupying one whole side. But if neither the braine, nor the beginning of the ridge bone be affected, but onely some other parts of the marrow of the backe, then you must search that part of the backe that is affected, and apply such remedies to it as are before rehearsed. And in like sort if any particular sinew be affected, you must find out his originall where he springeth, and there apply the former medicines or their like. Yet remember you must neuer altogether neglect the braine, although it be not principally affected. If the Palsey be caused of extreme cold without humours abounding in the body, then the place affected being found out, and the medicines before rehearsed being applyed vpon it, you shall cure it. But you may not altogether neglect the braine, nor the member that is paralyticke, but vse to them such remedies as are afore taught. Bloudletting, purging and all other euacuations may be omitted, onely vse remedies to alter and strengthen the members. If the Palsey be caused by an inflammation or *Scirrus* of any part, the inflammation or hard swelling being cured, the resolution will be cured also. If any pinching or binding of the sinewes cause resolution, the bloud being remoued, the cure will soone ensue. If the spondils of the ridge of other bones being out of ioynt or broken, do cause resolution, if the resolution be curable, it will be remedied by their cure. Likewise if Palsey ensue a wound or vlcer in the head, or backe, or in any particular sinew, it will be cured by their cure, except it be altogether vncurable.

Gestatio.

Palsey coming of cold.

Cure of Palsey coming of other causes.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Palsey in one member.

Although any expert man may easily gather out of the former Chapter the cure of resolution chancing in any particular member, yet lest those that haue lesse skill should stand in doubt in some causes, it shall not be superfluous to make discourse of certaine particular resolutions. There is an affect of the face called in Greek *Spasmus Cynicus*, and in Latin *Conuulsio canina*, or of some

Tortura

Tortura oris. The cure of this is like the cure of the Palsey that is rehearsed in the former Chapter. For both bloudletting if nothing be against it, and purging, and clisters, and liniments rehearsed in the former Chapter, be good for this. Furthermore for the particular cure of this disease, you must let the patient bloud in the veine vnder the tongue, and fasten cupping glasses to the shutting of the ioynts, and giue them *Masticatoria* made after this forme: ℞. seeds of Stauisacre, Masticke, the roote of Pellitory, ana. ℥.j. Hysope, Origan, ana ℥.j. ß. of Mustard seed, ℥.ij. powder thē & commixe them with Turpentine & waxe, and make Trochiskes to chew. Also it is good for the patient to looke often in a glasse, that he seeing the writhing of his face, may with all his power intend to amend it. Also to the griefe of the patient, that is, to the sinewes that be sprong, you must apply the medicines that are in the former Chapter. Also this following is very good. ℞. *Olibanum*, Masticke, ana. ℥.ij. *ligni* Aloes, ℥.j. Cloues, Galingale, Cinamon, Zedoary, Nutmegs, Cubebs, ana. ℥.vj. Mirrhe, Aloes, *Labdanum, Sarcocolla, Castoreum* ℥ ß. Bay berries, Pine nuttes, ana. ℥. vj. *Ireos, Aristolochia rotunda, Dictamus, Consolidæ maioris*, ana. ℥.j. Gum *Elemni, Opopo-nacis*, Beniomē, ana. ℥.ij. the iuyce of *Camepiteos*, and the iuyce of Cowslips, ana. ℥.iiij. Turpentine, ℥.j. powder all that is to be powdred, and put all in a limbecke of glasse, and distill it with a soft fire: and that which cometh first will be like water, which you shall keepe. The next will be thicke like oile, which keep also, & with this oile annoint the place, and let him drinke of the water three or foure ounces at once with a litle wine: this is very excellent good. But you must note in this place, that the necke is not troubled with the palsey which sheweth peruerse and ouerthwart, but the other. When the tongue hath the Palsey, the body being first purged, you must cut the veines vnder it, and apply a cupping glasse to the chinne. Also let him vse *Masticatoria*, and collutions of Mustard seeds and such like. Also let him not neglect exercises of the tongue. And the necke, and the hinder part of the head, let them be annointed with sharpe ointments and liniments. Also the Physition may apply cerotes and sinapismes, and such like as before. When the bladder hath the Palsey, sometime the vrine is withholden, and sometime it goeth away against the patients his will. In this case you must apply remedies to the belly and to the priuities, oyles of Rew, Nard, Spike, or oile in the which is sodden the roote of *Eringium*, Rew, Comin, or Dill, or such like. All are very good: & you may well commixe with thē Butter, *Castoreum, Galbanum, Opoponax.* And there can be no better remedie, then to put these things in the bladder by the yard with a ciring. First therefore if the patient cannot make water, you must get out the vrine by a fine pipe made of siluer for this purpose, called *Cathetera.* Afterward take those medicines that are rehearsed a litle before, and powre them into the bladder with a ciring; this will do maruellous much good. Also medicines prouoking vrine giuen to drinke be very good for it, and so is *Castoreum* likewise. Also plaisters made of laxatiue things are profitable therefore. The palsey of the yard doth let and hinder the flowing of the vrine, and sperme, and carnall copulation, therfore you must vse the same remedies which are rehearsed for the palsy in the bladder: but priuatly you must apply to the loines & the ioynts of the huckle bones things that will heat: & ye must vse those remedies that haue power to erect the yard.

Curatio.

Note.

Palsey of the tongue.

Palsey of the bladder.

Palsey of the yard.

And *Castoreum* may effectually be ministred, as wel for this as for all other Palseyes: the sicke must chiefly eschue meates and drinkes that be coole. By these examples you may easily find how to cure other members that be paralyticke.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the Falling sickenesse.

Morbus comitialis.

Epilepsia in Greeke (as *Galen* saith) is a conuulsion, drawing and stretching of all the parts of the whole body, not continually, but that which chanceth at sundrie times with hurt of the mind and sense. It is so called because it attacheth both the sense and feeling of the head, and also of the mind. The Latines call this disease, *Morbus Comitialis*. There be three differences in this sickenesse or disease. The first is caused when this sickenesse cometh onely of disease in the braine, as it chanceth when grosse and clammie fleame, or sharpe choler doth stop the passage of the spirit in the ventricles of the braine. If this euill cometh of a grosse humour, then the disease cometh suddenly, and it is soone gone againe. Secondly it is caused through an euill affect in the mouth of the stomacke, that is, when the braine laboureth to driue away the vapours and humours that ascend vp to it from the stomacke. Thirdly the falling sickenesse is caused, when as the patient feeleth a thing like vnto a cold aire, coming from some member, and creeping vp to the braine, but this chanceth very seldome. There goeth before this euill an vnwise state of the body and minde, sadnesse, forgetfulnesse, troublesome dreames, ach of the head, and continuall fulnesse in it, specially in anger, paleneſse of the face, inordinate mouing of the tongue, and many do bite it. As soone as this euill taketh them, the sicke fall downe, and they are plucked vp together, they snort, and sometime they cry out; many do tremble and turne round about. But the peculiar signe of this disease is soming at the mouth. This disease chanceth most to children. *Galen* saith, that if it taketh any person after 25. yeares of age, he shall haue it till he die. The perfume or smoke of *Bitumen* or *lapis Gagatis*, or of Goats horne, will declare and shew the that haue the Epilepsie. Also the liuer of an he Goat eaten, or the sauour of the liuer sodden will do the same. It is profitable for them that haue this disease to vse in their diet things that will attenuate, cut and diuide. Therefore let the aire wherein the sicke remaineth be hote and dry, specially if the euill be caused of fleame. He must eschue all flesh except birds that flie on mountaines: also he must auoid all kind of pulses, fish, and wine, especially if it be old and thicke. Let his drinke be *Mulsa*, or thin ale: the eating of Capers doth maruellously profit. Exercise and frictions are good: but rub the head after all the other members be rubbed. Let him not vse too much leeherie: let him sleepe measurably on nights, and let him eschue exceeding sleeping on the day. He must abstaine from Garlicke, Onions, Mustard, and such like fumous things. He must eschue drinking straight after a bath. If a child haue this disease, you need not much to studie for remedies, for with a moderate diet oftentimes the disease endeth by it owne accord: you must appoint a diet for the infant and the nurse. Therefore if the child be not yet weaned, let the nurse vse meats of good iuyce, and let her vse exercise before meate: let her eschue carnall copulation, and let her vse for her diet things that be hote and dry, that thereby the milke may be hotter

1 *Causa.*

2

3

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Cure of infants.

hotter and thinner. Annoint the head of the infant continually with oile of Dill and *Ireos*, putting to them the powder of Cypresse, *Ireos*, Maidenhaire, Marioram, and such like, but neuer wash the head with water whether it be hote or cold. Also giue the child clarified hony to like. Also this *Ecligma* is praised of many, ℞. fine white Sugar, ℥. ij. oile of sweet Almonds, as much as is sufficient to make it of the substance of a lohoch, and giue it to the child to licke. Also it is good to commixe with it miscle of the oke, and Vnicorns horne. Also hang about the childs necke roote of Piony being greene, for it helpeth maruellously. Moreouer they that fall into this disease after they be past childs age, you must annoint and make straight those members which are writhed and plucked out of order in them. Afterward you must open the mouth, putting a wedge betweene the teeth, and with a fether dipped in oile of *Ireos*, prouoke vomit to bring out fleame. Also it is good to quicken the senses with odoraments: also *Peucedanum*, or dog Fennell, Rew, *Bitumen*, and iuyce of *Silplinum*. The matter continuing very sharply, put into their mouth *Castoreum*, or *Laserpitium* with *Oximel*. Also when they are raised, you must cast in sharpe clisters. They that begin to recouer (their strength being refreshed) purge them with *Hiera Galeni*, or some other conuenient medicine: and this is the cure of a new and sharpe Epilepsie, therfore now we will treat how to helpe that which is old. The patient must drinke water long time, or very small ale, and that in the beginning of the cure, vnlesse any thing do forbid it. Let bloud in the veine of the hamme, or the ring finger, and then three or foure dayes after you must comfort the bodie: and it is good to minister preparatiues to extenuate, as sirupes of Wormwood, of Hysope, of *Stæchados*, *Oximel scilliticum*, decoction of Hysope, rootes of Piony, and others rehearsed before. Afterward purge with purgations, that is, with *Pilulæ Cochiæ*, *Pilulæ de Agarico*, and such as purge fleame. Also I iudge *Stubium* to be of great force in this kind, being vsed as is declared before in the xv. Chapter, fol. 21. which doth mightily purge the superfluous humours of the head. And also I haue knowne this to helpe many, oile of exitore, and *Oleum de lateribus*: with it annoint the hinder part of the head morning and euening warme. Furthermore make a quilt with three sheets of gray paper, and bast vpon it cotton wooll, and let the patient weare it day and night, vj. dayes. Then take two frying pans, make them red hot, and hold one of them ouer his head, till it waxeth cold; then take the other and do likewise; do this till the patients head be very hot. And if his griefe take him in thy presence, set the patient on his knees, and let his armes be holden crosse ouer his bodie as may be, and let his head be thus warmed many dayes together, and euery morning and euening let him take these things: the first day, of the powder of the scull of a man burned, one dramme at once, and the next day of the miscle of the oke, made in powder, ℥. j. and the third day the powder of Piony roots, ℥. j. and after those three dayes, take these powders each day, till the patient be healed, which will be in fortie dayes. But if this euill be engendred of melancholie, then seeke medicines to purge it in the Chapter of *Melancholia*, howbeit it is lawfull to take the barke of dry blacke Hellebore, and beate it into fine powder, and to minister one dram at once with *Mulsa*, and a litle Pepper to it: also you may make Pils thereof, and giue them. And when the sicke is purged:

Ecligma.

Cure of yong folkes.

Cure of Epilepsie in old folkes.

A purging potion of stubium.

enough, bring him to a bath; the third day fasten cupping glasses with scarification to the sides and shoulders, and then many daies after comfort the body,
Hiera Galeni. and againe purge him with *Hiera Galeni.* After that fasten cupping glasses to the noddle of the necke. The next day apply to the head like a plaister, bread sodden in *Mulsa*, adding to it bitter Almonds brayed, or *Serpillum*, or Calamints, or Mints, or Rew, and do that three dayes. Then shaue the head, and annoint it with iuyce of *Peucedanum*, infused in vineger, in which *Serpillum*, or *Ireos* hath bene sodden. Then againe the body being refreshed, purge the sicke onely with three drammes of *Hiera*: after those things be done, minister sternutaments, *Masticatoria*, and such things as do purge by the nose; then afterward if you thinke good minister a clister. At the last apply ointments, liniments, and Emplaisters, which haue vertue to dissolue and driue away, whereof you may find examples plentie in diuerse places.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Crampe.

Spasmos. SPasmos in Greeke, in Latine *Conuulsio*, in English the Crampe, is a disease in the which the sinewes are drawne and pluckt vp against ones will. There be
1 of it three kinds of differences. The first is called in Greeke τέτανος, in Latine *Distentio.* It is when the necke remaineth altogether immoueable, and cannot
2 be turned any way, but must be holden right forth. The second is called in Latine *Tensio ad anteriora.* In this disease the head and the necke be drawne downe
3 to the breast. The third is called in Latine *Tensio ad posteriora.* In this disease the
Causæ. head is drawne downe backward to the backe & the shoulders. For the causes of this disease you must note that *Hippocrates* appointeth but onely two, that is, fulnesse & emptinesse of the sinewes in the body, and sometime it cometh with biting or stinging of some venimous beast. If the Crampe doth take one that is haile, or by and by assoone as the disease cometh, or not long after, then is the disease caused of fulnesse; but when the conuulsion cometh after many sweats,
Victus ratio. vomits, watchings or drinesse, then it is caused of emptinesse. The diet of them that haue conuulsion which cometh of fulnes, must be hot and dry; but in them which haue the conuulsion caused of emptinesse, the diet must be moist. Therefore the patient must be nourished with suppings and fat broths, and flesh that is easie to digest, and that which nourisheth well. For their drinke let them vse wine that is thinne and watery, which may quickly be dispersed into all parts of the bodie, vnlesse a feauer be present: for then iuyce of Prisan is profitable, or in stead of wine minister decoction of Cinamon. Also prouoke sleepe. Let them eschue exercises and all things that may emptie the bodie: to be short, let
Cure of fulnes. his diet be like vnto theirs which haue the feauer Hecticke. The cure of Cramp
Bloudletting. caused of fulnesse, must straight begin with letting of bloud, if nothing do prohibite it. It is meet to take away much bloud, but it may not be done all at once on heaps, but by litle and litle; you must let bloud on the middle veine of the
Clyster. arme. If after bloudletting it seemeth that the sicke may suffer it, wash the wombe with a sharpe clister. That part which is drawne must be strongly kept together, and they must altogether eschue inordinate mouings, and the place must be chafed with oiles of Rew, or *Ireos*, or some other such like, or it must be couered with wooll dipped in the said oiles, or you must lay vpon it a broad

broad bladder filled with oyle. And if the conuulsion commeth of fleame, then the fleame muſt firſt be extenuate and made thinne, and be prepared, that it may be apt to be purged: then by and by miniſter a purgation to purge fleame. Alſo apply cupping glaſſes with ſcarification, for light ones do hurt. If the legs haue the Crampe, apply it to the Hanches, and to the latter knittings of the ſhoulders. Moreouer the head muſt be purged with Maſticatories, Gargariſmes, and ſuch like medicines. Time proceeding it is good to bath him, and therefore euery day twice or thrice let him deſcend into water of Brimſtone or Alume, or ſalt water; but let him not tarrie in them, leſt ſtrength faile him: or if there cannot be vſing of naturall bathes, it is lawfull to vſe an hote houſe, or dry bath, or water in which are ſodden Laurell leaues, Sothernwood. Peniroyall, Wormwood, Rew, Sage, S. Iohns wort, Marioram, and Betony, and the places that are drawne ought to be couered with skins of Wolues or Foxes: alſo apply the ointments which are rehearſed in the cure of the Palſey of the vſing of cold things, but miniſter often hote medicines, ſuch as be *Theriaca* and *Mithridatum*, and ſuch as be hote. But the ſureſt and beſt of all other is the infuſion of *Caſtoreum* miniſtred the quantity of one dram: truly not onely the drinking of it, but alſo the annointing of it outwardly is good. Moreouer the conuulſion which cometh of emptineſſe and drineſſe, is ſuch an euill diſeaſe, as it is almoſt vncurable. Thoſe which are ſo drawne, you muſt nouriſh with hote oile of *Hydreleum*. Alſo it is good to bring him to a bath, and ſoft frictions with oile are good, and all their whole cure muſt alwayes be like the cure of Hecticks. If the conuulſion chanceth by the ſtroke of ſome venimous beaſt, in the beginning of the cure you muſt labour to draw out the poyſon; which you may do by making the wound wider, and by ſcarifying the place round about, ſetting vpon it cupping glaſſes: alſo you may annoint it with Leeke ſeed brayed with Salt, or Garlike, or Onions, and after the fall of the ſcurfe, you ſhall keepe the wound xl or lx. dayes from a ſcarre: to the which if it make much haſt, you ſhall open the ſore againe with aſhes of vine or of figge tree: and it is good to annoint it with Horehound or leaues of *Anagallis*. Alſo nouriſh the place with the decoction of the roote of Sorrell. Alſo *Theriaca* infuſed in oile of Roſes, and layed to the wound is good, becauſe it doth draw out and purge the poyſon from the bottome. Therefore they erre much which ſay, that *Theriaca* being outwardly applyed, doth driue the poyſon inwards.

The crampe coming of fleame.

Capitis purgatio.

Balneum.

The crampe coming of emptineſſe and drineſſe.

Cura veneni.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Mare.

Ephialtes in Greeke, in Latine *Incubus* and *Incubo*. It is a diſeaſe, whereas one thinketh himſelfe in the night to be oppreſſed with a great weight, & beleeueth that ſomething cometh vpon him, and the patient thinketh himſelfe ſtrangled in this diſeaſe. It is called in Engliſh the Mare. This vice is cauſed of exceſſe of drinking, & continuall rawnes of the ſtomacke, from whence do aſcend vapors groſſe and cold, filling the ventricles of the braine, letting the faculties of the braine to be diſperſed by the ſinewes. They that haue this diſeaſe can ſcarce moue, being aſtonied, and feeling in ſleepe imagination of ſtrangling, and as it were the holding of ſome thing that doth violently inuade them. In

Cauſe.

this the voice is suppressed: some haue such vaine imagination, that they beleeue they heare the thing that doth oppresse them. At the last with much trouble the vapours being attenuate and driuen away, and the passage of the spirits being opened, the sicke is by and by raised. It is good to remedie this euill at the first: for if it continue, it inducеth and sheweth before some grieuous disease, as the *Apoplexia*, the falling sickenesse, or madnesse. Let their diet be thinne, and such as will not engender windinesse. Let him vse no wine, but that which is mixed with water, or none at all but Ale. Let him eschue sleeping in the day, and let him not go to bed by and by after meate: and to be short, let his whole diet be such as is described and set downe for the falling sickenesse. For the cure, if the whole bodie be full, you must begin with blondletting, and you must cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if ill iuyce be gathered in the body for lacke of perfect digestion, then purge the body by purgations: and if fleame abound, you may first minister preparatiues to extenuate the fleame, and then purge it. The whole body being purged, you must apply outward medicines, whereof you may find examples before. Blacke seeds of Piony doth chiefly helpe them: you may giue them fifteene seeds braied with water. And nourish the head with oyle of Dill made hot: and couer the head with a cap when they go to bed. Minister within the body those things which strengthen the head, as *Aromaticum rosarum*, *Diamoschu dulcis*, *Diamber*, *Dianthon*, *Piriſarcoticon*, and such other like.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Madnesse.

Mania in Greeke is a disease which the Latines call *Insania* and *furor*: that is, madnesse and furiousnesse. They that haue this disease be wood & vnruly like wild beasts. It differeth from the Frensie, because in that there is a feauer, but *Mania* cometh without a feauer. It is caused of much bloud flowing vp to the braine: sometime the bloud is temperate, & sometime onely the abundance of it doth hurt: sometime of sharpe & cholericke humours, or of a hot distemper of the braine. There goeth before madnesse debilitie of the head, tickling of the eares, & shinings come before their eyes, great watchings, thoughts and strange things approch the mind, and heauinesse with trembling of the head. If time proceed, there is raised in them a rauenous appetite, & a readinesse to bodily lust, the eyes waxe hollow, and they neither winke nor becken. But madnesse caused of bloud onely, there followeth continuall laughing: there cometh before the sight (as the sicke thinketh) things to laugh at. But when choler is mixed with bloud, then the pricking and feruent mouing of the braine maketh them irefull, mouing, angry, and bold. But if the choler waxe grosse, & doth pricke and pull the braine and his other members, it maketh them wood, wilde and furious, and therefore they are the worst to cure. Let their diet be thin soupings liquide, making a good stomacke without fulnes, & such things as do engender no bloud, & you must forbid them altogether drinking of wine. Where this disease is caused of abundance of bloud, you must begin the cure with letting of bloud: it is good to cut the vttermost veine of the arme, or if that do not appeare, then cut the middle veine. In women cut the veine on the anckles, for that prouoketh menstruis: you must draw out so much bloud as strength will

Cause.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Cure if it come of bloud onely.

Bloudletting.

will suffer. Therefore in letting of bloud you must continually seele the pulses. Moreouer, after the letting of bloud, nourish the head with oiles of Roses, and vineger, or iuyce of *Polygonis*, or *oleum Melinum*, *vnguentum infrigidans Galeni*. Then apply moist wool wet in oile to the hinder part of the head. After bloud letting, at night prouoke sleepe: for if after bloudletting watching do still continue, the sicke will appeare to be more outragious. Therefore minister boldly with iuyce of Ptisan *Diacodion*, or mingle it with water: for so sleepe is plenteously enticed. And two dayes after minister Trochiskes *de hestear* with *Diacodion*. Also oile of Violets with womans milke is good. Likewise an Embrocation made of dry Violets water Lilies, Willow leaues, and Roses, leaues of Lettuce, seed of Poppy, and such like, and other medicines rehearsed in the next Chap. Furthermore the bellie must be made soluble with conuenient food, with clisters. These things being done, if there be need you must draw bloud out of the midst of the forehead: set horse Leeches round about the head, and specially the forepart of the head. For the cure of them which haue madnesse caused of choler mixed with bloud, you must minister purgations of *Hierapicra*, and other medicines that will purge choler. The iuyce of *Elleborus niger* doth maruellous much profit in this griefe, so that you minister but ten or twelue graines at once. But if they dote, and refuse to drinke a purging medicine, then, that you may the easilier deceiue them, commixe the purgation with their meates, or with fat Figs or Dates. Also the onely roote of wild Fennell helpeth them, and the seed drunke with water. The sickenesse declining, bring the sicke into a bath, and apply discussiue medicines to driue away that which remaineth. He that will haue more, let him seeke in the Chapter following *de Melancholia*.

Externa medicina.

Embrechæ.

Cure of it comming of choler mixed with bloud.

Balneum.

CHAP. XXVIII.
Of Melancholy.

MElancholie is an alienation of the mind, troubling reason, and waxing foolish, so that one is almost beside himselfe. It cometh without a feauer, and is chiefly engendred of melancholy occupying the minde, and changing the temperature of it. It is caused three kind of wayes: for sometime it is caused of the common vice of melancholy bloud being in al the veines of the whole body, which also hurteth the braine. But oftentimes onely the bloud which is in the braine is altered, and the bloud in all the rest of the body is vnhurt, and that chanceth two wayes: for either it is deriued from other places, & ascendeth vp thither, or else it is engendred in the braine it selfe. Also sometime it is engendred through inflammation, & euill affect about the stomacke & sides: and therfore there be three diuersities of melancholiousnesse, according to the three kinds of causes. The most common signes be fearefulnesse, sadnesse, hatred, and also they that be melancholious haue strange imaginations: for some thinke themselues brute beasts, & do counterfeit their voice & noise: some think themselues vessels of earth, or earthen pots, & therfore they withdraw themselues frō them that they meete, lest they should knocke together. Moreouer they desire death, and do very often behight and determine to kill themselues: and some feare that they should be killed. Many of them do alwayes laugh, and ma-

Cause.

1

2

3

nie to weep, some thinke themselues inspired with the holy Ghost, and do propheey vpon things to come. But these be the peculiar signes of them that haue melancholiousnesse caused through consent of the whole body: for in them the state of the body is slender, blacke, rough, and altogether melancholious, caused naturally, or through certaine thoughts, or watchings, or eating of wicked meates, or through Emeroids, or suppression of menstruis But they which haue *Melancholia* caused of vice in the sides, they haue rawnesse, & much windinesse, sharpe belkings, burnings, and grieuousnesse of the sides. Also the sides are plucked vpward, and many times are troubled with inflammation, specially about the beginning of the disease. Also there is costiuenesse of the wombe, litle sleepe, troublous and naughtie dreames, swimming of the head, and sound in the eares. Let his diet be such as doth not ingender melancholy. Therefore let them tarrie in an aire hote and moist, and let them vse meates of good iuyce, that be moist and temperate, and let their bread be well baked and wrought: let their flesh be Capons, Hennes, Partriches, or Fesants, stonie fishes, and such like. Let the sicke vse wine that is white, thinne, and not very old, and let them eschue wine that is thicke and blacke: let their exercises be meane, let them ride or walke by places pleasant and greene, or vse sayling on water. Also a bath of sweete water, with a moist diet, let the sicke vse often as one of his remedies: sleepe is wonderfull good for them, as also moderate carnall copulation. Let them be mery as much as may be, and heare musicall instruments and singing. But when the whole bodie aboundeth with melancholicke bloud, it is best to begin the cure with letting of bloud, & you must cut the liuer vein on the arme. But when the melancholicke bloud occupieth only the braine, the sicke needeth no bloudletting, vnlesse there be very much bloud; and therefore let the sicke vse often bathings, and moist diet of good iuyce, which is without windinesse, & let them vse delectations of the minde, and let them be cured by these without any strong remedies. But if the disease hath endured long, it requireth sundrie medicines that be strong, Therefore whether the melancholiousnesse be caused through vice of the whole bodie (as is said, the bloud being first drawne out) or through the onely euill affect of the braine, you must minister medicines that will purge downward. And a few dayes after purging and bloudletting, let the sicke drinke daily in the morning this decoction. ℞. flowers of Borage, Bugloss, Violets, ana. M. j. great Raisins the stones picked out, ℥ j. Harts tongue, M j. Fumitory, M. ß. Barke of the roote of Capers, *Tamariscus*, ana. ℥ iij. roots of Fennell, Parcely, Liquorice, ana ℥ j. Thime, *Epithimum*, ana ℥ ß. seeth all these in three pounds of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and make the iuyce of that decoction sweete with Sugar, and clarifie it with the whites of egges, and adde thereto sirupe of Fumitory, and *Epithimum*, ana. ℥ ij. and make a potion. After that sort at these dayes they minister sirupe of Violets, and Bugloss, putting to them the water of Harts tongue, Hops, Endiue and Borage. But seeing it appeareth that the stomacke cannot beare very much vsing of distilled waters, it is better to vse decoctions of the aforesaid herbes, commixed with sirupes after this sort: ℞. Sirupe of Borage, ℥ j. Sirupe of *Epithimum*, ℥ ß. decoction of Harts tongue, Fumitory, and Endiue, ℥ iij. commixe them and make a potion. After this purge the body with *confectio Hamech* and *Diasenæ*,

Victus ratio.

Balneum.

Venæ sectio.

Cure if it come of melancholy bloud.

Purgatio.

Decoctum præparans.

Potio.

Diasenæ, Pilulæ Indæ, Pilulæ è lapide Armenio, and such like. Also it is good to vse this purging decoction, ℞. flowers of Borage, Violets, Roses, ana. M.j. Raisins the stones picked out, *Tamarindus*, ana. ℥ j. *Myrobalanes citrinæ, Indos, emblicos, belliricos*, aua. ℥ ß. leaues of Sene, Polipody, ana. ℥. vij. Prunes damascene x. seeth them in a iust quantity of water vnto the third part: then straine it, and make the iuyce of that decoction sweet with Sugar, thē minister, ℥ iiij. therof in the morning. If this do not sufficiently purge, you may dissolue therein, ℥. ij. of *Diasenæ*. Also the infusion of *Epithimū* is maruellously good, being made thus: ℞. *Epithimum*, ℥. ß. infuse it 24. houres in ℥. iiij. of whay made of Goats milke, then straine it, and wring it hard, & minister it in the morning. Also the infusion of the leaues of Sene is good, which may be thus made, ℞. leaues of Sene, ℥ ij. Prunes Damascene *in numero*, xij. bray them, and infuse them in whay of Goats milke 24. houres, then straine it & presse it, and let it be drunke in the morning. Also it is lawfull to vse this powder, ℞. *Epithimū*, ℥ ß. *lapis Armenius*, Agaricke, ana. ℥ ij. Scammony preparate, ℥. j. Cloues 20. beate them all into powder, and minister euery weeke, ℥. j. or ℥. j. ß. Also it is good to mollifie the belly with whay, but let it not be that which is strained out of cheese: for that is better which is separated from the milke by some decoction, and let them vse it vntill the belly begin to be soluble; you may commixe it with hony. Also it is good a few dayes after the purgation to vse clisters, and let them be such as this is, ℞. Fumitory, Hops, Thime, ana. M.j. *Epithimum*, M. ß. Sene, Polipody, ana. ℥. vj. *Cartami*, ℥ ß seeds of Annise, Fennel. *Ammeos*, Comin, ana. ℥ ij. seeth all in water vntill the third part. Take of the iuyce of that decoction, ℔. j. *Cassia fistularis* newly drawn, ℥. j. *Diasenæ*, ℥ ß. oiles of Violets, & Cammomil, ana. ℥. ß. cōmon Salt, ℥. j. ß. commixe them all and make a clister. Moreouer if the disease be caused through the stopping of Emeroids or menstruis, then we must minister medicines which will driue away the heauinesse of the minde, restore strength, & ingender gladnesse, as is, conserues of Borage, Endiue, Violets, Roses, *Anthos, latificans Galeni, Dianthon*, and such like. Also by no meanes you may forget the vsing of Bathes of sweet water. Also you must apply strong *Embrochæ* to moistē the head, as this, ℞. Mallowes, *Althæa*, Violets, ana. M.j. ß Cammomil, *Stæchados*, ana. M.j. flowers of water Lillies, M. ß. seeds of Lettuce. ℥. j seeds of Scarioll, ℥. j. ß. boile them all in iust quantity of water, and sprinkle the head being shaued with the iuyce of that decoction. After that sort it is good to vse vnctions of oiles of Violets, water Lillies, and such like. Last of all, the sicke must labour that the false and wicked imaginations, and great sadnesse may be driuen away by all meanes that can be inuented. But if the griefe be caused through diseases in the sides, they must continually vse to drinke decoction of Peniroyall, not onely before purgations, but also after them, and likewise decoction of Centory. Afterwards also, minister continually decoction of Wormwood: for it is profitable to the stomacke, and it letteth ingendring of wind in the bellie, and it doth not asswage the belly extremely, but prouoke vrine, causing good digestion, so that many be healed by this onely remedie. Also you must minister those things that prouoke vrine, as Annise, *Daucus, Asarum, Smirnium*, the seed and roote of wild Fennell, and Germander: let the water of the decoction of these be ministred, and minister the powder of them strewed in drinke. Also it

Decoctū purgans Melancholiam.

Dilutum Epithimi.

Puluis purgatorius.

Clyster.

Embrochæ.

Cure if it come of diseases in the sides.

Absinthij decoctum.

Diuretica.

is good that the Phyſition looke to the cure of the ſides. Therfore nouriſh them
Fomenta. with decoction of Rew, Dil, Wormwood, Peniroyall, ſeed of *Agnus caſtus*, Laurell berries, Sauory, Mugwort, and ſuch like. Theſe do eaſe paine and driue away inflammation, eſpecially if they be ſodden in oile and applied to the griefe like
Cataplaſmata a plaiſter. Againſt windines in the ſtomacke with pricking, nouriſh the ſtomacke with Comin, Peniroyall, & vineger ſodden together, and make Emplaiſters of Anniſe ſeeds, *Apium*, Comin, *Smirnium*, and ſuch like, ſodden in oile, & ſuffer the plaiſter to lye ſtill a good while, as well before meate as after it. And when the plaiſter is taken away, couer the ſides largely with wooll, or with a light lambes skin, the place being firſt annointed with *oleum Nardinum*. Alſo you muſt apply
Concurbitulæ. cupping glaſſes lightly without ſcarification. To thoſe with whom this diſeaſe hath tarried long, purging by vomits is a preſent remedie. But you may not vſe ſtrong vomits, for they be malicious to the ſtomacke, and cauſe griefe in the belly. Therefore prouoke vomit with hote water commixed with *Oximel*. But if the ſicke cannot vomit by this meanes, then prouoke it by putting a fether or their finger into the mouth. Alſo the onely vomit made with *Elleborus albus* is
Vomitus. good for them, being made after this ſort, ℞. *Elleborus albus*, ℥. j. cut it in ſmall peeces, and put them in a great Radiſh roote, and after three dayes take out the *Elleborus*, and then ſtampe and wring out the iuyce of the Radiſh; take of that iuyce ℥. vj. hot water, ℥. iiij. *Oximel*, ℥. j. commixe them, & miniſter it all at once to the ſicke warme. This hath bene proued to be very good, ℞. *Stibium*, ℈. or xij. graines made in fine powder, and put the powder into foure ſpoonfuls of Muſcadell, or Malmeſey, and let it ſtand two dayes, and let it be ſhaken three times on the day, and when you will miniſter it powre it out ſoftly, leauing the powder ſtil in the bottome of the glaſſe, and giue but the very wine, which is an excellent thing for this griefe. There be diuerſe other which I will omit till time more conuenient.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of trembling and ſhaking.

Remor in Latine, in Engliſh trembling or ſhaking, it is a diſeaſe which is accompanied with two ſundry mouings. One is, while the member is conſtrained through heauineſſe & griefe to creepe downward. The other is, while the member is caried vpward from his naturall courſe and faculty. This euill
Cauſæ. is cauſed altogether through weakeneſſe of the ſinewes, which doth plainly declare old age: but priuately it cometh of other cauſes, that is, of very cold temperature of nature, cold drinke taken out of time or ſeaſon, ſpecially in feauers. Moreouer the abundance of a cold, groſſe & clammy humor, and much vſing of wine that is vnmixt and cleare, old age and feare are cauſes thereof.
Signa. There need no ſignes to know neither the euill, nor the cauſes of it, becauſe it may be knowne partly by ſight, and partly by the patients words, and the ſtate
Victus ratio. of the body. Let the diet be ſo ordained that it may be cleane contrarie to the cauſes of the diſeaſe, and let his meate be ſuch as will eaſily be diſtributed, firſt broths, then birds that flie, and tender fiſhes. Againſt abundance of groſſe and clammy humours, it is good to vſe thoſe things which haue power to diuide, extenuate, and cut: but he muſt wholly eſchue all things which do hurt the ſinewes, and chiefly the drinking of wine that is vnmixt. He muſt drinke wine

allayed

allayed with water, or *Hydromel*, or Ale. For the cure, they which do tremble or shake through some manifest error, they must altogether abstaine from things that be hurtfull. They therefore that tremble through drinking of wine, vntil they be cleane deliuered of the disease, let them drinke *Hydromel* with the decoction of Sage and Betonie. If the shaking come of cold and grosse humours, then minister the cure which is ascribed for the Palsey, and the Crampe, coming of fulnesse, (letting of bloud onely excepted.) You must annoint the outward parts of the body with oyles that will heate, and couer it with soft wooll: then fasten cupping glasses without scarification from the first shutting of the ioynts, which may be drawne to the outward part of the skin, and so thereby humours may the easier be discussed and driuen away. Also it is good for the sick to drink daily fiue graines of Pepper with ℥.j.ß of *Mulsa*. There be moreouer certaine other simple medicines, which being taken do helpe trembling, that is, *Castoreum*, roote of *Althæa*, decoction of Egrimony, and the braine of an Hare. But what need many words? for the medicins and specially the ointments which are prescribed in the cure of the Palsey, are to be vsed as remedies against this disease.

Curatio.

Cucurbitulæ.

Simplices medicinæ.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Eyes.

I Thought good in respect of the worthinesse of the member, and the manifold diseases to the which it is subiect, to subnect the discourses of the eye, with the remedies of the infirmities which by experience I haue found incident vnto it: and the multiplicitie of it is so great, that the treatise thereof stretcheth beyond the bounds of other ordinarie Chapters. But (as I hope) the Reader will not account it tedious, because of the pleasantnesse and necessitie of the discourse, though it be somewhat long: for God hath (as it were) packed and bestowed an infinite variety of maruels in one litle round subiect, which if it be consumed and distributed into his parts, and according to the dignitie of euery one sufficiently treated of, (I suppose) it would fill a great volume, and require both an exquisite Philosopher to conceiue aright of it, and an excellent Oratour might seeme also necessary to lay abroad at length such secret and wonderfull notions. But the eye which is wont with curious inspection to pry into all other things, and to find out the nature and order of them, hath bin vnable to vnfold his owne wonderfull constitution, and hath bene alway blind in iudging of it selfe, and in foreseeing the discommodities which attend vpon it, or in curing them when they haue layed hold of it. For mine owne part, I will not promise any absolute worke, but as learned Physitions haue thought of it, (and as I my selfe haue by experience learned) so will I frame and fashion my Treatise. An eye therefore is a member, round, whole, and hard, as the ball of a foote, or as the scowred new bason full of cleare water, set in the well of the head to minister light to the body, by the influence of the visible spirits, sent from the fantasticall cell by a sinew that is called *Nerus opticus*, with the helpe of a greater light ministred from without. And very fitly is the place where the eye is set called the *Well of the head*, for the abundance of waterie humours and teares which often dissolue out thereof, sometime of sorow & heauinesse of the heart, sometime of ioy and gladnesse, and sometime of the abundance of waterie hu-

mours cauſed of frigidity and coldneſſe: and thus haue the Phyſitions deſcribed the eye. It ſhall not be vnneceſſarie alſo to diſtribute it into his parts, and therefore (as *Iohannicus* ſaith) the eye hath ſeuen coates, which they eall *tunicæ*, foure colours, and three humours. But his opinion concerning the tunicles, by ſundry Anathomiſts hath bene cuicted, making but onely fiue: yea, and ſome there be, that (ſwaruing from the moſt receiued opinion) haue made roome for a coniecture of their owne, as they thinke by reaſon, excluding all thoſe ouer curious diuiſions, (namely *Iris*, *Cornea*, *Aranea*, *Vuea*, and the reſidue,) and imagine but onely two coates, the one whereof they name *Saluatrix*, becauſe it ſaueth and keepeth the humours: and the other they terme *Diſcolorata*, that is, hauing no colour: and they maintaine, that in the eye it ſelfe there is no colour, but that which is cauſed of the Chriſtalline humor, which if it be planted very neare to the tunicles, then the eye ſeemeth of no colour: if it lye deepe within, it deferreth three viſible colours vnto the beholder, and (as they ſay) the diuerſe placing of this chryſtalline humour begetteth the varietie of colours in ſundry eies; which gaue out Anathomiſts matter to deuiſe their diſtributions, while they referred the colour to the nature of the tunicle, which (indeed) is to be imputed to the humours. For mine owne iudgement, if it be lawfull to iudge in ſo intricate a cauſe, (I thinke) I could very well maintaine, that the humours be the cauſers of the diuerſitie of the colours, though our blind Anathomiſts do impugne it in their common bookes. But I haue taken vpon me rather to cure the maladie of the eye, then to define the nature of it, although this litle *Preludium* will not ſeeme altogether vnneceſſarie.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of a Cataract.

Foure kinds of Cataracts curable.

A Cataract is a corrupt water, congealed like a curd, ingendred of the humours in the eye, diſtempered betwixt the tunicles, and ſet before the ſight of the eye and the Chriſtalline humour. Of theſe maner of Cataracts there be ſeuen diuerſe ſpices or kinds, whereof foure be curable, and three be vncurable. The firſt kind of the curable Cataract is light, very bright, like white chalke, or as alabaſter well poliſhed: and it is cauſed by a ſtroke in the eye, either with a

1 ſticke or a ſtone, or any other outward violence. The ſecond kind is ſomewhat

2 white, and much like vnto a celeſtiall colour, and this proceedeth from the ſtomach, and is commonly cauſed of vnwholſome meates, and vnkind nouriſhment, whereof a groſſe ſumoſitie reſolueth, and aſcendeth vp into the braine, and from thence falleth downe into the eyes. The third kind is alſo whitiſh, but

3 it turneth into the colour of aſhes, and is commonly engendred of paine in the head, as of the Migrime, or ſuch like diſeaſes; and it is cauſed ſometime of great ſorow and heauineſſe, whereof cometh immoderate weeping; and ſometime of much cold, and much watching, and ſuch other like. The fourth ſpice is of a

4 Cytrine colour, and is commonly engendred of exceſſiue meate and drinke indigeſt, and alſo of great labour, and ſometime of the humour melancholie. Theſe are the foure curable kinds, but they be neuer healed till they be growne and confirmed: and the ſigne or token of their full perfection is, when the patient ſeeth nothing, vnleſſe it be the brightneſſe of the Sunne by day light, or the light

light of the Moone by night. Many ignorant persons, neither knowing the cause nor the properties of these maner of Cataracts, haue assayed to cure them with purgations, powders and plaisters, but they haue bene deceiued. For neither inward medicines nor outward remedies can any whit preuaile, vnlesse you ioyne to them *artē acuariam*, the art of the needle; which because it is vnknowne to many of our practitioners, I will insert a discourse of it in this Treatise. Neuertheless, before you vse the needle, it is requisite that the braine should be purged with *pilulæ Hierosolymitanæ*, which you shall make thus: ℞. Turbith, ℥.j. Aloes hepaticke, ℥ ß. Maces, Quibibes, Masticke, and Saffron, ana ℥.j. beate them to powder all together, and confect them with the iuyce of Roses, and make pils thereof: and this purgation must be ministred the day before you trie with the needle. And on the next day, while the diseased partie is fasting, about nine of the clocke, cause him to sit ouerthwart a stoole in riding fashion, and plant your selfe likewise on the same stoole face to face against him, and bid him hold his sound eye close shut. Encourage him also, and exhort him to be patient: for the tractabilitie of him maketh much to the conuenient dispatch of your labour. Then with your left hand lift vp the ouer eye lid, and with your other hand put in the needle made therefore, on the side fartheſt off frō the nose: and subtilly thirle the tunicle saluatrice, writhing alwayes your fingers to and fro, till you touch the corrupt water (which is the Cataract) with the point of the needle; and then begin by litle and litle to remoue that water from before the sight to the corner of the eye, and there keepe it with the point of your needle the space of three minutes of an houre, & then remoue your needle easily from it. And if it happen that it rise vp againe, bring it backe the second time. But this caution you must be sure to haue, that when the needle hath touched the Cataract, you do not writh it about with your fingers to and fro, till it be set in his place before named, but that you gently draw it thither: and when you haue brought it thither, thirle the needle about till it haue gathered the water about it, and then pull it out. This done, cause him to shut his eye, and apply thereto a plaister of flaxe and the white of an egge, and cause him to lye in his bed nine dayes together, remouing the plaister three times on the day, and three times on the night, without any other stirring of it. Prouided that he lye in a very dark place; and let his diet be thinne, as rere egges, and white bread. And if he be yong and lustie, let his drinke be water, but if his body be weake, let him drinke wine well lymphate or small Ale: for truly much nourishment would preiudice the cure, by engendring much bloud in the eye, which is very hurtfull now in the beginning of the healing of it. The ninth day being passed, let him rise and wash his eye well with faire cold water, and he shall enioy his sight by the helpe of God, euen as he did before, although some of the Cataracts be fairer healed then the other, as namely the second and the fourth kinds: but that which is caused by a stripe, (though the water be with more ease extracted) yet the eye neuer recouereth his clearnesse of sight againe, because it is greatly bruised and troubled by the force of the stroke. And the third kind also, though it be soone restored to his old perfection, yet it abideth not long therein, vnlesse it be continued as well by good diet, as also by this electuarie, which is called *Diacolibanum solarimitanum*, which is thus confected. ℞. Cloues, ℥.ij. Nutmegs of India,

and Saffron, ana. ℥ j. ß. and of good *Castoreum*, ℥ j. Let all these be beaten into powder and searced, and confect that powder with clarified honie, and let the patient receiue of this Electuary in the morning fasting the quantity of a Chest-nut, or Walnut, and at euening to bedwards as much. And let him vse digestiue nourishing meates, which ingender good bloud; but let him beware of biese and Goates flesh, and Eeles, and raw Onions, for they are oftentimes vsed to ripen the Cataract, which must be done before you striue with it. In winter, let the patient drinke hote wines, in the which let him infuse Sage and Rew. Let him also abstaine from the company of women, neither let him frequent common baths; for euery strong fume hurteth him greatly. The aforesaid Electuarie of *Diacolibanum* is good to dry teares: it auaileth also against all manner of paine of the Migrime which proceedeth of fleame. After this sort are all the curable Cataracts healed, (I meane) by the needle, which must be made of gold, siluer, or of cleane Spanish latten: for iron and steele are very brittle and frangible. And if the Cataract should proue hard in drawing downe, the point may easily breake, which if it should abide in the eye, it would in time consume the eye through abundance of teares and greatnesse of paine.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the three kinds of Cataracts vncurable.

THe first kinde of Cataracts vncurable, the Physitions call *Gutta serena*, and the signe of the knowing thereof is this: when the pupill of the eye is blacke and cleare, as though it had no spot, and the eyes are alwayes mouing, and the eye-lids do tremble as they were full of quicksiluer. This kind of Cataract is caused of a corruption in the mothers wombe, and therfore they that haue thē that assay to cure them; for the nerues optike be oppilate and mortified, so that no medicins can preuaile, although many that haue this kind do see the light of the Sunne, and the stature of a man euē to their liues end. We cal it *Gutta serena*, because it is engendred of a water that falleth frō the braine, of the which truly one litle drop corrupteth and dissolueth all the humors of the eyes, and stoppeth the hollow nerues and sinewes, so that the visible spirits may no more passe thorough them. The second Cataract incurable, is that which appeareth in the eye of a greene colour, like water standing in moist places, not much moued nor remoued; this is the most dangerous kind of all, if there be any degrees in them, and it is procured by the ouermuch coldnesse of the braine, and by great buffetting and beating about the head, by great fasting, and such other like. The third vncurable Cataract is, when the pupill of the eye is dilated and spread so farre, that no circle may be seene within the tunicles of the eies, & the eye seemeth al blacke, or else all white. And thus are the three kinds of Cataracts vncurable distinguished and knowne: which wil forbid the practitioners to deale with them.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of diseases which chance to the eyes, by bloud, choler, fleame, or melancholy, and of their cures.

NOw after the description of Cataracts, and the number of them, which be curable, and which be not, and the curing and knowledge of the curable, and

and the causes of the vncurable, I will speake of other maladies of the eyes caused and occasioned of the foure humors, as bloud, fleame, choler, and melancholy. But first I will treate of bloud, through the abundance whereof oftentimes there groweth a redneſſe in the eyes, with great burning, and afterward it turneth to great itch: and this diſeaſe maketh the haire of the eye-lids to fall away, and of many it leaueth not one haire: & if this maladie be not cured within one yeare, it will make the eye lids to turne vp, and make the patient blear-eyd. But before it cometh to that extremitie, it may be cured by this Colliry, which they call *Collirium Ieroſolymitanũ*, which is made in this wiſe: ℞. Tutty of Alexandria, ℥.j. & beate it into ſmall powder, and temper it wel with two pounds of white wine (that is) a quart, and put thereto, ℥ j. of dry Roſes, and boile it with a ſoking fire till the wine be halfe waſted, & then cleanſe it through a linnen cloth to keepe it in a viol glaſſe, and morning and euening put ſome of it into the eye: and if it be taken betimes, the patient ſhall be cured within a weeke or two at the moſt. Neuertheleſſe before you apply this Colliry, it ſhall be good (if the patient be yong) to let him bloud on the veine that is in the midſt of the forehead: or, if he be aged, to purge the braine with theſe pils: ℞. of the beſt Aloes, red Sanders, *Eſula*, and Rewbarbe, ana. ℥.ß. Turbith, *Cataputia minor*, and Agarick, ana. ℥.ij. confect them with the iuyce of Mugwort, and miniſter to the patient according to his ſtrength. And truly theſe pils are not onely good for the itch of the eyes, but alſo for all maner of itch or ſcab, of what humour ſoeuer it be cauſed. There be other diſeaſes alſo of the eye engendred of bloud, as the Ophthalmy and Pannicles: and theſe kinds of infirmities are tied to the ſeaſon of the yeare, for they commonly happen about the end of Auguſt, and ſo forth to the end of September, and the rather then, becauſe they proceed of the eating of variety of fruites. The Ophthalmy is thus deſcribed. An Ophthalmy is a corrupt bloud ingendred of hote humours, and commonly it ſtandeth and appeareth in the white of the eyes, and round about the tunicles and blackneſſe of the eye, and it proceedeth of immoderate ſorrow and burning, and of abundance of teares, which cauſeth the eyes to ſwell, and make them to bolne, that from that time forth the patient may take no reſt nor ſleepe: for it euer ſeemeth to him that his eyes are full of grauell, or of thornes, or of ſmoke. In this kind of infirmitie it is good to vſe this powder, which many (in reſpect of the notable vertue thereof) do call *Puluis benedictus*, which is thus made: ℞. white Sarcocoll, and beate it to very fine powder, and fill the patients eye with it, and let him lye with it wide open till the powder be conſumed: and in the meane time make a plaiſter of flaxen herds, and waſh it well in cold water, which when you haue drained out with your hand, lay it on the patient his eye, which he ſhall ſtill keepe open, and it will procure him to take his reſt very well. Many ignorant practitioners, while they haue endeuored to cure this infirmitie with many impertinent medicines, haue added ſorrow to ſorrow, and haue brought the eye without his lids, and ſo made it vncurable, which by the foreſaid powder might eaſily haue bene healed. And note, that there be ſome, which by the occaſion of the Ophthalmy, are greatly troubled in their eyes, and haue them fumous and miſty: which proceedeth of euill keeping or becauſe they eate contrary meates. Now if ſuch happen, the braine muſt be purged with theſe

pils. ℞. Polipody, *Esulæ*, *Myrobalani Citrini*, and Rewbarbe, ana. ℥.j. Masticke, Quibibes, Saffrou, Spikenard, *Nux Indiæ*, Cynamon, ana. ℥.j confect them with Milke or iuyce of Quinces, and minister to the sicke according to his strength, and after this purgation minister morning and euening of the Electuarie of *Diaolibanum solarimitanum* as before. And moreouer put into his eye a powder called *Pulvis Nabetus*, the making wherof we will shew in the cure of the third pannicle. But this must be done onely in the morning and euening; put in his eye the powder called *Pulvis Alexandrinus* as before, and this do till the patient hath recouered his health, keeping him in the meane time from hurtfull meats.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Pannicles.

Causæ. THe Pannicles haue the same cause that the Ophthalmy hath, that is to say, superfluity of bloud. Sometime they are ingendred of euill keeping, and sometimes by great paines in the head as the Migrim, where the extremity of paine ascending into the temples, and so into the browes, maketh the veines to beate, by which painful beating the eyes are troubled. There be foure kinds of Pannicles: the first is, when vpon the tunicle saluatrice there groweth a litle pearle, like the seed or graine of a corne called in Latine *Millium*. The second is when it appeareth in the aforesaid tunicle in the likenesse of a spot or freckle of the face, or like the scale of a fish. The third appeareth on the one side of the eye, like as it were a flake of snow when it snoweth. The fourth is when all the eye appeareth white, and no blackenesse, neither of the tunicle, neither of the light appeareth. The first pannicle is neither cured with laxatiues nor powders, nor Colliries, nor Electuaries, nor yet with cauteries; for any of these (if they be ministred) do annoy rather then helpe. But you shall make this precious ointment for the cure of it, which of many practitioners is proued to be of great credit: ℞. forty tender crops of the Bramble, and stampe them small, & a good handfull of Rew, powder of Alabaster, ℔.j.ß. powder of Fenel seed, ℥ ß. oile of Roses, ℔.j. all these incorporate well together, put into a new earthen pot with a quart of new white Wine, and to all these put ℥.iiij. of dry flowers of Cammomil, and of Waxe ℥.j. and then set the pot on the fire, & let it boile with an easie fire, till the Wine be consumed, so farre forth that it seemeth to fry in, and then put thereto the whites of sixe Egs, and alwaies stirre it well, till it be incorporated together, and then straine it through a faire linnen cloth; with this ointment thus made, annoint the temples of the patient, and the forehead, downe to the browes, and it will cure this kind of Pannicle. This ointment is not onely tied to this cure, but it hath many vertues: some of the which I will expresse, though it be impertinent to this discourse. It is very good against a greene wound, for it both purgeth and cleanseth it. It is good against the tooch-ach or paine in the gums, if the cheeke be annointed therewith. It is good against the paine in the matrice, if it be beaten like an Electuary. It is good for them also who are molested in excesse, if their stomack be annointed & their feet, together with their hands. It auaileth against the Migrime, & generally for euery paine of the eyes, if the patient be annointed therewith vpon the temples, as before. The second pannicle must be cured at the very beginning: for if it be incarnate and hardned

There be foure kinds of Pannicles.

1
2
3
4

vpon

vpon the tunicle, it may not by any subteltie be remoued (the tunicle saued,) and therefore it is not safe to aduenture to cure it, when by continuance of time it hath vnited it selfe with the saluatrice. But at the first you shall cure it thus: first make a cautery in the temples with a round cautery (as shall be shewed afterward when I speake of Cauteries:) for fire dissolueth & consumeth the pannicle, & so keepeth it from vniting & incarnating with the tunicle, & maketh the eye fit to be clarified with this medicine following. When the eye is cauterized, put into the eye some of the powder called *Pulus Nabetus*, which I will teach afterward; & while he lieth with this powder in his eye, take foure crabs, & rost them vnder the embers very well, and then take them, and being pilled and cored, incorporate them with the white of an egge in manner of an ointment, and lay it vpon a cleane flaxen herd, and bind it to the eye with a linnen band, and so renew this plaister morning and euening till you haue absolued your cure. Like as bloud begetteth many infirmities of the eye, as namely Ophthalmies and Pannicles: so likewise many maladies are ingendred of fleame, but the most notable are foure: the first is procured by ouer abundance of teares, whereby the ouer eyelids are so softened and mollified, that within there grow haires, which pricke the ball of the eye continually, as though there were hogs bristles: which haires, though many bold Chirurgions haue plucked out, and so for a time eased them, yet afterward (the haires being hardened with plucking out) do gall them farre worse then before, and so in the end the patient being destitute of any other aide, loseth his sight, (the haires fretting and consuming the substance of his eye.) But indeed the best way which as yet experience hath found out to cure that maladie, is this: Take two needles of the length of the litle finger, and put a thred through the eyes of both of them, and bind them well together at both the ends, then with your fingers lift vp the ouer eyelid, and with these needles take off the leather where these haires grow, that the patient may shut and open his eye, and let the needles hang till they fall away, together with the leather which was betweene them: which done, you shall put no medicine in the wound, for it will heale of it selfe: but if any Pannicle be ingendred in the eye by reason of the vehemencie of the paine, it shall be cured by *Pulus Nabetus* put into the eye twise a day, til such time as they be clarified and healed. And this powder is made of Sugar Candy of *Alexandria*, which powder is very auaileable against many sicknesses of the eye. The second infirmity which happeneth to the eye by fleame, is when the eyes appeare troubled and full of veines, so closed with a Pannicle, that the patient cannot wel see nor discerne any thing, and this sicknes is called *Pannicum vitreum*, which is thus cured: first cause his head to be shauen, & then cauterize him with a round cautery in the soft of the head, and with a long cautery in his temples, which so done, put into his eyes the powder of Candie once in the day, till that he hath receiued againe his full sight, and twise in the moneth purge him with the pils called *Pillulæ Ieroſolymitanæ*, and at his going to bed let him receiue of the Electuary called *Diaolibanum ſolarimitanum* till he be whole. The third infirmity caused by fleame, is when the eye appeareth carnous or fleshie, the which carnositie (if it be waxen hard by the space of a yeare or two) giueth place to no medicine. But in the beginning, cauteries (in that maner that I prescribed them

Maladies coming of fleam.

1.

2.

3.

before) will heale it, so that after cauterizing you very warily cut away all the carnosity with a sharpe razor, without offending the tunicle Saluatrice; which when you haue done, fil the eye ful of powder of Candy, and then cause the patient to shut his eye, and then lay to it a plaister of flaxe & the white of an ege, & change the plaister twise on the day xv. daies: and after xv. daies make this plaister: ℞. a handful of *Carduus Benedictus*, stampe it well, & mingle it with half the white of an Ege, and so make a plaister with flaxen herds, & lay it vpon the eye, remouing it twise on the day, and after three dayes leaue all plaisters, and let the patient lye with his eye open, and euery day in the morning put into his eye the powder called *Pulus benedictus*, and at euening the powder of Candy, till he be perfectly whole: in the meane time let him abstaine frō Eeles, Onions, Beef, and all such meates. The fourth maladie caused of fleame, is when the eye appeareth all bolne, and alwaies sheadeth teares, so that the patient may not open his eyes by reason of the heauinesse of the eye lids, for there is a fatnes on the vpper eye-lid which troubleth the eye very much; and this disease is called the scab of the eye, and it proceedeth from superabundance of salt fleame: the cure of it is this: you shall first purge the stomack and braine of the patient with this receipt: ℞. Turbith, of the best Aloes and Rewbarbe ana. ℥ j. then take of the iuyce of the roote of Walwort. ℔ j and the aforesaid things being beaten and dissolued in the said iuyce, let it stand all night, and in the morning cleanse it, and let the patient take thereof a good quantitie, and the next day subtilly with your Razor pare away the aforesaid fatnesse, euen from the one lachrimall to the other: which done, lay on a plaister of herds and the white of an egge nine dayes after (euery day changing the plaister twise,) and then let the patient lye with his eye open, and put into it of the Collirie called *Collirium Alexandrinum*, which is taught before in the cure of the third Pannicle, and that will heale it very well. I haue heard that women did rub away that fatnesse with Sugar, but it returned againe afterward, though for a time they were eased. There is an Electuarie very auailable against these teares, which is thus made: ℞. *Olibanum*, *Castoreum*, Nutmegs, *Nux Indiæ*, Cloues, Quibibes, ana. ℥ j. leaues of Laurell, Spikenard, Saffron, and *Cardamomum*, an. ℥ ij. seeds of Dill, Smallage, Basilicon, Alisander, Annise, Fennell, foure seeds of Henbane, white Poppy, Musk, and Campher, ana. ℥ j. all these must be beaten together to powder, sauing the *Olibanum*, which must be boiled with clarified Hony till it be molten, and then powre it into a faire large woodden platter together with the powder before made, and incorporate them together by often stirring, and let it abide in the platter still: and when you will minister it, giue as much as a Chestnut at the patients going to bed. It destroyeth the teares together with the fleame, it warmeth the braine, it driueth away the paine of the Migrime, it openeth the eyes, relieueth the eye-lids, and clarifieth the sight. It is good for them that haue the gout and the Palsey, and for them that haue an impediment in their speech.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the maladies in the Eye proceeding of choler.

TWo kinds of griefes are incident to the eyes by choler, the first whereof is that which is caused by abundance of choler in the stomacke, from whence ariseth

ariseth a corrupt fumositie into the braine, which annoyeth the braine, & troubleth the visible spirits, so that the party thus affected, shall imagine an obiect planted betweene him and the light in maner of a darke shadow. We cannot outwardly iudge of this maladie, for it hath no euident marke, either in the eye or without the eye, but the cause of it abideth in the stomacke, which must be taken away by an Electuarie mitigatiue, & preparatiue, which will asswage the paine, and open the oppilate nerues and sinewes, whereby the visible spirits may haue free passage: you shall make it thus: ℞. Rewbarbe, *Esulæ minoris*, red Sanders *Mirobalani citrini*, ana ℥.iiij. the roots of Fennell, Spinage, Bansci, Parsly, *Apij*, *Sicacellæ*, Simory, and Maidenhaire, ana. M.j. Polipody of the Oake, ℥ij. boile all these roots in faire water till halt the water be wasted, and then cleanse it, and take the aforesaid spices well beaten and put them into the aforesaid licour with two pounds of good Sugar, and make thereof a sirupe laxatiue. But you shall boile it but litle the second time, for the spices will soone lose their vertue, and then cleanse it againe the second time, and let the patient take of this twise in the weeke. The second infirmity arising of choler, is when there appeareth before the tunicle, as it were a thin cloud in a cleare aire, and this is brought by an euill diet, but it happeneth only to those that be cholericke. For the cure you shall take a Saphire, and breake it in a mortar, and keepe the powder in a vessell of gold, and once in the day put this powder into the patients eye, and he shall be whole in short time. The same effect hath the gall of a Hare dried, and beaten into powder, and so put into the eye.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the infirmities of the Eye caused of melancholy.

OF the humour of melancholy be engendred in sundry folks many & diuers sicknesses, by reason of the oppilation of the spirits visible, which cometh by the distemperature of the braine which is disquieted by the abundance of melancholy. In these diseases therefore it seemeth to the patient, that there are flies flying in the aire, and that there are three or foure moones, and three or foure faces, when he beholdeth but one: but these infirmities happen most commonly to aged persons which are melancholick, superfluity of melancholy dimming their eye sight. There must not therefore any medicines be put into the eye of the patient, but make this Electuary mitigatiue & apparatiue, which will opē the oppilations of the nerues which did before foreclose the way to the visible spirits. The Electuarie is thus confected. ℞. the iuyce of Liquorice, Eyebright, *Siseris montani*, ana ℔ß. the seeds of Rew, Basilicon, Nettles that come from beyond the seas, or Cechan, or Fenel, of Alisander, of *Apium*, of Caraway seed, ana ℥.ij Mastick, Cloues, Nutmegs, Cinamon, Quibibes, *Gummi*, Almonds, *Cerache pomi gummosi*, *Aragunton*, & saffron, ana ℥ß. kernels of quince apples, ℥.j. all these must be beaten together into small powder well searced, and then you must confect them with good Sugar, & make an Electuary of it, and of this let him receiue morning and euening till it be healed. It auaileth also against that dimnesse of the eyes which cometh by thought, and of much heauinesse, & maketh them to see more clearly, and of that effect it hath his name (that is) *Clarificatiuū oculorum*. There is also another infirmity which cometh of melan-

choly, and that is when the paine ſuddenly aſcendeth into the eyes, and grieueth ſo extremely, that it ſeemeth to the patient that his eyes would ſtart out: they appeare alſo moſt commonly very bolne. Many which are troubled with this kind of malady, do loſe their ſight altogether, though there be ſome which do ſee, notwithſtanding but very weakely. But the ſeaſonable applying of remedies, preuenteth either diſcommodity. After this ſort then you ſhall encounter with this euill. You ſhall firſt purge the ſtomacke and the braine with theſe pils: ℞. Aloes, *Mirobalani Citrini*, Turbith, Sanders, Citrine and Rewbarbe, ana. ʒ.ß. Scammony, Mirrhe, Saffron, *Balſamum*, Maſtick, *Lignum Aloes*, *Olibanum*, white Agarick, *Nux Indiæ*, iuyce of Liquorice, ſeed of *Apium*, Lettuce, Succory, Baſilicon, ana ʒ.j. Beate all theſe to powder, and confect them with the iuyce of Roſes, and make pils of them, and giue the patient after his powder. The ſtomack and the braine thus purged, lay vpon the eye this plaiſter: ℞. foure Apples or Crabs, and roſt them vnder the embers till they be ſoft, then core them, and pare them, and bruſe them well in a mortar; and to foure of them put halfe the white of an Egge, and ſo bray them together till they be well incorporate, and ſo lay them vpon flaxen herds, and morning and euening apply it to the eye, and you ſhall find that it will do much good; for it both aſſwageth the ſwelling, leſſeneth the paine, refreſheth the ſight, and with all theſe fixeth alſo the eye in his place. There is another infirmity alſo which proceedeth by the abundance of melancholy, and that they call *Vngula*: for it is much like the naile of a finger, ſometime it breedeth in the corner of the eye to the eare-ward, and ſo ſpreadeth ouer the eye if it be not hindred & reſiſted betime: ſometime it alſo happeneth that another vngle ariſeth in the other corner, & if they meet, it maketh the cure more vncertaine; yet by heedfull skill and diſcretion, it may be healed by the hand. Take therefore a twich of ſiluer, and therewith lift vp ſubtilly the vngle from the tunicle, proceeding to the lachrimall where it grew, and there cut it away, and then lay the white of an egge and flaxe vpon it ten dayes together, remouing it twiſe on the day, and at the end of ten dayes waſh his eye with hote water, and put into it *Puluis Nabetus* before named, till the eye be ſufficiently cleared. Let him abſtaine from ſuch meates as do feed melancholy. It happeneth alſo ſomtime that the ſuperfluous abundance of melãcholy ſeated in the brain, begetteth a drineſſe in the eye-lids, which afterward turneth to itching and burning. But this diſeaſe is cured by letting the patient bloud on the middle veine in the forehead, and after with vſing this Colliry: ℞. forty tender crops of the Bramble, and ſtampe them ſmall, then put them in a new earthen veſſell together with a quart of good white Wine, and ſo boile them till halfe be conſumed, and then cleanſe it and preſerue it in a glaſſe to your vſe, and twiſe in the day put ſome of it into your patients eye, till it be whole. Of the like ſuperfluity of melancholy groweth ſometime a corrupt humour without the eye vpon the lid, the which bolneth all the one ſide of the face with extreme paine, but with no offence to the ſight of the eye. The ſignes of this diſeaſe are theſe: it maketh the eye-lids hard and red, and keepeth the eye ſo ſhut, that the patient may not open it. For the cure of it, you ſhall take fine floure of old wheate, and yolkes of egs, ana. ʒ.j. of Saffron, ʒ.j. and ſtampe them well together with womans milke till it be as an ointment: then make a plaiſter of it, and apply it ſo, that none enter

Signa.

Curatio.

ter into the eye. You may also vse this: ℞. a Lilly root and Crabs, and rost them in the embers til they be soft, then taking away the core and the pils of the crabs stampe them both of like quantity with the whites of egs, and so vse it. On the step of the wound where the sore was, lay this ointment, that it may draw the flesh together, so that no scarre do appeare: ℞. *Aloes*, Hens grease, oile of bitter Almonds, and white Waxe, and incorporate them together into an ointment, & apply it. It is very good in all the diseases of the eyes to annoint the temples of the patient, and the forehead with *vnguentum Alabastrum* before named, for it asswageth the paine, and helpeth the other medicines in their operation. It happeneth many times in this infirmity, that the patient his eye lids, for want of prouident skil do reuerse, which is a great blemish. In this case you must subtilly with the Razour diuide the eye lid from the wound, and part them with a litle role made of fine linnen cloth, dipped in the white of an egge, which you shall lay betwixt the lid and the sore xv. dayes together, changing it daily, and then make the ointment of Hens grease and white Waxe, and lay of it vpon the role, and it will consume the wound, so that there shall appeare no cicatrice. The like cure you shall vse when the reuersement of the eye-lids is caused of superfluity of bloud. Of the melancholicke humour there is also ingendred in many men a sicknes which groweth betweene the nose and the eye, and it appeareth like a peece of a lung or light. It is grauelly, and auoideth out alwayes filth. This sore is called *Vulgalpus*. For the cure of it, you shal only take a twich, and lift the sore vp subtilly, and with the point of a Razour cut vp the sore by the roote, and cauterize it with an hot iron, and vse the ointment before rehearsed, which they call *Vnguentum subtile*, that is, Hens grease and white Waxe, and annoint the place with it till it be whole.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of diseases happening to the Eye by outward causes, as by blowes with stickes, staues, or stones.

THe onely thing generally that you shall vse when the eye is smitten, is the white of an egge & flaxen herds, to the which God hath giuen three especial properties: The first is to asswage the paine: The second to purifie & cleare the sight: The third is to let and keepe away all superfluous humours, which otherwise would fall into the eye. You shall remoue it foure times in the day, and twise in the night, by the space of fifteene daies together, annointing in the meane time the temples of the patient with ointment of Alabaster, which as I told you before, was an adiuuant and aide to all medicins. Now after the fifteen daies be expired, if you shall perceiue the tunicle saluatrice to be hurt and broken, you shall then take xij. streines of the new laid egges of white hens, and put them in a mortar, labouring them with a pestil till they be vnited in maner of an ointment, and so reserue it in a glasse, and twise in the day and once in the night put a litle of it in the eye, and it will knit together, and make sound againe the tunicle if it be broken or hurt: after this maner I haue cured many wounds in the eye, which haue seemed dangerous, and vncurable to the ignorant beholder. But sometime it will happen, that through the force of the blow, there

will grow a Cataract, and then in the beginning the tunicle must be saued by this forenamed prescript, and the Cataract must grow without let to his full perfection, and so be healed by the needle. Some vnskilfull practitioners vse to lay a plaister made of Waxe and Comin to the eye, if it be smitten, and other some vse *Olibanum* and Wormwood: but both those and all such like hote ointments are passing euill, because they consume and waste the substance of the eye. It followeth now that I speake of waterie eyes and of corrupt humours like teares, which the Physitions call *fistules*, to discerne betweene the *fistula* and the watery profluence of teares. You shall therefore vse this skill: lay your forefinger betweene the nose and the corner of the eye, and straining the place a litle, if it be a *fistula*, you shall see the matter of it runne out of the points of the eye liddes: but if none appeare, then iudge it to be a watery humour. Many boisterous fellowes, (seeing the place of the issue of the *fistula*) haue vsed to cauterize it with a hot iron, thinking by that meanes to haue dryed vp the matter: which indeed they haue done, but they haue destroyed the sight, and deformed also the place. This therefore is the surest way or course that you can take to cure the *fistula*. First purge the patient his stomacke with pilles of Ierusalem, and then with the point of a razour you shall make a litle incision betwixt the neather eyelid and the nose, so directly that the lid be not touched, and this incision shall be throughout the skinne in a long wise, and into the same put in the graine of a Fitch, binding it on with a litle pillow of linnen, and so let it lye till the next day: then remouing the Fitch, you shall in the hole where it lay, put in a little of some powder corrasiue. After the powder is put in, lay a plaister of flaxen herds, and the white of an egge (the patient alwayes shutting his eye for feare of the powder.) In the morning after, you shall apply nothing but cleane Swines grease, till the mortified flesh be raised: and when it is raised and remoued, put in a peece of a sponge, as much as a Fitch, in the hole which the powder made, & it will purge the drinesse of the wound: & when you shal perceiue it throughly dryed, leaue the sponge, and bind nothing to it else but faire dry lint of linnen til the patient be whole. Now concerning the teares, they issue out of the eyelids both the vpper and the neather: but there is difference betweene the causes of their issuing from both places: for they which proceed from the neather eyelid, come from the heart, by reason of sorrow, dread, or smart, or they be caused by some manner of violence: but the teares which flow out of the hole of the vpper eye-lid, proceed from the braine, by reason of corruption and abundance of humours, and their course ceasseth not vnlesse the matter be purged with Electuaries and Cauteries, as I haue shewed before.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the diseases which come by skipping in of stones, or chips by chance into the Eyes.

THese diseases happen specially to Masons, Millers, Carpenters, Wrights, and Smithes: for if any chiue, chip, or dust skip into the eye, and through negligence be left behind, it will incarnate vpon the tunicle Saluatrice, and then can you not cure the eye but by remouing and drawing the said chiue, which you

you shall do with your needle, dividing it cunningly from the tunicle. And if it happen that there be any pit in the place where it lay, by reason that it abode long therein, then put into the eye the streines of egs, ordered as I declared before, twise in the day, and once in the night; and vpon the eye lay a plaister of flaxe and the white of an egge, & within three dayes it will heale the partie diseased. And after this sort you shall also remoue the haw in the eye. But you shall in drawing out the haw, bind two needles fast together at the top, and so take the haw betweene the two points, & so easily rolling the needles, bring it away. Sometime it happeneth that the eye is stong with a bee or waspe, or some other venimous thing, or blasted with an infected aire: and if any of these happen, the eye is much disquieted and grieued, so that the patient may take no rest, and it bolneth vp that he may not see. The onely cure for such and the like accidents is this, as I haue by experience often tried. Take a handful of *Carduus benedictus*, stampe it small, and temper it well with halfe the white of an egge, and therewith make a plaister laying it on flaxen herds, binding it hard to the eye, where it shall lye till it be dried, and then apply another: and so consequently vse it till your patient be throughly whole. These qualities this herbe hath: it asswageth swelling, and easeth the paine, destroyeth the venime, and putteth away bloud from the eyes. This is also a present remedie for the eyes that are bloudshed, when they burne as though there were grauell in them. And thus much for the especiall discourses of sundrie diseases which do most commonly bend to that litle member, the eye, together with their particular cures.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of paine in the eares.

PAine in the eares is caused in some through cold taken in iourneying by cold winds. Also sometime it is caused of cold bathes and medicinable water. Also it chanceth to many through hote distemper. Sometime of inflammation. And like as inflammation by stretching out of the parts that be inflamed engendreth paine, euen so a windie vapour, or a humour grosse and clammie, for lacke of passage causeth paine. Also humours that be biting, and like whay and matter, do cause paine in the eares. Paine in the eares caused of cold, is soone knowne by the patients words, & because there is continuall great paine without heauinesse, or distension, or burning. The paine which is caused of hote distemper is knowne, in that there is felt paine and heate without heauinesse or bolning. But if heauinesse, distension, and beating heate and paine be felt in the head, then the paine in the eare is caused of inflammation. Onely distension without heauinesse declareth a windie vapour which cannot find passage out. If there be heauinesse in the head and the hearing, the paine is caused of grosse and clammie humors. If the paine be caused onely of cold, it will soone be cured by hote remedies, that is, with oyle of Rew, Laurell, Nard, Dill, Lillies, of *Euphorbium*, and Spike. Also if you seeth Rew, or common oile of Pepper, or *Castoreum*, it is a good remedie. Also oile wherein Garlicke is sodden, or an Onion, dropped into the eares, is maruellous good. There are some that do cut out the core of a great Onion, then they fill it with oile, & they heate it meanly in hote embers, and powre it into the eares, when it is strongly strained. Also a very litle

Cause.

Signa.

Cure of cold.

Euphorbium commixed with much old oile, is much commended of *Galen*. Whatsoeuer you do minister, let it be ministred hote. But when some medicinable water is continued in the passage of hearing, you must continually powre in oile that is very thinne, that it may be washed: then wipe it with soft wooll, & againe powre in more. The white of an egge mitigateth the paine very much. Also womans milke. Also goose grease profiteth much: likewise foxes grease. But to draw out plentie of water, nothing is better then to sucke and to draw it out with a quill or hollow pipe holden in the mouth. When paine is caused of an hot distemper, then oile of Roses is maruellous good for the head, if it be dropped into the eare: and vineger and oile of Roses is good, or the white of an egge, or womans milke, or iuyce of Nightshade: or this, ℞. oile of Roses, ℥.j. iuyce of Nightshade, ℥.ij vineger of Roses, ℥.j ß. commixe them. If the paine be caused of inflammation, or grosse and vilcous humours, you must vse medicines which do diuide and take away obstructions and stoppings: as be all bitter things which purge and cleanse without erosion, as is, *Irisillirica*, all kindes of *Aristolochia*, bitter Almonds, the roote of *Nitisalba*, Centorie the lesse, *Polium* and Cinamon. Also oile of Almonds and other which do purge, cleanse, wipe, and vnstop the passages without griefe. Therefore of those you may make medicines and drop thereof into the eares. Among other also the iuyce of Leekes dropped into the eare warme is good, or iuyce of Leekes mixed with hony. If that the paine be caused of inflammation, you must by and by let bloud on the *Cephalica* veine that is on the same side: and with clisters you must pull backe the humours that do flow. Afterward you must drop in *Oxyrhodinum* warme, or goose grease, or hennes grease, with oyle of Roses. But if the inflammation be vehement, then to ceasse paine, drop warme into the eare the white of an egge with womans milke. Also this medicine is good, ℞. iuyce of Senegreene, ℥.ij. oyle of Roses, ℥ ß. vineger, ℥.j.ß commixe them all, and drop it into the sore eare. Apply those things outwardly which ceasse paine, and do digest the matter heaped together. If the inflammation be very vehement, it is necessarie to vse those things which do astonie the sense easily; and it is no small danger, lest that the sinew by which the vertue of hearing is dispersed in the braine, be hurt thereby. But commixe a litle *Opium* with womans milke and the white of an egge. Also temper *Opium* with *Castoreum*: there must be of each a like quantitie, or double as much *Castoreum*. The liquor in which the aforesaid medicines ought to be tempered (being first finely beaten) must be *Sapa*: for it doth ceasse paine much more then sweete wine. *Sapa* is new wine sodden till it come to the third part. There be some that commixe *Opium* with oile of Roses, or Violets, after this sort; ℞. of *Opium* ℈.j. oile of Roses and Violets, ana. ℥.j. ß. Also the Antidote *Philonium* dissolued in womans milke, and dropped in, is good. Without you must nourish the eare continually with common oyle, or with a hote foment, and you must dip wooll in it, and put it into the eare: but in such wise that it may not touch the places that be troubled with inflammation. But when the paine waxeth old, and turneth to suppuration and impostumation, you shall drop into the eare a medicine of the iuyce of Lineseed onely, with oyle of Roses or Cammomill mixed with it.

Of water.

Of heate.

Venæ sectio.

Sapa.

CHAP.

CHAP. XL.

Of ſound and noiſe in the eares.

NOiſe and tinkling in the eare, for the moſt part, is engendred of a windie vapour, or of groſſe and clammie humours. Alſo many times it is cauſed through an exquiſite tardineſſe of the ſenſe of hearing. It is alſo cauſed by weakeneſſe of the members: when it chanceth in the recouering of a diſeaſe, ſome humour is taken into the ſinewes of the eares. Alſo it is cauſed of outward things, as of cold, heate, or a blow on the head. If the euill chance through outward cauſes, it is ſoone knowne by the patients words. Now becauſe the noiſe cometh by litle and litle, or at one time, or ſuddenly on a heape, that is alſo conuenient to know the diſeaſe by. For if the ſounding do come, and then reſt for a certaine ſpace, it is euident that a windie vapour is ſhut in and cannot get out, and ſo cauſeth ſounding, and ſpecially when the ſicke hath eaten windie meates. But if ſuch ſound in the eares do not come ſuddenly, but by litle and litle, and there is felt withall a heauineſſe and weight: then it delareth the euill to be cauſed of groſſe and viſcous humours. For the cure, if the ſound in the eares be cauſed of groſſe and viſcous humours, or of vapours, in the beginning purge the head with *Pilulæ Cochiæ* and ſuch like. But firſt miniſter before them potions and medicines which haue vertue to extenuate and diuide. Then you muſt vſe maſticatories and ſternutaments. Moreouer you muſt drop into the eares oile of bitter Almonds, or oyle in which *Caſtoreum* is brayed. Alſo let the eare be inclined to the vapour of the water wherein *Stœchas*, Wormwood, Marioram, Mints and Origan haue bene ſodden. Iuyce of Rew ſodden in the rynd of a Pomgranate is maruellous good. Alſo *Sacculi* made of Betonie, *Stœchados*, Cammomill, Marioram, and other things a litle before rehearſed are very good, if they be applied to the eare warme. If the ſound in the eare be cauſed through ſharpneſſe of the ſenſe of hearing, which is knowne, if when the patient is hungrie it increaſeth, and when he is full the noiſe is leſſe; then you muſt vſe thoſe things which do aſtonie the ſenſes: but you muſt take good heed thereof, and therefore begin with the eaſieſt, and if need be proceed afterward to ſtronger. Oile of Roſes is onely commended with a graine or two of *Opium* put to it. *Galen* in this caſe praiſeth the iuyce of *Mandragora* and Poppie But if noiſe in the eares chance in feauers, there need no remedie for it; for commonly it goeth away ſtraight. But if it remaine after a diſeaſe or a paine in the head, then you muſt nouriſh the eares with decoction of Wormwood, powring in vineger and oile of Roſes, or iuyce of Radiſh with oyle of Roſes, or the beſt *Aloes* tempered with *Mulſa*. And if this helpe not, vſe blacke Hellebore brayed with vineger.

Cauſe.

Signa.

Of windie vapours.

Of groſſe humours.

Cure if it come of groſſe humours or vapours.

Sacculi.

If it come of ſharpneſſe of hearing.

CHAP. XLI.

Of Deafneſſe and ſlaw hearing.

THe eare is ſo afflicted, that it cauſeth not onely dulneſſe of hearing, but alſo deafneſſe, that one can heare nothing at all. Sometime deafneſſe beginneth at ones birth, and ſometime it chanceth after we be borne; which doth chance, either through cholericke humours flying vpward, or through crude and groſſe humours ſtopping the hearing. If deafneſſe come of cholericke humours, ſpecially after feuers, then it is wont with ſudden incurſions to runne to the braine.

Cauſa.

Signa.

Also the face and all the state of the body will shew a cholericke temperature. But if it come of grosse humours, there is heauinesse of the head, and other tokens be present which shew flegmaticke humours. They which remaine deafe from their birth, or also soone after they be borne, being perfectly deafe of a long time, are vncurable, neither doth any of them euer speake. They that be not altogether deafe, yet if it haue long continued, it is very hard to cure. Deafnesse which is caused through cholerick humors flying abroad, is soone driuen away by medicines purging choler. If the deafnesse be ingendred of crude and grosse humors, this dull hearing is cured by bloudletting, or only by purgation of *Hiera* or *Pilulæ Cochiæ*, and other such like. But minister before *Oximel*, and other medicines that haue power to diuide grosse and clammy humours. The whole body being purged, you must draw fleame out of the head by Masticatories, Sternutaments, and *Errhinis*. Furthermore, they must be dried, and by all meanes strengthened. Also he must vse a bath, that floweth of it selfe, or salt water. You must put into the eare medicines that diuide and cut grosse and viscous humors, whereof there be many declared in the Chapter against sound in the eares. But priuatly iuyce of Rew with Hony, or *Castoreum* with oyle of Dill is good. Also you must vse foments, and leane your eare vpon a quill or reed, hauing one end made fit for the eare, and the other for the hole in the couer of the pot being euery where fast stopped. Let there be in the pot Wormwood, Mints, Marioram, Origan, *Stæchas*, or such like sodden in water, that the vapour that cometh from thence may passe into the course of hearing. Also this medicine dropped into the eare is good: ℞. oile of *Castoreum*, ℥.ß. Cumin seed, ℥.ij. powder of *Castoreum*, ℥.j. and put in the oile, and wind it vp in wet papers, and put it vnder the hote embers, and when it is rosted, straine it hard, and let it be dropped into the eare. Moreouer the vapor of Vineger taken with a reed, as is taught before, is maruellously good. Let their diet be altogether thin, & meates of light digestion.

If of cholerick humours.

If of grosse humours.

Victus ratio.

CHAP. XLII.

Of Impostumes breeding in the Eares.

Parotides in Greek, be inflammations which are wont to issue out in the kernels which be by the eares. It is caused of abundant hote bloud, which is either mixed with choler, or fleame, or melancholy. And sometime it is caused of humors compact in the head, and sometime of the rest of the body by sicknesse, and especially by feuers. *Parotides* which are caused through fulnesse and plentie of hote bloud, they do ingender most vehement paine. They which are caused of cholericke bloud, they seeme much like *Erisipelas*, and they vexe the place that is diseased with no griefe. That which is caused of melancholy bloud, they be not red, nor they vexe not with vehement paine, but they be hard. They which be ingendred of flegmatick bloud, in the swelling they be raised sharpe vpward. Let their diet be such in a manner as is appointed in other inflammations. The cure (if age and other things will suffer) must be begun by letting of bloud: you must cut the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. Furthermore, we vse not in *Parotides* (as we do in other inflammations) to apply in the beginning things that represse, but contrariwise things that do draw. And if they be

Causæ.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

be not in effect, fasten cupping glasses, or apply continually foments. To mitigate the paine, you must chuse those things which haue heate with moderate moistnesse, mitigating and ceassing paine, meet to ripe and digest, as is, decoctions made of Wheate or Barley, or the meale of Linseed, with *Mulsa* or Fenugreeke, or *Althæa*, or Cammomil: for the same purpose annoint the place continually with Butter, putting to it the whites of egges. Also Swines grease with butter melted with a litle Waxe put to it, that it may be a soft cerote, may be well applied. But in them that be meeke, that is, in gentle *Parotides*, in which there flow not such plenty of humors that they cause vehement paine, nor there is no heate of the humour, such are easily cured with foments of brine, and plaisters and medicines altogether discussiue, as is *Diactrilon*. If the *Parotides* cannot be dissolued, you must vse medicines to ripen and bring the impostume to matter, as is, wheate meale with the decoction of figs & oile. Also the medicine that is made of meale and floure and leuen. When the *Parotides* be riped, either cut the skinne with a knife that the matter may be let out, or the botch may be broken with a sharpe medicine, as that which is broken with Garlicke and such like; or to proue how to dissolue it by medicines which haue vertue to draw and extenuate, remouing it twise daily, and nourishing it vntill the paine be somewhat released, and the more part of the matter dissolued. And if there be hardnesse, that also must be mollified. Therefore you must make medicines that be of mixt qualities, so that you must commixe drawing things with mollifiers, as is Calues suet, Goates suet, the marrow of a Hart, *Bdellium*, *Styrax*, *Ammoniacum*, and such other like.

Cure of them that be meeke.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of vlcers in the nose.

OZenæ in Greeke, be vlcers in the nose that be dead and rotten, out of the which is breathed an vnkind and stinking sauor. Through sharp and rotten humours which flow to the nosthrils, filthinesse is ingendred, which if they be onely sharpe, they ingender vlcers hard to be cured, but yet they stinke not much. Therefore the cure of these vlcers consisteth chiefly in this, that in the beginning the head be dryed and strengthened. Because vlcers come through the flowing of corrupt humours, which flow out of the head to the nosthrils, the whole head must be strengthened and dried, that no superfluities do flow from the nostrils. You shall adde strength to the head after this sort, first you must clip the head, then straight you must lay on it things that do restraine and bind, as is oile of Roses, Alume, vnripe gals, willow leaues, vineger, and such like: this must be continually laid & annointed on the head nine daies. Whē with those things the head, is made strong, then go about to cure the nosthrils, that you may dry vp the matter with medicines that be repulsiue and discussiue. Therefore those things that repell and driue back, be things sharp and sowre, which also are reckoned with restrictiue things. Discussiue things must be hot and dry of vertue. Therefore to our *Ozenæ* you must drop in the iuice of Calamint, or blow in the powder thereof being dried with a quill, or drop in hony into the nosthrils. A while after minister Sternutaments to bring them to scurfs, which will fall off in three or 4. daies. When they are fallen off, cure it with goose grease & butter, &

Cause.

Curatio.

Sternutamentum.

oile of Roſes. The vlcers in the noſtrils may be annointed with iuice of a Pomgranate boyled in a brazen veſſel vnto the half, or a whole Pomgranate ſodden in ſweet Wine brayed, and dropped in. Alſo this is good: ℞. dry Alume, ℥.j.ß. Mirrhe, ℥.j the rind of a Pomgranate, Sumach, ſalt Gemme, Saffron, Frankenſence, ana. ℥ ß. beate them, and blow into the noſe of the powder. If that after
Vnguentum. the vlcers there remaine paine, vſe this ointment: ℞. oile of Roſes, Mirtels, ana. ℥.j burnt Lead, Litarge, ana. ℈ ij. Ceruſe, Bolearmeny, *Balauſtium*, ana. ℈ j. white Wax as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment, & annoint the place.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of bleeding at the noſe.

Cauſæ. FLuxe of bloud at the noſe, is cauſed partly outwardly, and partly inwardly.
Externæ. Outward cauſes be falling from a high place, a ſtripe, vehement exerciſe, and
Internæ. tarying in the Sunne. Inward cauſes is plenty of bloud, or thinneſſe of the ſame.
Signa. You may know if it come through plenty of bloud by heauy pain in the head,
Victus ratio. much bloud in the face, and redneſſe of the eyes. Let the diet be thinne, and ſuch that it may coole and make thicke the bloud. Therfore let the aire be cold, and the meate of good iuyce, and eaſie to digeſt. If the bloud be very hot, let the ſicke eate Lettuce, Endiue, Peares, Quinces, Chickens roſted, or boiled with Veriuyce. Let him drinke thicke red wine mixt with water, or cold water, or de-
Potus. coction of Cinamon, by which throughout my booke I meane water in which a litle Cinamon is ſodden, leſt water through his coldnes might hurt a weake ſtomacke. Let the patient ſpeake litle, and let him eſchue mouing, trouble of mind, and chiefly anger. Alſo it is good to haue the lower parts of the head higheſt.
Curatio. For the cure, you muſt take heed that in bleeding at the noſe, the lower parts lie higheſt, and the head downward. The cure muſt be begun with thoſe remedies which turne the bloud to other parts of the body. Firſt therfore if the body be full, and age will ſuffer it, and if the ſicke be not reſolued, you muſt cut the
Venæ ſectio. veine on the arme, right againſt the flowing of bloud at the noſe. When you haue drawne out a litle, then let it alone an houre, then draw out ſome againe, and afterward againe and againe, as the patients ſtrength will ſuffer it. Moreouer, friction and rubbing of the inferiour parts, as the armes, hands, thighs, ſhare and feet, is very profitable: and it is maruellouſly good to put the feet into warme water, euer rubbing them vp and downe. Alſo ſtrong binding of the extremities is to be accounted among the remedies that pull backe. Alſo great
Cucurbitulæ. cupping glaſſes faſtened to the ſides, do retaine bloud breaking out at the noſe. If the bloud flow from the right noſthrill, faſten the cupping glaſſe vpon the liuer; if at the left noſthrill, vpon the ſpleene. If the bloud come from both the noſthrils, faſten cupping glaſſes to both places. Alſo faſten them to the ſhoulders with ſcarification. Thoſe being done, miniſter both within the body and without, things which coole and reſtraine. Outwardly apply to the forehead
Epithema. an *Epithema* of iuyce of Plantaine, Lettuce, Sorrell, Shepheards purſe, Knotgraſſe, or make it with the waters of them diſtilled. A linnen cloth wet in cold vineger is maruellous good, being applyed to the forehead and necke againe and againe. Alſo nouriſh the forehead with ſponges of cold water. Alſo it is good to vſe this *Epithema*, applied to the forehead and the liuer: ℞. water of

Roſes

Roſes, Nightſhade, Sorrell, ana. ℥.iij. powders of *Diatrion ſantalon*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ana. ℥.j. Bolearmenie, luory burnt, *Lapis hæmatites*, ana. ℥.ß. commixe them all, and make an *Epithema*. Alſo you muſt put into the noſe medicines to ſtop bloud, for the which this is very good: ℞ Frankenſence, ℥.ij. Aloes, ℥.j. powder them, and mixe therewith the white of an egge, vntill it be as thicke as Hony, then commixe the ſoft haires of a Hare with it, and apply it to the noſe. Alſo you may writhe a linnen cloth (dipped therein) in the noſthrils. Alſo Mints brayed and put into the noſthrils, is thought to be exceeding good. Alſo a ſponge wet in ſtrong and ſharpe vineger, may be put into the noſe that bleedeth. Alſo this medicine is good. ℞. Egg-ſhels, ℥ ij. vnripe Gals, ℥ j. being brayed, put them in a writhed linnen cloth wet in water or vineger, & put it into the noſthrils. Alſo it is good to ſtop the eares ſtrongly with linnen and waxe, and to hold in the mouth cold raine water. Alſo iuyce of the leaues of Nettle, hauing linnen dipt into it, and put into the noſe, ſtoppeth bleeding at the noſe. Alſo iuyce of Horſetaile, or the leaues brayed & applied are good. The fleſh of Snailes brayed with vineger, or with their ſhels burnt and brayed are good, being applied to the forehead & noſe with vineger. But aboue al, the bloud which cometh out of the patients noſe is good, if it be burned in an earthen pot, and then beaten; take of it ℥. iij. Bolearmoniacke, ℥ j. Champhore ℈ j. with the white of an egge and a litle vineger, make it thicke like hony, and lay it to the forehead, and put it into the noſe. Neceſſity requiring, it is lawfull to put too two graines or three of *Opium*. Aſſes dung dried and made into powder is wonderfully good; and alſo hogs dung hath the like propertie. Within the body miniſter thoſe things which do coole and reſtraine, as be ſirupes of Roſes, Sorrell and *Nymphæa*, Trochiſks of *Terra lemnia*, or their iuyces, and ſuch like medicines. Moreouer, if in the meane ſeaſon any bloud flow into the belly or other places of the body, if it be much and plenteous, you muſt auoid it by medicines which will diſſolue and bring forth the cloddy matter.

Alind Epithema.

An excellent medicine to ſtop bloud.

Optima medicina.

CHAP. XLV.

Of diſtillation, rheume, and hoarceneſſe.

Catarros in Greeke, is called *Diſtillatio* in Latine, and in Engliſh Rheume. It is whereas an humour falleth downe to the mouth and the iawes. *Grauedo* is when the humour falleth into the noſe, and cauſeth the poſe. *Raucedo* is when the humour chanceth to diſtill to the ſharpe arterie. The cauſe of flowing of the humour, is the braine, the which through cold is brought to a cold temper, which chanceth ſpecially to them which go ſuddenly about in the cold bare headed. But through heate the braine is warmed and ſtuffed, the coldneſſe of humours which be in the braine wringing hard, like as a ſponge dipped in water is wroong with ones hand: it cauſeth the flowing of humours to the lower parts. So oftentimes heate going about in the head, diſſoluing the humours in the braine, ingendreth diſtillation. Moreouer, all things that replete the head without meaſure, do cauſe flowing of humours into the inferiour parts: alſo wine immoderately drunke, and hote baths, raw meate remaining in the ſtomacke, and vaporous things in the head. The ſignes if the fluxe of humours come of heate, are theſe, the head is hote, and a ſharpe and

Diſtillatio.
Grauedo.
Raucedo.
Cauſæ.
Cold.
Heate.
Repletion of the head.
Signa.

Calor. thinne humour distilleth as well by the nose as by the mouth: also the face and the nose is red, and for the most part there followeth a Feauer. Contrariwise, they that haue the fluxe caused of cold, their head and their forehead is stretched forth euery where, the passages which be in the bones called *Ethmoidea*, are shut vp, so that the voice cannot passe downeward by the nosthrils. Also a flegmaticke and thicke humour distilleth out of the nose. Let him eschue aire that is very hote or very cold, especially from a bath, and from South and North winds, and all things that can bind or dissolue humors in the braine. Let him vse meats of good iuyce, easie to be digested. Let him eschue those things that send plentie of vapours to the braine, as be Onions, Garlick, Mustard seed, Radish, and very hote odoraments. Moreouer they which haue the distillation, must eate lesse at supper then at dinner: let their drinke be *Aqua mulsa*, or decoction of Cinamon, or Barley: let him eschue sleeping in the day, and lying vpright in the night. For the cure, when the head is vexed with a hot distemper, you must vse those remedies which are good for paine in the head ingendred of such a cause. The most present remedie of the head is to sprinkle and powre vpon the head plentie of hote water, that is able to driue out the hote vapors ingendred in the head. Moreouer such must take comfort of warme baths of sweet water. They which haue their head vehemently hote and burning, and for that are troubled with continuall distillation, it is best for them in Sommer to be annointed with oile of Roses. If a cold distemper vexe the head, it must be annointed with hote and thinne oiles, as oiles of *Ireos*, Rew, and such like. Oyle of *Ireos* is not onely vsed as an ointment, but dropped into the nose. Also other things may be applyed, which are spoken of in the Chapter against paine of the head caused of cold. If a hote humor distill from the head together with a Feauer, and if there be fulnesse of the body, you must let bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine: but if any iust cause be against it, wash the belly with a clister, that it may draw the humours that do abound in the head downward: or minister a medicine purging choler, as is *Pilulæ aureæ*, *Alephanginæ*, *Azarum*, and such like. Also you must turne the humours from the head, by frictions, ligatures, and fastening of cupping glasses to the shoulders. Minister within the body things that haue vertue to alter and quench the burning heate of choler, as is sirupe of Violets, *Nymphæa*, of Poppy, & their conserues. Also *Embroche* and odoraments rehearsed before in the Chapter of headach may be applied. Also a plaister of *Terra lemnia*, or Bolearmoniake, and iuyce of Plantain, made and laid vpon the head being shauen is good. If it be a cold humour which distilleth, you shall emptie with those things which purge fleame: for which purpose a strong clister is good: which being done, you must draw and turne away the humour from the head. Then when the humors be digested, purge the head with Masticatories, Gargarismes, and such like. Moreouer, apply to the head *Sacculi* made thus: ℞. flowers of Cammomill, Melilot, Betony, Origan. ana. M. ß. Cinamon, Cloues, ana ʒ. j. Maces, ʒ. j ß. Nutmegs, ʒ. ij *Gallæ Moschatæ*, ʒ. j. powder them all, and put them in silke, and make a *Sacculus*, and lay it to the crowne of the head. It is very good also to annoint the head with hot oiles, as are the oiles of *Ireos*, Dill and Rew. All things do stop distillation, which haue vertue to dry, especiellly *Nigella* parched, and Cumin burnt or parched put into a linnen cloth, and

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Humor frigidus.

Sacculi.

To stop distillation.

and knit, is a present remedie, if the patient do smell to it. For the same purpose it is good to minister suffuments, as is this: ℞. Frankensence, Mastick, ana. ℥.j. wood of Aloes, ℈.j.ß. Cinamon, Cloues, ana. ℈.ij. *Gallæ moschatæ*, ℥.j.ß. Laurel leaues, yellow Sanders, ana. ℥.j. Musk, Amber, ana. gr.j. being brayed, commix them with *Storax liquida*, as much as sufficeth, and make trochisks: wherof put one vpon coales: ℞. Sage, Marioram, Rosemary, ana. ℥.j. Maces, Cloues, Cinamon, ana. ℈.ij. wood of Aloes, ℈.j. Frankensence, ℥.j.ß. beate them all, and commixe them, and make a grosse powder to strew vpon the coales. As for hoarsenesse, it is cured almost with the same medicines that the cough is. *Trokiskes of perfume.*

CHAP. XLVI.

Of paine in the teeth.

TOothach (as *Galen* saith) amongst other paines that are not mortall, is the most cruel & grieuous of them all. It is caused somtime of hote or cold distemper. Also many times through flowing of humors out of the head vnto the roots of the teeth, which with their sharpnesse either do gnaw about them, or else with their abundance they engender like griefe in the teeth, as if inflammation were about the fleshy parts. Paine in the teeth is somtime without inflammation of the gums, sometime in the sinew wherein the roots be planted. If the paine come through distemper of the bare qualitie, it will not be grieuous. Hot distemper is knowne by the temper of the whole body, because that likewise is hot. Also the face is red, and the diet vsed before was hot. Cold is known by the contrary iudgements. If the paine be caused of flowing of some humor abundantly, then grieuous paine is not onely felt in the teeth, but also in other parts which it passeth by. An hot humor ingendreth vehement paine: a cold humour more meeker. Let the diet be such as may defend that the paine come not, and let it be such as is not very hot nor cold. Also eschue all sharpe, sower, and viscous things. Also often vsing of milke doth maruellously hurt the teeth: labour diligently to purifie the teeth. The meats must be good of iuyce, & easie to digest. For the cure, if it come of cold, it is good to wash the teeth with warme wine. Let the cheeks be annointed outward with warme oyles, of Cammomill, Rew, *Ireos*, & such like. Also to wash the mouth, seeth in vineger, Origã, Calamint, Hyssope, Peniroyal, Sauory, the root of Veruain, & such like. If the teeth do ake thorough heate, you must seeth in vineger Purslaine, Pellitory, Singreene the lesse, & licorice. But if the heat be intollerable, you must vse the seeds of Lettuce, Endiue, and Poppy sodden in vineger. Without you must annoint against the grief with cold oiles, as of Roses, Water-lillies, & such like. Moreouer if the paine be caused through flowing of humors, if age, time of the yeare, & other things will suffer it, & if the body be also ful of bloud, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* veine or *media* on the same side that the grief is. That done cut the veine vnder the tong, or fasten cupping glasses to the shoulders. If one onely corrupt humor doth abound, thé vse conuenient medicins to purge that humor. For the same purpose clisters are very good. The whole body being emptied, you must minister those medicins that do represse & stop, as iuice of Plãtaine, Roses, Purslaine, both the endiues: either take the decoctiõ of the afore said things, or their waters distilled and mixed with a litle vineger. It is only good to wash the aking with hot sharp

Cause.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

If it come of heate.

If of flowing of humours.

vineger, with vntipe Gals: or this, ℞. the root of Henbane. ʒ. j. Pellitory. ʒ. ß. Staueſacre. ʒ. ij. Galingale. ʒ ß. Camphore. ϑ ij. Alume. ʒ. j. Hony ʒ. ij. let all be bruſed, and boile all in vineger ℔ j. Roſe water ʒ. vj. waſh the teeth with this each morning; it will preſerue the teeth, & keepe thē from paine. But if it come of extreme cold, then vſe ſpecially this medicine: ℞. Pepper, Pellitory, Melilot, ana ʒ j Staueſacre ʒ ß. bruſe thē, and put the powder into a linnen cloth, & lay it on the aking teeth, & keepe it there a quarter of an houre, and it will ceaſe the paine. Alſo (as is ſaid before) to waſh the teeth with warme wine, is very good.

If it come of cold.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of teeth that be blacke and looſe.

Cauſe. SOMETIME the teeth be ſwart and blacke throughout their ſubſtance, not vnlike a certaine inflammation of the patients. Through flowing of vicious humours the teeth be looſe, ſometime through a ſtripe or fall, ſometime through flowing of moiſtneſſe, which looſeth the ſinewes and ligaments, and maketh the teeth looſe; or elſe gnawing and weakneſſe of the gummes in the which the teeth are ſet, cauſeth them to be looſe. The cure of vicious humours *Curatio.* muſt be begun with purging. Afterward, if the teeth be ſwart or ruſtie, you muſt diuide the corrupt humours which flow to the teeth, with drying medicines, as is, *Vicium*, Frankenſence, Mints, Gals, Maſticke, Mirrhe, *Nigella*, & ſuch like. Among many other this is very good. ℞. *Nigella*, Mirrhe, Frankēſence, ana. ʒ j. Maſticke, white Pepper, ana ϑ ij. *Poſtolochiæ*. ϑ j. roch Alume. ʒ j. beat them into powder, and rub the teeth therewith: or commixe them with Venice Turpentine, and annoint them therewith. The corrupt humors being conſumed, vſe Dentifrices which haue vertue to ſcoure and drie, as is this, ℞ *Nitrum*, roch Alume, Harts horne burnt, ana. ʒ. j. Murrhe ϑ. j. the roote of *Ireos Illiricæ*, Frankenſence, drie Mints, ana ʒ. j. ß. common Salt burnt, *Piſtolochiæ*, ana. ʒ j. Pumiſh, *Teſtarum ſepiæ*. ana ʒ. j. ß. Pepper, Pellitory, drie Peniroyall. ana. ʒ ß. beat them, and ſearce them all, and with this powder rub the teeth daily. For teeth *Dentifricum optimum.* that be looſe you may apply ſuch medicines as reſtraine and ſtrengthen looſe gummes, and faſten thē. Therefore for collutions of the mouth the decoctions of reſtrictiue things do profit, as is this. ℞. red Roſes, Mints, Plantaine ana. *M.* ß. the barks of Cipreſſe nuts ʒ. j. ſeeds of Mirtels, Sumach. ana. ʒ ß. *Looſe teeth.* Pomgranate rinds, Gals, ana ʒ. ij. *Acatia* ϑ ij. ſeeth them all in red reſtrictiue wine, & with that often waſh the mouth. The mouth being waſhed, it is lawfull to vſe this *Dentifricium*. ℞. Gals the rinds of ſweet Pomegranates, ana ʒ. j. *Ba-* *Collutio oris.* *lauſtium*, Sumach, Mirrhe, ana. ϑ. j. red Roſes, *Sanguis draconis*, *Caliculorum glandium*. ana. ʒ. j Frankenſence, Harts horne burnt, ana. ʒ. j ß powder all, and ſearce them, and rub the teeth therewith: or this is maruellous good. ℞. *Balauſtium*, *Dentifricium.* Nutmegs, ana ʒ iij. roch Alume ʒ. j. ß powder them, and mixe thē with Hony ʒ. ij. ß. and incorporate thē well together: and with this annoint the teeth twiſe or thriſe in the day.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Vlcers in the mouth.

THE vlcers which are bred in the vpper part of the mouth, and haue a certaine burning heate, in Greeke are called *Aphthæ*, and of the barbarous ἀφθαί.

ſort

sort *Acola*: some be whitish, and some reddish, and some blackish, and these be most perilous of all other. They ingender for the most part in infants and sucking children, when either the nurses milke is naught, or the child cannot well digest it. Also they chance sometime to them that be of perfect age, aswell through great fluxe of vicious and corrupt humours to the mouth, as also through sharpnesse of those things that are eaten and drunke. The tokens are easie, because they be knowne by sight and feeling. If you touch it, the places will seeme hoter then they ought to be, and there is swelling. They which be red, do shew bloud to haue the maisterie: yellownesse signifieth bitter choler: whiteneſſe, fleame: blackneſſe, melancholie. They which chance to children may easily be cured by those things that do meanely restraine. And you must giue them chiefly in their meats some Quinces, and other sharpe things, as Peares, and Mespilers. viz. Medlers, or open arses. Sometime also you must commixe with their meate some Lettuce, Endiue and Purslaine. If there be inflammation of the vlcers, then take the iuyce of Purslaine, Lettuce, and Nightshade, the powder of Alume, and wash the mouth with a fine cloth or with a Sering; and if the child can take no meate, then the nurse must vse the same kinde of diet. Also the decoction of Galles, *Balaustium*, Sanders, Sumach, *Acatia* and such like, commixed with *Rob de ribes*, or *Diamoron*, applyed as before is taught. In them that be of perfect age, onely the nature of the body is to be considered, whether it be soft, or moist, or hard, or drie. For in hard and strong bodies you must minister strong medicins. In weake and soft bodies, gentle medicines. For the diet therefore in such ages, they must eschue all things that be sharpe & salt, and that ingender corrupt iuyce. For the cure, in sulneſſe of the body, if nothing do let it, first cut the *Cephalica* veine, & thē those veines vnder the tongue. If the body be full of ill iuice, you must minister a purgation against the corrupt humours. The bodie being purged, apply medicins which haue vertue to restraine and stop. Moderate remedies against vlcers be these; *Sumach*, Roses, *Balaustium* dissolue i in wine or *Mulsa*. But if the exulcerations begin to putrifie, this decoction is very profitable. ℞. Fellard. leaues of Sage, Hysope, Rew, Penniroyall, Cammomil, Woodbind, Knotgrasse, *Bursa pastoris*, Brier leaues, ana. *M*. ß. wash them cleane, and boile them all in ℔ ij. ß of good Ale or Beere, and put therein three or foure spoonefuls of Hony, Alume ʒ. ij. let it seeth to the consumption of halfe, then straine it, & wash the mouth therewith foure or fiue times in a day. But if the vlcers be more running and gnawing, annoint the place with *Vnguentum Ægyptiacum*, mixt with *Mel rosarum*, or such like.

Signa.

Curatio infantium.

Care of them that be of perfect age.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of a stinking mouth.

THERE is a grieuous and stinking sauour of the mouth caused for the most part through putrifaction of the gummes or teeth, or through meate sticking still in the teeth. Many times it cometh through hote distemper of the skinne of the mouth: sometime also through corrupt and rotten humours sticking in the mouth of the stomacke. It chanceth also many times that exulceration of the mouth or lungs doth hurt the breath of the mouth or lungs. If stinking of the mouth chance through putrifaction either of the gummes, or

Cause.

Signa. teeth, or of meate sticking in the teeth: it is soone knowne either by sight, or by the patients tale. If it be caused of a hote distemper of the mouth, then heate is felt in the mouth, and thirst troubleth him. If through vice of the stomacke, then the breath of the mouth is more grieuous and stinking before meate then after meate. Vlcerations of the lungs are knowne by extenuation of the bodie, and by coughing.

Victus ratio. In the diet the patient must auoid all things that do readily ingender corruption in the mouth or stomacke, as is, milk, fish, almost all fruits, marrow, fat, naughty water, and such like. Let the meats therefore which they vse be of good iuyce, and easie to digest: but they must vse meats rather rost then sodden. In the end of dinner & supper they may eate Peares, Quinces, and such like, especially, if the stinking sauour come frō the mouth of the stomacke. Let them eschue sleeping by and by after meate. If stinch of the mouth come through corruption of the gummes or teeth, if there be fulnesse of the bodie. first draw bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine, & then fasten cupping glasses to the necke; but if the body be full of euill iuice, purge the humor that doth abound with a conuenient medicine. The bodie being purged, vse outward medicines, specially collutions and washings, which in this case seeme to be maruelious good, as this is, ℞. Red roses, Plantain, Knotgrasse, ana. M. j ß. Gals, Pomegranat floures, Cipres nuts, ana. ℥. ij. rinds of Pomegranats, ℥. ß. Roch alume. ℥ j. seeth these in iust quantitie of water to the third part, & in the iuyce of the decoction l eing strained, cōmixe *Mel rosarum, Diacarion.* ana. ℥ ß. *Diamoron.* ℥. iij. commixe them all and make a collution, with the which wash the gums and the teeth euery morning & euening. Also oftē washing with water mixed with vineger in the morning, and by and by after meate, is good.

Collutio oris. If the stinke in the mouth be without exulceration, minister the roote of *Ireos* steeped in old odoriferous wine, and wash the teeth often withall. Also it is good to hold it in the mouth. Also Mirrhe steeped in pure wine minister to wash the teeth. Also it is very good to chew Pellitorie, *Tamariscus* & Rew. Likewise collution of vineger squilliticke, or decoction of Sage, or onely wine. Also decoction of Mints in vineger and water helpeth, if the mouth be often washed with it. This causeth swcet breath, and maketh the teeth white.

For sweete breath. ℞. white salt, Pumises, Origan, ana ℥. ij. roote of *Ireos*, ℥ j flowres of Squinance ℥. ß. beate them all, & commix thē, and rub the teeth therewith. If stinke of the mouth come of a hote distemper, cure it with contrary medicines: but if it come of a corrupt humour in the mouth of the stomack, it is healed by those things which do purge that humor. Those things which be contained in the mouth of the stomacke may well be brought out by a vomit.

Vomitus. How ye shall prouoke vomite, it is declared in many places before. After this, minister medicins which do strengthen the stomacke, as is, *Aromaticum rosaceum, Diamber, Hydromalum*, & such like medicins, which be good in all cases, as be Cloues, Masticke, Mace, wood of *Aloes*, Cinamon, Roses, all the Saunders, Nutmegs, *Quibibes, Ireos*, and other of the like sort.

These suffice. And how many euils soeuer there be of the head, whose cure is not expresly named by me in this booke, yet you may finde out medicines to cure them by that which is declared in this booke.

The

The second Booke.

CHAP. I.

Against the inflammation of the Columella.

THere chanceth in the throate many dangerous inflammations (as *Hippocrates* writeth in his *Prognostickis*) and first of this *Columella* appeareth a certain fleshly peece, hanging in the vpper part of the mouth. If one do gape wide, and hold downe his tongue, it may be seene. In old time it was called *Gurgulio*, now it is called *Columella*. It is often vexed with inflammations, which is caused through bloud and other humours which descend out of the head. The disease may be known by sight: and there chanceth in it difficulty in swallowing, paine, swelling, rednesse of the *Columella*, & seauer. The diet in a maner, must be such as is ordained in other inflammations, & specially, quietnesse, rest, silence, & hunger, are good, and to eate litle or nothing at supper. For the cure, if there be fulnesse of the bodie, you must begin with bloudletting, and first you must cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, & afterward the veine vnder the tongue. Also the bellie must be purged by clisters, so that by that meanes, not onely the bellie may be soluble, but also that flowing of humours to the griefe, may be taken away. Also for the same purpose you may fasten cupping glasses to the shoulders: neither must we let passe the remedies which are good to represse and stop fluxe of humours. For as they do in all other diseases caused of the fluxe of humours, so in this behalfe, for their first remedie, they stop the fluxe of humours. Therefore such remedies must be of a restrictiue nature & facultie. If that the fluxe of humours be moderate, minister things which restraine moderately, as those be which be called soure. But if it be more vehement, adde to it sharpe things, for both be restrictiue; but soure be weake, and sharp things strong, as *Galen* doth say in his fourth booke of the vertues of simple medicines, cap. 6. and 7. Therefore vse collutions made of those things: as if they should be moderate, seeth Dates sometime in water alone, and sometime with a litle hony put to them. Likewise make decoctions of Roses, Vine buds, Brambles, Cipresse, the first buds of Pomegranate flowers, *Siligna*, roots of Mulberie, soure Apple, and *Sorbus*. Those be stronger then these, which be made of the decoction of Mirtles, and their berries. Also of sharpe Quinces, & yong buds of Oake, or the mast of Oak: also of Medlars, & a fruit called *Cornus*: the best collutiõs are made of Gals *Sumach*, *Acatia*, & the floures of both the Pomegranats, and their shels. Among

Gurgulio.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Cucurbitulæ.

Gargariſmus. compound medicines this doth helpe wonderfully, ℞. the diſtilled waters of Roſes, Plantaine, Sorrell, *Prunella*, *Solani* ana ℥ ij. *Diamoron*, *ſucci medicati Cribes*, ana. ℥ ß. *Succi medicati Exiochanta*. ℥. ij. ß. vineger, wherein *Sumach* is ſteeped. ℥ j. iuice of Pomegranates ℥ ß commixe them together, and with it waſh the mouth. Another of the ſame vertue. ℞ red Roſes, Brambles, ana *M.* j Pomgranate floures & the ſhels, Gals, malt of Oake ana. ℥. iij. *Sumach*, *Hypociſchidis*, *Acatia*. ana ℥ ij ſeeds of Sorrel and Quinces ana. ℥. j. ſeeth them in ℔ j of well water, vntill halfe remaine; the decoction being ſtrained, put to it of *Diamoron* ℥. j. *ſucci medicati Cribes*, *Diacarion*, ana. ℥. ij ß. vineger ℥. vj. commixe them all, and make a gargariſme. You muſt vſe theſe medicines in the beginning of the diſeaſe, and eſpecially when the griefe hath not the greateſt cauſe: nor when the bodie of the ſicke is much ſtopped with humours, nor when the aggrieued place is weake through the nature of the impoſtume. But if it chance ſo (as it doth often in the beginning, and often ſomewhat after) that is, the third day, you muſt commixe ſome of the diſcuſſiue medicins, as is, Lineſeed, Fenugreek, Mallowes, roots of *Ireos*, and Hony. Moreouer, of what ſort ſoeuer the medicines be, miniſter them warme, for thoſe that labour of inflammation, may ſuffer no cold. After the vigour of it you may lately miniſter diſcuſſiues, vnleſſe the *Columella* begin to waxe hard: for then you muſt miniſter mollifying medicines: that is, Lineſeed, Fenugreeke, Mallowes, *Altheæ*, *Tragacanthum*, & ſuch like: of the which you may make gargariſmes. After that vſe diſcuſſiues, as is, Hyſope, Figs, Licorice decoct together. If it draw toward rotting, which may be perceiued by his colour, and doth not breake alone by colluſions of *Malſa* and *Oximel ſcilliticum*, then open it with ſome inſtrument. After the breaking and burſting out of the matter, let him vſe medicines cleanſing, abſterſiue, and glutinatiue, eſpecially the iuyce of Eupatorie, and ſuch like.

Alia.

CHAP. II.

Of a looſe Columella.

OFtentimes it chanceth that a looſe *Columella* doth hang vpon the roots of the tongue and iawes. Of ſome it is called the *Vuula*. Wherefore in the beginning you muſt vſe ſuch kind of cure as the inflammation therof requireth. In the beginning the body and the head muſt be purged by medicines ſpoken of in the former Chapter. Which being done, you muſt make collutions and gargariſmes of ſuch things as do reſtraine and drie: after this ſort. ℞. red Roſes, Sorrell, Eupatory, ana. *M.* j. *Gallacum*. ℥. ij. Alume. ℥. j. Mirrhe, Frankenſenſe, ana. ℥. ß. Flax ſeed. ℥. ß. ſeeth them in water to the third part, and adde to the iuyce of that decoction ſtrained, of good Hony, ℥. ß. and make a gargariſme.

Gargariſmus.

Alſo powders do profit, being blowne in with an inſtrument for the purpoſe: as this is, ℞. dry Roſes, Galles, roch Alume, ana. ℥. j. ß. Pepper, Ginger, ana. ℥. ß. Mirrhe. ℥. j. powder it, and ſearce it, and put it vp as before. Alſo take greene Nuts, and drie them, and Date ſtones burned ſufficiently: take of each of them equall portions, powder them, and vſe them as the other. Alſo vnripe Galles, Bolearmoniacke. ana. ℥. j. do likewiſe. If the *Columella* muſt needs be cut, it is good to empty the belly firſt, leſt the ſicke be ſtrangled. When the *Columella* is cut out, bow his head downward, leſt the bloud run inward. And afterward waſh his

his mouth with the decoction of Sumach, *Acatia*, Galles, putting to it Rose-water and Vineger. Afterward minister things to heale it vp.

CHAP. III.

Of inflammation of the tonsils.

TONSILLAE be inflammations of those things which lie betweene the mouth and the throate; some do call them *Amigdalæ* (that is) Almonds. Those tonsils oftentimes be inflamed: for their places be hote and moist. *Causæ.* They are most vexed with this euill, which haue abundance of bloud: and children & infants which do sucke, through drawing of the milke. Also it chanceth often to men and women through drinking of strong wines, & through much greedie deuouring of meats, especially if they be eager and sharpe. They that *Signa.* be so afflicted haue difficultie in swallowing, and paine, and also sometime a feuer. Therefore the inflammation beginning, you must take away meate, and minister to him water to drinke, or water wherein a little Cinnamon hath *Victus ratio.* bene sodden, specially if there be a feauer. Let the whole diet be so ordered, as it is in other inflammations. Let his meate be soupings, for otherwise he cannot swallow it. For the cure, if the inflammation be light, you must vse gargarismes, *Curatio.* restrictiues, such as be taken in the beginning of an inflamed *Columella*. But you must beware in the beginning, that you put no Hony to the gargarismes, for it hath a sharpnesse in it. If that the inflammation be vehement, so that he be in peril of choking, you must cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme on the same side. *Venæ sectio.* And if the belly be not soluble enough, cast in a clister. You must prouoke childrens bellies by putting in a suppositarie, and by annointing the tuell. After purging you must vse restrictiue medicines, vntill the vigour of the disease be somewhat ceassed. All these things (as we admonished before) must be ministred warme. Outwardly it is best to nourish it with Sponges, laid gently to it. Also lay to it plaisters made of Barly meale, seeds of flaxe, Fenugreeke, & such like. The inflammation declining, and waxing lesse, it is good to put Hony into your gargarismes, which in the beginning and increasing you may not do, lest the sharpnesse which is in it do increase fluxe. Also at this time hoter gargarismes do profit. Outwardly you must put about the necke, soft wooll dipped in oyle: and if that by vsing of sharpe collutions, or gargarismes, the inflammations be increased, and biting & gnawing come thereby, you must vse gentler, as is, iuyce of Prisan: also gargarise warme Milke. When the inflammation and paine ceasseth, annoint with the aforesaid remedies of the mouth, putting it in with your finger: so that by gentle annointing, the parts of the tonsils which are swelled, may be thrust, whereby they may put out the matter contained in them. But yet you may not thrust hard, as many vse to do, whereby they cause the inflammation to be augmented And therefore if by that meanes any hurt do chance, we must be content with minister ring gentle gargarismes without any annointing. If that by ministring the remedies aforesaid, the griefe *Signes of suppuration.* be not eased, then looke for rotting of it, which you may know by increasing of the inflammation, and by sharpe exulcerations, exacerbations, and gnawings in the euening. When you looke for suppuration and rotting, you must helpe that it may quickly come to passe; therefore then you must minister

hoter gargarismes, as is, *Aqua mulsa*, and decoction of Figs, Hysope, and seed of *Althæa*. Outwardly lay plaisters of Barley meale and Fenugreeke, with decoction of Figs, *Althæa* and hony. When it is perfectly rotten, the paine will diminish, and the swelling and inflammation will be made softer, so that it will giue place to the finger: then you must minister sharpe collutions, that they may breake the botch. In meates he must take great gobbets of bread steeped in water, and likewise his meate must be eaten by lumps: for vehement rolling of it vp and downe about the tonsils will breake the botches, as well as if they were cut. But if the patient will not do it, then open it with some fine instrument for the purpose. And after it is broken, let the sicke bow his head downeward, that the matter may the better run out. And let him gargarise *Aqua mulsa* alone, and afterward commixe with it decoction of Lentils & Roses. And with these you must tarrie vntill it be healed.

CHAP. IIII.

Of malignant Vlcers of the tonsils.

Causa. THERE beginne malignant vlcers of the tonsils, sometime with a fluxe of them going before: sometime they are caused of an accustomed inflammation being augmented. They chance often to children, and also to them of perfect age, especially to those which do abound with vicious humours. They *Signa.* chance to children after the *Apthis* in the mouth. In colour they be like vnto scurfes which are burnt with iron. Also there chanceth to the sicke drinesse in swallowing, and often choking, especially when rednesse is vnder the chin. If gnawing and sharpnesse of humours hath gone before, there followeth putrefaction. You must proceed in the cure speedily: and if he be of perfect age, *Curatio.* and no other thing forbidding it, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, or if that appeare not, the middle veine. If they be maids, whom at perfect age, for lacke of purgation of menstruis, the disease doth often infect, then in them you must cut the *Saphena* veine, letting bloud but once onely, and yet at that time, not till the heart faile, lest after it vertue be destroyed by ouermuch fluxe of menstruis. Furthermore the belly must be emptied by clisters, suppositaries, and by annointing of the tuell. And you must labour by all meanes to turne the humor from the agrieued place: for the which purpose fasten cupping glasses nigh to the loynes, and vse to bind the extremities, as the hands and feet. Afterward it is good to vse gargarismes, declared before in the Chapter of *Columella*, and in the Chapter following. After the beginning of the sicknesse, minister *Diamoron*, or a collution mixed with *Malsa*, then also decoction of *Ireos*, and other things rehearsed in the abouesaid places. We must take heed that we touch not the vlcerate tonsils with our finger, not so much as to touch it softly. For the vnskilfull, to whom with great errour men do seeke in doubtfull matters, they do annoy it vehemently, also they do thrust the aggrieued place, and pull away the scab or roue, which they ought not to do before they see the roue lifted vp, and scarce cleauing to the sore. For if we intend to pull away the scabbe, whiles it sticketh fast, the vlteration will pierce more deepe, and inflammations will follow, and the paine will increase, and they will come to venimous vlcers. Therefore it is good to blow in drie remedies, and to annoint

noint liquid things with a feather. Dogs dung mixed with hony and annointed, taketh away the roues maruellously, which will be the better if the dog be fed onely with bones two dayes before: it helpeth greatly, neither hath it any vnsauorinesse being ministred in meates. Also the ashes of Swallowes burnt, and the ashes of Centory *minor* burnt, with hony mixed, is good. After the irritations and chasings made by medicines, you must appease it with decoction of liquorice, and with a Gargarisme, which is made of Masticke, Mirrhe, *Tragacanthum*, *Amylum*, and Saffron, ministring also while the vlcer feedeth, milke mixed with *Terra lemnia* to gargarise. What need many words? You must be diligent and carefull, specially in cleansing and purging the vlcers. Many infants do suffer the cramp in purging of the vlcers. Some be strangled, because the way of swallowing is dryed vp. It is good to apply outward foments, and emplaisters, with taking heed lest he do coole it. For the cure will prosper if the matter that is holden within can be drawne outward. Therefore alwayes after the taking of the plaister away, couer the parts that be about the chinne, by laying vpon it soft woolle, sprinkled with *Oleum Nardinum*. To conclude, when the scurfs are loosened, and the vlcers purged, vse this remedy following: ℞. flowers of red Roses, ℥.iij. Saffron, ℥ j ß. *Balaustiæ*, ℥ ß. Mirrhe, ℈.j. Pine nuts made cleane, ℥ ij. *Amyli*, ℥.j. Sumach, Roch allume, ana. ℥.j ß. beate them, commixe them with hony, and vse to annoint it three times on the day. *Gargarisme.*

CHAP. V.

Of the Squinancy.

Angina in Latin, Squinancie in English, but in Greek *Synanche*. It is properly an inflammation which is in the throate, or in the iawes. There be foure kinds of Squinancies; one is, when the iawes be inflamed, (by the iawes I meane the place where the ends of the weasand and the *trachæa arteria* do agree.) Another is, when neither the iawes nor other parts of the mouth, nor yet the outward parts do seeme to be inflamed, yet the sicke feeleth perill of choking in the throate. The third is, when the parts about the throate be inflamed both outwardly and inwardly. The fourth is, when the ioynts betweene the bones of the head and the necke be loosened to the former part of the necke, whereby the place appeareth hollow, and the sicke feeleth paine when it is touched without. The Squinancy is caused through abundance of hote bloud, flowing vnnaturally to the places before rehearsed. It is knowne by these signes: the breath is drawne very hardly, and not without the necke be holden right: and there is difficulty in swallowing. Also in some, a feauer, rednesse of the face and necke. There chanceth also in many, swelling: the sicke yawneth with open mouth and draweth breath. Therfore in the beginning euery Squinancy requireth a hasty and speedy remedy. Wherefore you must by and by cut the outward veine on the same side of the shoulders, except some greater perill do let it: but you must take away the bloud by little and little, at many times, and not all at once, for the bloud being taken away all together on heapes, the heart soone faileth, and so the perill of choking cometh vpon him. And moreouer also by the refrigeration and fainting of the heart, the matter is quickly caried from the iawes vnto the lungs, and so bringeth ineuitable peril. Take heed also

Gen. 4. ℞. 3. 3. 4.

Causæ. *Signa.*

Curatio. *Venæ humerorum sectio.*

that there be litle deduction of the veine, for thereof cometh much failing of the mind, and yet it is not good to make a narrow incision of the veine, leſt the bloud be as it were ſtrained, and the groſſer part remaineth within ſtill, which is the cauſe of this diſeaſe. It is profitable to them to haue the bloud drawne out againe the next day, vnleſſe the ſwelling of the diſeaſe let it, or faintnes of the heart. If the ſicke be a woman, cut the veine on the ankles, ſpecially if the menſtruis be ſtopped; and the bloud muſt be drawne out moderately. If by theſe ſhe be but litle eaſed, then it is good to cut thoſe veines which be vnder the tongue, and that by and by, at the firſt or ſecond day. And if there be any thing that forbiddeth bloudletting, the belly muſt be emptied with a ſharpe cliſter, ſuch as is deſcribed in the Chapter of *Apoplexia*. After vniuerſal euacuations, you muſt faſten on cupping glaſſes: and if there be ſwelling about the cheekes, or vnder the chin, it is good to faſten cupping glaſſes to the ſwelling, and with ſcarification to draw out much bloud: alſo to ſtrew ſalt vpon the ſcarifying, and to rub it. And if there appeare no ſwelling outward, you muſt faſten a cupping glaſſe behind in the necke, neare to the ſhutting of the firſt ioynt; and you muſt vſe it with conſtant attraction, pulling away the glaſſe often. Alſo the humours muſt be turned away, leſt they flow to the place which is aggrieued and inflamed. For the which purpoſe you muſt bath the feet with hote water. Alſo bind and rub the hands and feet ſtrongly. The necke muſt be couered with wooll that is moiſt, or that is dipped in warme oile: alſo by and by (at the beginning) you muſt vſe gargariſes, which do neither vehemently driue backe, nor yet only diſcuſſe. For thoſe which do altogether repell and driue back, they bring perill of choking, by thruſting humours to the lungs. Thoſe which be only diſcuſſiue, they draw more then is meet, by reaſon of their heate. Therefore when the beginning is with much inflammation, you muſt miniſter thoſe things which do reſtraine gently, as is decoction of Roſes, Lintels, & Dates, or elſe reſtrictiue gargariſmes, declared before in the Chap. *de Columellæ inflammatione*, commixing ſome diſcuſſiue medicins with it. Of that ſort are Roſes, or Sumach ſodden with *Aqua mulſa*, and decoction of Sebeſten. When the diſeaſe is at his ſtrength, and ſtandeth, you muſt vſe thoſe things which haue diſcuſſiue vertue onely in them, as is decoction of Fenugreeke, Figs, Raiſins, Licorice; or ſtronger things, as the root of *Ireos*, Hyſope, *Nigella*, Sothernwood with *Oximel*. Therefore it ſhall be lawfull at this time to vſe a gargariſme made thus: ℞. of Licorice ſcraped, ℥.j. Raiſins ℥ ß. dry figs in number ſix, Fenugreek, ℥ ij. Hyſope, Sothernwood, ana. M.ß. ſeeth them in one pound of Wel water, til half be conſumed, then put into the licour of that decoction being ſtrained, of *Mel roſarum*, ℥.j.ß. *Oximel ſimplex*, ℥.j. commixe them all, and make a gargariſme. Alſo dogs dung, ſuch as is found amongſt herbs, and is very white in colour, being beaten and finely ſearced, and mixed with Hony, is a moſt excellent medicine, being miniſtred like a *Lohoch*, that they may ſwallow it very ſoftly. Likewiſe the aſhes of Swallowes burnt is very effectuall being ſo mixed with Hony. Moreouer, to the necke without you muſt apply thoſe plaiſters, in them which be vexed with inflammation, which can concoct & diſcuſſe, as is this: ℞. the meale of Linſeed, Fenugreeke, and Barley, ana. ℥.j. ſeeds of *Althæa* ℥.iij. Mallowes, flowers of Cammomill and Melilot, ana M.j. ſeeth them in water vntill they waxe ſoft, then ſtampe them

Venarum linguæ ſectio.

Clyſter.

Cucurbitulæ.

Auerſio humorum.

Gargariſmus.

Cataplaſmata

them in a mortar, and make a ſoft plaiſter, or put to it oiles of Cammomill and Lillies, ana ℥.j ß. and being boiled againe, make an emplaiſter. Neither ſhall it be vnprofitable if the necke be annointed with oiles of Cammomill, Dill, and Lillies, or fomented with decoction of Fenugreeke, Melilot and Cammomill. They which are vexed with the Squinancy, let them vſe three daies for their drinke: afterward iuyce of Ptiſan it ſelfe or with ſome ſweete potion, for that iuyce hath vertue to extenuate, diſcuſſe, nouriſh and to coole. When the inflammation is ſomewhat ſlaked, and the ſicke beginneth to ſwallow better, giue to him the yolks of rere egges, and ſuppings made of *Alica*. To conclude, the eating of the ſicke and his meates muſt be according to his ſtrength, therefore he muſt eſchue ouermuch feeding. Sleepe muſt eſpecially be eſchued, as well in the Squinancy as in all other inflammations. For in ſleepe (as *Hippocrates* ſaith) the bloud creepeth within, and the flowing of humours to the grieued place doth increaſe more.

Aqua mulſa *Potus.*

Cibus.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Cough.

THere be diuers cauſes of the cough. For as *Galen* ſaith, *lib.* 1. *cap.* 2. *de ſympto. cauſis*, cold diſtemper of the inſtruments of breathing cauſeth the cough. Alſo a humour diſtilling from the head to the *Trachæa arteria*, and ſharpneſſe onely of the vpper skinne of *trachæa arteria* going about within, doth prouoke the cough. Alſo wormes troubling the ſtomack, and raiſing vp ſome quality, ſending it to the iawes, doth cauſe the cough. Moreouer, a humour contained in the lungs and the breaſt, is the cauſe of inflammation in the lungs, diſeaſe in the ſides, conſumption, and the cough. Thoſe which be outward ſignes, and may cauſe the cough, be ſmoke, duſt, and whatſoeuer doth exaſperate the *trachæa arteria*. The ſignes of coughing cauſed onely through cold diſtemper of the inſtruments of reſpiration and breathing, are, that thoſe that be ſo afflicted, they ſpit out nothing while they cough, nor the cough is not violent nor conſtraining: but it is ſo ſmal, that not only it may be ſuppreſſed by holding the breath, but alſo vnleſſe it be very great, it may be healed: becauſe through ſtopping of the breath, the parts vexed with cold do waxe hote. Moreouer they which are vexed with this kind of cough, are more prouoked to it by often fetching of their breath, becauſe the cold thereby is increaſed, and made more ſtrong: therefore if they breathe and fetch their wind eaſily, and be alſo in a warme houſe, they cough litle or nothing at all. They be pale of face, and not thirſtye they are grieued with cold things, and are beſt with hote things: the coughs which chance with tickling of the parts on either ſide of the palate, they do openly ſhew a flowing humour, coming from the head to *trachæa arteria*, and to the lungs, which you may well know by difficultie of breathing that followeth. And if that they which be thus afflicted do ſpit out nothing, it declareth it to be a thinne reume, which being cut off by expulſion of breath, it is caried no further by reaſon of his thinneſſe, but the flowing of it returneth again. The diet is diuers, according to the diuerſity of cauſes: for if the cough be cauſed of cold diſtemper, occupying the inſtruments of breathing, you muſt eſchue aire, wind, and alſo cold meate and drinke; but if the cough be cauſed through hu-

Cauſæ. 1. 2. 3. 4 5 6

Signa.

Victus ratio.

mours distilling from the head, let the diet be such as is described before in the chapter of Distillation. But vniuersally they which haue the cough, must eschue salt things, sharpe things, and whatsoeuer would exasperate the *trachæa arteria*.

Cure of the cough caused of cold distemper.

The cough that is caused through cold of the instruments of breathing, shall be cured by the remedies that can make them hote. Therfore let the neck be wrapped about with warme wooll, and let him breathe seldome, because that stopping of the breath (as is said before) doth not onely let the cough, but also oftentimes healeth it. Therefore it is good to haue the sicke conuersant in a hote house, and let them breath very softly. Also let the breast be fomented with hote ointments, as is oiles of *Ireos*, Lillies and Dill. If a humour that is thin and sharpe flowing out of the head to the *trachæa arteria* and the breast, do cause a cough, then it shall be healed specially by meates of good iuyce, and by medicines which do coole, thicken, temper and stop sharpnesse and mordacity. For which purpose it is good to minister sirupes of Violets, of *Nymphæa*, of Poppie, the antidote *Diatragacantha*, *Diapenidion sine speciebus*, *Pilulæ Bechicæ*, and such like. Among all other this loch is excellent good, ℞. *Diatragacantha*, *Diapenidion sine speciebus*, ana. ℥ vj. iuice of Licorice, ℥ ij. *Pilulæ Bechicæ*, ℥ j *storax calamitæ*, ℥ ß. Mirrhe, dry Roses, ana. ℥ j. *Tragacanthæ*, Pine nuts, ℥ ß. sirupe of Violets, as much as shal suffice to commixe them and make an *Ecligma*. Also for that purpose it is good to minister those medicines which are spoken of before in the chap. of Distillations. But if a grieuous & viscous humor be cause of the cough, we shal cure it by those things which do diuide & extenuate. Therefore then we must minister to the sicke sirupe of Licorice, Hysope, Horehound, Calamint, & such like, or else this decoction: ℞. roots of *Ireos*, Parsly, Licorice, ana. ℥ j. roots of *Ella Campana*, ℥ ß. dry figs in number seuen, of Raisins, the stones picked out, ℥ j. seeds of Nettle, Anise, and Fennell, ana. ℥ ij. Hysope, Maidenhaire, Scabios, of iust quantity, till the third part be consumed: then straine it, and to the iuyce of that decoction put sirupe of Hisope and Horehound, ana. ℥ ij ß. and make a potion. Afterward if it seeme conuenient by the state of the patient, you must emptie the body with those medicines which do purge grosse and clammy humors. And among other spoken of in the first booke, the insusion of Agaricke is very good which is made after this sort: ℞. of elect Agarick, ℥ ij. Ginger, ℈ j. salt Gemme, ℥ iij. beate them and infuse them one night in ℥ ij. of odoriferous white wine, water of Wormwood, & Fennell, ana. ℥ j. in the morning straine it, and wring it, & put to it *Electuarium Indi maioris*, ℥ ij. ß. *Oximel scilliticum*, ℥ ß. & make a potion. The body being purged, let him haue a loch somtime commixed with other antidotes, after this sort: ℞. *Loch è pino*, *loch sani & experti*, *loch è scilla*, ana. ℥ iij. *Diaireos Salomonis*, ℥ j. powder of *Diapenidion cũ speciebus*, ℥ j. powder of the roots of *Enula* & *Ireos*, ana. ℥ ij. ß. iuyce of Licorice, ℥ j. ß. sirupe of Horehound, as much as shall suffice to commixe them. Moreouer, the breast must be annointed outwardly with hot oiles, of Lillies, *Ireos*, & sweet Almonds, putting to them grease and other things, after this sort: ℞. oiles of Lillies and sweet Almonds, ana. ℥ iij. of Hens grease, ℥ j ß. fresh butter, ℥ ij. the musselage of Fenugreeke, and roote of *Althæa*, ana. ℥ ß. *Storax*, ℥ ß. powder of the roote of *Enula* and *Ireos*, ana. ℥ j. Saffron, ℈ i. white Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. The residue that is requisite for the cure of the cough,

Cure of the cough caused of thinne and sharpe humors

Ecligma.

Cure of the cough caused of grosse and viscous humours.

Decoctio.

Purgatio.

Infusio Agarici.

Ecligma.

Vnguentum.

are

are to be ſought in the Chapter of Diſtillation.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Aſthma.

THE *Aſthma* is cauſed when as groſſe and clammy humors be gotten in abundantly into the griſtles or lappets of the lungs, or that there be ſome ſwelling in it, like vnto a botch. Alſo they do breath difficultly, whereby the *Trachea arteria* is repleate and filled with diſtillations. Theſe euils are eaſie to be knowne aſunder. For diſtillation doth alſo chance in haile folke by and by through as manifeſt a cauſe, in a manner, altogether without a feauer, hauing the tokens of diſtillation following it. If there be ſwelling of the Lungs like a botch, there muſt needs follow a feauer, and ſo within few dayes after, the inflammation being rotted, the matter of it is caſt out with the cough. If there be a crude & raw tubercle & botch ingendred, ſuch do not feele any great griefe, neither are they much troubled with difficultie of breathing: but they are much troubled when they eate or drinke, becauſe they cannot ſwallow but with great griefe. Thoſe which be properly Aſthmatiek, or Orthopnicks, they haue no feauer at all, and there chanceth to them heauineſie of ſenſe, and they do not ſpit out matter with their ſpittle. Let their diet be altogether hote and drie: therefore he muſt eſchue aire cold and moiſt. He muſt eate the fleſh of Partriches, Birds of the mountaines, Hens, Capons, and ſuch like. He muſt eſchue fiſhes, fruite, pulſe, and all other things that can engender groſſe and clammy humours. Let him vſe often Hyſope, Parcely, and Fennell. Vniuerſally, let him drinke a ſmall quantity at once which hath a botch riſen: but much drinke muſt be vſed of thoſe whoſe griſtles and flappes of the lungs are ſtopped with groſſe and clammy humours, which are not eaſie to be caſt out with the ſpittle becauſe of their thickneſſe, and therefore they neede much moiſtening, that it may come out the eaſier. He muſt vſe exerciſe before meate, but not ſodainly by and by, becauſe many by this meanes are dead. Frictions and rubbings of the breaſt do profite. Perturbations of the mind, eſpecially wrath and lamentation, are to be eſchued. But for the cure of the aforeſaid euils generally, you muſt labour that the abundance of that humour, which engendreth theſe euils, may be aboliſhed and conſumed. But for the cure of theſe euils particularly, if the euils be engendred of groſſe and clammie humours, you muſt cure it by extenuating and cleanſing medicines. If it come of ſwelling like a botch, you muſt cure it by extenuating and drying medicines. Againſt groſſe and viſcous humours, thoſe medicines be good which do extenu- and ſcoure without vehement heate; for groſſe and viſcous humours do waxe tough and clammie as well with vehement heate as they do with cold, ſo that afterward they can ſcarce be deuided and pluckt away. Therefore *Oximell ſquilliticum*, or *Squilla* roſted and brayed with Hony, is eſpecially to be miniſtred vnto them. Alſo ſirupes of Liquorice, Horehound, and Hiſope. Alſo the decoction reheaſed in the laſt Chapter before, is good for purging. If neceſſity require, before al things cut the middle veine in the arme, or the inner veine, and draw out as much bloud as ſtrength will ſuffer. But if the bodie be not full, (the humour being preparate to purging by the premiſſes) you muſt miniſter

Cauſe.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Note.

often stronger medicines, which may driue out the grosse and clãmy humors. Therfore pilles of Agaricke, and *Pilulæ Cochiæ*, also *Diaturbith* with Rewbarbe *Antidotum Indi*, and *Diaphenicon* are good for this purpose. Also minister the infusion of Agaricke described before in the last Chapter. Also the belly must be washed with strong clisters. Also he must vomit now and then, by taking of Radish and other things which prouoke vomite, of the which we haue spoken in the first booke, of Melancholicusnesse. But in the meane season, while purgations be ministred, you must minister medicines which can dissolue and extenuate humors contained in the breast by little and little: and he must take *Aristolochia rotunda*, the roots of *Enula* & *Ireos*, Nettle seed, Hysope, *Nigella*, Calamint, and such like, wherewith you may make decoctions or Loches. For which purpose also those *Ecligmata* which are rehearsed in the Chapter of the Cough, are good. Also *Trochisci Bechici albi* be most excellent. Outwardly you must lay to the breast, plaisters made of Figs, Barley meale, or rather meale of Fitches, hauing Rosin, Honey, and Waxe commixed with it. Also apply to the breast, of *Ireos*, Dill, Rew, and such like, as is this: ℞. oiles of Dill and Rew, ana. ℥.ß. the grease of Hens & Ducks, ana. ℥ ij. the roots of *Ireos*, *Enula*, & *Draconcij maioris*, ana. ℥.j. seed of flaxe, ℈ ij Storax, ℥ iij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. But the brest must first of all be rubbed with a rough linnen cloth, that (the pores being opened and vnlocked) the strength of the medicine may more readily pierce to the bottome. Also you must vse those medicines which can exulcerate the skinne, and draw out matter and waterie humours, as those be which are named *Rubefacientia*. For this purpose the breast must be rubbed with Nettles, brayed or beaten. The places that are blistered are to be cured with warme oile. But in an inueterate euill, and where all medicines are ministred in vaine, we must flie to burnings, as *Ætius* teacheth in *lib.* 8. *cap.* 57. how it should be done. For the cure of that which is like a botch, which hath need of medicines to attenuate and dry, (as it is said before) you must note that it is cured with Aromatick things, because they do extenuate, drie, and heate. Therefore then you must giue vnto the Asthmaticks specially Antidotes compounded of these things, as is *Theriaca*, *Mithridatum*, *Antidotum è moscha dulce*, *Diamber*, *Aromaticum rosarum*, *Diamargariton callidum*, and many such other like.

Clyster.

Vnguentum.

Rubefacientia

Cure of Abscessus.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Pleurisie.

PLEVRISIE, to speake exquisitely and properly, is an inward inflammation of the vpper skinne girding the ribbes and the sides. In Latine it is called *Lateralis dolor*. Neither is it rashly added, to speake exquisitely and properly: for through many torments, and through meats grosse and flegmaticke, there do engender humours that be cold, crude, grosse, and viscous in the bodie, which oftentimes do place themselues by and by in the void place of the breast, or in the Lungs it selfe, and by reason of their multitude, they stretch out the vpper skin, girding the sides within, and cause paine: but of this we will speake nothing, because the cure of it doth differ little from the cure of *Asthma*, rehearsed in the last chap. The Pleurisie which is an inflãmation of the vpper skin which

Cause.

which girdeth the sides within, is caused of abundance of hote bloud, flowing naturally to the aforesaid vpper skinne within. The signes hereof are difficultie of breathing, the cough, a continuall feuer, vehement pricking paine, a hard pulse, and sharpe like a saw. And if his spittle be red and bloudy, it signifieth bloud to haue dominion: if it be yellow and subpale, choler hath the masterie: if it be white and froathie, fleame ruleth: if it be blackish, it betokeneth blacke choler to haue the masterie, or melancholie. The first two dayes the sicke must be content with the iuyce of Ptisan for his meate. Afterward make him Almond milke with the decoction of Ptisan, or the crummes of fine bread mixed with the broth of a Chicken or Cocke, specially if the patient be weake. He must vniuersally eschue all things that be sharpe and restrictiue. Let his drinke be water wherein Cinamon is sodden, and let the patient eschue cold water as a pernitious thing, because it maketh the spittle grosse & thicke. Also let him eschue wine altogether. Let him lie vpon the side that is grieued. Let him auoid wrath, sorrow, and other perturbations of the mind. In the beginning of the cure, the Physitian must diligently consider, whether the body of the sicke be grieued with abundance of humours, or not: so that he must know at the first, whether the paine doth mitigate and dissolue with heating medicines, and when it doth not. For if the body be not full of humours, then in the beginning of the Pleurisie and inflammation, the paine must be mitigated and discussed with foments and medicines that do heate. But if the body do abound with euill humours, or be full of bloud, you may not beginne the cure with those things that do heate, for they moue fluxe of humours to the aggrieued place: for the place to the which things that do heate are laid, draweth more to it then it sendeth out by vapours againe. Therefore then you must not vse hote foments which cannot dissolue the paine, but all the body must be emptied by bloud letting, and you must cut the inner veine of the arme, which they call the Liuer veine, or the Spleene veine, on the arme which is right against the griefe on the same side. For bloudletting on the same side, doth not onely draw bloud away from the aggrieued part, but also it purgeth it quickly, which is greatly requisite in the Pleurisie, and in other inward inflammations. After bloudletting, if the wombe do not cast out the excrements of it selfe, as it ought to do, then cast into the belly this easie clister. ℞. Mallowes, leaues of purple Violets, Mercurie, Spinage, of both the garden Endiues, ana. M. j. whole Barley, ℥. j. Seeth these in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed: then take of the iuyce of that decoction, ℔. j. *Casia fistula* newly drawne, ℥. j. ß. of the oyles of Cammomill and Violets, ana, ℥. j. ß. fresh Butter, ℥ ß. common Salt, ℥. j. and commixe them all, to make a clister. After the bodie is emptied, you must apply outwardly foments that do heate and mitigate paine, such as *Sacculi* be, which are made of the floures of Cammomill, Dill, Meliot, *Tapsus barbatus*, seed of Flaxe, Fenugreek, *Milium* and Bran mixed together, the decoctions of the herbs aforesaid being put into bladders, or some other deuices. Also you may wel apply a great soft Sponge being dipt in the aforesaid decoctions, & applied to the griefe warme. You must couer the foments with clothes, lest their strength do vanish away quickly. Also take an Apple, take out the core of it, &

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Clister.

Sacculi.

fill the hole with *Olibanum*, and roſt it till it be ſoft: then take off the skinne of the Apple, and mixe the ſoft of the Apple and the *Olibanum* together, and let the patient make boles of it, and ſwallow it all at once, which doth remoue the paine very much. This plaiſter alſo is good for this purpoſe: ℞ floures of Cammomil, *Tapſus barbatus*, & Dil, ana. M. ß Lineſeed, Fenugreeke, ana. ℥. iij. Anniſe ſeed, ℥ j. Barley meale, M. ß bray them, & put thē in water, till they be as thicke as Hony: after put to oyles of Dill and Cammomil. ana ℥ j. boyle thē againe, and adde to it the yolkes of two Egs, of Saffron, ℈. j. and make an emplaiſter.

Emplaſtrum.

Cucurbitulæ.

After the ſeuenth day, if the paine doth continue ſtill after one ſort, faſten a cupping glaſſe to the ſide, and ſcarifie the skinne: for a manifeſt commodity doth enſue to them that haue the Pleuriſie, by applying of cupping glaſſes. The cuts of the ſcarified places muſt be ſtrewed with Salt, if the patient can abide it; if not, lay vpon it a linnen cloth dipped in oyle and ſprinkled with Salt. The next day after the ſcarifying is done, it is good to faſten on a cupping glaſſe againe, that the mattery bloud may be drawne out of the little wounds. This ſecond extraction is better then the firſt: for at the ſecond time the bloud is not drawne away, but the matter. Alſo the Ppiſitian may not neglect to miniſter to the ſicke ſuch medicines as are good to make the fleame come vp eaſily, as is, *Diapenidion*, *Diatragacanthes*, conſerues of Violets, *Trochiſci pectorales*, putting to them other Loches rehearſed before in the chap. of the Cough. Outwardly you muſt apply medicines that haue vertue to diſcuſſe, as is, Fenugreek, Dil, Melilot, Hyſope, and ſuch like. And if there do appeare tokēs that it wil rot, and turne into matter, you muſt further it with this or the like ointment: ℞ oyles of Cammomill, of ſweet Almonds, and of Lillies, ana ℥. iij. Butter without Salt, Hens greaſe, ana ℥ ij. the muſcilage of Fenugreeke, Lineſeed, and the rootes of *Althæa*, ana. ℥ j. Waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. The botch being broke, you muſt miniſter thoſe things that do cleanſe and purifie matter and filth, as is, *Aqua mellis*, or decoction of Barley, or Sugar roſet. The filth being cleanſed, you may miniſter glutinatiue medicines, which ſhall be ſufficiently declared in the Chapter of the Ptiſicke afterward.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. IX.

Of the inflammation of the lungs.

Cauſe.

Peripneumonia is an inflammation of the lungs with a ſharp feuer. This diſeaſe for the moſt part is cauſed of ſtrong diſtillations falling to the lungs, or elſe of the Squinancie, or the *Aſthma*, or the Pleuriſie, or of other diſeaſes. Alſo ſometime onely inflammation is the cauſe of this diſeaſe. They which haue this euill, haue difficult breathing, the lungs lying vpon the heart doth bring choaking, they haue a ſharpe and burning feuer, and alſo fulneſſe and ſtretching out of the breaſt without paine. But if the skinnes which be ioyned all the length of the breaſt within be inflammate, then they feele paine at the breaſt. All the face, and the aggrieued place lookered, the noſe is crooked in the top, the veines of the temples do beate, the eyes do ſwell, the tongue is drie, the appetite is loſt, the breath is hote, they couet cold water, and rather cold aire, they haue a drie cough, it is frothy and cholericke, or bloudy and red, which be the worſt tokens. If the ſicke ſhall die, he ſhall watch much, and haue

Signa.

haue fearfull short sleepes, the hands and feete shall be cold, the nailes shall be crooked and swart, and he shall die the fourth or the seuenth day at the furthest. But if the sicke shall recouer, there will follow bleeding abundantly, or perturbation of the wombe, by passing foorth of many cholerick and frothy humors: and sometime the inflammation is changed into matter, and the matter being filthy, is driuen out either with egestion or with the vrine, and the sicke is deliuered from all the griefe by and by. And if it do flow into the Lungs, and that abundantly, or do choke him, then it is changed into a Ptisicke. For their diet you must minister to them soupings made of the iuyce of Ptisan, mixed with Hony, Origan, or Hysope. They haue more need of extenuatiue meates then those that haue the Pleurisie. Also *Alica* or *Aqua mulsa* is good for them. Let them drinke little, for moistnes hurteth the Lungs. You may minister for preseruing of strength (specially if choking constraineth you) *mulsa* alone, and with Pine nuts, or *mulsa* wherein Hysope is sodden, the powder of dry *Ireos* to *aqua mulsa* is good. Generally the diet of those that haue *Peripneumonia*, must in a manner be the same which the Pleurisie should haue, specially if they begin to recouer. For the cure, you must eschue letting of bloud in such as haue fallen to this euill out of other diseases, especially if they haue bene long in this case, or if they were let bloud before. You must mollifie the bellie with clisters, if he be costiue, or apply cupping glasses to the breast and sides, if nothing do let it, and that great boxings and many, the skin being cut and scarified. But if the *Peripneumonia* began first without any other disease going before, then let him bloud, if strength and other things will suffer it; you must cut the inner veine of the arme; and if strength will suffer it draw bloud on both the armes, and first but a little, in no case vntill his heart faile, so that some strength may be kept for the bloudletting of the next arme. But if any thing doth forbid bloudletting, you must fasten cupping glasses to the whole breast, and the sides, and you must get out as much bloud as strength in them will suffer. Also it is good to mollifie the belly with sharpe clisters, made of the decoctions of Hysope, *Ireos* and Rew, putting to it the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, *Sal gemme*, and other things necessary for such clisters. After this you must labour and see, that the breast and the Lungs be purged by much spitting, which must be made swift and easie. For the which purpose you must vse those Ecligmaes, ointments, and emplaisters, which are declared before in the Chapter against the Pleurisie, excepting that in this case you must minister the most strong things, and those that haue much strength and vertue in extenuating. Therefore you must minister *loch è scylla*, *loch è pulmone vulpis*, the decoction of the roote of *Ireos* and *Enula*. And you must make a cerote of oile of Rew & *Nardinum*, putting to it the marrow of an Hart, of *Ireos*, Hysope, and Horehound beaten very fine, and commixed with Venice turpentine, and lay it all ouer the breast and the sides.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

CHAP. X.

Of spitting of bloud.

SPitting of bloud is caused many times of an outward manifest cause, as of falling from an high place, or a stroke giuen to one outwardly, or with vehement striking, or leaping, or if any heauie things haue fallen vpon the breast,

or else with great crying, or immoderate cold: for cold (as *Hippocrates* witnesseth) breaketh veines. Also spitting of bloud may be caused through heate.

Interna. Also sometime spitting of bloud is caused of inward and secret causes, as fulnesse and abundance of naughtie bloud, gnawing asunder the veines, and bursting open the heads of them. The gnawing asunder of those veines, is caused of sharpe humors, either falling from the head to the Lungs, or else engendred in the Lungs it selfe. Moreouer the bloud that is spit out, sometime cometh from the breast and the Lungs, or from the *Trachæa arteria*, and sometime from other places of the mouth, or gummes, or the iawes, or from the stomack, vnto the which doth fall bloud out of the veines and members adioyning, that is to say, from the Liuer and the Spleene. The outward causes are knowne thus: if the spitting of bloud be caused of abundance of bloud, then the bloud com-

Signa. meth out gushing all at once, and after it is out, the sicke is better & lighter. But if it be caused through bursting of the mouths of the veines, then hote purturbations haue gone before it, as though the patient had vsed many hote baths, & had dwelt in a hote region, vsing hote diet in a hote season. If spitting of bloud be caused through gnawing and eating asunder of the veines, then the bloud is not spitted forth all on a heape, but by little and little with the cough; and they are alwaies worse. Also if the bloud which is spitted, be frothy and pallish, and cometh forth now and then with the cough without any paine, it is a sure token, that the bloud cometh out of the Lungs. If flegmaticke bloud be spitted out with easie coughings and reaching, then the bloud cometh from the *Trachea arteria*. If bloud be spitted forth being black and clodded together, hauing also the cough and paine in the aggrieued place, then it is a token that it com-

Victus ratio. meth from the breast. For the diet, let him vse meates which haue a moderate adstriction, as be rice, hulled wheate called *Alica*, & such other like, mixing with them the iuyces of Pomgranates or Peares. For flesh, let him eate wild doues, turtles, and partriches, if they be boiled with veriuice, or iuyce of soure grapes, or with Sumach. Also he must vse Quinces, Peares, restrictiue Apples, Medlars and Mulberies, and such like rehearsed before in the Chapter against bleeding at the nose. He must drinke thicke red wine, or in stead of it, water wherein steele is quenched. He must eschue great noises, often speaking, all mouing of

Curatio. the body, and anger. As for the cure, it differeth according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the bloud come out of the head, it needeth but a simple and easie cure: for restrictiue things applied cold to the palate of the mouth by collutions and gargarises, do performe the cure. What things they be, you may seek in the beginning of the second booke, the first Chap. But if there do flow much bloud from the head, then you must let him bloud on some veine. Those which

Venæ sectio. spit bloud through distillation, you must by and by in the beginning let them bloud on some veine, vnlesse a sharpe humour doth distill vehemently. Also afterward minister a sharpe clyster, and emptie the wombe. Also rub the hands, the armes and the legs very much with a medicine that will heate and extenuate, and bind the outward parts. After that, if the disease endure longer, shaue the head, and apply thereto a medicine which hath vertue to dry and discusse, as is that which is made of the dung of wild doues, and after three houres space, bring them into a bath, so that the head be annointed with no fat thing.

Afterward couer them meanly, and nouriſh them with ſoure ſuppings. When they go to ſleepe, miniſter to them *Theriaca*. The next day all the whole body (the head onely being excepted) being rubbed, keepe him in quiet, and againe at night miniſter to him *Theriaca*. And if through theſe the diſtillation be not ſtopped, then the third day in the morniug miniſter a little honey ſodden, and rub all the body, and ſuffer him to reſt. The fourth day, after the taking of the *Theriaca*, miniſter againe much hony, and lay to his head a medicine of doues dung. And if the euill do endure longer, faſten a cupping glaſſe to the hinder part of the head. *Cucurbitulæ.* Laſt of all, miniſter thoſe things which are able to purge the humours that are flowne into the Lungs. But if it be a very ſharpe humour which diſtilleth out of the head, you muſt bewate of bloudletting, & you muſt rather vſe purgations, and you muſt vſe the nouriſhments and remedies hereafter declared, and alſo before in the Chapter againſt diſtillations. They which do ſpit bloud coming from the Lungs, by reaſon of breaking of ſome veines in it, or by burſting open of their heads, thoſe you muſt firſt of all charge, that they do not breath much and make a noiſe, and that they ſpeake but little, and in a manner not at all. Let them ſit in open aire, hauing a ſtedfaſt bed, and of a good height. For ſuch you may by and by cut the inner veine of the arme: and you muſt draw bloud twiſe or thriſe a little at once, for ſuch haue no need of much bloudletting. *Cure of ſpitting of bloud from the lungs.* Alſo for the ſame purpoſe, that is to ſay, that the bloud may be drawne another way, you muſt rub the extremities, and vſe to binde them hard with broad linnen clothes. Theſe ſo done, you muſt miniſter to him a drinke made of vinegar and water infuſed and warmed, and let him drinke it, ſo that if any clod of bloud do cleaue on the fleſh, it may (being thereby diſſolued) be caſt out; neither doth any thing let, but that you may miniſter this potion twiſe or thriſe in three houres. *Potio.* After thoſe you may miniſter both within the body and without, medicines that be reſtrictiue, and haue power to ſtop the pores. For things taken outwardly, it profiteth to eate Purſlaine, albeit that the iuyce drunken is of more effect; the iuyce of Knotgraſſe, ſharpe Grapes, decoction of Sumach, Gals, the ſhels of Acornes, the root of Brambley *Balauſtia*, ſeed of Sorrell, the rootes of Horſetaile, and ſuch like, which are declared in the Chapter againſt bleedling of the noſe. *Emplaſtica.* But theſe are better, & of more effect then the aforeſaid thnigs, that is to ſay, *Terra lemnia* beaten into very fiue powder, and miniſtred with the iuyce Pomgranates, or of Knotgraſſe, or *Lapis hæmatitis*, at once. ℈.j. in the like iuyce. Among compounds you muſt vſe this *lohoch*. ℞. of old cõſerues of Roſes, of *Robderibes*, aca ℥.j. of *Diatragacãthum frigidum*, & *Diacotoneon ſimplex*, ana ℥.ß. of the powders of Corall, *Lapis hæmatitis* and *terra lemnia*, ana ℈.ij. Bolearmoniack, ℥ j. Dragons bloud, ℥.ß. Pomgranat floures, ℥.j. Frankenſence, the root of *Conſolida maior*, ana. ℥ j ß ſirupe of Mirtles, as much as is ſufficient to commixe them, & make an *Ecligma*. *Ecligma.* Afterward you muſt ſprinkle the breaſt outwardly with reſtrictiue wine, and the oyles of Roſes, Quinces & Mirtles. But if there be much eruption of bloud (eſpecially being Sommer) and the ſpitting thereof coming without a cough, and the ſicke not being weake, but ſtrong and fleſhly; then you may take vineger for wine, & apply it to with ſponges. It is good to put to the aforeſaid oiles, Bole armoniacke, *Terra lemnia*, Corall, and ſuch like, and to make an ointment

thereof with Waxe. Also apply thereunto a soft plaister made of Dates, *Acatia*, the roote of *Consolida maior*, the barks of Pomgranats, and the meale of Lentils. Also a cerote made of the meat of Pomgranats, Frankensence, red Corall, *Balaustia*, Bolearmoniack, *Terra lemnia*, and such like, is of good effect. But you must specially take heed, that by and by after the rupture of the vessels it may grow together again before it take inflammation: for if there come inflammation before it be growne together, there is but little hope of the conglutination of the wombe: for it keepeth it stretched out many dayes, and you must wash away as well the matter, as the waterie bloud out of the vicer, after that the inflammation is gone. But here the Reader must be admonished, that he take heed that he do not apply outwardly against that place where the bloud runneth out, neither restrictiue things, nor cold things without restriction, vnlesse the matter be first turned another way, and drawne from that place: for else it would driue the boud inward, and stop the veines full that be within. Therfore first alwaies you must draw the bloud to the contrary part, and after that apply restrictiue things outwardly. Those which spit bloud through erosion & gnawing of sharpe humours, you must first of all minister those things vnto them which haue vertue to purge sharpe humours distilling into the Lungs, such as be spoken of before in the Chapter of distillation. After that, minister those things which can alter and make thicke the thinne and sharpe humours, and so haue vertue to stop the distillation, as is sirupe of Violets, Roses, Myrtles, Hydromel, *Diacydoniorum*, and such like. For the same purpose sometime minister sirupes of Poppy, and other somnoriferous medicines. The distillation being ceassed, you must restore the gnawne parts with meates of good iuyce, & with medicines that do ingender flesh. Moreouer they which vomit bloud must vse the same diet and cure which is before rehearsed, that is, if the bloud flow from the Liuer, cut the veine on the arme: but if the bloud be caried from the Splene into the belly, cut the veine on the left hand, which is betweene the little finger and the ring finger, and minister to them restrictiue meates & drinkes, adding this to the cure, that they do not take meate and drinke often: for they may easily be cured, if the remedies which be receiued in, be applied to those parts that shed bloud. And for bloud congealed in the stomacke like an hillocke, let him drink creame, and especially of a Hart, or let it be auoided with Sauory mixed with vinegar or with *Aloes*. Those which spit bloud from the palate of their mouth, they must gargarise with restrictiue things, and apply to the forehead, and to the head those things which are applied vnto the nose when it bleedeth. Furthermore to conclude, after that all things be done, and that the fluxe of bloud is stopped, then the strength must be cherished and restored againe: and specially he must beware of the often vsing of bathes, of drinking of wine, of wrath, and of Venus.

Note.

Cure of spitting of bloud caused of sharp humors.

Cure of vomiting bloud.

CHAP. XI.

Of spitting of matter.

Empyema in Greeke, signifieth a mattery spitting. In Latine it is called *Suppuratio*. It is caused when an impostume or botch (being in the vpper skinne which girdeth the ribs inwardly, or else in some other vpper skinne of the

Causa.

the breſt) is broken all at once, & ſhed & powred into the emptie place of the breaſt, which is betweene the Lungs and the vpper skin that girdeth in the ribs. It is cauſed ſometime throgh burſting out of bloud (an vlcer not being brought to his ſcar, and perfect ſhutting vp.) Alſo ſometime through fluxe of the head, and other vpper parts, failling thither, which is wont often to change into the Squinancy. The ſignes be theſe, heauineſſe is felt in the bottome of the breaſt, a ſtrong cough and a drie without paine, and alſo ſometime with moiſtneſſe, whereby they ſeeme to be eaſed. In the beginning there chanceth to them feauers, faint, inordinate, and hard to be iudged. When the impoſtume draweth neare to a rupture, then they haue a feauer more vehement with quaking: and they are troubled in their ſpeech. Being broken, there appeareth ſomewhat to flow into the breaſts bottome, according to the often changing of their lying, and ſpecially when they change lying from one ſide to another, then ſurely the multitude of matter is euident, and oftentimes a certaine noiſe of the flowing may perfectly be heard when they turne them. Alſo the matter that cometh out is ſometimes cleare, ſometimes thicke and dreggy. Some impoſtumes do burſt out vpward, that is, vnto the voide place of the breaſt, and theſe be moſt perillous. Some impoſtumes do flow out downeward vnto the panch, and the bowels, and alſo the bladder. They alwaies labour of the feauer Hecticke, vntill all things be brought out vpward. Thoſe that be vexed with this diſeaſe of ſpitting of matter, let them remaine in a drie aire, let them vſe meates of good iuice, eaſie to digeſt, brothes of cockes, the fleſh of hens, chickens, birds of mountaines. Alſo vſe decoctions and broths of cicers, with herbes (as is) Hyſope, and Parcely. Let his drinke be *aqua mulſa*, and thin white wine. For the cure in this diſeaſe, except diligent ſpeed be made by and by, the gathering together of matter cauſeth the Ptiſicke, the Lungs drawing vlceration. Therefore firſt you muſt helpe the concoction of the impoſtume with foments, by ſponges or bladders, with cataplaſmes or emplaiſters, made of the meales of Barley, Fenugreeke, & Lineſeed, of Figs, Doues dung, Mallowes, *Althæa*, and a little Roſin. Alſo you muſt apply to it Cerots made of butter, *Ireos*, Laurel berries, Rew, & other things which can ripe & diſſolue the impoſtume, whereof thou ſhalt finde many in the Chapter of *Aſthma* before: and if the euill be not diſſolued, you muſt apply to it things that will breake the botch. The breaking of the botch is procured by lying vpon the whole ſide, eating of ſalt meats, & theſe pils giuen vnto him when he intendeth to ſleep. ℞. of the powder of *Hierapicra Galeni*, ℥ j. of the pulpe of *Coloquintida* ℈. j. with the iuyce of Wormwood as much as is ſufficient to commixe them, and make pils, wherof let him hold one at once in his mouth. By this meanes it ſhall come to paſſe, that the ſicke ſhall couet to ſpit often, and ſo by ouermuch ſpitting the impoſtume may breake. The rupture being made, you muſt take diligent heed whither the matter runneth, and you muſt helpe his auoiding: for if it creepe into the belly, you muſt miniſter moſt of all mollifications. If it fall to the bladder, you muſt miniſter moſt thoſe things which prouoke vrine. If the matter come out by a cough, then nothing is more meet to be miniſtred then ptiſan, mixed with good hony. Alſo abſterſiue & ſcouring things do profite, which are partly declared in the Chapter againſt the Pleuriſie, and part of them ſhall be ſpoken

Signa.

Vlcus ratio.

Curatio.

of in the next Chapter. But you may commodiously commixe with their meat, those things which prouoke vrine, howsoeuer the matter intendeth to flow. As for the purging and driuing out of the matter, *Aqua mulsa* decoct with *Ireos* and much licorice is maruellous profitable. Moreouer the decoctiō of Hysope, *Ireos*, Horehound and such like is good, whereof you may seeke more in the Chapter of *Asthma*. The rest that seemeth to be necessary for the cure of this disease, shall be spoken of in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Ptisicke.

Cause.

Signa.

PTHISIS, in Greeke, *Tabes* in Latine, it is properly an exulceration of the Lungs till there followeth spitting of bloud withall. It is causèd for the most part through a sharpe and gnawing humour flowing from the head into the Lungs. Also it is causèd through the bloud and matter that remaineth after the bursting out of it in them that haue the Pleurisie, the *Peripneumonia*, or *Empiema*. They which labor of this disease, are known by wasting of the whole body and the flesh. Also the nosthrils be sharpe, their temples be sidden downe, their eyes be hollow, and their shoulders sticke out like birds wings. Moreouer they cough, and be vexed with the feuer Hecticke, they breath difficultly, their cheeke bals waxe swart, their nailes do crooke and seeme pale. Also the euill ouercomming, the bellie is troubled, and thirst doth vexe them more, their haire doth shedde, and that which they do spitte out, is of a vehement stinking sauour. As for the vlcers of the Lungs, they are verie hard to be cured, because they cannot be purged and cleansed without the cough, and in them that cough, the vlcer is broken, & so the euill returneth, as it were by a certaine circuit. Also the Lungs among the other inward members, because of respiration and breathing, are alway in mouing, and also are rent with coughing. But the vlcers which are to be healed, would require quiet and rest. Moreouer the strength of medicines cannot come to the vlcers, before it be altered in the stomacke, in the body, and in the Liuer. Neuertheless although the causes before rehearsed, make the cure to seeme hard, yet we may go about to cure that vlceration. Therefore in the beginning you must prescribe to those that be ptisicke, a conuenient diet, after this sort. Let them dwell in a dry aire, temperate between heat & coldnes; let their meate be Ptisan, Almond milk, reare egs, flesh of the birds of mountaines, of Partrich, of Phesants, of Owsils, of blacke birds, of Hens, of Capons, of Calues, of sucking Kiddes. Also scaly fishes in stony waters, Crabs of the fresh riuer. But among all meates, milke is best for them that be ptisick, specially womans milke, after that Asses milk, and Goats milk, which would be sucked out of the dugges, if it might be, or let it be drunke by and by after the milking of it while it is hote. But you must beware, that they take no meate by and by after their milke, and specially no wine, for then it would be corrupted with it in the stomacke. But if they be very much feuerous, specially of a rotten feauer, then it is not good to take milke. Among fruits, it is good to eate Raisins, sweet Almonds, Pine nuttes, Figs, Dates, Pistax. Let them eschue exercises and mouings that be vehement. It is not vnprofitable to walke easily before meate, and after meate they must altogether rest; let them vse to sleepe

Looke Hippocrates in his Aphorisme 5. the 14. and the 13. & the 11. The causes why the cure is hard.

Victus ratio.

on

on nights meanly: let them eſchue wrath and ſadneſſe, vnmeaſurable watching, hunger, thirſt, lecherie, hot houſes, and whatſoeuer may emptie the body. Let his drinke be but ſmall and thin: or if his feuer be vehement, let him drinke water wherein a little Cinamon hath bene ſodden, or the drinke that is called *Hippocras*, whoſe making is declared in the firſt booke, in the Chapter againſt the Palſey. If the euill be cauſed through the flowing of a ſharpe humor out of the head, you muſt begin the cure by remouing of the diſtillation, which we haue taught before in his proper Chapter. Therefore now we will ſhew the exulceration of the lungs, how it is to be cured. And firſt for the cure thereof we *Curatio.* muſt miniſter thoſe things which haue an abſterſiue and ſcouring vertue, and that which will cauſe that the matter may eaſily be brought vpward: for the which purpoſe *Hydromel* is ſpecially good, & alſo décoction of Barley with Sugar and hony, alſo decoction of *Ireos*, Figs, Maidenhaire, Hyſope, Horehound and Licorice. If there come a feuer, you may cõmixe with the aforeſaid things, the foure great cold ſeeds. Outwardly you muſt apply emplaiſters, and cataplaſmes, made of Linſeed, Fenugreeke, and ſuch like declared in the laſt Chapter *de Empiemate*. Alſo for the ſame purpoſe you may ſeeke many remedies in the Chap. againſt the *Aſthma*. The lungs being cleanſed and purged from matter, you muſt miniſter thoſe medicines which will glutinate and heale vp the vlcer. For this purpoſe conſerue of Roſes is commended almoſt of all Phiſitions, for this hath not only the vertue to glutinate, but alſo to cleanſe and ſcoure: but the newer it is, the more it ſcoureth: and the older it is, the more it glutinateth. Alſo theſe are maruellous good, Bole armoniack, Dragons bloud, Amber, Coral, Purſlaine ſeed, and ſuch like which haue vertue to ſcoure and ioyne together. Alſo theſe things are good, *Loch de pulmone vlpis*, *loch è pino*, cõſerues of *Conſolida maior*, & Maidenhaire. Therefore of theſe you muſt make this compound medicine: ℞ conſerues of *Conſolida maior*, & of Maidenhaire, ana. ℥ ß. *Ecligma.* conſerues of Roſes, ℥ j. *Loch è pulmone vulpis*. ℥ j. ß. *Loch è pino*, ℥ ij powder of *Diatragacanthũ frigidũ*, ℥ iij. Bole armoniack, ℥ j. ß. ſirupe of Poppy as much as will ſuffice to commixe it, and make a loch. Alſo this powder daily miniſtred *Puluis.* cauſeth much eaſe: ℞. of the ſeeds of white Poppy, ℥ ß. gumme Arabicke, *Amylum*, and gum Tragacant, ana. ℥ j. ß. ſeeds of Cucumbers, Cirrons, Gourds, Melons, Quinces, ana ℥ iij. burnt Iuory, iuice of Licorice, ana. ℥ j ß. *Penidies*, as much in weight as all the reſt, & make a powder, of the which miniſter daily euery morning, ℥ ij. with ſirupe of Poppy or Roſes. At that time alſo that the vlcer is cloſed, you muſt annoint the breſt without, with oyle of Quinces, Mirtles or Roſes, adding thetro ſometime Sumach, *Hipocciſchidis*, Pomgranat rinds, *Aratia*, Galles, and ſuch like. In the end the body being extenuate and waſted, *Morſus'i refectionis.* it is good to reſtore it with a conuenient diet, vſing all thoſe meats which be of good iuyce, eaſie to digeſt, and nouriſh much, at which time alſo you may miniſter this medicine. ℞. of the pulpe of a Capon, ℥ j. cockes ſtones, Pine nuts, Piſtax, ſweete Almonds, ana ℥ ß. of the powder of the *Antidoti de gimmis*, ℥ ß. powder of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Dianthon*, *& Aromaticum roſarum*, ana. ℈ j. white Sanders and Cinnamon, ana ʒ ß. Maces, ℈ j. white Sugar of the fineſt. ℔ j. diſſolue the Sugar in water of Bugloſſe, and Roſes, and make lozenges, or an electuary, of the which miniſter euery day.

CHAP. XIII.

Of panting of the heart.

Palpitatia & tremor cordis in Latine, is in Englisth panting and trembling of the heart; it is a corrupt motion of the heart, or a ſtretching out of it againſt nature. The new ſort of Phiſitians do wrongfully call it *Cardiaca*. It is cauſed of all ſuch things as do trouble and affect the heart aboue nature, as is, euery diſtemper, or the multitude of an humour, contained in the outward skin that goeth about the heart, or elſe ſwelling contrary to nature, and ſuch like. The diſeaſe is eaſily knowne by the words of the patient, who doth eaſily feele the beating and panting: and alſo you may know it by the pulſe. For in a hote diſtemper there cometh a feuer, & the pulſe is ſwift and great; in a cold diſtemper the contrary. If plenty of an humor contained in the vpper skin of the heart do cauſe beating thereof, then the pulſe is ſoft and feeble. The diet muſt be ordained diuerſly according to the diuerſitie of cauſes: for in a hote diſtemper of the heart, the aire oughs to be meanely cold, but in a cold diſtemper it ought to be meanly warme. But vniuerſally whatſoeuer the cauſe be, you muſt eſchue any thing that doth trouble or reſolue the vitall ſpirits, as be ouermuch heat, anger, hunger, watching, lecherie, vnmeaſurable cold meat of euill iuyce. If abundance of any humour contained in the vpper skin thar goeth about the heart do ingender panting of the heart, let their whole diet be extenuatiue: let their drinke in a hote diſtemper be thinne and ſmall, or a iulep of Violets or Roſes, or decoction of Bugloſſe. In a cold diſtemper they may drinke pure wine, or other ſtrong drinke. Thoſe that be vexed with beating of the heart cauſed of hote diſtemper, they muſt haue remedy by cold medicines, which can correct the hot diſtemper, and adde ſtrength to the heart: as theſe be among ſimples, Roſes, Violets, floures of water Lillies, Sanders, Corall, Champhire, and ſuch like. Among compounds be theſe, *Diamargariton frigidũ*, *Diarrhodon abbatis*, conſerues of Roſes, of Violets, of Bugloſſe, & their plants, iuices & ſirupes. Therefore of the aforeſaid things there may be made potions, electuaries, and lozenges, as you thinke good. Outwardly appoint ointments and emplaiſters, ſpecially Epithemes, *Sacculi*, and other like, whatſoeuer is able to alter the hote diſtemper of the liuer. And firſt among ointments, this is good ℞. the oyles of Roſes, Violets, and *Nimphea*, ana. ℥. ij. of red Corall, red Sanders, and red Roſes, ana ℈. j. Camphire, gr. ij. white Waxe as much as is ſufficient, & make an ointment, wherewith annoint the region of the hart and the backe bone. Among Epithemes let this eſpecially be laid to the hart: ℞. the waters of Roſes, Sorrell, and Bugloſſe, ana ℥ iij water of Balme, ℥ j powder of the cordial medicine, ℥ j. red Sanders, red Corall, ana. ℥ ß. Purſlaine gr iij. Saffron gr. iiij. commixe all together and make an Epitheme. Alſo among the ſorts of dry bags this is beſt. ℞. floures of Bugloſſe, Violets, red Roſes, ana. M. ß. all the Sanders, of each ℥ j. red Corall and white, of each, ℥ j. ß of Pearls, ℈ j being firſt powdred, put them in ſilke, and make a *Sacculus*. But thoſe that be aggrieued with a cold diſtemper of the heart, to ſuch among ſimple medicines, theſe be profitable (that is) Amber, Muſk, Saffron, wood of Aloes, *Storax*, Cloues, Maces, Zedoary, Balmes, and ſuch like: among compounds theſe are good: the electuary *Plirisarcoticon*, *Diamber*,

Diamber, Dianthos, Aromaticum rosarum, and such like, of the which may be made kinds of medicines, like as we did against hote distemper of the heart. For ointments may be made after this sort: ℞. the oiles of Lillies, of Spike, and of Saffron, ana. ℥ ij. ß. *Gallia moschata*, Cloues, ana. ℈ j wood of Aloes, ℈. ß. Maces, ℈ j. Saffron, gr. iij. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you may make this Epitheme thus: ℞. waters of Balme, Mariorã, Bugloſſe, ana. ℥ iiij. powders of the electuaries, *Diamber* & *Diamoschæ*, ana. ℥ ß. Maces, wood of Aloes, ana. ℈ j. Amber, gr. j. of the best wine, ℥ j. commixe them together, and make an Epitheme. An example of *Sacculus* is thus, ℞. floures of Balme, and Bugloſſe, ana. M j. ß. chosen Cinamon, Cloues, Maces, ana. ℥ j. wood of Aloes, ℈ j barke of the Citrine Apple, ℥ j. ß. Saffron, ℈ j. Amber, gr. j. Bray all together, and make a *Sacculus* of silke to lay to the heart And if there be panting of the heart ingendred through some humor contained in the vpper skin that compasseth the heart, it must be cured (as *Galen* witnesseth) with that which will extenuate, and by cutting of a veine in the arme. Therefore you must cut the inner veine in the arme, or the middle veine. And afterward one must minister and apply as well inwardly as outwardly, medicines that haue vertue to extenuate and strengthen the heart, by applying of oinrments, and Epithemes, and *Sacculi*. and such like. Of the which things to make priuate examples, we thinke it in vaine, seeing it is easie to any man, by examples now declared here and in other places, to make medicines for this purpose of whatsoeuer sort he will.

Vnguentum.

Epithema.

Sacculus.

Cure of panting of the heart caused of an humor.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Swounding.

Syncope is a swift failing of the strength (as Galen saith:) it is caused through much excretion and auoiding of bloud, or through vnmeasurable emptying of the belly, or vehement mouing, or through great paine, or much and often washings. Also through abundant sweats, and all other immoderate vacuations: also of feare, dread, and such like perturbations of the minde. Moreouer through abounding of crude and raw humors, through great inflammation, or through vicious and thinne humors, or else by taking breath in a stinking aire. The *Sincope* is knowne by these tokens, the pulse is rare and obscure, the extreme parts, as the hands and feete be cold, sweate about the face, the taking away of the brightnes of the skin that is in it, & as it were a palsey of the whole body. Moreouer of these there cometh desperation, vexation of the mind, and shaking of the body. And moreouer there chanceth sometime with the swounding of the heart, a vice (that is) when the heart is vehemently distempered. Also sometime it chanceth to the stomacke, (that is) when humours abounding, or heaped together, or crude, either else sharpe and gnawing, be in it: that kind of *Sincope* is called *Stomachica*. They which fall in a swound through plentie of raw humors contained in the mouth of the stomacke, in such the sides are inflate and puffed vp, and the whole body seemeth to be of greater bignesse then it should naturally be: also their colour changeth whiter then it waa wont to be: and to conclude, their body is like to them that haue the Dropsie. Also to many their colour waxeth swarter and blacker, like lead, but the pul-

Causæ.

Signa.

Sincope cordis.

Sincope stomachica.

ses of the sinewes be least of all other, moreouer they be obscure and vnequall. Those which are vexed with swounding through abundance of sharpe humors, they feele continually pulling, twitching, and gnawing in the month of the stomacke. They which through thin vices (which do swiftly exhalate & flie vp) do suffer swounding, in them their face appeareth by & by as though it were dead: their nose is sharpe, their eyes be hollow, and such like. The other causes of *Sincope* are knowne by the talke of them that stand by, without any great businesse. It is easie to know that the cure must be diuerse according to the diuersitie of the causes. If swounding do inuade one through excretion and auoiding of bloud, or through any other vnmeasurable or sudden emptying, you must sprinkle their face with cold things, or with Rose water, which hath a maruellous good effect in this case. The extreme parts of the body must be bound vehemently with bands, and must be rubbed a little with sharpe linnen clothes. If the emptying be vpward, you must rubbe the legges: if it be downeward, rubbe and bind the hands. Also cupping glasses are to be fastened lightly, diuersely, according to the places where the euacuations, or where the bloud, bursteth out. Moreouer the mouth must be opened, by putting in your finger, or a wedge, or some other thing: but the passage of hearing, and of the nose-thrils would be thrust together, that the aire that is breathed in, might stirre and comfort the spirits. Also it is good by and by for to comfort the spirits with sundrie odoraments: for as *Hippocrates* saith in his booke *de Alimentis*, there is nothing that calleth the strength againe sooner then odours. Therefore it is good to apply to the nose of the sicke, chickens rosted & parted asunder in the middest. Also Roses, Violets, Quinces, Citrons, and such like be good. You must minister to him wine that is thinne, and allaied. Let the aire of the chamber be cold, but let not the chāber be very full of light: let their counter points be taken away that lie vpon them, and let the couerings wherewith they be couered be soft; & strew the floore with leaues of Mirtles, Vines, Okes, Briers, & Roses themselues, and sprinkle it with water. In vnmeasurable sweats annoint the sweating parts with oyle of Mirtles, Roses and Quinces: but specially the necke, the breast, the places vnder the arme holes, and the share. For this purpose also it is good to annoint with *Amylum*, and powders of Frankensence, mixed with the white of an egge, & other restrictiue medicines. Also you must hold to his nose diuerse odoraments, as Roses, Sanders, Quinces, floures of water Lillies, & Camphir: but you may not then bind the extreme parts of the body. If swoūding be caused through paine, you must diligētly enquire the cause: for if it come of an outward cause, the ceassing of ỹ paine cureth the swoūding. Bnt if the paine proceed of no outward cause, you must find out some inward cause which causeth paine. If fulnesse with retching and stretching out do cause the paine, by and by, if strength will suffer it, let him bloud on the veine that is nighest to the aggrieued part; but if strength be feeble, then you must only pull it backe, or you must driue it vpward, or downeward, or both waies, or vse frictions. But whereas the paine is caused of vicious humours, you must rather purge it. If both the aforesaid causes come together, then you must vse euacuations both waies: but bloudletting must first be vsed before any of them. Afterward if the corrupt humours be fastened, & do sticke fast in some onely place, you

Cure of swounding through vnmeasurable emptying.

Stoppers of great sweats.

Cure of swounding caused of paine.

you must begin your cure with dissoluing and discussiue medicines. As for curing of other paines, they may be sought in their owne proper Chapters, and especially in the Chapter against the Cholicke. Those which do swound through great sorrow, feare, & other perturbations of the minde, they are fully cured by vsing of their contraries. Neither let passe to minister vnto them that do swound for great sorow, odoriferous things, and other things which being taken inwardly may cõfort the spirits. They which be troubled with swounding through plenty of crude humors, they may neither suffer letting of bloud nor purging. Therefore you must cure such by frictions. And you must by and by in the beginning of the euill begin, and you must rub the legs first from the vpper part and so downeward with linnen clothes, not very soft, but somewhat sharpe: afterward likewise the armes from the shoulders to the fingers. And when all the arteries & veines be sufficiently heat, and that you doubt that some wearines will come to the senses through ouermuch rubbing, you must vse oyle solutiue and loosing, as is oyle of Dill, and Cammomill: and you must beware especially of the restrictiue things. And whē you haue annointed the parts of the bodie, and rubbed them well, then you must come to the backe: & that you must likewise first rub with a linnen cloth, and then with oyle: from that you must go againe to the legs, and then to the armes, & so againe to the backe, and so you must do all, and that in a bright chamber without moisture, whose aire must be temperate. Moreouer *Mulsa*, wherein Hisope is sodden is most meet for them: and you must beware that you minister to them, neither meate nor broths, not water, nor to suffer him to drinke liberally, but onely *Mulsa* the three first dayes, and to rub him by course continually, granting him onely but time to steepe, which must be in a meane: But if their pulse be very small and feeble, or also besides that, wonderfully vnequal, you may know that there is extreme perill: but yet you must do as is taught before, and go about none other thing. But if the pulse be indifferently strong and great, and be not cut off, nor thrust together, then you must consider the state of the belly, & if it auoid not ordure sufficiently of it selfe, you may boldly poure in somewhat beneath. For it chanceth after the taking of *Aqua mulsa*, that the superfluities which are wont to be gathered in the principall veines (that is) they which be about the liuer, & the bowell which ioyneth with the midrife vnder the backe, by that thing they are well cast out. And if a heape of superfluities do violently prouoke the belly aboue reason, first you must seeth your *Mulsa* more higher, for so it doth make the bellie lesse soluble, and it nourisheth more. After this, if the superfluities do descend more largely, the belly may not be stopped so, but you must minister for *Aqua mulsa*, the iuice of Ptisan. And if they continue stil to flow, nourish him with soupings of *Alica*, taking heed to the working of the pulses in the meane season: for sometime they are changed to imbecility, or vnequalneſſe, or smalneſſe. At which time it is good to minister bread infused in wine, & that, if neither the bellie nor the Liuer be troubled with an impostume, for if they be vexed with it (the body being stuffed with crude & raw iuices) the sicke is desperate of all health. Therefore in such a case of the sick, thou shewest thy self without blame, if thou say before that he will die, and vse no better medicines. But if there be at any time found abundance of clammie humors, by & by minister

Cure of swounding by affection of the mind.

Cure of swounding through abundance of crude humors.

Phlegmon.

Oximel in steed of *Mulsa*. Therefore if it be Sommer, and the sicke vsed to cold potions, giue him the *Oximel* cold; but if it be Winter, minister it hote. Also these things are very euill for them, aswell bathings, as also the open aire, as often as it is ouer hote or ouer cold. But if thou art called to them which be presently vexed with swounding, where the belly and the liuer be without impostumation, thou shalt minister a little bread, and that with some wine, because it causeth swift distribution into the other parts of the bodie: and thou shalt come straight to frictiõs and rubbings, & thou shalt do according to the order before prescribed. But if it be Sommer, or the region naturally hote and burning, or the state of the heauen vehemently hote, thou shalt allay the wine with cold water: but if there be no such thing, with hote. But the drinke that shall be giuen in the second and third time, thou shalt minister it altogether hote. For in the whole cure, where we vse frictions: heate is best, as a helper of the concoction of crude humours. But to those which haue swounding caused of choler which troubleth the mouth of the stomacke, to them you must minister cold potions. But yet it is good to minister to all that haue *Sincope*, wine that is hote by nature, yellowish in colour, thinne in substance, cold, and that which prouoketh distribution in the body: for we would haue the food that is receiued, to be distributed about the body, and not to tarry in the stomacke. They that are vexed with swounding through vice of thinne humours, those you must emptie by little & little, and continually, because they cannot suffer much emptying at once: those also must we nourish by little and little, and often: the outward part of the skinne must be thickned: and you must make the aire of the chamber cold and restrictiue. Also you must annoint them with restrictiue medicines and ointments, and you must giue them meates that do not readily disperse and flow. Therefore giue neither *Aqua mulsa*, nor *Ptisan*, but bread and soupings of *Alica*, and soure fruits, which will not easily be corrupted. You shall also giue sometime to them Egges, specially their yolkes, for their whites be hard to digest. Moreouer the stones of Cockes which be nourished with Milke. Also Swines braine, but let it either be diligently rosted, or well sodden in water with Leeks, or Dill. To conclude, you must labour by all meanes, that you may make the substance of the iuices more thicke, to thicken the skin, and to stop the exhalations. Waterie wine is necessarie to them after meate in the beginning of sickenesse. And if all follow your minde, you may also after other things giue him nourishment by flesh, especially after the fourth day (the iuyces coming now to concoction.) If swounding come through vehement inflammation, the members and parts of the body are to be rubbed and nourished, and the hands and feete must be bound. You must command him to watch, because the bloud in sleepe creepeth to the inward members. You must driue them cleane from meate and drinke. Whosoeuer hath the *Sincope* through vicious humours gnawing the mouth of the stomacke, they must be cured by prouoking of vomite: or if that take no place to moue the belly, do other things which be expounded in the Chapter of paine in the stomacke. They that begine to swound in a bath, you must bring them quickly out, and you must not moisten thẽ with much powring in of water. They that be already in a swound, they must be caried out very quickly, and the rest of the body must be coue-

Cure of swounding now present.

Cure of sincope caused of thin humours.

Cure of swounding through inflammation.

Cure of swounding through humors in the stomacke.

red

red with a light couering. Let the face be wet with a ſponge dipped in cold water, or ſprinkle it with Roſe water. Alſo the face, the ſtomacke and feet muſt be rubbed. Alſo the mouth muſt be opened by putting in of quilles or ones finger. And you muſt go about by all meanes, that the humours that cauſe the ſwouning, may be vomited out, by powring in of warme water at the mouth. They that be of perfect age, pull of their haires, and the loud calling of one is profitable, but many at once is hurtfull.

CHAP. XV.

Of lacke of milke.

THe want of milke, doth chance through drie diſtemper of the paps, or of the whole body. Alſo through ſmall quantitie of good bloud, or becauſe the child is ſo weake, that he cannot ſucke well of the paps: for looke, the more that he draweth out by ſucking of them, the more draweth to them againe. The tokens whereby the diuerſitie of cauſes are knowne, are euident enough by things before ſpoken, but yet I will reheatſe them againe. A drie diſtemper is knowne by the diſpoſition of the whole body, and by leanneſſe and drineſſe of the body, and paps, and ſuch like. Small quantitie of good bloud, is knowne by the ill ſtate of the body and by the euill colour of it: alſo by vnmeaſurable euacuations out of the body before, that is to ſay, by menſtruis, by fluxes, by extreme exerciſes, by hunger, and ſuch like. For the cure of lacking of milke which is cauſed of a drie diſtemper, we will teach nothing in this place, becauſe it may eaſily be cured by that which is declared before in other chapters, and ſhall alſo be declared afterward in the chap. againſt the feuer Hectick. Therfore here we will only treat of the cure of lacke of milke, cauſed of the litle quantity of good bloud. In this cure, firſt you muſt behold the bloud, for either there is leſſe then there ought to be, or it is worſe then it ſhould be. Therefore when there is leſſe then there ſhould be, a diet muſt be aſſigned with moiſt and heate meanly: for whatſoeuer doth heate more then is conuenient, or elſe doth drie or coole, thoſe partly by corrupting the bloud that remaineth, and partly by diminiſhing of it, do forbid the milke to come. Therefore it is good to giue them pure bread, Milke, Veale, Chickens, Partriches, Birds, rere egs, fiſhes ſcaly and ſtony, Raiſins, ſweet Almonds, Lettuce, Bugloſſe, Balme, Gourds, & ſuch like. They muſt drinke wine that is thinne and waterie: they muſt eſchue immoderate exerciſes, anger, ſorrow, and all things that may diminiſh the bloud. But if the bloud be worſe, (as if it be cholericke) firſt purging of the cholerick humours is requiſite, and then vſe the diet before preſcribed: but if it be flegmaticke bloud, it requireth medicines that do heate in the firſt or ſecond degree, but they may not drie vp, for ſuch by heating of the flegmaticke humors do turne them into bloud: but among ſuch (which are not onely medicines, but alſo nouriſhments) the ſtrongeſt be, Rockat, Fennell, Dill, Parſly, and thoſe things greene, before they be dried; for being dried, they do heate and drie more then they ought to do. And thoſe things which do drie, they make the humor which feedeth the bloud the more groſſe, and more ſmall in quantitie. The bloud ought to be meanly hote, and not groſſe, that the milke may be ingendred thereof. Moreouer, thoſe things that do meanly heate and haue

Cauſe.

Signa.

Cure of lacke of milke in a dry diſtemper.

Litle bloud.

Victus ratio.

Euill bloud.

no great drineſſe ioyned with it, they haue vertue to engender milke: among which beſide thoſe which are ſpoken of before, is *Seſamum* boiled in wine. Alſo freſh butter, the weighr of one ounce drunke with wine. Alſo ſweet Almonds, *Piſtax*, Pine nuts beaten, and eaten with butter. Alſo this thing is ſpecially praiſed, ℞ Rice, ten times waſhed and dried again, and beat it to powder, then ſeeth it in good milke vpon burning coales: while it doth ſeeth, put too as much white Sugar as is ſufficient, and make a pottage. It is made the better, if you ad to it ſweet Almonds, *Piſtax*, Pine nuts, Barley meale, Cicers, and ſuch like: but you muſt labor alſo that by gentle rubbing of the breaſt, and by hote medicines which haue an attractiue vertue, the milk may be drawne & enticed to the paps.

CHAP. XVI.

Of abundance of milke.

Cauſe. *Signa.* *Curatio.*

IT chanceth ſometime that through abundance of milke, the paps are ſo filled and ſwollen, and ſo ſtretched out with it, that they are ſcarce able to hold the abundance of it. It is cauſed through abundance of good bloud. The euill is knowne by ſight and feeling. You muſt helpe this by and by, for elſe it is to be feared leſt the paps be taken with inflammation. Therfore at the beginning cut the veine of the arme, or the middle veine which is in the arme. After that vſe thoſe things which do lightly repreſſe and drine backe, leſt that the bloud be thruſt into the lungs by a certaine violence. For this purpoſe it is good to apply a ſoft ſponge dipped in warme *Poſca*, and to bind it with bands to the paps, or apply Dates brayed with bread and *Poſca*. Alſo it is good to apply an Emplaiſter made of oile of Roſes, of Sanders, Corianders, *Pſillium*, Purſlaine, Beane meale, Lintels, iuyce of Plantaine, and of Vineger, after this ſort: ℞. of Beane meale and of Lintels, ana. ℥. j. ſeed of Purſlaine. ℥. j. ſeed of Flaxe and *Althæa*, ana. ℥ ij. ß. of Plantaine, M. j. ſeed of Coriander, ℥ ij. boile them all together in water vntill it come to the thickneſſe of Hony, after that, put to it oile of Roſes, ℥. j. ß. boile them againe, and adde thereto the yolkes of two egges, and make an Emplaiſter: or make a Cerate after this ſort: ℞. of the oile of Roſes and Mirtels, ana. ℥ j ß the meales of Beanes and Lintels, ana. ℥. j. ß. of Mints and Rew, ana ℥. ß. with Waxe and Venice Turpentine as much as is ſufficient, and make a Cerate to apply to the paps. Alſo wilde Rapes do profit maruellouſly, being annointed with water and hony. Moreouer, the leaues of *Cherua* annointed with the iuyce of greene Parſly, is very profitable. Moreouer, the ſtone *Pyrites* powdred, and applyed with oile of Roſes and Vineger, doth ſhew a maruellous effect againſt abundance of milk. And let their whole diet be ſuch, that thereby but little bloud may be engendred. Therfore hunger in this euill aboue all other things is maruellous good.

Poſca is vineger and water mixed together and wine and water. *Emplaſtrum.* *Ceratum.*

CHAP. XVII.

Of milke that is curded.

Cauſe.

MAny times the milke curdeth in the paps, and turneth into the forme of cheeſe curds. It is cauſed through abundance of milke (that is) when it is kept long time together on heapes in the paps, and is not ſucked out. It is cauſed alſo of a hote diſtemper, when that through ouermuch heate the thinne

part

part of the milke is digested and dissolued, and the rest groweth together, and turneth into curds. Also the like may chance of cold, which may cause milke to curde and congeale as well as other licours. Also sometime milke of his owne nature is grosse and clammy enough, and for that cause doth easily turne to curds. There need no tokens to know this euill: for it is knowne by and by, both by touching and by the patients words. The diet in this euill is diuerse, aecording to the diuersitie of causes. For in a hote distemper of the paps, let the diet decline to cold things; but in a cold distemper, contrariwise to hote things. If this euill come through grosnesse of the milke, she must vse altogether an extenuating diet. For the cure, if there be abundance of milke, not being as yet curded in the paps, in them that be of lawfull age, and being skilfull women, let it be easily sucked out by little and little. Let the paps be outwardly annointed with the iuyce of greene Parsley, Mints, Fenugreeke, and other things rehearsed before in the chapter of abundance of milke. Also the creame of a Hare beaten with water, if it be annointed, is good against all swellings of the paps, especially caused of the corrupt abundance of the milke. Also Lintels sodden in Brine, is maruellous good, if the paps be washed with the decoction, and annointed with the Lintels being stamped. Also the decoction of Fenugreeke and *Althæa* doth great pleasure. But if ouermuch heate doth cause the milke to curde in the paps, then annoint them with the iuyce of Purslaine and garden Nightshade. Also apply oile of Roses with Vineger. Also Mous-eare annointed is of good effect. Also the earth called *Cimolia*, annointed with Vineger, or with water and oile of Roses, doth good. Moreouer Lintels sodden in Vineger, and applyed as is aforesaid, is good against cold distemper of the paps. Vse decoctions of Cammomill, Fenell, Dill, Linesed, and Fenugreeke, and therewith foment the paps. Also annoint them with oiles of Cammomill, Dill, Lillies, and such like, but beware they touch not the nipple. Oxes gall annointed is good. Crummes of bread are good with Vineger annointed, but you may put to it Mints or Parsley, and make the medicine the stronger. This plaister is excellent good: ℞ of Hony, ℥ ß. of *Storax calamitæ*, ℥ iii. of Oxes gall, ℥ ij of oile of Cammomill, ℥ ij. Mirrhe and Frankinsence, ana. ℥ ij. ß. commixe them together, and make an Emplaster to lay on the paps.

Signa.
Victus ratio.
Curatio.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the inflammation of the Paps.

IT is caused sometime (as other inflammations be) of plentie of hote bloud flowing to the paps. Also sometime through milke (that is) when it turneth to suppuration and matter. The aforesaid causes are easie to discerne asunder. For the first cause of inflammation chanceth to them that be not with child, nor brought in bed: the other cause chanceth onely to such. For the cure in the first cause, you must see bloud drawne from the inward veine of the arme, or the middle veine on the same side, vnlesse the minestruis be stopped: for then it were better to cut the veine of the hamme or ankle. After this you must come to restrictiue medicines, which may not be strong, lest that the humours do violently thrust inwardly to the noble parts of the bodie: or else you may mixe with them some discussiue things. Therefore for that pur-

Cause.
Curatio.
Vena sectio.

pose it is very good to take oile of Roses, with the iuice or water of Nightshade, Vineger, and the decoction of Cammomill: in this dip and wet linnen clothes, and apply it to the paps. Also an emplaister made of Barley meale, Line-seed, Sanders, Bole armoniack, Grease, and oile of Roses is good. And if the Phisition doth see that the percussiue medicines do not much good, he must straight proceed to my booke of the cure of impostumes in the breasts. But if inflammation be caused of curded milke, in the beginning you must apply a soft sponge dipped in warme *Posca*, and bind it to it. Also apply Dates brayed with bread and *Posca*. Also apply crums of bread with Mirrhe, Saffron, and Mints, and such like. But if the inflammation endure still, proceed to the Chapter of Impostumes in the breasts, hereafter.

Emplastrum.

THE III. BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Of weakenesse of the stomach.

Cause.

WEAKNES of the stomacke is sometime caused through distemper of the effectrix and working qualitie, without any flowing of humours. For, as *Galen* saith *in lib. 3. de simp. causis, cap. 10.* all vehement distemper doth ouerthrow & cast downe the strength. Also sometime it is caused of an humour being contained in the bosome and large space of the stomacke, which hath power and vertue either to heate or coole, to moisten or drie, or two of those qualities mixed together: sometime it is caused of an humour stuffed and drowned in the filmes and cotes of the stomacke. Vehement thirst, abhorring of meate, and vnsauorie belkings, do betoken distemper onely of a hote quality. Contrariwise, little thirst, vnmeasurable appetite, and soure belkings, betoken distemper of a cold quality. And to be short, if the stomacke be grieued with hot or cold distemper, it changeth the meates that be eaten into the nature of the distemper, so that the meates may be perceiued to be changed into the sauour of rosting or sowerfulnesse, without the commixing of any humour. Moreouer, if the distemper be hote, you shall see the patient by and by eased with taking of medicines, or meates or drinkes that be cold. But if the distemper be cold, the patient feeleth ease in hote meates or medicines, but he feeleth hurt with cold things. In a moist distemper, the patient feeleth no thirst, or very little; he hath abundance of spittle, and doth desire moist meats. In a drie distemper there is drinesse of the tongue, extenuation of the body, little spittle, and vehement thirst. Moreouer, vomiting and desire thereto, heauinesse of the stomacke, and belking, specially after meate, betokeneth abundance of naughtie and corrupt humours. And if yellow choler do abound, there followeth bitternesse of the mouth, vomiting vp of choler, thirst, belkings, with sauour rosted, and gnawing of the stomacke: but if

Signa.

if fleame do abound, it doth cause no gnawing in the stomacke, vnlesse it be salt fleame: there are present sowre belkings, no thirst, and stretching out of the stomacke. If melancholy abound, it causeth sadnesse and feare, stinking belkings, and spittings, and sauour of fish, sleepe with fits of strange imaginations, contraction and paine of the hammes and calues of the legs. Euery distemper is corrected and amended by his contrary. Therefore you must coole a hote distemper, and heate a cold distemper; also moisten a dry, and dry a moist distemper: likewise must you do in compound distempers, either heate and dry, or heate and moisten; or else coole and moisten, or coole and drie. *Curatio.*

Those that be vexed with hot distemper of the stomacke, are cured with a cooling diet, but specially if they take cold things with vineger. Therefore let their bread be mixed or dipped in *Posca*. For flesh, let them vse Chickens, Partrich, veale sodden with vineger or veriuyce. For pot herbs, Lettuce or Purslaine are very good. Also apples and sharpe peares. The sicke must drinke small Ale or Beere, if he haue bene vsed to it, but if not, let him drinke the decoction of Cinamon, or wine that is thin and waterie. You must apply and lay vpon the stomacke outwardly such medicines as do meanely restraine and coole. They which be vexed with a cold distemper of the stomacke, must be healed with the contraries to the aforesaid things, as with the decoction of Annise seede, Rew, and Parsley seede. Let the meates which they eate be condite and dressed with Cinamon, *Calamus aromaticus*, Cloues, Pepper, and such like odoraments. Also giue vnto them *Diatrion piperion*, *Diacalaminthes*, and *Theriaca*. Annoint the stomacke outwardly with those ointments which haue power to heate, and let them vse to drinke wine that is old and somewhat astringent. A moist distemper is helped with meates that do dry, without any strong heate or cold nesse. Moreouer, vsing of lesse drinke then he is accustomed to do. A drie distemper must be cured as the feuer Hecticke is cured, of which we will treat in the fourth booke. But if some humor hauing power to heate or coole, do cause weaknesse of the stomacke, you must marke and consider diligently whether that humor do swim in the bosome and largenesse of the stomacke, or whether it be stuffed in the filmes and cotes of the stomack. If the humor be contained, in the bosome of the stomacke, and be a cholericke humour, it must be purged straight by vomites: warme water or thinne *mulsa* drunke, doth cause an easie vomit. It wil be better if you do minister before it things that do moiste, as is the broth of Prisan, or else the yolke of an egge. But if the cholericke humour be stuffed in the filmes of the stomack, purge him with *hierapicra*: for as *Galen* saith there can no better medicine be found against vicious humours, being stuffed in the filmes of the stomacke. The humor being purged, let them vse the same diet that they do which are vexed with a hote distemper, as is taught before. Minister within the body conserues which haue vertue to coole and moisten. Also minister electuaries hauing like vertues. Apply outwardly to the stomack things that do coole and meanly restraine, as is oile of Roses, oile of Quinces, putting to Sanders, Balaustie, Corall and Purslaine; but yet vse things that do coole in a meane, according to the contrarietie of the distemper. For ouermuch vse of cold things doth not onely not profit, but also oftentimes causeth an incurable disease, because of the great heate that is requisite for concoction

Cure of hote distemper.

Posca is a sauce made with vineger and water.

Cold distemper

Moist distemper.

A drie distemper.

Cure of weaknes of the stomacke caused of an humour.

Choler.

Victus ratio.

and digestion. If humours being flegmaticke, grosse and tough, do swim in the bread h of the stomach, he must vse *Oximel* wherein hath bin sodden medicins which haue vertue to extenuate and cut, as is Hysope, the root of *Irees*, Origan, Sauory & Horehound. But if the flegmatick humors be drowned in the filmes and cotes of the stomach, then first you must minister those things which do cut and diuide clammy humors and grosse fleame, but afterward you must purge him. If you will know what medicines do purge tough fleame, looke before in the first Booke, chap. 12. Also *Hierapicra* is good to purge grosse humors. Let him also vse a diet which doth extenuate; & let him vse Electuaries that do heat, as *Diatrion piperiō*, *Diagalanges*, *Diacinamomū*, *Diamber*, Ginger condite, *Diacorus*, and such like. Apply outwardly to the stomach such things as do heate, as is oile of *Nardinum*, oile of Mints, oile of wormwood, & oile of Mastick, & other things hauing the like vertue. For this purpose also Cerotes are commended, which the Physitions cōmenly call *Scutum Stomachale*, such as is this: ℞. choſen Cinamon, Cloues, long Pepper, ana ℥. j. *Galliæ Moschatæ*, Maces, ana. ℥. ß. *Calamus aromaticus*, Frankinsence, ana. ℥. j. ß. wood of Aloes, ℈. j. sowne Mints ℥ ij. Mastick, *Laudanum*, ana. ℥ ij. oiles of Mastick and Nard, ana. ℥. ß. with Waxe and Turpentine as much as will suffice: make a Cerote to lay vpon the stomach, & couer it with purple silke: or vse this medicine: ℞. Mastick beaten to powder. ℥. j. ß. then strew it vpon leather being cut like a buckler, & powre vpon it *Oleum Nardinum*, then hold it to the fire till it be molten together, and strew vpon it choſen Cinamon, Nutmegs, & Cloues ana. ℥ j. beaten into powder, and apply it to the stomach. To be short, these and other things which do strengthen & heat the stomach are to be applied, as is mints, wormwood, frankinsence, Mastick, Cinamon, Galingale, Ginger, Mace, wood of Aloes, *Calamus odoratus*, and such like rehearsed in our seuenth booke of making medicines, of which one may make diuers kinds of remedies as he seeth cause.

Fleame.

Diet.

Scutum stomachi.

Aliud.

Medicines which strengthen and heat the stomacke.

CHAP. II.

Of yelking and vomiting.

Causa Nauseæ

Dispositiō to vomit (called *Nausea*) which is a naughty & wicked motion of the expulsiue vertue of the stomach, is caused of a vicious humour contained in the stomach, being either hot or cold: which humor either swimmeth in the concauitie and hollownesse of the stomach, or it is stuffed in the filmes of the stomach, cleauing like birdlime, and can scarce be drawne away: or the humor being more watry, it is drowned in the cotes of the stomach like water in a sponge. And such humors are oftentimes ingendred through distemper of the stomach, as wel hot as cold: somtimes such humors do flow from the whole body, as from other parts (being first euill affected) into the stomach, as it were the excrements; so from the liuer and the spleene, or the head, or from the whole body. If those humours be engendred through the distemper, you may easily perceiue by the signes declared in the last Chapter before this. But whether that humor swim in the hollownesse of the stomach, or be stuffed in his cotes, thus shalt thou know it. If the vicious humor do swim in the stomach, & cause *Nausea*, that is, dispositiō to vomit, then for the most part vomiting followeth, and the stomach corrupting the meates, it doth manifestly infect it with that humor, & changeth it into his nature; but if a tough humor be drowned in the

Signa.

cotes

cotes of the ſtomach, it cauſeth diſpoſition to vomit, but yet ſuch a diſpoſition as bringeth forth nothing, although the patient do prouoke and ſtraine himſelfe as though he could vomit: but if the humour be watery and wheyiſh, then it cauſeth vomiting, not onely before meate, but alſo after meate, and eſpecially if that humour ſwimme in the breadth of the ſtomach: for if it be ſtuffed and cleaue to the top of the ſtomach, it doth moue vomiting without bringing any thing vp before meate: but when other parts (from which do flow excrements into the ſtomach) be euill affected, the ſicke himſelfe doth firſt feele the griefe of the member that is diſeaſed: for either he feeleth heate, or cold, or heauineſſe nigh about the place that is diſeaſed, or elſe he cannot ſuffer to let the place be touched hard. But if the whole bodie be full of vicious humours, you may know that by the colour, and by breaking out of wheales and puſhes in the skin, and alſo by the vrine you may diſcerne it. For the cure, you muſt diligently conſider which griefe it is, whether it be a diſeaſe cauſed onely of the ſtomach, or of the whole body, or of ſome other member. For if humours do flow into the ſtomach from ſome other member, or from the whole body, you muſt firſt take care for the whole body, or for that member that is diſeaſed, but yet you may not neglect the ſtomach altogether: for vnleſſe the whole bodie be firſt purged of vicious humours, he laboureth in vaine that goeth about to reſiſt the flowing of humours into ſome other place. So alſo he that doth cure the member that is firſt diſeaſed, he cutteth off (as it were) the fountaine of all flowings into the ſtomach. If you will know how theſe members are to be cured that do ſend excrements into the ſtomach, you muſt learne that in their proper Chapters before or after. But if humours be engendred in the ſtomach cauſing diſpoſition to vomit, you muſt marke whether thoſe humours be thinne, cholericke and wheyiſh, and be contained in the hollowneſſe of the ſtomach: for then you muſt giue him very thinne iuyce of Ptiſan or hote water, and the ſicke muſt prouoke vomite with his finger, or with a feather being put downe into his throat. But if the humours be ſtuffed within vpon the top of the ſtomach, you muſt miniſter one dramme of Aloes to drinke being diſſolued in water. For againſt hote humours that be in the ſtomach, Aloes is the beſt medicine, ſo that often it hath healed euill ſtomachs in one day. After the humours be purged, and other medicines miniſtred, which do ſtop or make temperate the ſharpneſſe of choler, then you muſt cure the hote diſtemper of the ſtomach as is taught in the laſt Chapter before this. If they be flegmaticke, groſſe and rough humours, which do ſwimme in the breadth of the ſtomach, you muſt cure them after that ſort that is taught of vs in the former Chapter, and then you muſt get away the cold diſtemper of the ſtomach, as is before taught. Now for vomiting, you muſt note, that in the beginning it ought not to be ſtopped, if the ſicke be the better for it, according to *Hippocrates* ſaying: In vomiting which cometh by it ſelfe, if ſuch things be purged as ought to be, it is good, and may be ſuffered: but if not, then contrariwiſe it is euill. Therefore you may not ſtop that vomite which is decretorie, or where humours do flow from the whole body into the ſtomach, or when humours be engendred in the ſtomach through diſtemper. But then you muſt rather helpe the motion of the expulſiue vertue in a

Curatio Nauſea.

Of vomiting.

1. *Aph.* 2.

hote cause, by ministring hote water with oiles of Violets to drink: but in a cold cause, minister Oximel and other things before rehearsed. But if the vomiting be immoderate, and do begin to weaken the strength of the sick, then you must go about to stop and restraine it. Therefore first let the sicke lie vpward in a conuenient house, and contrary to the disease: that is, let the house be cold, if the disease be hote: and contrariwise let it be hote if the disease be cold: let the extreme parts of the body be rubbed, and let them be felt with warme hands, and also bind them strongly with bands, also put the feete and hands in luke warme water. Also hold odoraments of good sauour to the nose for to smell, as Roses, Quinces, Peniroyall, Mints, Fennell, Spikenard. Annoint the stomacke outwardly with oyles of Woormwood and Roses. Emplasters made of Dates, Quinces, and Woormwood be good. Also Cerotes made of them and such like, as Mints, Darnell meale, Frankinsence, Masticke, be good being laid vpon the stomacke. Also you must stampe well Dates that haue bene steeped in old wine, afterward you must put to it Masticke and Frankinsence, each of them finely powdred by it selfe afore, and then bray them together. To this place also you must call the remedies that are spoken of hereafter, partly in the Chapter of *Cholera*, & partly in the Chapter of the fluxe *Dysenteria*. Furthermore that euill continuing long, if the meate cannot tary in the stomacke, you must fasten a cupping glasse to the mouth of the stomacke with great flame, vntill the place waxe red, and you must giue the patient meate while the glasse hangeth on still.

Cure of immoderate vomiting.

CHAP. III.

Of immoderate thirst.

Cause.

THirst, as *Galen* witnesseth *in lib. 1. de simpl. med. facultate, cap.* 30 is caused two manner of waies: partly through want of moisture, and partly through abundance of heate. The stomacke is heat many and sundry waies, that is, either through hote distemper of the bare quality simple or compound, or through hote and cholericke humours engendred in the stomach, or else flowing to it. Also through abundant drinking of old wine. The stomach is dried either through the drie distemper that is in it, or through salt humours, or drinking of salt water. Also oftentimes it is dried through consent of the whole body, as it chanceth in burning feuers, and feuers Hectick. The diuersitie of causes may easily be knowne by the patients words, and by those signes which we haue spoken of in the second Chapter next before. The causes being knowne, you must remedie each of them according to their cause diuersly. Therefore you must remedy thirst coming of heate, by ministring things that do coole. Also both the drawing in of cold aire, and water, or waterie wine being drunken, are good. Also Cucumber seed chewed, or if it be hulled and beaten, and drunke with water, it helpeth greatly against thirst engendred through heate of the stomach. Likewise Lettuce seed chewed and drunke profiteth. Also Purslaine seed likewise. The best thing to quench thirst is this, ℞. of the seeds of sowne Cucumbers husked, ℥.j. *Diatragacanthæ* ℥.ß. Gumme tragacanth beaten to powder, and tearced, ℥ ij. beate the seeds, and put those powders to the whites of egs being raw, and beating them all together, make pills, and drie them in the shadow. Of these pils, minister one at once to be holden vnder the tongue, that it may dissolue by litle and litle, and so be swallowed. They that haue had burning

Signa.

Curatio.

Pilles to hold vnder the tong

and

and heate in the ſtomach long time, the iuyce of the ſweet roote being drunke, doth helpe them, and alſo the roote it ſelfe with water and the iuice of Purſlaine. But thoſe which are vexed with thirſt cauſed of heate and drineſſe, as it chanceth in all burning and very drie feuers, and to thoſe which labour in ſommer, or in great heate, ſuch are beſt healed with *Oxicratum*, that is, a drink made with vineger and water ſodden together. For vineger doth coole mightily, and doth pierce euery place quickly, and the water (beſides the coolneſſe that it hath) is moiſteſt of any thing: for nothing (as *Galen* ſaith in the place before rehearſed) is moiſter then water. Alſo the thirſt which is engendred in feuers, may be mitigated in ſprinkling the head with the coldeſt oiles, as oile of Roſes being ſprinkled aloft on the forepart of the head. Alſo the beſt remedie for drineſſe is ſleepe, where heate and moiſture are commixt together, as it chanceth in that kind of Dropſie in which plenty of ſalt humours be heaped in the ſtomacke and belly, or in thoſe which haue their ſtomacke ſtuffed with ſalt fleame, then vineger is the beſt remedy. It is alſo good for them to ſoupe the iuice of Quinces or Peares, or veriuyce with water. If humours cholericke or ſalt ſwimming in the ſtomacke, or drowned and ſtuffed in it, do prouoke thirſt, then you muſt miniſter medicines which can purge out thoſe humors. Afterward you muſt vſe medicines which do reſtraine and comfort the ſtomacke and ſtrengthen it: examples whereof you muſt ſeeke before. They which thirſt through drinking of much old wine, are holpen with drinking of cold water, and other things rehearſed in *lib. 1. cap. 14.*

Oxicratum ſen Poſca.

CHAP. IIII.

Of paine in the ſtomacke.

PAine of the ſtomacke is cauſed when naughty, venimous, and gnawing humours be kept in the ſtomacke, whereby it chanceth that through intollerable gnawing they cauſe ſwowning, which they call *Stomachica*. This diſeaſe is knowne by continuall pricking and gnawing of the mouth of the ſtomacke. In this euill you muſt giue him meates that do coole, & which may bring ſtrength to the ſtomacke, as is, Lettuce and Purſlaine taken with vineger. Alſo Pomegranates, and Orenges, Peares, ſharpe Grapes, and ſuch like. Alſo bread being ſteeped in very cold water is good. Alſo let his other meates be ſuch as will eaſily digeſt, and yet not eaſie to corrupt, as be, Chickens, Partrich, birds of mountaines, and ſuch like ſodden with veriuice. Alſo fiſhes bred among ſtones, ſodden with vineger, Limons, and the ſharpe iuyce of Cytrons. Likewiſe let the ſicke drinke water wherein hath bene ſodden a little Cinamon, or giue him thin watery wine. For the cure, in the beginning you muſt prouoke vomit by the remedies aforeſaid. Then after that alſo he muſt purge downward, by taking *Hierapicra*. Which things being done, you muſt vſe remedies to ſtrengthen the ſtomake both inwardly and outwardly, as is taught in the ſecond Chapter, and in other places alſo.

Doloris ſtomachi cauſa.

Signa.

Diet.

Curatio.

CHAP. V.

Of inflammation of the ſtomacke.

INflammation of the ſtomacke is cauſed no otherwiſe then the inflammation of other parts of the bodie: that is to ſay, through the flowing together of

Cauſa.

Signa. abundance of hote bloud. Signes hereof is exceeding great paine continually, which cannot be mitigated with any medicines that be applyed to it. Moreouer, there is ſwelling and burning, which you may feele. Alſo a feuer, heauineſſe, and appetite to meate. The diet (like as it is in other inflammations)

Victus ratio. muſt be thinne, ſmall and exquiſite. Therefore he muſt vſe iuyce of Ptiſan, and he muſt abſtaine from fleſh and wine, and from other hote meates. Let the ſicke drinke water wherein hath bene ſodden a little Cinamon, or iuyce of ſoure Pomegranates, or of ſome other fruit that is cold and reſtringent. Let him ſleep little, and let him not talke much. Let him eſchue ſadneſſe as much as he can,

Curatio. and let him remaine in an aire meanly cold. You muſt begin the cure with letting of bloud, if there be fulneſſe of the whole bodie, and ſtrength of the ſicke. You muſt cut the inward veine of the arme, and you muſt draw bloud according to the ſtrength of the patient. After this you muſt apply outwardly thoſe things that do repreſſe and reſtraine, ſpecially vpon the place where the paine and ſwelling do moſt appeare: for the ſtomack (ſpecially the mouth of it) hath euer need of the commixing of thoſe things that do reſtraine, but moſt of all when it hath an inflammation. Therefore thoſe which do attempt the cure with looſening remedies onely, without the commixing of thoſe things that do ſtrengthen the ſtomacke, they cauſe perill of death; therefore alwaies whether it be an oile that the inflamed member be nouriſhed withall, or a ſoft plaiſter laid vpon that member, you muſt commixe ſome reſtringent thing with them. Therefore for this purpoſe it is good to apply to it oile wherein Wormwood or Quinces hath bene ſodden, commixed together with Maſtick. Alſo the iuyce of Quinces or Pears, putting to it red Roſes, Barley meale, Sanders, Bole armoniack, & ſuch like. Alſo you may vſe this Cerot: ℞. Barly meale, ℥. ß. white

Cerotum. Sanders and Red Roſes, ana ℥ ij. Bole armoniak, ℥. j. ß. Aloes, Maſtick, ana ℥. j. Wormwood, Nutmegs, *Balauſtiæ*, ana. ℥. ß. oiles of Maſticke and Roſes, ana. ℥. ß. with waxe and Turpentine as much as is ſufficient, make a Cerote to lay vpon the ſtomacke. But if there be need of great reſtriction (as it chanceth then when the ſtomacke is ſo weake that it cannot hold and retaine meate) you may commix with the ſaid things veriuice or iuice of Wormwood, or *Hypociſchides*, and *Sumach*, and ſuch like. All theſe things (if the inflammation be vehement) muſt be applied to the griefe cold. And if the belly do ſend forth nothing, you muſt prouoke it with eaſie cliſters. Nor he worketh not vnwiſely, that doth miniſter ℥. ß. of *Caſſia fiſtula* diſſolued in Endiue water, after that the burning heate is ſomewhat abated. Alſo at that time you may commixe with the reſtrictiue medicines, which you apply outwardly, many things that do diſcuſſe & diſſolue, as is Fenugreek meale, flowers of Cammomil, and *Althæa*, and Lineſeed. You muſt neuer (as we warned you before, no not at that time when there floweth no more to the griefe, and that cannot be driuen backe which is contained in the diſeaſed member) you muſt not I ſay at that time, neither vſe onely looſening medicines, or onely diſſoluing medicines, but alwayes you muſt commixe with them reſtrictiue things, which haue power to preſerue and keepe the ſtrength of the ſtomacke: therfore at that time you muſt vſe this em-

Emplaſtrum. plaſter: ℞. the meale of Lineſeed and Fenugreeke, ana. ℥. ß. ſeeds of Dill, ℥. ij. flowers of Cammomill and Melilot, ana ℥. ß. Wormwood, Balauſtie, red Roſes,

ana,

ana. ℥.ij. *Hypociſchidii*, ℈.ij. oiles of Cammomill, Lillies, Roſes, Maſticke, ana. ℥.ß. Hens greaſe, and Gooſe greaſe, ana. ℥.ij. commix them all together, and make an emplaiſter: but before it be applyed, it is not in vaine to annoint the ſtomach with this ointment: ℞. oiles of Cammomill, Dill, and Quinces, ana. ℥.iij. powder of the roote of *Althæa*, wormewood, Lineſeed, ana. ℈.j. wax ſufficient, and make an ointment. *Vnguentum.*

CHAP. VI.

Of abhorring of meate.

ABhorring of meate, or loſing of appetite, doth chance either through loſing of the ſenſe of ſucking of the veines, which is naturall hunger, as *Galen* witneſſeth, *lib.* 1. *de Sympt. cauſis cap.* 7. or becauſe there is no ſucking out, or becauſe the body is not emptied. Alſo ſometime it chanceth through ſome hote diſtemper, ſpecially of the ſtomach, which diſtemper doth diſſolue the hard and ſound members by looſing of them, and maketh them weaker in drawing: but the moiſt members it ſtretcheth out vnmeſurably by ſhedding. Sometime it is cauſed through abundance of vicious humours contained in the ſtomach, and through immoderate fluxe of the belly and bowels: alſo through ouermuch bloud letting. Alſo the ſicke doth abhorre meate in continuall and vehement feuers, alſo in inflammations of the ſtomach, the liuer and the matrice, and for many other cauſes which need not to be rehearſed here. The ſignes which betoken an hote diſtemper, are rehearſed before in the firſt Chapter. Thoſe which abhorre meate through the vice of cholericke humors, are troubled with gnawing of the ſtomach, and with appetite to vomit, & with thirſt. Thoſe that haue humours that be rotten, they haue ſometime a feauer, But thoſe which haue loathing of meate through groſſe and clammy humors, they neither feele gnawing of the ſtomach nor thirſt. But commonly to all there cometh diſpoſition to vomit. If loathing of meate doth come about the beginning of the diſeaſe, or about the vigour and ſtrength of it, while the patients ſtrength may yet ſuffer, it cauſeth no perill, for the ſicke neede but litle nouriſhment. But if loſſe of appetite do come in the declination of the whole diſeaſe, or in long weakneſſe, or in lacke of ſtrength, or of vnmeaſurable purging, it is not without perill and danger. This euill is increaſed of age. For children are vnluckily troubled with this diſeaſe, that is to ſay, ſuch as are deuourers by nature, and haue neede of continuall nouriſhment. Therefore if children haue this diſeaſe, great exceſſe aboue nature is ſignified by it. For cure of this diſeaſe, if the loſſe of appetite be cauſed through weakneſſe of the ſtomach, you muſt marke what diſtemper doth weaken the ſtrength, and you muſt cure it by contraries of that diſtemper, as is before taught. If the preſence of vicious humors do cauſe loathing of meate, if thoſe humors be thinne and gnawing, you muſt firſt beginne before any other thing be miniſtred, to purge the humours contained in the ſtomach by vomite. And if the patient doth vomite vneaſily, miniſter vnto him ſoupings, and other nouriſhments whiuch do moiſten, that they may driue thoſe humours downe into the belly, and driue them out beneath, or purge the wombe with *Hierapicra*. Then we

Cauſe. *Signa.* *Curatio.*

must bring the body to a good temper with such things as be meete for that purpose. Those that do abhorre meate through grosse and clammie humours, you shall cure them by extenuating and cutting the homours, as well with *Oximel*, as also with those medicines that are made of this and other sawces, as with Capers, Oliues, Mustard seed, and such like declared in the first Chapter. If loathing of meate happen through inflammation, or stopping any other part of the bodie, then you must go about the curing of that member or part. And you must go about to prouoke appetite againe only by odoraments, either by odour and smelling of wine infused, or decoction of Quinces or Peares. Also you shall go about the same thing with soft annointings with oiles, as oiles of Roses, Masticke, and such like, and moderate frictions and rubbings of the body. Also insessions to be applyed to the loines and share. Also let meates be prepared of diuerse and sundry kinds, and after the daintiest fashion, that besides their sweetnesse they may entice and prouoke their appetite: first of the best kind of corne, and such as doth nourish much, as is *Alica* washed with the decoction of Dates and Damascene prunes, rere egges, birds of the mountaines that be leane and of no strong sauour: swines seete much consumed in seething: for if he onely taste such meates, they nourish the body sufficiently. Whatsoeuer you minister, ought to be of such sort that it may easily be deuoured and swallowed. For those things that require much chewing, do cause vnpleasantnesse, and put away appetite. Nor you may not neglect to apply outwardly vpon the stomacke besides the ointments, emplaisters made of Dates, Quinces, Wormewood, and such like. Also Cerotes made of the same things: examples whereof you must seeke before.

Alica is made of wheat steeped in water, beaten and dried in the Sunne, and then broken grossely.

CHAP. VII.

Of a doglike appetite.

A Doglike appetite is contrarie to losse of appetite. For they that are thus diseased, they desire much meate, and when they cannot refraine their appetite, they deuoure in meate without measure: then they being heauie with the multitude of meate, and their stomack not being able to beare the meates that are in it without hurt, they turne to vomiting: hen afterward they fill themselues with meate, and againe they returne to vomiting like dogs. It is caused through cold distemper of the stomacke, or through vicious and sharpe humours which do gnaw and pricke the mouth of the stomacke. For cold vicious humours do cause a gnawing much like the proportion of sucking, and do raise appetite of meate. Also sometime it chanceth through vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad of the whole body, which doth follow either the violence of heate, or the weakenesse of the vertue retentiue. Cold distemper of the stomacke is knowne by euill digestion, windinesse, rumbling, and many egestions or seiges, and by other tokens declared before in the first Chapter. Sharpe humours are knowne by sowre belkings, and much egestion, and very thinne. If it be caused of vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad, and that through heate which consumeth the meate like fire, and rarefieth the skin, then the egestions sent out by the belly, be lesse in quantitie then the meate that is eaten, and also the egestions the drier. But if that dissipation come through

Cause.

Signa.

through weakneſſe of the retentiue vertue, which cannot maſter the meates, then there is much deiection and caſting out of thoſe things that are eaten. For the cure, cold diſtemper muſt be healed as is taught in the firſt Chapter of this booke. If doglike and vnmeaſurable appetite be cauſed of ſharpe humors ſtuffed in the ſtomacke, and as it were water ſoked into a ſponge, you muſt miniſter in the beginning, *Hierapicra Galeni*. For this doth not onely heate, but alſo it doth cut off and make cleane, and draw out from the depth of the mouth of the ſtomacke, humors that be ſtuffed in it, and it cauſeth them to auoid downward: and yet it addeth ſtrength to the ſtomacke, that afterward it will not eaſily receiue any hurtfull humour. Therefore that is the beſt remedie for vicious humours ſtuffed in the ſtomacke, to bring them forth. It is miniſtred the weight of ℥.iiij with wine infuſed with warme water. If a child doth labour of this diſeaſe, which cannot drinke the medicine for bitterneſſe, make ℥.j. or ij. of it in pilles, and annoint it outwardly with honey, and let them ſwallow them downe. Seeing that for the moſt part, this euill chanceth of ſharpe and ſoure fleame, you muſt vſe ſuch meates and medicines as haue power to cut, deuide, ſcoure, and heate, as be, Garlicke, Leekes, Time, Sauory, Origan, Penyroyall, and ſuch like. Therefore the humours that be vicious being purged in the beginning, you muſt let them vſe this diet. Let not their bread be new, nor well leauened, with the which alſo you muſt mixe things that prouoke vrine, as is, Anniſe ſeed, Caraway ſeed, Commin, Parſley, and ſuch like. Let his meates be fat and oylie. Alſo ſoupings are good that do deſtroy appetite, as be pottage made with much hony, and much oyle, or Gooſegreaſe, Hens greaſe, or Swines greaſe. Let his pot-herbes be Mallowes. Alſo giue him the braines and fatteſt partes of birds, and of fiſhes likewiſe, and thoſe things that do altogether deſtroy appetite, and cauſe fulneſſe, and that do nouriſh but little, although they be eaten in great quantity. You may well giue them great plentie of wine, euen as much as they can drinke, and ſuch wine that doth heate greatly, as thoſe do that be yellow in colour, thin in ſubſtance, ſweete in ſmelling, and without reſtriction. For this doth heate the ſtomach, and deſtroy ſharpneſſe of humours, ſo that often ſuch wine with oylie and fat meates, ſufficeth for the perfect cure. As *Hippocrates* ſaith, Drinking of wine eaſeth hunger: and you muſt giue wine as well to them that be faſting as to them alſo which haue eaten meate, although they be not as yet athirſt. But you muſt giue it to them that be faſting, hote, or warme at the leaſt. He muſt abſtaine from all ſoure and reſtrictiue meates and drinkes, but ſpecially from fruite. Let their banketting meates be *Piſtacium*, Almonds, Pine nuttes, and Oliues with honey. Miniſter alſo vnto them milke, as well alone, as alſo with wine called *Paſſum*, or with honey: ſo that neuertheleſſe you muſt take heed that you giue it not to thoſe that are wont to haue it waxe ſowre in their ſtomach, for to thoſe it doth more hurt then good. But if it be well digeſted, it doth not onely ſtop the appetite, but it ſofteneth the belly being ſtopped, and ſtops his fluxes. Alſo you muſt make potions and fine cakes with milke, and giue them to him, as be, Marchpanes and Rice ſodden with milke. Alſo he muſt waſh now and then, and make fat their skinne largely. This kinde of cure you muſt vſe as long as the ſicke is diſeaſed, and till he be cleane whole. If the doglike appetite come

Curatio.

Cure if it be of ſharpe humors.

Victus ratio.

2. *Aph.* 23.

Cure if it come of immoderate diſſipation.

through vnmeaſurable ſcattering abroad, opening and diſſipation, then in ſuch a diſeaſe it is good to thicken the skin, and make it groſſer with oyle made with vnripe Oliues, or oiles of Roſes, or of Mirtles, or any other wherein any reſtrictiue thing hath bene ſodden with a ſoft fire. Let the ſicke remaine in an aire that is cold and perſpirable. Let him eſchue hote aire and hote bathes. Alſo let him eſchue wine, and all things as well outwardly as inwardly that do heate. Let his drinke be cold water or decoction of Cinamon. Put the ſicke in a cold bath if nothing do let it, as ſlenderneſſe and leanneſſe of the body, or the coldneſſe of ſome member of the body, as the breaſt or ſome other. You muſt giue vnto them meates that be ſtable, durable, and hard to corrupt, as be Periwincles, and all kind of ſhell fiſh, if they be ſodden with water twice changed. Alſo Swines fleſh being in full ſtrength, and ſpecially the belly. Alſo fat Beefe, and all things that be all fat, and that do ſwimme in the ſtomach, and be hard to be digeſted and diſtributed. For there be ſome that haue this diſeaſe, which by reaſon of a ſharpe and biting heate, and as it were a feuerous heate in them, do digeſt and conſume Beefe and other things hard of digeſtion, with leſſe labour then fiſhes of ſtony places, and ſuch like things which be eaſie of digeſtion. Of egges thoſe are good for them which be ſodden till they be hard, or fried in a frying pan. Giue them manchet made of fat broths without hony. Alſo Rice ſodden with butter, and vnleauened bread. Looke how much the euill is abated, and ſo much you muſt abate of the groſſe meates that you are wont to giue, and you muſt miniſh the reſtrictiue things alſo that you lay without. For ſometime the vehemency of the appetite being abated, when the body is filled with crude & groſſe humors, it turneth into ſome other worſe diſeaſe. Among reſtrictiue medicines beſides thoſe things which are aforeſaid, you muſt vſe this ointment: ℞. oiles of Mirtles, and Quinces, ana. ℥ ß. oile of Roſes, ℥ j. iuyce of Plantaine, ℥ ij. red Sanders, Maſticke, *Biſtorta*, red Roſes, ana. ℥ j. Bole armoniacke, ℈ ij *Hipociſchidos*, *Acatia*, *ſanguis Draconis*, ana. ℈ j. waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment.

Vnguentum adſtringens.

CHAP. VIII.

Of great famine.

Βδλιμος.

Cauſe.

Signa.

Curatio.

Vlimos in Greeke, is nothing elſe but great and vehement famine or hunger. It is cauſed through coldneſſe of the ſtomacke, and for want and weakeneſſe of ſtrength, and in a man it taketh his beginning altogether of outward cold: for long iournies, ſpecially when there is ſnow, cauſeth this diſeaſe. It is knowne thus. In the beginning there is felt much hunger, which for all that, doth not long endure. For afterward the heart of the patient beginneth to faile him, with coldneſſe of the extreme parts, and want of ſpirit and breath. You muſt apply remedies for this diſeaſe by and by, becauſe there be that in deſart places, or in bathes, being ſuddenly taken with this diſeaſe, do periſh for lacke of helpe. Therefore they that are troubled with great hunger, in a iourney without a feuer, or any other wayes, you muſt comfort them with Vineger, or Peniroyall, giuen them to ſmell vnto, or earth whatſoeuer it be, ſprinkled with Vineger, or Apples, or Peares, or ſuch other like fruite which is next hand. Alſo new bread holden to the noſe doth helpe, and cheeſe of good ſauour. Alſo Porke roſted or ſodden, and vniuerſally all that doth nouriſh much: but eſpecially

cially that which hath ſauour of roſted meate, and is well ſeaſoned, and hath a ſufficient ſauour. For by ſuch odours & ſauours, they that haue this diſeaſe are for the moſt part refreſhed, ſeeing there is nothing (as we ſaid before in the ſecond booke, the fourteenth chapter) that doth refreſh and renew the ſtrength ſooner then odours. Moreouer you muſt bind the extreme parts of them with bands, and you muſt put the tippes of their hands and feete in very hote water, and you muſt raiſe them and ſtirre them, as well by pricking of the cheekes, as alſo by pulling of the haire and eares. And when he is ſomewhat come againe to himſelfe, you ſhall miniſter vnto him bread infuſed in wine, or ſome ſuch thing, which doth reſtore ſtrength very quickly, as be, reare egges, Alica with wine. The next remedie they muſt looke for by meate, which if they cannot take when it is offered them, you muſt put it into the mouth violently, and compell them to ſwallow it, for by and by after that, they are deliuered from their great hunger, and from their fainting, and are raiſed quickly. For this purpoſe are good alſo the Antidotes which are compounded of diuers ſweet odours, as is, *Aromaticum Roſarum, Diamber, Dianthon, Diamoſchi, Alipta moſchata*, and ſuch other like. And if this diſeaſe chance to come in feauers (which is ſeldome ſeene) or if it do ruſh in ſuddenly about the declination of fits belonging to feuers, you may miniſter meate without feare. But if it chance in the beginning of the augmentation, or in the vigour and ſtrength of the feuer, the ſicke muſt be refreſhed by the odoraments aforeſaid, and ſpecially by thoſe things which haue corne in them, as is *Polenta* wet with water, or hote bread that ſendeth forth a burning ſauour. Alſo you muſt vſe frictions and rubbings of the extreme parts, and apply plaiſters made of Dates or Quinces ſodden in wine: and this muſt you do vntill the declining of the fit, that you may ſafely giue him meate. And if the ſicke be neuer the better through theſe things, you muſt venture to helpe him by giuing of meate. Therefore miniſter iuice of Ptiſan, or one morſell or other wet in wine that is white and thin: for they being refreſhed, and as it were ſuddenly called backe, do afterward come to the declining of the fit. We muſt eſchue altogether in them that haue this diſeaſe, long delay from meate and hunger: for you ſhall giue him euery houre very little meate, for it taketh away great famine and the fainting, whereby the ſicke is eaſed. And that it is lawfull to nouriſh and giue meate to the ſicke in a fit, *Galen* teacheth, *lib.* 10 *method. cap.* 3.

Polenta is barly ſteeped in water one night, then fried, and then ground.

CHAP. IX.

Of euill digeſtion.

RAwneſſe of the ſtomacke or ill digeſtion is, when as the meate is not altogether changed. The cauſes of it are, diſtemper in the ſtomacke, inflammations, hardneſſe, impoſtumes, and ſuch other like. Sometime the meates remaine raw and vndigeſted, although the ſtomacke be not diſeaſed, either through immoderate deuouring of meates and drinkes at one time, or through the euill and vicious qualities of the meates themſelues, or through eating of them out of due time, or through inordinate taking of them, or through ſome vicious ſuperfluitie growing, or through ſhort ſleeping, as *Galen* ſaith, *Libro tertio de ſymptomatum cauſis, capite primo.* The diuerſitie of cauſes be

Cauſe.

Signa. knowne partly by the tale of the patient, and them that be about him, and partly by certaine tokens. By the tale of the ſicke, and of them that be about him, you may know whether meates and drinkes haue bene taken immoderately, or out of due ſeaſon, or inordinately. Alſo you may know of them the ſhortnes of ſleeping: you may know if the meates themſelues were of euill qualities, by his belkings and ſauours like things roſted and burned. For in them that be hote and cholericke, the belking or corruptions ſauour like meate roſted or burned: but in them that be of a cold nature and more flegmaticke, the corruptions are ſowre or ſharpe. Likewiſe you muſt iudge of excrements that be flegmaticke and cold, they cauſe ſowre corruptions: but thoſe that be hote and mixed with bitter choler, do cauſe ſauour like burned meate. Likewiſe iudge of the ſtomacke being any otherwiſe euill at eaſe: for if the diſeaſe be cold, it cauſeth ſharpe and ſowre permutations: but if it be hote, it cauſeth a burning ſauour. When perfect cruditie and rawneſſe is engendred without corruption, in ſuch ſort that the meates do remaine altogether euen as they were eaten, by this you may know that the ſtomacke is ouercome, either through great quantitie of meate, or through vehement cold taken in an hote thirſt. Therefore if you would not haue this cruditie, and euill digeſtion, you muſt beware of all the aforeſaid things, that is, that you neither offend in the quantitie, nor qualitie, nor order, nor due ſeaſon of the taking of your meate, and that you eate thoſe things onely, which you are able to digeſt, and not that which appetite requireth. Therefore you muſt eſpecially take diligent heed to the meaſure and quantitie of your meate, and you muſt refraine your appetite, and eate no more then your ſtrength is able to ſuffer. Alſo you muſt beware of euill order, that is, that you do not firſt eate Quinces or Pomgranates, or ſome ſuch like things, and afterward to eate pot herbs out of oile or ſauce made with ſalted fiſh, or other things which do ſoften the belly. Alſo you muſt eſchue eating out of due ſeaſon, that is, that you do not eate before ſome moderate exerciſe, or before yeſterdaies meate be well deſcended, and alſo not before your accuſtomed houre. Alſo you muſt eſchue al things that be hard by nature to digeſt, as is fleſh that is hard by nature, as is Beefe and Harts fleſh: alſo eſchue all old fleſh. Alſo you muſt beware of meates that be fat, or that be powdred in ſalt, and ſtale kept. Amongſt pot-hearbes, thoſe that be very hote or very cold, or alſo thoſe that ingender wind, be hurtfull. Eſchue fiſhes that are hard, and dryed by long keeping. Alſo abſtaine from meates that be corrupt, or that do ſtinke, or ſmell ill fauouredly. Refraine from ſweete fruite, or that which doth ingender windineſſe, or that which is corrupt. Alſo eſchue iunkats which be hard of digeſtion. Alſo you muſt eſchue meates that be ſtrange and vnaccuſtomed, and that haue the power of a medicine, as people vſe to commixe in their tarts and fine cakes; but you muſt eate your meate in due time, not greedily, nor in gobbets, nor ſwallow it not without chewing. Neither let your drinke interrupt and diſturbe your meate, for that doth hinder the vniting and knitting together of the meate, and cauſeth each peece to ſwim from other. After meate eaten, you muſt eſchue vnequall and troublous motions. Alſo eſchue heate and cold, for thoſe things do ſtop the digeſtion of meate. But calefaction and chafing of the ſides, and

Victus ratio.

rubbing

rubbing of the feete, do helpe digestion. And if there be heauinesse about the stomach, so that through it a certaine painefulnesse be spread throughout the whole body, then lay your hand being stretched forth, vpon the mouth of the stomach, or apply to it a fleshie infant; for as *Galen* saith, it is much better, and more naturall, then the heate which is procured by foments. For which cause some do lay little whelpes while they rest vpon their stomach, which doth increase the abundance of heate that digesteth the meate. Also you must procure sleepe in the night equall and without disturbance. For this, you must procure to lie straight, and let your head be bolstered vp high, & in your lying you must incline towards the left side. And if you cannot sleepe, you must lie without turning or stirring of your bodie, and keepe it still in one forme of lying; for often stirrings and tossings do disturbe the meates, and make the bodie windie, and the bowels likewise. The cure must be diuerse, according to the diuersitie of the causes: for hote distemper of the stomach requireth one kind of curing, and cold distemper requireth another. Also inflammation of the stomach requireth another kind of cure, and hardnesse or impostumations another kind; and all those cures you shall seeke out in the proper Chapters: for here it sufficeth to say thus much. When there cometh an vnpleasant belking, declaring manifestly that there is corruption of meates, without prolonging you must prouoke vomite, and by drinking of warme water, you must constraine all that is corrupt to come forth. For if they remaine in the stomach, they cause tormenting, and wrestling, and heauinesse of the head: and sometimes they send forth choler vpward and downeward, or they cause fluxe of the wombe, or feauers. Therefore such as cannot digest but hardly, we must accustome them long time before, that they may vomite easily, for that is best in many perils. And if any be hard to vomite by nature, & be ill disposed to drinke cold things, in any case it is not inconuenient to giue him a cup of pure cold water to drinke: for the stomach being strengthened, it soone thrusteth out those things that sticke in it, and sendeth them downe to the lower parts. Then the next day let the sicke be kept in quiet and rest, and vse rubbings of his feete, and chafing of his sides, vntill the rumbling and windinesse breake out beneath, and vntill the belkings do come forth with a gentler qualitie. And then it is good to rise vp, that first the bellie may send out the corrupt things by siege, and afterward let the sicke walke moderately, and let him be idle, because of the troubled vapours which be ascended into the head through corruption. After this he must apply his mind to daily businesse without perturbation and indignation. Then againe the bellie must be prouoked to auoide those things that remaine yet. Afterward you must bid him rest, and you must powre vpon and nourish the feete with warme water: and the face being washed with pure cold water, let him rest in his bed, and procure him to sleepe by all meanes. After which let him vse a little walking, and then a bath. After bathing let him take meate moderately, and that which the bodie is able to digest. But yet you may not ouerpasse medicines that do helpe digestion, as is, Pepper, especially long Pepper, which doth onely helpe digestion. But if you haue it not at that present, you may vse white Pepper, and if you haue not that neither, take blacke Pepper. Also for the same, *Diacotoneon*

Curatio.

Vomitus.

Long Pepper helpeth digestion.

is good, and *Diospoliticum*. Also there be other things to be applyed, as well inwardly as outwardly, both simples and compounds, to strengthen the stomach, which are rehearsed in the former Chapters. But all these medicines (especially such as do pierce quickly, as is, Caraway seeds, Fennell seeds, *Apium*, Louage seed, Parsley seed, *Ammeos*, Pepper, Ginger, and such like) must be giuen two houres before meate: but after meate you must neuer take them: for then there is dispersed together with them some of the crude meates, and causeth obstructions. Therefore let them be vsed most before meate, after the rubbings in the morning, and two houres before exercise.

CHAP. X.

Of windinesse in the stomach.

Causa. THe stomach is windie through the windines that is engendred in it. Windinesse is engendred through flegmaticke humours in the stomach, or else through meates dissolued into vapors through want and debilitie of heate. For cold onely doth cause no windinesse, because it can neither extenuate nor dissolue meate. Vehement heate for the most part (ouercoming those things that it comprehendeth) extenuateth and maketh thinne the meate, so that no vapours can engender thereof, vnlesse it be easie to turne into windines of the owne nature: but the windinesse that is so engendred is troublous and cloudy: and also it is but little, and endureth but a little while, so that at one belking or other it vanisheth away straight. The heate that worketh in the meates, if it be but of little force and strength (that is, doth somewhat dissolue them, but not altogether consume them) thereof must needs engender windines, as *Galen* teacheth, *lib. 3. de sympt. caus. cap. 7.* They that are thus diseased, haue stretching out and heauinesse of the stomach: also sometime swelling, and a certaine bowing out of the mouth of the stomach, and of the stomach it selfe: also emptie belkings do come, sometimes lightning a little, and a stopping of the windinesse which is wont to breake downward. Also this euill sometimes is all ouer the breast, and sometime behinde, about the backebone and backe, and rusheth among the ioynts, and often it occupieth both places. Besides these things there is vehement paine in drawing of breath, because of the pressing downe together of the midriffe, so that some do feele like as though they were choked. They are eased by the meate going downeward, and by windinesse breaking out either by belking or by the belly. Also rumbling & noise is heard within. Therefore if the windinesse of the stomach be caused of flegmaticke meates, you must minister an extenuating diet, and such medicines as do diuide and purge fleame, which we taught in the first Chapter of this booke. But if the windinesse be engendred through want and weakenesse of heate, he must vse meates easie of digestion, and of good iuice. Also he must eate but little: for fasting is very good for this disease. After all the meate, you must minister wine that is pure and vnmixed; but yet he must eschue much drinke as a deadly enemie. Also let him eschue fruit, and eating of moist oiles. Also let him vse hote baths in great vessels, for those do mitigate, soften, and dissolue windinesse whatsoeuer it be, and prouoke sleepe: and when sleepe cometh it easeth the patient much, because it helpeth digestion marueilously. And as for medicins, let

Signa.

Curatio.

them

them vse this decoction: ℞. Calamint, Mints, wilde Mints, Cammomill, Origan, Peniroyall, ana. M. j. Wormwood. M. ß. seeds of Anniſe, *Apium*, Comin, *Daucus*, Parſley, Fennell, ana. ℥. iij. ſeeds of Nettles, Carawayes, ana. ℥ ij. of the roote of Enula Campana, ℥. ij. ſeeth theſe in a iuſt quantitie of water, till the third part be conſumed: then ſtraine them, & put too ſufficient Sugar to make the iuyce of that decoction ſweet, and put to that liquor, or ſirupe of Calamint, ℥. iij. and make a potion, whereof let the ſicke drinke euery day in the morning, ℥ iiij. Or let him vſe this powder. ℞. the powders of *Dianyſum*, *Diacuminum*, *Diacalaminthes*, ana. ℈. ij. ſeeds of Anniſe, *Daucus*, and Fennell, ana. ℈ j. Quibibes, Cloues, ana. ℈. ij. Ginger, ℈. Pepper, ℥ j. Sugar, ℔. ß. commixe them together and make a powder. They which haue taken meate but a little before, muſt firſt vomite. Alſo you muſt miniſter ſuppoſitaries made of things that entice windineſſe, after this ſort ℞. Hony ſodden, ℥. ij. ſeeds of Rew, Comin, and Fennell, ana ℈. j. ſeeds of Carawayes and Anniſe, ana. ℥. ß. Salt, ℈. ij. commixe them together and make ſuppoſitaries. If the wombe be very coſtiue, you muſt caſt in a cliſter made thus. ℞. of the decoction aboue taught, ℔ j. of *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥. vij. oiles of Wormwood, Rew and Dill, ana. ℥ j. Gooſe greaſe and Hennes greaſe without Salt, ana. ℥. ij. ß. common Salt, ℥. j. commixe all together, and make a cliſter. In this diſeaſe you muſt annoint the ſtomach outwardly with the oiles aforeſaid, or make a little bunch of Wooll, and wet it in the aforeſaid oiles being warmed, and apply it to the ſtomach. And vpon the bunch of Wooll being wound vp together, ſtrew Comin beaten, or ſeed of *Apium* or Dill. If the diſeaſe endure long, apply to it plaiſters made of Lineſeed, Barley meale, Darnell meale, Comin, Dill ſeed, or *Apium*, or Fennell beaten, the toppes of Centorie, and ſuch other like: or apply this Cerate. ℞. oiles of Rew, Dill, Nard, and Lawrell, ana. ℥ j. meale of Lineſeed, and Fenugreeke, ana. ℥. j. ß. ſeedes of *Apium*, Carawayes, and *Nigella Romana*, ana. ℥. j. Laurell berries, and Centorie, ana. ℥. j ß. Gumme ammoniacke, and *Opoponax*, ana. ℥. ij. Waxe and Roſin as much as is ſufficient, make a Cerate. Alſo a great cupping glaſſe comprehending the nauell euery where, being applyed with great flame, is a remedy in this diſeaſe. Alſo *Caſtoreum* drunke with *Poſca*, and applyed outwardly with oile of Dill, is good.

Decoctum.

Trituræ.

Glandes.

Cliſter.

Ceratum.

CHAP. XI.

Of yelking or hicket.

YElking is a motion of the ſtomach, and it is as it were a crampe of the ſtomach raiſed of the expulſiue vertue, which goeth about to thruſt forth euill and hurtfull things. This diſeaſe is cauſed for the moſt part, either of fulneſſe or of emptineſſe, as *Hippocrates* witneſſeth. Alſo ſometime it is cauſed through the biting and gnawing of ſharpe humors. Alſo the meate being turned into a gnawing qualitie, and ſo corrupted, cauſeth ſome to yelke. Alſo coldnes of the mouth of the ſtomach, and corruption of the food, cauſeth yelking, which cauſeth children ſpecially to haue the hicket often. Alſo yelking engendreth in feuers, ſpecially when the ſtomach or ſome other bowell is inflamed. The outward cauſes are eaſily knowne by the telling of the ſicke and them that be about him. Fulneſſe is knowne by heauineſſe, & emptineſſe of thoſe things that

Cauſe.

6. Aphor. 13.

Signa.

went before. You may know if the meate be corrupt, by the burnt ſauor of it: but you ſhall know ſharpneſſe by gnawing, pricking, and pulling. Therefore when yelking is engendred of coldneſſe, you muſt lay vpon the ſtomach, wooll dipped in the oile wherin hath bene ſodden, Rew, Comin, & wormwood. Alſo oile of Maſticke, and of *Caſtoreum* being annointed doth profite. To children, warme linnen clothes being applied to, do help often. They that be of full age, miniſter to them wine to drinke, or *Apium* ſodden in *Aqua Mulſa*, or Comin beaten, or *Aſarum*, or Peniroyall, each of theſe by himſelfe or elſe mixed with other. Alſo ſquilliticke vineger is good to ſoupe. Alſo giue them, ℥ j. of *Caſtoreum* with *Poſca*, as well againſt yelking cauſed of cold, as alſo if it be cauſed through multitude of humours. Alſo if it be applied outwardly to the ſtomach with old oile, it is good for both the ſaid griefes. Moreouer, holding of the breath which doth increaſe heate, is a preſent remedie for them that do yelke through cold. When yelking is cauſed of fulneſſe, vomiting is the beſt remedie. If there be groſſe humours, they muſt be extenuate and cut with *Oximel ſcilliticum*, and Calamint, and Horehound their decoction, and ſuch like before rehearſed. Afterward you muſt apply thoſe things which may draw the abundance of humors a contrary way, and turne them cleane aſide. For which purpoſe thoſe things are good which do purge downeward, and ſpecially cliſters, bindings and rubbings of the extreme parts, and cupping glaſſes with much flame, faſtned to the breaſt, to the ſtomach, and to the backe. Alſo theſe things are good for them, long and quicke walking, bearings about, and chiefly riding. Alſo it is good for them to ſneeſe, as *Hippocrates* ſaith. For when the yelking is cauſed of fulnes, there is need of violent mouing. Alſo handſome calling loud, with much clamor, & with holding of the breath, is good for them. Moreouer, the ſtomach muſt be ſtrengthened by medicines miniſtred as well inwardly as outwardly: Inwardly by comforting Electuaries, and outwardly by applying of ointments, Emplaſters, and Cerates before taught. Yelking that is cauſed of emptineſſe, is cured by giuing to the patient conuenient food, and by thoſe things that do fill his wanting: which partly be afore taught, and abundantly ſpoken of hereafter in the cure of the feauer Hecticke. It doth much good in this kind of yelking, to annoint the ioints of the necke & the backe with moiſtening oile, as is, oiles of Violets, & of ſweet Almonds. But if yelking be cauſed of gnawing things, firſt we find that vomiting is a ſufficient remedie for it: then alſo ſtupefaction of feeling, and ſuch things as do alter the gnawing. The ſenſes be aſtonied and ſtupefact by cooling things, for which purpoſe you muſt miniſter *Philonium*, or pilles of Hounds tong, which do profit marueilouſly in this diſeaſe: you muſt vſe them thus. You muſt make of one dram, ſixe pilles, whereof let the ſicke take one before he go to bed. The mordacitie and gnawing is altered and driuen away by medicines which do ſtop, attenuate, and drie. Stoppers of gnawing be theſe, iuyce of Endiue drunke, Cucumber ſeed husked and beaten, being drunke, Lettuce ſeede likewiſe taken. Alſo iuyce of Purſlaine drunke, and Purſlaine it ſelfe taken in meate. Alſo Sebeſten decoction taken in drinke, but ſpecially aboue all, Aſſes milke is good. Or if you haue not that, Cowes milke newly milked is good being drunke. For the ſame purpoſe miniſter conſerues of Roſes, or of Violets, or of water Lillies,

Cure of yelking of cold.

Cure of yelking of fulnes.

Auerſion.

6. Aphor. 13.

Cure of hicket cauſed of emptineſſe.

Cure of yelking through mordacitie.

Pilulæ de cynogloſſa.

Diar.

Diarrhodon, Diatrion santalon, Iulep of Violets, of *Nymphæa*, that is, water Lillies, and such like. These Trochiskes do stop, extenuate, and dry vp: ℞. *Pastillus.* *Costus*, Saffron, Spikenard, greene Roses, Masticke, ana. ℥.ß. *Asarum*, *Aloes*, ana. ℥ ij. *Opium*, ℥ j. with iuice of *Psillium*, make Trochiskes, of the which giue ℥.ß. or ℥. j. Note that *Opium*, and the Roses, and the iuyce of *Psillium* be of a cold operation: the Spikenard doth discusse, dissolue, and corroborate: the *Asarum* doth bring out the vicious humours by vrine: the *Aloes* do purge out the vicious humours, and driue them out beneath at the siege: the Saffron digesteth and strengtheneth the parts, for by his temperament of heate he causeth digestion, and by his restrictiue vertue which he hath, he addeth strength: the *Costus* doth sufficiently heate, and moderately restraine, which you may perceiue by his tast. *Galen* commendeth this medicine very much. *Lib. 8. de. Comp. Med. secundum locos, cap. 3.*

CHAP. XII.

Of Choler.

Cholera in Latin, is an immoderate perturbation of the stomach, caused by vomite both vpward and downeward. The barbarous sort call this disease *Cholerica passio*: they that haue this disease be called of the Latines *Cholerici*. It *Cholerici.* is caused through much crudity and rawnesse of the stomach, and ill digestion *Causæ.* which many times engendreth of great wickednesse of the meates, and sometime through abundance of vicious humours also. The signes whereby this *Signa.* euill is knowne, be very manifest: for they auoyd both vpward and downeward: also there followeth thirst and sweat, and short pulse, and drawing vp, and stretching out of the muscles of the hands and feete, and specially of the calfe of the legges. Therefore seeing this euill is most sharpe, and doth cause verie grieuous swownings, if they endure long, you must do your diligence that you helpe it by and by without any tarying. No Phisition, if he see this disease to be engendred through abundance of vicious humours, will in the beginning all at once go about to stop that which is sent forth: for seeing they be vnprofitable and hurtfull, they haue need of purging. Therefore if the patient haue dispositon to vomite, and be troubled with vndigested meates remaining in the stomach, you must giue him warme water, and then he must vomite by his finger or a feather put into his mouth But you must not prouoke vomite by ministring of *Aqua mulsa*, nor with water mixed with oile: because these things do increase the fluxes, and cause mordacitie and writhings: also you must helpe the matter that purgeth downeward: for a strange poyson (as it were) being within, doth gnaw the stomach and guts, and draweth the humours from the whole body: you must minister vnto him the easiest purging medicines, as is, *Aloes*, *Cassia fistularis*, decoction of *Mirobalanes*, and such like. After that the superfluous things be brought forth, then he must rest, and it is good to nourish the sides with oiles of Masticke, or Nard, or Wormewood, and to cause sleepe. You must commixe sometime with the aforesaid other things which can strengthen the stomach, which be afore taught, and with them you must make ointments. When there appeareth exact and perfect concoction and digestion, vse baths of sweet water, and meates of good iuyce, among which is

broth of chickens with verivice, the flesh of small birds of the mountains, rere egges, and such like. In drinke let him vse iuice of Pomegranates, or sirupe of Roses, or water wherein burning steele hath bene quenched three or foure times. But when the euill hath endured long, and hath caused slenderneſſe, and leanneſſe throughout the body, and specially if the belly or stomach do rest after the remouing from his place, and that the pulse be lesse, and thicker, then you must bind the extreme and vttermost parts with bands, & you must make them fast by much oile. Also apply to the stomach Cataplasmes and Emplaisters made of restrictiue and strengthening things, as those be which are made of Dates, *Hypocistchidos*, *Acatia*, *Sumach*, Bolearmoniacke, Frankinsence, *Balaustiæ*, Roses, and fruit of Mirtles. Also it is an effectuous remedie, if a linnen cloth wet in the iuice of Crabbes be laid vpon the stomach, or this Cerate. ℞. of the oile of Roses, Mirtles, & Quinces, an. ℥. j. Mastick, Frankinsence, *Acatia*, ana. ℥. ij *Hypocistchidos*. ℥. j. ß. Sanders white and red, ana. ℥. j. *Balaustiæ*, Dragons bloud, ana. ℥. ß. Bolearmoniacke, ℥. j. Waxe and Rosin as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate to lay vpon the stomach couered with silke. In drinking giue him the measure of one *Cyathe* of cold water to soupe off, that is, ℥. j ß but you must beware that it be not ouer cold, for that being giuen, suddenly is vomited vp againe; and sometime with his stupor and coldneſſe, it hurteth very extremely the naturall heate, or it causeth inflammation of the stomach, or of some of the bowels. And you may sometime drop into the water a little of the iuice of sharpe Pomegranats, or of Roses, or of the decoction of vine branches. And if those things that be voided forth be very sharpe, and that thirst and burning do trouble the patient, then minister Cucumber seed, with three *Cyathes* of water. Also you may make it commodiously with *Amylum*. Then also minister Endiue or Lettuce, or both sodden in *Posca*. Afterward procure sleepe and rest by all meanes. But if the fluxe will not be stopped, and the pulse decay betweene this and that, and that cold and swet do take him, and also sometimes yelking, you must come to wine that is meanely restrictiue, which is not very strong, but yet sweet and not odoriferous; and put into it, warme if it may be, or else cold, crummes of bread, or *Alica*, and so by little and little at sundry times let them soupe it vp. But yet they must eschue much quantitie of wine: and by all meanes you must go about to bring them to sleep, by strewing the pauement of the house with Roses, Vine leaues, Brier, and such like afore taught. Also apply odoraments to the nose, as Roses, Quinces, and such like: also annoint soporiferous and sleepy ointments about the temples and forehead. If he go to the stoole still, cast in by a clister *Amylum* with decoction of Poppy heads, for it doth both restraine and coole, and cause sleepe. To stop vomits, it is good to eate and deuoure the iuice of Medlars, Quinces, Pomegranates, and Peares. If with these remedies and others that be taught before in the second Chapter of this Booke, the sick cannot keep and brooke his meate, you must apply without vpon the stomach a very great cupping glasse lightly. Against the contraction and drawing vp of the muscles you must wind about the muscles, linnen clothes soked in warme oile, and apply moist Cerates and ointments wherein is put some *Castoreum* and oile of *Ireos*. You shall find examples enough of these in the Chapter of the Palsey before

Scutum stomachi.

A cyathe is ℥. j. ß.

Constriction of vomites.

Against contraction in the muscles.

fore in the first Booke When the disease decreaseth, you must refresh and restore the patient againe with good meates, as Chickens, Doues, Hennes, Partrich, wood Culuer, and Owsils, or black-birds, and such like.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the fluxe Diarrhæa.

Diarrhæa in Latin, is a copious and great fluxe of the wombe without exulceration and inflammation. It is caused through weakenesse of the instruments that belong and do serue to digestion, also through abundance of nourishment & meat that is moist and viscous, and through corruption of the same meate. Moreouer, gnawing and biting of those things that are contained in the belly: also flowing of some things from aboue to the belly, & also weakenesse of the retentiue vertue. The signes whereby the causes are knowne are very manifest. For if this fluxe *Diarrhæa* be caused through the weakenesse of the instruments that serue for digestion, as is the stomach, the bowels, the liuer, and the spleene, you must seeke the signes of these out of their owne Chapters. But if it be caused through much deuouring of euill meats & drinks, you may know it partly by the patients tale, & partly also by those things that come forth by siege. For if they be cholericke, they be yellow of colour, and they be not cast out without feeling of gnawing & heate: also the patient feeleth bitternesse of the mouth, thirst, thinne state of the body, and other tokens which signifie choler. If it be flegmaticke, those things which come out with the siege shall be contrary to that which is said before of choler. And if humors do flow from the head to the belly, the egestions will appeare frothy, and the temper of the braine will be very moist. If the fluxe be engendred through fulnesse of the whole body, or if it be indicatorie, the signes are rehearsed in another place, and of *Galen li. de plenitudine & crisibus*. And if this fluxe of the wombe be caused through weakenesse of the instruments, the distemper which is cause of this, must be cured and corrected by his contraries, as is taught in the first Chapter of this Booke. If this fluxe of the wombe be caused through other causes, and that nature doth labour to driue out of the bodie superfluous and hurtfull matter by this meanes, and that they can easily suffer it which be troubled with it, then you must suffer, and watch til nature hath bestowed all her care and charge: or else also it is good to helpe natures motion; but for to go about to striue with it, and to stop the fluxe, it causeth a worse & greater disease: for those humors which are stopped, being caried vpward, do cause paine in the head, or frensie, or lethargie, or impostumation behind the eares, not without danger. Therefore in the beginning you may not stop the fluxe which floweth profitably for the health of the body, but after that the fluxe hath endured long, not onely carrying foorth superfluities, but also melting as it were the state of the body, & consuming the strength, then you must labour to stop it, as well by things giuen in at the mouth, as also cast in at the fundament, and also by things applyed outwardly vpon the belly. Therefore if there come foorth excrements of cleane choler, you must change it into a better and a more healthfull state, but yet you may not cure them by stopping of it straightwayes: for the cholericke matter that is gathered toge-

Causæ.

Signa.

Curatio.

Note.

ther, and heaped in the ſtomach, and in the bowell called *Ieiunum*, if it be withholden and kept there ſtill, it hurteth greatly: for it both oue turneth the ſtomach, and cauſeth inflammations of the bowels; it kindleth thirſt, and reſtoreth feauers, and cauſeth the euils aforeſaid, and generally cauſeth a worſe diſeaſe. Therefore if there be abundance of cholericke humours in the bodie, nature muſt be expelled with eaſie purging medicines, as is, infuſion of Rewbarbe, *Caſſia fiſtularis*, the barkes of Mirobalanes citrine, or Manna. After that giue Cowes milke, or Goats milke warme, being new milked, or ſeeth it at the fire, and ſtirre it continually, till it be conſumed vnto the third part: which you may do by quenching of red hote iron, or ſteele gads in the milke often, but while it doth ſeeth you muſt take the ſcum or foame off it: for ſurely you can finde no quicker remedy againſt fluxes of choler. And becauſe the milke that is eaten of one that hath a feauer, is wont to turne into a burning ſauour, or alſo ſharpe or ſower, and ſo cauſeth more hurt then good: therefore if the patient hath a feauer together with the fluxe, you ſhall eſchue miniſtring of milke to him dreſſed after that ſort. But you muſt powre the fourth part of water to the milke, and ſeeth it vntill it be halfe conſumed, and then miniſter it vnto him. If the choler be heaped vp together in the bowels, you muſt caſt in cliſters made of the decoction of Barley, with Sugar Roſet, oile of Roſes, yolkes of Egges, and ſuch like. At the length, when the colericke humors be voided out, you muſt miniſter inwardly ſuch medicins as do reſtraine and ſtrengthen, as be, conſerues of Roſes, *Diacotoneon* without ſpices, *Diatrion ſantalon*, Trochiskes of *Spodium*, *Hydromalon*, and ſuch like. And what kind of medicins they muſt be that ought to be applied outwardly, we will ſhew you a little hereafter. Alſo the fundament muſt be fomented and nouriſhed with a decoction made of ſome reſtrictiue things. If the fluxe *Diarrhœa* be engendred through flegmaticke humours that be groſſe and tough, or through corruption of them, then you muſt beginne your cure, as you did before, with eaſie purging. Therfore then you muſt miniſter the infuſion of Agaricke with *Mirobalanes emblici*, or ſome ſuch like medicine, which is able to bring foorth the aforeſaid humours. Alſo cliſters are good, ſpecially if there be abundance of clammie humours heaped vp in the bowels: let them be made of the decoction of Centorie, and oile of Rew, and ſuch like. Miniſter within the belly *Diacotoneon* with ſpices, greene Ginger, and other medicines which haue power to heate and drie. Alſo apply outwardly thoſe things which do adde ſtrength. If the fluxe *Diarrhœa* be eauſed through the weakeneſſe of the vertue retentiue, you muſt miniſter and apply thoſe medicines which are applied againſt other vnmeaſurable fluxes of the wombe. Therefore apply irrigations and ſprinklings of oile *Omphacine*, or oile of Roſes, or oile of the bloſſoms of Apples, with ſome ſower or ſharpe wine: but oile of Mirtles is of more effect, if there be need of vehement reſtriction, hauing the third or fourth part of wine added to it. And if their bodies be ſtrong, you may ſeeth in that irrigation, Galles, Pomegranate rinds, and *Balauſtia*. If the fluxe endure ſtill, apply Cataplaſmes, Emplaiſters, and Cerates, made of reſtrictiue & drying things, wherof we wil make mention in the next Chapter. Alſo this Cerate is effectuous to be made. Take ſeuen Mulberies, or Blacke berries which be ſower & whitiſh for lacke of ripeneſſe, bray them well

Cure of Diarrhœa of choler.

Cure of Diarrhœa of flegmaticke humours.

Cure of Diarrhœa of the weakneſſe of the vertue retentiue.

and

and adde to it oile of Roſes ℥.ij. Waxe, ℥.j and made a Cerate. After the voiding of ſuperfluous and hurtfull humours, theſe things heale the fluxe of the wombe, being miniſtred in drinke, that is, Comin, decoction of Maidenhaire, the roote of white Thorne, likewiſe one ℥. weight of the ſeed of *Apium* miniſtred: for it prouoketh vrine, & turneth the fluxes that be in the bowels thither. Alſo vnripe Mulberies being yet foure, if they be dried many dayes in the Sun and ſo kept, if they be beaten and drunke when need requireth, they reſtraine and ſtop the wombe maruellouſly. Alſo they may be brayed & mixed with his meates, as they are wont to vſe *Sumach*, which ſometime is ſodden, the quantitie of an ounce weight with a chicken: but yet blackberies of the brier being vnripe and ſharpe, do bind the belly more, if they be dried as is aforeſaid, and miniſtred in drinke. Among compound medicines theſe are maruellous good, that is, Trochiskes of *Spodium*, *of Terra lemnia*, *Diacotoneon*, *Diatrion ſantalon*, Triacle: and this compound made in Lozenges, is good: ℞. the powder of *Diatrion ſantalon*, *Diarrhodon abbatis*, ana ℈.iij. red Coral, choſen Frankinſence, red Roſes, ana ℥.ß. *Spodium* ℥.j ſeeds of Sorel, *Sumach*, ana. ℈.j. *Balauſtiæ*, *Acatiæ*, ana. ℥ ß. Maſticke ℈ ß. Bolearmoniacke, ℥j. fine white ſugar, ℔.ß diſſolue it in the diſtilled waters of Plantaine and Roſes, and make Lozenges. Alſo this Loch is good: ℞ of old conſerues of Roſes, of *Diacotoneon* with ſpices, *Rob de ribes*, *Rob de Barberies*, ana. ℥ ß. *Hydromel*, ℥ iij. *Diamoron*, ℥.v. with powder of *Diatrion ſantalon*, ℈.ij. red Coral, ℈.j *Spodium*, *Balauſtiæ*, ana ℥.ß Bolearmoniack. ℥ j. ſirupe of Mirtles as much as ſhall ſuffice, & make a Loch. Moreouer you ſhall euer haue this water ready made: ℞. *Sumach*, one quarter, raine water, ℔.iij. in which ſteepe the *Sumach* a day and a night, then boile them, and ſtraine the *Sumach* well and ſtrongly: and in that water ſeeth Rice, or milke, or other meates, or at leaſt way, powre ſome portion of this water to them. If the fluxe *Diarrhæa* be cauſed through flowing of humors from ſome other member of the body, you muſt ſeeke the cure out of their proper Chapters. As for example, if the humours flow from the head into the ſtomacke, you muſt returne to thoſe things which are ſpoken of before in the Chapters againſt diſtillation or rheume, and ſo do likewiſe with other parts of the bodie.

Morſus.

Ecligma.

A precious water.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the fluxe Lienteria.

LIENTERIA in Greek, is a certaine lightnes, or ſmoothnes of the bowels, euen like as there chanceth of a ſcarre without on the skin of the body. In this diſeaſe the bowels do not hold the meate, but they let it ſlide away before it be changed and perfectly digeſted, euen in the ſame forme and likenes that it was eaten. Therefore in Latin it may well be called *leuitas* or *leuor intestinorum*, and in Engliſh, lightnes or ſmoothneſſe of the bowels. It is cauſed oftetimes through a grieuous fluxe *Diſenteria* by name going before, which cauſeth deepe exulceration of the bowels: then ſcarres that be hard cloſing together and ſmooth do follow: which ſcarres by reaſon of the hard cloſing, will not ſuffer the meates to be diſtributed about the bodie, becauſe the mouthes of the veins which are wont to draw nouriſhment from the bowels to themſelues, are now ſtopped. And becauſe of the ſmoothneſſe (as is aforeſaid) the bowels

Cauſe.

ſuffer

suffer the meats to slide out before they be perfectly digested. Also this disease is caused many times through weakenesse and debility of the vertue that should keepe and hold the meates in the stomach. For this vertue being weake and sickly, the food or meates be neither digested nor distributed but they are cast forth crude, moist, and nothing changed (the belly being alwayes soluble.) Also sometime it engendreth after long fluxe of the wombe. Also sometime when dropsie water auoideth by the belly, this fluxe *Lienteria* followeth. Therfore of what cause soeuer this fluxe is engendred, the sicke doth tast or feele no meate, and it causeth euill state or plight of the body. Therefore there chanceth to the patient continuall seiges, crude and raw, in colour pale or whitish, vnequell, and very watery, without any commixing of bloud and choler. Also he feeleth a burning which spreadeth all ouer the sides, loathing of meate following it. It a good and friendly signe in them that haue had this fluxe long, if there chance vnto them sharpe and sowre belkings; for it betokeneth that the meate doth abide some while in the stomach vntill it beginne to be changed.

Signa.

6. Aphor. 1.

When this disease chanceth, it is easie to perceiue, that you must refresh and recreate the vertues retentiue and digestiue, as well of the stomach as of the bowels, by all meanes; and that may chiefly be done by ministring of conuenient meats, and ordaining of a diet meet to restore and refresh strength. Therfore the flesh of birds of mountaines is good: also Chickens rosted, in whose bellies also must be put *Sumach* or Masticke, and other things which shall be rehearsed in the next Chapter. Let the meate which you giue him be little in quantity, and easie of digestion. And if his seiges be sharpe & cholericke, make him meate with Rice and *Alica*, and such like, with the which seeth some restrictiue things, as Peares, Quinces, Medlars, and such other like. Also milke sodden is good for them: but if their seige be flegmaticke, you must minister vnto them contrarie meats. Also commixe somewhat that is pleasant and acceptable to the stomach, as is Annise seed, Comin, or *Daucus*. In cholericke seiges let their drinke be Ale: but in flegmaticke let it be wine that is old & hote. And generally let him drinke but little, for much drinke is not onely in the fluxe *Lienteria*, but also in all other fluxes of the wombe, most hurtfull.

Victus ratio.

Cure of Lienteria of weaknes of the vertue of the stomacke.

For curing of this disease, if the fluxe *Lienteria* be engendred through weakenesse of the vertue of the stomach, you must turne to the Chapter of weaknes of the stomach, and there seeke the cure. But to be short, you must minister both within and without to the body, those things that do restraine, and that do strengthen as well the stomach as also the bowels. Therefore minister sirups of Wormwood, and Mints, and other electuaries which do strengthen the stomach. And you must apply those things outwardly, which be rehearsed before in the Chapter of *Diarrhœa*, & shal be taught in the next Chapter following. But this medicin is specially good. ℞. oiles of Masticke, Wormwood, Mints, and Mirtles, ana. ℥ ij. powders of Cinamon chosen, Cloues, and Galingale, ana. ℈ j *Balaustiæ* and red Roses, ana. ℈ ß. Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment: or vse this Cerate: ℞. oiles of Masticke, Wormwood, & of Quinces, ana ℥ j. oile of Mints ℥ ß. *Calamus aromaticus*, Cloues, Frankinsence, an. ℥ j wood of Aloes ℈ ß. red Roses, white Sanders and red, ana ℥ ß Mastick, Comin, ana ℥ j. *Hypociſchidos*, *Acatia*, *Sumach*, ana. ℥ j ß. *Gallia Moſchata*, ℈ j. with Waxe and Turpentine

Vnguentum.

Cerotum.

as

as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. Moreouer, to those that you conIf Lienteria iecture haue a scarre, the eating of sharpe things is profitable; for it causeth a be caused of a certaine refrication and rubbing open againe of the scarre: also it reuiueth a- scarre. gaine the naturall heate, and doth somewhat refresh the digestiue vertue. Therfore in this case (as *Galen* witnesseth *in cap. 95 Artis Medicæ*) they be good which do scoure and wipe away sufficiently, and restraine a little: therefore alwayes commixe scouring things with restrictiue medicines. In all other causes of this fluxe *Lienteria*, you must vse the same kind of cure which you do vse to them that be afflicted with the fluxes *Diarrhæa* or *Dysenteria*.

CHAP. XV.

Of the fluxe Dysenteria.

DYSENTERIA in Greek, properly is nothing else but an exulceratiõ of the bowels. The Latines call this disease *Tormina*, because through it the bowels are tormented & fretted very much with paine. We said before, properly, Foure kinds of because the Greeks reckon foure kinds of bloudy *Dysenteria*, as witnesseth *Ga-* Dysenteria. *len, lib 3. de Symptomatum causis*. The first is, when bloud is sent forth by cir- 1
cuite through some part of the body being cut off, or through some exercise of the former life, being let passe for a time. The second is, when watery bloud, 2
like vnto the water wherein bloudy flesh being new killed, hath bene washed and soaked, is sent out: which chanceth through weakenesse of the liuer. The 3
third is, when there is sent forth an humour more shining and blacker then that which is naturall, being commixt of bloud and melancholy. And of these we do not speak here, but we speak only of the fourth kind, in the which many 4
times by little and little, and betweene whiles sometimes is cast out pure bloud; also sometimes clodded bloud, or shauing of the bowels commeth out with pure bloud. Also many times is cast out thicke dung sprinckled with drops of bloud. This fourth kind, as it is said, is caused through exulceration of the bo- Cause. wels, which sometimes chanceth through outward causes, as of cold, heate, and moistnesse. Also through drinking of pernicious and naughtie medicines, as is, Scammony, and such like. Also through eating of fruite, through cruditie and rawnesse, or through eating of sharpe and soure meates, or through sharpe & gnawning humours flowing from the whole body to the belly, or engendred in the belly it selfe. And this beginneth after *Tenasmus* sometime, and sometime by it selfe. The excrements first are cholericke, diuerse, and fattie, by reason of the fat that cleaueth within in the bowels being melted. But when the superficies of the bowels is altogether bare, and exulceration doth abide about it, then the excrements that come forth, be full of dregs and bloudie. And when the exulceration hath pierced deeper, then also is sent forth filthinesse, hauing as it were little peeces of parchment commixed with it. And if it be not stopped, it eateth and feedeth in short time the places nigh vnto it, and it sendeth forth mattery excrements, such as are wont to runne from dead bodies. When Signes of exthe small guts are exulcerate, there abideth paine about the nauell, the ex- ulceration of crements are cholericke, hauing the colour of a leeke, and altogether garni- the small shed with sundry colours, commixed with much ordure or dung. The patient bowels. feeleth griefe and frettings, and gnawing, and loosing, so that the sicke is not

farre from fainting and failing of heart. Also they are troubled with thirst, and be feauerous, and the ordure cometh forth crude and raw, and the bowell called *Ieiunum* is exulcerate, but that is very seldome: but if it do chance, the egestions do appeare more crude and raw, hauing blacke bloud wrapped with it vehemently, and yellow choler, and much thirst, and also disposition to vomite do trouble the sicke. And sometime they vomite and abhorre meats. Also there remaineth vehement paine about the nauill, and sometime also malignant feuers do engender. And they that are so diseased, be waxen ill coloured, and do sweate out euen till fainting and failing of heart. Their strengh doth quickly faile them, and they be not farre from death. But if the vlceration be engendred in the great bowels, then the ordure that cometh forth is pure, and much, and heaped together, and cometh out with windinesse, and frothinesse sometime. Also fatnesse is commixed with it, and bloud swimmeth aloft: as *Galen* sheweth largely *in lib. 6. De male affectis locis.* For it helpeth greatly to the cure to know this thing. For if the exulceration be in the vpper and small bowels, you must go about the cure by medicins giuen in at the mouth: but if it be in the great and lower bowels, it is more conuenient to throw in clisters. The beginning of the cure of them that haue the fluxe *Dysenteria*, from whence soeuer the fluxe proceedeth, must be with quiet and rest, and little meate. Therefore if the feauer do not let it, let him eate milke new milked, while it is yet warme: or in stead of it, minister milke sodden as we taught before in the Chapter of *Diarrhæa*. For this first cleanseth and purgeth downeward, and tempereth together those things which be in the body, and last of all it stoppeth & bindeth the womb. But you must giue him moreouer wet bread after the taking of the milke. Also pottage prepared of milk, hath both the nature of medicine, and also causeth good nourishment, as is, Rice with milke, *Amylum* and egs mixed with milke. Also soupings or pottage made of *Alica*, and *Milium*, *Sumach* being added to it, is good. Also you must prepare meats of dry bread, powring to it *Posca*, or iuice of Dates, or Quinces, or of Peares, or of *Sumach*. Also minister Chits wel rosted with Plantaine, or sodden with Quinces brayed: the vsing of oiles is not necessary nor needfull, but you shall minister, to taste vpon, Endiue both wild and tame sodden, and Plantaine, and Coleworts twise sodden. Giue him also the yolks of egs rosted. Flesh is not good to be giuen to them that haue the fluxe *Dysenteria*, because they be of a stronger nourishment, and do striue against digestion: but yet you must giue it to them that be troubled with this disease long. Among all kind of flesh, you must specially chuse birds, as is, Partrich, & wood Culuers, & birds of mountains. Among foure footed beasts, Goats flesh and Hares flesh are good: but you must forbid him the flesh of cattell that draw, and of all other foure footed beasts. From the beginning let him vse for his drinke raine water which is not fallen from houses couered with leade: for such water being drunke, euen of them that be whole, engendreth the *Dysenteria*: and if good raine water be not present, you must vse running water, wherein burning steele hath bene quenched. But if the stomach be diseased, or if his strength be cast downe, giue him wine, also, let it be restringent, and not very old. Sleepe is the best remedy for them that haue the *Dysenteria*. For this cure you must vse such remedies as do restraine, stop,

Signes of exulceration of the great bowels.

Diet.

Lenticulæ.

Potus.

Curatio.

ſtop, drie vp, and prouoke vrine, & that do carry the fluxe ſome other way. Reſtrictiue things be theſe; Sorell ſeed, *Sumach*, Gauls, Pomegranate rinds dried, Brier root, *Laudanum*, *Acatia*, *Hypociſchis*, *Balauſtium*, Willow leaues, Comfery rootes, leaues and ſeed; *Rheum Ponticum* if it may be gotten, roote of *Althæa*, Horſetaile, Corall, Maſticke, Hares creame, Dragons bloud, the barke of Frankinſence, *Terra lemnia*, roote of *Verbaſcus*, Plantaine ſeed, white Daiſies, a kind of Mallows called *Alcea*, *Oxis*, *Sanicula*, *Ophyris*, *Ophioglosſum*, Knotgraſſe, Shepheards purſe, Walwort, *Pedelion*, *Numularia*, Dragons the male, ſharpe Mulberies, kernels of Grapes, the barke of Maces, & ſuch like. Theſe things do ſtop and make temperate the biting, gnawing, and ſharpneſſe of humors, as is *Amylum*, Gum tragacanth, tallow of Goates, Kids, Swine, Geeſe and Hens. Theſe do drie vp, Hares creame, Harts horne burnt, the ſhels of Crabs of running water, and Sage. Things to prouoke vrine, you ſhall find in his owne place. Therefore if the exulceration be in the great bowels, you muſt miniſter cliſters firſt, ſuch as haue power to ſcoure and cleanſe, as is this: ℞. of the dection of whole Barley, ℔.j. *Mel roſarum* ſtrained, ℥j Sugar roſet, ℥ ß yolks of egs in number two, oile of Roſes, ℥.iij commixe all together, and make a cliſter. Abſterſion and cleanſing being firſt done, caſt in thoſe things that do glutinate and ioyne together, as is this: ℞. red Roſes, Plantaine, leaues of Comfery, Knotgraſſe, Primroſes, ana. M.ß. *Balauſtiæ*, ℥ j Rice burned, ℥ j. roote of Comfery ℥ ß. ſeethe all together in water wherein ſteele hath bene quenched, vntill the third part be conſumed, then ſtraine it, and take of the iuice of that decoction, ℥ xij. iuice of Plantaine, ℥.ij. *Acatia*, *Hypociſchidis*, ana. ℈.ij. Bole armoniacke, *Sanguis draconis*, ana. ℈.j. Goates tallow, ℥ j. oiles of Roſes, Mirtles, Quinces, ana. ℥.j commixe all together, and make a cliſter. Sometimes it doth not onely require things to ſtop the vehemencie of the paine, but alſo medicines that be ſtupefactiue. Therefore then it is good to vſe this cliſter ℞ of Goats milke, or of Cowes milke, ℔.j. freſh Butter, ℥.j Goates greaſe, ℥ ß. Gum tragacanth, ℥.j. yolks of egs in number iij. pils of Hounds tong, ℥.j oile of Roſes, ℥.iij. commixe all together, and make a cliſter. If there be need of more vehement ſtupefaction, you muſt augmẽt the weight of the pils, or elſe you muſt adde to the aforeſaid weight of pils three or foure graines of *Opium*, or more or leſſe, according to the vehemencie of the paine and the ſtate of the body. If the exulceration be in the ſmall and thin bowels, then it rather requireth medicines that are giuen in at the mouth. Therefore the decoction of reſtrictiue things which is afore taught, is good, if you commixe with it ſirupe of Roſes, and Mirtles, and ſo miniſter it: and alſo other medicines which are taught in the Chapter of *Diarrhæa*, are good. Alſo you may conueniently miniſter this potion. ℞. of the decoction of the roote of Comfery, or of ſome other reſtrictiue thing, ℥ iij. ſirupe of Roſes, ℥.j ſirupe of Mirtles, ℥.ß powder of the Trochiſks of *Spodium*, Plantaine ſeed, Bole armoniacke, ana. ℈.ij. commixe all together, and make a potion. Beſides thoſe things that are rehearſed in the chapters of *Diarrhæa* and *Lienteria*, you muſt apply outwardly vpon the belly this Cerate. ℞. of the oiles of Maſticke, Roſes, Mirtles and Quinces ana. ℥.j. meale of Barley and Fenugreeke, ana. ℥.j. of red Roſes, Plantaine, ana. ℥.j. *Balauſtiæ*, *Sanguis draconis*, ana. ℥.ß. Bole armoniack, ℥.j. *Hypociſchidis*, *Acatia*, Maſtick,

Obtundentia.

Reſiccantia.

Cure if it be in the great bowels.

Cliſter adſtringens.

Cliſter glutinans.

Cliſter doloꝛem leniens.

Potio.

Optimum Ceratum.

ana. ℥.ij. with Waxe and Rosin, as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. By the examples aforesaid you may make many other remedies, which we ouerpasse here.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Tenasmus.

TENASMVS, is a continuall desire to go to the stoole or siege, which the patient cannot defeate nor eschue, and yet he auoydeth nothing, except it be a little bloud, or filthy matter like sneuill. It is caused oftentimes through outward cold, or through humors sharpe and cholericke, or of salt fleame, or impostumation, or of inflammation ingendred in the straight gut. Also many times the stopping of hard dung in the blind gut may cause *Tenasmus*. The Phisition may easily know if it be caused of outward cold, by the tale of the sicke, because either he hath sitten vpon cold things, or he hath taken much cold in winter, or he hath tarried long in cold water: you may know the humours by that which he auoydeth, which either be cholericke or flegmaticke. In a botch or bile, his egestion is matter & corruption, and he feeleth pricking in the fundament. Inflammation causeth swelling of the right bowel, & grieuous paine together with a feuer: abundance of dung causeth feeling of grieuous distention, and stretching out about the bottome of the belly. The cure is diuers, according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore if the *Tenasmus* be caused of cold, you must minister pure and vnmixed wine hote, and you must sprinkle, foment and nourish the share and the parts about the priuie members, with hote oiles and foments, as are, oiles of Rew and Lillies: also branne sodden in wine and put in a bag, may well be applyed to the fundament. Also it is good to throw in clisters made of the decoction of wild Mints, Origan, Calamint, Cammomill, Sothernwood, seed of Annise, Fennell, and such like, putting to it oiles of Dill, Cammomill, and Lillies. Also it is maruellous good if you take a very old Tile which is blacke with smoake, and bray it with the geare that is contained in it, then commixe it together with seething vineger, and bind it vp in a cloth, & apply it to the fundament by & by after he hath auoided any thing. But if the *Tenasmus* be caused through cholericke humours withholden, and remaining in the bowels and fundament, you must cast in clisters which haue vertue and power to scoure, wash and cleanse, as is this: ℞. of the licour of the decoction of Barley. ℔.j. Sugar rosat, ℥.j. ß. *Mel Rosarum*, ℥.j. yolks of egges two, oile of Roses, ℥.iij. commixe them, and make a clister: he must eschue all sharpe things, and he must vse things meanly cold and moist, and all those things which do stop and temperate the sharpnesse of choler. If *Tenasmus* be caused of flegmaticke humors, it shall be healed like that which is caused of cold, onely adding to, and commixing with the clisters, such medicines as haue vertue to purge fleame, as is *Electuarium nidum*, or *Diaphœnicon*, or *Benedicta laxatiua*. And if *Tenasmus* be ingendred of inflammation, cast in broth of Ptisan, wherein hath bene sodden a few red Roses: or if vehement inflammation do trouble him, minister this clister: ℞. of the licour of the decoction of Plantaine, ℥.v. oile of Roses, ℥.ij. the white of one egge, commixe them together and make a clister. Outwardly you must sprinkle and annoint the place betweene

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio. Tenasmus of cold.

Tenasmus of cholericke humours. Clister abstergens.

Tenasmus of flegmaticke humors.

Tenasmus of inflammation. Clyster.

tweene the priuy members and the fundament with oile of Rew, and Mirtels: or apply this foment: ℞. red Roſes, Plantaine, ana. M.j. *Balauſtiæ*, ℥.iij. *Pſidiorum*, ℥.j Mirtell berries, ℥ ij. leaues of Brier, ℥ j. ſeeth all together in ſufficient water, vntill the third part be conſumed, then wet a ſponge in the licour of that decoction, and apply it to the fundament. Moreouer, when there is need of ſuppuration, rotting or diſſoluing, apply foments made of the decoction of the roote of *Althæa*, of Fenugrecke, Cammomill, Melilot, and Bran. If the *Tenaſmus* be cauſed of an vlcer or botch, firſt caſt in the things which haue an abſterſiue and cleanſing vertue, and then afterward things that do glutinate and ioyne together muſt be vſed, euen as you did in the fluxe *Dyſenteria*. Alſo this ointment put into the fundament, is good: ℞. oile of Roſes, ℥.j.ß. the muſcilage of gumme *Tragacantha*, ana. ℥. iij. Ceruſe, burnt Lead, ana. ℥.ß. *Aloes*, Frankinſence, ana. ℈. j. Waxe, as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment, wherein dip linnen clothes, and put them into the tuell. If the paine be wonderfull great, you may adde to the aforeſaid things, *Opium*, ℈. j. If the *Tenaſmus* be cauſed through multitude and abundance of dung, then in the beginning the dung muſt be brought out by little and little with ſoluble and gentle cliſters, as this is: ℞. Mallowes, *Althæa*, Mercurie, Beets, leaues of blacke Violets, ana. M.j. ſeeds of Fenugrecke and Lineſeed, ana. ℥ ß boile them all in ſufficient quantitie of water to the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction, ℔ j. *medullæ Caſſiæ fiſtularis*, ℥ j.ß. common oile, ℥. iij. Salt beaten, ℥. j. and make a cliſter. But of this one thing you muſt ſpecially beware, that in this caſe you do miniſter no purgation at the mouth, for that would bring great perill and deſtruction to the patient, by reaſon of drawing of moe excrements from the whole body thither.

Fomentum.

Diſcuſſiues.

Cure of Tenaſmus cauſed of an vlcer.

Vnguentum.

Tenaſmus of multitude of dung.

Cliſter lenitiue.

Note.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Cholicke.

THe Cholicke, or paine which is bred in the gut called *Colon* of the Greeks, is cauſed many waies: but it hath foure ſpeciall cauſes. For ſometime it is engendred through groſſe and flegmaticke humours fallen downe within the thinne skinne of the gut *Colon*. Alſo ſometime through windineſſe, which hath no roome to get out. Alſo it is cauſed through inflammation of the groſſe and thicke gut ſtretching out and troubling or vexing. Alſo it is wont to engender through ſharpe and gnawing humours, which do afflict and vexe the aforeſaid bowell vehemently. Thoſe that haue the Cholicke engendred of a groſſe and flegmaticke humour, they be grieued and vexed aloft all ouer the *Abdomen*, that is, the place which is vnder the mouth of the ſtomach: ſpecially they are grieued where the gut *Colon* lieth: for there they feele paine as though the gut were braied or bored through. Alſo they be fretted, & haue diſpoſition to vomite, belkings, ſundry and ſtrange vomitings, and ſpecially of fleame. Alſo the wombe is letted and ſtopped, and ſendeth forth nothing, not ſo much as wind. Alſo the dung which ſometime cometh forth, doth looke like Oxes dung, and it is light and full of wind. And there goeth before theſe things continuall vſing of meates that be very cold and of a groſſe iuyce, alſo filling with meates, ill digeſtion, and cruditie, idleneſſe, and ſuch as be adioyning to theſe.

Cauſe.

Signes of a groſſe humour.

Signes of windineſſe. Thoſe that haue the cholicke cauſed of windineſſe, they feele extenſion, ſtretching forth and bolning. They that haue the cholicke cauſed through inflammation, they feele inward burning and heate, & no ſmall feauer: alſo retention both of the vrine and ordure. Alſo they are troubled with thirſt, burning heate, diſpoſition to vomite, and vomiting ſpecially of choler without any ceaſſing of the cuill at all. And this is the moſt grieuous and worſt kind of cholicke, which doth threaten to turne into the paine of the *Iliaca paſſio*. Thoſe that haue the cholicke engendred of ſharpe and gnawing humours, they be troubled and vexed with burning thirſt & watching, yea and ſmall feauers; the vrine is made ſharpe, and cholericke humours are throwne out oftentimes, going to the ſtoole doth raiſe greater paine or torment. Alſo meates and drinkes that be hot, being receiued do prouoke it grieuouſly. The diet and cure of this diſeaſe is diuers, according to the diuerſitie of the cauſes. Therefore when groſſe and clammie humors do cauſe the cholicke, the whole diet muſt be extenuate and made thinne. Therfore let the bread which the ſicke ſhall eate, be new and well baked in an ouen or fornace. Fleſh is good, ſpecially of birds, as Hens, Partrich, wood Culuers, Turtles, Blackebirds, and Doues: he muſt eſchue all kind of fowles which do ſwim or liue in waters, all thoſe things which do abound with many ſuperfluities. Among foure footed beaſts, the fleſh of Calues and Kids are good. He muſt eſchue al kind of pulſe, which do maruellous hurt in this diſeaſe. For pot-herbs you muſt vſe Fennell, *Apium*, *Aſperage*, and ſuch like. Alſo it will not hurt to take Garlicke and Onions raw. To be ſhort, let his food be eaſie of digeſtion, and engendring good iuyce. Let him eſchue fulneſſe and cruditie: he muſt drinke wine that is ſomewhat reſtrictiue, white, thin, ſhining, of meane age, temperately allayed, and let him drinke but little. For the cure of the cholicke cauſed of groſſe humors, you muſt cure it ſo, that you do not heate vehemently with no medicines, for ſuch remedies do ſpread abroad, puffe vp, and make windy all cold and groſſe humors, which puffing vp and ſpreading in the bowels, doth cauſe more vehement paine. Therefore it is good to diuide, cut, and digeſt thoſe humors without vehement paine or heate, & by vſing of thoſe things which do not puffe vp and make windie. Therefore in his ſharpe & extreme paine make irrigations of the oiles of Rew, Cammomill, and Dill. Alſo make foments and *Sacculi* of *Althæa*, of Mil, and Bran. Alſo cliſters made with the oiles aforeſaid, and with the decoction of the aforeſaid herbs are maruellous good, or with the decoction of the root of wilde Cucumbers, putting to it Comin or Rew, with Gooſe greaſe or Hens greaſe, after this ſort: ℞. Mallows, *Althæa*, Cammomill, Mercurie, Dill, ana. M. j. Origan, Calamint, Peniroyall, ana. M. ß. ſeeds of Flaxe, Fenugreeke, Comin, Louage, ana. ℥. iij. ſeeth all together with well water of iuſt quantitie, vntill the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction being ſtrained, ℔. i. *Hiera picra*, ℥. ß. *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥. v. of *Electuarium nidum*, ℥ j. ß. of *Mel roſarum* ſtrained, ℥. ß. oiles of Cammomill, Dill, & Rew, ana. ℥ j. the yolks of egges in number two, common ſalt, ℥ j. commixe all together, and make a cliſter. Alſo the putting in of ſuppoſitaries, & annointing of the fundament, made by iuice of *Cyclaminum*, with Hony and Saltpeter, or Centorie with Hony and Saltpeter, do profit. Example of a ſuppoſitarie is this: ℞. of Hony ſodden, ℥ j. ß. powder of *Hiera picra*, ℥ j.

Diet for the cholicke cauſed of flegmaticke & tough humours.

Cure of cholicke cauſed of groſſe humors.

Clyſter.

Colocin-

Colocinthidos, ℈ j. Salt Gemme, ℈ ß. commixe them, & make long suppositaries. Also vomiting before supper, if the patient can vomit easily, doth helpe aboue all other things. Moreouer after the purging, if the paine hath bene prolonged for many dayes, let him go into a great vessell of hote oile, if it may be had. Also it is good to sit in the decoction of *Althæa*, Peniroiall, Laurell leaues, Fenugreeke, Cammomill, Mother wort, Dill, & such like. The most conuenient medicine against the cholicke, is wine wherein wormwood hath bin infused or soddeo: if they need drinking after a bath, it is also very profitable for them that they thirst not. Also the decoction of the herbe it selfe, when it hath once boiled being cõmixed with wine, may commodiously be ministred after a bath. Also *Castoreum* continually drunke doth destroy the disease vtterly: and it is better then all medicins. It is ministred to the sicke, ℥ j. in three *Cyathes* of *aquæ mulsæ*. And if the paine do not ceasse and rest, you must minister *Diatrion piperion*, or *Theriaca*. If that the paine be vehement, it is good to vse medicines that do meanly ease, make soluble, and mitigate, as well put in beneath, as also giuen to drinke. For you must eschue those things that do stupefact & astony strongly, because they do somwhat ease & mitigate, but they make the disease lõger, by making the humors more grosse, & thickning of the passages of the bowels. If the cholicke be caused of windines, you must cast in clisters that do dissolue wind, as this is, ℞. Sothernwood, Origan, Peniroial, Calamint, Cammomil, ana. M. j. Rew, Mints, wild Mints ana. M. ß. seeds of Anise, Fenel, Carawaies, Comin, Dill, Louage, & Daucus, ana ℥ ij. seeth all together vnto the third part: thẽ take of the licour of that decoction strained, ℔ j. *Hierapicra*, *Benedicta laxatiua*, ana ℥ ß. *Castoreum* ℥ j. powder of *Diacuminum*, ℥ ij. oiles of Rew and Dil, ana. ℥ j. ß. commõ Salt ℥ j. ß. commix them together, & make a clister. Also there may be added to the aforesaid things the confection of Bayberries: for there is nothing of more effect to dissolue & driue away windinesse. Also it is good to minister daily the quantitie of one hazel Nut of the said decoction or electuary of Laurell berries in the decoction of some cutting and extenuating medicine. Apply outwardly vpon the belly aloft, fomẽts & irrigations, of such things as do disperse & scatter windinesse, as these be, besides the aforenamed things, *Nigella*, *Amylum*, Parsley, bitter Almonds, blacke Pepper, wild Mints, Bay berries, Wormewood, Nettle seed, Gladon, Marioram, Cinamon and others: of these therefore you may make cataplasmes, foments, and bagges. But that which farre excelleth all the rest (as *Galen* witnesseth) is a great cupping glasse fastened lightly with abundant flame to the whole belly aloft, which doth maruellously as it were by enchantment. Let the sicke beware of and eschue wine that is alayed, and drinking of cold water, also of vsing of milke and other things that do coole, and from meates and drinkes which engender windinesse. And let him rather vse to drinke wine that is vnmingled and pure, and let him vse a diet which doth heate, and cut, or diuide. If the cholicke be caused of inflammation of the bowels, you must open the veine in the arme. But if difficultie and hardnesse of making water do rule and beare sway, you must draw bloud from the veines of the ancle. Also you must vse the aforesaid remedies, excepting sharpe things, and vehement purgers. And you must rather vse clisters mitigatiue and easing paine, also Cata-

Glans.
Vomitus.
Insessio.
Vinum absynthytes
Castoreum.
Cure of the cholicke caused of windinesse.
Clister.
Compositio ex baccis lauri.
Note.
Diet.
Cure of cholicke caused of inflammation.

plasmes and irrigations, and going downe into oile. Also fasten to them cupping glasses. Let the diet be thinne, almost the diet of feuers, vntill the inflammation be slaked. And if the cholicke be caused through sharpe and gnawing or fretting humours, it is good to put in at the fundament those things that can wash out and purge those humors without any mordacity and gnawing, as is broth of *Ptisan*, or the decoction of Fenugrecke, Lineseed, Cammomill, and *Althæa*, with fresh Goose grease, or Hennes grease, and oile of Roses. This clister is specially good: ℞ leaues of Violets, both the tame Endiues, leaues of *Althæa*, Cammomill, ana. M.j. ß. seeds of Fenugreeke, Flaxe, ana. ʒ.ß. boile these in iust quantitie of water vntill the third part be consumed: then take of the licour of that decoctiō being strained, ʒ.xiij. *Cassia fistula*, ʒ.j. *Hierapicra*, ʒ. vj. oile of Roses, ʒ ij. oile of Dill, ʒ.j. Goose grease, and Hens grease, ana ʒ. iij, yolks of egs, in number two, commixe them all, and make a clister. Moreouer you must not only purge the hurtfull & corrupt humors, but also you must temper and moderate them. Therefore ye must vse baths of sweete water, for they do mitigate, and also prouoke sleepe: for which purpose minister strupe of Violets, and Roses, and such like, which are able to temperate and stoppe the violence of the gnawing humours. And also he must vse souping meates, as *Ptisan*, and broths of fishes of stony places. He must abstaine from all hote and sharpe things, whether they be meates, or medicines, or cataplasmes, or foments, or irrigations that be hote: as also he must abstaine from drinking of wine, especially from old wine. And to be short, let his whole diet be cold and moist. If the paine be not a whit released, but do rage more vehemently, then you must come to the vsing of stupefactiue things: for in this disease they do not only pleasure and profit by astonying of the sense and feeling, but also because they make the thin humors more thicke and grosse, and do quench the intollerable heat. Among stupefactiue things *Philonium* is special good, of the which you may minister for the most part one whole dram. Also pils of hounds tongue are maruellous good, if, as is afore taught, you do make sixe pils of ʒ.i. and minister one of them to be swallowed before they go to bed. But there be very many things which do helpe the cholicke with their whole vertue and substance: among the which, white dung of a Wolfe taken with water or thin white wine, is not the worst. That dung is better which hangeth on hearbs or bushes, then that which toucheth the ground. Also the said dung of the wolfe easeth the cholicke being bound to the Ilions. Greene Mints, as *Aetius* affirmeth, sodden awhile, and drunke three dayes, healeth cholickes.

Diet.
Cure of cholicke caused of sharpe and gnawing humours.
Clyster.
Victus ratio.
Stupefacientia.
Philonium.
Pilulæ de Cynogloſſa.
Lib. 9 cap. 31.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Iliaca passio.

THe *Iliaca passio*, is a disease causing most grieuous and deadly paine in the small guts. The Latines do call this disease *Volvulus* and *Convolvulus*. The barbarous do call it *Iliaca Passio*. This disease is caused through continuall corruption & crudity of meats, but specially of fat meats, which if they be without corruption, & being withholden, they engender obstructions in the small guts. And it is engrendred of certaine stripes & blows in certaine places in which the small guts do lye: also through vehement cold, restraining and withholding of

Causæ.

the

the excrements. Moreouer, through abundant drinking of cold things, specially if much be taken when they sweate. Also it chanceth to them whose bowels be fallen into the coddes together with the dung, and being violently thrust backe from thence againe, and through that it is inflamed. Also it is caused through drinking of deadly medicines, and through hard dung being impact about the thin bowell. For the most part this disease is engendred either through inflammation, or through obstruction of the drie dung. This disease is common to children, but yet they escape it through helpe of naturall humiditie. It is not wont to chance very often to old men: but if they chance to haue it, they almost be neuer rid of it. They that haue this disease haue most vehement paine, and some swelling of the thin & small guts stretcheth out, that it seemeth wounden together like a string called *Chorda*, whereupon many do call this disease *Chordapson*: also there is ouermuch moistnesse of the stomach, loosenesse, vaine and emptie belkings, and doing no ease, rumbling and noise of the bowels, perfect stopping and letting of the dung and of windinesse. If the euill do increase and waxe greater, he auoideth all vpward, and therefore he vomiteth vp flegme and choler; he hath coldnesse of the whole bodie, and paine. Also to many there chanceth difficultie and hardnesse of breathing. Moreouer to them that shall die there chanceth cold sweat, difficultie and hardnesse of making water, yea the fundament is so bound and close, that no small instrument will enter in: and sometime dung is cast vp by vomiting. For the cure of this disease, you must cure children with irrigations, cataplasmes, clysters, suppositaries and foments, as is declared in the Chapter of the Cholicke. But the cure of them that be of age must differ according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore if *Iliaca passio* be caused of cruditie and ill digestion, and through deuouring and eating of many and diuerse meates which yet remaine in the stomach, you must prouoke vomite with things aforesaid. But if there do remaine no raw and vndigested meates in the stomach, you must go about by all meanes to draw out beneath aswell windinesse as also the dung: and that must be done by clisters, suppositaries & annointings with great diligence in each of them. Therefore you must cast in this clister, ℞. Mercury, Rew, leaues of *Althea*, Centory, ana. M. j. Hysop, Calamint, Wormwood, ana. M. j. ß. root of *Althea*, ℥. j. root of wild Cucumber, ℥. j. ß. seeds of Flaxe and Fenugreeke, ana. ℥. iij. seeds of Commin, ℥. ij. boile them in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained, ℥ xiiij. of *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥. j. fresh Butter, *Mel rosarum* strained, ana. ℥. ß. oiles of Rew, and Dill ana. ℥. j. ß. common Salt, ℥. j. commixe them together and make a clister, and cast it in before meate: but if the euill be vehement, cast it in also after meate. And you must warne the patient that he do hold it as long as he can. Also you must make suppositaries, as you do for the Cholicke, putting to them seeds of Rew, Commin, and stalkes of Coleworts. And you must make them the longer that they may pierce the deeper. Also you must annoint the fundament with iuice of *Cyclaminum*, or Hony with *Nitrum* or Saltpeter. The foments and cataplasmes wherewith this euill is cured, be almost such as are spoken of in the Chapter of the Cholicke. Also foments made of Woolll wet in oile, wherein Comin, Dill, Rew, and Cresses haue bin sod-

Signa.

Curatio.

Cure if it come of crudi-tie.

Cliſter.

Glandes.

Illutions.

Fomenta.

Cataplaſma.

den, be very good. Also emplaisters made of Linseed, Fenugreeke, Barly meale, Darnell meale, Rew, Comin, seeds of Dill, and *Apium* are good. Also it is good to descend into a vessell filled with water and oile: but seeth in the water *Althæa*, Rew and Dill. After these, fasten on cupping glasses, first lightly to places somewhat far off, and then also to the places that are grieued, making deepe scarification. Also it is good to minister purgations, specially if the dung be drawne out first by such thinge as are before rehearsed. It is maruellous good if they vomit by drinking Dill sodden. After drinking, cast bread into scalding water, and minister peeces of it to eate by and by hote. They that haue the *Iliaca passio* engendred through taking of some venimous medicine, you must giue them much warme water, and let them drinke it, and constraine them to vomite. After that you must giue them hote oile in drinke, or fat broth that they may vomite againe. After within a few dayes giue him *Theriaca* dissolued in wine, and let him eate meates of good iuyce. And if the obstruction do continue still, emptie the belly with milke, with a little Scammonie, or *Aloes*, or some other purging medicine. If the *Iliaca passio* be engendred through inflammation, you must begin with bloudletting: then you must fasten cupping glasses about the inflamed parts, scarifying them. Also cast in clisters made of the decoction of Mallowes, Fenugreeke, Linseed, with Oile and Butter. Also apply outwardly those things that are good against inflammations, and do ease paine; you must prescribe vnto them a most thinne diet. If the *Iliaca passio* be caused through falling of the bowels into the cods, you must by and by labour (the patient lying vpright) to thrust backe againe the bowels that are fallen downe to the share, and keepe it vp easily without violence or pressing of it together, and with bands and trusses applyed, conuenient for it.

Cucurbitula.

Purgatio.

Cure of Iliaca passio caused of poison.

Cure if it be of inflammation.

Cure if it be of the falling of the bowels into the coddes.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Wormes.

THere be three kinds of wormes. The first be round and long, named *Teretes*. The second be broad, called therefore *Lati*. The third are called *Ascarides*. The first kind of wormes called *Teretes*, according to their thicknesse they be round and a hand breadth in length, and sometime longer, and they be commoner then other. They be often in the slender and small guts, and they go into the stomach, and therefore they are voided often by the mouth, and to some also they come out at the nostrils. And this kinde of wormes is peculiar to infants, and children, and boyes, and girles. The second kind of wormes called *Lati*, be broad and long like a gard or band. They be of incredible length (as *Plinie* witnesseth) *lib. 2. cap. 33.* Sometime they are seene three hundred foot long, and sometime more. This kind of worme (as *Paulus* & *Aetius* witnesse) is nothing else but a permutation and changing of the thinne filmes going about the small guts within, into a certaine liuing bodie, that will moue and stirre. The third kind of wormes called *Ascarides*, be thin and short like small wormes. They be found most commonly in the right gut, and in the end of the fundament. All the aforesaid kinds be engendred and caused of crude, raw, grosse, and flegmaticke matter, and through inconuenient rottennesse, such as is gathered specially in children, and in other great eaters. They that haue

Teretes.

Lati.

Ascarides.

Cause.

round

round wormes do feele incredible gnawing of the bowels, and of the ſtomach, thinne and ſmall coughs, and oftentimes prouoking and drie. In many there followeth yelking and ſleepe with mouing of the ſtomach: and alſo they do ariſe vp vnreaſonably. Many do awake and leape vp with noyſe and crying out, and fall aſleepe againe: but ſome do both put forth their tongue, and ſhut their eies, and be quiet, and keepe ſilence, and do fret and fume with them which raiſe them, becauſe they cannot watch, they be ſo weake. Some haue their eyes ſprinkled with bloud, and a pulſe that is vnequall, obſcure, failing and running backe. Alſo to many there chanceth loſſe of appetite. Children, while they do ſleepe, chew their tongue, and alſo faſhioning of their mouth as though they ſucked or receiued meate. Alſo to ſome there chanceth gnaſhing of the teeth. But theſe things are done by litle and litle, and betweene whiles. To ſome they runne forth into the ſtomach, and do cauſe gnawing and diſpoſition to vomit, and the patients refuſe meate: & if they be compelled to eate, they ſcarce can ſwallow that which they take, or they vomit it vp againe. In many the belly doth throw out corrupt meats, and is puffed vp like as it were a timpany. The reſt of the body it doth conſume and make leane without reaſon, neither faſting going before, nor vnmeaſurable purging being made. Alſo it chanceth ſometime the face to be made verie red, ſpecially about the balles of the cheekes, but this colour turneth againe into ſwartneſſe. Some do ſpeake fooliſh things in their ſleepe, like franticke perſons. Some change the place that they lye downe in, and tumble and caſt themſelues from place to place; they increaſe feuers in them without order, with vehement coldneſſe of the extreme parts, hauing fits the third or fourth day without order. But all theſe ſignes & tokens all together which we haue now rehearſed, muſt not euery one of them be looked for in euery body: but the chiefeſt of them, & ſomtime many. Broad wormes do bring continuall gnawing of the ſtomach, and an impotent & incorrigible appetite to meate. For the worme that is in the guts, deuoureth the meate that is eaten, ſo that he hath need of more ſtraight way, & except he eate ſtraightway, the bowels are gnawne. They that are thus diſeaſed, there followes ſlendernes & weaknes of the body with inequality. The moſt ſure & infallible ſigne is, if certaine things like Cucumber ſeeds be auoided out with the egeſtiõ of excrements. *Aſcarides* do raiſe a vehement itch in the fundament, & do prouoke the patient to go to the ſtoole continually. They that be troubled with this diſeaſe, for the moſt part, be the better after egeſtion & eaſing themſelues. Let their diet be hot & dry, ſpecially if the patient lacke a feuer, & let them vſe meates of good iuice, and which will be ſoone diſperſed throughout the whole body: & ſuch as do not increaſe the cauſe that engendreth worms. Therfore all meates are to be eſchued which can ingender flegmaticke humors. Moreouer, they that are troubled with wormes, muſt be nouriſhed and fed liberally, and may not ſuffer hunger; becauſe the wormes except they haue meate ro feede on, they then by and by gnaw the hard parts of the body: but giue them meat at that time, ſpecially when they are not altogether empty. Let them drinke no ſtrong drinke. For the cure, it is not to be ſpared & ſomtime if there be a feuer with it, you muſt haue reſpect to that, & to the wormes alſo: and ſometime you need to be carefull but a little for the feuer, and you muſt be diligent notwith-

Signes of round wormes, Teretes.

Signes of broad wormes, Lati.

Signes of Aſcarides.

Curatio.

standing to get the wormes out of the body. Therefore when men haue not spied and knowne this, it cometh to passe for lacke of heed taken to auoid the worms, that they be gnawne & eaten of them, and so being pulled & gnawne, they dye. The cure as well of the round wormes as of the flat wormes consisteth in this point, that you may driue them out of the bodie being first killed. They are killed specially with bitter medicines, among which (if a feuer be not present) these simples are good. Wormewood, *Seryphium*, which is a kinde of wormewood growing in the Sea, Sothernwood, Calamint, Horehound, Dittain, Hysope, Rew, leaues of Persica, Coriander seeds, Hartshorne, Lupines, Mints, Peniroial, Origan, Centorie, Ferne, Gentian, *Aristolochia rotunda*, Garlicke, seed of Coleworts and roote of *Enula Campana*. To these if a feuer be present you must adioyne the seeds of both the Endiues, and also the iuyce of their herbes.

Simples to kill wormes.

Aloes.

Among all other, the most commendable remedy is *Aloes*. Therefore if infants will hardly take *Aloes*, because it is so bitter, you must keep them vpright with bands, and their mouth being opened and separated, you must cast it in against their wils, with a certaine pipe strengthened with a long splent. Of these aforesaid simples now rehearsed, there may be made diuers compounds, as decoctions, powders, cataplasmes, emplaisters, & ointments. Among other things, this powder is only good: ℞. of wormeseed ℥ ij of Centory, Wormewood, Hartshorne burnt, ana. ℥. j. Calamint, Peniroiall, Origan, ana. ℥. ß. Sothernwood, Mints, Lupines, leaues of *Aristolochia rotunda*, ana. ℈. j. *Aloes*, ℈. ij. commixe thē all together, & make a powder, of the which minister the weight of one drachme, or halfe a drachme, according to the age and state of the body of the sicke, in Milk or Hony, or sirupe of Liquorice: for those things which do kill the worms, must be ministred with sweet liquors, that thereby the wormes may taste of the medicine the sooner, being allured by the sweetnesse of it that is ministred with it. You must annoint the nauell outwardly with Buls gall, or with this ointment: ℞. oile of bitter Almonds, and of Wormwood, ana. ℥ j. Buls gall ℥ ß. Centory, wormwood, Lupines, ana ℈. ij. leaues of Persica, Hartshorne burnt, *Aloes*, Sothernwood, ana. ℈. j. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Or apply all ouer the stomach this Cerote: ℞. *Aloes*, wormwood, meale of Lupines, ana. ℥. ij *Nigella*, Mints, Origan, Peniroiall, Horehoūd an. ℥. j. Centory, Calamint, ana. ℥. ß oiles of wormewood, and bitter Almonds, ana. ℥. ij. *oleum Costiuum*, ℥ j. Buls gall, ℥ ß. with waxe and Rosin, as much as shall suffice, make a cerote. By examples of these you may easily make emplaisters and cataplasmes, so that I need not to rehearse here any example of each of them. Moreouer, it is good to cast in beneath abundance of *Mulsa*, that thereby the wormes being allured by the sweetnesse of the Hony, may creepe downeward. But when the worms are killed with the aforesaid medicines, you must driue them out without delay: for there proceedeth a vicious exhalation from them, which both destroyeth appetite, and hurteth digestion, and being lifted vpward, it causeth swimmings, and other euils. The wormes being killed, are driuen out for the most part by suppositaries and purgations, but specially by *Hierapicra*, and *pillulæ pestilentiales*, or *Rufi*, which haue a maruellous efficacie in killing and bringing out of wormes. But those that are troubled with wormes and with fluxe of the wombe also, you must cure by thickning of

Composita.

Pului.

Vnguentum.

Cerotum.

Pillulæ Rufi.

Cure if fluxe of the wombe be ioyned with wormes.

of the fluxe, and by changing the digestion into a better state, as well with meates as also with cataplasmes: for the more that the fluxe preuaileth, so much the more the engendring of wormes is increased: and againe, the fluxe ceasing, the worms do rest and pause. Therefore you must diligently labour to stop and restraine the wombe, and to adde stedfastnesse and strength to it. Therefore minister iuice of Plantaine, or else let him take dried Plantaine: for both haue like efficacie, as well against the fluxe, as also against wormes: Also make cataplasmes, cerotes and ointments of raw Barley meale, Pomegranate rindes, *Hypocistidos*, & such like restrictiue things: but adde vnto them those things which be good to kill wormes. Restrictiue medicines are good to be applyed outwardly for this cause, because they do corroborate and strengthen againe the stomach, being hurt through often vsing of bitter medicines. Also it is lawfull in this case to minister earth wormes being dried, and beaten to powder with *Hydromel*. The wormes called *Ascarides*, being in children that be infants, they must be brought out with suppositaries made of hony and salt. In them that be elder, they must be brought out with clisters, made either with sharpe brine, or with decoction of Wormewood, Centory, Calamint, Lupines, Penitroyall, and other aboue rehearsed, putting to oiles. After ministration of clisters, annoint the straight gut, or fundament with these simples (that is) *Acatia*, *Hypocistidos*, iuice of *Sumach*, or some other restrictiue medicine. For the flesh being constrained by restrictiue things, it loseth the abilitie that ingendreth wormes, and it excludeth & shutteth out the *Ascarides*. But this that followeth is good both for children and for those that be of greater age, and is most effectuous. Take old flesh that is powdred, cut off the fat, and fashion it long and round, like a suppositarie fit for the fundament, and thrust it into the tuell, applying a ligament or band, and let it alone within as long as they can suffer it; then loosen it, and draw it out together with the wormes that sticke on it. After that you shall powre in the things aforesaid, and also annoint it as is aforesaid.

Cure of wormes called Ascarides.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hemorhoids.

THe Hemorhoids is an vnfolding and spreading abroad of the veines in the tuell. Of these some be blind, which do swell, and do send out none, or very little bloud: some be open, which be set wide open abroad certaine times, and do send forth bloud. The Hemorhoids are caused through dreggie and melancholy bloud, when there is abundance thereof, which the liuer sendeth to those veines. The signes whereby this euill is knowne, need not to be required. For the blind Hemorhoids may be seene with eyes, and they cause vehement paine, specially in auoyding the dung. But the open Hemorhoids do bleed, therefore the patient cannot be ignorant what they be. Therefore when blind Hemorhoids appeare, and do raise great tormenting in the fundament, if the body be full of humours, cut the veine of the Hamme or of the anckle bones. Also you must make the belly soluble abundantly, lest the drie dung, while it is sent forth, do engender paine. Also you must apply where vehement paine is, those things that can and will mitigate. Among which are crummes of bread steeped in milke, and sodden with yolkes of egges, and

Cæca.
Aperta.
Causæ.
Signa.
Curatio cærum.

applyed like a plaister. Also it profiteth to sit in a bath made of the decoction of Mallowes, Violet leaues, Melilot, Fenugreek, Cammomill, leaues of *Althea*, Linseed, flowers of Rose campion, and such like. And if the patient cannot vse that, wet wooll or a sponge in the said decoction, and apply it to the griefe. And if these aforesaid things do not good, you must get bloud out of them. Therefore put into the tuell, wooll annointed with iuyce of *Cyclaminum*, or with onions, or with Oxe gall. The same effect also hath the iuyce of Centory, Doues dung, Stauesacre, Figge leaues, if they be rubbed with it: and also the pulpe of *Colocinthidis* steeped in oile of bitter Almonds. Among many other, this emplaister is very good: ℞. of Doues dung, ℥.ß. seed of Stauesacre, Lupines, ana. ℥. j. ß. bitter Almonds, ℥. j. pulpe of *Coloquintida*, ℥. ß. iuyces of *Cyclaminum*, and onions, ana. ℥. j. commixe them all together, & make it like a plaister, putting to it, if need be, oile of bitter Almonds. But to take away the paine presently, vse this following. ℞. Elderne leaues, M. j. boile them in water vntill they be very tender, then take a peece of Scarlet, as much as a mans hand, or greater, and wet it in the decoction, and lay it to the place as warme as may be suffered, and when it is cold, lay it to againe, being wet in the same decoction as before. Do thus fiue or sixe times together, then lay the herbes vpon the same Scarlet, lay the herbes very hote also: this doth mollifie the hemorhoids, and ceasseth the paines very quickly, which my selfe haue often proued. Also you may put long Suppositaries in the fundament, made of the roote of *Cyclaminum*. Also Bloudsuckers, or Horse-leaches, being included in a reed, so that they can put forth but onely their head, are wont to be put to the Hemorhoids to open them; and if you cannot pull them away easily, strew ashes or salt vpon their heads, and you shall make them to fall off alone. But if the Hemorhoids be open, and do auoid out bloud meanely at certaine times, they may not be stopped: for the bursting out of such bloud, doth cause men that haue this disease to be free from many other diseases. Which thing *Hippocrates* witnesseth, where he saith in *Epidemijs* these words: They which haue the Hemorhoides, neither be vexed with paine of the sides, nor inflammation of the lungs, nor a feeding vlcer, nor with felons, or cats haire, nor with *Terniuithis*, nor with leprie, nor with morphew. But if the Hemorhoids do throw out bloud immoderately, or longer then they should do, so that the patients do consume and waste away with this euill, and their strength is decayed and throwne downe, they must be stopped by and by: but otherwise there is perill in stopping them: but in this case, it is to doubt, lest the dropsie should follow, the liuer being cooled through immoderate vacuation and purging. Therefore let those that be so emptied and purged out of measure, vse meates that haue but little bloud, and that do ingender but little superfluities or excrements, and which also do drie and restraine, as is *Alica* and Rice. Of pot-herbes, Endiue, Succorie, Purslaine, and such like. Commixe his meate with *Sumach*, and iuyce of vnripe Grapes. If his strength be much weakened, you must nourish and feed the sicke with meate, thus: you must straine out the iuyce that is in the meate, and commixe with it iuyce of Quinces, and let him soupe that vp: he must drinke wine that is restrictiue. For the cure, if there be abundance of humours in the body, it profiteth to cut the inner veine of the right hand in the arme: but if there be not, you must

To open the Hemorhoides.

Emplastrum.

Glandes.

Curatio apertarum.

6. Epid. par. 3. Aph. 19.

Diet.

Curatio.

study.

ſtudy to auert and turne away the bloud, by faſtning of cupping glaſſes to the ſides, and to the liuer. For the which purpoſe it is good to bind the hands & the feet with bands, and to vſe hard and ſharpe frictions and rubbings. Moreouer, you muſt miniſter within the body thoſe things which do reſtraine, as are ſirupes of Roſes, of Mirtles, of Quinces, red Corall, Bolearmoniacke, Trochiskes of Amber, of *Spodium*, of *Terra lemnia*, & other which be rehearſed in the Chapter of ſpitting of bloud. Alſo apply thoſe things outwardly, which can ſtop bloud that floweth. Among which as *Aetius* witneſſeth, *lib.* 14. *cap.* 5 is Aloes laid on with *Poſca*. The ſame effect alſo hath ſcales of iron, or burnt lead. This medicine is notable good, which is deſcribed of *Galen*, *lib.* 5. *Therap. method.* Rx. of Frankinſence one part, of Aloes one part and a halfe, commixe them whith the white of an egge vntill it come to the thickneſſe of hony, & lay it vpon the ſoft haires of an Hare, and apply it to the place that bleedeth, being bound outwardly with bands of fine linnen. Alſo ointments, baths, inſeſſions, foments and other ſuch like medicines made of things hauing reſtrictiue vertue, do profit, whereof you ſhall find many examples before in the Chapters of *Diarrhæa*, *Lienteria*, *Dyſenteria* and *Tenaſmus*. And if you ſhall vſe little bags, it is beſt before you apply them to boile them in wine that is red and reſtrictiue, or at leaſt to ſprinkle them with it. Examples of other medicines ſeeke before.

Medicamentum Galeni.

Sacculi.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the falling out of the Tuell.

IT chanceth ſometime, that reſolution or weakeneſſe of the ouerthwart muſcles which do plucke the fundament vpward, doth cauſe the tuell to fall out. Wherefore ſeeing it cannot be drawne backward againe, nor pulled vpward of the aforeſaid muſcles, it hath need of hands or medicines to put it vp againe. When the tuell is fallen out, you muſt diligently conſider whether it be free from inflammation or no: for if it be not inflamed at all, it muſt by and by be thruſt and put to his former place by compulſion: and becauſe it muſt not fall out againe, after that it is thruſt in and put vp into his owne place, you muſt apply reſtrictiue medicines outward to it. Therefore firſt you muſt annoint it about with oile of Roſes being warmed, or ſcoure the tuel with reſtrictiue wine, and then being put vp againe into his place, you muſt bind him vp. And that you muſt do by and by, as ſoone as the ſicke hath bene at the ſtoole, leſt that when neceſſity conſtraineth them to go to the ſtoole againe, the tuell ſhould fall out againe. You muſt apply a Liniment of *Acatia* and *Hypociſchidos* with wine. Alſo you muſt ſeeth in water till it be red, Gals, *Balauſtiæ*, ſhels of Maſte, Pomegranate rindes, Daiſies, Sumach, ſhales of Quinces, and ſuch like, and afterward of that decoction make inſeſſions and waſhings. But after that the tuell is waſhed with wine, or with ſome reſtrictiue decoction, then it is lawfull to ſtrew vpon it, and to apply to it dry medicines. For which purpoſe you muſt apply Bolearmoniacke, Frankinſence, *Sanguis draconis*, Gals, *Acatia*, Mirrhe, *Hypociſchidos*, Hartſ-horne, & ſuch other reſtrictiue medicines, as we haue rehearſed often before. But if the tuell through inflammation be ſo ſwollen, that it cannot be thruſt vp againe, if the body be full of humours, you muſt firſt cut a veine, & prouoke vomite. And alſo you muſt apply to the tuell by and by in the beginning thoſe

Cauſa.

Curatio.

things that do restraine and stop or appease: but if there be no abundance of humors in the body, let the sicke vse infessions of the decoction of Cammomil, Mallowes, *Althæa*, Linseed, Fenugreeke, and such like; or let him descend into hot water, and tarrie in it for a time. Also it is lawfull to apply a sponge or wooll wet in the decoction. Moreouer, you must annoint the tuell with oiles of Cammomill and Dill, vntill it may be put vp: for they because of their dissoluing vertue, do readily take away the swelling, and do also cause that it may be put vp againe without any difficultie or paine. But after it is put vp againe, then you must vse the aforesaid restrictiue medicines, that it fall not out againe.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the clefts of the Fundament.

Causa. CLefts of the fundament, be chaps which are made in the muscle that shutteth the fundament, or in the circle round about the fundament: they be like the chaps which are made through a North wind on the lips. They are caused through flowing of sharpe humours, or through inflammation, or through

Signa. extension of the swelling of the tuell. This euill is apparent to the eyes, and

Curatio. therefore we need to shew no signes to declare it by. For the cure, if the clefts of the fundament be ingendred of sharpe humours, then they first of all must be purged and tempered. But if it be caused through swelling of the fundament caused of inflammation, you must likewise vse at the beginning purging medicines. Also the belly at the time of the cure must be kept soluble with meates that do moisten, and fat meates, lest dry dung should hinder and tary the conglutination. Of such qualities be Mallowes, Spinach, milke of sweet Almonds, soft Egs, fat Broth, and such other like. But to the chaps themselues you must vse this ointment: ℞. of the oiles of Roses and Mirtles, ana. ℥ j. Frankinsence, Ma-

Vnguentum. sticke, Litarge, *Sanguis draconis*, ana. ℈. j. *Aloes*, burnt Lead, Ceruse, *Balaustiæ*, Bolearmoniacke, ana. ℈. ß. white Waxe, as much as is sufficient, make an oint-

Aliud. ment. Or thus: ℞. oile of Roses, ℥ j. ß. Gals, Mirrhe, *Terra lemnia*, ana ℈. j. roote of Comfery, Roch alume, burnt Lead, ana ℈. ß. the yolke of an Egge being rosted, Waxe as much as is sufficient, & make an ointment. With these ointments you must annoint the clefts thrise on a day, but wash them first with decoction of Roses, Gals, and *Sidiorum*. And if burning and inflammation do vexe the diseased place, you must annoint it with *Vnguentum album Camphoratum*.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the weakenesse of the Liuer.

Causa. WEakenesse of the Liuer is caused of distemper, either hote, cold, moist, or dry. Hote distemper doth rost, and as it were burne vp as well the humors which were before in the Liuer, as also those humors which are carried to the Liuer by the veines *Mesenterij*. But cold distemper doth make the flegmaticke and raw humour which is alreadie contained in the Liuer, grosse and tough, and hard to be moued; and the humours that be caried to the Liuer, it leaueth them halfe digested. Drie distemper doth make the humors drier and thicker. Moist distemper doth make the humors thin and more watery. Therefore they which haue weake facultie and strength of the Liuer, are called

Hepatici,

Hepatici, as *Galen* saith. Hot distemper vexing the Liuer, there are *colliquations*, first of the humors, & after that of the Liuer it selfe: also choler that is stinking and grosse is auoyded by the belly, and is abundantly coloured: also a feuer vexeth him, he abhorreth meate, and casteth vp choler. Moreouer, thirst doth trouble them, their vrine is rough, and the pulse is swift. When there is cold distemper, they make not many excretions, nor much in quantitie; the euill endureth long, and the belly floweth certaine dayes abundantly. But the egestions be lesse stinking then those which be melted through heate, neither haue they colour also nor thickenesse, but are like putrifact bloud which is curded. And if you do diligently marke it, it is neither curded bloud, nor blacke bloud, but as it were certaine slime and dregs of grosse bloud coming nigh to melancholy. And also diuerse and many colours of the excrements do signifie cold distemper. Also in it there appeareth a faint feuer: the face doth not fall, and he hath greater appetite of meates. To either of these distempers, if there come drineſſe, the excrements will be drier and lesse, and the sicke will be more thirstie. But if moistnesse come to either of them, the egestions will be more liquide and more abundant, and they shall be lesse troubled with thirst. *Signa.*

For the cure, the chiefe point is to amend the griefe by contraries. Therefore you must coole a hote distemper, and heate a cold distemper. Likewise you must moisten a drie distemper, and drie a moisture. But in the cure, this must also be considered, that in all medicines for the Liuer, as well those which be taken by the mouth inward, as also those that be applyed to it outwardly, you commixe some restrictiue things with them, whereby the strength and stabilitie of the Liuer may be conserued and kept. Therefore in a hote distemper, for his diet, let him vse broth of Ptisan, and other meats that do meanly coole, as Lettuce, Endiue, Succorie, Sowthistle, and Water and Bread mixed together, or bread dipped in water. Also Chickens, Partrich, birds of mountaines, and Veale, these being sodden in Veruein or Limons. Of fruites, let the sicke eate Raisins, Limons, and sweete Almonds. He must eschue wine altogether, except some other cause let it, as weakenesse of the stomach, for then you must minister thin and waterie wine. Let them drinke for wine, iuyce of Pomegranates and *Syrupus acetosus simplex*. Also *Oxisaccarum*, with decoction of Barley or Endiue. Also they must eschue all meates and drinkes dressed with Hony, and that be bery hote, and haue vertue to cut and diuide. For the cure, minister vnto him by the mouth, conserue of Roses, *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diatrion santalon*, and other such like Antidotes. Also these lozenges profit. ℞. the powders of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, and of *Diatrion santalon*, ana ℥.j.ß. seeds of both the tame Endiues, red Roses, ana. ℈ ij. Raisins, ℥.j. white Sanders, Withwind, flowers of Squinant, ana ℈.j. Sugar, ℥.vj. dissolue it in the stilled waters of Withwind and Endiue that hath the broad leaues, and make lozenges. And also the Antidote *Philonium* only once ministred, sometime hath maruellously healed all hot distemper of the liuer. Apply outwardly foments made of Roses, Cammomill & Quinces: or seeth wormewood or Dates in the aforesaid oiles of Roses, Cammomill and Quinces, and then wet wooll or a sponge in them, & lay that right against the liuer. Also you may vse this ointment ℞. oiles of Roses, of Quinces, and of water Lillies, ana ℥.j. white Sanders and red, red Roses, ana. ℈.j. scraping

Curatio.

Note.

Diet in a hote distemper.

Orbiculi.

Vnguentum.

of Iuory, ℈.j ß. seeds of both the tame Endiues, ana. ℈ j. Vineger, ℥ j. ß. Purslaine seed, gra. ij. Waxe, as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also Epithemes in this disease are wont to profit not a little: which may be made thus, or after this sort. ℞. the distilled waters of sowen Endiue, with the broad leaues of Lettuce, of Sorrell, of Roses, of water Lillies, ana ℥. iij. iuyce of Sengreen, ℥ j. Vineger ℥ j. red Roses, red Sanders, shauing of Iuorie, ana ℥ j. powders of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diatrion santalon*, ana. ℥. ß seed of Purslaine, ℈. ß. commixe them all, & make an Epitheme. You must apply Epithemes, in sommer cold, and in winter warme. When there is cold distemper of the liuer, you must vse medicines that do heate, and adde strength and stabilitie to the liuer. In his diet he must vse meates of easie digestion, and heating. For pot-herbes let him take Sauory, Hysope, Fennell, Parsley, Sotherwood, Sage, and such like. And let his meates be dressed with aromaticke things, as Cinamon, Cloues, and such others. He must drinke wine that is thin, yellow and odoriferous. He must eschue eating of fish, and cold fruits, and idlenesse, and in conclusion whatsoeuer doth make cold. Within the body he must take this decoction ℞. rootes of *Apium*, of Fennell, & of Parsley. ana ℥ j. Agrimony, Hysope, Mints, Wormwood, Succory, Withwind, Origan, Calamint, *Asarum*, an. M. j. seeds of Annise, Fennell, *Daucus*, Comin, Carawayes, ana. ℥. ij. Squinant, ℥ j. ß. Masticke. ℥ j. flowers of Cāmomil, red Roses, ana. M. j. Cinamon chosen, ℥ j. ß. seeth all these in a pound and halfe of wine and one pound of running water, vnto the third part, then straine it, and put to the liquor of sirupe of Agrimony, ℥ iij. sirupe of Wormwood, ℥ j. commixe all together, and make a potion: of the which let him drinke in the morning and after dinner, ℥ iij ß. at a time. For the same purpose you may minister hote antidotes, as *Diacinamomum*, *Dianisum*, conserue of Sage, Galingale condite, roots of Pimpernell couered with Sugar, and such like. You must annoint him outwardly with hote oiles, as be, oiles of Narde, Cammomill, Wormewood, and such like. Also it is very good to vse this ointment, ℞. of the oiles of wormwood & Narde, ana. ℥ j. ß. iuyce of Agrimony, ℥. ij. Cinamon, Cloues, wood of *Aloes*, an. ℈. ij. Spicknard, Squinant, and Masticke, ana. ℈. j. Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. You may also apply this Cerote: ℞. of the meale of Fenugreeke, and of Lupines, ana. ℥. ij. roote of *Ireos*, and *Asarum*, ana. ℥. j. of Agrimonie, Wormwood, Melilot, & Squinant, ana. ℥. ß. *Gallia Moschata*, ℈. j. seed of Annise and Fennell, ana ℈ ß. Masticke. ℈. ij. Mirrhe and Frankinsence, ana. ℈ j. oiles of Masticke, Narde, Roses, and Dill, ana. ℥. i. Waxe and Rosin as much as is sufficient, and make a Cerote to apply to the liuer. Also the vsing of this Epitheme is good. ℞. seeds of Annise, Fennell, Ammeos, ana. ℥ j ß. Cinamon, Cloues, Squinant, ana. ℥. j. seethe all in a pound and halfe of Malmesey till halfe be consumed, then straine it, and commixe with the liquor of that decoction, waters of Wormwood and Agrimonie, ana. ℥ ij. powders of *Diacinamomum*, & *Diagalanges*, ana. ℥. ij. Withwind, ℈. ij. Vineger, ℥. iij. commixe all together, and make an Epitheme. In a moist distemper of the liuer, let him vse a diet that doth drie, as flesh of birds rosted, thinne wine, those things that do prouoke sweat, as drie baths, or hote houses, and also baths comming of their owne accord: generally he must eate and drinke but little. He must eschue all kinde

Epithema.

Cure of old distemper.

Decoctum.

Vnguentum.

Cerotum.

Epithema.

Cure of a moist distemper.

of

of fishes, and fruites that haue power to moisten. You must minister within the body, sirupe of Wormewood, *Dialaccha*, and *Diacurcuma*. You must apply outwardly those things which do dry without any great heate: of the which we will speake afterward in the Chapter of the Dropsie *Anasarca*. Drie distemper of the liuer must be cured like the other, by his contraries. Therefore that we may comprehend the matter in few words, it is good for him to vse a diet that doth moisten, and baths of sweete water, and other things that do moisten, whereof we will speake abundantly in their places. But this must not be forgotten, which we also admonished you of before, to commixe alway with your moistening things, those things which adde strength to the liuer. But among those things which seeme to be good, by the propertie of the whole substance, the best is wolues liuer, if it be diligently dried and beaten, and ℥ j thereof ministred with sweete wine alayed with water. For this by often proofe is knowne to be good against all distempers of the liuer. For as we said, by the properties of his whole substance, he hath his efficacie, and not by heating and cooling.

Cure of a drie distemper.

Lupinam iecur.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of obstructions of the Liuer.

OBstructions of the Liuer are caused of vapours and grosse windinesse, hard to digest. But sometime it is caused of grosse and vicious humours in the ends of the veines, springing from the flat part of the liuer, by the which veines nourishment is sent to the liuer from the stomach and the bowels. If abundance of grosse and vaporous windinesse be heaped vp together, which cannot find free passage out, and so doth engender obstruction, there ariseth then not onely griefe and heauinesse about the right side, but also feeling and perceiuing of distension and stretching out. If obstruction be ingendred through grosse and viscous humours, there followeth heauinesse with feeling of paine, sometime easie, and sometime vehement: also sometime without a feuer, and sometime with a feuer. For grosse and viscous humours, being many, do cause obstruction and stopping more then other, and specially when the patient doth vse vehement mouing after meate. And if they be sharpe and much in quantitie, which be taken in meates, the paine of the obstruction is made more vehement: when the body is stopped, they suffer both stretching out, and also pricking. You must giue vnto them which haue this disease hote meates, and that haue vertue to take away obstruction and stopping, as be Leeks with *Oximel*, Sperage, Fennell, Parsley, Capers and other like things, either sodden in pottage and meate, or taken with some heating sauce which taketh away obstructions. You must eschue all meats and nourishments engendring grosse iuice. Also refraine baths and exercises after meates. He must vse for drinke, wine that is thin and old. Besides his diet, it is requisite for to vse very quickly medicines that do attenuate and take away obstructions: for obstructions waxing old do not onely engender putrifaction in the liuer, but also in all the whole body, and kindleth a feuer. Among simple medicines, these that follow do take away obstructions notably and without griefe, that is, Wolues liuer, Fumitorie, Agrimony, Cammomill, Galingale, Dragons root, *Asarum*, Anise, *Apium*, Worm-

Cause.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Simples taking away obstructions of the liuer.

wood, *Cassia*, *Ireos*, Licorice, *Rhaponticum*, Lupines, Capers, *Auena*, with wild Parsley, *Pistacium*, bitter Almonds, Spikenard, Stæchados, Gentian, roote of Plantaine, also the seede and leaues dried, iuice of *Anagallis* the female, Succorie, *Alkakengi*, both the Endiues, Sperage, and *Bruscus*. Of these also you may make diuerse compound medicines, and specially decoctions, putting to it *Oximel simplex*, *Scilliticum*, *Syrupus acetosus*, *compositus*: sirupes of Wormwood, of Hysope, of Calamint, of Horehound, and such other like. For the same purpose it is lawfull to minister Trochiskes of Agrimonie, of Wormwood, of Rubarbe and such like. Also these Antidotes, *Dialaccha*, *Diacurcuma*, are good, and such other like. Among other simples before rehearsed, *Pistacium* is notable good to take away obstructions. Therefore it will not onely be profitable but also pleasant, if you steepe *Pistacia* tenne or twelue houres by night in Malmesey, and minister them in the morning, the digestions being ended. You must apply outwardly, epithemes, ointments, emplaisters, and cerotes, which be declared in the former Chapter of the cure of cold distemper of the liuer. And these aforesaid medicines do suffice, if the euill be not yet inueterate and growne old: for when the euill is inueterate, you must vse both bloud-letting and purgations, if nothing do forbid it. You must purge him with pilles of Rubarbe and of Agaricke, and with other Antidotes which do purge grosse and thinne humours by the belly. You must purge them specially by the belly, when the hollow part of the liuer is vexed: but you must purge by vrine, when the round embossed part of the liuer is vexed. The body being purged by bloud-letting and purgations, then you must minister those medicines which are before rehearsed. And specially this Electuarie: ℞. of the roote of Ireos, *Chamæpiteos*, of seeds of Annise and *Apium*, ana. ℥.ij. of *Asarum*, ℥.ij. ß. of Cinamon, Ginger, Carawayes, Cammomill, ana ℥.j. of *Stæchados*, Gentian, and Horehound, ana. ℥.ij. with *Oximel scilliticum* as much as is sufficient, make an Electuarie. This doth maruellously take away obstructions, not so much those that be in the hollow part of the liuer, as those that sticke in the outside of the liuer. For it purgeth out vehemently by vrine.

Antidotum liquidum.

CHAP. XXV.

Of inflammation of the liuer.

Causæ. Signa.

THere is inflammation ingendred in the liuer as well as in other members, and through the same causes that they be ingendred of. If the liuer be vexed with inflammation, there is felt paine and heauinesse all ouer the right side coming vp to the necke, and downe to the bastard ribbes. Also there is swelling of the right side, specially if the outward part of the liuer be inflamed. He hath a sharpe feuer, a small and drie cough, an insatiable thirst, abhorring of meates, hardnesse and difficultie of breathing, the colour of the tongue first red, and afterward blacke, vomits as well of pure choler as also like yolkes of egs, and afterward also rustie; the bellie is costiue. Also the colour of the bodie is changed, like as in the yellow iaundise: also he hath the hicket. In the time of their fit they are taken with a certaine rauing, and do voide foorth sharpe vrine. The inflammation that chanceth through causes in the crooked and hollow parts of the liuer, doth cause abhorring of meate, disposition to vomite,

vomits

vomits of choler, and vnquenchable thirst. The inflammation that ingendreth in the outward and round parts of the liuer, causeth the patient to haue greater paine in drawing the breath then the other, and doth raise a greater cough, and it doth stretch out paine vnto the right part of the necke, so that it seemeth to plucke it off. Also it chanceth sometime that the muscles leaning vpon the liuer be inflamed: therefore many being deceiued, do thinke it to be an inflammation of the liuer. Therefore it is necessarie to tell the differences betweene these. For if the liuer be inflamed, there followeth a round swelling, fashioned like the liuer, which will also be fashioned according to the laying of the bodie. For it appeareth greater when the bodie is turned downe on the left side, and againe lesser, when it is turned on the right side. For the liuer going vnder the bastard-ribbes, it neither appeareth to the sight, nor to the feeling. Againe, the thinne skinne, inclining to the inflammation of the liuer, it appeareth to haue a naturall fashion. If the muscles be inflamed, the skinne is stretched out round about, so that if one would pull it vp with his fingers, he cannot easily. Moreouer, there appeareth a swelling according to the placing of the muscles that lye vpon the liuer, long in fashion, and manifest to sight and feeling. For the cure, when the liuer beginneth to be inflamed, you must by and by let him bloud, if age and strength will permit it. Therfore as (*Galen* witnesseth) you must both pull backe and purge the bloud that floweth to the liuer, by cutting the inward veine of the arme: because the veine in the right arme is right against the liuer, and hath a large passage, hauing societie with the veine which is called *Vena cana*. If this veine doth not appeare, you must cut the middle veine. And if that doth not appeare neither, you must cut the vpper veine, you must draw out abundant and sufficient bloud, if his strength will suffer it. After bloud-letting within a little space, make the belly soluble with a simple and easie clyster, specially if it do not void by it selfe. The next day after the bloud-letting, fasten on a cupping glasse, with scarification, and againe likewise fasten it on within a day after; for many haue felt more ease the second time of the applying then at the first time. Also you must vse foments of Wooll wet in oile, cataplasmes, cerotes, and epithemes. In the applying of the which, this onely is to be obserued, that to the other medicines that be mollificatiue and discussiue, you alwayes commixe some restrictiue medicines. Therefore make a foment of oles of Quinces, or of Mastick, or Roses, or Mirtles, putting to it odoriferous wine: or apply a sponge wet in the decoctiõ of Wormwood, Melilot, red Roses, Cammomill, Dill, Plaintaine, tame Endiue, and other like. Also make Cataplasmes or Emplaisters of Lineseed, and Fenugreeke, Barley meale, Quinces, Melilot, flowers of Wormewood, and such like. Or this emplaister: ℞. Barley meale, ʒ. ß. meate of Quinces beaten, ʒ. iij. Wormewood, flowers of Melilot, Squinant, ana. ʒ. ij. Lineseed ʒ. j. oiles of Roses, Quinces, Camomill, Wormewood, ana ʒ ß. Vineger, ʒ j. commixe all together, and make an emplaister. Also this Cerote is good, ℞. of the meate of Dates, ʒ. iij. of Mirrhe steeped in old restrictiue wine, Storax, and Mastick, ana. ʒ. ij. flowers of Melilot, Wormewood, Cammomill, ana. ʒ i. ß. Saffron, ʒ. ß. oiles of Quinces, of Mastick, and of Roses, ana. ʒ i. with Waxe and Rosin as much as is sufficient, and make a cerote to apply to the liuer.

Curatio.
Venæ sectio.
Clyster.
Fomenta.
Cataplasmata
Emplastrum.
Cerotum.

and make a cerote to apply to the Liuer. For the same purpose you may make
Epithemata. Epithemes of the decoction of Roses, Plantaine, Wormwood, Cammomill,
Note. or of their waters distilled. And in making of all these things, you must take heede, that when there is vehement inflammation, the restrictiue things may preuaile and exceede the things that mollifie and loosen. And contrariwise, when the vehemencie of the heate is somewhat slaked, the mollifying things must exceed restrictiue things. Moreouer, you must beware that you do not apply the aforesaid things when they are cold, but first warme them a little. Moreouer, in inflammation of the Liuer, when there is great and vehement paine, you must also minister drinke medicines that do ease paine, but so, that you do eschue continuall vse of them: you must vse drinking of simples most. Therefore minister Groundswell sodden, as a thing very profitable, or iuice of Liquorice with hot water. Also iuice of Endiues doth profit no lesse then the other, putting to them a litle honie: for besides that it cooleth, and addeth strength to the Liuer, it also purgeth the mouthes of the veines of the liuer. But the belly must also be prouoked by eating of Nettles or Mercury sodden. Also in the declination of the disease, the belly must be emptied by clisters, for which purpose Polipody & *Epithimum* with *Mulsa* are put in: and that especially, if the inflammation be in the hollow part of the liuer. For the hollow part of the liuer (as we said before) must be purged by the guts, but the round and outward part of the liuer, must be purged by vrine. Moreouer in inflammation of the liuer there is need of an exquisite diet, as *Galen* witnesseth
Victus ratio. *lib.* 13. *Therap. method.* The liuer it selfe requireth meate chiefly that can withstand obstructions. Such be all those that be of thinne substance, and which do scoure without gnawing, as is *Ptisan*, *Mulsa*, and such like: Therefore the best food for them that are thus diseased, is *Ptisan* broth wherein *Apium* hath bene sodden. Also you may minister broth of Chicken, wherein Parsley hath bene sodden: but drinke *Mulsa* or Barley broth, or decoction of the tame Endiues.
Cure of inflammation turning to suppuration. And if that inflammation do beginne to change to suppuration and rotting, then all the aforesaid signes will increase, as paines, feuers, rauings, carefulnesse, and abhorring of meate. Then you must helpe the permutation and rotting, that it may quickely be done. lest other members in continuance of time do rot with it also. Therefore you shall helpe it to rot with this cataplasme: ℞.
Cataplasmata of the roote of *Althæa*, ℥ j. ß. Fenugreeke, and Lineseed, ana. ℥ ij leaues of *Althæa* and Mallowes, ana. M. ij. drie Figs, in number vj. boile these in water till they waxe soft, then bruse them, and make a cataplasme. Neither shall you do amisse, if you apply an emplaister that can helpe it to change into matter, as
Emplastrum. this is: ℞. of Barly meale, and Fenugreeke, ana ℥ iiij. of the roote of *Althæa*, ℥. ß. of the roote of white Lillies, ℥ j. ß. Lineseed ℥ j. flowers of Cammomill, and Melilot, ana. M. ß. boile all in water vnto a iust thickenesse, then commixe of oile of Cammomil, ℥ of oile of Lillies, ℥ j ß boile them againe, and make an emplaister. Of these said things you may also make a cerote, by putting to them butter, *Labdanum*, Rosin and Waxe. When the suppuration and rotting is fully come to perfection, then the paines do ceasse, and all the fits do appeare gentler and meeker. In the time of the rupture or breaking, the paine
Ruptura. doth increase more againe, therefore then also you must helpe the rupture or breaking

breaking of it, by vsing of Goates dung, and Doues dung, Nettle seed, Mustard seed, and other things that do draw to the superficies. And by heating potions, as is decoction of Poley, Fumitory, roote of *Chamædrios*, and such like. When it is broken, you must minister water of honey, or decoction of Cicers, and other like things which haue an abstersiue and scouring vertue. And if the matter doth auoide by the veines, you must commixe things that do prouoke vrine: as be, *Sisarum*, *Asarum*, *Cassia* and Cinamon. But if it auoide by the belly, commixe those things which do purge gently, as be Goates whey, *Tamarinds*, and *Cassia fistularis*. Also it is lawfull then to vse clysters made of the decoction of Barley. When cleansing and scouring of it is done, minister medicines which can glutinate and ioyne it vp.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of distemper of the Spleene.

Like as other parts of the bodie haue eight kinds of distempers, so many hath the Spleene, and most often it suffereth cold and moist distemper. Each particular cause is not to be declared here: for there be some causes that be in other distempers of other mẽbers of the bodie, therefore you shall seeke them in Galen *ex capitibus 1. 2. & 3. lib. De morborum causis*. The surest and shortest signes of distemper of the Spleene are knowne by those things that be eaten and drunken, and by those things which are applyed outwardly vpon the skinne, neare to the left side. For if cold distemper do vexe the Spleene, all meates and drinks which do coole notably, do soone and manifestly hurt the Spleene. Also all cold things applyed outwardly do hurt it: and therefore they signifie cold distemper of it: but contrariwise all hote things do ease it. And if the distemper of the Spleene be hote, it is not vexed with cold meats and drinks, or with cold things being applyed outwardly. And if the heat increase, there is not onely no swelling in it, but also it suffereth contraction, and shrinking vp, specially if a feuer be present. But meats and drinks that be hote, and those things that adde heate being applyed outwardly, do increase hote distempers, and make them outragious. Also all cooling things be ioyfull vnto them. Likewise also you may garber the signes of drie distemper, specially when it is not euident, by the proper nature of it for lacke of greatnesse. Also those things that be applyed outwardly to the bodie, and that be receiued inwardly, if they haue vertue and power of drying, they do drie vp the Spleene. When the Spleene is vexed with moist distemper, and so continuing awhile, it causeth it to increase so much, that it toucheth both the stomach and the liuer. Also the kind of paine together with these aforesaid signes do declare the distemper that vexeth. For in a hote and cold distemper, they haue small paine or none at all, neither haue they any also in a moist distemper: but least of all in a drie distemper. By these aforesaid signes, you may make coniecture of compound distempers of the Spleene. For in a manner altogether, when a hote distemper is vehement, a dry distemper followeth. But in so much as humors flowing into the Spleene do cause swelling, you must haue diligent consideration of them. For if choler do flow thither, the whole bodie appeareth hoter, although there be no feuer present. Also the eyes & the vrine

Cause.

Signes of distemper of the Spleene in bare qualities.

Cold distemper

Hot distemper

Dry distẽper.

Moist distemper.

Signes of distemper of the spleen through humours.

Choler. be coloured by choler: the ſicke will alwayes accuſe drineſſe, and complaine of thirſt, and choler troubling his mouth. He abhorreth meate, and is troubled with watching, and deſireth cold things, and with all theſe his tongue is yellowiſhed. He hath Tertian fits, and the maners of the ſicke be wrathfull, and they will chafe out of meaſure. If melancholie doth flow, his colour doth appeare as well on the tongue, as in all the reſt of the body, and he hath vnnaturall appetite to meate, the patient is ſad and heauie, and other ſignes of choler be preſent with theſe. Alſo fits do vexe him the fourth day. When a flegmaticke humour floweth into the Spleene, his colour ſhall be like fleame. The ſicke doth not thirſt, he deſireth meate, vnleſſe the humour be ſalt fleame: for then the ſicke abhorre meate, and be more deſirous of drinke, for they are thirſtie. Alſo fits do vexe them euery day; and their vrines are white, and they themſelues be ſlow and ſluggiſh. Some of them that haue cold diſtemper with it, haue a great and a hard Spleene. And if it be a ſanguine humour that floweth into the Spleene, it is poſſible for it to change the colour both of the tongue and of the skinne. As for the appetite or abhorring of meates, the ſicke is in a meane betweene both, and they be more ſicke then the reſt, although they haue not like ſwelling of the Spleene. The veines of the whole bodie do appeare full of bloud, and the vrine is yellow. Theſe ſignes we haue declared at large out of *Ætius*, becauſe they are common, and may almoſt be applyed to all diſtempers of other members, cauſed through flowing of humours. Generally diſtemper of the bare qualitie of the Spleene is almoſt without ſwelling. You muſt cure and correct them both by meates and drinkes, as alſo by ſimple medicines and foments, oiles and ointments, and ſuch other like, which be contrarie to the diſtemper. Therefore you ſhall heale hote diſtemper of the Spleene (as you did of the liuer) by meates and drinkes that do coole, and by annointings with oiles of Roſes and *Oleum melinum*, & other things which be rehearſed before in the 23. Chapter of this booke. Likewiſe cold diſtemper by thoſe things which do moderatly heate. In a moiſt diſtemper of the Spleene, beſides thoſe things which are rehearſed before in the 23. Chapter, theſe things do profit: roote of fiue leaued Graſſe, drie Plantaine, the floure and ſome of Salt, *Ammoniacum*, iuyce of Willow, and ſuch like, if you make of them an ointment or cerot by putting to ſufficient Vineger; ſuch as we will a litle after deſcribe. Alſo frictions are moſt conuenient for this, which haue a diſcuſſiue vertue. Drie diſtemper of the Spleene is cured by ſweete bathes and hote waters, alſo annointings with ſweete oile, and meates moiſting without coldneſſe, as is Piſan iuice. If diſtemper of the Spleene be cauſed through flowing of an humour, then if the humour be ſanguine, you muſt let bloud of the inner veine of the left arme, called *Lienaris vena*; or if that cannot be found, let bloud of the veine which is betweene the ring finger and the eare finger: then apply both inwardly and outwardly medicines which do adde ſtrength to the Spleene, as is the barke of the roote of Capers, of Harts tongue, *Ceterach*, Maidenhaire, *Ireos*, Calamint, and ſuch like, which alſo are able to adde ſtrength and abilitie to the liuer: of which we will ſpeake abundantly in the Chapters following. If other humours flow

Melancholie.

Fleame.

Blond.

Note.

Cure of diſtemper of the bare qualitie of the ſpleene.

Hote.

Cold.

Moiſt.

Drie.

Cure of diſtemper by flowing of a humour.

so

to the Spleene, first you must auoide the superfluous humours by purging them with medicines: then all the rest of the time you must correct the distemper that is left, and also apply things that strengthen the Spleene.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of inflammation of the Spleene.

THe Spleene, like as other members, is vexed with inflammation as oft as hote bloud doth flow thither vnnaturally. It is knowne by heauinesse and swelling of the left side, which will not giue place to the feeling: also by paine and stretching out of the place, by feuers and by burning heate. But if abundance of humours do rush in thither, it is knowne by the greatnesse and swiftnesse of the ingendring of the inflammation. Let the diet of them that be vexed with inflammation of the Spleene, be simple, and giue them those things that will easily digest for their meat, as is Ptisan iuyce, bread wet in other things which be often rehearsed of vs before in the inflammation of the members. And if the inflammation endure long, you may also giue them birds flesh, and fishes taken in grauelly places. Let the drinke of the patient be decoction of Cinamon, or waterie wine. Let the cure be begun by cutting of the veine of the Spleene, or the veine which is betweene the little finger and the ring finger, if there be no cause to forbid it. Let the belly be often washed with clysters, but specially if you may not let him bloud. Then lay vpon the Spleene restrictiue medicines, which can appease the furie of that that floweth, and keepe the strength of the liuer and Spleene; but yet you may not onely apply restrictiue things, but you must commixe with them those things which do extenuate, cut, and loosen without euident heate, lest grosse matter be stopped in it, and do waxe more vehemently hard. Therefore if there be moderate inflammation, you must apply moist woll wet in wine that is old, sharpe and thinne, and mixed with sweete oile. But if there be greater heate, take oile of Roses, or *Oleum melinum*, or oile of Cammomill, with Vineger: you may commixe them together after this sort. R. oile of Roses and Quinces, ana. ℥. ij. oile of Cammomill, ℥. j. the best Vineger, ℥. ß. commixe them all together for a foment and irrigation. And if the aforesaid oiles be not at hand, seeth Brier leaues and Quinces in oile, and adde to also some extenuating things, as is Wormewood and Peniroyall. And you must beware also that you apply nothing vpon the Spleene cold, but whatsoeuer medicine you apply to it outwardly, let it be warmed. After foments and irrigations, you must passe to cataplasmes: in the making of which you may adde the meale of Darnell and Barley, with drie Figges, Linseed, and oile wherein Wormewood and Peniroyall be sodden. But you must beware that the place be not kept bare after irrigations and cataplasmes, but as soone as those be taken away, by and by apply such cerots or emplaisters as be described in the Chapter of inflammation of the Liuer. For both the liuer and the Spleene require one kind of medicines, but the Spleene requireth so much the stronger medicines, as it is of grosser nourishment. Therefore you shall seeke examples of medicines meete for this place out of the Chapter of inflammation of the Liuer: obseruing onely this thing, that you alway commixe Vineger and sorse-

Cause. *Signa.* *Diet.* *Potus.* *Curatio.* *Venæ sectio.* *Clyster.* *Fomentæ.* *Note.*

what that is acceptable to the Spleene, and that doth peculiarly defend his strength. And if the inflammation of the Spleene tendeth toward suppuration and rotting, which doth seldome chance, you must helpe to further the suppuration, lest other members putrifie, by cataplasmes that bring it to matter, whereof we haue spoken in the inflammation of the Liuer.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of hardnesse of the Spleene.

Causa. INflammation of the Spleene, if it be not rightly cured, draweth together a hard swelling of the Spleene. The cause of this disease is a certaine humour which cleaueth stubburnly to the Spleene: but it is when hardnesse ingendreth without inflammation into ouermuch swelling. This euill is easily knowne by *Signa.* touching, of what cause soeuer it be. His diet must be extenuating: therefore *Victus ratio.* he must eate meate which is easie of digestion, and doth ingender good iuice and thinne. He must eschue all hard flesh, which doth ingender grosse iuice, & which doth striue against digestion. He must drinke wine that is thin in substance, yellowish in colour, not very old, and being without all restriction. Also he must put much trust in exercises, which it is good to vse before meate, the bodie not abounding with superfluities. Also it is manifest that vociferation, and crying out opportunely done and in time, doth greatly helpe in this euill. *Curatio.* For the cure, you must vse very strong things aswell outwardly as also inwardly. Therefore within the bodie minister most strong potions, for those they may suffer without griefe. Among the which, the chiefe be the barkes of the rootes of Capers, Harts tongue, the root and herbe of *Tamariscus* sodden in Vineger or *Oximel*. Also iuice of Centorie drunke, and decoction of bitter Lupines taken with Rew and Pepper. *Anagallis* the female, ℈. j. with *Posca* or *Oximel*, profiteth maruellously to drinke it. Also the most conuenient remedie for the hardnesse of the Spleene, is, iron quenched often in water, or wine, or *Posca*. For that water, or wine, or *Posca*, ministred in the beginning is pleasant and most profitable, and is giuen many dayes orderly. Therefore to them that haue the feuer, minister water or *Posca*: but to them that haue tender flesh, and lacke a feuer, minister wine. Let the iron that is quenched in them be some instrument that is layd with steele. Also the scales of iron may profitably be ministred to strong and rude men: for this doth melt the Spleene notably, for it hath a consuming vertue. But yet lest it should hurt the stomacke, it is good to commixe with it some strengthening medicines, as is Harts-tongue, toppes of Wormewood, *Cassia*, Annise seed, *Serpillum montanum*, or such other like. *Fomentum.* Apply outwardly this foment ℞. Centorie, Harts-tongue, Rew, ana. M. j. barke of the roote of Capers, ℥ j. seeth all in Vineger, and when they be sodden, wet a sponge in the decoction, and apply it hote to the Spleene. *Vnguentum.* Moreouer this ointment sheweth a maruellous effect ℞. of the oiles of Capers, Lillies and *Ireos*, ana ℥ j. marrow of oxes shanks, ℥ ij muscilage of the roote of *Althea*, Fenugreecke, and Linseed, ana. ℥ j. Badgers grease, Hens grease, Goose grease, ana. ℥. ij the barke of the roote of Capers, *Tamariscus*, *Costus*, Centory, ana. ℥. j. Gumme Ammoniacke, *Bdellium*, *Galbanum*, ana. ℥ ß. the gummes being first dissolued in Vineger with

Waxe

Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also emplaisters and Cerots do profit much, being made after this sort: ℞. of the oiles of Lillies, *Irees*, & of Capers, ana. ℥.j. Barley meale, Fenugreeke, Linseed, ana. ℥.j. the barke of the roote of Capers, Hartstongue, ana. ℥.j ß roote of *Althea*, ℥.j. *Bdellium*, Ammoniacke, *Galbanum*, ana. ℥ j ß. *Opoponax*, Mirrhe, Frankensence, ana. ℥.ß. with Rosin, Turpentine, and Waxe, as much as is sufficient, make a Cerote. Moreouer the Physitian must looke diligently to the disease, and as he seeth cause, sometime adde and sometime take away those things which do either mollifie or attenuate, or dissolue, of which adde strength. In conclusion, cupping glasses fastened with scarification, is not a litle profitable. *Cerotum.*

CHAP. XXIX.

Of obstruction of the Spleene.

IT chanceth sometime not onely through weakenesse of the attractiue vertue which is in the Spleene, but also through stopping of the passage by which the dreggie humor of Melancholie is deriued from the liuer vnto the Spleene, there followeth obstruction. Afterward that vnpure and naughtie bloud is distributed all ouer the whole bodie, which if it chance, then the colour of the bodie is corrupt, and enclineth to blacknesse. Also sometime they that are thus diseased, haue vncurable vlcers. The causes may easily be knowne by those causes which we spake of in the Chapter of the obstruction of the Liuer. This euil is knowne by heauinesse which is about the left side. If the whole body be corrupted with it besides, it is easie to know, specially by the colour of the face, difficultie of breathing, troublesome dreames, and other such like aforesaid. This disease is cured with an extenuating diet, and by medicines which take away obstructions, whereof you may finde great plentie rehearsed in the Chapter of obstructions of the liuer: for both these members haue need of like medicines: but the Spleene hath neede of stronger medicines, for as much as it is nourished with grosser food. Therefore against grosse humours, that they may obey readily to be purged, there behoueth preparatiues, which preparatiues shall be the same that are for obstructions of the liuer; this onely obserued, that here all things be stronger, and that they haue things commixed with them that do adde strength to the Spleene. The humours being prepared, then they must be purged by such medicines as do purge grosse and dreggie humours, whereof we haue spoken often before. After this apply such medicines both inwardly and outwardly, as are contained in the former Chapter, and in the Chapter of obstruction of the Liuer. For those places will shew you medicines abundantly. *Cauſe.* *Signa.* *Diet.* *Cure.* *Præparatio humorum.*

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Iaundeis.

THe Iaundeis is nothing else but a shedding either of yellow choler, or of melancholy all ouer the bodie. Sometimes there chanceth shedding of choler to the skin, the liuer being safe, as in the *crisis* of diseases. Many times the Iaundeis is caused and doth chance when the bloud is corrupted, without a feuer, of some outward occasion, and is made cholericke, as it chanceth by *Ictterus, auriigo, arcuatum, regium.* *Cauſe.*

biting of venimous beasts. So a certaine man, when he was stunge of a Viper, had all his bodie spotted like the colour of Leekes. Also it may chance that through inflammation, or changing of the naturall temperament of the Liuer, such corruption of humors may happen, that sometime all the bodie shall be manifestly like herbes that be whitish with paleness. Also sometime it shall be like the colour of lead: and also such colours be blacker if they happen through disease of the Spleene. Also it is caused many times through weakeness of the bladder that receiueth the choler, which doth not draw, as it was wont to do, the cholericke humor from the Liuer vnto him, and therefore leaueth the bloud vnpure. Also sometime it is caused through obstruction and debilitie of the vessels whose mouthes are denued from the gall to the Liuer, and do not therefore draw the cholericke humor. Also many times through obstruction of the passages which go to the bowels. But that we may discerne well the causes of the Iaundeis, you must of necessitie consider the figure of the excrements, and the colour: seeing in some they appeare much coloured by yellow choler, as also in some the vrine doth appeare. Therefore in them that haue choler burst out vnto the skinne, by reason of a good *crisis* in feuers, their excrements and vrine shall seeme to be of naturall colour. But if with the feuer cholericke deiections do inuade, and there be heauinesse in their right side, it signifieth burning inflammation in the Luier: by whose violence the bloud is changed into choler, and carried all ouer the bodie. But if there be burning without heauinesse and griefe, the euill is engendred onely through bote distemper of the Liuer. But if without a feuer, together with feeling of some heauinesse about the right side, white excrements be auoided, in them you may iudge that there is obstruction of the passages of the bladder that receiue the choler. If such egestions come forth without that heauinesse, you may iudge their strength to be weake, either the atractiue vertue which fetcheth out the cholericke humour from the Liuer, or weakneſse of the expulsiue vertue, which driueth out to the bowels. Also by and by after, most cholericke humoures be sent out with the vrine abundantly. Those that haue melancholie sent to the skinne together with the bloud, they be vexed also grieuously: for there followeth it sadneſse without reason, and gnawing of those things which be about the belly, difficultie of breathing, abhorring of meate, and they auoid blacke vrine, but their dung is like the colour of Coperons or shoomakers bleach, & their wombe is much costiue. But those that haue the Iaundeis caused of yellow choler, haue no gnawning about the belly, nor also they do not so much abhore meates: they auoid white egestions, their vrines be couloured like Saffron, and they remaine troubled: but commonly to all that haue the Iaundeis, there changeth sluggishnes to moue, & a contrary mind to sweet meats. Also itch of the whole body followeth. The whites of the eyes and the parts of the face nigh the temples, and the balles of the cheekes, do betoken it by their pale colour. Also the veines vnder the tongue are found full, and signifie an abundant humour. The Iaundeis that is caused by reason of a good *crisis* when the feuer is perfectly ended, they are soone cured, if they vse bathes of sweete water, and frictions or chafings with discussiue oyles, and all things

Signa.

Black humors.

Cure of Iaundeis coming through crisis of a feuer.

things that rarifie the skinne, as be, oiles of Cammomill, of Dill, of *Ireos*, or such like. Also Rosemary sodden in oile doth discusse and dissolue much. Let their whole diet be moist, and extenuating grosse humours. They that haue the Iaundeis caused through biting of a venimous beast, are to be cured almoit as those be which be bitten with a mad dog, of the which we will speake in another place. To those that haue the Iaundeis through hote distemper of the Liuer, or through inflammation of it, you must minister the cures which are rehearsed before in the diseases of the Liuer: therefore that which we haue rehearsed there, must be referred hither. But if the Iaundeis be caused through obstruction of the bladder that receiueth the choler, then two speciall remedies must be vsed; bloud-letting & purging. In them therefore that bloud doth much abound, together with choler all ouer the body, & that be troubled with heauines or stretching out about the Liuer or the Spleen, nothing can be done more profitably, then to let him bloud, so there be no cause that letteth it. You must cut the innermost veine of the right arme, and that if the Liuer be ill affected: but if the Spleene be diseased, cut the veine in the left arme: you must draw out the bloud now and then, lest if you should draw it out on heapes, the strength of the sicke should faile him. And if we be prohibited from bloud-letting, we may conueniently minister a clyster For a clyster may well be cast in after bloud-letting; for the anoyding out of the dung maketh easie breath: and by prouoking and gnawing of the bowels it draweth and pulleth backe to it the humours that are sent out to the skinne. Make it after this sort. ℞. of both the Endiues, Horehound, Agrimonie, Maidenhaire, Origan, Wormewood, ana. M j seeds of Annise, Fennell, Parcely, Sperage, ana ℥ ij. ß. Iicorice, *Apium*, Fennell, the rootes of them, ana ℥. j. boile them in sufficient water vntill the third part: then straine them, and take of the liquor of that decoction, ℥ xiij. *Cassia fistula*, ℥ j. *Hieratica*, ℥. ß. *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, ℥. ij. oyles of Dill and *Ireos*, ana ℥ j. ß. Salt ℥ j. commixe them all and make a clyster. But purgations be most proper and familiar for this disease: yet so, that the humors be first attenuated, and made thin by broths, potions, and also medicines. Therefore he must vse meates of easie digestion and extenuating, birdes of mountaines, fishes of grauelly places, and pot-herbes prouoking vrine, specially Endiue, Sperage, Louage, Fennell, and such like. Flesh of wild beasts being tamed are best, specially of Goats. For his sauce Vineger is good wherein *Aristolochia* hath bene steeped. He must abstaine from fruits, but let his banket be Almonds, a few at once, and a Cicer a little tosted Also the decoction of it continually drunke profiteth not a little. Wine white and thin, and not very old, is good. For medicines let him haue those that be taught in the Chapter of obstruction of the Liuer, and also in the first booke the eleuenth Chapter. Aboue other, specially *Apium*, Parcely, Maidenhaire, Calamint, Veruaine, roote of Chickweed or Mather, *Aristolochia*, *Serpillum*, S. Iohns wort, being decoct, are good. The humours being prepared and extenuate, at length you must minister a medicine that purgeth choler. You must giue strong purgations to them that haue the Iaundeis: for through the drinesse of their stomack, the medicines seeme weaker and lesse in effect in them. The best purgation in this case, is infusion of Rubarbe descri-

Of venimous byting.
Cure of Iaundeis of hote distemper of the Liuer or inflammation.
Cure of the Iaundeis through obstruction.
Venæsectio.
Clyster.
Victus ratio.
Purgatio.

bed in the first booke the 11. Chapter. Also *Hierapicra*, *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, *de Psyllio* and *Diaphœnicon*. And if you profit him nothing with the first purgation, you must returne againe to those things which haue vertue to take away obstructions & stopping: & after three dayes you must purge him more vehemently againe. If the laundeis be engendred through disease of the Spleen, you must turne to the Chapter of Melancholiousnesse, and the Chapter of obstruction of the liuer. The bellie being purged, you must againe minister medicines which do purge the intrails. For which purpose the roote of *Cyclaminum* beaten and drunke is onely good: for this doth not only purge againe the intrails, but also it is most meete to shut out the choler by sweat in the whole skin all ouer. Therefore after it is drunke, you must helpe the exclusion of the sweat by couerings, and warmings in bed. You may giue of it, ℥. ij. or iij. with *Aqua mulsa*. Also iuyce of the barke of Radish doth notably well, if it be mixed with sweet wine vnlaied, or *Vinum mulsum*, so that ℥ ij. of the iuyce be tempered with ℥ j. of wine. Also earthwormes drie, giuen three dayes with *Vinum mulsum*, do send out the laundeis by the vrine. Also you may giue very profitably iuyce of Endiue and Succorie to them that haue feuers, by it selfe, and to them that lacke feuers, with wine. Also iuyce of *Cuscuta* profiteth maruellously. Also Cammomill is most profitable, which is called *Leucanthemus*, and also *Buphthalmum*. But all the medicines ministred in drinke, let them be ministred in a bath, if it can be, when the patient fitteth in a great hot vessell. Also you must be much diligent at this time to giue him a diet that recomforteth and refresheth strength, by the which the vertue expulsiue may be repaired: and if any member be hurt, let it be strengthened, and let the corruption of his colour be purged away. Also it is good for him to vse exercises, gestations, annointings and sweating out. For this purpose drie hote houses are good: in the which annoint the body with oile wherein *Serpillum* or Rosemary hath bene sodden. And if any of the laundeis be left about the face and the eyes, if the vrine appeare pure, and the belly auoyding after his accustomed manner, you must vse infusions into the nose: for which purpose iuyce of *Cyclaminum* is powred in, also *Nigella* with Vineger, iuyce of the roote of Beetes and *Anagallis*. Also let the sicke, sitting in a bath, draw into his nostrils very sharpe Vineger, and let him keepe it a while, pressing his nostrils together, and it will purge maruellously.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of euill state of the bodie.

κακεξια. *Cachexia* in Greeke is nothing else but an euill and naughtie state and disposition of the body. For it is in such case that it is spred abroad in waterinesse, and all the whole body is loose and waxeth soft. This disease for the most part is engendred of a long sicknesse. Also it followeth when some intraile

Cause. is hardened, specially after the hardnesse of the liuer and the spleene. Also it chanceth often in a continuall *Dysenteria*, & the disease called *Cœliacus morbus*.

Signa. Also through letting of some accustomed excretion. The whole body is made whitish and weake, so that his legges are scarce able to beare him: and in the beginning his digestions be letted, his appetite remaining still: but afterward

ward there followeth abhorring of meate, and their breathing is seldome and weake. Also their bellie sendeth out vnequall excrements. Old men and children are specially taken with this disease, which do soone perish through weakenesse of the vitall facultie, and because the iuyce doth breath out of them readily through thinnesse of the skin. But they that be full of age, do seldome fall into this disease, and do soone get it away againe. If this disease do endure long, it turneth into the Dropsie, therefore his cure may not be deferred. Let his diet be altogether thinne and drie: therefore let their meates be simple, and which will easily digest, and that can ingender the best bloud. Let them eschue all fruits also that ingender grosse and viscous humours, and that be hard to digest. Wine is good for them which is white, thin, and odoriferous. For the cure, if the disease happen by letting of accustomed excretion, you must stirre vp and prouoke the excretion. Therefore you must vse bloud-letting, if nothing do let it, which you must draw out by little and little at sundry times, vnto the third or fourth day, in them that fell into this disease through retention of the Hemorhoids or menstruis. But in them that haue it through abundance of viscous humors, bloud-letting is hurtfull. Therefore rather purge them with some conuenient purgation. The body being purged, let him vse chiefly waters that spring by themselues of Alume, & Salt-peter, & afterwards sulphurous waters. Also let them exercise diuerse deambulations, gestations, vociferations, frictions with linnen, and other moderate exercises. After let them vse annointings with oyle, wherein is put somewhat that drieth vp humours, as be, *Nitrum* and Salts. To cure the wearinesse, apply certaine bathes betweene whiles. Also a potion of Wormewood helpeth them maruellously, and *Dropaces* applyed. Also if the liuer be affected, or some other of the inward members, it is good to cure them by their owne remedies before prescribed. If the euill turne into the Dropsie, you shall find it next.

Diet.

Curatio.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Dropsie.

THere be three kinds of Dropsie. The first is called in Greeke, *Ascites*: the second *Tympanites*: and the third *Anasarca*, *Hyposarca*, *Sarcites*, and *Leuophlegmatia*. *Ascites*, is when much waterie humour is heaped vp betweene the skin or filme called *Peritoneum*, and the bowels. *Tympanites*, is when much windinesse and superfluous breath is gathered in the aforesaid places of the bellie. *Anasarca*, is when the humour is dispersed throughout the whole body, that all the flesh appeareth altogether moist and wet like a sponge or paper. The Dropsie is caused through great coldnesse of the liuer, or through other parts very notably cooled, which can bring the liuer into the same affect. The liuer is affected by the spleene being cold, and by the stomach and the bowels, also by the lungs, the reines and the midriffe. Also it chanceth through vnmeasurable auoyding of the Hemorhoids, or through womans fluxe, or through retention of menstruis, or through some other great affection of the wombe. For in all these the liuer hath no vnnaturall swelling, and yet the bodie is taken with the Dropsie, onely through refrigeration of the liuer, affected in the beginning. But afterward sometime it also waxeth hard, which

Ascites.

Tympanites.

Anasarca.

Causæ.

is euident to be seene in them which through vntimely drinking of cold water haue their Liuer cooled on heapes, so that the Dropsie followeth by and by, before the Liuer be lifted vp into a knotty swelling. Many haue fallen into the Dropsie after the gout, and through the vexing paine of the huckle bones. Most commonly those which feele not their meate, and haue euill state of the bodie, and also that be troubled with the laundeis, the Dropsie followeth it. And it followeth *Cœliacus morbus*, and *Dysenteria*. Commonly euery Dropsie

Signa. causeth difficultie of breathing, and swelling, and heauinesse, and naughtie colour. Also they abhorre meate, and desire drinke largely, specially they that haue *Ascites*. For the humour that is holden and kept in the aforesaid places, is salt and rotten: therefore also for the most part there is wont to follow a feuer. Women are lesse troubled with the Dropsie then men. Children for the most part are taken with the Dropsie *Anasarca*. Among the said three kinds of Dropsies, *Tympanites* is the most perillous: *Ascites* lesse perillous then it, and then *Anasarca*. One diet is common to all these kinds of Dropsies: that

Diet. their meate be easie of digestion and sufficiently coact and drie. For that meate that is loose and moist, is apt to be turned into waterinesse. Therefore let his

Panis. bread be very well baked, and let it haue Salt, *Ammi*, Fennell, Annise, or Comin commixed with it. Also it ought to be well leauened, for it restraineth and stoppeth the lesse. Of birds the driest are good, as Partriches, Turtles, Blackbirds, Thrushes, and such like. Of foure footed beasts, Goats and Hares. Also Chickens, their extreme parts, when they are rosted. Of fishes, Crabs of flouds. Also Egges rosted are good. Let him vse pot-herbes but seldome. Let those things that be ministred vnto them be somewhat sharpe, and that haue vertue to attenuate and heate: as is *Apium*. Parcely, *Daucus*, Rocket, Pennyroyall, Coleworts, Garlicke sodden, Onions and Leeks. He must altogether abstaine from Pulses. For sauce, let him vse Vineger with Pepper, Cinamon & such like. Let their salt be compound with Fennell, Hylope, Rosemary, and *Apium*. You

Potus. must giue them so much drinke onely as shall suffice somewhat to breake their thirst: for ouermuch drinke doth dammage them that be sicke of the Dropsie without measure. They must drinke thin wine, and that doth prouoke vrine. But they must eschue sweete wines and *Mulsum*: Vineger doth maruellously quench their thirst. Moreouer let them take the greatest portion of meate at supper. Let them eschue much fruits and second tables: yet Nuts, Almonds, Pomegranates, Peares sodden and drie Figs, are to be giuen vnto them, but let them take all those moderately, and not euery day. Let not their bed be very soft, specially those that haue *Anasarca*. Strew vnder them drie herbs, as be Pennyroyall, Calamint, Origan, and such like: for it is maruellous how much those do drie vp while they sleepe: so that it hath bene proued, that some being wrapped and hidden in a heape of wheate, haue risen againe after sleepe strong and

Exercitatio. safe. And let them vse exercises in the Sunne, if it be sommer & a faire day; but let their head be couered: but if it be cold, let them vse it in houses being warmed, and nigh a fire, or at a fire. Riding is expedient at the first, and to be caried hither and thither in a chaire. But if the strength of the patient may suffer it, it is better to walke much on his feet, and sometime to run, then to be borne. Also the patient must be wrapped in skinnes dried with the Sunne, or digged into

hote

hote sand. After exercises wipe off the sweate with sharpe linnen clothes. Also it is verie good if you vse daily thrice or foure times frictions: for this doth open the passages that are shut, and dryeth vp, extenuateth and casteth asunder humours. Therefore it doth very quickly prouoke forth much sweate, and constraineth the flesh. They must be rubbed with drie hands, or with Salt beaten in water or hote oile. After this they must be washed with Alumewater, or Sulphure water, or salt water. For many which haue bene taken with the Dropsie *Anasarca*, and haue vsed such kinds of bathes, they haue sufficed to weare out the disease, and also to make a stronger state of the bodie. And hitherto, we haue rehearsed a common diet for all kind of Dropsies. For the cure, the remedie that is common for all Dropsies, is, that by and by in the beginning you must purge the humour that doth abound. That you may do, both by bloud letting, and by purgations, and by those medicines that prouoke vrine. That which is good particularly for this or that kinde, we will teach in the Chapters following, in which we will follow the cures of them euery one particularly. *Curatio.*

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the Dropsie Anasarca.

IN the Dropsie *Anasarca*, all the whole bodie and the flesh appeareth loose and wet like a sponge, as it is said: so that all the whole bodie swelleth vp, and is like a dead bodie. In this disease you must beginne the cure with letting of bloud, specially if the euill be engendred of suppression of hemorrhoides or menstruis, and if age & strength will suffer. For by this meanes the abundance of humours that do hurt, are drawne out, and the feeble nature being vnloaden is swifter, and the cause of the disease is minished, and also health commeth againe with lesse labour. The naughtie humours being drawne out and purged by bloud letting, you must come to the remedie of purging medicines. But if there be need of extenuation and preparation of the humours before their expulsion, you shall minister decoctions & other things which be rehearsed before in the Chapters of weakenesse of the Liuer, and obstruction of the Liuer. For which purpose minister also sirupes of Wormwood, of tame Endiue with the broad leaues, of Agrimonie and *Bizantia*. Let the purging medicines be of simples, Rubarbe and Agaricke; of compounds, pils of Rubarbe, *pilulæ de Hiera simplici*, and pilles of Agaricke, and such like. Also *Hierapicra* is good in the beginning, because it taketh away obstruction, and addeth strength to the intrails. Therefore you must onely beware that you minister not purging medicines that be strong, and which adde no strength to the Liuer: but you must bring forth the hurtfull humour with easie medicines by litle and litle. For if you purge but once, & on heapes, you destroy the strength maruellously, and cōsume the Liuer. Therefore euery weeke you must make the wombe soluble, and you must alwayes passe from gentle remedies by litle and litle to the stronger. Therefore in this kind of Dropsie the antidotes *Diaphœnicon* & *Electuarium Nidum*, be good. Also the roote of Elder sodden in wine doth purge notably. Also the roote of Walwort profiteth, for they be both of one vertue. Moreouer the rest of the time of the cure, while he abstaineth from *Signa.* *Curatio.* *Purgatio.*

purging medicines, you must minister those things that adde strength to the liuer, wherof many be recited before, where we taught the cure of obstruction and weaknesse of the liuer. Also minister those things which prouoke vrine. For which purpose you may well minister *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *aromaticum Rosarum*, *Dialacea*, *diacurcuma*, trochisks of Agrimony, of Rubarbe, of Wormwood, *Theriaca*, and such like. And this medicine profiteth notably. ℞. the powders of *Diacurcuma*, and of *Dialacea*, ana. ℈.j. powders of *Diatrion santalon*, and *Diarrhodon abbatis*, ana. ʒ.ß powder of *aromaticum Rosarum*, ℈. j. Rubarbe chosen, ʒ. ß. seeds of Endiue, with the broad leaues of Melons, and of Fenell, ana. ℈.ij. of Wormewood, Cammomill, and Withwind, ana. ℈.j. of Nutmegs, Squinant, and Spikenard, ana. ℈. j.ß of very white Sugar, ℥ j. commixe them together, and make a powder. Also this profiteth maruellously. ℞. seeds of Caraway, Fennell, and Anniſe, ana. ℈. ij seeds of Comin, and S. Iohns wort, ana. ℈ j. seeds of *Ammeos*, Parcely, *Daucus*, & Louage, ana. ʒ.ß. the roots of *Ireos*, and of *Asarum*, ana. ʒ.j. Wormewood, ℈ j. of Licorice, ʒ. j. Sugar the weight of all the rest, commixe them all, and make a powder. And you must do your diligence that in *Anasarca* the medicines be more drie then moist, because the whole state of the bodie is so waterie. Moreouer you must apply those medicines outwardly which can drie vp humours, as be cataplasmes, emplaisters, ointments, and other like things that haue drying vertue in them. Therefore a cataplasme is good made of Barley & Beane meale, of Fenugreeke, of the roote of Walwort, of Laurell berries, of Wormewood, and of Origan sodden in Wine, and laid ouer all the whole bodie. Also Oxes doung conueniently dried, may well be applyed with *Posca* or *Oximel*, hauing the fourth part of Brimstone put to it. Also fresh Cheese hauing much Creame being laid to, maketh wel against all swelling parts. Moreouer Doues doung, and Goates doung, Mayweed, and Cammomill, by euen portions bruised, sodden in Vineger and Honey, may be applied. Moreouer you must vse emplaisters of Leauen, drie Figges, *Nitrum*, *Ireos*, Melilot, Sage, Pennioiall, *Cardamomum*, *Sulphur viuum*, Laurell berries, Staue sacre, salt Armoniacke, Masticke, Frankensence, Sothernwood, *Aristolochia rotunda*, Doues doung, make it vp with *Oximel*. But you must altogether eschue fat and rozenny Cerots, for they engender windinesse, and cause swellings. But yet the legs and the hands and other parts of the bodie being swollen, may often be annointed with this ointment in the Sunne or by the fire. ℞. of *vngnentum Agrippæ*, ℥. j. of the meales of Lineseede, Fenugreeke, Beanes and Barley, ana. ℥ ij. seeds of *Althæa*, *Nigella*, *Daucus*, ana ʒ.j.ß. *Sulphur viuum*, ʒ.iij. Bole armoniacke, ʒ ij. roote of *Ireos* ʒ. ij. ß. roch Alume, Frankensence, ana. ʒ.j. ß. *Euphorbium*, ʒ. j. oyles of *Ireos*, white Lillies, and Cammomill. ana. ℥. j ß. with Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an oyntment, wherewith annoint the swollen parts very often, it being melted on the coles. For his diet, you must seeke it in the former Chapter of the Dropsie.

Triura.

Alia.

Cataplasmata

Vngnentum.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of the Dropsie Ascites.

IN the Dropsie *Ascites* all the whole belly is swollen vp, and if it be striken, there is heard such a sound as a bottell doth make that is not full of water

water, but the other parts of the body, specially the vpper parts, are not puffed vp nor swollen. Let his diet that hath this Dropsie, be of birds of mountaines, and other meates easie of digestion, and which do ingender good iuyce, as is said before in the thirtie two Chapter. *Diet.* The cure must be begunne by vsing of purging medicines. *Cure.* Let them be such as we rehearsed in the former Chapter. Coleworts of the Sea, called *Soldana* and *Soldanella* taken in drinke, excelleth all the rest: for this sheweth a maruellous effect in bringing forth the hydropike water, so that many by the onely vsing of it, haue bene restored to health. Giue of it in Wine or Whey, ℥ ij. or more, or lesse, according to the diuersitie of the bodie. Also pilles of *Sagapenum* are verie good: and two drachmes or three of the iuyce of the roote of *Ireos*, putting to it, ℥. j. of Sugar. Also you must minister sharpe clysters, vnlesse the bellie be loluble of it selfe: for then it is more conuenient to drie vp. Among other this clyster is specially commended. *Clyster.* ℞. flowers of Lawrell, ℥ ij. roote of Polipodie, Agaricke, ana ℥. j. ß. Dodder, or *Cuscutha*, ℥. iij. seeth them in wine or water vntill the third part be consumed: then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained, ℔. 1. of *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥. ß. of *Electuarium nidum*, ℥. ij. ß. *Mel rosarum*, ℥ j. oiles of Rew, Cammomill and *Ireos*, ana ℥. j. salt Gemme, ℥. j. ß. commixe them al, and make a clyster. For the same purpose, if you thinke good, you may seeth *Colocynthis*, *Cartamus*, Laurell berries, Annise seed, Ammi, and Caraway seeds, Rew, roote of wild Cucumber, and other like things put to them. After the aforesaid remedies you must lay vpon the whole belly some of the prescribed cataplasmes and emplaisters. Also apply ointments and remedies that prouoke vrine and sweate: and let him vse exercises, of the which we haue spoken abundantly before.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the Dropsie Tympanites.

IN this kind of Dropsie the belly is puffed vp and stretched out: and being striken, it maketh a noise like a tabour or timbrell, but the other parts of the bodie waxe leane. *Signa.* It requireth like diet that the other kinds of Dropsies haue: but in this all windie things are specially to be auoided. *Victus ratio.* Also let their exercises be much; and great thirst doth helpe and succour the patient strongly. Let the cure be begun with purging medicines, whereof you shall finde examples before. *Curatio.* Also it is good to cast in clysters which haue vertue to dissolue and discusse wind, as this is. *Clyster.* ℞. rootes of *Apium*, and Fennel, ana. ℥ j. seeds of Anise, Fennell, *Daucus*, Louage, Parsley and Comin, ana. ℥. ij Caraway seede, ℥. iij. Rew, *Asarum*, leaues of Walwort, Melilot, ana. M. j. boile them in water vnto the third part, and then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained, ℥ xij *Hierapicra*, *Benedicta laxatiua*, ana ℥ ß. *Electuarium de baccis Lauri*, ℥. iij oyles of Rew and Dill, ana. ℥. j. ß. Salt, ℥. j. ß. commixe them together and make a clyster. You must giue also vnto them things that do prouoke vrine, and you must vse as well inwardly as outwardly those things that dissolue and discusse windinesse, whereof you shall finde plentie in the Chapter of the Cholick. The belly must daily be nourished with *Panicum*, *Milium*, Salt, Branne, leaues of Rew, Cammomill flowers, hote ashes sewed in

Sacculi. Cerotum. bags. Also you may apply to it this cerote. ℞. flowres of Cammomill and Melilot, ana. ℥.j ß. Mints, Sauorie, *Asarum*, ana. ℈.j seeds of Anniſe, Fennell, Rew, Comin, *Daucus*, ana. ℥. j. *Cardamomum*, ℈. ß. Mirrhe, *Caſtoreum*, ana. ℈.j. oyle of Rew. ℥ iij. oyle of Dill, ℥.j.ß. Roſin and Waxe, as much as is ſufficient, make a cerote. Moreouer, cupping glaſſes faſtened often to the whole belly lightly and with much flame do maruellouſly profit. Afterward the belly muſt be rubbed with a ſharpe linnen cloth, ſo long vntill it be red. Inwardly he muſt vſe Antidotes, *Dianiſum*, *Diacuminum*, and *Electuarium è bacchis Lauri*, or theſe Lozenges, ℞. of the powder of *Dianiſum* and *Diacuminum*, ana. ℈. j. the powders of the Antidote of Laurell berries, ℥. j. the powder of *Diagalangæ*, ℥. ß. ſeeds of Anniſe, Carawayes, *Daucus*, and Fennell, ana ℈. ß. leaues of Rew, ſeeds of *Apium* and Louage, ana ℈.j. Suger, ℥ vj. diſſolue it in the diſtilled waters of Fennell and *Apium*, and make lozenges. The other remedies are to be ſought in the Chapter of the Cholicke.

Lozenges.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of reines that ſend forth bloudie vrine.

Cauſæ. MAny times there happeneth a diſeaſe of the reines; through the which thin wheyiſh bloud is piſſed. It is cauſed through weakeneſſe of the reines, which be not therefore able to deuide the vrine: or it is cauſed through amplitude of the reines, which ſtraine out the vrine from *Vena caua* vnto the reines. For when the paſſages are wider and ſtronger, they alſo ſend out ſome of the bloud of the reines, and other groſſe matter. Alſo ſometimes the reines do ſend out blould likewiſe as they are wont in the Hemorhoids. Moreouer ſome do void out bloud from the reines through breaking of a veine in the reines: as it chanceth to thoſe which haue lift vp a great weight, or haue leapt greatly, or haue fallen out of an high place, or haue ſuffered ſome ſuch other violent thing. Sometime it chanceth through gnawing of the veines by ſharpe humours flowing from aboue. If this diſeaſe be cauſed through weakeneſſe of the reines, the bloud is ſent out very wheyiſh: but if it be through amplitude and largeneſſe of the veines, then they feele no paine. If the excretion of bloud be by certaine circuits, then either there is fulneſſe of the whole bodie, or neglecting of accuſtomed exerciſes, or refection of ſome member that went before. And if it chance through breaking of a veine, then the bloud is piſſed forth moſt abundantly: but if it be of gnawing, then bloud is ſent forth by little and little, and paine doth vexe the reines. Therefore you ſhall cure that excretion of bloudie vrine which is cauſed through weakeneſſe of the reines, or amplitude of the veſſels that ſtraine out vrine to the reines, by quiet, and reſtrictiue meates, drinking of blacke wine, and other things which are rehearſed in the Chapter of ſpitting of bloud. You muſt abſtaine from thoſe things ſpecially which prouoke vrine, and from carnall copulation. In drinke, beſides thoſe things that are rehearſed in the Chapter aforeſaid, miniſter decoction of the roote of Comfery, and *Tragacantha* miniſtred that is ſteeped in blacke wine, is good. Alſo ℥. j. of Harts horne with wine: iuyce of Marigolds doth ſtop bruiſings out of bloud from the reines. Likewiſe leaues of Willow brayed with wine, *lapis Hematitis*, ℥. j. roote of white Thorne, and decoction

Signa.

Cure of bloudy vrine by weakneſſe of the reines.

of

of Knotgrasse. Moreouer, ℥ j. of Bolearmoniacke ministred is good. Syrupes of Roses and Mirtles, Trochisks of Amber, of *terra Lemnia*, and of *Spodium*. Moreouer sheepes Milke is onely praised, being ministred fasting, ℥.iiij. with ℥. j. of Bolearmoniacke commixed with it. Apply outwardly to the reines and the loines those things which be described against spitting of bloud, and in the Chapter of *Dysenteria*, and other eruptions of bloud: and whatsoeuer can together with his restraining and drying, adde strength also: as be leaues of Brier and Oke, Mast, Mirtle berries, Pomgranate rindes, *Balaustiæ*, and such like. After this the state of the bodie must be refreshed and restored with meats of good iuyce, with milke and flesh of birds, and with Swans flesh that is leane; that thereby the whole bodie may be brought to his former strength, and the reines being strengthened also, they may fulfill their owne proper office, and that they may deuide and straine out the wheish humour from the bloud. But if the reines do send out bloud according to the circuits, or through breaking of a veine, or through gnawing of sharpe humours flowing from aboue, then by & by you must cut a veine of the same side of the arme. To those that send out by bloud circuts, let them bloud a litle before the circuit, but let the other bloud by and by in the beginning: but it is better to part the drawing out of the bloud, that his pulling backe and auersion may be done by litle and litle. Let the places about the reines be couered with sponges wet in *Posca*, or moist wooll, with oile of Roses and Vineger. After this apply ointments, emplaisters, & cerotes described in the places before rehearsed. Also a cupping glasse may commodiously be applyed, specially if you suspect inflammation to be present in them which pisse bloud through breaking of a veine. Also potions are good rehearsed before in the Chap. of spitting of bloud. In the meane season also the sicke must be driuen from all salt and sharpe things. But when excretion of bloud ceasseth, he must vse a diet that doth not ingender much blond, specially in those that void out bloud by circuit. Also the vpper parts of the body must continually be exercised. In those which pisse bloud through breaking of a veine, if the exulceration be left in the places, you shall cure them after the bloud is stopped by those things that are spoken of in the Chapter of the exulceration of the reines.

Cure of bloudy vrine comming through circuits, or breaking of a veine, or gnawing.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of inflammation of the Reines.

THE reines are vexed with inflammation for diuerse causes. For both corrupt humours, and stripes, and rubbings together, and drinking of medicines, do ingender inflammation of the reines, and specially continuall and vehement ridings. There commeth to the sicke a beating paine behinde about the first ioynt of the backe, a litle aboue the bastard ribs: but the paine stretcheth vpward, euen vnto the liuer, specially the right side rein being vexed; but downeward vnto the bladder and priuie members, and the loines and hips, and also to the share and thighs. Also there followeth astonishment of the leg that is neare, that it can neither be stretched outright, nor he cannot go on his feet. And whether sneesing or any other concussion do chance, they are vexed with most vehement paine, their extreme parts be cold, and most the

Cause.

Signa.

calfes of the legs, and the feete. There is present difficultie in making of water, and they pisse continually and painfully. In the beginning their vrine is thinne and waterie, hauing no residence in it: but the inflammation waxing worse, it is more rubicund. Also afterward it is grosse and filthie, and there be vehement feuers present. And if the inflammation increase still, all these signes waxe more vehement. To these commeth dispositon to vomite, and gnawing of the stomacke, and vomiting of choler. Many of them are vexed and sweat vntill their hearts faile them: their belly is stopped, so that they are puffed vp with wind, and do send out belkings continually. There followeth vehement abhorring of meat, and to some there are continuall exacerbations, but to some betweene whiles. And generally, egestion of the wombe, & much excretion of vrine do go before those paines. The sicke must lye in a very soft bed: and the first day he must abstaine from meat, but you may not extend his fasting to many dayes: for the vrines being made more pure and sharpe by fasting, do vexe with most vehement biting and gnawing. Therefore in the beginning you must nourish them with thin soupings that do ease and ceasse gnawing & biting, as is broth of Ptisan, or *Alica* of Barley. Also Mallowes for his potherbs doth much profit. Let his drinke be water wherein a litle Cinamon hath bene sodden. To be short, let his diet be thin, and such as is in other inflammations. For the cure, in the beginning you must by and by let him bloud, and you must cut the veine that is in the hamme, or in the anckles, and that must be done on the leg that is right against the reine that is vexed. Also sometime (as *Galen* saith) you must let bloud of the arme (that is) when the inflammation is new, and abundance of bloud is present. After bloud letting you must come to outward medicines, as cataplasmes, foments, liniments, emplaisters, & such like, which haue vertue to coole meanly, and to ease paine, made of oyles of Roses, Quinces and Cammomill, of Barley meale, Beane meale, Fenugreeke, Lineseed, and such like, which be rehearsed in the chapters of inflammation of the Liuer and the spleene. And if the paine be not eased by those things that be applyed outwardly, apply a cupping glasse to the loines and the guts, and scarification being made, you must draw out much bloud. Then you must vse nourishment of sponges, and other things which can ease paine. You must onely beware all this time, that you giue not such medicines to drinke as prouoke vrine, for they hurt vehemently by bringing in gnawing and biting humours to the inflamed parts. This medicine I haue proued to be singularly good ℞ the iuyce of Clary, and the iuice of Nightshade, ana. ℥. ij. drunke in ℥ vj. of stale Ale morning and euening vj. dayes together. Also you must beware in the beginning of the inflammation of purging medicines. But yet you may vse soft clysters (specially if the belly be costiue) made of the decoction of Mallowes, or Lineseed, and Fenugreeke, or Ptisan broth, putting to it oyle of Violets, or Cammomill oyle. But you must beware you put not in great abundance of it, for then the bowels being filled and stretched out with it, will presse together the reines. But when the inflammation is perfectly ceassed and concoct, which you may know by the ceassing of the paine, then also you may purge him by medicines that prouoke vrine. For after inflammations concoct and digest, the vrine commeth forth much

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Localia.

Note.

much in quantitie and grosse, and in those that haue residence, it is good, and so iudged the best altogether. What medicines prouoke vrine, we haue taught in the 7. Booke of making of medicines, in the 7. Chap. specially among potherbs, Fennell, *Apium*, & Parcely well sodden, are good. And if by the aforesaid medicines the inflammation be not driuen away, and if neither the paine, nor the feuer, nor the heauinesse do rest by vsing of the aforesaid things, and also if difficultie of pissing, and often dropping downe of the vrine, do vexe the patient, these betoken matter to be gathered in that part. Therfore as swiftly as you can, you must helpe the suppuration and breaking out of the matter. For the which purpose, a Sponge continually wet in water and oile, applied in stead of a foment, profiteth. For the same purpose also we vse cataplasmes which are made of Barley meale, Bran, Figs, *Althæa*, and such like, rehearsed before in the Chapter of inflammation of the Liuer. Also it profiteth greatly to descend into a bath made of mollifying herbs, as Mallowes, *Althæa*, Lineseed, Fenugreeke. *Signa suppurationis.*

And if after perfect suppuration, the rupture & breaking be delayed and taried (which you may know if the feuers and pains waxe lesse, & sense of heauinesse remaine about the reine that is affected) minister those things in drinke which prouoke vrine, as is, decoction of Fennell, Peniroiall, Origan, and such like: for these sometime do breake the suppuration, and purge out the matter with the vrine. And if the vsing of them do profit nothing, you must wash the belly with sharpe clysters: as with root of wild Cucumber sodden & allaied, or decoction of Garlike or Radish. You must steepe those in Brine, and commixe a litle oile, whereby they may be made slippery to be powred in. These must be throwne in with a clyster pipe, & the sicke must be bidden to hold it long time: for they are wont often to breake that suppuration, together with that, that they mollifie the belly. Also if the rupture and breaking tarry, Comin with wine called *Passum*, helpeth, and Rew with *Vinum mulsum*. Moreouer, the rupture being made, litle peeces of flesh being long are sent out with the vrine. And if the vlcers be malignant, there be sent out humours stinking, swart, and slimie: but if they be benigne and gentle, the matter that is pissed forth, is white, equal, light, and without grieuous sauour, and litle in quantitie. After the eruption and breaking out of the matter, minister Milke with Hony, and other things which shall be rehearsed in the Chapter of vlcers of the reines. *Signa perfectæ suppurationis.* *Signa rupturæ factæ.*

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the stone in the Reines.

THE stone of the Reines happeneth oftener to men of perfect age then to children The cause of ingendering of such stones is continuall crudity and rawnesse of the stomach, whereby abundance of grosse and earthly humours is heaped vp together, and burning or fierie heate about the reines parcheth the humours, and knits them together, and hardeneth them into a stone. The stones be in the reines, nigh their ventricles, either little or great, and sometime smaller, sometime many, differing among themselues in greatnesse, figure, colour, and sharpnes: for they are found blacke, whitish and pale. There chanceth to the sicke grieuous paine in the reines, and he feeleth like as it were a bodkin thrust in, and yet there appeareth no swelling without. He can turne his backebone hardly. The leg that is right against the reine that is diseased, is astonied, *Cause.* *Differences of stones.* *Signa.*

there is preſent abhorring of meate & vomiting. About the beginning of obturation and ſtopping, the vrine is piſſed forth litle in quantitie and waterie. Afterward there followeth perfect ſuppreſſion of the vrine, and the wombe auoideth nothing, but it maketh many proffers to go the ſtoole. Sometime there is auoided forth bloud, through the violence of the ſtones, ſpecially if they be ſharpe ſtones. Alſo the vrine hath grauelly reſidence, ſpecially when the ſtone is remoued from the reines; which ſignes aforeſaid *Hippocrates* declareth in *lib. 6. Epid. par. 1. Aphor. 5.* Moreouer things that be light and round, are eaſily ſent out: but not ſo, if they be of any other forme or faſhion: but ſpecially if they be long and ſharpe, they are hard to be ſent out. When the ſtone, ſtopped in the reines, doth cauſe moſt vehement paines, leſt abundance of bloud through the greatneſſe of the paine ſhould come downe together to the member diſeaſed, in a bodie that is full of humours and ſtrong you muſt by and by cut the veine in the ham of that leg that is aſtonied, and is right againſt the reine that is diſeaſed. But in thoſe that labour of ill digeſtion or vicious humours, purging of the abundant humor is good for them. Neither may this caution be omitted except ſome other thing do forbid them: which alſo *Hippocrates* biddeth, while he teacheth that yong men ſhould be purged with Hellebore. Alſo if it be not lawfull to let bloud, nor to miniſter purgation, you muſt waſh the wombe by miniſtring of clyſters, which you muſt do at that time ſpecially when there is great plenty of excrements in the bowels But you muſt only beware that they be not ſtrong clyſters, and that they do not draw plenty of humors from other places to the bowels, leſt the paſſages of the vrine ſhould be ſtreightened and preſſed together: but let them be ſuch as are onely able to auoide the excrements contained in the bowels, as is this clyſter: ℞. Mallowes, *Althæa*, Mercury, Maidenhaire, Parietarie, ana. M. j. water Creſſes, M. j ß. ſeeds of Parcely, *Apium*, Fennell, and Flaxe, ana. ℥ iij. root of Gladon, ℥ j ß. Bran, ℥ j boile them in iuſt quantitie of water vnto the third part, & then take of the liquor of that decoction being ſtrained, ℥ xj. of *Caſſia fiſtula*, ℥ j. of *Hierapicra*, ℥ ß. *mel Roſarum* ſtrained, ℥ j. ß. oiles of Dill, Rew, and Cammomill, ana. ℥ j. Salt, ℥ ij. commixe them all & make a clyſter. But we may in no caſe vſe continuall clyſters, & neglect almoſt all other remedies, as many Phyſitians do now adayes, but vſe them twiſe or thriſe, & ſo, that they be not kept aboue their accuſtomed time. For if they be holden longer then they ought to be, they cauſe preſſing together, and ſtreightnes of the reins, & the conduits of the vrine. When the belly is purged and emptied of excrements, you muſt miniſter thoſe medicins which can looſen the conduits and paſſages; for which purpoſe the region of the reines and the loines muſt be annointed with this medicine: ℞. oiles of Dill, and of ſweet Almonds, ana. ℥ ij. oile of Cammomill, ℥ j ß. Hens greaſe, & Gooſe greaſe, an. ℈ ij. Butter without ſalt, ℥ j. Waxe as much as is ſufficient, make a ſoft ointment. Alſo he muſt vſe inteſſions of the decoctions of Calamint, Origan, water Creſſes, Coleworts, leaues of *Althæa*, Mallows & ſuch like, or the ſicke muſt often be let downe into a great veſſell of warme ſweet water. Alſo foments of Bran, with leaues of *Althæa* ſodden, being applied to the grieued place, be very good. Alſo cataplaſmes made of Wheate meale, of Lineſeede, and Fenugreeke, of Lupines, of the root of dog Fennell beaten very ſmall, and of Cammomill

Curatio.

Venæ ſectio.

Purgatio.

Clyſter.

Note.

Vnguentum.

Inſeſſions.

Cataplaſmata.

momill. Also it is good to lay bread sodden in wine called *Passum* about the loines and the belly. Neither shall he do rashly which applyeth cataplasmes, and other things before rehearsed, to the bladder and the share. But you must bring on heapes one plaister after another before the first coole: for cold doth draw together and bind, and so doth hold still the stone in the reines and in the conduits of the vrine. And if you list not to vse so many cataplasmes, you may couer it with some heating thing vpon it, that it coole not; for these sometimes, and that not seldome, are wont to suffice for to cast out the stone by the vrine. And if these driue not away the disease, you must minister in drinke those things which prouoke vrine. These that follow draw much vrine: Gladon, S. Iohns wort, Parcely, *Orcoselinum*, Grommell, *Ammi*, seed of *Daucus* and Fennell, *Asarum*, roote of Brionie and Mather, barke of the roote of Capers, Sperage, and such like. With these commixe those things that bring downe vrine vnto the reines: as is, roote of Peucedane, or dog Fennell, Briony, *Apium*, and *Radicula*. Also commixe with them those things that breake and teare the stone in the reines, as is, *Sium*, Maidenhaire, *Bdellium*, Tutsan seed, *Bruscus* roote, Saxifrage, Betonie, roote of *Damosonium*, broth of Cicers, roote of Cipresse, Grommell, *Iapis Iudaicus*, *Xanthium*, the seed and roote of *Althæa*, gumme of Plum-tree, earth Wormes sodden, and stones and sponges of the Sea. Euery one of these part of them sodden, and part of them very finely powdred, minister them to drinke. But it is best to minister those things which prouoke vrine and breake the stone, at that time when the vehement paines be released, which chanceth when the stone is remoued and stirred out of his place. But if the stones be established fast, and be vehemently compact in the reines, he must eschue much drinke, and also those things that prouoke vrine: for seeing they bring with them to the reines a great abundance of excrements, they cause the passages of the vrine to be stopped, and let the passing of the stones out of the reines. You must release and loosen the reines, and the conduits of the vrine, with foments, cataplasmes and insessions, as is aforesaid. Also the belly must be voided with light clysters, lest the passages of the vrine be stopped. After that paine is a little released, you may also apply profitably to them a cupping glasse, specially subtilly fastened to, if inflammation do not let it: for oftentimes cupping glasses do so remoue on heapes those stones, that they cease the paines by and by, that is, the stones being carried into the amplitude of the bladder. Wherefore in the beginning fasten the cupping glasse aboue from the reine, and then to the part about the priuie members, ouerthwartly according to the placing of the conduits of the vrine. Moreouer stones being brought from the reines to the bladder, and for their greatnesse being holden still about the necke of the bladder, they do often bring the sicke into extreme perill, as well through their pricking paine, as also because they will not suffer the vrine to come out. You must go about to let the sicke lie in such a fashion, that he may lie vpright, and haue the ioynts of his huckle bones lie verie high. Then you must stirre them many wayes, that by all the meanes that you can inuent you may make the stone to fall out of the passage of the bladder. Afterward you must bid the sicke to put out the vrine quickly: but when the stone is not cast out, you must moue him againe,

and vse it againe and againe often. And if you do profit nothing by thus doing, you must put in an instrument called *Catheter*, which is apt to draw out vrine, and with that you must draw the stone from the necke of the bladder, and bring out the vrine. Afterward you must labour to breake the stone being in the breadth of the bladder, with conuenient medicines by potions: but if the stone fall out of the bladder, it stayeth about the middle passage of the yard, and by wounding it bringeth perill of exulceration: then you must powre hot water by little and little, from the furthest parts of the yard, or you must put the yard in hote oyle, that hath dissoluing vertue in it. Also you must minister much of some decoction made of those things that prouoke vrine, and you must bid the sicke gather much vrine, and afterward to put it out, and to expell it diligently: for so the stone withdrawne is wont to fall out. But when you cannot draw him out this way neither, you must cut the yard aboue with a litle wound, about the bignesse of an Akorne: for it is not good to cut it vnder the yard; for almost alwayes it turneth into a *Fistula*, and afterward the vrine cometh out by the cleft. The stone being at the last remoued away, you must preserue the man, that the reines be no more troubled with the stone. The greatest thing to auoid ingendring of the stone, is to vse meats of good iuyce, easie of digestion, and moderate. Therefore it is good for him to beware of all meates of hard substance, and which are hard to be broken in peeces with chewing. Also let their exercises be meane, and let them vse but little all kind of Pulse, and of corne: also Cheese, Milke, and the meates that are made of them. Moreouer, blacke wine, and plentie of flesh, and generally all things of good iuyce, and that be ouer hote and sharpe. You must admonish them whom the stone hath afflicted, that they vomit often after supper, and that they drinke Wormewood continually. And at certaine times, if bloud seeme to abound, let them cut a veine: or if vicious humours be gathered on a heape, let them vse a purging medicine agreeing to their temperament. Also their water throughout all their diet, must be most pure and strained. Also let their wine be thin and white, and not very old, for that is meete to prouoke vrine. Also they must vse as well meates as medicines that prouoke vrine. Therefore they must eate daily Parseneps very well sodden, Fennell, *Sium*, Penitroyall, and such like. Among medicines this powder is of most effect: ℞. of the roots of Fennell, Sperage and *Filipendula*, ana. ℥. j. rootes of Mather, ʒ. j. rootes of *Aristolochia rotunda*, and *Althæa*, ana. ℥. j. Licorice scraped, ℥. ij. the stones of sea Sponges, and *lapis Iudaicus*, ana. ʒ. j. seeds of *Ammeos*, *Daucus*, Parcely, Saxifrage, Fennell, Anise, Grommell, ana. ℥. ß. seeds of Melons, and Citrons pilled, ana ℥. j. ß. seed of *Alkakengi*: ℥. ß. Pellitory of the wall, Mallowes, ana. ℥ j. Pulioll mountaine, Maidenhaire, Penitroyall, *Asarum*, ana. ℥ ß. of the bloud of a male Goat dried and prepared, ℥. j. *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacke*, ana. ℥. ß. of Crabs eyes, Cinamon chosen, and Squinant, ana. ʒ ij. beate all, and bring them into a most fine powder, whereof giue the weight of one drachme euery fourth day, or once a weeke in the morning with thinne wine. Moreouer the preparing of the Goats bloud aforesaid is taught of *Aetius*, *lib.* 11. *cap.* 12. Other remedies we will speake of in the Chapter of the stone in the bladder.

Preseruation from the stone.

Powder against the stone of the reines.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of vnmeasurable Pissing.

DIABETES is a continuall disease about the reines, causing much thirst: and also whatsoeuer is drunke, euen as it is taken it is pissed out againe. This disease is ingendred of weakenesse of the retentiue vertue of the reines: but there is such strength of the attractiue vertue, that it sucketh the whole bodie through immoderate heate. There followeth to the sicke a stubburne thirst, neither are they filled by ministring any kind of liquor. Therefore they are constrained to drinke continually, because that which is drunke goeth out so swiftly by the vrine againe. Also the bowels of the sicke seeme to burne, the loynes swell vp, and the stones and hanches also. And if yet more gnawing heate be increased in the bowels, the stomach is wrinckled, and the veines in it are lifted vp: all the state of the bodie is leane, and there chanceth grieuous consuming of the bodie. The effect of the cure consisteth in this, to stop the sharpnesse of the humour and the bloud, and with that to make the wheyish humour which is commixt with it, of slow mouing, and to correct the distemper of the reins. Therfore by and by, when the euill beginneth, being not yet come to his perfection, it is best to cut the veine on the arme, and to draw out bloud moderately. Also you must giue him things that prouoke vrine meanly, which may purge out the vicious humours that be setled in the reines. But if the euill be immoderate and old, you must neither vse bloud letting, nor minister any thing that prouoketh vrine: for these do further the colliquation and consuming of the body, which doth chance also by it selfe. For in them that this euill is inueterate, their strength faileth them, and through bloud-letting the whole bodie is made sharper: and things that prouoke vrine do multiplie and increase the euill in them. The greatest and chiefest remedie of this disease, is to reuomite that vp againe that is drunke. Let his drink be very cold, as also let the rest of his diet be cooling. Therefore giue him meates of good iuice, and which can difficultly be changed, and do lacke mordacitie and gnawing or which are able to stop mordacitie and sharpnesse, as be, rere egs, *Alica* made like a souping, and leane swines flesh much sodden. Also you may well giue them new Cheese well compact, and without salt, and milke wherein flint stones or red hote steele hath bene quenched, the whey taken away. Also for souping, cold Ptisan broth is good. For pot-herbs, take Endiue, Lettuce, and Purslaine. Of fruits, Peares, Apples, & Pomegranates. Also fishes of grauelly places be good. He must drinke wine that is red and thicke, well alayed with water, for to wash the salt humours which cause the thirst; for wine causeth the temperature of the bodie to sweetnesse. In drinke also you must minister vnto him iuice of Pomegranates, *Rob de Ribes*, or *Rob de Barberies*. For medicines, minister vnto him the iuyce of Knotgrasse, or of Sanguinarie, with blacke wine. Also decoction of Comfery, & of Dates, & of Mirtle beries or Peares. Likewise sirupes of Roses, and Mirtles, and such like. Also Trochisks of *Spodium* may be ministred with iuice of knotgrasse, or black wine. Outwardly you must apply to the sides, the loynes and the share, ointments, cataplasmes, & cerotes that do coole: as be those which are made of rose Vineger, *Polenta*, Lettuce, Ducks meat, Pellitory

Diabetes quid
Causæ.
Signa.
Curatio.
Diet.
Medicamenta
Localia.

of the wall, Vine leaues, Purſlaine, and ſuch like. For which purpoſe alſo ointments do profite, made of oiles of Roſes and Mirtles, or annointings with the iuice of Nightſhade, or of Vine buds. Alſo you muſt lay to the Hypochonders or ſides, in forme of a cataplaſme, Barley meale wrought vp with vineger and oile of Roſes. Alſo vſe this emplaiſter: ℞. Barley meale, ℥ ß. Vine buds, tops of Willow, *Burſa paſtoris*, ana. M. ß the rind of Pomegranats, ℥. ij. ß. Purſlaine, M. j. ſeedes of Quinces, ℥. j. red Roſes, M. j. ß. boile them all in water vnto the thicknes of hony, then adde to it oile of Roſes, ℥. ij. oile of Mirtles, ℥ j. boile them againe, and make a plaiſter. Of theſe aforeſaid things you may make a cerote, by putting to *Hypociſchidos*, *Acatia*, Bolearmoniacke, Roſin and Waxe.

Emplaſtrum.

Alſo you muſt prouoke them to ſweate, that the vicious humours may be turned to ſweating out. The beſt euaporation and ſweating is in a tunne, made with hearbs and other hote things to prouoke ſweate, after ſuch ſort that the head may be without the tunne. Or elſe apply a veſſell full of hote water to the feete lying in his bed, and prouoke ſweate. Alſo waſh the conduite with Plantaine water, and burnt Alume.

Sudorum euocatio.

CHAP. XL.

Againſt Vlcers of the Reines.

Cauſe.

VLcers or biles of the reines be cauſed through rupture and breaking of the veines in the reines. Alſo it is cauſed through rotting of imflammation, and through ſharpe and gnawing humours carried into the reines. When the reines are exulcerate, there is paine felt in the loynes, with heauineſſe, and the vrine is piſſed forth without any impediment, which chanceth not ſo in the vlcers of the bladder. Alſo there is atter commixed in the vrine, with little peeces of fleſh, or haires ſwimming in them; according to *Hippocrates* ſaying, 4. *Aphor.* 75. who ſaith, If bloud or water be piſſed out, it ſignifieth exulceration, either of the reins, or of the bladder. And by and by after he ſaith, If in a groſſe and thicke vrine there appeare little peeces of fleſh, or as it were haires, they are ſent from the reines. Therefore when theſe appeare, let the ſicke eſchue crudities, and ſacietie or fulneſſe. Therefore let him eate no raw things in his meates, neither that which is hard of digeſtion, or that will eaſily corrupt, or ingender inflammation or windineſſe. Let him chiefly abſtaine from theſe things which do ſoone waxe ſoure or ſharpe; alſo from all ſharpe and burning things, and whatſoeuer doth breed and ingender choler, as is, much thirſt, abſtinence, hunger, labour, wrath, ſolitarineſſe, exerciſe, watching, and immoderate ſawces. He muſt eſchue aboue all things immoderate riding, and all vehement mouing or ſtirring: alſo he muſt auoid all perpetuall idleneſſe, and continuall bathing. He muſt vſe new bread well wrought, & giue him fleſh of birds of the mountaines, and kids fleſh, and ſuch like tender fleſh. Alſo giue him ſcalie fiſhes of grauelly places, toſted on a gridiron. Moreouer, giue Crabs, ſoupings of Piſan, and *Amylum* ſodden with milke, be maruellous good. Giue him alſo Milke mixed with Egs, and the fat broth of a Henne. Alſo rere Egs miniſtred alone, are good. Of Pot-herbs, Mallowes, Endiue, Sorrell, Purſlaine, and Lettuce, are good: but all theſe muſt be ſodden, for the ſicke muſt eate nothing that is raw, as is aforeſaid, Of fruits, Raiſins are not hurtfull, nor pine Nuts.

Renum vlcera Signa.

Diet.

Alſo

Also Almonds well blanched are good. Much drinke and strong must be eschued. And he must altogether refraine from cold drinke: for cold, as *Hippocrates* saith, 5. *Aphor.* 20. is an enemy to vlcers. For his drinke let him vse wine that is alayed, and somewhat restrictiue: or let him drinke Goates milke, or Sheeps milke, or Almond milke. Carnall copulation is maruellous euill, not onely for vlcers, but also for all other diseases of the reines, specially in old men, and in them that be weake of nature. Such things must be eschued as prouoke vrine. Also let bathing be seldome vsed, as is aforesaid. It is not vnprofitable to vse naturall bathes, and waters sprong of themselues, and specially Alume waters, and Brimstone waters, for it is commodious to wash cold places: it destroyeth vlcers that be hard to cure, as well outwardly as also inwardly. Also naturall waters drunke after the morning walke are good. The cure of vlcers of the reines, when as they are caused through sharpe and gnawing humors, must be begun with purging of vicious and gnawing humours. They that are thus affected, you must also purge them by vomite: for vomite is good not onely to auoid vicious humours, but also if any man do vomite boldly euery moneth, he shall dissolue the vlcer of the reines, and what euill soeuer may chance there: for it turneth the moving of the humors into a contrary part. Also in the meane season you must minister medicines which do stop the gnawing of the sharpe humours, as is, Mallowes, Endiue, Sorrell, Purslaine, seed of Melons, Cucumbers, and Gourds, sirupes of Violets, Roses, and water Lillies, and the Conserues of them. But when the vicious humours be purged, he must drinke *aqua Mulsa*, or the decoction of Fenugreeke with hony, or of Cucumbers, or of Mallowes, or of Melons seed with *Hydromel*. Also minister Milke with Hony newly milked, and hot: for it is good to purge the vlcers. Also Goats whey, decoction of Barley, Raisins, and Licorice, is maruellous good, and the iuyce likewise. When that the vlcers be purged and cleansed (which you may know, if there appeare in the vrine neither peeces of the couer of the vlcer, nor yet dreggie and filthie matter, but matter that is whitish, light, equall, and little in quantitie) then minister such medicines, as do drie vp and conglutinate. For which purpose giue him Bolearmoniacke, gumme Tragacanth, *Amylum*, *terra Lemnia*, and such like before rehearsed. But among other things this powder is maruellous good ℞. *terræ Lemniæ*, Bolearmoniacke, ana. ℥j ß. *Tragacanthæ*, *Spodium* burnt, an. ℥j. *Amylum*, pine Nuts roasted, ana ℥ ß. Linseed, Cucumber seed blanched, Melons seed, ana. ℥ij. seed of *Apium*, ℈ij. Dragons bloud ℥j beate them all together, and make a very fine powder, of the which giue the sicke daily, ℥ ij. with Milke newly milked. Moreouer, outwardly you must apply such things as can drie and strengthen the reines. Therefore minister emplaisters and cerotes, or ointments made of the oiles of Roses, and of Mirtles, of Barly meale, Frankinsence, Masticke, red Roses, and such like: examples whereof you may seeke before. As for other remedies, we will rehearse hereafter in the Chapter of vlcers of the Bladder.

Curatio.

Vomitus.

Medicines stopping gnawing of humours.

Purging of the vlcers.

Glutinatiues.

Puluis.

To drie and strengthen the reines.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the stone in the Bladder.

STones in the Bladder do ingender oftener in children then in older folke. When that vrine grosse and very thicke is carried into the largenesse of the

Calculus vesicæ.

bladder, it ſetleth and ſtayeth there, like dregges of wine, or muddy water, and afterward through the heate that is in children, being dried and compact together, it breedeth a ſtone. Therefore there be two ſpeciall cauſes of the ingendring of the ſtone in the bladder: that is, thickneſſe of the vrine, and heate of children. They that haue the ſtone in the bladder, itch often, and do handle their priuie members, which alſo are ſwollen, and they are conſtrained to make water continually, and they are vexed with the Strangurie or dropping out of vrine. The cure of this diſeaſe is almoſt the ſame that the cure of the ſtone in the reines is. But they differ in this thing, becauſe the ſtones of the bladder require ſtronger medicines, and you muſt apply the medicines in another place then you did in the cure of the reines. The ſtones that are ingendred in the bladder, are broken chiefly with theſe medicines (that is) the ſeed and roote of Fennell, of Louage, blacke Piony ſeeds, Motherwort, Cammomill, the roote and ſeede of *Althæa*, *Sium*, Maidenhaire, Sorrell rootes, the ſtones of Sponges, the ſtone of *Tecolithus*, Grommell, *Bruſcus*, root and ſeeds, the ſtones which come out of men with their vrine, brayed and drunke, the ſeed of little Burres, the barke of Capers, Sothernwood ſeed, Iacinth, white Violets, Smallage, Parcely, and other ſuch like, which do prouoke vrine, & which be rehearſed in the Chapter of the ſtone in the reines. To theſe you muſt conioyne the moſt laudable remedie, that is, a hedge Sparrow being dreſſed in ſalt, and taken raw in meate, doth heale the diſeaſe perfectly. For it expelleth the ſtones that are already ingendred by the vrine, and it letteth them from ingendring any more. Alſo Goats bloud is a preſent remedy, as well for the ſtone of the reines, as of the bladder: for it diſſolueth thoſe that be ingendred, and driueth them out with the vrine, and prohibiteth other to ingender any more, and ceaſeth paine. Furthermore, if the ſtones of the bladder cannot come out by the paſſage of the vrine, but that they be there ſtopped, and compact together, & ſo do cauſe ſuppreſſion of vrine, then the ſicke muſt be laid vpward, ſo that his hips muſt lie vpward and higheſt, and then you muſt moue him hither and thither many wayes, that thereby the ſtone may fall out of the paſſage, and afterward bid him piſſe euen as he lieth yet vpward. But if he cannot make water ſo neither, prouoke the vrine by a cyring, and after that you muſt miniſter thoſe medicines which haue vertue to breake the ſtone in the bladder. And if the cure come not to paſſe by this meanes, you muſt come to cutting. The ſtone therefore being conſumed by any of the meanes aforeſaid, ſuch an order of diet muſt be appointed to the patient, that the ſtone may not ingender againe, which we haue preſcribed in the Chapter of the ſtone in the Reines.

Signa.

Curatio.

To breake the ſtone in the bladder.

CHAP. XLII.

Of bloud broken out of the Bladder, or curded in it.

Cauſa. IT chanceth ſometimes, that a veine breaketh in the bladder, and then ſome of the bloud is ſent out & ſome waxeth thicke & curdeth within. When the bloud is thickened and curded within, the patients heart faileth him, and he waxeth pale, his pulſes be ſmall, darke, and thicke, he is ſorrowfull, he is cold, and his ſtrength decayeth. And ſometime when a clod of bloud chanceth to fall into the paſſage of the vrine, then it ſtoppeth the going out of the vrine.

Signa.

You

You must in this case, as also in other burstings out of bloud, cause a very quicke and speedy remedie. Therefore if nothing forbid, it is good to cut the veine in the arme, drawing out the bloud by times, that by this meanes the bloud may be drawne backe often, and by little and little. Let the patient in his lying be laid vpward, and let his hips be lifted vp, and apply sponges dipped in *Posca*, that is, water and vineger sodden together, to coole him. Also the extreme parts must be bound, and the share must be couered with sponges dipped in *Posca*. If the euill increase, cupping glasses fastened to the ilions and to the loines profit much. After irrigations with the sponges dipped in *Posca*, you must vse cataplasmes of Knotgrasse, Brambles, Plantaine and Pomegranate flowres. Also vse cerotes made of *Hypociſchu*, *Acatia*, Bolearmoniacke, and such like, rehearsed before in the Chapters of spitting of bloud, and of the fluxe *Dysenteria*. You must poure into the bladder iuyce of Knotgrasse, Plantaine, or Millefolie, commixing with it *Acatia*, Bolearmoniacke, Trochiskes of *Spodium* and such like. Also inſessions of such like things are good; for both *Posca* and decoction of *Lentiſcus*, and also of Brambles, and such like, are good. Also you must minister in drinke, medicines apt to bring out bloud, as be, *Rhapponticum* finely beaten, and xij. red seeds of Pionie, *Terra Lemnia*, Horsetaile, the roote of Centorie the great, the barke of Frankinsence, and such like. But in them that bloud is congealed and curded in the bladder, first you must go about to dissolue and disperse that bloud with conuenient medicines. Therefore you must minister in drinke, Motherwort, *Stæchados*, Citrine, Wormewood, Sotherwood, shauing of a Vine, Radish seed, Hares or Goats creame, each of them with *Oximel*. Also *Oximel* ministred by it selfe doth profite maruellously, for it dissolueth the curds, that afterward they may come forth by little and little with the vrine. Apply outwardly baths, ointments, irrigations, and other things that haue vertue to loosen and release, which you must seeke out of the Chapter of the stone in the Reines. Aboue other things this cerote is verie good: ℞. of the oiles of Roses and Cammomill, ana ℥.j. ß Calamint, Comin, leaues of Elderne, ana ℥ iij. *Bitumen Iudaicum*, Gumme Ammoniacke, ana. ℥ ij. Hares creame, ℥ iij. Sothernwood, meale of Fenugreeke, ana ℥.ß. *Sperma Ceti*, ℥.j. with Rosin and Waxe as much as is sufficient, make a cerote to apply to the share. And if you profite nothing by doing thus, but the vrine is still stopped, you must of necessitie vse a cyring, by the which when you haue brought out the vrine, you must againe minister the things aforesaid in drinke, and apply those things outwardly which do dissolue congealed bloud. And if the clods of bloud will not yet be dissolued, you must come to the curing of it likewise as you did in the stone of the Bladder.

Curatio.

To bring out bloud.

To dissolue curded bloud.

Ceretum.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of inflammation of the Bladder.

OF diseases that be in the Bladder and ingendred there, the most grieuous and deadly is the inflammation thereof. The sicke haue these tokens following. They are vexed with a sharpe feuer, they watch, they raue, and speake they wot not what: they vomite pure choler, and they cannot make water, the share becometh hard, and hath vehement paine, they haue desire to the stoole,

Signa.

as is wont in the diſeaſe called *Tenaſmus*: the ordure that cometh foorthis thin, and hath no reſidence: alſo ſometime inflations follow, and the wombe is coſtiue, the right gut being preſſed together by the inflammation of the bladder. To them that haue this diſeaſe, if nothing let it, cut the veine of the hamme without any tarrying, or draw bloud of the anckles. Alſo miniſter to him a thinne kind of diet, as is preſcribed in other inflammations. He muſt alſo abſtaine from wine, and he muſt vſe water wherein a little Cinamon hath bene ſodden. Outwardly you muſt apply thoſe things that haue power to ceaſſe and mitigate paine. Therefore the place of the bladder muſt be nouriſhed with oyle wherein hath bene ſodden Dill, Linſeed, and ſometime Rew and *Althæa*. Medicines that be cold and reſtrictiue muſt altogether be forborne, and that chiefly becauſe the bladder is full of ſinewes: for cold (as *Hippocrates* witneſſeth, 5. *Aphor.* 28.) is an enemie to ſinewes. Moreouer, becauſe cold things do ſhut vp and bind, and ſo do ſtop the vrine (which thing chancing in this euill by it ſelfe) it increaſeth it. And laſt of all, becauſe cold things do prohibite and let that the humours cauſing inflammation may be diſſolued, conſumed and digeſted: therefore medicines meanely hote are rather to be applyed, which haue vertue to ceaſſe paine, to looſen the pipe and paſſage of the vrine, and to diſſolue the inflammation. Alſo let the guttes be waſhed with ſoft and eaſie clyſters, and after the dung is come forth, caſt in oile of Dill, or ſuch like thing, to eaſe and ceaſſe the paine. It is good to ſeeth Poppy ſhels, together with oile, and to powre in Gooſe greaſe, or freſh Hennes greaſe ſodden together in the ſame oyle. In moſt vehement paine you muſt powre in ℥. j. of pilles of Houndꝭ tongue diſſolued in oile of Dill: or take *Opium* with Mirrhe and Saffron, and annoint it vpon wooll, and put it vp into the fundament. Alſo let the ſicke ſit in the decoction of Lineſeed, Fenugreeke, roote of *Althæa*, *Daucus* ſeede, and ſuch like; and bid the ſicke piſſe as he ſitteth in the water of the decoction: for the bladder is not ſtrong enough to receiue and expell out the vrine: therefore the patient or ſome that be about him, muſt thruſt and preſſe the ſhare eaſily and ſoftly, and that muſt not be done out of meaſure, leſt that paine ſhould be augmented thereby. Alſo after clyſters and inſeſſions vſe foments by hote water, and apply oile in oxe bladders, or other veſſels, halfe full, or little bags, as is ſhewed in the Chapter of the Pleuriſie. And if for all theſe things the euill ceaſſe not, faſten a cupping glaſſe with ſcarification to the grieued places. Moreouer, he muſt abſtaine from thoſe things which prouoke vrine vehemently, and he muſt eſchue much drinke. When there appeareth euident declination of the diſeaſe, you muſt come to the vſe of thoſe things that haue vertue to diſſolue and moiliſie, whereof we haue ſpoken often before. The putting in of a cyring into him that is diſeaſed with inflammation of the bladder is not eaſie to vſe, and ſpecially in men: for ſeeing it cannot be put into them without paine, it ſharpeneth the paine, and increaſeth the inflammation: but in women it is no great hurt to vſe it. For the paſſage of the vrine in them is ſhort and ſtraight, ſo that they may ſuffer the doing of it without paine. But if the perill through the ſtopping of vrine do very much conſtraine you, then you muſt of neceſſitie vſe a cyring in men alſo; not becauſe it taketh away the anguiſh of the diſeaſe, but rather becauſe it ſhould

Curatio.

Diet.

Clyſter.

Fomenta.
Sacculi.

Cætheter.

ſhould amend the great ſuppreſſion of vrine, and deliuer the patient from deadly perill. After that you haue enticed out the vrine, you muſt come againe to the remedies which do eaſe paine, vntill the inflammation be diſſolued and rotten. Oftentimes the inflammation is wont to be diſſolued by & by through the meanes of an *Eryſipelas*, ariſing outwardly vpon the skinne, and remaining there, and not returning againe inward. Yea and oftentimes much vrine being caſt out, doth iudge the euill. Yet neuertheleſſe although thoſe things appeare, you muſt ſtill vſe the remedies aforeſaid: in as much as for the moſt part, perfect tenſion and ſtretching out being riſen, continuall exacerbations and fittes are cauſed, and long conſtitution of the euill. But when the perillous fittes are ceaſſed, and the conſtitution of the diſeaſe is now waxen old, you muſt come to the vſing of ointments which do call out and bring forth the humours from within: and likewiſe emplaiſters which do rubifie and bliſter the skin, are to be applyed, which you may find after.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of Vlcers of the Bladder and his necke.

THe bladder is exulcerate either through ſome bile, or botch, or ſwelling which hath bene before, or through ſome rupture, or by eating & gnawing of a fluxe, or through ſome ſuch like cauſe. There followeth this ſickneſſe ſharpe paine of the bladder, at all times piſſing and auoiding out matter. And when the vlcers be foule and filthie, there commeth forth dreggie and ſlimie matter, and ſuch as hath a groſſe reſidence like bran. And ſometime thin skins like leaues, and wooll, are ſent out with the vrine. If the vlcers do ſpred abroad and feed deepe, there is ſent out vrine that is bloudie, attery, and ſtinking. To theſe ſignes may be added, difficulty of making water, & riſing vp of the yard. There is paine not onely when the paſſage of the vrine is exulcerate, but alſo when the exulceration is in the bottome or depth. You may know whether the exulceration be in the bottome of the bladder, or nigh the pipe and paſſage of the vrine, by this: for if it be in the depth of the bladder, there followeth paine about the ſhare: but if the vlcers be nigh the neck of the bladder, there is paine felt onely at ſuch time as he maketh water, and ſpecially at the beginning and ending of his piſſing, & alſo his paine is the greater if the vrine be ſharpe. They that are vexed with this euill, do either ſit continually, or they cannot ſtand vpright, nor reſt lying along; and through great and continuall paine they are killed with feuers, watchings, and conſumings, ſome ſooner & ſome later. But the vlcers of the bladder be incurable, or at the leaſtwiſe verie hard to cure: as well becauſe the bladder is ſinewy, as alſo becauſe the vrine which is of nature ſharpe, doth continually touch the vlcers, and ſo gnaweth them, and will not ſuffer them to conglutinate and ioyne together. For although much vrine be ſent out, yet all the bladder cannot be cleane emptied, but alwayes ſome of the vrine is left in it, which doth continually touch the vlcers, yea when the abundance of vrine is ſent out, then the bladder ſhrinketh vp and falleth together, ſo that the vrine that is left in it, although it be very little, yet it toucheth euery part thereof. But ſeeing that oftentimes ſome things chance beſides our expectation, you ſhal go about the cure, by the which if you bring nothing elſe

Vlcera.

Signa.

Why the vlcers of the bladder be incurable.

to passe, yet you shall diminish the paines of the fits. First therefore, you must perswade the patient to lie down and to rest in his bed: and that specially when that he hath a feuer. Then you must minister remedies for intermitting feuers. *Curatio.* The chiefe thing in this case hath bene drinking of milke, and this is to be preferred aboue all other medicines; for it maketh smoothe roughnesse, and washeth vlcerations, and scoureth the euill. Let the rest of his diet be such as that is which is ministred in the exulceration of the reines. Also you must comfort the sicke by medicines that will let the ingendring of sharpe vrine, which doth gnaw and fret the vlcers. And if there be inflammation with the exulceration, cataplasmes of Lineseed, and Fenugreeke, and other things which are rehearsed before in the Chapter of inflammation of the bladder, are apt and meete to be applied. Moreouer, if the exulceration do spread broader and eate deepe, you must apply outwardly medicines somewhat restrictiue, and such as be hote when they are applyed, that by their heate they may helpe the painefull places round about by mollifying them, and that through their vertue they may prohibite the places nigh adioyning to feed and eate. *Restrictiue medicines.* Restrictiue medicines be these; Galles, Pomegranat rinds, Alume, *Acatia*, *Hypocisthis*, and such like often rehearsed of vs before. Also you must vse to minister to them, medicines cast in with a cyring: you must cast into the exulcerate places, milke newly milked, or very good oyle of Roses warme. And if none of these be at hand, you must cast in continually most sweete water warmed, specially at such time as the gnawing is present. Also you must driue in by the fundament the iuyce of Pulan, or the decoction of Lineseed, Cucumber seed husked, Fenugreek, Mallows, or milke with the oyle of Roses. Moreouer when thou wilt minister a clyster to him which is diseased in the bladder, he may not lie vpward, for the bladder then will not suffer the infusion to enter in, *Note.* because it lieth vpon the streight bowell: but the patient must lie groueling vpon his knees, and so you must cast in your infusion. Also let the sick sit often in hote water, and in dissoluing decoctions, for these do cease paine somewhat. And when the vlcers do spread abroad and feed, you must cast into the bladder by a cyring such things as can stop the feeding, as be, *Acatia Hypocisthis*, *Terra lemnia*, Bolearmoniack, and other rehearsed a little before. But if the vlcers be foule & filthie, you must powre in medicines which haue vertue to scoure and cleanse them, as is *Mulsa* much watered, or milke with a little honey, or with the seed of Cucumbers cleansed. But if there follow sharpnesse and gnawing, cast in milke newly milked, mixed with good *Amylum*, or Tutty washed and dried with many waters, and then mixed with the milke. When the vlcers be scoured and purged cleane, you must procure to bring them to a scarre, and to heale them. And that must be done by restrictiue insessions, and by emplaisters, foments, and irrigations that be of like faculty and vertue. But if the exulceration do endure long time, as it chanceth for the most part, then the patient hath exacerbations and fits sometime, and intermission and space from them at other times. Therefore in the painfull fits applie emplaisters and irrigations, hauing power to cease and ease the paine: and in the time of the intermission betweene the fits, vse such things as haue vertue to destroy the euill. Therefore apply to the share, Synapismes, and such things as will rubifie

and

and blister. And let the sicke vse a diet that is good to restore strength. And if the euill doth not waxe gentler, you must make burnt scurses about the share, either by medicines or with iron, and to suffer the vlcers to purge and cleanse themselues long time with matter flowing out. You may also minister medicines to ceasse paine in drinke, if vehement paine vexe him. For this purpose aboue other things which we haue rehearsed in other places, the pils *Alkakengi* with *Opium* are good. Also these things following do much mitigate the paines of exulceration, that is, Cucumber seed, Mallowes, white Poppie, Tragacanth, *Amylum*, Pine nuts, and Almonds. Therefore this medicine may be ministred: ℞. conserue of Violets, ℥.iij seed of Mallowes, ℥ij. of the foure great cold seeds, ana ℥ j. Liquorice scraped. ℥ j ß. Gum, ℈.ij Bolearmoniacke, ℥ ß. Trochiskes of *terra Lemnia*, ℥.j. make them vp all together with sirupe of Liquorice, and minister of it daily in the morning the quantitie of an Hasell nut. Moreouer, you must throw into the bladder medicines that can ceasse paine, and heale the exulceration. *To ceasse paine.*

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Stranguric.

Stranguria in Greeke, *Stillicidium vrinæ* in Latine, is a disease whereas the vrine distilleth downe by drops, or by little and little, and causeth a continuall prouoking and desire to pisse. This disease is caused through the sharpnesse of the vrine, or by exulceration of the bladder, or by an impostume of the Liuer or the reines, which being broken, and sending the filth and matter to the bladder, through the sharpenesse thereof it causeth continually desire to pisse. You shall iudge that sharpnesse is the cause, if the vrines be cholericke, and also all the state of the bodie, if the rest of the signes betoken choler, and that gnawing do chance about the bladder. You may know the exulceration of the bladder, as also an impostume or bile of the Liuer and the Reines, by the signes afore rehearsed in their owne proper Chapters. If therefore the Stranguric be caused through sharpnesse of the vrine, then you must purge the vicious and naughtie humour that doth abound, with all speed. For the which purpose, besides those things which are often spoken of before, Whey with *Cassia Fistula* is maruellous good, or some other medicine that bringeth out choler. The cholericke humour being auoided and purged, the patient must vse meats that be temperate, and that can stop the sharpnesse: as is iuyce of Ptisan, Mallowes, Purslaine, Violets, Cucumber seed, and such like. He must abstaine from all things that be sharpe or salt. Also let him eschue wine, exercises, wrath, and slow eating: for all these things do heape vp choler in the body. Let him vse stony fishes, and baths of sweet water, which is wont to make temperate vicious humours maruellously. In drinke you must minister much sweet water hote, or the decoction of Barley with sirupe of Violets and Roses. But you may not giue him wine, as is said, except it be sweete and alayed with water. Also milke drunke hote, is the best thing that can be. To conclude, for the order of his diet, he must vse meates that do moisten, and broths that do make the wombe soluble. But the sicke must be compelled to pisse continually: for if the sharpe dregs do tarry long in the bladder, it gnaweth and exulcerateth it. Also to stop

Stranguria. *Causæ.* *Signa.* *Curatio.* *Victus.*

the sharpnesse of the humours minister the medicine which we described in the end of the former Chapter. For the same purpose minister decoction of Licorice, or this powder following: ℞. of the seeds of Melons husked, Citrons, and Cucumbers, ana. ℥.iij. seeds of Gourds, Purslaine, and Lettuce, ana. ℥.ij. of red Roses, ℥.j. iuyce of Licorice and of Maste, ana. ℥.j. ß. beate them all and made a fine powder, whereof giue daily the weight of ℥.j. ß in the morning with sirupe of Licorice, of Iuleps of Violets or Roses. Also Venice Turpentine washed in Rose water or Endiue water, and ministred the quantitie of a Nut, or sometime two or three, is maruellous good: for this (as *Galen* witnesseth *lib. 5. De tuenda sanitate*) doth not onely loosen the belly without hurt, and so by that meanes turneth away the sharpe humours from the passages of the vrine, but also it scoureth and cleanseth the inward parts, and specially the reines. And there haue bene some that haue recouered health onely by the vse of this. Also clysters made of the decoction of Mallowes, Violets, *Althæa*, leaues of Willow, water Lillies, and other afore rehearsed, putting to them *Cassia fistula*, Sugar, and oile of Violets and Roses, do profite much. But if the sharpnesse do still increase, you must also cast in by the yard into the bladder, milke with *Amylum*. Also for the same purpose, you may cast in decoction of white Poppie, and you must annoint outwardly vpon the share and thereabouts, oiles of Violets and water Lillies, putting to them a very little of the iuyce of Purslaine. But if the Strangurie doth chance through exulceration of the bladder, or through some other part of the body being euill affected, and so purging it selfe out by the vrine, then it is manifest that those members ought first to be cured; but yet so, that this present euill be not neglected. The cures of eueric part you may seeke out in their proper places and Chapters.

Puluis.

Terebinthina resina.

Clyster.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of difficultie in Pissing.

Dysuria. Causæ.

DYSVRIA in Greke, *Vrinæ difficultas*, is a disease wherein the vrine is pissed hardly and difficultly. It is caused through weakenesse of the bladder, and through cold distemper of it, which hurteth his actions. Also sometime it is caused of grosse and flegmaticke humours which stop the necke of the bladder. You may know cold distemper if it come of an outward cause by the patients telling, and by the thinnesse and whitenesse of the vrine. But if besides the whitenesse there appeare grosnesse in the vrine, you may iudge it a flegmaticke humour, which hath stopped the necke of the bladder, as is aforesaid. Cold distemper is cured by those things that do heate. Therefore he must vse heating meates, and wine that is hot and condite. Also you must vse medicines which prouoke vrine, as are Paseneps well sodden, Fennell, *Apium*, Sperage, Smallage, and such like. Also Crabs and Hedgehogs do prouoke vrine very well: you must drie their flesh, and minister the weight of one ℥ in drinke. Also minister in drinke the decoction of aromaticke things, or electuaries made of them, and so named of them. Aboue other things, the Antidotes of *Diacalaminthes*, *Dialacca*, and *Diacurcuma*, are very good. Also Triacle giuen in drinke is maruellous good. You must nourish the share without, with

Signa.

Cure of a cold distemper.

with hote oiles, as is, oiles of Rew, Dill, Lillies, Scorpions, and of *Castoreum*. Also you must applie foments, and little bagges made of Cammomill, Sothernwood, Betonie, Mugwort, Rew, Calamint, Saueine, and such like oiles, into the fundament. If a cold and flegmaticke humour do cause difficultie of pissing, then the patient must vse *Oximel*, and decoctions of Hylope, Penitoiall, Origan, Thime, and such like often before rehearsed. Also let him vse foments, irrigations, and little bagges made of hote things, whereof we spake a little before, and in the former Chapters. Moreouer, whether a grosse humour, or the stone, or a clod of bloud, or any other thing of that kinde, through stopping do let the passage of the vrine, it is good to put in a cyring, vnlesse inflammation of the members do let it, whereof also we haue admonished before.

Fomenta.

Cure of flegmaticke humours that stop the vrine.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of stopping of the Vrine.

ISCVRIA in Greeke, *Suppressio vrinæ* in Latine, it is a disease in the which the vrine of the patient is altogether letted and stopped. This disease is caused sometime through weakenesse of the bladder, not being able to thrust out that which is contained in it. Also sometime it chanceth through stopping of the neather passage of the bladder, or of grosse humours, or of a stone congealed. Also it is wont to come either of an inflammation, or of hardnesse, or some swelling against nature, which maketh the passage streighter, or stoppeth it altogether. Also sometime it commeth by a litle peece of flesh, or a hard knob ingendred in the passage of the vrine. Also bloud congealed into clods in the bladder, is cause of the suppression and stopping of the vrine. Also atter sent downe to the bladder from the reines, or the Liuer, or from some other vpper part, causeth stopping of the vrine, euen like as a grosse and clammie humour doth. Also it chanceth sometime, through the dull sense of the bladder, that the vrine is not made, and yet it is without hurt of the vertue expulsiue, when as his proper sinewes be euill affected: so in haile folke when the vrine is holden long time, the bladder is stretched out, and the vrine is stopped. If the stopping of the vrine be caused through weakenesse of the bladder, it is knowne by those signes which declare the cold distemper of the bladder. If it be caused of grosse humours, it is knowne by the diet that went before: as if one that liueth idlely hath vsed much meates which do ingender grosse and clammie humours. If it be caused of the stone, you may know it by the signes which are rehearsed before in the Chapters of the Stone. If it be caused of inflammation, or of any other swelling, it is knowne by paine, by feuer, and by sight. When suppression of the vrine is caused through some peece of flesh, or some knob, it may be knowne by the signes of vlcers aforesaid: and also because that a cyring being put in, the vrine commeth out. Also a cyring being put into that part of the conduite or passage where you coniecture the bile to be before, it moueth paine, and the flesh being broken with the cyring, there followeth out with the pissing of the vrine, both bloud and fragments of flesh. If clodded bloud cause stopping of the vrine, there went before it excretion and pissing of bloud, or fluxe thereof. When as atter bath

Ισχυρία.

Causæ.

Signa.

ſtopped the vrine, you may know it by things that chanced before: for either the bladder or the reines laboured of ſome euill before, whereby ſuch, and ſo much atter might gather: or there hath bene an impoſtume in ſome member aboue the reines, which being broken, the atter is ſent downe into the reines, and ſo into the bladder. The reſt of the cauſes may be knowne by the patiens telling. The cure is diuerſe according to the diuerſity of cauſes.

Curatio.

Cure if it be of weakneſſe of the bladder.

For if the ſtopping of vrine be cauſed through imbecilitie and weakneſſe of the bladder, you muſt miniſter and apply thoſe things which do heate, as is ſaid in the former Chapter. For you muſt altogether remoue cold diſtemper,

Cure if it be of groſſe humors.

which letteth the actions of the bladder. If the withholding of vrine be ingendred of groſſe and clammie humours, he muſt be cured by ſoments, inſeſſions, and cataplaſmes made of hearbs that be hote, and that haue vertue to cut and diuide the humours, and with a diet of ſuch like things. Beſides thoſe things which we haue rehearſed in the former Chapter of difficultie of piſſing, this

Vnguentum.

ointment following is very good to take away the diſeaſe: ℞. of the oile of Scorpions, oile of Nard, and of Lillies, ana. ℥ iij. Gumme ſerapin, *Bdellium* & *Opoponax*, ana. ℈ j. Gooſe greaſe, Duckes greaſe, ana. ℥ ß. roote of *Enula Campana*, ℈ ij. Peniroiall, Calamint, ana. ℈ ß. diſſolue the Gummes in wine, and with Waxe as much as is ſufficient make an ointment. Alſo you muſt throw into the bladder with a cyring, oile of Scorpions, or Lillies, or ſome other thing that can diſſolue, cut, and diuide clammie humours. If the vrine be ſtop-

Cure if it be of the ſtone or clodded bloud.

ped through the ſtone or clodded bloud, you muſt ſeeke the cure out of their proper Chapter: for the ſtone which hath ſtopped the paſſage of the vrine muſt be remoued out of his place, as is taught before in the 41. Chapter, but the clodded bloud muſt be diſſolued, as is taught in the 42. Chapter. If the vrine be ſtopped through inflammation, or ſome other ſwelling againſt nature, the cure muſt alſo be ſought out of their owne proper Chapter. And if the vrine be

Cure if it be of a peece of fleſh or knobbe.

ſtopped through ſome litle peece of fleſh or hard knob, apply bathings and other diſſoluing and looſening medicines, and ſuch as do open and ſpread abroad the pipe and conduit of vrine: examples whereof you may ſeeke out of the Chapter of the ſtone in the reines. And if the vrine do not come out ſo, you muſt come to the vſing of a cyring, and by putting in of the inſtrument,

Cure if it be of the obtuſe ſenſe of the bladder.

you muſt entice out the vrine. If the vrine be ſuppreſſed through the dull ſenſe of the bladder, you muſt raiſe vp his action, by prouoking vrine, and you muſt helpe it by inſeſſions, foments, and other hote medicines, which can take away his ſleeping and dulneſſe. But you muſt onely eſchue thoſe things which prouoke vrine, leſt that through plentie of it, the bladder be ſtretched out, and ſo the contractiue vertue of it ſhould be hurt. Moreouer, you muſt entice out vrine with *Nitrum*, or Saltpeter, or with a quicke Louſe, or with ſome other

Cure if it come in haſte folke.

thing that can ſtirre vp the vertue expulſiue of the bladder. In healthfull folke, when through ſome great buſineſſe vrine is holden too long, and ſo hath made the bladder feeble, that it cannot expell it out, then he muſt helpe himſelfe thus. He muſt ſtand ſo, that the necke of the bladder may leane downeward, and muſt lay both his hands about his ſhare, and he muſt preſſe it, and thruſt out the vrine by little and little, and thus he may do alſo in the dull ſenſe of the bladder aforeſaid.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Exulceration of the priuie members.

VLcers ingendred in the priuie members without inflammation haue need of medicines which do drie vp vehemently: such as these be, paper burnt, drie Dill burnt, and drie *Aloes* made into powder; for you can scarcely finde a more present remedie. Also the roote of *Aristolochia rotunda* doth bring present remedie to the exulceration of the priuie members. Also among compound medicines, this is the most effectuous and profitable: ℞. *Aloes Epaticum*, ℥.ij. Galles, ℥ j. Dragons bloud, Bolearmoniake, Turtie, ana ℥ j. rootes of *Aristilochia rotunda*, ℥. ß Mirrhe, ℈. j. of Gumme Arabicke, ℥. ij. Alume burnt, ℥. ß Let all these be beaten, and make a fine powder, and strew it vpon the exulcerate parts. But if the vlcers be very moist and foule, first scoure them and cleanse them with *Mulsa* well alayed, and then after with Goates milke: which thing being done, vse the aforesaid powder, or *lapis Hæmatites*, or Frankinsence, or Pomgranate rinds, or *terra Lemnia*, or such like beaten into powder. If there chance inflammation together with the exulceration, you must first remoue the inflammatiō, with linnen clothes wet in Rose water, or Nightshade, or Purslaine water, or Housleeke water, putting to it the white of an Egge, and applying it to the diseased place. The rest of the remedies seeke out of the other Chapters.

Aloes arida.

Puluis optimus.

Abstersion of the vlcers.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the continuall standing of the yard.

PRIAPISMVS (as *Galen* witnesseth *in lib. 6. De malè affectis locis, cap. 6.*) is when the yard is stretched out in length and in breadth, nothing prouoking the patient to lust and desire, nor no heate gotten. And if there chance to the yard panting or beating, then the euill is called *Satyriasis*. This euill is caused (as *Galen* doth witnesse in the place aforesaid) either through immoderate opening of the mouthes of the arteries, or of some vaporous spirit ingendred in the hollow and fistulous sinew. But it followeth often after the gaping and opening of the mouthes of the arteries. For it is easier for them to stretch out wide, then for a fluuious and windie ayre to ingender in the hollow sinew. For the loines being heat, it is reason that the arteries are made hotter, and that also their mouthes should be wider opened. Therefore at that time they send out no small substance of spirite or ayre into the hollow sinew, which being a little filled, it stretcheth out the yard, so that all his power doth seeme to consist in the hollow sinew. Sometime this euill chanceth to them which haue abstained long time from carnall copulation contrarie to their custome. And this thing chanceth specially to them that do abound with much bloud, and do not studie to disperse the abundance of bloud with much exercise. They that labour of this disease be grieued as those be which be taken with distention and stretching out of the sinewes: for the yard being puffed vp, and stretched out, suffereth as it were a crampe. They that haue this conuulsion or crampe, do quickely perish vnlesse helpe be vsed to them by and by: and when they dye, their belly is puffed vp, and their sweate is cold. The cure is diuerse according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the disease do

Priapismus.

Satyriasis.

Causæ.

Curatio.

chance through gaping of the mouths of the arteries,& so through the heat of them,by and by it is good to let bloud by cutting of a veine: which thing also you shall do when this euill taketh them which abound with bloud, and haue abstained long time from carnall copulation, contrarie to their custome. And you must cut the blacke veine which is called *Media* or *Mediana*, the middle veine of the armes. Also he must vse a thinne diet, and abstaine from wine. Giue him but little meate made of corne, and that which doth ingender no wind at all,and that causeth thirst; and it is good for him to vse to drink water: exercises and frictions or rubbings are well applyed and vsed to dissolue and disperse the spirits of aire. Also it is good to go about emptying by vomiting. Also if the wombe be costiue & bound,you must make it soluble with a clyster that is not very sharpe, as that is which is made of the decoction of Beetes, Mallowes, and Mercury. You must altogether abstaine from purging medicines, lest that the humours should be drawne downeward. For the same cause also he must eschue those things which haue vertue to prouoke vrine. To conclude,you must altogether labour and study to minister those medicins which can void and empty the abundance, and draw vpward,and so turne the humors from the priuie members. And if the euill endure long, fasten cupping glasses with scarification. And if there be fulnesse, apply horsleeches. But you must lay vpon the loines those things which do euidently coole, as is, Nightshade, Purslaine, Henbane, and Singreene. Also you must of necessitie annoint the yard, and the space betweene the fundament and the yard, with some iuyce or water of herbs that do coole gently. If a cerote made of fine oile of Roses, washed often in cold water, be applyed as well to the yard as also to the loines, it doth notably well. The making of this Cerote,which is called *Ceratum liquidum*,is taught of *Galen libr.* I. *De simplicium medicamentorum facultate. cap.* 6. Also this cerote is good: ℞. white Waxe washed ten times in cold water, quar. j. Purslaine, ℥ ij commixe them together and bring them into the forme of a cerote. To be short,apply and also minister in drinke those medicines which can extinguish and quench seede: of the which we will speake abundantly in the next Chapter. Moreouer,it is hurtfull for him to rest lying vpright,but he must lye on his side. He must altogether be kept from sights and stories,and reheasing of those things which pertaine vnto lechery. If this disease chance of a vaporous and windy spirit,or aire ingendred in the hollow sinew, all your whole cure must be turned to the dispersing and dissoluing of it. Therefore you must turne backe to the Chapters of curing of inflammation and windinesse of the stomach, and to the cure of the windie Cholicke: for there you shall find plentie of remedies.

Clyster.

The summe of the cure.

CHAP. L.

Of shedding of sperme.

Torrpeia.

GONORRHAEA in Greeke, *seminis profluuium* in Latine,it is excretion and shedding of seede or sperme against the patients will, and without sickenesse of the yard. It is caused through imbecilitie and weakenesse of the retentiue vertue in the vessels containing the sperme, or through some other disease that moueth the parts of the vessels of sperme, after that sort as the expulsiue vertue doth according to nature: as in the falling sickenesse it chanceth

Causæ.

ceth sometime, and in other violent conuulsions and crampes. Also sometime it is caused through fluxe of the spermaticke vessels. The seed that sheddeth out is watery, thinne, without appetite of carnall copulation: and for the most part without feeling of it, but sometime it cometh out with certaine pleasure. They that haue this disease, their whole body corrupteth by little and little, and waxeth leane, specially about the loynes, and there followeth much weakenesse, not for the multitude of seed, but for the principalitie of the places. And if it come out (the yard not standing) there followeth imbecilitie and weakenesse of the retentiue vertue in the spermaticke vessels. But if it cometh out (the yard standing) the griefe is somewhat like a conuulsion or crampe. This disease chanceth not onely to men, but also to women, and in women it is hard to cure. The cure of this disease is common with those cures that are ministred in euery fluxe. First therefore you must keepe the sicke in quietnesse, with little meate, and with drinking of water. Then also you must couer the places about the share and priuities, and the loynes, with wooll wet in oile of Roses, and in wine, or in oile of blossomes of Apples, or of Quinces. Also sponges wet in *Posca* applied are not hurtfull. The daies following you must vse cataplasmes, emplaisters, and oyntments made of Vine branches, Quinces, *Acatia*, *Hypocistbis*, Sumach, and such like afore rehearsed. Also he must vse restrictiue insessions made of decoctions of Brier, Plantaine, Mirtles, and such other like. These things must be sodden in austere and sharpe wine, or also in water. Let him vse meates which are hard to corrupt, and that are difficultly changed, and that haue power to drie vp. Also you must giue him with his meates and drinke, the seed of *Agnus castus*, and of Hempe, specially rosted. Also the seedes and leaues of Rew, the seed and stalke of Lettuce, and the roote of water Lillies. In drinke minister daily, in stead of common water, the water wherein yron hath often bene quenched. To be short, he must eschue the vsing of sharpe things, and drinking of much wine, and eating of pottage; and all his whole diet must be appointed of such things as do drie vp and restraine. And you must minister such medicines as do extinguish and quench seede, as is Tutsan seede tosted and rubbed: also the leaues and flowers of it are said to restraine lecherie, not onely when they are eaten, but also when they are taken in drinke, or strewed vnder one. Purslaine eaten, and Lettuce seede drunke, and the roote and the seede of water Lillies taken in meate, do extinguish the seede by cooling of it. But Rew eaten corrupteth and destroyeth the seede with his heate. They which eate Calamint continually, do lose the power of generation, and likewise the seede of white Violets doth the same. But Smithes water, in which yron is often quenched, being continually drunke, doth diminish the seed without any griefe. Moreouer, of these simples before rehearsed, you must compound and make diuers remedies. And specially this powder is good: ℞ of the powders of *Diacuminum*, *Diacalaminthes*, an. ℥ j. ß. seed of Tutsan and Rew, ana, ℥ j. Calamint, ℥ ij. seede of Lettuce and Purslaine, ana. ℥ j. Sugar, the weight of them all: commixe them together, and make a fine powder, whereof minister, ℥ j. or ℥ j ß. infused in soure wine. Also it is counted notable, to lay a plate of lead vpon the loynes, for it is wont to coole much. To those that can not suffer the hardnesse of lead you must

Signa.

Curatio.

To extinguish seede.

Triture.

giue counsell, that they strew vnder them some of the aforesaid herbes dried: for the which purpose aboue other things, Vine leaues, Rew, Calamint, and Roses are praised: for these profit, and besides that, they hurt not the reines; for vehement cold things being applyed to the loines, do hurt the reines. Also let not his bed be soft, and let him lie for the most part vpon his side, eschuing vpright lying, lest thereby the arteries of the loines should waxe hote. After that the disease hath dured a while, you must commit the sick to exercises, whereby the whole body, and specially the diseased parts, may be confirmed and strengthened. Also it shall be good, if nothing else do let it, to vse cold bathing and washing, which is wont to driue away all griefe ingendred of fluxe: and that specially if the water be endued with any medicinable qualitie. Also it is good at certaine times to vse those things that do rubifie and blister, and that can fetch out from the depth and bottome, vnto the top of the skin. Moreouer, the patient must exclude all thoughts belonging to carnall copulation.

CHAP. LI.

Of the losse of carnall copulation.

Cause. THey which be married, and cannot vse the act of generation because of the sluggish impotencie and weakenesse of their members, coming of a cold distemper wherewith they be vexed, or of some other cause, such ought to exercise the neather parts, and to vse meates that do heate, and ingender good humours: as is, the flesh of Hennes, Capons, Partrich, Feasants, yong Doues, Birds of mountaines, and specially Sparrowes, Cocks stones, and such like. Not onely good nourishing meates, but also windie meates are good for him, as be, Cich peason, Beanes, Scalions, Leekes, the roote and seed of Parseneps, Pine Nuts, sweet Almonds, Rape rootes, and such other like. Also the Egges of Partriches

Diet.

Curatio. do stirre vp carnall lust. Let the patient sleepe in a soft bed, and let him reade things that do stirre vp lust, or let him heare them read. Let his priuie members be continually chafed and rubbed with oyles, ointments, and other heating medicines. For which purpose vse this ointment following: ℞. oile of Lillies, ℥. j. ß. oile of *Castoreum*, ℥. ß. Pepper, Nigella, Pellitorie, ana. ℈ j. Mirrhe, ℥. ß. *Euphorbium*, gran. iij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment.

Vnguentum.

Also he must vse medicines which do ingender plenty of sperme, and can heate. Among simple medicines, these that follow do chiefly stirre vp carnall lust, as be Rocket, Mustard seed, Garden Cresses, Nettle seed, roote of Aron, and Pepper, *Satyrion*, *Orminum*, Annise, Squill, *Orchis* called also *Testiculus canis*, whose greatest round roote drunke with Milke, doth prouoke stiffenesse of the yard, but the lesse roote thereof drunke with water, doth slake the stiffenesse thereof: also Fennell and Dill are good. The stones of a Foxe dried, beaten to powder and drunke, do cause a stiffenesse of the member, not hurtfull nor vaine. Also the parts of Scinces which embrace the reines, are drunke to raise a stiffenesse of the yard. Moreouer, burne the drie pisle of an Hart, and minister ℥. j. of it with pure wine. Among compounds it is good to vse this medicine: ℞. *Diantbos*, *Plirisarcoticon*, *Diagalanga*, ana. ℥. iij. *Diasatyrion*, ℥. vj. Pine Nuts, sweet Almonds, *Pistax*, ana. ℥. ij. *Satyrium*, ℥. j roote of Aron, ℈. j. seeds of Rocket,

Simples to prouoke carnall lust.

Antidotum liquidum.

Nettles,

Nettles, & garden cresses, ana. ℥.j.ß. *Scincus*, ℥.ß. *Nux Indica*, ℥ j. of long Pepper and Ginger, ana. ℥.j.ß. powder of Harts pisse, ℈.j. sirupe of Mints, and Sugar as much as is sufficient, and make an Electuarie, whereof minister before supper or fasting the quantitie of one drachme or two, alone or in good wine.

CHAP. LII.

Of bursting or ruptures.

CELE in Greeke, *Ramex* and *Hernia* in Latin, the barbarous writers call it *Ruptura*: it is caused diuers waies, and thereupon it hath diuers names. For if the *Peritonæum* do breake, and the bowels fall downe into the coddes, it is called in Latin, *Ramex intestinorum*: that is, the rupture of the bowels. But when the bowels do cleaue or stay aboue the priuie members, it is called in Latin *Ramex inguinis*, that is, the rupture aboue the priuie members. And if any quiet and watery humour be gathered in any part of the filmes or skinne of the coddes, it is called in Latin *Ramex aquosus*: that is, a waterie rupture. When there groweth hard flesh within the coates and tunicles of the stones, it is called in Latin *Ramex carnosus*: that is, a fleshie rupture. To be short, the kindes of ruptures euer take their names of the things that fill vp the coddes. As if the kall or filme that lappes in the bowels, do fall downe into the coddes, it is called in Latin *Ramex omenti*: that is, the rupture of the filme. And if the bowels do slippe downe also with it, it is called in Latin *Ramex omenti & intestini*: that is, the rupture of the filme and the bowels. So when the veines which do nourish the stones be spread abroad and swollen out of measure on heapes, it is called *Ramex varicosus*: that is, the rupture of the swollen veines. The rupture of the bowels, and of the parts aboue the priuie members, it is caused either because the *Peritonæum* is stretched out more then it ought to be, or because it is broken. Both these do chance through some violent occasion going before, as a stroke, or leaping, or crying, or by taking vp a great weight. A waterie rupture is caused sometime of a secret cause, and sometime of a manifest cause. Of a secret cause, as when the vessels that are ioyned together be increased in the coddes, and then a watery humour mixed with bloud is driuen downe to those parts, and resteth there. Of a manifest cause, as when through some blow or stroake the vessels breake and slide downe: and then bloud flowing downe thither to nourish them, it is changed into a waterie and wheyish substance. A fleshie rupture is ingendred of a secret cause, as through the stone, being without sluxe and waxing hard, of a stripe, or by ill curing after the cutting of a rupture. The causes of the other ruptures are euident by their descriptions. The signes both of the rupture of the bowels, and the rupture aboue the priuie members, are common. For there is a manifest swelling in the cods, or aboue the priuie members, which appeareth greater then it did before in exercises, iourneis, holding of the breath and such like occasions: being thrusted together, it goeth backe againe slowly, and it rolleth downe againe quickely. The particular signes whereby ruptures that come when the *Peritonæum* is but stretched out, be these: that the bowels fall downe not for a long time together, but for a short space, and for very little cause; the swelling appeareth equall and deepe,

Κήλη. Ruptura. Ramex intestinorum. Ramex inguinis. Ramex aquosus. Ramex carnosus. Ramex omenti. Ramex omenti intestini que. Ramex varicosus. Causæ. Signa.

the bowels that fall downe being ſtayed with the *Peritoneum*. The proper ſignes of a rupture that cometh when the *Peritonæum* is broken, are, that the bowels fall downe vniuerſally from the beginning of the rupture, and that onely through violent cauſes: the ſwelling is of a wonderfull greatneſſe, vnequall, and it ſheweth ſtraightway ſticking out in the skinne, becauſe the bowels are fallen out of the *Peritoneum*. The common ſignes of a watery rupture be theſe: ſwelling that is without paine, and firme, and permanent in the codds, not vaniſhing by any occaſion: but in them that haue a little of the humour, it giueth place, and in them that haue not ſo much of it, not ſo. And when there is a waterie humour in the coddes, the ſwelling ſhineth of the ſame colour that the humour is, as like dregges or bloud, or rubicund or ſwart. And when theſe ſignes appeare in both ſides of the coddes, it betokeneth that there is a double rupture. There followeth after a fleſhie rupture, hardneſſe, and a colour alwayes like vnto it. But if the ſwelling do increaſe into a hardneſſe or kernell, then there is neither colour, nor ſenſe, nor feeling. But if the humour be of a wicked nature, then pricking paine doth vexe him. The rupture of the bowels, and of the parts about the priuie members, be cured in this wiſe. You muſt lay the patient vpright, and ſeparate his legges, and then put vp the bowels by little and little: and when they are put vp, you muſt keepe them vp with conuenient truſſes and ligaments. But if the places adioyning to the coddes, or to the place about the priuie members, be grieued with inflammation and moſt grieuous paines, and that there come with it frettings and windineſſe, and ſo thereby the bowels be made diſobedient to go vp againe, then you muſt vſe and apply foments, liniments and bathes, which haue vertue to mollifie and to ceaſſe paine and inflammation, and to diſperſe windineſſe, as thoſe things be which be made of Mallowes, Camomill, Dill, Linſeed, Fenugreeke, Caraway ſeed, Anniſe ſeed, Comin, and ſuch like. Alſo nouriſh the places that be vexed with paine, with wooll that is moiſt, dipped in wine and oile. When the bowels are put vp againe into their places, you muſt go about that they may be kept vp ſtill with conuenient truſſes and bands, applying to it firſt reſtrictiue or glutinatiue cerotes, or emplaiſters, as this is: ℞. ſhip pitch, Maſticke, ana. ℥. iij. Frankinſence, ℥. ij. *Hypociſchis, Sarcocolla, Acatia*, ana ℥. j. ß. *lapis Hæmatitis*, Dragons bloud ana ℥. ij. Bolearmoniacke, rootes of Comfery, Galles, Pomegranate rindes, ana. ℥. iij. Miſſle of the oake, ℥ j. ß. of either *Ariſtolochiæ*, ℥ ij. Sumach, Pomegranate flowers, ana. ℥ j. Goates tallow, ℥. ij. Turpentine and Waxe as much as is ſufficient: diſſolue the gummes firſt in Vineger or Wine, and make a cerote, and put it in a Weathers skinne, and apply it, binding it faſt, and do not looſe it before the ſeuenth day. And in the meane ſeaſon, let the ſicke tarrie thirtie dayes in his bed, and let him abſtaine from windie meates, and from much drinking of Wine, from vehement mouing, running, leaping crying aloud and ſuch other like. And in the meane ſeaſon, let him drinke this decoction: ℞ both the kinds of *Sanicula*, of *Solidago ſaracenica*, or *Conſolida ſaracenica*, *Ophioglo-ſum*, Pedelion, Agrimonie, *Numularia*, ana. M. j. Knotgraſſe, *Clematis Daphnoides*, great Plantaine, Burnet, ana. M. ß. root of Comfery, Hounds-tongue, ana. ℥. ß. roote of the ſixt kinde of *Geranium*, ℥. vj. ſeede of Mirtles, ℥. iij. Pome-

Cure of the rupture of the bowels, and of the inguen.

Cerotum.

Aglutinatiue decoction.

Prunella.

granate

granate flowers, ℥.ij. leaues of Laurell, ℥.j. ß. boile these in red wine & water of iust quantity till the third part be consumed, then straine it, and by putting to it Sugar, make the liquor of the decoction sweet, and purifie it, and make a sweete potion, whereof minister daily in the morning, ℥. iiij. Also you must take very good heed, that the belly waxe not costiue: for if he be constrained to labour much when he should go to the stoole, the bowels will slide downe againe. Also he must vse apt and conuenient deligatures and trusses, as we admonished before. And he must vse them specially at such time as occasion and necessitie of mouing requireth it. A waterie rupture must be cured by such medicines as do heate and drie vp, as bē Beane meale, Laurell berries, Linseede, *Daucus*, *Althæa*, *Nigella*, and such other like, which we haue rehearsed in the Chapter of the Dropsie *Ascites*, and other Dropsies. To conclude, as for the cure of these ruptures, or any other by Surgery, let it be sought out of *Paulus Aegineta libro sexto*, *cap.* 26. where he treateth of it abundantly: for it is not our intent to treate thereof in these Bookes: therefore we will proceed to the diseases of the wombe.

To cure a waterie rupture.

CHAP. LIII.

Of stopping of Menstruis.

THe menstruis of women are suppressed and stopped in them, either naturally or against nature. If they be naturally stopped, you shall know it chiefly by this: because the woman thereby is vexed with no griefe of the whole body nor yet of the wombe. Also you shall haue a respect to the age, for in many the floures begin to flow the foureteenth yeare, and in very few before the thirteenth or twelfth yeare. And to most women they burst out after the fourteenth yeare. For the most part, the purging endureth either two or three dayes, to many fiue dayes, in some it endureth to the seuenth day. The menstruis also do stop in some the fiftieth yeare, or the fiftie fiue yeare, and they flow not vntill the sixtieth yeare but in few women. Also barraine women and dancers, are not naturally purged: for whatsoeuer excrements is in them, it is consumed by the vehemencie of exercises. And to be short, women of a hote temperature, that be wilde, and do vse strong exercise, they purge out little or nothing. But many times the menstruis are wont to be suppressed and stopped against nature, either through ouermuch grossenesse, or slendernesse. For fat folke are more without bloud then other folke, and they haue lesse and streighter veines, and that little bloud which is in them, turneth almost all into fat. But those that are leane & slender, which be wasted with some continuall sickenesse, they haue no superfluous bloud in them. Moreouer, the menstruis do not flow in them whose bloud is either grosse or clammie, or if it be sent to some other part of the body, and purged out: as for example, if it go out at the nose, or at the fundament. Also in some that haue cast out much bloud from the breast, the menstruis are stopped, and in some, because much bloud hath gone out of a veine being cut. Also other kind of emptyings haue often done the same thing, as abundant sweating, continuall vomiting, fluxes of the belly, and all kinds of pustules and wheales which budde out of the skinne. Besides the causes now rehearsed, oftentimes the menstruis

Causæ.

In whom the flowers are naturally stopped.

In whom the flowers are stopped against nature.

are withholden through great and sharpe sicknesses, and through abundance or scarcitie of foode. For of little foode, that little doth expirate and breathe out straight; and of much foode the passages are stopped, and the excretion and voyding out of the menstruis is preuented and letted: and for those causes the menstruis are specially suppressed and stopped, the whole body being euill affected. Also they are in like manner withholden and stopped, when the wombe it selfe is afflicted with a particular disease or vice: which thing chanceth to the wombe sometime through hote or cold distemper of the same. Also many times the purgation of the menstruis is letted through hardnesse ingendred in the mouth of the matrice, or through some excrescence and growing vp of a peece of flesh, or also through abundant fatnesse. Also to some by and by in the beginning, certaine filmes or thinne skinnes ingendred about the necke or entrie of the matrice; to other some the scarres of vlcers which haue bene before in the wombe, haue stopped the mouthes of the vessels which carried bloud into the wombe. To some after the abortion of the wombe (the mouth of it being exulcerate, and afterward healed and brought to a scarre) there commeth conioyning and compaction of it, which besides that it letteth all other transpirations of the wombe, it also stoppeth the excretion and voyding out of bloud. Moreouer, stubburne carefulnesse, immoderate feare, and great sorrow, do stoppe the menstruis.

Signa. There followeth suppression and stopping of the menstruis, heauinesse of the whole bodie, desire to vomite, abhorring of meate, and certaine terrible discursions, such as chance to those that haue conceiued. Moreouer, there be paines about the loynes, thighes, necke, the hinder part of the eyes, and the fore part of the head. Also there follow continuall feuers, and blackish vrine, with certaine red atter and filth in them, euen like as one should mixe soote with the water wherein new killed flesh hath lately bene washed. Also to many either the vrine doth come forth difficultly, or else it is stopped altogether. The diuersitie of causes is knowne partly by the disposition of the whole body,

Cold distemper. and partly also for the most part, by the telling of the patient. Women may know a cold distemper in themselues, by these signes specially, because they be more sleepie and slower to all kind of mouing, and whiter of colour, and as it were of a leadie colour. Moreouer their vrine is waterie, and such like

Hote distemper. signes appeare which are often rehearsed before. The tokens of hote distemper are cleane contrary to these signes of a cold distemper before rehearsed.

Plenitudo. Signes of fulnesse, besides those that may be gathered out of the former Chapters, are wont specially to be these: that women that are vexed therewith, are grieued most in the time of the menstruis, and they feele vehement paine about the loynes and the priuie members, and their veines are swolne vp very great. The cure is diuers, according to the diuersitie of causes. For if a cold

Curatio. Cure of cold distemper. distemper of the liuer or wombe do stop the flowing of the menstruis, it must be cured and driuen away by contraries: that is, with meates and medicines that do heate. Therefore you must giue vnto them hote meates, and wine that is yellow, odoriferous, and old. Also you must prescribe to them exercises, and you must minister other things which can helpe the body. Aboue other, these things that follow are good, Penyroyall, Thime, Calamint, Sothernwood,

wood, Diptaine, roote of *Ireos*, *Cassia*, Gladon, *Asarum*, and Saueine: of which you may make decoctions and foments. Also you must minister vnto them fasting, after a bath, pure wine hote. Also the meete and conuenient times to take these medicines be first, if the patient drinke straight way, when the time of purgation is at hand: secondly, if she drinke straight after a bath, fomentation, or annoinating, that the medicine helping the bodie being yet hote and loose, may shew his strength and effect the more easily and continually. Women that be too hote, and vse much exercise, haue no need of curing: for it were better to the safegard of their proper health, to prescribe them such a diet whereby their bodies should be so dried, that the menstruis should not need to be purged: but this were against conception: for they do not conceiue which be not purged. Therefore for conceptions sake, and for because that almost all women keepe an vndiscrecte diet, purgations be necessarie. Therefore it is good also to adioyne the cure, whereby the menstruis that are stopped through hote distemperature may be brought out. Women therefore that be hote, and vse many exercises, must chiefly be made moister by moist meates and drinkes taken in good quantitie, as be soupings of Ptisan, and of *Alica*, and meats that are made of Lambes flesh, Kids flesh, and fishes that be tender, birds of mountaines, and milke. Let their pot-herbs be Lettuce and Gourds, and their fruit new Figges. They must vse white wine that is not very old, and let it be alayed. Also bathes of sweete water are good: and to conclude, that diet ascribed to them that haue the feuer hecticke, is to be prescribed to these. If the menstruis be with-holden and stopped by reason of the fulnesse that vexeth the woman, and if nothing else do let it, you must begin the cure with letting of bloud. And you must cut the veines of the anckles, or of the hammes, and that not before the accustomed time of the menstruis. Neither will it be vnprofitable if cupping glasses be fastened to the legs. The bloud being emptied, minister potions which can prouoke menstruis, and apply fomentations, bathes, and annointings of other things which we will describe hereafter. But if there be no fulnesse, but onely grosse and flegmaticke humours do stoppe the flowing of the menstruis, first you must minister medicines which can cut and diuide the aforesaid humours, and prepare them and make them easier to be expelled and purged out: as is this decoction: ℞. the rootes of Gladon, *Ireos*, Parcely, and Spetage, ana. ℥ j. of the seedes of *Apium*, Fennell, *Bruscus*, Anise, *Daucus*, Ammi, and Nettles, an. ℥. j. Calamint, Wormewood, ana. M. ß. Origan, Sothernewood, Mugwort, Penitoiall, *Asarum*, ana. M. j. Hysope, M. j. ß. chosen Cinamon, ℥ j seeth all these in a conueniant quantitie of water, vntil the third part be consumed: then straine it, and make the licour of that decoction sweete with Sugar, and clarifie it with the white of an Egge, putting into it of the sirupes of Calamint, of Hysope, and of Horehound, ana. ℥. j. ß. and make a potion, whereof minister daily in the morning, the weight of ℥. iiij. When that decoction is drunke vp, minister some purging medicine: as is, *Hierapicra*, *Diaphœnicon*, and *Electuarium Nidum*, pilles of Garlicke, of *Benedicta*, or such like. After purging, the patient must vse exercises, and frictions of the neather parts, and specially walkings. Moreouer, apply fomentations, and bathings made of Cammomill, Mother-

Cure of hote distemper.

Cure of fulnes.

Purgatio.

Exercises.

Foments.

wort, Mints, & other things rehearsed in the decoction abouesaid. Also annoint the patient with this ointment: ℞. of the oiles of Lillies, and Rew. ana. ℥. j. Motherwort with the thin leaues, Peniroyall, Calamint, ana. ℈. j. roote of *Ireos* ℈. ij. Hysope, Origan, an. ℈. iij. with waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment.

Vnguentum.

After this, for the cause abouesaid, minister medicines which can straightway prouoke and bring forth the menstruis being stopped, such as these be: Mirrhe, *Castoreum*, Laurell berries, Madder, Pepper, Sage, Saueine, *Cassia*, and such other, which be rehearsed before of vs. This medicine is notable good, ℞. *Castoreum* ℥. j. wild Mints beaten into powder, ℥. ß. old wine, or *Mulsa* ℥. iiij. commixe them together, & minister it hote after a bath. Also the decoction of Peniroyall, Mugwort, Rew, Comin, *Daucus*, Sage, Dill, *Ammeos*, Fennell, *Aenula campana*, & such like are good. Also Calamint beaten into powder, the weight of ℥. ij. or Saueine, the weight of ℥. j. drunke in wine or *Mulsa*, is very good. Moreouer Trochisks of Mirrhe do maruellously profit. Also wine wherein Wormewood hath bene infused or sodden, must be drunke all the time of the cure. Also you must vse to put pessaries into the wombe, if that necessitie so require it, such as this is: ℞. of *Triphera magna* that is without *Opium*, ℥. j. of the meale of *Ernum*, *Nigella*, Mather, Mugwort, Peniroyall, ana. ℈. j. ß. iuyce of Rew, ℥. ij. commixe them together, & make a pessarie, and put it in with Woll or Cotton. Or this pessary: ℞. Mirrhe, *Bdellium*, *Storax*, ana. ℥. j. Calamint, Sothernwood and Wormwood, an. ℥. j. ß. roots of Gladon & Mather, ana. ℥. j. seed of *Nigella*, dry Rew, Laurel berries, an. ℈. ij. Saueine, ℈. j. *Castoreum*, ℈. ß beate all these to fine powder, & commix them with hony, or *Triphera*, or *Mithridatum*, & make pessaries to put into the womans priuities. Also you must cast into the wombe hot oiles, as is oiles of *Ireos*, Lillies, Laurell, & such like. Also it is good to vse suffumigations made of *Storax*, *Galbanum*, Frankinsence, *Bdellium*, the roote of *Aristolochia*, Mugwort, Cloues, Cinamon, & such like: examples whereof you shall find in our book of making medicines. Moreouer the wombe must be euaporated and fomented with odoriferous things, as with Marioram, Sauory, Calamint, Cammomill, Peniroyall, Mugwort, roote of *Ireos*, and such like sodden in a pot, which you must couer with a couering that hath a hole bored through it, wherin you must put a reed or some other pipe; and you must annoint it round about aloft, that the woman sitting thereon, may be fométed with it. Also it will profit if the woman sit in this decoction vp to the nauell, and after receiue the pessaries before rehearsed. Fat women must be cured with a diet that can extenuate, & with swift exercises, & other medicines which can make the body slender and leane: as be continuall deiection & solution of the belly, ointments that haue vertue to euaporate and breathe out, & such like, which be abundantly intreated of by *Galen l.* 14. *Ther. meth. cap.* 15. *l.* 6. *De tuenda sanitate*. Those which are not purged of their menstruis through leanesse of the body, whether it chance through sicknes or any other meanes, you must first recreate & refresh them, & restore the flesh of their bodies by a conuenient diet, and by other medicines, which *Galen* rehearsed in the places aforesaid. And if they waxe fleshy, there is good hope that the menstruis will burst out by their owne accord, which if they do not come forth alone, then you shall prouoke them by potions, foments, and other medicines aboue rehearsed. If the menstruis do not flow,

To prouoke menstruis.

A notable medicine.

Pessus.

Alius.

Suffitus.

Cure of fat women.

Cure of leane women.

flow, becauſe of ſome diſeaſe and vice of the wombe, firſt you muſt cure the euill that is cauſed of the ſtopping of the menſtruis: and after that you muſt proceed to the prouocation and purging of the menſtruis. The cure of the diſeaſes of the wombe muſt be ſought out of their proper places. *Cure if it be of vice of the wombe.*

CHAP. LIIII.

Of flowing of the menſtruis.

WE ſay, that menſtruis do redound and ouerflow in women, when that great plenty of them do flow out longer then the accuſtomed time of their purgation. There is no iuſt or certaine time of their purgation: for to moſt women they flow two or three daies, to many fiue dayes, & to ſome ſeuē daies. The menſtruis do chance to flow out of meaſure, through great or ſmal veſſels opened wide, or broken. Alſo immoderate purgations do ingender in women ſometime through grieuous trauell in childbirth, which alſo do ceaſſe oftentimes of themſelues. Oftentimes after abortion they labour of a vehement purgation & fluxe of menſtruis, & ſomtime it bringeth them into a dangerous perill. If the greater veſſels be broken or open, the bloud floweth out guſhing on heaps: but if the leſſer be open, it floweth out by litle & litle, & not in great quantitie. If it be cauſed through eating or gnawing, it doth not onely flow by litle & litle, but alſo it floweth with very great paine. Moreouer when the menſtruis flow immoderately, there followeth a filthie colour, the feet are puffed vp with a light ſwelling, the ſtrength of the body is decayed, both the digeſtion and appetite of meat is corrupted: & in all points ſuch ſignes as were wont to follow immoderate voiding of bloud, either by the hemorhoides, or by anie other fluxe of bloud, do follow in this diſeaſe. Firſt therefore in the beginning of the cure, you muſt bind the places between the ioynts & the extreme parts of the body with bands, beginning at the armholes & the ſhares. Alſo you muſt faſten great cupping glaſſes lightly vnder the paps, as *Hippocrates* teacheth, 5. *Aphor.* 20. Alſo they muſt vſe meats and drinks that be ſharpe and reſtrictiue, as is Rice, and ſuch like: and let the ſicke rather eate roſted meats then ſodden: and ſpecially ſuch fleſh as is of nature able to drie vp, as be birds that liue on mountaines, & wild beaſts. They muſt abſtaine from mouing, and wine, and in ſteed of it they muſt vſe ſome reſtrictiue potion, or *Poſca*, nor cold but warme. Moreouer, you muſt miniſter reſtrictiue medicines in drinke, as theſe ſimples be following. ℞. Pomegranate flowers, *Hypociſchis*, *Acatia*, Corall, *Lycium*, *terra Lemnia*, Gall-s, Knotgraſſe, both the *Conſolidae*, the ſtone *Hæmatites*, ſhells of Maſt, Plantain, Barbaries, & ſuch like. Compound medicins be theſe following, as ſyrupes of Roſes, Mirtles, trochiſks of Amber, & of *terra Lemnia*. Alſo theſe pils following are maruellous good to ſtop & reſtraine the menſtruis, ℞. *terra Lemnia*, Bole armoniack, Frankinſence, Maſticke, Gals, ana ℈ ij Dragons bloud, the ſtone *Hæmatites*, ana ℈. j. Harts tong burnt, ʒ. j. *Hypociſchis*, *Acatia*, red Corall, ana ʒ. ß. Pomegranate flowers, red Roſes, ana. ℈. ij. Amber, ℈. j. commixe thē with ſirupe of Mirtles, & make pils, whereof miniſter the weight of one drachme or ʒ ß. Alſo fomēt the place ontwardly with the oiles of Roſes, Mirtles, Quinces, & ſharpe wine. And apply ointments, emplaiſters, cerots, and reſtrictiue Epithemes, whereof you ſhall find many before in the Chapters. *Cauſe.* *Signs.* *Curatio.* *To reſtraine menſtruis.* *Catapotia.*

of the fluxes, *Dysenteria*, *Diarrhæa*, and *Lienteria*. Also insessions made of the decoctions of the aforesaid medicines be good. Also you must vse such medicines as are cast into the wombe with an instrument. For the which purpose iuyce of Plantaine is maruellously commended, wherewith *Galen* saith, in foure dayes he stopped a fluxe of the wombe that could be stopped with no other medicine. The quantitie that must be throwne in, should be the measure of one cyath. Of the same effect be the iuice of Knotgrasse, or Nightshade, or *Hypochisthis*, or *Acatia*, or such like cast in. Also the vsing of pessaries is not to be despised: among which this is specially praised: ℞. of Frankinsence, Pomegranate flowers, and Galles, ana. ℥. j. of Gumme Arabicke, *Acatia*, Amber, Harts horne burnt, ana. ℥. ij. Bolearmoniacke, ℈. ij. beate all these to fine powder, and mixe it with wooll dipped in oyle of Roses, and put it into the wombe.

Insessus.

Pessulus.

CHAP. LV.

Of womans fluxe.

VTERI *fluor* in Latin, fluxe of the matrice in English, is a continuall distillation, and flowing out for a long time, of the whole bodie purging it selfe. That which is voided out, doth represent such forme and colour as the humour that doth abound in the bodie. For some is red, as bloud putrified, or atter: some white, which commeth of fleame: some is pale, which signifieth choler: and some is waterie, which is of a wheyish matter. And if pure bloud come forth, as in the cutting of a veine, you must take good heede that some erosion and gnawing be not ingendred in the wombe. By these signes following the fluxe is knowne. The places are continually moist with the humours, being diuers in colours. The patient is ill coloured, she sauoureth no meate, but abhorreth it: in walking she breatheth difficultly, her eyes be swollen, sometime with paine and sometime without paine, or with exulceration or without it; and either with an inflammation, that is, with the vlcer, or else it is filthie or vnpure. The diuersitie of causes you may know by the colour of that that floweth foorth, as is aforesaid. And if a woman be vexed with a red fluxe, in the beginning, if age and other things will suffer it, you must come to letting of bloud. For many incommodities would follow if you should first go about to represse and stoppe the rage and violence of the bloud that floweth, as the Dropsie, vice of the sinewes, or of the mouth of the stomacke, or of the head. You may part the times of your bloud letting as you do in them that spit bloud, so that thereby the auersion and turning away of the bloud may be the longer a little. You must cut a veine in the arme. After this you must binde the extreme parts of the bodie with bands, and you must vse and apply all such things as can turne the fluxe of the humor another way. Therefore all those remedies that be rehearsed of vs in the former Chapters be good. Let her whole diet be restrictiue, and such as doth ingender grossenesse and thickenesse. Let her drinke be water, or if she be weake, wine that is grosse and restrictiue. But if the fluxe that is white or wheyish do vexe a woman, it may not be stopped at the beginning, that euill humours may be purged out of the bodie. Nor also it is not against reason, seeing

Causæ.

Signa.

Cure of the red fluxe.

Victus ratio.

Cure of a flux that is white and atterie.

seeing that that which is flowed out is ingendred of fleame, if you do minister a medicine to her which doth purge fleame. And you must minister and apply to the whole body, medicines and remedies which do drie vp, seeing that the disease is moist. Therefore exercises specially of the vpper parts, and frictions are good. Also they must eate flesh which hath vertue in it to drie, as birds of the mountaines, and wild beasts. Also in the beginning of the euill, such medicines may be ministred as do extenuate grosse humours, and after that do bring them out with the vrine, as be, *Asarum*, Fennell, *Apium*, and such like, often rehearsed before. The beginning being past, you must apply to the wombe things that be moderately restrictiue, as be, oiles of Roses and Quinces, and other rehearsed in the former Chapter. Also you must vse absterstue and scouring medicines, lest that vlceration be made with the humour that floweth: wherefore the wheyish humour must continually be washed with hote water. After the scouring and cleansing of the filth, you must annoint with oile of Roses, or of Quinces, or of Mirtles. Likewse, when a woman is diseased with pale fluxe, it may not be stopped at the beginning, but the body must be purged with a medicine that purgeth choler. Then you must studie how to pull backe and turne away the humour, and you must vse other restrictiue medicines, not neglecting absterstue and scouring things, whereof you shall haue speciall need because of the sharpenesse of the humour. Moreouer to conclude, when the fluxe ceasleth, they must long abstaine from swift goings and walkings, from much frictions and rubbings of the belly and the loynes, also from eating of sharpe things, from things that heate, and from such things as do prouoke vrine.

Cure of a pale and cholericke fluxe.

CHAP. LVI.

Of Strangling of the Wombe.

SVFFOCATION or strangling of the wombe, is nothing elsse but a drawing backe of it vp to the vpper parts. It is caused through stretching out of it, which is ingendred of fulnesse that followeth after the retention and stopping of menstruis. For in women, the wombe when it is reached and stretched out, it runneth not to another place like a wandring beast, but is drawne backe through the extension. Also it chanceth oftentimes through the seed that is restrained. Also many times it chanceth through cold which happened to the wombe at the time that the purgation of the menstruis is ministred. Also sometime it commeth through some hard abortion, or when as any hath hasted to stop suddenly a fluxe of bloud flowing from the wombe. They that are vexed with this disease, when the fit is nigh, there followeth heauinesse of mind, slowenesse, weakenesse of the legges, paleness of face, and a sorrowfull countenance. But when the suffocation and strangling is now present, there followeth disposition to sleepe, doting, a withholding of the instruments of the senses, the voice doth waxe dumbe, and the legges are drawne vp together; the pulses are small and weake. Also oftentimes they are altogether stopped. Also in many the breath that should come out of the mouth and nostrils, is stopped altogether, and yet that which is in the arteries doth remaine still. When the euill doth ceasse, the balles of the cheekes beginne to waxe

Causæ.

Signa.

red, and the eyes be lifted vp and opened. Also a certaine humiditie and moistneſſe, that one may by feeling perceiue to run out of the wombe of women, and the bowels do make a noiſe: and alſo the wombe it ſelfe is a little looſened, and ſo their mind, ſenſes, and mouing cometh to them againe. This diſeaſe cometh by courſes at certaine times, as the falling ſickneſſe doth, and that chanceth when the matrice (as is aforeſaid) is filled with ſeed, or ſome ſome other matter that putrifieth and rotteth in it. When the wombe it ſelfe is diſeaſed with the quantitie or qualitie of any thing, then menſtruis, or ſeed, or other kind of ſymptomes are ingendred. If that which is able to coole the whole body do cauſe this diſeaſe, the body is ſo vehemently cooled, that both breathing and arteries beating cannot be perceiued by the ſenſes. Which humour, if it be either groſſe or ſharpe, it cauſeth conuulſions or crampes: but if it haue the nature of melancholy, it cauſeth ſorrow and ſadneſſe, and deſection of mind, refrigeration and paine of the ſtomach. This kind of diſeaſe ingendreth in all ſeaſons, but ſpecially in Winter and Autumne: and moſt commonly yong folke, and ſuch as be prone to lecherie, and barren, ſpecially if they be made ſo by medicines, be moſt taken with this diſeaſe. Many do recouer from this diſeaſe, and many againe do periſh ſuddenly in the very fit, or at the leaſt way within few houres after. That chanceth when the pulſes be ſwift and inordinate, and then do leaue off and vaniſh cleane away. At the laſt a cold humour in little quantitie doth bedew and moiſten the skinne aloft. In the fits therefore you muſt bind the extreame parts, and beſides the bindings, you muſt rubbe the legs and all the whole body, and do euen as you would recouer one that is ſwounded. And you muſt place the ſicke with her necke & ſhoulders bending, and riſing vpward, and with her thighs and ſhare leaning downeward. You muſt apply to her noſtrils ſtinking things, as the ſnuffe of a candle newly put out, feathers, ſpecially of Partriches, burnt, or Wooll burnt, or ſoles of ſhoes, or ſhales of Garlicke or Onions: alſo haire burnt, and ſpecially if they be the haires of the ſicke, or Goats horne burnt. Alſo pitch melted vpon the coales, *Galbanum* or *Caſtoreum*, or ſuch like. Alſo you may hold a chamber veſſell with old vrine at their noſe, or old linnen clothes dipped in Brimſtone and burned: and you muſt perfume the priuities beneath with odoriferous things, as be *Storax*, wood of *Aloes*, Cinamon, Cloues, and ſuch like. And it is good to faſten cupping glaſſes with much flame, and lightly, to the parts aboue the priuie members, and to the bottome of the belly. As ſoone as the fit doth come, you muſt apply foments, and little bags warmed, to the bottome of the belly and ſhare, for you ſhall ſcarcely find a more preſent remedie in the coming of the fit of this diſeaſe. And you ſhall make them of both the Motherworts, and with Origan, Betony, Cammomill, Calamint, Wormewood, Penitroyall, Linſeed, Louage ſeed, and ſuch like. And if the fit be prolonged, you muſt alſo adde to ſuch things as are good to diſſolue and bring out windines: wherof you ſhall find example & meanes out of the Chapters of windineſſe of the ſtomach, and paine of the Cholick. Alſo then you muſt poure into the wombe, both ointments and oiles that be very odoriferous, as is, oyles of Spike, and *Ireos*, & ſuch like. Alſo let a midwife dip her fingers in theſe oiles, and then put them into the mouth of the matrice, rubbing it long and eaſily, that

How to do in the fit.

Sacculi.

that through that prouoking the grosse and clammie humour may be auoided out. Also let the woman be raised with loud callings, and call her loud by her proper name. Also at this time you must minister those things that cause sneezing, as be, Pepper, *Castoreum*, *Struthium*, and such like. There be some that thinke it good to vse insessions made of the decoction of Laurell berries and leaues, Pennioiall, Calamint, Motherwort, Horehound, Saueine, *Althæa*, Cammomill, *Serpillum*, *Ireos*, *Aristolochia*, and Fenugreeke. But in the time of the insessions, we may not omit the cure of the braine, but you must irrigate and sprinkle the head with oile of Roses and Vineger. But I iudge, that you must rather vse foments and litle bags then insessions, specially when as for the most part, although thou wouldest neuer so faine, thou canst not vse insessions in this euill. When the fit resteth and is ceassed, compell the patient to vomit: for all vomites do lighten, but specially such as are vexed with meate. The third day after, you must apply cupping glasses with scarification to the loynes, and the ilions. After the seuenth day minister the purgation of *Hiera Colocynthide*, or pils of Agaricke, and by and by come to the drinking of *Castoreum*, which being continually drunke, it deliuereth the patient straightway from this euill. Also you must minister euery day thereof, ℥ j. sometime with *Mulsa*, sometime with the decoction of Motherwort, and sometime minister it with thin wine. Therefore at this time, rather then in time of the fit (as is said) it is lawfull for you to vse insessions & pessaries that do mollifie, made of Goose grease, *Storax*, Masticke, gumme Armoniacke, and such like. Also the wombe must be perfumed beneath with such things as do heat, and haue vertue to bring out winde. Therefore vse this perfume specially: ℞. of the Trochisks of *Gallia* & *Alipta Muscata*, ana. ℥ j ß. *Storax*, ℥ iij. Cloues, Maces, ana. ℥ j. wood of *Aloes*, ℈ ij. Cinamon chosen, leaues of Laurell, ana ℥ ij. *Laudanum*, ℥ ij ß. beate them into powder, and commixe them with *Storax liquida*, and make Trochiskes for perfumes. In the meane season, let the woman be content with very litle meat and drinke, & let all her diet be exsiccatorie and drying vp. This cure following is to be vsed in the fits of this disease. In restoring and recreating the whole bodie, specially if that the disease hath endured long, you must begin oftentimes with bloud-letting, specially if the menstruis haue bene stopped, and letted of their purging. Then you must come to purging with *Hierapicra*. The purging being done, you must fasten on cupping glasses lightly, but with much flame, and you must draw them off violently. Also sometime the places may be scarified, and strew vpon the scarification, Salt: then you must heale it with conuenient medicines. Also you may apply very well *synapismes*, and dropaces made of *Euphorbium*, Pellitorie, Pepper, and Mustard seed. Also a good diet doth helpe much, as, deambulations in the morning, gestations and carryings in a cart, or in a ship, or on a beast, be good. Also, after they be moued with carrying about, crying out loud, distinct & apt reading is conuenient. Also annointings and trictions vsed now and then are good. Baths of sweet water are seldome to be admitted, and not, but because it should scoure and cleanse the filth. It is very good to vse natural bathes, which flow by nature, and this is as it were the very last refuge. Aboue others those baths are good which be in *Badeniæ*, in the base Germanie, in *Marchia*. And our Bathes at Bathe, and at

What must be done straight after the fit.

Trochiskes of perfumes.

Diet.

Cure of the whole bodie.

Buckſtones in Darbiſhire, and there is a bath neare Newmarket in Suffolke, at a towne called Exning, they be all very good; but if they go to any of theſe baths, they muſt take heed of cold.

CHAP. LVII.

Of falling out of the wombe.

WE ſay, that the matrice falleth out, when it is ſo turned downward that it ſticketh out outwardly; and yet the whole matrice rolleth not downe, being looſened from the bands & ligaments, as many vnwiſe folke do thinke; for if it ſhould fall downe ſo, it could not be reſtored againe. Although the wombe do fall out but ſeldome, yet there be many cauſes of the falling out of it. For, a woman falling from a high place, if ſhe fall on her haunches, *Cauſe.* the pannicles and filmes that hold vp the womb, and the members adioyning, do breake, and cauſe this diſeaſe. Alſo it chanceth many times that in a ſore trauell of child-birth the wombe falleth out, becauſe of the drawing out of the ſecundine, which the wombe that ioyneth to it doth follow. Alſo many times it chanceth through negligent and vnskilfull drawing out of the child, ſpecially if it be dead. Moreouer it chanceth ſometimes through a ſtripe, or lifting vp of a great weight, or through vehement perturbation of the mind, as death of children, or coming of enemies or through perillous ſailing, or through ſome ſuch like cauſe, all the body being looſened, the wombe falleth out. Alſo ſometime this euill chanceth (all the wombe being looſened) through reſolution or weaknes of the pannicles and muſcles, which thing chanceth ſpecially to them that be old. Oftentimes the wombe falleth out, through the flowing downe of an humour much in quantitie and clammy. It falleth out moſt commonly by the mouth of it, and that which falleth out, is like to the egs of an Oſtrich, differing onely in this, that it is bigger, or leſſe in quantitie. There is no need *Signa.* of many ſignes, becauſe the diuerſitie of cauſes may partly be knowne by the conſtitution and ſtate of the bodie, and partly by the telling of the ſicke, and them that be with them daily. When this diſeaſe is but newly begun, you muſt *Curatio.* endeuour to put vp the wombe againe, and to reſtore it into his owne place: for in the beginning it will be obedient to be put vp readily, and being in his owne place, it will tarry ſo ſtill, ſpecially if age agree vnto it. For in them that are well ſtriken in age, the wombe being put vp againe, it ſlideth out againe through euery light cauſe. It is good therefore, if there be hard dung in the right gut, to bring it out with a clyſter. Likewiſe if vrine be gathered in the bladder, let it be brought out with a cyring, that the matrice may be at free libertie on each ſide: for otherwiſe it chanceth by their ſtretching out, that the matrice which is in the midſt between thē, is preſſed together, & pent in a ſtrait place, and ſo when it is fallen out, they let it and ſtop it, that it cannot be put vp againe into his owne place. When you haue thus done, you muſt lay the ſicke vpright, ſo that her hanches may lye higheſt, her hammes bowed, and her legs ſpread abroad: then you muſt bathe & nouriſh abundantly that part of the matrice which is fallen out, with warme Oile, or Butter, or Mallowes ſodden, or with the decoction of *Althæa*, Fenugreeke, Lineſeede, or ſuch like: and you muſt prepare Wooll together on a heap, in figure and thickneſſe according to the

proportion of the member, and wind it about aloft with a fine and pure linnen cloth: then dippe it in the iuices of *Acatia* or *Hypociſchu* infuſed in wine, and put it into the wombe, and you ſhall wreſt and writh vpward all that which is fallen downe by little and little, and without violence, vntill the matrice be put vp into his owne proper place. Outwardly you muſt couer the parts about the priuie members with a ſponge wrong out of *Poſca*. The woman ſhall lie with her legges ſtretched out and ioyned together, that the one may leane vpon the other. But it is more ſafegard to bind the feete together, bringing the band vp to the knees. But if that part of the matrice which is fallen out, be ſwollen through continuance of time, and be ſtuffed vp with plentie of humours, ſo that the ſwelling do let the putting vp of it, you ſhall nouriſh it with decoction of Beetes, and then you muſt cleanſe it and waſh it with Vineger, and ſtrew in it Salt finely powdered; and when it leaueth ſwelling, then put it vp as is aforeſaid. Then faſten cupping glaſſes with much flame to the nauell, and both the ilions or ſmall guts: and apply continually to the noſe odoriferous things. The third day (the wooll being as yet ſtill in the wombe) let the woman ſit in blacke ſoure wine a litle warmed, or in the decoction of Mirtles, Bramble leaues, Pomegranate rindes, and ſuch like. This being done, let her lye vpright againe with her haunches higheſt; then take the former wooll out, and put in ſuch another in the ſtead of the firſt, dipped in the ſame medicine. Alſo apply cataplaſmes and emplaiſters outwardly to the bottome of the belly, made of Dates, Pomegranate rindes, Lentils, and ſuch like. Alſo Cerotes that are made of Maſticke, wood of *Aloes*, *Ladanum*, Frankenſence, Squinant, *Acorus*, Nutmegs, gumme *Tragacanthe*, and ſuch like, are good to be applyed. But let theſe things be changed euery third day, vntill the cure be ended perfectly. Alſo during the whole time of the cure, let the woman eſchue mouing, and ſuch things as prouoke ſneezing. And the wombe muſt be perfumed beneath with ſtinking things, but to the noſe you muſt apply moſt odoriferous things; for the matrice flieth from ſtinking things, and it followeth and embraceth odoriferous things. Let her meats be ſuch as ingender good iuice, & giue her odoriferous wines. Alſo the belly muſt be made ſoft & ſoluable, leſt if ſhe ſhould go to the ſtoole difficultly, the matrice ſhould alſo fall out againe. But yet you muſt take good heed that the belly be not too much looſened, for then the parts adioyning are looſened, and ſo the matrice will fall out againe. Moreouer if that part of the womb which is fallen out, hath through continuance of time by negligence bene putrified and rotten, and through continuall wetting of it with vrine & filthineſſe ſticking in it, it be exulcerated, you muſt cut off and ſeare that which is vnprofitable, or burne it without any feare of danger: for it hath bin knowne (as *Paulus* teſtifieth) that the whole matrice, becauſe it was rotted, hath bene taken away, and the woman liued ſtill. *Victus ratio.*

CHAP. LVIII.

Of the Mole of the matrice.

MOLA in Latine is called of *Aetius* & *Paulus*, a ſwelling that is hardened, ſometime in the mouth and entry of the matrice, and ſometime it ſticketh out in all the matrice, and in feeling it is almoſt like a ſtone. *Galen* in li. 14.

Cauſe. *Ther. meth.* deſineth, *Mola* to be a peece of fleſh without ſhape. This diſeaſe is cauſed of womans ſeede, and much menſtruous bloud flowing into the matrice, and there kept, reſtrained and ſtopped, which immoderate heate doth ioyne together, and changeth it into the forme and faſhion of fleſh. There

Signa. followeth this euill, a hard ſwelling, with contraction & drawing vp of the ſides, ſhenderneſſe of the body, euill colour, loſſe of appetite, and ſuppreſſion of the menſtruis. Alſo in this euill the pappes do ſwel, ſo that at the firſt it cauſeth ſome to ſuſpect that the woman is conceiued with child, but in proceſſe of time it may be diſcerned. For paine followeth the *Mola*, cauſing pricking, neither is there any mouing perceiued in this diſeaſe, as is in conception. Many of them do make a ſuſpition of the Dropſie, but yet there is a difference betweene them two: becauſe the ſwelling is hard, and doth not giue place to the thruſting of the hand and finger, as the Dropſie doth, nor maketh a noiſe as the Timpany doth. But yet often in proceſſe of time, the Liuer is cooled, and the Dropſie ingendreth. This euill for the moſt part is incurable, except remedies be ap-

Curatio. plied in the beginning. But howſoeuer it chanceth, the cure may not be neglected, but you muſt apply and miniſter all things that ſeeme to be good for it. But firſt of all you muſt giue her meates that ingender good iuice, and let her vſe moderate drinking of wine. Let not the woman vſe vehement mouing, for that will cauſe the fluxe to the diſeaſe, but let her vſe geſtations, and carryings, and deambulations, and bathes, and in her lying, let her feete be higheſt. In the meane ſeaſon if fulneſſe be preſent, you muſt cut a veine of the arme, and then you muſt purge her by *Pilulæ fœtidæ*. When the bodie is purged and emptied, apply cataplaſmes, foments inſeſſions, peſſaries, ointments and cerots, which haue vertue and power to diſſolue and looſen, as they be that are made of *Althæa*, Mallowes, Cammomill, Melilot, Fenugreeke, Lineſeed, & ſuch like. For this purpoſe alſo it is good to apply *vnguentum Dialthæa*, or *emplaſtrum*

Vnguentum. *Diachylon ſimplex*, or apply this ointment, ℞ of the oile of ſweet Almonds, ℥. iij. oile of Lillies, ℥. ij ß. Gooſe greaſe, and Hens greaſe, ana. ℥. j. ß. muſcilage of Lineſeed and Fenugreek, ana. ℥. j of the gummes, *Ammoniacum* & *Bdellium*, ana. ℥. ij. root of *Althæa*, *Nigella* ſeeds, and *Daucus*, ana. ℈. ij. diſſolue the gums in wine, and with Waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. Alſo you

Peſſus. muſt put in Peſſaries made with Butter, Swines greaſe, Harts marrow, Raiſins, fat Figs, Lineſeed, and Fenugreeke. After this you muſt miniſter ſuch medicines as can prouoke menſtruis: for which purpoſe beſides thoſe things that we re-

Morſuli. hearſed in the Chapter of ſtopping of menſtruis, this medicine is good, ℞. the powders of *Diacinamonum*, *Diagalanga*, *Diacuminum*, ana. ℥. ß. powder of Diamber, ℈. j. powder of *Dialacca*, ℈ ß. Cinamon choſen, S. Iohns wort, *Calamus aromaticus*, *Aſarum*, roote of Gladon, Anniſe ſeed, ana. ℈. j. ſeed of Rew, Ginger, Motherwort, Horehound, *Dictamus*, Sage, ana. ℈. ß. Sugar diſſolued in the waters of Motherwort, and S. Iohns wort, as much as is ſufficient, & make lozenges, whereof miniſter daily the weight of two or three ℥. Alſo it is good

Peſſus. to put in this peſſary, ℞. of the roote of *Aſarum*, Gladon, and Madder, ana. ℥. ij. ſeed of Rew, *Nigella*, ana ℥. ß. Maioram, Nutmegs, Cloues, Laurel berries, ana. ℥. j. Saueine, ℈. j. *Caſtoreum*, *Euphorbium*, ana. ℈. ß powder them and ſearce them that haue need, and with Turpentine make a peſſarie. To conclude, you muſt

must vse medicines that can dissolue and looſen congealed bloud: for ſo there will follow excretion, and voiding out of much black bloud and clodded. Alſo it profiteth maruellouſly to the taking away of this diſeaſe, ſpecially if the euill haue continued long, to vſe naturall bathes, and ſuch as do ingender by themſelues, which haue vertue to diſſolue and diſcuſſe. Moreouer, many other remedies rehearſed in the Chapters of the Dropſie, may be vſed in this.

CHAP. LIX.

Of Inflammation of the wombe.

THe wombe is inflamed through many cauſes: as through a ſtripe, or retention and ſtopping of the menſtruis: alſo by abortion, exulceration, vnmeaſurable lecherie, ſitting on a very hard ſtoole, very long and ſwift deambulation and walking. Alſo ſometime it chanceth through cold, prohibition and letting the tranſpiration and breathing out. The companions to inflammation of the matrice be theſe: an acute feuer, paine of the head, the ſhare, the loynes, and the roots of the eyes: conuulſion and crampe of the armes, the fingers, and the necke, & declining of them contrary. Alſo paine of the ſtomacke, and ſhutting vp the mouth of the matrice, and pulſe that be ſmall and often. If the inflammation be feeble and ſmall, the aforeſaid ſignes will not be great and ſtrong, and the wombe will be vexed with greater paine. But if the inflammation be vehement, then the whole wombe is vexed with a panting paine, and all the ſignes will be the more vehement. If all the wombe be inflamed, it will be painfull all ouer, but if ſome part of it be vexed with an inflammation, then the paine is greateſt in that part. For if the hinder parts of it be vexed with inflammation, the paine will afflict the loynes moſt, and hard dung is withholden and ſtopped, becauſe then the right gut is preſſed together very much. If the former part be inflamed, then there is paine about the priuities, & the ſtrangury or difficulty in piſſing is ingendred, becauſe the bladder is preſſed together. If the ſides of it be inflamed, the parts aboue the priuy members are ſtretched out, and the legges are grieued, and difficultly moued. When inflammation afflicteth the mouth of the matrice, there is a paine in the *Abdomen*, and if you put in your finger, you ſhall feele the mouth hard, vnpleaſant, ſhut vp, and burning hote. In the beginning therefore of the cure, if neither age, nor ſtate of the bodie, nor time of the yeare do let it, you muſt cut the veine of the hams or of the ankles (if the inflammation came not after abortion, or great voyding of bloud.) Afterward you ſhall place the ſicke in a darke houſe, which is moderately warme, bidding her to be quiet, and prohibiting all mouing from her legges. Then you muſt rub the ſpace betweene the loynes, and alſo the extreme parts, that you may turne away the courſe of the fluxe from the wombe. For her meate, which muſt be little in quantitie, you muſt vſe Ptiſan broth and rere Egs: but there muſt be a day betweene: ſhe muſt abſtaine from drinking of wine, and for that ſhe muſt vſe the decoction of Cinamon, or hote water. Alſo the belly if it be not ſoluble enough of it ſelfe, muſt be waſhed and emptied by eaſie and mollifying clyſters. Outwardly you muſt apply vpon the loynes and about the ſhare, Wooll wet in Vineger wherein Roſes haue bene ſodden. Alſo

Cauſæ.

Signa.

Curatio.

Diet.

Localia.

Dates or Quinces ſodden in wine commixed with oyle of Roſes, is good to be applyed. Alſo you muſt apply cataplaſmes made with the meale of Linſeed, Fenugreeke, and with Melilot, Plantaine, Lintels, Knotgraſſe, Purſlaine, Singreene and ſuch like: and that ſpecially if the inflammation be of the nature of an *Eryſipelas*. Moreouer you muſt put into the matrice, woll moiſtened with oyle of Roſes, or Quinces, or in the iuyce of Purſlaine, or Singreene. When the inflammation beginneth to decline and ceaſſe, you muſt come to the vſing of thoſe things which haue vertue to releaſe, diſſolue and diſcuſſe. Therefore you muſt bid the patient ſit vp to the loynes in Fenugreeke ſodden, or in the decoctiõ of *Althæa*, Linſeed, Mallowes, & ſometime alſo Motherwort, Horehound & Sage. Alſo you ſhall annoint aboue the priuities, & the loynes, Barley meale with Fenugreeke and Linſeed ſodden in *Mulſa*, or the decoction of drie Figs. Alſo put in peſſaries made of Butter, Harts-marrow, Gooſe greaſe, Hens greaſe, and ſuch like. When the cure hath proceeded, ſundry meats and light will be much profitable. And when the declination of it is manifeſt, bring the ſicke to bathes, and giue her wine that is waterie and thinne.

CHAP. LX.

Of windineſſe in the Wombe.

Cauſæ. THe wombe is puffed vp through cold, or humors corrupt in it, or through abortion or ſore trauell in childbirth, the dore of it being ſhut, or a clod of bloud being in it, and ſtopping it Oftentimes the windineſſe ingendreth in the hollow bought and ſpace of it, ſometime in the boſome of it, which is euident to the ſenſes, & ſometime in the thinner parts of the ſubſtance of the wombe, not appearing to the ſenſes. There followeth this euill, ſwelling of the bottome of the belly, with hardneſſe & paine that pricketh, which goeth vp to the midriffe and the ſtomach: and yet neuertheleſſe it is ſtretched out on both ſides, ſometime to the ſhare, and ſometime the paine is in the loynes, and at the nauell, to whom alſo the head agreeth. Alſo many times wind breaketh out of the priuities, that the ſicke may feele it If therefore windineſſe be gathered in the hollowneſſe of the matrice, there is heard a certaine rumbling and noiſe in the bodie, ſuch as chanceth to the guts which are vexed with gripings: alſo if you beate your fingers on it, it maketh a noiſe like a timpanie. But when the windineſſe is contained in the thin and ſlender paſſages of the matrice, then they are vexed with more vehement paine, and harder to cure. This euill is cured *Curatio.* firſt if age, the region, and the time of the yeare do not let it, by bloud-letting, faſting, and purging with *Hierapicra Galeni:* which being done, you muſt vſe foments, and annointings with oyle of Rew, or with oyle wherein Dill hath bene ſodden. Alſo let her vſe ioſeſſions made of the decoction of Rew, Penyroyall, Calamint, Horehound, Motherwort, *Althæa*, and ſuch like. Alſo apply cataplaſmes, made of the ſeeds of *Apium*, Fennell, Caraway, Comin, Louage, *Daucus*, Anniſe, Fitches or Darnell meale, and ſuch like. Alſo you muſt powre into the wombe ſuch things as haue power to looſen and diſſolue windineſſe, as is, oyle of Rew, *Ammeos*, Origan, and the decoction of things before rehearſed. And if windineſſe be included and ſtopped through the meanes of a clod of bloud, after the vſing of the aforeſaid things, and ſpecially inſeſſions, let

let the Midwife put her finger being first annointed, into the womans priuities, and dissolue, and bring forth the clod easily and by little and little. And if the euill hath continued long, you must come to more effectuous remedies. Therefore you must vse liniments, emplaisters, and cerots that be stronger, as this is, ℞. Sothernwood, Origan, and Calamint, ana. ℥.ij. seed of Tutsan, ℈.ij. of Centorie the lesse, ℥ j. Caraway seeds, *Amni*, ana. ℈.ß. *Cassia*. ℈. j. *Bdellium*, Armoniacke, ana ℥ j.ß. oile of Rew and Dill, ana. ℥.j. with Waxe and Turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a cerote and applyie it to the wombe: also sometime you must proceed to the vse of Synapismes and Dropaces. Also cupping glasses may be fastened to the places lightly in a circuite, and must be pulled away violently, for these do helpe as it were a charme. Also sometime scarification must be made: and you must vse such things altogether as haue power to draw out, and call forth from the bottome to the toppe. Also, for her diet you must minister foode that doth attenuate and dissolue windinesse, and minister medicines also that haue the same vertue, as *Diamson*, and *Diacuminum*, and *Diacalaminthes*, and such like. *Cerotum.*

CHAP. XLI.

Of exulceration of the wombe.

THe matrice sometime is exulcerate, because of hard child-birth, or drawing out of the childe, or through corrupting of the matrice, or through sharpe medicines, or fluxes, or through impostumes or botches broken. They that haue this disease do feele a pricking paine in the agrieued part, and at certaine times stinking and atterie humours are sent out from the filthie vlcer: and other signes proper to the diseases of the wombe do follow, as headach, and specially of the fore-part of the head, of the great sinews in the necke; and at the rootes of the eyes is felt paine, which also extendeth vnto the fingers ends, and other tokens declared before in the Chapters of inflammation of it. Therefore if the vlcer may be seene, it may be knowne by an instrument called *Specillum Oricularium*: But if it be deepe within and hidden, those things which come from it will declare it: for a diuerse humour is sent forth. If the vlcer be inflamed, the humour is little in quantitie, bloudie or dreggie, with great paine. If the vlcer be foule and filthie, the humour commeth forth in more great abundance, and is matter with lesse griefe. If the vlcer doth eate and feede, the humour is stinking, blacke, and with vehement paine. For the cure, when the bile or vlcer is inflamed, you must vse bloud letting and other medicines that are good against inflammation, as is afore taught. In other causes you must vse purging medicines, especially if the body doth abound with vicious and corrupt humours. Also applie such medicines as do represse and stop the flowing of humours and correct their hote distemper, as is, the iuyces or waters of Purslaine, Plantaine, *Bursa pastoris*, and such like before rehearsed Then if the vlcer be filthie, you must vse scouring and cleansing medicines, as is, *Ptisan* with Honey, *Mulsa* with the decoction of the roote of *Ireos*, *Aristolochia*, Wormewood, or Agrimonie. Those vlcers which do eate and feede, must be washed with Mares milke, or Asses milke newly milked: you must mixe with milke, hony and root of *Ireos*, *Causæ.* *Signa.* *Curatio.*

These things, if the vlcers may be seene, may be annointed: but if they be deepe within, cast them in with an instrument called *Metrenchita*. When the vlcers be well purged and cleansed, you must vse such things as will close them vp: first gentle things, and then those that be of more effect. The cerote of *Aetius* doth especially please me, which is this: ℞. of white Waxe, ℥. j. of fine oile of Roses, ℥. iij. and melt them together vpon the coales, and when it is cooled, then put it into a mortar, and put thereinto womans milke, or Asses milke, or Goates milke newly milked, and worke them together with a pestle vntill it be white; then powre out the aforesaid milke, and put in new milke, and then worke them againe, and then put to it about ℈. j. of Saffron. And if thou wouldest haue it to mitigate paine more, adde to it oile of Roses, ℥. ij. the grease and marrow of a Goose, ana. ℥. ß. also you must put to oile of Quinces in stead of oile of Roses. You must apply this cerote to the belly and the haunches: for the vertue of it is sent into the wombe by secret and hidden passages. Also you may cast into the matrice of that facultie: as be, the decoction of Pomegranate rindes Roses, Quinces, Bramble, Mirtles, Sumach, *Acatia*, *Hypocistidis*, with restrictiue wine. To this place you may transferre and bring medicines out of the former bookes, and out of the Chapters of vlcers of the reines, the bladder, and the yard.

Cerotum.

CHAP. LXII.

Of straightnesse of the Matrice.

PHINOSIS in Greeke, *Obduratio* or *Coarctatio vteri* in Latin; it is a stopping or streightning in the mouth or necke of the matrice, whereby those places are made so streight, that it will not admit nor suffer any seed: or if they do receiue it, they cannot hold it; for because of the knobby hardnesse it cannot shut together. Sometime it receiueth seed, and it is kept and retained in the streight mouth of the wombe, and thereof is a child conceiued, but the conception bringeth occasion of death to the woman: seeing because of the great streightnesse of the places, it cannot be brought foorth. This disease is caused in the mouth of the matrice, either of exulceration going before, or of an inflammation there hardened. There is no neede of signes to know this disease by: for by the telling of the sicke, and by touching of it, you may easily know it. The cure of it must be wrought with fomentations that can release, dissolue, and mollifie. Also with cataplasmes and insessions that be of like power and vertue. Therefore you must apply foments made of the decoction of Fenugreeke, & *Hydrelæon*. Also you must vse pessaries that can mollifie and dissolue, as that is which is made of *Aesipum*, that is, oile tried out of wooll in sheeps flanks or necks, Saltpeter, & Turpentine. To be short, to the cure of this disease you must vse mollifying medicines, as is, Mallowes, *Althæa*, *Nigella*, Fenugreek, Lineseed, *Ammoniacke*, *Bdellium*, Rosin, Grease, and such like, of the which you may make cerotes, emplaisters, and all kind of outward medicines. And if the euill be waxed old, you must vse suffumigations, and euaporations made of aromaticke things. And when the places do seeme to be softer to the feeling, then you must put a drie sponge, that hath a cord hanged at it, into the streight place, to the intent to make it wider: which if it fall out, you must

Causa.
Signa.
Curatio.

put

put in another that is thicker. Therefore you muſt haue many and ſundry drie ſponges ready. Afterward you muſt annoint vpon the ſponges that you will put in, ſome medicine made of Alume, and *Elaterium*, mixed with Hony, that thereby the place may be made wider. And if after the ſponges be taken away, the place do not ſeeme open and wide enough, and inflammation be preſent through the eating and gnawing of the medicines that were applyed, then annoint vpon the ſponge that you will put in this ointment: ℞. oile of *Ireos*, ℥ j. of fine Turpentine, ℥ ij. of Gooſe greaſe, ℥ j. root of *Ireos* and Frankinſence, ana. ℥ ß. Waxe as much as is ſufficient, & made an ointment. But if the inflammation be vehement, take oile of Roſes or Violets in ſtead of oile of *Ireos*. When the inflammation is ceaſſed, and the place is open, annoint vpon a ſponge a cerote made of oyle of Roſes, and Gooſe greaſe, and vſe that vntill it be healed, making the place a little ſounder: but yet you muſt alwaies put in ſponges vntil the end of the cure, leſt that the mouth of the wombe do gather together againe. *Vnguentum.*

CHAP. LXIII.

To take away barrenneſſe.

STERILITAS in Latine, barrenneſſe in Engliſh; it is cauſed of the womans part, or of the mans part. It is of the mans part when his ſeed is either hote, and as it were burned; or elſe cold, thin, waterie, and feeble, as is the ſeed of old and feeble men: or when it is ſent forth thicker then it ought to be: or becauſe the men be halfe geldings, and haue a very ſhort yard, ſo that they cannot caſt their ſeede into the innermoſt place of the matrice, which alſo ſometime chanceth through much fatneſſe: for fat men haue ſuch great bellies, that they cannot caſt the ſeed into the deepeſt parts of the bodie. Alſo women of their part cannot conceiue, that haue their matrice either hote and fierie, or cold and moiſt, or foule, filthie and drie. For (as *Hippocrates* ſaith 5. *Aphor.* 62.) the ſeed is corrupted or quenched in ſuch. Alſo women that be verie groſſe and fat, do not conceiue (as *Hippocrates* witneſſeth 5. *Aphor.* 46.) Moreouer, women that be leane and ſlender do not conceiue, or if they do conceiue, they ſuffer abortion ſtraightway, which alſo *Hippocrates* witneſſeth 5. *Aphor.* 44. Alſo ſome do not conceiue becauſe their wombe is weake, or ſtreight, or ſhort: or becauſe the veſſels of it be ſtopped or ſhut vp, or blinded and couered, by reaſon of a ſcarre, or becauſe the necke of the wombe is drawne crooked: or becauſe the mouth of the matrice is too ſtreight, or too wide open. Alſo vnwilling carnall copulation for the moſt part is vaine and barren: for loue cauſeth conception, and therefore louing women do conceiue often. Alſo age too great or too little, doth let conception. Therefore you muſt ſeparate them that be young from carnall copulation, ſo that the man may be thirtie yeares old, and the woman eighteene. But ſpecially an vncomely and fooliſh ſhape and forme of the womans bodie doth giue an occaſion to barrenneſſe. For a woman that is fertile, ought to haue a moderate ſtature and height of the body, breadth of the loynes, and the ſhare, buttockes ſticking out, a handſome and conuenient greatneſſe of the belly, a ſtraight breaſt and large pappes. The ſignes whereby the diuerſitie of cauſes be knowne be theſe. The hote diſtemper of a man is eaſily knowne by the abundance of haires, *per.* *Cauſæ.* *Signa.* *Hote diſtem.*

ſpecially blacke haires vpon the genitalles, and the places adioyning, from aboue vnto the middle thighs. Alſo this diſtemperature is laſciuious and readie to carnall luſt, but it is ſoone ſatiate and filled. A temperament that is too cold, is declared by the parts about the ſtones being bald and without haire. Alſo they that be of this temperature, be not deſirous and prone to carnall luſt. Heate of the matrice is knowne by the heate in the reſt of the bodie, and becauſe few menſtruis are ſent out, and that with paine, ſo that ſometime the womans priuities are exulcerate with it, and that which is ſent out is blackiſh. Alſo there followeth this temperature, an inſtinction or tickling to lecherie, and drineſſe of the whole bodie. A temperature of the matrice which is cold, is knowne by ſuppreſſion and ſtopping of the menſtruis. Alſo they that haue this temperament do deſpiſe vſe of carnall luſt, and haue the mouth of the matrice drawne together. If through too much moiſtneſſe barrenneſſe be ingendred, then in the act of generation, they are very much bedewed with moiſtneſſe, and the menſtruis floweth much in quantitie, and thinne. Drineſſe is knowne by the contrary ſignes to moiſtneſſe. The reſt of the cauſes may be knowne, partly by ſight, and partly by the telling of the partie, or other about her. For the cure common to both, as well the man as the woman, it is conuenient for them to keepe the whole bodie very temperate, and to keepe a meane and meaſure in labouring, eating drinking and bathing, and in all other exerciſes. Men therefore that haue their ſeed corrupted through naughty and euill kind of diet, if they vſe a more ordinate diet and healthfull, their genitors will haue fecunditie and fertilitie. Let the woman neither wearie her ſelfe with too much labour, nor let her be altogether idle: for idleneſſe doth fill and ſtuffe the whole bodie with ſuperfluous humours and excrements: but great labour drieth vp the bloud, and conſumeth the menſtruis. Let her vſe meates and drinkes eaſie of digeſtion, and ſuch as the ſtomach may well comprehend and conſume. And you muſt ſpecially obſerue in their order of good diet, that neither the man nor the woman be made fat: for they that be fat, are vnapt to procreate and beget children, becauſe their genitors cannot touch together, and alſo becauſe they ſend out little ſeed. Moreouer, it is conuenient that you giue vnto ſuch as deſire to get children, ſome accuſtomed and pleaſant thing to eate or drinke before meate, which is moſt apt to prouoke carnall luſt, and to ingender ſeed: as thoſe be that do heate meaſurably, and puffe vp with wind. Therefore wine in this caſe meaſurably drunke, is to be preferred before water. For as the Prouerbe is, *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*, that is, If you haue not bread and wine, carnall luſt will coole and pine. For pot-herbs they muſt vſe Rocket, *Orminum* (it is an herbe like vnto Horehound) *Eryſimo*, and other ſuch like, which we haue rehearſed for them that cannot vſe carnall copulation. Rew, Calamint, and Mints muſt be eſchewed altogether: for Calamint and Mints, although they ingender much ſeed, yet that which they ingender, is feeble and weake: but Rew doth altogether corrupt & deſtroy ſeed. If a woman do not conceiue through the vice and corruption of certaine humours, it is good to emptie her with a purging medicine, and to amend her with a good diet. Particularly for women, it is good for them to take as good heed as can be to thoſe things that chance to the matrice, and that their

Cold temperature.

Cure of both to man and woman common.

Cure of a woman full of corrupt humours.

their menſtruis may flow without any impediment. Therefore when the purgation of their menſtruis is nigh at hand, let them keepe a meaſure in eating and drinking with all their diligence. And let them take ſome of thoſe things that can prouoke and ſtir vp the purgation of the menſtruis, as be herbes that be odoriferous and ſharpe, as is, *Cerefolium*, Fennell, *Apium*, Louage, and ſuch like, whereof you ſhall find plentie in the Chapter of the ſtopping of the menſtruis. After the purging of the menſtruis, both the right ſide and the left ſide of the matrice is open. If cold diſtemper doth cauſe barrenneſſe, you muſt correct and amend it by foments cataplaſmes, and ſuffumigations, and other medicines that haue vertue to heate: as thoſe be that are made of Motherwort, Peniroyall, Sage, Rew, Annie ſeede, Comin, Gladon, and ſuch like. Alſo it profiteth her to drinke *Caſtoreum*, and odoriferous ſeeds, Comin, Anniſe ſeed, and Iuniper fruit, and other things that be rehearſed in the Chapter of ſtopping of menſtruis. You muſt amend and correct a hote diſtemper of the matrice cauſing barrenneſſe with ſuch things as do coole and moiſten: as theſe hearbs be, Lettuce, Mallowes, Gourds, Purſlaine, and Orach, with ſuch like. Alſo ſhe muſt drinke wine that is thinne, white, and alayed. Alſo it profiteth her to ſleepe, and to bathe in ſweete water. Alſo you muſt apply to the loynes and about the priuities ſuch things as do coole, as iuyce of Nightſhade mixed with oyle of Roſes, which alſo being layd vpon Wooll, may be put well into the matrice. They which cannot conceiue through moiſtneſſe of the matrice, it is good for them to vſe a drier dyet. Alſo they muſt exerciſe themſelues much, and they muſt be rubbed in the vpper part of the body. Alſo, to the intent to purge out and turne away humors, let them vomit ſometime after dinner, and ſometime faſting: and you muſt drie them with ſcarcitie of meate, and let them eate fleſh of middle aged beaſts roſted, and giue them pure wine, that is mightie to drinke, but giue it them ſeldome. Alſo it profiteth to apply reſtrictiue things to the matrice, as be, Roſes, leaues of Briar, Galles, Sumach, Mirtles, Knotgraſſe, Pomegranate rindes, and ſuch like ſodden. But you may not do this, voleſſe the whole bodie be firſt purged. A drie matrice muſt be cured by the contrary to that which is aforeſaid, as with baths of ſweete water, annointings, and meates that do moiſten. Let her vſe wine that is alayed, being not yet very old. And if a womans conception be impedited and ſtopped through groſſe humours, if they be gnawing, it is good to purge the woman well with *Hierapicra* in whey: and ſhe muſt vſe a moſt exquiſite diet, and meates that do ingender good iuyce: but you muſt conſume the flegmaticke humours with much labour, with ſweating, vomiting, or by purging by the neather parts, and all other things which be rehearſed in the Chapter of ſtopping of menſtruis, which it behoueth not to rehearſe here particularly. Alſo windineſſe ingendred in the wombe, doth let the fertilitie of conception, and cauſeth barrenneſſe. Such women therefore as haue this, muſt firſt be amended with a ſtreighter diet. Then you muſt miniſter both outwardly and inwardly to them, ſuch medicines as can diſſolue, diſperſe, and conſume windineſſe, as is, Comin, Rew, Dill, ſeed of *Apium*, and ſuch like, which be rehearſed in the Chapter of windineſſe of the matrice, and in other places. If ſhutting vp of the matrice doth cauſe barrenneſſe, you ſhall open it by caſting in of o-

Cure of cold temperature of the wombe.

Cure of hote diſtemper.

Cure of a moiſt diſtemper.

Cure of a drie diſtemper.

Cure of groſſe humours.

Cure of windineſſe.

Cure of a matrice shut vp.

doriferous clysters, and by vsing of foments and inſeſſions made of Fenugreek, Linſeed, Mallowes, and ſuch like rehearſed in the Chapter of ſtreightneſſe of the wombe. And afterward you muſt proceed to ſtronger medicines, as Motherwort, Calamint, Peniroyall, and Marioram. They which haue the mouth of the matrice gaping much, it is good for them to vſe a drying diet, and drying foments. And it is good alſo to vſe reſtrictiue medicines, as be, the decoction of Galles, Bramble rootes, Mirtles, and ſuch like rehearſed before in the cure of a moiſt diſtemper. Laſt of all, if crookedneſſe of the matrice do cauſe barrenneſſe, you ſhall direct and make ſtraight the matrice with mollifying foments, for foments can do that beſt: but yet you may conueniently put in mollifying peſſaries; but ſpecially the decoction of Peniroyall, and Motherwort, and *Caſtoreum* drunke with *Poſca*, are wont to be good for a writhed matrice. *Paulus* ſaith, that the carnall luſt vſed backward is good to conceiue. We here haue generally comprehended the cures onely by other Chapters: for the particular cure of each cauſe muſt be ſought out of his proper Chapter.

Cure of an open matrice.

Cure of a writhed matrice.

CHAP. LXIIII.

Of ſore trauell in child-birth.

Difficilis partus cauſe.

SORE trauell in child-birth doth chance either through default of the parent, or of the child, or of the ſecundine, or through ſome outward cauſe. Of the parent, if ſhe be groſſe and fat, faint hearted, and vnskilfull of paine; or if the whole matrice be ſmall, or if there be inflammation of the whole wombe, or of ſome part of it, or that it be vexed with ſome other diſeaſes: or if ſhe be naturally weake, ſo that ſhe cannot driue out the child: or if that ſhe do labour before time. Alſo if the necke of the mouth of the matrice be crooked, or if there be ſome peece of fleſh ingendred there, by reaſon of a bile or vlcer going before. But default of the child is, if it be of an vnaccuſtomed greatneſſe, or ſmall and of a little weight, or if it hath a great head, or if it be monſtrous, as hauing two heads, or three feete, or if it be dead, and ſo doth not labour to come forth, or if it ſwell: or being aliue, if it be weake, ſo that it cannot proceed forth: or if they be two or moe, and do all ruſh ſuddenly together into the necke of the matrice, or if the child be faſhioned contrary to nature. For the naturall forme of a child coming forth is, firſt with his head (his hands being ſtretched out vpon the thighs) and with his head declining to the neather parts, but ſtraightly directed to the mouth of the matrice: the beſt forme in coming forth next vnto this, is, firſt with his feete, hauing the hands ſtretched vpon both thighs, and ſo deſcending ſtraight out. All other formes in coming forth, except theſe two, are contrary and abhorring to nature. The trauell is made difficile through the ſecundine: if it be not pulled away, becauſe of the greoſſeneſſe or thickneſſe of it, or if it breake before it ſhould do, becauſe of the thinneſſe of it: for then the humour that is gathered together in the matrice, is ſent out before conuenient time. Therefore the priuities be without moiſture, and be drie at the time of the trauell, when moiſtneſſe were neceſſary, which ſhould make a ſlippery and eaſie going out of the child, and ſo through drineſſe the child ſlideth out hardly. Alſo difficultie in child-birth is ingendred of outward cauſes: as of cold, which thickeneth the matrice,

matrice, and maketh the passages streighter; or through a great heate, which dissolueth and weakeneth the strength. But outward causes are knowne by the telling of the patient, or of them that sit by her. Weakenesse of the woman that laboureth, as fatnesse, may be knowne by the state of the body. Also by diseases that she hath had before you may readily come to the knowledge of weakenesse, and of many other euils. Weaknesse of the child is knowne by feeble and slow mouing of it. Which if it be dead, it moueth not, and there is coldnesse of the bellie, and great paine about the nauell. Also a stinking breath is breathed out, and a naughtie colour of the face. Greatnesse of the child may be coniectured by the constitution of the parents bodie, and by greatnesse of the womans belly. Grossenesse and thicknesse of the secundine may be gathered and knowne thus: if none of the aforesaid signes be present, and the woman strong and lusty, and the child moueth quickly and easily. As for the cure it varieth according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore you must place a fat woman downeward in a little bed, that is, hanging downeward with her head, and her face towards the ground, bending and inclining her knees to her thighs, that her wombe stretching to the *Abdomen*, may be right with his mouth. You must with your fingers annoint the mouth of the matrice, with butter, oile, Ducks grease, Hens grease, and such like: and you must spread it abroad, and open it wider by little and little. You must comfort and incourage a fearefull woman. And if she be vnskilfull of paines in trauell, admonish her to hold and stop her breath strongly, and let her thrust it out to the ilions with all her might. If sore trauell in child-birth be caused of adstriction, and binding, or astonishment, or as it were, adarctation and penning in of the child, you must helpe it with dissoluing and releasing, by powring in largely sweete wine and hote. Also the decoction of Fenugreeke, or Mallowes, or Linseed, or also egges are good, because they are of a loosening and mollifying vertue. Afterward you must nourish the parts about the priuie members, and the belly & loynes with the aforesaid decoction, or with some other loosening and mollifying medicines. Also it profiteth to vse hote insessions and euaporations, and to haue the aire of the house inclining to heate. Also it is good to vse infusions, and annointings with oiles that be hote in touching and vertue; and conuenient cataplasmes be good. And if neither a feuer nor any thing else do let it, she must vse releasing and dissoluing bathes, and you must moue her, with bearing her in a chaire, in an aire that is meanely hote. Many do vse to such, violent shaking of the bodie. And if any woman be weake, and haue sore trauell in child-birth through resolution of the bodie, you must comfort and refresh the bodie with medicines that do thicken and draw together, and with such meates and drinkes as do recreate, restore, and adde strength to the bodie: as be insessions and sprinklings with Mirtles, Vine leaues, Pomegranates, Roses, smelling to Vineger, and annointings with Wine mixt with cold oyle of Roses. When the infant is ouer great, you must applie those things which can make wider, stretch out, and loosen the mouth of the matrice. If sore trauell do chance through an vnnaturall forme of the child in comming forth, you must bring him to a naturall forme and figure, as much as is possible, partly by putting backe, partly by drawing to you, partly by turning, and

Signa.

Cure of a fat woman.

Cure of a fearfull woman.

partly by making it straight. And if the head or foote be sent out first, you may not draw out the childe taking hold by that member, but put your fingers to the shoulders or haunches of the child, and thrust vp that againe which is come forth, into the conuenient place. If there be two or three, or moe children, & do thrust altogether into the necke of the matrice, you must driue back the rest into the bottome of the wombe, & bring that out first which seemeth to be most readie: but if it do not come foorth because the infant is dead, or hath a very great head, or through some other cause, you must come to drawing out of the child, or to cutting, which is taught abundantly of *Aetius, lib. 16. cap. 23.* and of *Paulus libr. 6. cap. 74.* For it is not our purpose to teach handie cure here. Moreouer, if the tunicle or secundine of the child be thicker and stronger then that it may be broken, you must cut it. Those that haue the humour which is contained in the tunicles or secundine, flowing and running out before the conuenient time, so that the places be dried vp, you shall wash it all about with whites of Egges, with the decoction of Mallowes, and Fenugreeke strained, or with iuyce of Ptisan warmed. A medicine that doth vniuersally helpe all that haue sore trauell in child birth, is this that followeth:

Puluis optimus. ℞. Cinnamon chosen, ℥. ij. Mirrhe, *Cassia lignea*, ana. ℈. j. white Amber, ℥. j. ß. beate them together, and make a fine powder, whereof minister in wine that is odoriferous, the wight of one drachme. Moreouer, the child being borne, oftentimes it chanceth that the secundine doth sticke fast in the wombe; which if it chanceth, then sometime the mouth of the matrice is found open, and sometime shut: and the secundine many times is still ioyned to the bottome of the wombe, and many times it is separate. If therefore the mouth of the matrice be open, and the secundine which is left therein do cleaue to some part of the wombe, being wound vp together like a ball, it may easily be drawne out. You must draw out the secundine with your left hand being warmed, and annointed with some fat thing, and put into the wombe. If the secundine be fastened and knit to the bottome of the wombe, you shall likewise put in your hand, warmed and annointed with grease, and take hold of the secundine and draw it out: but you may not draw it straight forth, lest the matrice come out with it: nor pull it very vehemently, but softly and easily, first pulling it crooked, bringing it this way and that way: then after that, you may draw it somewhat harder, for by this meanes you shall loosen it from the fastening. But if the mouth of the matrice be shut, you shall vse perfusions, and with the fingers of your left hand you shall labour to open it easily, and to make it wider by little and little. Which if you cannot bring to passe, it is good to apply about the priuities, foments, perfusions, and ointments that can mollifie, dissolue, and release. If she be strong, you must put into her nostrils at that time also sneezing powder, made of *Castoreum*, Pepper, and such like.

To draw out the secundine.

For *Hippocrates* in 5. *Aph.* 49. writeth thus: That the secundine may come out, giue her sneezing powder, and let her stoppe her nose and mouth. Also you must minister vnto her potions that can prouoke menstruis: which things aforesaid, you must do the first and second day. Moreouer, she must vse suffumigations, seething in a pot, Motherwort, *Irees*, Saueine, Penitroyall, Calamint, *Dictamus*, and such like. Then put the pot vnder a close chaire, vpon the which let

let the woman sit, being compassed in round about with clothes. After that, if you find the mouth of the matrice opened, put in your hand, and labour to pull out the secundine, as is aforesaid; but if it will not obey to come forth, you may not rent it, for within a few dayes after, being rotten and turned into atter, it will fall out. But because through the euill sauour and smell, when it is rotted, it filleth the head, and matreth the stomacke, they that are troubled with this euill, must be continually perfumed. For which purpose these things are good: *Cardamome, Bdellium*, with Sauoine, Frankensence, *Storax, Ladanum*, wood of *Aloes*, and such like. Also perfuming with ieate by a pipe, which is put into the mouth of the matrice, doth profite maruellously. Also simples, such as prouoke menstruis, be good: as decoction of Motherwort, and Laurell berries, with *Vinum mulsum*. Also make pessaries of Mirrhe and *Cyclaminum* commixed with oyle.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the Sciatica.

ISCHIAS in Greeke, properly is called a most grieuous paine, which is wont to chance about the ioynt which the Greekes do call *Ischion*, the Latines *Coxa*, in English the huckle bone. The Latines call this disease *Ischias*, and they that are afflicted with this disease, are called *Ischiadici*. The Barbarous sort call this disease *Sciatica*, and they call them that be diseased with it *Sciatici*. It is caused through a grosse and flegmaticke humour, which being congealed, abideth in the ioynt of the huckle bones. Therefore continuall crudities and rawnesse, and vnmeasurable vsing of venerious acts, do not a little helpe the ingendring of a *Sciatica*. Also sometime swift deambulations and walkings, or suppression or stopping of the hemorhoides, and custome of vomiting being omitted, and purgation of menstruis, or else other familiar and accustomed emptyings being impedited and stopped, and neglecting of exercises: for each of these do ingender abundance of flegmaticke humors. There goeth before this euill sometime paine of the muscles that be nigh vnto it, and specially of the loynes; sometime the beginning is in the huckle bone it selfe: also sometime it chanceth (that the paine of the huckle bone being taken away) there remaineth griefe onely about the hammes, and to some about the ankles, but in some all the leg is equally vexed with paine. Also in many, there is paine about the priuie members, and then also the bladder being vexed, doth ingender difficultie in pissing: and then chiefly the whole legge, from the hanch to the heele suffereth paine. Let the cure be begun with voiding and purging of the humour that doth afflict the patient. And if the body do equally abound with all humours, before all other remedies, cut a veine in the hamme, or the outward ankle, or also in the arme, on that side that is diseased. For sometime the *Sciatica* is cured in one day, by this emptying out of the legges. But if the body be stuffed with a flegmaticke and grosse humour, you must beginne the cure with purging of that humour. For the which purpose you must minister clysters often, made after this sort, or in like manner. ℞. of Centorie, Sage, *Verbasculi odorati*, Rew, *Chamepityos*, ana. M. j. rootes of Gladon, ℥. j. *Stœchados*, ℥. iij. seeds of Annise

ἰσχιας.

Causa.

Curatio.

Clyster.

and Fennell, ana. ℥.ij. ß. Agaricke of the best, ℥.ij. roote of Polipodie, ℥.v. Seeth these in sufficient quantity of water vntill the third part: then take of the liquor of that decoction, ℥.xiij. of *Hierapicra* ℥ ß. of *electuarium Nidum maius*, ℥ij. of oyle of Lillies, ℥ij. oile of Rew, ℥j. the yolkes of two egges, salt, ℥.j. ß. commixe them all and make a clyster. Also vomiting doth helpe them that haue the *Sciatica* much more then the purging downward by the belly, for that doth repell and put backe the humour downward suddenly. Therefore you must prouoke vomits in the beginning by and by after meate. But afterward you must minister vomiting medicines, beginning first with them that be easie. They that haue humours vehemently compact and thicked together, which can difficultly be dissolued and loosened, caused through Phisitions vsing sharpe medicines out of time, such be holpen by fastening on of a very great cupping glasse with scarifications. But in the *Sciatica* we do not vse such medicines as can represse and stop the fluxe: for seeing the disease is placed in the bottome of the huckle bone, bloud is expelled from the veines and muscles that be nigh adioyning to it, and is sent thither. Therefore in the beginning of this disease, there is need of medicines that can mitigate and asswage, which neither do coole much, nor that do heate vehemently. For as those things which do coole, do thrust the humours violently to the ankle bone: so those things that do vehemently heate, do draw more matter out of the members adioyning. Moreouer you may not come to the vsing of sharpe medicines, till after bloud-letting or emptying by purgations. For if any man apply sharpe medicines to the diseased member before the bodie be emptied or purged, he shall make the disease hard to cure, because of a multitude of humours so thickened there, that they cannot be dissolued. For besides other things, it is made grosse and viscous, and through the heate and drinesse of the sharpe medicines, it suffereth as it were rosting or burning. First therefore you must irrigate and sprinkle the aggrieued place with oyle or Rew. After you must apply more effectuous medicines, which do heate, and can draw humours from the bottome to the top, as be *oleum Vulpinum*, oyle of Pepper, *oleum Costinum*, oyle of Iuniper, *vnguentum Aragon*, *Martiatum*, and *Agrippa*. Also Sage, Rew, Laurell leaues, Elder, roote of Wallwort, Peniroyall, Saueine, *Opoponax*, *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacum*, and such like. Of the which you may make foments, ointments, emplaisters, and cerotes. But if griefe be extremely painefull, then vse this which followeth, for it is most excellent against this euill. ℞. Rosin of the Pine tree, ℔.j. ß. *Galbanum*, ℥.v. melt them with a soft fire, and then streine it through a cloth, and put vnto it of the powder of Masticke, ℥.j. and then spreade it warme vpon dogs leather, or lambes leather, and stricke it a good thicknesse; and before you apply this plaister to the pained place, annoint the place with this ointment following, ℞. fresh Hogs grease, ℥.j. ß. and take Sowes or Monkes peason in number twenty, and beate them both well in a morter, till they be well incorporate, and therewith annoint the places and the plaister, and warme the plaister against the fire, till it be soft, and lay it to the aggrieued place, and let it lie nine dayes. If there be haires vpon the place, you must shaue them off first, and rolle it well, lest it slippeth away; then euery day morning,

Vomitus.

Cucurbita magna.

When sharpe medicines may be vsed.

Simples.

Emplastrum.

Vnguentum.

morning and euening at each time let the patient take, ℥j. of this electuarie.
℞. of the rootes of *Acorus* or Gladon, being made cleane, ℔ j. stampe them very small, (as possibly you may do) then take of clarified Honey, ℔ iij. and put in the rootes by little and little, euer stirring it, and when it is well sodden, put into it of Cinamon, ℥ j. made in very fine powder, which being well incorporate, keepe it to your vse: and at the end of the nine daies, if the paine be not cleane gone, lay too the forenamed plaisters other nine daies, vsing the same electuarie, and procure vomite, as before, euery sixe or seuenth day; for that doth greatly reuert the humour. But in the beginning of the griefe, apply to the agrieued place againe and againe, sponges wet in the decoction of Iuniper, or Sage, or Elder leaues. Afterward vse this ointment. ℞. of *vnguentum Martiaton*, ℥ iij. oile of *Ireos*, and Lillies, ana. ℥ ß. iuice of Rew, and *Chamæpityos*, ana. ℥ ij. Honey, ℥ j. ß. Sage, Peniroiall, Pepper, ana. ℥ ß. Pellitory, Staueſacre, an. ℈ j. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also the vsing of this cerote profiteth, ℞. *oleum Costiuum* and *Vulpinum*, ana. ℥ ij ß. oile of Pepper, ℥ ß. *Opoponax*, *Bdellium*, *Storax*, ana. ℥ iij. roote of Briony, Salt-peter, leaues of Elder, ana. ℥ ij. *Aristolochia rotunda*, Rew, ana. ℥ j. ß. *Euphorbium*, ℈ j. dissolue the Gummes in very sharpe Vineger, and with Turpentine and Waxe as much as is sufficient, make a cerote. And if the euill do remaine still, you must vse clisters againe: and then fasten a very great cupping glasse with much flame to the huckle bone, making good deepe gashes with scarification. And if that the disease be not ended so, you must vse againe purging vomits, and the other remedies aforesaid; which being done, you must come to the vsing of Dropaces and Synapismes, and so to the vsing of burning medicines: amongst which, the roote of the herbe called *Iberis* is not the worst, being new digged vp in Sommer, and diligently braied, and mixed with a litle old Swines grease, being layed and bound to the ioynt of the huckle bone, or to the whole shanke or legge. Also the leaues of it will do the same thing. And being so applyed, let it lie not past 2. houres to women, but let it lie foure houres to men, if it be possible for them to suffer it: for it raiseth swelling, with burning and rednesse, as a Synapisme is wont to do. Afterward bring the sicke into a bathe, in the which, when he hath swet a litle, bid him sit downe in the vessell, because of the biting heate, and compell him to suffer it strongly. For in the beginning, it is wont to bring biting and gnawing with burning heate; then bring him out: from which alwaies almost (as *Ætius* witnesseth) although they be caried in of other, they will go out alone vpon their feet. After the bathing, commixe much oile with a very litle wine, and shake them together, and annoint it: then wipe off the humour with a sharpe cloath, and couer the leg it selfe with very soft wooll. And truly (this being done) it hath bene wont to neede no other remedy for the cure. But if sometime it chanceth any part or remembrance of the euill to be left still, within a few daies after you may vse againe the same remedie. And certaine daies after, you may lay on the cerote which is a litle before described. Moreouer, among burning and blistering medicines, this is good ℞. *Mel anacardinum*, Leauen, ana. ℥ j. *Cantharides*, (the wings cast away) ℥ ij Vineger, as much as is sufficient, and commixe them together.

Electuarum.

Aliud vnguentum.

Cerotum.

Causticum.

Aliud. Or this is good; ℞. *Euphorbium*, Salt peter, ana. ℈. ij Sope, quicke Lime, ana. ℥. j. *Melanacardinum*, as much as is sufficient, so that all being mixed toge-
Victus ratio. ther, may be of the thickneſſe of honey. Let his diet be ſuch, that his meate may be meanly thinne, and eaſie of digeſtion. Let his exerciſes be walkings, continuall writhings, leapings, or dancings and running. It is good alwayes to haue the bodie ſoluble. And if the diſeaſe hath endured long, and cannot be driuen away with the aforeſaid medicines, you muſt vſe burning in three or foure places, after that ſort as *Paulus* teacheth in *lib. 6. cap. 76.* and *Ætius, lib. 12. cap. 30.*

CHAP. LXVI.

Of the Gout in the feete and ioynts.

PODAGRA and *Arthritis* in Latine, be diſeaſes of one kinde: and therefore they differ not but in places diſeaſed. For in both of them there is weakneſſe of the ioynts, and an vnnaturall humour floweth to them. And if that the fluxe of the humour do flow to the feete, that is called *Podagra* in Latine.
Podagra, Arthritis. But if the humour flow to other ioynts, it is called in Greeke *Arthritis*, in Latine, *Articularis morbus*, the ioynt ſickneſſe. Sometime this euill doth ruſh in ſuddenly, being equally diſperſed throughout all the ioynts. But for the moſt part, the fluxe is wont to fall in priuily, and by little and little. For in ſome, paine doth inuade the ioynt of the great toe, but in ſome the end of the heele is afflicted. Againe in ſome other, the hollowneſſe of the foote is grieued, either through chafing of the ſhoe, or ſome ſuch like thing. The Goute taketh his beginning at the feete, whereupon it taketh the name, and it proceedeth vpward by litle and litle to the knees, & alſo to the ioynts of the huckle bones and the thighs; afterward to the hands, euery ioynt particularly being grieued. They that are taken extreamely with this diſeaſe, haue paine in the backe bone ioynts, and in the ioynts of the ribs, and eye lids, and to ſome paine in the throte alſo: neither is there any connexion or knitting of bones,
Cauſe. which is free from this euill. This diſeaſe is engendred of continuall crudities and drunkenneſſe, and of immoderate vſing of lechery, through vehement and ſwift deambulations and walkings, through long ſtanding, or often riding, by ſuppreſſion and ſtopping of accuſtomed excretions and fluxes, and through intermiſſion of familiar exerciſes. Sorrowes, cares, watchings, and other perturbations of the minde, do not onely ingender this euill, but alſo do breed hurtfull and corrupt humours. Alſo many times the Cholicke being naughtily cured, is wont to be a cauſe why the ioynt ſickneſſe ſhould follow. But for the moſt part, a diſpoſition to this kinde of diſeaſe proceedeth from the parents to the children, and their poſteritie. Alſo vniuerſally abundance of all raw humours is the cauſe of this diſeaſe. The humours that do abound, and do faſten themſelues in the ioynts, either be ſanguine, or cholericke, or flegmaticke, or melancholious. Alſo ſometime this euill is ingendred of commixtion of humors. The outward cauſes may eaſily be knowne by the telling of the ſicke, or them that be about him. The difference of humours you ſhall know by the ſignes following. The humor of bloud, if it be much in quantitie,
Signs. it cauſeth fulneſſe, and great ſwelling, not onely of the veines, but about the skinne

skin of the whole member that is grieued, and maketh it red in colour. They which are afflicted with this euill, cannot suffer remedies to be applied that be very cold or very hote, and they are continually vexed with paine, because the flowing of the bloud doth chance continually and equally. Their vrines are yellow and meane of substance. Also their veines do abound with bloud, and are puffed vp and swollen. The conuenient age for this euill is youth. Also meates that ingender good iuyce, and nourish abundantly, were eaten before, and exercises were neglected. The time of the yeare in the which the patient is most afflicted, is Spring time. If the humour that floweth into the ioynts be cholericke, you may know it by the yellowish colour of the skinne. Sometime redneſſe is mixed with the yellow colour, that is, when choler is commixd with bloud. Also there is sensible heate and sharpe paine like lancing. Also moistnes sodainly bursteth out of the skinne, without euident swelling. The patient is eased with cooling medicines, and reioyceth: but with hote things his paines augment. In the state and strength of the fit, a feauer taketh him, and a very great thirst. His vrine is cytrine, and sometimes also it is sharpe. There is wont to go before this disease, great cares, and wrath, watchings and wearinesse, & a diet that was apt to ingender choler. The age, complexion, and time of the yeare that is hote and drie, be apt to cause this cholericke fluxe. And if the humour that floweth into the ioynts be flegmaticke, the swelling will giue place to the thrusting of the finger, and it is loose and moderate: the colour of the member afflicted, is white. Old age is much afflicted with this humour, and a complexion cold and moist, and it chanceth in the winter time. His vrine is thinne and watery. There went before it idlenesse, rest, and a diet that ingendred flegmaticke humours. If it be salt fleame, great itch, and gnawing or biting doth trouble the diseased members. If the fluxe to the ioynts be of melancholy, which chanceth but seldome, the colour of the swelling is blackish. The age which doth most ingender this fluxe, is the declination of middle age. Also the complexion is cold and drie, and the time of the yeare, Harueſt; a countrey that is cold and drie, and like state of the aire, and a diet that ingendreth melancholy. When the humor that floweth into the ioynts is bloud, by and by you must let bloud, not once onely, but often, taking it away by litle and litle: for if you do omit bloud-letting, and do vse repercussiue medicines, you shall be an author of great euill. For the bloud being driuen backe from the vnnoble members, it rusheth vp to the principall members, & that be necessary to life Therefore in fluxes of bloud, letting of bloud is very necessary specially in them that abound with bloud. You must cut a veine in the arme beneath, right against the leg that is vexed with the fluxe. And if the right hand be vexed with paine of this disease, cut a veine in the right legge, about the hamme, or the anckle, or the sole of the foote: for a veine being cut right against the member that is afflicted, it is of great efficacie and strength. Then specially must bloud-letting be vsed, when this euill begynneth first to inuade any man. For they that be vexed often with this fluxe of bloud, do feele more hurt then helpe of bloud-letting, specially if their bodie be weake and cold. After bloud-letting you must apply remedies to the agrieued member, which do neither coole greatly, lest they should driue together and thicken the

Signs if bloud do flow.

Signes of cholericke fluxe.

Signes of flegmaticke fluxe.

Signes by melancholy flowing.

Cure by bloud letting.

Localia.

humors; nor heate vehemently, leſt they ſhould draw more humors vnto the diſeaſed member. Therefore you muſt ſprinckle the grieued place with old Vineger, and oile of Roſes mixed together, ſpecially if the cauſe of the paine do ſeeme to be deepe within. For Vineger of his owne proper thinneſſe, going into the depth, maketh a way for the oile of Roſes, which naturally can eaſe paines. But if the paine be aloft nigh the skinne, you ſhall helpe it greatly with oile and wine, applying it in Sommer warme, in Winter hote. Afterward alſo

Cataplaſmata. you muſt vſe cataplaſmes which can eaſe and ceaſſe paine without any prouoking of fluxes, made of the meale of Fenugreek, Barley, Beanes, Lupins, Cammomill, and ſuch like: and you muſt ſee that thoſe things be euer hote, which may well be, if they be continually changed, & couered ouer aloft with wooll. Alſo this medicine profiteth not a little: ℞. Goates milke, ℥. v. the yolks of two Egs, oile of Roſes, ℥. j. Saffron, ℈ ß. crums of bread as much as is ſufficient, that it may haue the forme of a cataplaſme: ſtamp theſe till they be well commixed together, and then apply thereof to the member that is grieued. Alſo you may make an emplaiſter or cerote of oile of Roſes, Vineger, Roſin, Waxe, *Galbanum*, gum Ammoniacke, Frankinſence, Saffron, and ſuch like. You muſt

Victus ratio. giue him meates which do extenuate, and that do nouriſh but little, as be pot-herbs. Let him abſtraine altogether from fleſh, except it be birds of mountaines. Let him vſe fiſhes that breed in ſtony waters. Wine if the intemperance of the ſicke may ſuffer it, muſt altogether be taken away: for it is almoſt the onely reaſon whereby health ſhould follow: which, ſeeing among a thouſand,

Why few be cured of the goute at theſe dayes. ſcarce one doth obſerue, it is no maruell though there be verie few which be deliuered from this diſeaſe at theſe dayes. In ſtead of Wine let him vſe water, wherein Cinnamon, Anniſe ſeedes, or ſuch like hath bene ſodden: or that drinke which is called fooliſhly nowadayes *Ipocras*: the making whereof you may finde before in the Chapter of the Palſey. Let the ſicke diligently auoide fruite, and carnall luſt. Alſo he ought to haue a ſoluble belly alwayes, that can auoid out the ordure readily alone: which, if it do not well, waſh it with ſome eaſie cliſter. If through flowing of choler the diſeaſe in the ioynts

Cure of the cholericke fluxe. be cauſed, then your labour muſt be to void and purge out the humour that doth vex the patient, which you muſt do, as well by vomitting as by the belly downward. Therefore you muſt ſurely purge them that be thus afflicted, by medicines that draw out choler. After that, vntill the full ſtate of it, you muſt apply medicines that haue vertue to coole and reſtraine; as be thoſe that are made of Singreene, greene Roſes, ſharpe Sorrell, Nightſhade, Plantaine, and ſuch like often before rehearſed. In this kind of fluxe, many times, becauſe of the vehemencie of the paine, you muſt vſe ſuch medicines as can cauſe a-

Stupefacientia. ſtoniſhment. For the which purpoſe, it is good to apply the medicine which we deſcribed before, of Goates milke, crummes of bread, Saffron, and yolkes of Egs, with the which you muſt commixe Poppy ſeeds ℥. iij. or *Opium*, ℥ ß. or more or leſſe according to the paine. Alſo for the ſame purpoſe, leaues of Hemlocke and Henbane do profite, being applied and layed on. But you muſt note, and take heede, when you be compelled to vſe ſtupefactiue things in feruent and vehement paines, that afterward you do recreate and nouriſh thoſe members by ſuch things as do heate. For vnleſſe you do ſo, you ſhall

Note.

make

make those members weake and intemperate, and so they shall be subiect to a perpetuall fluxe, and shall soone catch hurt in their actions. Heating medicines be, Origan, Sauorie, Mustard seed, Pepper, and such like. Also you must helpe to prouoke sweating with heating and rubbing of the body: but so, that you touch not the aggrieued member. Moreouer, you must minister in drinke those things that do prouoke vrine: for such do voide out choler by the vrine. Also such things ministred as do cause sleepe are wont to do good, because the fluxe is stopped and dried vp by them, specially if they be ministred after a purgation. You must giue them meats that do coole, but not that do moisten: for moistnesse increaseth the fluxe. Let them not suffer hunger, for that maketh choler sharper. Of fruits, let them vse restrictiue Apples and Medlars, and other that do coole and stoppe or let the fluxe. Let them abstaine altogether from Wine, as is aforesaid. They which are diseased through flowing of fleame, you must beginne the cure of them with purging of fleame. The flegmaticke humour is auoyded by vomiting; but neuertheless also downeward by the belly. But the best purging in this euill, is downeward by the bellie, whether the disease sticke about the hands or the feete: and so much the more, if the fluxe be in all the ioynts of the bodie. For the way that is most familiar, and least perillous for fleame, is to go out by the guts. For if it were drawne by violence vpward to the stomacke, and not purged out, it causeth perill: therefore it is most safe and healthfull to purge it downeward. But before you minister purging medicines, you must minister those things that haue vertue to cut, extenuate and diuide, that by this meanes the grosse humours may be prepared, and made apt to purge. If emptying may not be done by purging, then they must vse hunger and famine many dayes; for they that be flegmaticke of nature, can suffer hunger easily and without hurt. Hereupon *Hippocrates* saith, 7. *Aphor.* 6. It is good for the bodies that haue moist flesh to vse hunger: for the hunger drieth the bodies. Also they must vse discussiue and dissoluing frictions, and strong clysters, and medicines that prouoke vrine: but you must apply outwardly such medicines as can ease and ceasse paine, and which can dissolue and drie moderately, of which we spake a little before. But in the beginning of the disease, you must mixe with them some things that haue vertue to restraine and bind. After the beginning, you must vse onely dissoluing and discussiue things. The gentlest is this: leaues of *Althæa*, sodden and beaten alone, or with floure or Barley meale applyed to. Also the roote of it sodden in *Aqua mulsa*, and stamped and applyed, is good. And this ointment is good. ℞. of the oyles of Laurell, and *Ireos*, ana. ℥. j. old swines grease, butter, ana. ℥. ij. the marrow of an Hart, ℥. ij. fine Turpentine, ℥. v. *Galbanum* dissolued in Vineger, ℥. j. Hysope, roote of *Althæa*, Fenugreeke seed, ana. ℈. ij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Moreouer, let the meates that you giue to nourish him, be drie of nature, and small of nourishing, as is iuyce of Rice rootes, and such like: but yet flesh of the birds of mountaines roasted is not hurtfull for them. Capers with *Acetum Mulsum*, doth maruellously profite. Giue vnto him wine, in very little quantitie at certaine times, and let it be thinne, yellow and old. They that are diseased through flowing of melancholy, must be emptied either with

Diet.

Cure of flegmaticke fluxe.

Flegmaticke folke can suffer hunger easily.

Vnguentum.

Victus ratio.

Cure of a melancholie fleame.

bloud-letting or by purgation. Vſe bloud-letting when the bloud is infected with melancholy, and vſe purgations when the patient declineth to melancholie; but if both theſe abound together, it is not ſufficient for you to vſe one of the aforeſaid things, but firſt cut a veine, & then vſe a purging medicine: which thing you muſt alſo do in other euils that haue need of double purging. In the beginning of the diſeaſe, and in the very time of emptying and purging, you muſt vſe ſuch things as can repreſſe, ſtop, and alſo heate ſenſibly. After purging, vſe thoſe things that can gently heate, attenuate and diſſolue or diſcuſſe, as is afore taught. But becauſe knobs and hard ſwellings do ingender afterward in the ioynts, as well becauſe of the groſſeneſſe and earthie hardneſſe of the humour that hath flowed thither, as alſo through the vſing of immoderate diſcuſſiue and drying medicines, without mixing of ſuch with them as haue a mollifying vertue: therefore to take thoſe knobs away, you muſt vſe thoſe medicines which be declared of vs before in the Chapter of hardnes of the ſpleene. But ſpecially very old and ſharpe cheeſe, brayed in the decoction of very fat and old ſwines fleſh, is good to be applyed. Alſo, for this euill, Figges brayed and layd on are good. Alſo *Althæa* twiſe ſodden, Oates, Nettles, Briony roote, round rootes, Dill, Sothernwood, Mayweede, Horehound leaues mixed with Pitch, Sulphure and wine. Alſo you muſt commixe fat and greaſes of ſwine, Goates, Calues, and Geeſe. Alſo all marrows and other things that haue verture to mollifie and ſoften. And alſo bathings, after the inflammation is ceaſſed, are moſt commodious and profitable to all that haue the Gout. While they waſh them, put ſponges wet in Vineger & Salt mixt together round about the diſeaſed places, that they may remaine ſafe from humors flowing to it. They muſt waſh themſelues, not once onely, but often, in an aire that is altogether meane and moderate. But they may not tarry long in hote water. It is beſt therefore that they be ſprinckled and wet with hote water powred on them. Alſo it is profitable that all the bodie be rubbed with drie linnen clothes. Moreouer, they that be cured of the Goute, ſhall defend themſelues afterward from it by this meanes: Firſt, twiſe in a yeare, that is, at Spring time and Autumne, if nothing do let it, let him bloud largely. Alſo about thoſe times, and oftener, let him vſe purging medicines. Alſo it is neceſſarie for him to eate little meate, and to abſtaine from fulneſſe. Alſo he muſt vſe meates that be eaſie of digeſtion, and which readily be diſtributed into the members of the bodie, and be without excremẽts. Let him abſtaine altogether from wine, or let him vſe it very ſcarcely. Let him vſe exerciſe very often, and that before meate: for labour (as *Hippocrates* ſaith) muſt go before meate. And to conclude, they that deſire to be freed from the Gout, let them remember this ſhort and moſt wholeſome precept of *Hippocrates*: The way to helpe and preſerue health, is, not to be filled with meates, and to be vnſlothfull in labouring. Alſo let his ſleepes and venerious acts be in a meane. As for remedies in this caſe, let Salt be brayed ſmall in oyle, and the ioynts rubbed therewith, for it it helpeth greatly all thoſe that will be free from this euill, except they be of a wonderfull drie temperature. And he muſt vſe annointings with that, morning and euening all the dayes of his life.

Cure of knobs.

Bathes.

A defence for the goute.

The end of the third Booke.

THE

THE FOVRTH BOOKE TEACHING THE CVRE OF FEAVERS.

CHAP. I.

An exposition of Feauers.

FEBRIS in Latine, a Feauer in Englisſh, it is an vnnaturall heate, which taking his beginning at the heart, is ſpread by the arteries and veines into the whole body, and doth hurt and let the operation of it. For although a man be hotter now then he was before, it followeth not that he hath a Feauer, vnleſſe the heate being immoderately increaſed, do offend the man, and hurt his operations and actions. *Febris quid.*

Moreouer, as there be three things (*Hippocrates* witneſſeth) which do ordaine and conſtitute our bodie, (that is to ſay) things contained, things containing, and things that flow about violently; (that is) the hard and ſound members in the bodie, the humours, and the ſpirits or aire: ſo alſo there be three kinds of ſimple Feauers. For if immoderate heate be kindled in the ſpirits and aire of mans bodie, it is called in Greeke, *Ephemera*, and in Latine *Diaria febris*, and in Engliſh it may be called, one day Feauer. This Feauer is like to hote ayre or winde, included in a bladder or bottle: for like as the ayre heateth the bottle that it is in, euen ſo, the ſpirits of a mans bodie, being heat more then they ſhould be, do heate all the whole bodie. There chanceth in this kinde of feauer but one fit, and for the moſt part it endureth but one day of his owne proper nature, whereupon it is called *Diaria febris*, that is, the one day feauer: for they ceaſſe after the firſt fit, if they be rightly handled. But you muſt note that there be feauers called *Diariæ*, which laſt vntill the third day, as thoſe be which are ingendred of thickening and ſtopping of the conduits and paſſages. For although that this word *Diaria* be not of the very ſubſtance of ſuch feauers, yet becauſe they lacke a conuenient name, to the intent that our teaching ſhould be briefe and euident (notwithſtanding that the word repugne againſt it) ſeeing that they be of the ſame nature that true *Diaries* be of, they may moſt rightly be called *Diaria* (as *Galen* ſheweth abundantly *in lib. 9. Therapeutices, cap. 1.*) Hereupon it is euident, that there be two kindes of *Diaries*: one which is named *Diaria* ſimply and without adiection or putting to of any word, which feauer doth not extend aboue the ſpace of a naturall day (that is) twenty foure houres. Another kind there is, which is called *Diaria plurium dierum* (that is) a diarie of many dayes. It is called by another name of *Galen* (that is) *Synochus non putrida*. The ſecond kinde of ſimple feauers is, when an immoderate heate is kindled in the humours, and

Three principall kindes of ſimple feauers Ephemera. *Diaria.*

Note.

Diaria ſimplex.

Diaria plurium dierum.

Putrida. it is called *Putrida*, that is, rotten, onely becauſe the humours in this kinde of feauers do putrifie and rotte. It is like vnto hote water: for as that doth heate a coole veſſell that it is powred into: ſo alſo humours hote aboue nature, do heate the body. The humours do putrifie and rot, either within the veſſels or without. If they rot within the veſſels, then either all the humours do putrifie together, or elſe one alone. If all the humours do putrifie equally and alike within all the veſſels or veines, or ſpecially within the greateſt, it cauſeth a feauer called *Synochus putrida*: which, to the intent you may perceiue what it meaneth, you muſt note firſt, that the Phyſitinos of Greece do call that

Συνοχος. feauer *Synochus*, in the which on fit remaining ſtill continually from the beginning to the ending, extendeth and continueth many dayes: or, it is a feauer which is without any great mutation vntill the end of it. This feauer may be called of the Latines *Continens febris*, and in Engliſh, a conſtant or continuall feauer. But although there be one forme and likelihood of ſuch feauers, whereupon they name them *Synochus*, yet their nature is not all one. For

Two kinds of Synochus: Synochus putrida, & non putrida. ſome of them haue manifeſt ſignes and tokens of rottenneſſe: and ſome againe haue none at all, which (as we ſaid a little before) be of the kindes of *Diaria*. We, to the intent that our doctrine may be the more euident, do call the firſt, *Synochus putrida*: and the laſt we call *Synochus non putrida*. And in this place you may not follow the barbarous ſort, which call the laſt of them *Synocha*, and the firſt *Synochus*: ſeeing the Greekes (as *Galen* witneſſeth) containe them both vnder the name or *Synochus*. Of theſe feauers which are named *Synochi*, there be three ſundrie ſorts or differences: for ſome of them do endure of an equall vehemencie and force from the beginning vntill the ending: thoſe the Greekes call *Homotonos*, and *Acmaſticos*, that is, remaining ſtill in the ſame force and vigour. Some alwayes increaſe and augment by little and little: thoſe the Greekes do call *anabaticos* and *epacmaſticos*, that is, increaſing and augmenting more and more. Some do decreaſe and diminiſh by little and little, thoſe the Greekes call *paracmaſticos*, that is, decreaſing. Moreouer, if one onely humour do putrifie and rot within the veſſels, it kindleth a feauer, which the Greekes do call *Synechis*, and the Latines, *Continua febris* in Engliſh a continuall feauer, which is when the feauer doth not leaue the patient, but it hath a certaine remiſſion and ſlaking of euerie fit. Whereby it is euident that the feauer *Synochus* and *Synechis*, that is, a conſtant feauer, and a continually feauer, do differ much aſunder. For in a feauer *Synochus*, there is no remiſſion or ſlaking of the heate, but in the feauer *Synechis*, there is ſenſible remiſſion and ſlaking in euerie fitte. Alſo the feauer *Synochus* hath but one onely fit, but in *Synechis* there be many fits. And they two agree in this, that neither of them doth leaue the patient ſometime. Of feauers that are called *Synechis*, or elſe *Continua febris*, there be three kindes: for if choler do putrifie and rot within the veſſels, it cauſeth a continuall Tertian, or a burning feauer, which is called of the Greekes *Cauſos*. If fleame do putrifie or rot within the veſſels, there ingendreth a continuall Quotidian. But if melancholy do putrifie and rot within the veſſels, there ingendreth a continuall Quartane. And theſe continuall feauers be ſomewhat like to the intermitting feauers, of the which we will ſpeake ſtraightway. For

Three ſorts of Synochus.
1
2
3

συνεχης.
What a continuall feauer is
Difference betweene Synochus, and συνεχης.
Three kindes of continuall feauers.
Tertiana continua.
Quotidiana continua.
Quartana continua.

a con

a continuall Tertian agreeth with a true intermitting Tertian, in this, that it hath a fit as well as it euery third day. And a continuall Quotidian agreeth with an intermitting Quotidian, because each of them hath a fit euery day. Also a continuall Quartane agreeth with an intermitting Quartane, because both of them causeth a fit euery fourth day. But yet these feauers do differ two waies, notwithstanding that they agree in the humour that causeth them. First they differ, because in continuall feauers the putrified humour is contained within the veines, but in intermitting feauers, that humour is dispersed into all the members of the bodie; whereupon it chanceth through violence of spreading of humours, the feauers are purged out by themselues. Hereby also they differ another way, that is, the intermitting feauers slake betweene the fits, but the continuall feauers do not cease at all betweene the fits. Hitherto we haue rehearsed what kindes of feauers humours putrified within the vessels do cause and ingender: now we will expound, what feauers humours putrified without the vessels do conceiue, ingender and kindle. If therefore an humour do putrifie and rot without the vessels, it causeth an intermitting feauer, which is so called, because the fit doth not endure continually, but it hath a slaking or ceassing, and leaueth off betweene the fits. It may most aptly be called in Latine *Febris interpolata*, because the fits come and renew at their times: some call it *deficiens febris*. Of this feauer there be three kindes, that is, a Tertian, a Quotidian, and a Quartane. A pure and exquisite Tertian is caused when choler doth putrifie and rot without the vessels. It is so called, because it ceasseth one day, and commeth againe the third day. An exquisite Quotidian, which in Greeke is called *Amphemerinon*, is caused of sweete fleame being putrified and rotten without the vessels: and it is so called, because it returneth euerie day. We did not rashly say sweete fleame: for if glasen fleame do putrifie and rot a little, it causeth a feauer called *Epialos*. And this *Epialos* is a feauer in which the patient is both feauerous, and feruently cold, and doth feele both heate and cold immoderate in all parts of his bodie, both at one time together. To the aforesaid feauer doth belong a feauer, in Greeke called *Lypiria*. In this feauer there is heate felt within, and in the bowels and entrailes: but in all the outward parts, there is cold felt. An intermitting Quartane is ingendred of melancholy putrified and rotted without the vessels. It is so named because it ceasseth two dayes, and returneth againe the fourth day. The third kinde of simple feauers in generall is caused, when heate is kindled in the sound, hard, and fleshie parts of mans bodie, and it is called both in Greeke and Latine, *Hectica febris*, and in English the feauer Hecticke. This feauer is like to a hote vessell; for as the vessell doth heate the water that is powred into it: so also the feauer Hecticke, which sticketh in the sound and fleshie parts of the body, and is infixed in them, is able to heate all the humours of the body. And if this feauer do not increase, that it doth melt and consume the whole body, and all the hard and sound parts of it, then it is called *Hectica marasmodes*, and *marasmus*. And this (as *Galen* witnesseth) is vncurable. For although you might quench the heate, yet the drinesse which is left, being proper to old age, will kill the patient. Besides the feauers now of vs rehearsed, there is another feauer which is caused of breathing in of pestilent aire. But seeing this Feauer (as

Likenesse betweene continuall and intermitting feauers.

Difference betweene continuall and intermitting feauers.

Intermittens febris.

Interpolata.

Tertiana intermittens.

Quotidiana exquisita.

Epialos.

Lypiria.

Quartana intermittens.

Hectica febris

Marasmus.

Pestilent feauers.

Galen witnesseth, *libro primo De differentia febrium, capite quinto*) is ingendred of rottennesse; for the ayre about vs being corrupted with a putrifying and rotting euapotation, causeth also the humours of the bodie to rot: therefore it may be contained vnder the second principal kind of the feauer called *Putrida*. Moreouer in this place, we may not let passe to tell, that some feauers be ingendred without disease or griefe in any member of the bodie, and some feauers be kindled through the inflammation of some member. Therefore, as the former feauers haue their names, so also each of these that follow haue their proper names. For the feauer which is ingendred through inflammation of the filme or kall that girdeth in the ribbes, it is called, *Pleuretica febris*. That which ingendreth through inflammation of the lungs, is called *Peripneumonica febris*. That which chanceth through inflammation of the stomacke, the liuer, or the lungs, is called in Greeke *Typhodes* (that is) inflaming or burning. Likewise all other feauers which ingender through inflammation of any member, haue diuerse names, according to the diuersitie of the member. Therefore in euery sicke person you must diligently discerne feauers which come without disease of other members, from those feauers which ingender through inflammation of some member. Of the aforesaid feauers, some be *Typicæ* (that is) certaine and ordinate: and some be *Erraticæ* (that is) vncertaine and vnordinate. *Typicæ* be such feauers, whose fits, and slakings from them, do come iustly at their appointed time. *Erraticæ* are such feauers as be contrary to these, for they keepe no certaine and iust time, nor any order of fits, nor the intermission betweene them, as be those feauers which ingender of melancholy, which is moued in certaine members, and in some it remaineth vnmoueable, in other members it putrifieth, or beginneth to boile. Hitherto we haue rehearsed the kinds of simple feauers: it remaineth therefore that we declare briefly the kindes of compound and mixt feauers. Therefore compound feauers are caused two wayes: first, because these feauers aforesaid (that is) a Tertian, Quotidian, and Quartane, may be mixed together without the disease of any member. Secondarily, because these feauers, which be ingendred through inflammation of some member, may commixe together. The feauers that come without inflammation of any member, are sometime compleate and ioyned together, and sometime they are altogether confounded. Complication (as *Galen* witnesseth) is, when the feauers inuade the patient at diuerse houres: and confusion is, when they begin at one time. There be foure complications or ioyning together of the feauers Tertian and Quotidian (as *Galen* witnesseth.) One, when a Tertian and Quotidian are mixed together, being both intermitting feauers. Another is, when an intermitting Tertian is ioyned with a continuall Quotidian. This is called by a peculiar name of the Greekes *Hemitritæus*: because all his nature hath the halfe part of each of the said feauers. The third is when an intermitting Quotidian is mixed with a continuall Tertian. The fourth is when a continuall Quotidian is ioyned with a continuall Tertian. To be short, feauers of one kind are complicate and ioyned with feauers of the same kind, as continuall with continuall, and intermitting with intermitting feauers, and Tertians with other Tertians, and one Quartane with another Quartane. Also it chanceth many times, that feauers of diuerse

Feauers ingendred of inflãmation of some member.

The kinds of compound feauers.

Complications of Quotidians and Tertians.

Hemitritæus.

diuerſe kinds are coupled together, as Quotidians with Tertians, and each of them with Quartanes, and ſometime intermitting feauers are mixed with continuall feauers. Moreouer, after the ſame ſort, feauers which are ingendred with inflammation of ſome members are ſometime mixed together, as if diuerſe members do each of them kindle a feauer proper to themſelues, or the affection where they ingender be mixed. Seeing therefore, that feauers are compounded and mixed many ſundrie wayes, firſt the kinds of ſimple feauers muſt be with great diligence perfectly learned of them that ſtudie Phyſicke: for vnleſſe they know them very perfectly, it cannot be that euer they ſhould know well compound feauers. Therefore ſeeing the knowledge of them is very hard, in ſo much that oftentimes cunning Phiſitions are deceiued in iudging of them, you muſt ſeeke the ſignes and tokens whereby you may know them, diligently out of *Galen*, who hath taught this thing more exactly then any man. We, to helpe the memory of the ſtudious, haue comprehended all the kinds of ſimple feauers in this Table following.

TABVLA FEBRIVM.

Of ſimple feauers there be three principall kinds. For vnnaturall heat ingendred

- In the ſpirits of breath, cauſeth *Ephemera*, or *Diaria*, whereof be two kindes, that is,
  - *Ephemera ſimpliciter*, or *Diaria*, one day feauer.
  - *Diaria plurium dierum*, otherwiſe called *Synochus non putrida*, enduring three or foure dayes.
- In the humours, cauſeth *Putrida febris*, a rotten feauer. They do rot in two places,
  - Within the veſſels, & that two waies. For either
    - All the humours do putrifie & rot equally, & cauſe a feauer called *Synochus putrida*.
    - Or
      - One only humour putrifieth, and ſo cauſeth a cõtinuall feauer. If there be putrifaction
        - Of Choler, it cauſeth a continuall Tertian, or a burning feauer.
        - Of Fleame, it cauſeth a continuall Quotidian.
        - Of Melancholy, it cauſeth a continuall Quartane.
  - Without the veſſels, and cauſe an intermitting feauer. For if there be putrifaction
    - Of Choler, it cauſeth an intermitting Tertian.
    - Of Fleame that is
      - Sweete, it cauſeth an intermitting Quotidian, exquiſite and pure.
      - Glaſen, it cauſeth *Epialos*.
    - Of Melancholy, it cauſeth an intermitting feauer Quartane.
- In the fleſhie parts, cauſeth either,
  - *Hectica Febris*,
  - or
  - *Maraſmus*.

CHAP. II.

Of one day Feauer.

Ephemera quid.

DIARIA *Febris* in Latine, *Ephemera* in Greeke, in Engliſh, one day feauer; it is that which hath one onely fit, finiſhing for the moſt part in one day, at the moſt, of his owne nature. For it endeth after the firſt fit, and doth not exceede nor paſſe a naturall day, if it be rightly vſed: and that, becauſe of the matter wherein it is, that is, the ſpirit or breath, which is eaſily diſſolued and diſperſed. Therefore *Galen* doth moſt worthily call this, the moſt ſimple feauer, becauſe it is the ſhorteſt and the moſt gentle feauer, being nothing malignant. Therefore if any thing in this feauer be committed either by ignorance of the Phiſitions, or through the intemperance of the ſicke, or by errours of the miniſters and aſſiſtants, whereby it turneth into another kinde of feauer, that doth not chance through the nature of this feauer. *Diaria febris* is cauſed, when as the ſpirit or breath is inflamed and heat aboue nature, without any putrifaction or rottenneſſe. And that chanceth many wayes: ſometime through conſtipation, binding, or thickening of the skinne, which ſtoppeth and keepeth in the vapours or ſpirits which were wont to flow out by the pores, which becauſe they be hote and ſharpe, therefore they ingender a feauer. Sometime it is cauſed through wearineſſe and vehement defatigation. Alſo through watchings, crudities, and lacke of digeſtion, ſadneſſe, feare, ire, vehement care of the mind, burning of the Sunne, cold, hunger, drunkenneſſe, and ſwelling of the kernels in the throte, and ſuch like, which can heate the ſpirits and inflame them. The ſignes wherby *Diaries* are knowne, are of two ſorts: for ſome ſignes be common to all *Diaries*, and ſome be proper and peculiar to each cauſe. The common ſignes be ſixe in number, whereof the firſt is the pulſe. For all the *Diaries*, as much as in them is, do change the pulſe in greatneſſe, ſwiftneſſe and oftenneſſe. But it keepeth exquiſitely that order, ſoftneſſe, and equalitie, which is according with nature. The ſecond common ſigne is the vrine, which in *Diaries* is altogether according to nature, or doth little turne from a naturall ſtate. An vrine that accordeth with nature, is ſubruſe in colour, meane in ſubſtance, hauing in it a reſidence white, light, and equall. The third token is the equalitie of heate, which in all *Diarie* feauers is gentle, pleaſant and eaſie. The fourth ſigne is the maner of ending of it: for all *Diaries* are looſened and ended by a breath or vapor which cannot be perceiued, or by abundant vapours or moiſtures, or ſweet ſweates. The fift is the wanting of euill ſymptomes and accidents, as be, vehement paine of the head, and ſtomacke, and other parts, abhorring of meates, vnquietneſſe, vnſatiable thirſt, and ſuch like. The ſixt common ſigne is, that all *Diarie* feauers be ingendred of an outward cauſe, which the Phyſitions at theſe dayes call a primitiue cauſe. But the particular ſignes, whereby each *Diaria* doth differ from other, be theſe that follow. They which haue a *Diaria* feauer cauſed through watching, there chanceth to them a naughtie colour, and ſwelling of the face, heauie motion of the eyes, for they ſcant lift vp the eye liddes: there is moiſtneſſe of the haires of the eye liddes, and ſmall pulſes. For watching (as *Hippocrates* ſaith) ſeeing it letteth digeſtion, it ingendreth abundance of crude

Cauſe.

Signa.

Common ſignes ſixe.

1
2

A naturall vrine.

3
4

5

6

Particular ſignes of Diaries.

Signes of watchings.

crude and raw humours and vapours, it diminiſheth the naturall heate, and looeſneth the bodie, whereupon there follow the tokens aforeſaid. To be ſhort, watchings do reuoke and pull backe nature from digeſting: therefore they cauſe great cruditie and rawneſſe, as well in the braine, as in the reſt of the bodie, whereupon alſo do chance the tokens aforeſaid. The ſignes of a Diarie cauſed of care and ſorrow be theſe, leaneneſſe of the bodie. If ſorrow be the cauſe, it is clearer: if care, it is darker. Alſo hollowneſſe, and drineſſe of the eyes doth ſignifie both the ſaid effects, but in thoughts and cogitations it is leaſt, becauſe the ſpirits and humours are leaſt conſumed: and it is moſt euident in ſorrow. Alſo there follow theſe effects, a certaine vnaccuſtomed paleneſſe or ſwartneſſe, ſo that the skinne is diſtitute of her naturall colour. They which haue a Diarie through wrath or furious anger, haue neither hollowneſſe of eyes, nor euill colour of the face, but rather their eyes ſeeme to ſticke out further, and their face is red, and there is a loftineſſe of the pulſes. So alſo the ſignes of the reſt of the Diaries being ingendred through perturbation of the mind, may chiefly be knowne by the pulſes. For in ſadneſſe the ſpirits are carried inward, and therefore the pulſes be ſmall, feeble, and rare. In feare new begunne, the bloud and ſpirits runne inward, as it were to the ſpring head, and the mind is troubled. For nature being vexed, driueth the ſpirits hither and thither, which through mouing are inflamed, whereby the pulſes are made ſwift, neceſſitie compelling them, and the minde being chafed maketh them vnequall and ſharpe. In old feare (the ſpirits be diſperſed, and vertue being feeble) it cauſeth ſuch pulſes as we ſpake of before in Sadneſſe. They which haue a *Diaria* feauer through burning and heate of the Sunne, their skinne is hote and drie, their head ſeemeth to them to burne, becauſe of the ſpirits inflamed in it. Their eyes waxe redder, and ſometimes the veines in their eyes, temples, and forehead, and in all their whole face, are ſtretched and puffed vp. They that haue this feauer through cold, are taken with heauie diſtillations, and reumes, becauſe cold bindeth, and withholdeth and keepeth the fumous excrements within the skinne. Moreouer, the skinne is leſſe hote, and all the body ſheweth to haue a greater moiſture, becauſe the wonted fluxe is reſtrained and ſtopped through cold. Moreouer, there is no filthineſſe in the face for the ſame cauſe. They which haue this feauer cauſed of wearineſſe, their skinne is made drier then it is in other Diaries, becauſe exerciſe drieth vp the bodie, and draweth out the moiſture of it; alſo their pulſes be vnlike: for they that haue vſed great exerciſes, and be wearied aboue meaſure, haue ſmall pulſes, becauſe of imbecillitie and weakeneſſe of ſtrength: but they that haue vſed ſmall labours, their pulſes be great, becauſe their ſtrength is not diminiſhed yet. They which be taken with a *Diaria* feauer through drunkenneſſe or hunger, neede no ſignes to know the cauſe, for ſuch cauſes may be knowne by telling of the ſicke. They which haue this feauer through kernels, ſwellings or impoſtumations about the throate or mouth, or other where, they haue very great pulſes, and becauſe of the feauerous heate, they be ſwift and often. Alſo there is equalitie of their pulſes, becauſe the inſtrument of mouing is not letted, neither by obſtruction, nor through abundance of humours, nor of ſharpe vapours, nor by preſſing together, vn-

Signes of care and ſorrow.

Signes of anger.

Signes of ſadneſſe.

Signes of feare.

Signes of Sun-burning.

Signes of cold.

Signes of weerineſſe.

Signes of drunkenneſſe and hunger.

Signs of ſwellings about the throate.

lesse the inflammation be very great. Their face is altogether red and swollen, because of the abundance of heate. And their vrine appeareth pale, because the choler that should colour the vrine is transferred to the botch or impostumation. The cure of all diarie Feauers is brought to passe by dyet, whose chiefe point in all diaries that be simple, consists in this, that you minister vnto them meates that ingender good humours, and that be easie of digestion, and apt to be distributed about the bodie. Giue vnto them that are burnt in the Sunne, and to them that be angred, a diet which doth coole and moist. And vnto them that are cold, giue a diet that nourisheth lesse, and that doth heate moderately. Against watchings or sadnesse, or consuming with ouermuch care, vse a diet which can both moisten, and prouoke sleepe, that it may deliuer them from the drinesse that those euils haue caused, and also that it may recreate and refresh their strength. They that haue a Feauer of wearinesse, you must allow them to eate as much meate as they can digest: for you must alwayes eschue cruditie and rawnesse of the stomach. For the substance of the bodie being dissolued and dispersed with labour, must be repaired with much meate being easie of digestion. You must measure the quantitie of taking of meate, by the patients strength, age, naturall temperament, and custome of the sicke. Moreouer, by the time of the yeare, the region, and such other like. But those whose temperature of the bodie is very hote and drie, such you must feed with meate by and by at the first beginning of the fit. For in them the diarie feauer will change very swiftly into an acute and rotten feauer. Chiefly aboue other, they may be fed with a thinne diet which haue a diarie caused of a botch or impostumation; for in them the substance of the bodie is not diminished. Wine that is white and thin is good almost for all diarie feauers, those which be properly named so, and do endure but twentie foure houres. For besides that it helpeth digestion, it also prouoketh vrine and sweate (as *Galen* saith.) But you may grant it more abundantly to the feauerous through watchings, sorrow, or care; because great abundance of the spirits is spent and consumed in them, which wine will easily and quickly restore in them againe. But to those that haue headeach, whether they haue watched, or be feauerous by any other occasion, they must refraine from wine, because it pierceth the head quickely. And they that haue this feauer ingendred of great anger and furie, vnlesse they be altogether quiet from that perturbation, may haue no wine giuen to them; for the spirits and bloud are maruellously chafed, and boileth sore. Also you must driue from wine those that be feauerous through the swelling of botches or kernels in the throte, vntill it be loosened: not, that it is so vnprofitable for the feauer, but that it hindereth the cure of the botch. For it increaseth the flowing of the humours into the grieued places, and so causeth inflammation, and thereby augmenteth the feauer. You must cure all simple Feauers that be diaries (as *Galen* witnesseth) with baths. Therefore whosoeuer hath this Feauer, in the declination of the first fit, you must bring them into a bath: but yet all may not be bathed alike, nor all must vse the same parts of a bath. For they that haue this Feauer caused of botches or impostumations, may profitably tarrie in the ayre or fume of the bath; because it both rarifieth and maketh thinne the skinne, and also it prouoketh

Victus ratio.

Wine good for Diaries.

Curatio.

and

and enticeth sweate out of the bodie: neither doth it hurt those patients with drinesse, as it would do those that haue this feauer ingendred of wearinesse, watchings, cares, and other perturbations of the mind. For seeing their bodie is dryed vp altogether by those causes, they must be kept from the aire of the bath, lest it augment their griefe. Therefore such may tarry the longer in a bath of sweete water being made hote, that through the moisture of it they may recouer the humiditie that is lost, and is decayed in them. Afterward soft hands must rub them gently, with plentie of warme oyles, wherein there is no manner of restriction or binding. For this friction and rubbing doth moisten, loosen, and soften the hard and fleshie parts, and it dissolueth and disperseth those things which are contained in the pores and conduites of the bodie. They that haue this feauer caused through burning of the Sunne, you must cure them by and by in the beginning, with cooling, and with many bathings of sweete water, and onely with powring on a little oyle, without friction or rubbing of it, for it raiseth heate. Things that do coole the head being applyed to it, be oiles of Roses, and of vntipe Oliues, and other which be rehearsed *in libro primo*. These being first made cold, and then receiued with Woolle, and holden vp aloft, you must presse it with your hand, and let it droppe downe vpon the forepart of the head, and that continually, while the feauer doth decline: then afterward bring the sicke into a bath. If any person haue this feauer through cold, he must also be brought to a bath in the remission of his fit, and his head must be nourished both before and after the bathing with oyle of *Ireos*, and *oleum Nardinum*, and such like. For they that haue a feauer through this cause, haue need of medicines that can heate, and remoue constipation & binding. They that labour of a *Diaria* feauer through hunger, in the declination of the fit, you must bring them straight vnto a bath, and powring vpon them much sweete oyle warmed, rubbe them softly, and you must keepe them long in the water of the warme bath, that thereby the drinesse which hunger hath caused in the body, may be corrected and amended by the oyle and the bath. When they be come out of the bath, you must recreate and refresh the strength with conuenient meates, and then you must bring them againe to a bath, and when they come out againe, (the perturbation with their bathing being ceassed) you must giue them hote water to drinke, and by and by you must minister iuyce of Ptisan, and sometime they may take Lettuce, and they may eate fishes taken out of grauelly places, as being light meate, sodden in a white broth: which, what it was in old time, *Galen.* sheweth in his fourth Booke, *De sanitate tuenda*. If the feauer *Diaria* do chance through cruditie or rawnesse of the stomach, you must first consider whether the wombe be soluble, or else costiue. If it be soluble, and those things onely which be corrupt do seeme to voide forth, then you must wash him, and nourish him in the remission of the feauer; but not vnlesse first you diligently behold and foresee all things chancing to the stomacke. For if such abundant emptying hath bene alreadie, or doth now continue, so that the vertue and strength of the sicke is wearied, it is better to giue him meate, and wash him both together. But you must diligently behold first those things that be about the stomacke. You must vse about the sicke, if the emptying do endure no

longer, irrigations and sprinklings of the stomacke with oyle of Wormwood, and other things which are rehearsed before in the third booke, in the Chapter of weakenesse of the stomacke. But those things that be applyed to the stomacke, let them be well heat: for those things that be applyed bloud-warme do dissolue and loosen the strength of the stomacke. If the belly be altogether costiue, handle and feele the sides, and then the whole body, and consider whether the meate is descended into the small guts, or into the Colon. And if the meate abide yet still in the stomacke, let the sicke drinke much warme water, or put his finger or a feather downe into his throate, and vomite vp all that vexeth or troubleth him. Then you must foment and nourish his hypochonders and sides, and let him rest. But when the foode is descended alreadie into the bowels, you must bid them lie with their face and stomacke downeward, and you must nourish the bellie and prouoke sleepe, for that digesteth cruditie maruellously. After sleepe to bring out excrements from the wombe, you must put in a suppositary, or cast an easie clyster to loose the wombe. They which haue a feauer caused through swelling of the kernels of the throte, in them you must first cure the bile or botch that caused the inflammation, after that sort that *Galen* teacheth in his Bookes *De medendi ratione*. When the fit declineth, they must be washed. Also they must be nourished with a thinne and scarce diet, because in them the substance of their body is not lost. Also they must be kept from wine for the causes aforesaid. And this sufficeth for the curing of a *Diaria* feauer, being so called *simpliciter*, without any addition.

Note.

Sleepe digesteth.

CHAP. III.

Of a Diarie lasting moe dayes.

Diaria pluriũ dierum.
Synochus non putrida.

THERE is another kind of Diaries, which is named *Diaria plurium dierum*, for no other cause but because it extendeth and continueth vnto the third day. It is otherwise called *Synochus non putrida*. The ancient Authors haue called this feauer *Diaria*, because it is of the same nature that right Diaries are of: for it endeth after the first fit, if it be rightly and well handled.

Causæ.

This feauer is caused of thickning or stopping of the pores and passages of the skinne. That thickning (as *Galen* witnesseth) doth chance either because the small pores are stopped vp, or because they waxe narrower, or also because the body it self is moderately thickned; which is wont to chance through cold, or after a bath, or by a medicine that is very sharpe and restrictiue, or through burning of the Sunne, and other such like which can drie the skinne. This feauer may be knowne first by touching: for in them that haue it, the skin is felt harder, and more compact together then it is wont to be: Secondarily you may know this feauer by mouing of the heate: for at the touching it seemeth gentle, and easie; but afterward, if you hold still your hand longer, the heate is sharper. Thirdly, you may know this feauer by the vrine, which is much altered from his naturall substance and colour: for the bloud doth not boyle very much, neither is there much choler ingendred, whereby the vrine should be made higher coloured. Fourthly you may know it by the bignesse of the body, which keepeth one state, and doth not fall away, because the thicknesse of the skin doth let the dissoluing of the vapours and moisture; and therefore also

Signa.
1
2
3
4

also the eyes are not hollow, nor drie, but more swollen, and full of moisture then they should be naturally. Fiftly you may know it by the pulse, which is equall, great, swift, frequent and vehement. They that be taken with this feauer, if you will cure them rightly and truly, you must let them bloud, and you must draw out so much bloud as the strength of the patient will suffer. And know this for a suretie, that vnlesse you vse this remedie to those which by nature haue their bodie vnapt to breathe out vapours because of abundance, it will come to passe, that either they shall be choked, or be in danger of often swounding, vnlesse great strength, or much sweating, or large fluxe of bloud do deliuer them from death. The body being emptied by bloud-letting, shortly after minister meates and medicines which can cleanse and scoure. The meates which can do this in feauers (as *Galen* witnesseth) be *Ptisan* and *Mulsa*. The medicines be *Ptisan*, and *Oximel*, and things sodden in *Mulsa*, as be Calamint, Hysope, Origan, *Serpillum*, *Ireos*, and *Apium*. But all these be hotter then they ought to be, and therefore they inflame and kindle feauers, as also Wine doth. *Oximel* doth onely scoure and cleanse strongly, and doth not inflame & kindle feauers, so that it doth dissolue those things that be glutinous, clammy, tough and grosse, and it deliuereth the conduits, pores and passages from obstructions and stoppings. Obserue and watch how much of the feauerous heate is diminished by this diet. For if the third day in the morning, you see very little of the feauer left, and if there be no signes of rottennesse of humours in the pulse, nor cruditie of rawnesse in the vrine: if the suspected houre wherein the feauer tooke the patient the first day be after noone, you may boldly wash the patient quickly long before sixe of the clocke, but it is sufficient if you end the washing three houres before. Likewise if you suspect the tenth houre, you may wash him the seuenth houre, for three houres or foure is space enough betweene the bathing and the fitte. When the bodie hath bene heat in the bath, being first annointed with sweete oyle warmed, and rubbed very moderately and easily, then by and by it must be wiped without and washed. These things following do scoure and cleanse most moderately, that is, meale of *Ervum*, and of Barley, and also of Beanes. Moreouer, *Mulsa*, which is waterie doth the same. Stronger things be, *Ireos*, roote of *Panax*, and *Aristolochia*, and *Mulsa* which is of a meane commixtion; but that *Mulsa* scoureth most of all that is pure, which is, when there is but a litle water mixed with Honey, so that the melted Honey may easily enter into the small pores of the skinne. Stronger scourers then these, be, the froth of Salt peter, the Salt-peter it selfe, and then *Aphonitrum*: Sope is one of them that is able to scoure most of all. Moreouer, after a bath, you must giue the patient nothing but water which hath had a litle *Apium* sodden in it, although there be three houres space betweene the bathing and the suspected houres. But if the fit doth inuade the patient in the euening, or two houres sooner, then you may wash him in the morning, and giue him meate, but you must giue him onely iuyce of *Ptisan*. Then if the suspected houres bring nothing with them, you may wash him againe, if you will, and giue him meate, but you must haue respect to the vrine and the pulse. But if there chance any thing in the suspected houres, you must conferre it with the fit which you had the first day, and

5. *Curatio.*

Absterſiue medicines.

Oximel.

then you must consider the vrine and also the pulses. For all these will appeare to be in a meane temperature when there is left but a little obstruction. Wherefore you shall wash him the fourth day, and giue him meate, hauing respect to the aforesaid considerations: and you shall hope that nothing will be left the fifth day. But if there be great obstruction caused, that feauer is not of the kind of *Diary* feauers.

CHAP. III.

Of a rotten Feauer called Synochus.

SYNOCHVS in Greeke, is a Feauer, wherein one fit continuing perpetually from the beginning to the ending, remaineth many dayes, or else it is a feauer which is without all great mutation vntill the end of it. Hereupon it is called in Latine *continens Febris*, and in English it may be called, a constant and stable Feauer. There be three sundry differences of these constant feauers, as appeareth before in the exposition of feauers. This Feauer *Synochus putrida*, or *continens Febris*, is caused when all the humours do putrifie and rot equally together within all the vessels, and specially in the great vessels, which be about the arme-holes and the share; which is wont to chance, when a feauerous heate is retained and kept in of a vehement binding and stopping, which is within the bodie. For whatsoeuer things be hote and moist, and may hardly breathe or fume out, they putrifie and rot quickly and readily. Therefore this kinde of Feauer is not ingendred nor kindled in folke that be leane and slender, nor in them that haue a thinne and rare state of their bodie, nor in a cold temperament of the bodie, nor in a cold age: but for the most part it ingendreth in them which do abound with bloud, and in those that be hote, as well by their age and nature, as by exercises and diet, and specially it kindleth in them that be fleshie, grosse, and thicke bodied, or else in them that be stuffed with hote excrements. They which haue this feauer, their pulse is very great, vehement, quicke, frequent and equall: the constitution or substance of the arteries is neither harder nor softer then it should be by nature, but the quickenesse and frequencie of it, is according to the greatnesse of the feauer; & these signes are common with the signes of the *Diaria plurium dierum*. But particularly in this Feauer there be signes of rottennesse, & that as well in the vrine, as in the pulse, and by the qualitie of vnkind heate. The cure of this Feauer must be begunne with letting of bloud: and if vertue and nature be strong, and no other notable thing to stoppe or let it, you must draw bloud till he do taint & swound. For if the patient be strong, this is the chiefest remedie for this kind of Feauer (as *Galen* saith.) For first the body *is* turned into a contrary state, for it is cooled quickly through the fainting and swounding. As for cooling of the bodie, nothing can be found that is more pleasant, or more profitable, either for the sicke, or for nature. Moreouer, in such bodies there chanceth of necessitie, loosenesse of the bellie, or a laske, and oftentimes also vomiting of choler: which things, moisture or sweats do gather from the whole bodie. Therefore you shall do best by and by in these Feuers, not to marke the number of days past, but only to consider the strength of the patient. For if that he be safe & strong, you may let bloud, not only the sixt or seuenth day, but also in

Continens febris.

Causæ.

Signa.

in the dayes following. But if you are compelled at any time to cure a patient, to whom not onely the remedie of bloud-letting hath bene pretermitted and kept back, but now also either through ignorance of Physitians, or through feare of the sicke or his assistents, in processe of time you are forbidden to let bloud, you must come to the ministring of cold things. But you must diligently discerne & consider before, how much hurt may chance by it. For if the hurt will be small or none, minister very cold drink, as much as the sicke will drinke, and you may be the more bold to do it, if the patient hath bene vsed to drinke cold drinks. But if you feare that great discommodity would arise through it, you shall abstaine from it, and vse other remedies whereby obstructions may be taken away, and abundance auoided, and that the burning heat of the feauer may be cooled and eased. The discommodities and hurts which do follow cold drinke ministred immoderately, and out of time, be these: first because it prohibiteth and letteth grosse and clammy humors to be attenuated and digested, whether they haue ingendred obstructions, or rottennesse, or inflammation, or impostume, or knobby hardnes, or such like effects. As often therfore as a feauer is kindled of such humors, cold things are not good for their auoiding: but to this feuer it bringeth much ease, because it quencheth the feuer that is already kindled. But yet seeing the cause of the feauer remaineth still, of necessity an other feauer must be kindled new againe, and many times a worse then that which went before, because that the body is thickened through cold. And this is one discommodity not to be neglected. Another is, that cold things hurt many weake members of the patient, whether they be weake by naturall distemperature, or by some vice that they haue gotten. So in some it hath bene found that their throte hath bene so hurt, that they could not swallow; in some the stomach, that they could scarce digest; in some the mouth of the stomach, or the liuer, or the gut Colon, or the lungs, or the midriffe, or the reines, or the bladder, or some other such like member is so striken with cold, that it is made weake and vnable to do his proper action and office. Many by immoderate drinking of it out of time, haue by and by bene taken with difficultie of breathing and with crampe and trembling, and haue had hurt in all their sinewes. Therfore to be short, in them that haue any swelling, or fleame, or bloud, or any knobby hardnesse, you may not giue cold water vnto them, nor yet to them that a raw humour doth hurt with obstruction or rottennesse. But if there be no such swelling as is aforesaid, and that you do perceiue euident signes of digestion and concoction in the vrine, and if there be no member so giuen to a cold temperature that it might take hurt, then you may boldly giue cold water. Also if the sicke haue vsed to drinke cold water, you may more boldly minister it: for all the members haue learned before by experience to suffer it familiarly without hurt. The drinking of cold water is perillous in them that haue but litle bloud and flesh. Therefore by these things before rehearsed, it is euident to all men, that the chiefest remedies of these kinds of feauers called *Synochus putrida*, be these two, bloud-letting, & drinking of cold water: but bloud letting may be vsed at any time, if the strength of the patient will suffer it, and drinking of cold water must be vsed when euident signes of concoction are seene in the vrine, when the feauer is greatest, and when you are compelled to leaue bloud-letting.

When cold things should be ministred.

Discommodities of cold drinke.

Of cold water.

Continens feuer hath two remedies chiefly.

You may not let bloud on a full stomach.

You must note well the time when you should let bloud, and marke what went before, and what followeth. For if cruditie and indigestion of meats do go before, you must refraine so long time from bloud letting, as will suffice as well to digest the meate, as that the excrements may descend downe. But if there will follow of necessity any fluxe and emptying, you must leaue so much bloud still as will voyde by that fluxe. Therefore if at the time of bloud-letting the menstruis do chance to flow, or also that the hemorhoides do open and burst out, if you beholding the vehemency of the fluxe, shall thinke it to be sufficient to purge and empty out that which you require without any helpe, then you shall let nature work alone. But if you thinke it contrary, draw out so much bloud, that thereby vnder them both conioyned together, you may bring to passe your request and expectation. Let the diet in these feauers be chiefly this that followeth. In those that haue bene let bloud, minister to them two houres after bloud letting, iuyce of Ptisan, and command quiet and rest. And when they are awaked out of sleepe, minister againe Ptisan broth. In this diet the patient must persist and continue vntill the third day. You must note, that in these feauers called *Synochi*, the patients must be fed at such time as haile folke are wont to eate, and when they feele most ease: for so they shall the easilier suffer and beare their foode. And if they be strong and lustie, and you looke for the vigour and state of the feauer straightway, the patient must vse a most thin and scarce diet. But contrariwise if he be weake and feeble, you cannot minister a thinne diet to him without perill. Therefore in giuing of meate to the patient, you must diligently forelee, and ponder his strength and abilitie. He that desireth to know more of this kinde of feauer as touching the cure of it, let him reade *Galen in lib. 7. Therapeut. meth. cap. 5.*

Diet.

When the sicke should be fed.

CHAP. IIII.

Against continuall Feauers.

Febris continua.

FEBRIS *Continua* in Latine, *Synochis* in Greek, in English it is called a continuall feauer: it is a feauer that leaueth not off altogether betweene the fits, but it hath a certaine sensible slaking of heate betweene the fits. A continuall feauer is caused, when one onely humor doth putrifie and rot within the vessels.

Causæ.

And there be three differences of this feauer, according to the diuersitie of the humour that putrifieth in the veines: for if choler do putrifie within the vessels, it ingendreth a continuall Tertian, which the Greekes call *Causos*, in Latine it is called *ardens febris*, in English a burning feauer. If fleame do putrifie and rot within the veines, it ingendreth a continuall Quotidian: but if melancholy do putrifie within the veines, it kindleth a continuall Quartane. There is not a more certaine signe of a continuall feauer, then that none of them do come to intermission and slaking altogether betweene the fits, vntill the feauer be quite ended and quenched. Their other signes are common with the intermitting feauers: for an exquisite burning feauer, or continuall Tertian, hath all the other signes of an exquisite intermitting Tertian, differing onely in this, that it doth not inuade and begin with vehement cold and stiffenesse, neither doth it end in quiet and rest. Likewise a continuall Quotidian hath all the signes of an exquisite intermitting Quotidian, but it onely differeth from it, because it doth

Three differences of continuall feauers.

Signa.

not

not intermit and slake betweene the fits. In like manner the continuall Quartanes haue their signes of intermitting Quartanes, but that they come not to quiet and rest betweene fits. Seeing it is euident by that which we haue said, that continuall feauers be of the kind of rotten feauers, it is necessary for him that will cure them commodiously and rightly, first to stop and let the putrifying and rotting. Therfore two things must be taken heed of at the first, whereof one is the feauer, another is the rottennesse. And in the feauer you must also regard two things, the one, that the portion of the feauer which is now kindled and inflamed, may be cured and quenched: the other is, that the portion of the feauer which is not yet kindled may be letted and stopped. Also two things must be considered concerning the rottennesse: one is, that the rottennesse alreadie ingendred may be healed: the other is, to let and stop that which is ready to ingender putrifaction. That which is readie to ingender, is caused through perspiration and breathing out, if it be impedite and letted. So that of this other two considerations do spring: first, that the humour which is withholden may be purged and emptied out: secondarily, to prohibite and keepe in that which is to be withholden and kept backe: it will be prohibited with those remedies which do heale obstructions. Againe note, that the obstructions which are ingendred must be cured, and they which are to come must be letted and driuen backe away. You must cure the obstruction which is alreadie ingendred, by those things that do loosen, deliuer and open obstructions. And you shall driue away and stop the obstructions which are to come, if you bridle and stop the fluxe of obstructiue and stopping humors: whereby it appeareth euidently, that the last thing which we haue found in this *Compendium* of curing, must be done first in the working of the cure. Seeing therefore that (when we haue examined the matter particularly) there be fiue things in continuall feauers from the which considerations in curing be gathered, that is, the feauer, rottennesse, perspiration impedite and letted, obstruction, and abundance of obstructiue humours, you must begin the cure with the last consideration. Therefore seeing that the abundance of humours that cause obstructions, doth require purging and emptying out, in the beginning, if vertue be strong in the patient, and if time of the yeare, and his age, and other things do agree, you must let him bloud. You must then specially let him bloud, when the whole body swelleth more then it was wont to do, or when the veins be swollen vp, or stretched out, for that doth signifie abundance of bloud. When the multitude of humours are voided and emptied out, you must next come to the curing of obstructions, and you must minister medicines, whereby obstructions may be taken away. But because most of those medicines be hote, it is to be feared lest they should increase both their rottennesse and also the feauer. Therefore you must vse to minister those things that can deliuer the patient from obstruction without heate. What those things be, we haue declared before in the second Chapter of this booke. When those humours that caused the obstructions be diuided, cut, and scoured, you must assay to auoyd and empty them out by the wombe or guts, by the vrine, and by sweats. But seeing those things which should bring this to passe, be hote, of necessity the rottennesse and the feauer must be increased by them, therefore, as much as we may, we must

A compendium of curing in feauers.

There be fiue things to consider in feauers.

Curatio.

Bloud-letting.

How obstructions should be healed.

labour to chooſe ſuch a thing as doth heate but little, or if we can find any that doth not heate at all (as in this caſe a bath) you muſt vſe that. *Galen* teacheth *in libro tertio de Sanitate tuenda, capite tertio*, that a bath can do this. For he ſaith, that the ſtrength of ſweete waters made hote, if they be temperate, be hote and moiſt, but if they be warmed, they be cold and moiſt. And a little after he ſaith, A bath if it be diſcreetly vſed, mollifieth the hard and ſtretched parts, and it bringeth forth excrements or moltings, if any ſticke within the skinne. Theſe things being done, and thoſe humours being ſcoured out which were compact together in the skinne, ſo that the obſtruction and perſpiration impedited be taken away, you muſt come to the cure of the rottenneſſe. Therefore at this time you muſt firſt corroborate and reſtore the ſtrength, whereby it may exuperate and ouercome the rottenneſſe, and be able to digeſt the humours. And you ſhall heale the puttifaction and rottenneſſe, if you do voyd and emptie out by all meanes that which is corrupted and putrified. That which is left ſtill within, you muſt bring to an exquiſite meane by moderate motions, and coole breathings: and you ſhall worke the emptying out of your humours by vrine, egeſtions, vomiting and ſweats. Laſt of all, you muſt proceed to the curing of the feauer, which muſt be done by cooling things. For euery feauer, inaſmuch as it is a feauer, muſt be remedied by cooling and moiſtning things. But to know how each of theſe things ſhould be rightly done, it is partly reheatſed before, and partly it ſhall follow hereafter. In continuall feauers, whoſe ſtate or vigor of the diſeaſe will come at the fartheſt within ſeuen dayes, if their ſtrength be luſty, and their age agreeing to it, you muſt ordaine them a very exquiſite and thinne diet. But in the continuall feauers, whoſe vigour, force, and ſtate is longer then ſeuen dayes after the beginning, or if vertue be weake and feeble, at the firſt you muſt feede them liberally: when the vigour and ſtate draweth neare, their diet muſt be more ſcarce, but in the ſtate and vigour of the diſeaſe, you muſt feed them moſt thinly and ſcarcely. Afterward againe, augment his diet, and feed him moſt, increaſing his diet in like caſe as the vigour and ſtate of the feauer doth diminiſh, as *Hippocrates* ſaith in the firſt Section of his Aphoriſmes.

Bathing doth coole.

Cure of putrifaction.

Cure of the feauer.

Diet.

CHAP. VI.

Of a burning Feauer.

Continua Tertiana.

ARDENS *Febris* in Latine, *Cauſos* in Greeke, in Engliſh it is called a continuall Tertian or a burning feauer: it is of the kind of continuall feauers, as is declared in the former Chapter: and it is cauſed when choler putrifieth and rotteth within the veines. Therefore it agreeth with an exquiſite intermitting Tertian, becauſe it is ingendred of the ſame humour that the other is. But yet it differeth from it, in that in an intermitting Tertian the choler is carried all ouer the body, but in a burning feauer the choler is contained in the veſſels together with the bloud. Hereupon it cometh that the fits in a burning feauer do not intermit nor ſlake: but when the choler in them is ſtirred moſt vehemently, and is driuen about by nature waxing ſtrong, then there is wont to come vehement cold and rigour, and the feauer endeth. Which *Hippocrates* declareth 4. *Aphoriſ.* 58. ſaying, He that is taken with a burning feauer, if

Difference betweene a burning feauer & a Tertian.

if it be vehement cold, and rigor come vpon it to him, he is deliuered from the disease. A burning feauer is knowne by these signes: their tongue that haue this feauer, is drie, grosse, rough and blacke; there is gnawing of the stomach, intollerable thirst, watchings, and also many times rauing, and egestions of the wombe be liquid and pale: which signes *Hippocrates* rehearseth *in libr. 4. Vict. Acutorum.* They which haue this feauer, let them lye in a cold place, and in a sweete ayre, from whence pure wind commeth. Also let him lye in a soft featherbed, which must be made often: let the couerings be very thin and cleane, which must be continually changed, & let his bed be of a great wideneſſe, that he may easily moue his members that be hote to other cold places of the bed. And if the aire be quiet, stirre it with a fanne, or such like. You must giue him meates that haue vertue to coole and moisten, as is, Lettuce, Gourds, Sorrell, Ptisan broth, and such like. Let his drinke be water, wherein a little Cinamon hath bene sodden, or Veriuice. If the sicke haue vsed it, or if no other thing do let it, after meate giue him cold water a spoonefull or two, or mixe Iulep of Violets, or some Iulep of Roses, or such like with decoction of Barley. Moreouer, the stomacke must be refreshed with iuyce of Roses: and other cooling things must be vsed, as strewing of the floore with greene Vine leaues, & with the leaues and floures of Roses water Lillies, and Violets, and by sprinkling and powring often of cold water on the floore vp & downe. For the cure, in the beginning straightway, you must cut a veine, if age, time, vertue, and strength do permit it. Hereupon *Hippocrates* saith in his Aphorismes thus: In great burning feauers, if bloud be drawne till the heart faint, by and by the state of the whole bodie is cooled, and the feauer is quenched. In many also a laxe is caused, and sweats flow forth. Afterward let the breast and stomach be nouriſhed with Dates braied with oile of Roses, or of Quinces, or of water Lillies. Also other cooling medicines be good, as be Vine buds braied, Endiue, Succory, Knotgrasse, Lettuce, Sorrell, Vine leaues, & such like. Also a fine napkin folded together and dipped in oile and water made hot, and applyed to the breast and stomach, it ceasseth the burning of feuers maruellously. Also a hādfull of wooll soked in water and oile of Roses heat greatly, & being holden vp aloft to drop vpon the breast, doth easily quench the vehemency of the burning heate. These things must be hote, for warme things do dissolue the strength & vigor of the members. Neither shall you rashly also commixe Vineger against vehement burning feauers. You may not apply epithemes nor other cooling medicines in the beginning and increasing of the fit: for at that time the effect of the bodie is driuen about, & the heat is in the inward members: therefore cold things applied do driue the heate to the innermost parts, and be an occasion of greater hurt: for fierie heate being oppressed and stopped within, it raiseth a more vehement & burning heate againe. Therefore in the force, strength, and vigor of the fittes, when the heate is alreadie spread ouer all the bodie, these cold things may be well applied: for then the residue of the vniuersall heate which remaineth about the inward members may be really quenched. Hereupon the patient will begin to breathe better, & shalbe troubled with an easier thirst. Also some by breathing out of a deawie vapor do fall on sleep. The epitheme which you must vse in this feauer, is this: ℞. of Rose water, and Lettuce water,

Signa.

Diet.

Curatio.

Outward medicines.

Epithema.

ana. ℥ iij ß. waters of Endiue and Succory, ana. ℥. j ß good Vineger, ℥. j. all the three Sanders, of each, ℥. ß. seed of Purſlaine, gra. iiij. commixe all together, and make an epitheme. Moreouer, when the vigour and ſtrength of the ſickneſ is at hand, you may ſafely miniſter pure cold water, if none of thoſe things which be rehearſed in the third Chapter do let it. And if feare of any hurt, although it be very little, do let it, you ſhall miniſter the firſt draught refrained after this ſort. Take one cup full of temperate water, and commixe fiue cup fuls of pure cold water with it, and ſo miniſter it to ſuſpected bodies. To conclude, in the curing of burning feauers, you muſt needs bring to paſſe one of theſe things, that either the cholericke humours may be voided and emptied out, or elſe that they may be quenched within. They may be voided and emptied out by ſweats, vomits and egeſtions. They may be quenched by drinking of cold water, wherewith very often great burning feauers haue bene cured quite and cleane. A bath of ſweete water is good onely to them which haue a burning feauer without any ſwelling tending to the nature of an inflammation or *Eryſipela*: but if ſignes of concoction do appeare in the vrine it is much more conuenient for the patient. Let the ſicke which in a vehement burning feauer deſireth to vſe a cold bath, be yong, and of a moderate ſtate of the body, as alſo *Hippocrates* witneſſeth and moniſheth. Neither let it be done to him in Sommer time, and in hote times of the yeare, and in the vigour and ſtrength of the feauer, and let it be one that hath vſed to waſh in cold water in his health. But when the feauer waxeth more moderate, and vertue is ſtronger, and if there be ſignes of concoction together with it, a bath of ſweete and temperate water is ſufficient, and doth good. For annointings, oile of Cammomil doth good, ſpecially if the weather be cold. But the abundance of matter whereof you ſhould make competent remedies againſt burning feauers, you ſhall find in the Chapters following.

When cold water may be miniſtred.

Nota.

To whom a bath is good.

Vnctions.

CHAP. VII.

Of a pure intermitting Tertian.

Cauſe.

EXquiſita Tertiana febris intermittens in Latine, an exquiſite and pure intermitting Tertian feauer in Engliſh, it is cauſed of choler carried by the ſenſible parts of the bodie, and by the proper nature of it, it remaineth pure, ſincere, and vnmixed. Therefore ſeeing it is ingendred of choler that is ſincere and pure, and not commixed with any other humor, it is called of the Phyſitians exquiſite. This feauer ingendreth in perſons that be cholericke by nature, and in their flouriſhing age, in Sommer time, in hote and drie regions, and when the weather is hote and drie, and in bodies oppreſſed with labors, watchings, cares, deep thoughts, and burning of the Sunne. Alſo this feauer by and by in the beginning, and in euery fit cauſeth a vehement cold, rigour and ſtiffeneſſe, and by this meanes it differeth from a burning feauer, as is before rehearſed. And the cold in this feauer differeth from the cold in a Quartane feauer, thus, becauſe in this feauer the patient thinketh his body were pricked, and as it were vlcerated: but in a Quartan the cold ſeemeth to the patient, like the cold that haile folke feele in Winter time. Therefore a Tertian feauer doth not chance without vehement rigour and cold, pricking and wounding in the fleſh: but a

Signa.

Differences of coldneſſe in a Tertian and Quartane.

Quartane

Quartane feauer doth not by and by the first day inuade the patient with vehement rigour and cold. For as it proceedeth forward and increaseth, so also the rigour and cold increaseth, and the patient doth not feele pricking, but rather feeleth great cold, and as it were nipped to the bone with it. There is in a Tertian feauer, an exact and perfect order and equalitie of the pulses: but yet in the increasing of the fits, the pulses are raised and prouoked to vehemencie, greatnesse, and frequencie. Moreouer, in the vigour and force of the feauer, it causeth thirst, and burneth vp the patient, so that he casteth off the clothes to make him bare and naked, and he breatheth largely and often, and he bloweth out as it were a flame of fire, and requireth to drinke cold water. Afterward the heate spreadeth equally all ouer the bodie, so that the breast is no better then the extreme parts and members. And when you lay your hand vpon him, at the first touching you shall feele much gnawing and biting heate, bursting out as it were with a certaine vapour and moisture: but not long after your hand will vanquish it, if you do hold it still. Moreouer, there followeth this feauer vomiting of choler, and the bellie is laxatiue, and they pisse vrine that is cholericke, subruse, and somewhat yellow, and moderately thicke. Also their vrine hath by and by a white cloud, or a laudable sublation in the midst. If the vrine be redder, and if in the first fit there do appeare neither sublation in the midst, nor cloud, the feauer will extend and remaine seuen fits. Moreouer, this feauer leaueth off till another fit, when the fit hath endured the space of twelue houres at the most. For this is the longest time of a fit in true & pure Tertians. But sometime the fit is shorter then the aforesaid space of time, hauing difference more or lesse according to the quantitie and qualitie of choler within, or because of the strength of the patient, or through the present affect of the patients bodie at that present time. Therefore we name that an exact and pure Tertian feauer, which endeth his fit within twelue houres: but that which hath a longer fit, is not called an exquisite Tertian, but an extended and stretched out Tertian. And if the feauer doth inuade the patient daily with vehement rigour and cold, and with the signes aforesaid of the vrine and pulses, as also of other things afore rehearsed, then it is called *duplex Tertiana*, a double Tertian. *Signes of a double Tertian.*

But as for an exquisite Tertian, because it is ingendred of pure choler moued about, you must moisten it and coole it, as much as you may possibly by all meanes. For this humour (as *Galen* witnesseth) is the hotest and driest among all the other that be in the body. Let the sicke lie therefore in a cold place, against a sweete and pleasant ayre. Also you may not suffer many to be in the house, because they should make it hote with their breath. Let the floore be sprinkled often with cold water, and with Rose water, Violet water, and such like. And strew on the floore Willow leanes, floures of Roses, Violets, water Lillies, and such like. Let the patient vse meates that haue vertue and power to coole and moisten. And you must giue him so much of them as he can very well digest. Let his pot-herbs be Orach, Beets, and Spinach, Mallows, Lettuce, Gourds, Sorrell, Endiue, Succory, and such like. Also giue him Ptisan broth, and soupings made with *Alica*. Of fishes, let him eate such as liue in grauelly places: for such, besides that they do coole and moisten, they ingender good iuice, and are easie to digest. Of fowles, let him eate them that be of soft flesh, as be chic- *Victus ratio.*

kens and Partrich, Doues, yong Sparrowes, Feasant, and such like: but of those that haue not soft flesh, let him eate their wings, which are without excrements, because of their often exercises. Also he may eate Cocks stones and Sowes feete, for they be without excrements, because they are exercised: and their braines, specially if they be well sodden. Also if you minister the flesh of Pigs well sodden, you shall not hurt, for so it may the easilier be consumed of the stomach. Also rere egs, which be but onely hote through, may be suffered, specially the yolkes of them: for they be easier to digest then the whites, and they do coole meanely. You may suffer him to eate fruites which be not very hard to digest, as be, Cherries, Prunes, Mulberies. He must abstaine from Honey, because it will easily turne into choler, and from Mustard, salt meates, and all sharpe things. Also you must keepe the sicke altogether from wine, vntill the disease be digested, and let him drinke in the meane season water wherein a little Cinamon hath bene sodden. Or let him vse to drinke this: ℞. Iulep of Violets, ℥ iiij. water wherein a little Cinamon hath bin sodden, ℔ j. commixe them together, and powre them out of one vessell into another often. But when the disease beginneth to digest, you must giue him in the beginning a little wine that is thin & alayed with water, & giue him more liberally of it when the end of the disease is at hand. This is the order of diet for many, but not of all men: for they that are not daintily brought vp, but do liue hardly, and are strong of nature, you must ordaine for them a thinner diet, that is, let them be contented with Ptisan broth vntill the iudgement of the feauer. As for sleeping, they may not sleepe in their fits, but rather let them watch, that thereby the bloud, and spirits, and naturall heate may be letted and stopped from creeping to the inward members, and contrariwise may thereby be drawne to the outward parts: for otherwise the feauers will scarse be dissolued, and they will come very slowly to their state, and fluxes will increase and be multiplyed: when the fit is ended, sleepe is not hurtfull. The patient must eschue exercises, and all other vehement motions. Also let him refraine perturbations of the mind, specially anger, feare, sorrow, and such like. But you may not onely vse the diet before prescribed, but also you must minister medicins to the patient which can coole and moisten.

Potus.

No sleepe in fits.

Curatio.

A decoction to digest choler.

In the beginning to quench the boyling of choler, and to mitigate the cholerous heate, let him vse this decoction: ℞. of flowers of Violets, Borage, and red Roses, ana. M. j. flowers of water Lillies, M. ß. Endiue, Succory, Lettuce, ana. M. j. ß. of Raisins picked, ℥ j. Damascene Prunes, number ij. seeds of Endiue, Succory, Lettuce, Purcelaine, Gourds, ana. ℥ iij. of the roote of Succory, ℥ vj. seeth all together in ℔ ij of well water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and make the liquor of that decoction sweet with Sugar, and purifie it with the white of an Egge; then adde to it sirupe of Endiue with the broad leaues, and Iulep of Violets, ana. ℥ ij. ß commixe them together, and make a potion, and let the sicke drinke thereof euery morning fasting, ℥ iiij ß.

Mistura.

But if the sicke be more delicate, and do abhorre potions, let him take daily of this medicine: ℞. of conserues of Violets, Borage, Roses, water Lillies and Succory, an. ℥ ß. *Electuarium de pruna Damascena* without *diagridii*, ℥ vij *diarrhodon abbatis* ℥ j. *Diatrion santalon* in powder, ℥ ij. of Iulep of Violets as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make a loch. Moreouer, you must remoue the

the cause of the feauer: which you shall do if you emptie out the cholerick humour. Therefore you must empty out the choler which is crept into the stomacke by prouoking vomite. By what meanes you may prouoke vomite it is declared in the former Books. The choler which is caried downward, it is best to empty it out by a laske of the wombe, which also is wont to come sometime of it selfe in an exquisite Tertian. Vomiting should be prouoked chiefly in the beginning of the fit, for at that time nature is wont to thrust in choler thither: as in the declination and slaking of the fit, nature thrusteth it to the neather parts and to the skin. Therefore at that time you must cast in an easie and soft clyster, that it may both bring out the choler easily, and that also by his gentlenesse, the sharpnesse of the choler which is woot to vexe and gnaw the guts, may be stopped and broken. Make therefore such a clyster: ℞. of Mallowes, leaues of purple Violets, Mercury, Endiue, and Succory, ana. M j. seed of Purslaine, and of Melons, ana. ℥. ij. ß. seeth them all in a sufficient quantity of water, till the third part be consumed: straine it, and adde to the liquor of that decoctiō, of the marrow of *Cassia fistula* newly drawn, ℥ j. oile of Violets, ℥ iij. common salt, ℥ j. ß commixe them and make a clyster. Also you must empty out choler by prouoking vrine, and sweats, specially if it be carried thither by nature. This thing you may well do by medicines that prouoke vrine, but not by all such, but by those that can do it without dāying. Therfore you must prouoke vrine with potions wherein *Apium* or Dill hath bene infused or wet. And if signes of concoction do appeare, then you may minister Wormwood safely, which is a speciall remedy for the stomach when it is vexed with choler, specially if you take of the tops of it as much as is sufficient, & infuse it in *Melieratum*, that is wine and hony sodden together: for it purgeth choler out of the wombe and stomacke by egestion, and out of the veines it purgeth it by vrine. You shall prouoke sweating with this and such like medicines: ℞. rootes of *Apium*, Sperage, and Succory, ana ℥ ß of the seeds of Parcely, Fennell, *Bruscus*, and Louage, ana. ℥. ij. blacke Cicers, ℥. iij. Dill, M. ß. seeth all in sufficient quantity of water that runneth, vnto the third part: then let it be strained, and make it sweete with Sugar, adding to it *Oximel compositum*, ℥. ij. and make a potion. Or beate all the aforesaid things into powder, and minister of it euery time, ℥. j. or ℥. j. ß. with ℥ iij. of *Oximel simplex*. These medicines which prouoke sweate, must be ministred in the declination of the fit, or on that day that the sicke hath not his feauer. For this purpose also annointings with oyles of Cammomill, Dill, and such like, are not a little profitable. Moreouer, hote baths of sweete and potable water do profit two wayes, both because they prouoke out some of the choler, as also becau'e of their qualities, they do much good: for such baths do moisten and coole. But baths of sea-water, salt-water, salt-peter water, and brimstone water, they bring out more choler, but they profite much lesse then potable waters. Therefore it is best not to call them profitable, seeing they do more hurt by drying, then they do good by emptying and voyding: for the remedies must haue contrary qualities to the humours that haue inuaded against nature: for that doth more good then the emptyings by any meanes (as *Galen* witnesseth *ad Glauconem*) by the which words it is euident, that emptyings & purgings in an exquisite Ter-

Vacuation.
Vomitus.
Clyster.
Prouokers of vrine.
Absynthium.
To prouoke sweate.
Bathes of sweet waters.

tian, do but litle please *Galen*: specially those emptyings that are done by bloud-letting, and by a vehement purging medicine; for all such kind of purging medicines be of a hote faculty & quality. But seeing this feauer is the hotest of all other, therefore it rather desireth to be cooled and moistned, then to be vehemently purged. It rather permitteth and requireth emptyings by other means, and specially when nature laboreth and assayeth to driue out the humour. Also nature must be holpen, if of her selfe she be not able to performe her intent. As for a bath, this is the effect and scope of it, thereby to haue the body wet and moistned. Therefore you must strew in, neither Salt-peter, nor Salt, nor Mustard seed, but it is good to powre much oile, being made hote, vpon the patient, and to bring him into the bath, and to wash him. And if he will swimme in it, you may suffer him to do it as long as he can. And they that are delighted in bathing, if you suffer them to wash twise in a day, you shall not do amisse. But you must haue this in memorie, that it be done opportunately, and in due time; for if signes of concoction do now appeare, then if you wash him oftener, you shall not erre from *Galens* doctrine.

Balneum.

CHAP. VIII.

Against the bastardly Tertian.

Causæ. A Bastardly Tertian is caused, when choler is mixed for the most part with fleame. Hereupon it commeth that all the signes of this feauer do not declare the nature of pure and sincere choler, as in an exquisite Tertian they do.

Signa. In this feauer also the time of the fits doth exceed twelue houres, neither is this iudged in seuen fits, as an exquisite Tertian is. Moreouer, in this bastardly Tertian, the signes of concoction do appeare more slowly, neither is there such great heate in the vigour and state of this feauer as in the exquisite Tertian. Besides all these, it doth not end with abundance of sweat, as an exquisite Tertian doth.

Diet. Therefore the diet in this feauer must not be altogether cooling and moistening, as is in an exquisite Tertian: but let it haue some power and vertue to heate, cut, and diuide; for the choler in this feauer is grosser, neither is it so hote. They therefore that haue this feauer, may profitably take broth of Ptisan, wherein some Pepper is put, and you must giue them *Mulsa* to drinke, wherein hath bene sodden, Hysope, Origan, and Spikenard. Also you must giue them soupings and broths easie to digest. Moreouer, seeing the time of the fit is long, and so endureth a whole day, you may not giue him meate daily, but each other day: for by this meanes we shall beware and take heede that Nature be not called away from her office and worke, and so the disease should be increased: for you must onely take heede that the disease do not increase, and that the strength of the sicke, which must striue and fight a great while, be not weakened, debilitate and cast downe. But it is hard to keepe and saue both, because hunger, looke how much it profiteth to the digestion of the disease, and so much the more it hurteth and debilitateth the strength. And meates, looke how much they increase the patients strength, and so much they hinder and let concoction and digestion. To conclude therefore, you must vse hunger to them that be strong and lustie, and their disease hard to digest; and you must feede them more largely whose strength

ſtrength is debilitate and weake, and their diſeaſe not ſtubburne for to digeſt. Let their drinke be water, in which a little Cinamon and ſome Hyſope or Origan hath bene ſodden. Quiet and reſt is good for them, but exerciſes do hurt them: for this doth call forth outwardly nature and naturall heate, which could concoct and digeſt crude matter within. For the cure if you may let the patient bloud, you may not faile to do it, but by and by in the beginning, if the age, time, region, and ſtate of the bodie will permit it, you muſt draw out ſo much bloud as the preſent ſtate of the bodie requireth and will ſuffer. By the preſent ſtate, vnderſtand the ſtate as well of the patient as of the diſeaſe: for the ſicke, if he be ſtrong, may ſuffer bloud-letting, if not, the contrarie. If the diſeaſe remaine, and be cauſed through abundance of humours, it requireth bloud-letting, not a meane quantity, but according to the abundance of them. But when the diſeaſe will endure long through crudities and lacke of digeſtion, you muſt draw out but a meane quantity of bloud, that the ſtrength of the patient may be kept and endure vntill the end of the diſeaſe. Alſo you muſt caſt into the belly not very eaſie clyſters, that they may bring forth the ſluggiſh and hurtfull matter, and make them thus, ℞. Mallowes, Mercurie, leaues of Violets Origan, and Hyſope, ana. M j. ſeed of *Cardamum*, ℥. iij. ſeethe all together in ſufficient quantitie of water, and adde to the liquor of that decoction, *Benedicta laxatiua*, *Hierapicra*, ana. ℥. iij. *Mel roſarum*, ℥. vj. oyles of Violets and Cammomill, ana ℥ j. ß. common ſalt, ℥. ij. and make a clyſter. Alſo you muſt miniſter to the patient, decoctions made of ſuch things as can cut, and diuide, and alſo prouoke vrine without any great heating and drying: as is this, ℞. rootes of *Apium*, Fennell, and Succory, ana. ℥ j. Endiue, Succory, Origan, and Hyſope ana. M. j. Lettuce, M. j. ß the foure common cold ſeeds, ana. ℥. j. ſeedes of Fennell and *Apium*, ana. ℥ j. ß. ſeethe all theſe in two pounds of water, vntill the third part be conſumed: then ſtraine it, and make the liquor ſweet with Sugar, and putrifie with whites of Egges the ſtrained liquor. Then adde to it *ſirupus acetoſus ſimplex*, *Mel roſarum* clarified, *Oximel ſimplex*, ana. ℥ j. ß. and make a potion, whereof miniſter daily euery morning ℥. iiij. After theſe you muſt miniſter ſuch medicines as do empty the belly gently, as is, infuſion of Rubarbe, *Electuarium è Pſyllio*, and *Diaphœnicon*, and ſuch like, which are able by themſelues, or mixed with other, to bring and purge out choler together with fleame: whereof we haue rehearſed many in our former Bookes. After the ſeuenth day, you may miniſter continually decoction of Wormewood: alſo *Oximel* drunke alone helpeth many. Alſo vomiting after meate is ſo healthfull and profitable to theſe old and inueterate feauers, that many (as *Galen* witneſſeth *in lib. 1. ad Glauconem*) haue bene cured with this one remedie. For a feauer which hath continued long, doth ingender and breed many flegmaticke excrements in the ſtomacke, which being caſt out by vomiting, the patient is deliuered from the feauer. Alſo the ſides muſt be nouriſhed with hote medicins, that thereby the winds and boluing which ſtretcheth them out, may be diſſolued and diſperſed. Among other this foment is very good, ℞ flowers of Cammomill, Melilot, and Dill, ana. M. j. Wormewood, M ß. red Roſes, M. j. Lineſeed, and Fenugreeke, ana ℥ iij boile theſe in ſufficient quantitie of water vnto the third part, then dip a ſponge in it, and nouriſh the ſides there-

Potus.

Curatio.

Bloud-letting.

Clyſter.

Decoctum.

Purgatio.

Abſynthium.

Oximel.

Vomitus.

Fomentum.

with. Also it profiteth to annoynt the stomach with this or such like oyntment:

Vnguentum. ℞. oiles of Mastick, Roses and Cammomill, ana. ℥ iij. of Cloues, ℥ j. ß. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Moreouer, bathing in this feauer is not healthfull before that signes of concoction do appeare, because crude and raw humors, which should be digested within, are brought out by it to the skinne, and so it doth increase obstructions.

Balneum.

CHAP. VIII.

Of a Quartane Feauer.

Cause. AN exquisite Quartane is another kind of the intermitting feauers, which is ingendred onely of a melancholy humour, putrifying and rotting without the vessels. This feauer doth not by and by in the beginning inuade the patient with vehement rigour and cold the first day, but it is like to them that are cold in Winter through vehement frost: but when the feauer hath continued and proceeded forward and is increased, then also the rigour and cold increaseth with it, and waxeth greater and stronger daily, till the whole disease be come to his full increase and force: and the cold doth not seeme to the patient as it were pricking and vexing the skinne, as it doth in an exquisite Tertian, but there is caused vehement cold, and as it would breake the bones. Their pulses are very rare and slow in the beginning of the fits, but when the feauer is in his full force, or also when it is increased, then of necessitie the pulses are swift and often: but yet they do keep their naturall slowneſſe and rarity, if you consider the swiftneſſe and frequencie coming in the fits. But the moueing of the heate, the increasing, and the vigor and force of this feauer is cleane contrarie to that in Tertian feauers. For in this feauer the melancholy humour is kindled and inflamed by little and little, and as it were a stone, or a shell, or a bone, or some other such cold and drie bodie. And when that anie flame or heate is kindled in it, then in the fit it leaueth nothing fumous or smoakie, but it burneth and consumeth it. And therefore there is longer ceassing and intermission of this humour betweene the fits, then there is in fleame. And the intermission and ceassing betweene the fittes seemeth to be exquisite and pure without any griefe at all: because in this feauer, looke how much melancholie is kindled and inflamed, and so much in the time of the fit is dispersed, consumed and drawne out cleane. Moreouer, in a Quartane feauer there followeth not vomiting vp of choler: their vrines are thinne, white, and waterie, and as it were strained from a grosse matter. Also this feauer beginneth specially in Autumne and Harueſt, comming after erraticke feauers. But you must behold both the nature of the patient and his temperament, also his diet vsed before, his age, the ragion, and other such like. For if those things be cold and drie, then you may looke more surely that a Quartane feauer will ensue, specially if at any time Quartanes be rife among the people. They that haue a Quartane feauer, in the beginning must be handled and ordered moderately and gently, neither may they be vexed with anie vehement medicines, or by vehement emptying and purging, for the humour which causeth the Quartane is stubburne to be drawne and handled. Therefore in the beginning, and before it be digested, it will hardly and scarcely follw the medicine

Signa.

Cause of long intermission in Quartane fits.

Curatio.

that

that draweth it: and that becauſe of his groſſeneſſe and coldneſſe, and alſo becauſe it ſtoppeth the narrow wayes by the which it ſhould paſſe out. Yet if bloud do ſeeme to abound much, then you muſt take away that. And if when you haue ſtriken a veine, the bloud that commeth out do appeare blacke and groſſe, as for the moſt part it doth in diſeaſes of the Spleene, you may then boldly draw it out. For great abundance of bloud being drawne out, nature will get the vpper hand in digeſting the reſt of the humour, and will make the feauer ſhorter. You muſt cut the innermoſt veine of the left arme, which is called *Lienaris vena*, the Spleene veine, or *Mediana*: for this veine emptieth out the melancholie humour, ſpecially from the Spleene, which is wont to be diſeaſed in a Quartane feauer: but if when the veine is ſtriken, the bloud doth appeare thinne, and yellowiſh, you muſt ſtop it by and by: for ſuch an humour is not vnprofitable in a Quartane, but it correcteth and amendeth the groſſe and cold humour, as well becauſe of his ſubſtance, as alſo with his qualitie. You muſt ordaine for the patient a very good diet, ſuch one as is not windie, and ingendreth good iuyce. Therefore you muſt keepe the ſicke from ſwines fleſh, and from all other meates that be groſſe, tough and clammy, and ſlow of digeſtion. Moreouer, let him abſtaine from all things which do coole and drie the bodie. He muſt eate birds that liue vpon mountaines, and do ingender good iuyce: for thoſe that do liue in fennes and mariſhes, they be vnwholeſome and full of excrements, and do ingender a groſſe humour. He muſt vſe fiſhes of grauelly waters, which be ſoft and without toughneſſe: but in this feauer ſalt things and Muſtard muſt be miniſtred in meates, that they may extenuate, cut, and diuide the groſſe and clammie humours, and that they may conſume and feed vp the ſuperfluous humiditie and moiſture. They muſt vſe wine that is white, thinne, and meanely hote: for that by the thinneſſe it doth extenuate the groſſeneſſe of the melancholy humours, and bythe meane heate that it hath, it heateth the body by little and little, which is cooled with the melancholious humour; and it helpeth digeſtion and alſo prouoketh vrine. They may not altogether be kept and refraine from frictions, deambulations, and other accuſtomed exerciſes, that is to ſay, you muſt ſuffer them to vſe exerciſes, but not ſo much as they did in their health. Neither may they vſe frictions, deambulations, and other exerciſes of the bodie ſo often nor ſo vehemently as they did in their health; for that would cauſe perill and danger of obſtruction. But if exerciſes be vſed moderately, and that in the time of intermiſſion betweene the fits, they will voyde out excrements, and bring other commodities which *Galen* reheatſeth *in lib. ſecundo de Tuenda ſanitate*. They muſt altogether abſtaine from bathing if they can, and be content onely with frictions and rubbings: for although bathing, becauſe it doth heate, doth profit, yet, becauſe it calleth forth humours outwardly, it bringeth perill of obſtruction, ſpecially when the bodie doth abound with excrements. And if the Quartane be ſhort, and not violent, it is not hurtfull in the intermiſſion betweene the fits, when the patients haile dayes be, if he vſe his wonted exerciſes. As for the belly, if it can be by any meanes, it muſt be kept ſoluble, either with his accuſtomed meanes, or with medicines mixed with them, or with clyſters, firſt gentle and eaſie, and after ſharper: for you muſt increaſe

Bloud-letting.

Diet.

Vinum.

Balneum.

the ſtrength and ſharpneſſe by little and little, as the matter of the feauer doth concoct and digeſt by little and little: for at the beginning (as is ſaid before) you muſt handle and order theſe feauers gently and eaſily. You may ſeeke examples of eaſie clyſters out of the former Chapters. A clyſter ſomewhat ſharper is this that followeth: ℞. Mallowes, Cammomill, Mercury, leaues of black Violets, ana. M. j. leaues of Sene, the rootes of Polipodie, ana. ℥. v. Harts-tongue, M. j. ß. ſeeth all theſe in a ſufficient quantitie of water vntill the third part. Then ſtraine it, and commixe with the liquor of that decoction, the marrow of *Caſſia ſiſtula*, ℥. j. *Diaſena laxatiua*, ℥. ß. common oyle, ℥. iij. *Mel roſarum*, ℥. ß. ſalt Gem, ℥. j. and make a clyſter. Within certaine dayes, giue to the patient *Diatrion piperon*: but becauſe it doth heate vehemently, you may not miniſter it daily; whoſe making and vertue you muſt ſeeke out of *Galen in lib. 4. De ſanitate tuenda*. Alſo (as *Galen* ſaith) the patient ſhall do rightly, if he drinke daily, onely Pepper with water: for it heateth and diſſolueth the groſſeneſſe of windie ſpirits and vapours, and it extenuateth and digeſteth the crude and raw humours, which are heaped and gathered vp together in the hypochonders and ſides. And theſe things muſt be done from the beginning of the feauer, vntill it come to the vigour, force, and ſtate. And if the ſicke ſeeme now to be in the vigour and ſtate of the diſeaſe, then he muſt vſe a thinner diet then he did before or muſt do afterward, and you muſt command long quiet and reſt to the patient, leſt nature being occupied about digeſting of the matter of the diſeaſe, ſhould be called from her office and worke. Afterward you muſt prouide and foreſee the intrailes, which are wont to be ſwollen and ſtretched out, with viſcous, tough and groſſe humours, and alſo with abundance of windie ſpirits and vapours, which being diſſolued and emptied out, the bowels waxe ſoft and are looſened. Therefore you muſt annoint them with thoſe things which can mollifie and looſen, as be, ointments which are made of Barley meale, ſeed of *Apium*, rootes of *Ireos*, Rew, and ſuch like. Among other annoint the left ſide with this ointment, ℞. of oile of Capers, ℥. iij. oile of *Ireos*, and of ſweet Almonds, ana. ℥. ij. ſeeds of *Apium*, and of Comin, rootes of *Ireos*, ana. ℈. j. Waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. After theſe things you muſt miniſter medicines which haue vertue and power to prouoke vrine, and not before this time: for if you miniſter ſuch things before the inward members be free from obſtructions, becauſe thoſe medicines be hote, they carrie the humours downe with them, and do increaſe the obſtructions. For to prouoke vrine, you muſt miniſter *Mulſa*, wherein Dill, or Rew, or elſe *Apium* hath bene ſodden. If ſignes of concoction do appeare, then you muſt ſtraightway vſe purging medicines which can purge out melancholie: and you may not purge him once onely, but oftener, if the matter ſeeme to require it: for that melancholy cannot be brought out all at once, ſeeing the body is not able to ſuffer & beare ſo ſtrong a purgation as ſhould purge out all that ſtubburne humour at once. You may ſeeke examples of ſuch medicines as do purge out melancholy, out of the firſt Book in the Chapter of melancholiouſnes. But yet aboue other things, *Aetius* praiſeth ſweet wine infuſed in the inward part of *Coloquintida*, but ſo, that you commixe with it ſome *Apium*, or *Daucum*, to make it pleaſant. After meate,

Clyſter.

Piper.

Prouiſion for the intrailes.

Vnguentum.

Prouokers of vrine.

Purgation of melancholy.

meate, you must prouoke vomite (if nothing let it) with white Hellebore first commixed with Radish, as is declared in the other Bookes, which if it worke little or nothing, you must minister Hellebore by it selfe. And if any man abhorre from Hellebore, let him vse this or such like medicine: ℞. iuyce of Radish, or distilled water of it, ℥.iij. *Oximel simplex*, ℥.ij. commixe them and make them warme to drinke: but they which cannot vomite, must be purged downward, such be they that haue a straight and slender breast. After purging you must giue them *Theriaca*, or somewhat that is of like vertue, as this is: ℞. *Liquoris Cyrenaici*, fine Mirrhe, Pepper, of each like much: beate them by themselues, and commixe them with the iuyce of Rew, and make pilles thereof, and minister the weight of ℈ ß. They that minister any of these medicines at the beginning of the sickenesse, or at all, before the vigour, state, and force thereof, they make of a simple Quartane oftentimes a double Quartane, or without doubt they make the single Quartane greater and more vehement: and of a double Quartane they make a triple Quartane, or else the double one is made greater.

Vomitus.

Vomite.

CHAP. X.

Of a Quotidian Feauer.

QVOTIDIANA *Febris intermittens*, that is, an intermitting quotidian feauer; it is ingendred of putrified and rotten fleame being thrust of nature by the sensible parts of the bodie. It is called of the Greekes *Amphimerina*, because it causeth a fit euery day. But if glasen fleame, which is the coldest of all other fleames, do putrifie by it selfe the one halfe of it, that is, if the whole substance of it do not putrifie equally, but some parts of it do putrifie and some do not, then it ingendreth a feauer called *Epialos febris*: in which the patient is feauerous, and vehemently cold together, and at one present time he feeleth immoderate heate and immoderate cold in all the parts of the body together. For part of that humour which is not putrified nor rotten as yet, being spread by all the veines, or in the rest of the body, ingendreth the rigour and cold, but the other rotten part of the humour ingendreth the feauer. A Quotidian feauer doth not inuade the patient with rigour and vehement cold by and by the first day, but in processe of time, it commeth rather like a cooling, then like a rigour. The pulse when the fit beginneth is inordinate and vnequall, slow, little and weake. Neither also in the augmenting and increasing of the Quotidian is there swiftnesse of moouing of the pulses, nor greatnesse, nor vehemencie. The heate in this Feauer is not so sharpe and vehement as it is in a Tertian: for it neither burneth them, neither are they compelled to make naked their bodies, and to throw off their clothes, neither doth it compell them to breathe much and often, and to blow out of their mouthes as it were a flame, nor to desire to drinke cold water, but it is moist and smokie, and commixed with much vapour. Also it is hardly kindled, and it consumeth a long time, vntill that by increasing it come to the force and state. Moreouer, they that haue this feauer do not thirst, because not onelie the tongue, but also the whole bodie in this Feauer is moist. The vrines in Quotidian Feauers either be white, and thinne, and waterie: or thicke, and

Causa.

Epialos febris.

Signa.

troubled. There burſteth out no ſweat at all in the firſt dayes, neither is there any exact & perfect reſt from being feauerous: for the ſeauer remaineth each time almoſt the ſpace of 18. houres. There chanceth alſo to them vomiting of fleame: and thoſe things which are ſent out by egeſtion, are colder, moiſter, cruder, more waterie, and more flegmaticke. Alſo a Quotidian feauer doth chiefly vexe them that be moiſt and flegmaticke of nature. Alſo it chanceth in a moiſt ſeaſon, ſpecially in Winter that is cold and moiſt, and in old folke and children. Hereupon *Galen* writeth, that he neuer ſaw a yong man that was cholericke and drie by nature, taken with this feauer: but they that be moiſt and moſt flegmaticke, hauing a groſſe ſubſtance of the bodie, and do liue an idle life, ſeruing their bellie, and giuen to drunkenneſſe, vſing bathing often, and ſpecially after meate, they are ſoone taken with this Quotidian feauer.

Victus ratio. Let the diet in this feauer be altogether extenuating, cutting and diuiding.

Curatio. Therefore you muſt now ſeeke ſuch places, wherein we haue declared abundantly what kind of diet it ſhould be. In the firſt dayes, that is, when ſignes of cruditie and indigeſtion do yet appeare, the fleame muſt be diuided and cut, and the pores and paſſages that be ſtopped, muſt be ſcoured and cleanſed. And therefore yon muſt miniſter *Oximel* becauſe it doth ſcoure mightily, it cutteth and diuideth the glutinous and clammy humours, and it deliuereth the pores from obſtructions. And you muſt miniſter thoſe things which prouoke vrine, that the fleame (being already extenuated and diuided) may the more readily paſſe by the conduits, and be emptied out. Therfore it is good to miniſter decoction of the roote of *Apium*, Parcely, *Ireos*, Fennell, and ſuch other like often rehearſed before, with *ſirupus aceroſus compoſitus*, and *mel Roſarum*, and *ſirupus è duabus Radicibus*, and other that haue the vertue and power to extenuate, cut, and diuide. About the vigour and force of the ſeauer, you muſt take heed and haue regard to the ſtomacke, and ſpecially to the mouth of it. Therefore you muſt prepare thoſe things which being applyed outwardly may adde ſtrength to the ſtomach, ſuch as be, Maſticke, Spikenard, Wormewood, & ſuch other like. Therefore before meate, vſe this ointment: ℞. oiles of Maſticke, *Vnguentum.* Wormewood, and Nard, ana. ℥. ij. ß. Maſticke, Cloues, and wood of Aloes, ana. ℈. v. Cinamon, ℈. j. with Waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the region of the ſtomach. The ſtomach being ſtrengthened, you muſt compell vomiting, firſt by miniſtring of Radiſh, then after, meats muſt be eaten; for ſo it lifteth vp the meats, and cauſeth the eaſier vomite. After he muſt vſe medicines that do purge out fleame: for fleame when it is digeſt, may conueniently be purged. What medicines thoſe be that can purge out fleame, it is euident in our other Bookes, and this here ſufficeth to cure a Quotidian feauer.

CHAP. XI.

Of a Feauer Hectick.

HECTICA *febris*, is a feuer wherein an vnnaturall heat is not only kindled in the ſpirits and humours, but now alſo it is kindled in the maſſie, ſound and fleſhie parts and members. This feauer knoweth no paine, and they that haue it, do think that they haue no feauer, neither do they perceiue or feele any heate,

heate, seeing all the members of their bodie be equally heat (as *Galen* declareth abundantly in his Booke *De inæquali intemperie*.) The feauer Hectick is ingendred and caused two wayes. First, for the most part, of burning feauers, which haue continued so long, that in processe of time they consume the humiditie and moisture that is contained in the body of the heart: or also if it resist more abundantly, then those feauers are not onely Hectickes, but also *Marasmodes*, that is, consuming and melting feauers. For feauers being ingendred (the humiditie yet remaining still) when they haue caught and occupied the bodie of the heart, hereupon they are specially kindled and inflamed, like the flame of a candle with a match. And this is one way of ingendring the feauers Hectick. Another way of ingendring them is this, when they begin of themselues by and by, being ingendred as Diarie feauers be, either of sorrow, or anger, or ouermuch wearinesse, together with burning by the heate of the Sunne. The feauers that be thus ingendred, be not very hard to cure: but such feauers of these as be turned into consuming and wasting, which the Greekes do call *Marasmos*, through the negligence and ignorance of Physitians: if those feauers be in their force and strength, and not as it were beginning still, it is not onely hard to cure these, but it is also impossible to remedie them. For the nature of them is hote and drie, so that the heart is in like case as the snuffe of a candle when it is very much burnt: for when it is much burnt, it will breake and dissolue, and through drinesse fall asunder, so that although you powre abundance of oile to it, yet you cannot cause a greater flame to be kinkled: for the flame being small and weake, panteth alwayes vp and downe in it, and waxeth continually lesse and lesse, till it be altogether quenched out. Euen such is the feuer which is altogether *Marasmodes*, that is, consuming. The feauer Hectick which turneth into *Marasmus*, or a consumption, is very ready and easie to know: for before you do consider the pulses and heate by touching them, you may see the eyes wondertull hollow, as though they were hid in some ditches or furrowes: for then all the moist substance of them is exhaust and consumed, so that you may see the bones of the eye-browes sticke out. Also there hangeth on the haires of the eye-lids, drie gumme and filth, and vncleanely affects, as is seene in them specially that go a long iourney in the dust, when the Sunne burneth hote. Also the vitall floure in them perisheth, and the skin of their forehead is drie and retched out, and their eie-lids winke often as though they were sleepie; but their disease is not to sleepe, but is rather impotencie and debilitie to watch. Also the flesh of their temples is consumed, so that they seeme hollow places: for what other thing haue they but skin and bone? For, if you looke vpon their bare belly, it shall appeare to you, that neither bowell nor filme is left. The hypochonders and sides are pulled vpward to the breast, and if you touch the skinne, it is very drie, which if you take hold on with your fingers and pull it vp, it is like the hide of a beast. The pulses be thinne, hard, weake, and often. The heate when you lay your hand first on him, doth seeme weake: but a little after it bursteth out sharpe and gnawing more and more, if you hold your hand long vpon him. Also this shall be a great and vndubitate signe to you: when you do giue him meate the heate is inflamed and increased, and the pulses are augmented in greatnesse

Cause.

Marasmos.

Signe.

Hectica febris. and swiftnesse. It is called a feauer Hecticke so long as naturall humiditie and moisture is kept and reserued: but when it is to be doubted that there is left no more humiditie and moisture in the bodie, then it is an absolute and perfect consumption, which is called in Greeke *Marasmos*. For the cure of a feauer Hecticke before it come vnto a consumption, you must by all meanes coole it. And therefore the effect and summe of the whole cure doth consist in these points, that is, to coole & moisten, as well with those things that be outwardly applyed, as also by them that are ministred inwardly. Therefore let the ayre that the patient doth breathe in, be cold and moist. And, if it be not so by nature, make it so by Arte, as is taught before in the sixth Chapter, in the cure of the Tertian. He must also vse meates that do coole and moisten, as broth of Ptisan, bread steeped in a little cold water, the flesh of kiddes, feasants, birds of the mountaines, cockes stones, capons flesh rere egges, new cheese without salt, and fishes of gravelly waters, Lettuce, Endiue, Succorie, Gourds, Spinach, Mallowes, and such like: Cherries, Proines, Pomegranates, Melons, Figs, and such like. He must also taste milke, for that profiteth him maruellously, so that this feauer be not compounded and mixed with another feauer that is ingendred of rottennesse of humours. Let his drinke be cold water, but specially if the sicke haue bene vsed to it before. Let him drinke thereof moderately, or let him drinke water wherein a little Cinamon hath bene sodden, or wine that is watered and thin. Moreouer, it is good to them that haue this feauer to eate meate often in a day, that by that meanes they may beware and take heed that they eate not great abundance of meate at one meale, which vertue, being weake, should not be able to ouercome and digest. They must eschue immoderate mouing, and all things that can resolue and weaken the strength. You may not minister any purging medicines to them that haue a feauer Hecticke: for purgations are hoter and vehementer then they are able well to suffer: but if the belly be more bound then it ought to be, you must loosen it with easie clysters that can coole and moisten, adding to them marrow of *Cassia fistula*. You must minister such things within the bodie as haue power and vertue to coole and moisten; as among the compound medicines be these, sirupe of Violets, of Water lillies, and of Tame endiue, *sirupus acetosus*, and such like. Also *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, *Diapapauer*, and such like. Of simples these be good, the iuyces and distilled waters of Lettuce, Purslaine, Tame endiue, and Poppie. Among those things that are to be applyed outwardly, bathes at all times are conuenient and profitable to them that haue this feauer: I meane bathes of sweete waters, to the which the sicke must be carried in a bed, or in a fine sheete, and let there be foure to carrie the sheet, at each corner one. The water of the bath must be most temperate: and also the patient must not tarrie in it long, lest any of his moisture within him should be drawne out by it: therefore in no case must he sweate in it. There be some that vse to seethe in the water of the bath herbs, as Violets, Mallows, Lettuce, flowers of Water-lillies, and such like: some other do seethe calues feete, or lambes heads, vntill the flesh be sodden from the bones. Also you must beware lest any thing be powred on his head, seeing it is sufficient for it to be dipped twise or thrise in the water with the whole bodie, the sheet being

Marasmos. Curatio.

Aer.

Diet.

Lac.

Potus.

Nota.

Balneum.

let

let downe easily, & then againe lifted vp by foure yong men which must carry him. Straight when he is brought from thence, he must be dipped all ouer once in cold water, but he may not tarry in it any time at all. They that haue this feauer and be brought into a bath, vnlesse they be dipped in cold water, it helpeth them nothing (as *Galen* saith.) By and by, as soone as he is drawne out of the water, let another sheete be ready, and cast him into that, and then into another. Then lay him in his bed, and first wipe him with sponges, & after with soft linnen clothes; and let them not handle him violently that do wipe him, but as easily as they can possibly. To conclude, after this he must be annointed with cold oiles, and with other moistning things. Among other this Liniment is good: ℞. oile of Violets, ℥.ß. oile of Gourds, ℥.iij. new butter without Salt, Swines grease, ana. ℥.j ß. commixe them and make a Liniment, wherewith annoint the whole body. Or adde to it muscilage of *Tragacanthæ*, ℥.ij marrow of calues shankes, ℥.iij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also oile of water Lillies and of Poppie, are good, and specially oyle of Roses, which (as *Galen* saith) doth maruellously moisten dried bodies. When he is annointed and clothed, you must bring him againe vpon a bed or a sheet, into the place where he is fed, and you must nourish him with meates. Also it profiteth him to haue his heart cooled and moistened with Epithemes: as is this: ℞. waters of Violets, water Lillies, and Lettuce, ana. ℥.iij. strong Vineger. ℥ ß. red Roses, all the Sanders, ana. ℥.j. powder of *Diamargariton*, ℥ ß. seed of Purslaine, ℈.iij. Saffron, ℈.ß. commixe them & make an Epitheme, & apply it to the region of the heart cold. Likewise it is good to coole & moisten the liuer thus: ℞. water of Lettuce, ℥ ij. Vineger, ℥.j. *Diarrhodon abbatis*, ℥.j.ß. scraping of iuory, ℥.ß. Purslaine. ℈.ß. commixe them and make an Epitheme, and apply it to the liuer. Also for them that haue the feauer Hecticke medicines are good which can coole and moisten with their odour and sauor, as be floures of water Lillies, Purslaine, Violets, Roses, and such like. Also you may find moe things that are good for the cure of the feauer Hecticke, in the second booke, in the Chapter of the Ptisicke or Consumption. And in curing of the feauer Hecticke this onely must be your study and labour, that the body may not only be cooled and moistened with those things which be ministred inwardly, but also by things that be applyed outwardly, & specially by annointing with oile. How much oile applyed and annointed outwardly specially doth helpe to the conseruation of the body, and to the restoring of strength, we are taught by the notable example of *Pollio Romulus*, who being aboue an hundred yeares old (as *Pliny* telleth) *Diuus Augustus* his host asked him, by what meanes he kept that vigour, force, and strength of body and mind: he answered thus: *Intus mulso, foris oleo*, that is, I keepe me moist with *Mulso* within, and oyle I annoint vpon my skin.

Epithema cordis.

Epithema iecoris.

Odoramẽtum.

Pollio Romulus.

CHAP. XII.

Of an Hemetrice feauer.

Although there be diuerse kinds of compound feauers, as is declared in the beginning of this booke, in the explication of feauers, yet in this place we will onely speake of that feauer which is compounded of an intermitting Tertian, and a continuall Quotidian. And it is called in Greeke *Hemitritæus*, and in

Latin *Semitertiana*, in Englisth halfe a Tertian. It is so called because this whole feauer hath halfe the nature of the said feauers, each of them: by the example of this compound feauer, you may learne to cure all other compound feauers.

Cause. Therefore an Hemitrice feauer is caused, when putrified fleame is commixed with rotten choler. It is declared before that a Tertian inuadeth the patient with rigour and vehement cold, and a Quotidian commeth with cooling of the extreme parts. Therefore the feauer which is compounded of them both

Signa. causeth horrour and shaking for cold, which is lesse then the rigour of a Tertian, and greater and more vehement then the cooling of a Quotidian: so that it is a meane betweene them both. It is ingendred two sundry waies: for either two fits are ioyned together by and by at the beginning, and do inuade the patient together both at once; or else each of them cometh separate from the other. Therefore when the Tertian doth exceede the other, it causeth a more horrible feauer, and also it hath much rigour and vehement cold in the augmenting of the fit, and there is present greater heate and more burning, and choler is driuen out either by vomiting, or by egestion, or it breatheth out a moist vapour: but when the Quotidian exceedeth the Tertian, then cold is in the extreme parts, and but a little shaking, and neither burning nor thirst doth vexe him. But when the intermitting Tertian and the continuall Quotidian be equall, and of like force and greatnesse, the fit doth come with horror and shaking for cold. And when the Quotidian is of greatest force, the pulses and horrour waxe lesse and gentler: but if the Tertian preuaile, by and by the pulses and horrour increase and waxe greater. Note therefore when a feauer is ingendred of an intermitting Tertian and a continuall Quotidian, being equall, of like force, greatnesse, and strength, then it is called an exquisite *Hemitritæus* ague: but if one feauer do exceed the other, then it is called an vnpure Hemitrice. You may vnderstand by the former Chapters, how this feauer should be cured. For seeing an exquisite Hemitrice feauer is ingendred of two feauers equally commixed, that is, a Tertian and a Quotidian, you must also vse a cure conuenient and agreeing equally to a Tertian and a Quotidian. But in an vnpure Hemitrice, when there is most of choler, or most of fleame, you must also varie and change the cure according to the humour & feauer that aboundeth. For if choler haue the vpper hand, you must chiefly vse the remedies which we haue declared in the cure of the Terrian: but if fleame abound most, vse the things most that be declared in the cure of the Quotidian. To conclude, you must most couet the cure of that which hath most neede, and doth most abound; but so, that you do not altogether neglect the other. Therefore we need not in this place rehearse the remedies wherby this feauer should be destroyed and cured, seeing euery man may learne the cure of them more readily according to the diuersitie and nature of the humours, out of the Chapters of curing of the Tertian and Quotidian. Therefore if any man do first learne to know exactly and perfectly the curing of simple feauers, he shall also know how to cure compound feauers without any more labour: for the cures of simple feauers being knowne and considered, it is most ready to any man to cure compound feauers: so that here we shall not need to write seuerally of the curing of compound feauers.

Exquisitus Hemitritæus.
Non exquisitus Hemitritæus.
Curatio.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Peſtilence.

SEeing that at this preſent time and day, there be euery where Treatiſes of the Peſtilence made of diuerſe new Authors, I need not now long diſpute here of it: but it ſhall be ſufficient, if we do briefly declare the cauſes, ſignes, and curing of it, as we haue done in other diſeaſes before. There be two eſpeciall cauſes of the Peſtilence, as *Galen* writeth *in lib. 1. De differentijs febrium, cap. 5.* The one is, an infected, corrupted and rotten aire. The other be humors gathered through naughty and corrupt diet of the body, which humours be ready to putrifie and rot when a man taketh any light occaſion to kindle a feauer of the corrupted aire. Therefore the chiefeſt cauſe why men are infected with the Peſtilence, is breathing in of aire, without which no breathing thing doth prolong their life. For it beginneth for the moſt part of breathing in of aire which is corrupted of a putrifying and rotting euaporation. The beginning of corrupted aire, and of the rotten euaporation, is either a multitude of dead bodies not burned or buried, as it chanceth in warres: or the euaporation of ſome pooles, fennes or mariſhes in Sommer time. It chanceth alſo ſometime to come before immoderate heate of the aire: when the temperature of the aire is changed from his naturall ſtate to immoderate heate and moiſture, of neceſſity the Peſtilence muſt follow. Hereupon *Galen* ſaith, that of all temperament of the aire, the worſt is that which is hote and moiſt. Alſo oftentimes (as is aforeſaid) naughtie and corrupt diet ingendreth humours in the bodie, that be eaſie & ready to putrifie and rot, and ſo is the cauſe why ſuch bodies are infected with the Peſtilence. And then truly they ſpecially haue the Peſtilence, which vſe a naughty and corrupt diet, and ſo be full of all kinds of ſuperfluities. Therefore it need not ſeeme maruellous, if ſometime ſome one among many (which yet doth very ſeldome chance) be infected with this diſeaſe, the aire yet not being peſtilent and corrupt. For they that keepe a good and healthfull diet, and be without ſuperfluities in their bodies, they take no hurt at all, or elſe very litle hurt, althought they be in the corrupt and peſtilent aire: and may eaſily returne and be brought to their naturall habite and ſtate. Hereby it is eaſie to anſwer them that aske, how it chanceth that all men are not taken equally with the Peſtilence, ſeeing euery one is conſtrained to breathe in the peſtilent aire? The firſt cauſe why ſome remaine vnhurt, is becauſe they be not full of ſuperfluous humidity and moiſture, but do vſe moderate diet and exerciſes, and haue their body eaſie to breathe out vapours. Another cauſe is, becauſe all mens bodies be not of like diſpoſition and effect. For diſpoſitions of mens bodies are of many ſundry formes: for ſome bodies are quickely ouercome and infected, and do moſt readily ſuffer any cauſe, but ſome againe be inſuperable, and cannot be ouercome, nor will at all ſuffer the infection, or elſe very hardly. And therefore the greateſt portion of ingendring of diſeaſes, is the diſpoſition of the body of him that ſuffereth the diſeaſe. For elſe all men that taried long in the burning heate of the Sunne, or that vſed ouermuch mouing, or that were loden with wine, or inflamed with anger, or affected with ſadneſſe, ſhould fall into a feauer. Alſo we do not deny, but that ſometime great

Cauſe.

1

2

Whereof rottenneſſe beginneth.

Nota.

Plagues from God.

plagues and peſtilence be ſent of God, for the grieuous ſinnes and horrible offences of men, whereby he puniſheth our great offences: whereof there be many euident teſtimonies in the Prophets, and ſpecially in *Ezechiel* Chap. 5.

The time of the Plague.

The time of the yeare in the which chiefly by nature the Peſtilence is rife and flouriſheth, is the end of Sommer, and the beginning of Harueſt or Autumne: for then both the aire and mens bodies are moſt apt to putrifie, corrupt and rotte, for many cauſes.

Signes of the peſtilence to come.

There be many and diuers ſignes of the Peſtilence to come, rehearſed of the new Authors: among which ſignes, the firſt is the changing of the times of the yeare. The ſecond is often *Phænomena* in the aire, ſpecially in Autumne. The third is, when puſhes, and pocks, and meaſles do not only vexe children, but alſo yong folke of perfect age. The fourth is, when the winds are often in the South and in the Weſt in Autumne. The fifth is a darke and troubled aire in Autumne threatning raine, but yet it doth not raine at all. The ſixt is, if women conceiued with child, do ſuffer abortion for euery light cauſe. The ſeuenth is, when in Sommer after raine ſuddenly a great abundance of frogges of diuerſe colours do gather together on a heape. The eighth is, a great multitude of flies, wormes and creeping things. The ninth is the dying of foure footed beaſts and fiſhes. The tenth is, the flying of birds from their neſts, leauing their egs there ſtill. The eleuenth is, the dearth of victuals and corne. The twelfth (which is the moſt certaine ſigne) is a hote and moiſt temperature of the yeare. There be many ſignes that declare when one is alreadie infected with the Peſtilence. The firſt is, if the outward members be cold, and the inward members burning hote. The ſecond is, heauineſſe, wearineſſe, ſloath of the whole bodie, and difficultie in breathing. The third is, paine and heauineſſe in the head. The fourth is, carefulneſſe of the mind, and ſadneſſe. The fifth is, a maruellous inclination (for the moſt part) to ſleepe, for ſometime watching and rauing do vexe him. The ſixt is, a diuers and frowning look of the eyes. The ſeuenth is, looſe of appetite. The eighth is, immoderate thirſt and often vomiting. The ninth is, bitterneſſe and drineſſe of the mouth. The tenth is, a pulſe frequent, ſmall and deepe. The eleuenth is, the vrine for the moſt part troublous, thicke and ſtinking, like beaſts vrine: although ſometime the vrine of them ſeemeth to differ little from the vrine of healthfull men; therefore by ſuch an vrine they that are vnskilfull of the other ſignes be quickly deceiued, ſuſpecting no hurt becauſe of the good colour of the vrine. The twelfth, which is the moſt ſure token of all, is, if there do ariſe and ingender botches behind the eares, or vnder the armeholes, or about the ſhare, without any manifeſt cauſe, or alſo if carbuncles do ſoddenly ariſe in any member: for when they appeare, they betoken ſtrength of nature, which being ſtrong and mightie, doth labour to driue the poiſon out of the bodie. Alſo they do declare which members of the bodie being affected aboue other, do thruſt out from them the venimous humors. For if they do appeare in the necke, they declare that the veines be chiefly vexed: if vnder the armeholes, the heart; but if they appeare in the ſhare, the liuer is moſt affected. But ſeeing that botches do not alwayes appeare, (which is moſt perillous and dangerous: for it betokeneth that nature is weake and feeble, and is not able to expell and driue out the venimous humors) you muſt haue reſpect to other ſignes and tokens

Signes of one infected.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

Signifying of botches,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

which

which be rehearsed a little before. As for the cure, if the aforesaid signes do appeare, then if nothing do let, by and by you must cut a veine on that side in which the pestilent botch doth appeare. If the botch do appeare behind the eares, or about the chinne, or in other parts of the face and necke, you must let bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. If it appeare and come out vnder the armeholes, you must cut the innermost veine of the arme on the same side, it is cõmonly called *Basilica*: or if that veine will not appeare, take the middle veine. If the botch do appeare in the share, you must draw out bloud from the ankles of the same side. But if there do appeare no botch outwardly, you must draw out bloud from the same side where there is felt greatest paine and heauinesse. But out of which veine you must let bloud, the paine and griefe of the members afflicted will declare to you well enough: For if the members aboue the breast be grieued and afflicted most, cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if the parts beneath the necke be most grieued and afflicted, cut the *Basilica* or the middle veine: and if the neather parts be most vexed, you must cut the veine of the hamme or ankles. And if nature be strong, and other things not letting, you must draw out bloud abundantly. But if through age, or for other causes, you may not vse bloud-letting, you must sasten cupping glasses to the necke and the shoulders, or to the backe, or to the legges. And if the Pestilence do inuade any man at his dinner time or supper time, when the stomach is filled with meate, then he must vomite straightway. At the last, when the bodie and stomach is emptied, you must by and by minister some medicine that can resist poison, that it may draw the poison to it, and call it backe from the heart: for that is the propertie of such medicines. Among a great number of the which, this is praise-worthy, which is called *Electuarium de Quo*, which once a good and wise Emperour called *Maximilianus* did vse. Why I do preferre this almost before all other, is, because of his maruellous effects and vertues which haue appeared often in diuerse sicke persons: and because it is easie to make, except the roote of white Diptaine, which cannot well be gotten; for the which it is better to vse the leaues of true Diptaine, which may well be come by; minister of the foresaid Electuarie to them that be of perfect age, ℥ j. and to them that be yonger, sometime ℈. ij. will suffice: you must dissolue it in water of Roses, or Endiue, or Scabious. Also this medicine vsed, is good to preserue a man from the Pestilence, if he take thereof daily the weight of a graine or two of Barley, or the quantitie of a Pease. Also the taking of this potion doth helpe much: ℞. *Theriaca Andromachi*, ℈. ij. *Mithridatum*, ℈. j. Bolearmoniacke prepared, ℈. ß. waters of Roses, Scabious, and Bugloss, ana ℥ j. Commixe them. What power and strength is in Bolearmoniacke to driue away the Pestilence, *Galen* teacheth abundantly *in libro nono, de simplicium Medicamentorum facultatibus*: where he writeth, that in a great Plague that was in Rome, as many as dranke this medicine were quickly healed. Wherefore this medicine ought chiefly to be vsed in the time of the Pestilence. Moreouer, this powder doth profit very much: ℞. the leaues of true Diptaine, the root of Turmentill, the root of Pimpernell, Zedoary, Gentian, roote of *Betonica altilis*, commonly called *Tunica*, ana ℥ ß. Bolearmoniacke prepared, ℥ j. *Terra lemnia*, ℥ iij. *Aloes* Epaticke, Myrrhe, ana ℥ ß. Saffron, ℥ j. Masticke, ℥ ij.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Cucurbita.

Vomitus.

Alexiteria.

Electuarium de Quo.

Potio.

Bolus armeniacus.

Pulvis optimus.

and beate them all to very fine powder, and make a *Tritura*, whereof minister to the sicke, ℥ j. in Rose water, or Sorrell water. When the patient hath taken some of the aforesaid medicines, lay him in a warmed bed being made with soft sheets, and well couered with clothes, that he may there sweate foure or fiue houres, or longer, according to his strength. But if by this meanes you can scarcely prouoke him to sweate, you must lay tiles being heate at the fire, to the feete of the patient; for these by reason of their heate will readily prouoke sweate. And in all the time that the sicke doth sweate, you must onely take heed, that he do neither sleepe, eate, nor drinke. After sweating, you must diligently wipe off the sweate with very cleane and fine linnen clothes. Then afterward let the sicke rise vp from his bed, if he will, or if he can, and let him eschue the open aire. Let the aire of the chamber in which the sicke doth lie, be corrected, amended, and purified with odoriferous things, and with sweete smelling perfumes, daily foure or fiue times. It is best for the sicke to change from one chamber to another: because the aire of one chambet, by the continuall tarying of the sicke in it, is much corrupted, and cannot easily be corrected and amended. Let the aire of the chamber into the which the sicke shall remoue, be first corrected and purged with perfumes. What those things should be, we will declare afterward. Two or three houres after the patient hath swear, giue vnto him the broth of a Chicken, and that you must do often afterward, according to his strength: for the sicke must be nourished and refreshed by little and little. Therefore it is good for him to eate often, and but very little at once: for they that are thus fed, will sooner recouer againe then other. Also he may vse to eate the flesh of Chickens, sodden with Sorrell, or with iuyce of Limons, or else Veriuyce. Also the sicke must be kept altogether from sleepe the first day by talke of the assistants, by rubbing of the extreme parts, by pulling of their eares, nose, and haire. For the which purpose it is not vnprofitable to dip a sponge in very sharpe vineger, and hold it to the nose. If the patient haue vehement thirst, he may vse this potion: ℞. Iulep of Violets, ℥ iij. sirupe of the sharpe iuyce of Citrons, ℥ j. ß. sirupe of sowne Endiue, ℥ ij. of the decoction of Sorrell, Scabious, and flowers of Bugloſſe, ℥ x. or so much of their distilled waters: commixe them, and make a potion. Also you must take the water wherein Barley hath bene sodden a little, and commixe with it iuyce of Roses, or Sorrell, or Limons, or of vnripe Grapes, and minister it in stead of drinke. And you must minister medicines (specially if the strength be feeble) which can strengthen and comfort the heart, and other principall members of the bodie, as is this: ℞. conserues of Violets, Roses, and Bugloſſe, ana. ℥ j. ß. Bolearmoniacke prepared, ℥ j. red Corall, ℈ j. barkes of Citron apples, ℥ j. ß. Camphire. ℈ v with sirupe of the iuyce of sharpe Citrons, as much as is sufficient, make an Electuary or liquid Antidote. Also you must lay vpon the region of the heart (specially if the sicke do yet feele heate about the breast) this Epitheme: ℞ waters of Roses, Bugloſſe and Sorrell, ana. ℥ iiij. powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*, ℥ j. wood of *Aloes*, red Sanders, the barkes of a Citron apple beaten to powder, the bone of the Harts heart, ana. ℈ v. Saffron, grain six: commixe them all, and make an Epitheme. But you must note, that the Epithemes may not be applied, except they be made hote:

Sudor.

Aeris correctio.

When meate should be ministred.

Of sleepe.

Potio.

Comfortatiues

Electuarium.

Epithema.

and

and as soone as they are cooled, you must take them away straightway; for then they constraine and shut vp the pores, and so do bring vnto the patient no small griefe. Therefore it is better to vse cordiall bags, as this is: ℞. flowers of red Roses, water Lillies, and of Violets, ana. ℥.ij of all the Sanders, Corall white and red, *Spodium*, Pearles, ana ℥.iiij. Cinamon, Cloues, the bone of the Harts heart, wood of *Aloes*, barkes of the Citron apple, Saffron, ana. ℈. j. seed of Sorrell, ℈.ij. seed of Purslaine, grain.iiij. beate all these into fine powder, and make two square bags of silke, and apply each after other being heat. *Sacculus.*

Moreouer, you must altogether couet and labour that the venimous humours may be entised & drawne to the place where the botches appeare & burst out, and you must do it by setting to of cupping glasses, or by medicines applied, that haue vertue and power to draw those humours, as this is: ℞. fat Figges, in number sixe, great Raisins, ℥ ß. salt Gemme, ℥.ij. Hony ℥.j. with oyle of Cammomill: make it into the forme of an Emplaister, and apply it hote to the botch. Or apply this plaister, which is much commended of all men: ℞. a great Onion, and cut off the head of it, and picke out all the kore within, then fill it with *Theriaca Andromachi*, adding to it iuyce of Rew or Sage: which done, stop the hole fast that is in the top of the Onion with lute, and set the Onion in the imbers to roast: and when you do thinke that it is roasted enough, pull off the barkes of it, and then bray it in a mortar vntill it be thicke like an Emplaister, and apply it hote to the botch. You need not be afraid to apply *Theriaca* to the botches, because of the authoritie of *Gentilis* and *Valescus*, and some other authors: for *Theriaca*, and such like medicines against poison, do not worke their operation by driuing the poyson from them (as they being in a wonderfull errour do affirme) but rather they worke by drawing the poyson to them, as *Galen* teacheth in his booke *De Theriaca ad Pisonem*. Also this Emplaister is good, for it helpeth much to the rotting of the botch: ℞. meale of Fenugreeke, and Linseed of flowers of Cammomill, ana. ℥ ß. roots of *Althæa* and white Lillies, ana ℥ ß Figs in number sixe, leaues of true Diptaine, ℥.iij. rootes of Valerian, ℥.ij. Mustard seed, ℥.j. ß. Doues dung ℥.ß. oyles of Cammomill and Lillies, ana. ℥ j.ß. make them into the forme of an Emplaister or Pultice. Also this is practised: ℞. of *Emplastrum diachylon simplex*. ℥.ij of gum Ammoniacke, and *Galbanum* ana. ℥.j. bray them together, and bring them to the forme of an Emplaister. But if the botch will not breake of himselfe by applying the aforesaid things, you must then lay vpon it Goose dung dissolued in the common oyle, or in oyle of Cammomill. And this is sufficient to speake of here, as touching the cure of them which be taken with the Pestilence. *Outward medicines.* *Emplastrum.* *Error of Gentilis and Valescus.* *Emplastrum suppuratorium.* *Aliud.*

Now we will briefly expound, by what meanes a man may preserue and defend himselfe from the infection of the Pestilence, which vexeth and infecteth in some certaine place or region. And seeing (as we haue declared in the beginning of this Chapter) it is euident that the Pestilence is not caused but through the breathing in of the pestilent and corrupt ayre, there cannot be a more present remedy to preserue one, then flying from the corrupt ayre. For there is no other meanes to auoid the pestilent ayre, because whether we will or no, we must draw in such aire, vnlesse we get away into some other place, where the aire is not corrupted nor infected, but pure and good. Which *A preseruation from the pestilence.* *Flight is the best remedie.*

you must the rather and more quickly do, if the euill be greatly infectiue. And you must flie farre off into such a place whereas the aire is knowne to be pure and good, and destitute of corruption: neither must you returne home againe from that place very soone. Hereupon it is not rashly said of the common sort, that these three Aduerbs, *Citò*, *longè*, and *tardè*, in the time of the Pestilence, do more pleasure and profit then three shops very well furnished. Therefore they that may conueniently for their businesse flie away, let them not suffer themselues to be perswaded by any meanes to tarrie in the pestilent ayre: which if they do, they shall foolishly put themselues in danger of pestilent death. But if you may not flie for vrgent businesse and iust causes, then let your first care be, that the house in which you must tarrie, be without all kinde of stinke, and kept cleane from all filthinesse and sluttishnesse. Let the windowes of it be close shut, specially in cloudie and rainie dayes, that the pestilent aire enter not in. But if you will open them, see that they open vpon the East or North quarter, and do it when the Sunne is risen aboue the earth some houres. You must come abroad but seldome, and not except the element be cleare and bright: neither come then, vnlesse you haue first taken some medicine which is able to preserue you from the infection. You must make fires daily in your houses, with Oken wood, Iuniper, *Tamariscus*, Laurel, or such like, that thereby the corrupt aire that is in the house, may be corrected and purged. For there is a maruellous vertue and strength in fire, to amend and correct the rotteneſſe and corruption of the aire. Also you must strew vpon coales this powder following: *Suffimenta.* ℞. Rosemary, M. ß. Sage, Betonie, Wormwood, Marioram, Origan, ana. M. j. bray all finely, and make a powder. Or vse this powder: ℞. of Iuniper berries, ℥ j. Myrrhe, ʒ. iij. Frankinsence and Masticke, ana. ʒ. iij ß. roote of *Benedicta*, ʒ j. Rew, ℥ ß. Cypresse barks, ʒ j. ß. roote of *Angelica*, Lauender, ana. ʒ. ij. beate all together, and make a powder. Let poore folke lay vpon quicke coales, Iuniper cleft in small stickes, or the berries of Iuniper. Let richer folke vse wood of *Aloes*, or powder of *Gallia moschata*, Cloues, and such like. When necessitie constraineth you to go abroad, carrie this or such a like Pomander *A pomander.* with you: ℞. *Lapdanum*, ʒ. iij. *Storax calamitæ*, ʒ. ij Cinamon, Mace, Cloues, Nutmegs, ana. ʒ j. wood of *Aloes*, ϑ. j. Spikenard, ϑ. ß. Myrrhe, Masticke, Frankinsence, ana. ʒ. ß. Muske and Amber, ana. gra. iij. powder them, and searce them, and with *Storax liquida* and water of Marioram as much as is sufficient, commixe them, and make a *Pomum odoratum*. In Sommer time let the ayre be purified and corrected with cold things, as with flowers of Roses, Violets, Water-lillies, Vine leaues and branches, Willow leaues, and such other like. Also sprinkle the pauement with water of Roses, Sorrell, and such like: or with cold water wherewith some Vineger is commixed. Also it profiteth to smell Roses, Vineger, Camphire, Sanders, and such other like: or to smell to *Pila odorata.* this Pomander: ℞. *Lapdanum*, ʒ. ß *Storax calamitæ*, ʒ. iij. flowers of water-lillies, Roses, and Violets, ana ʒ. j. barks of the Citron apple, ʒ. j. ß. all the Sanders, ana. ʒ. ß. of Maces and Cinamon, ana. ϑ. j. Masticke, ʒ. j. white Poppie, ʒ. ß. Camphire, ϑ. ß Amber, Muske, ana. gra. ij. bray and commixe them with *Storax liquida* and Rose water, and make a Pomander. But seeing *Galen* saith, that one of the chiefest things which they that would be preserued from the

the pestilence, ought to regard and take heed of, is, that their bodie be for the most part without superfluities and excrements, and may well breathe out the vapours: truly there is nothing more to be eschued at such a time, then ouermuch deuouring and swallowing in gluttonously of meate and drinke. Therefore let their meates be altogether easie of digestion, and such as ingender good bloud, and be not readie to putrifie and rot. And alwayes commixe with the meates that be eaten at that time, some Vineger, or some other sharpe iuyce, as Veriuice, or iuice of Citron apples, or of Limons or Oringes. In Sommer time he must vse for pot-hearbs. Buglòsse, Endiue, Succory, and Lettuce: and in Winter, let him vse Sage, Parcely, *Apium*, Marioram, Balme, and Hysope. He must abstaine from all fruits, vnlesse they be sharpe, as be Pomegranates, Citrons, Limons, Orenges, and such like, which are good for him to vse. Let his drinke be Wine that is thinne and waterie. Let euery man beware of strong Wine that is vnalayed and new. To conclude, let his diet be altogether cooling and drying. Therefore he may not vse exercises, but in a meane and temperate place, and in an ayre being first purified, amended and corrected by medicines and perfumes. Therefore you must eschue common dancings openly, and also turnings, leapings, and whatsoeuer such like exercise there be that requireth often breathing in of ayre. Therefore because of this also in the time of the Pestilence he must eschue companies gathered together by Magistrates by some open commandement, for matters of the commonwealth, as Courts, Sessions, and such like. Let his sleepe, watchings, and all other things be moderate and in a meane. But he must sleepe in a chamber that is close, well stopped and shut, lest the pestilent aire should enter into it: the aire of which chamber must be purified and corrected with some perfume aforesaid, morning and euening. He must vse sheets that be pure and cleane, and that haue bene layed vp a while with odoriferous things. When he is awaked from sleep, let this be his first care and worke, to empty the bodie of superfluities and excrements. And you must onely take heede and beware, that the bodie be not costiue at any time: therefore if it do not of it selfe void out excrements daily, you shall prouoke them out with *pilulæ Rufi*, or with a soft Clyster, or with a Suppositary made for the purpose. When the bodie is emptied from superfluities and excrements, as well by the guts as by the bladder, he must take some medicine that can preserue him from the infection of the Pestilence; for the which, there be many things before rehearsed. And if necessarie businesse do constrain you to go abroad openly, you may chew Zedoary, or root of Angelica, or Pimpernel: or you shall smell to Rew, for the sauor of it doth maruellously resist the pestilent aire. He must eschue all carnall lust, specially immoderate vsing thereof. After copulation, he must keepe him out of the open and infectiue aire. Bathes must altogether be abhorred, as a most present poison, specially common baths: because when the pores of the bodie are opened by the heate of it, the pestilent aire doth readily creepe into the bodie. They that will vse a priuate bath, let them preserue and defend themselues most diligently from the corrupted aire when they go out of the bath. But it is better, and more wholsome to vse frictions at home in a rectified aire, and let baths alone: but yet you may wash the head weekly with lie, wherein hath bin sodden

Diet.

Exercitium.

Excretion.

Venus.

Balneum.

Asaram, Marioram, Lauender, Rosemary, Betony, Sage, Cammomill, and such other like: but yong men and such as abound with bloud, must in the time of the pestilence vse bloud letting; and that not onely once, but (if nothing let to the contrarie) bloud letting doth often profit much to preserue them in health, because it doth much coole the state of the bodie, and bringeth it to a moderate heate. Also you must purge the bodie (if need require) with purging medicines, and that specially in the Spring time and Autumne. As for perturbations of the mind, he must eschue sadnesse, anger, hatred, feare, great cares, and heauie thoughts, and he must vse ioy and mirth in a meane. Now it remaineth that we describe medicines which can keepe and preserue vs safe from the infection of the pestilence: among which the pilles that are called *pilulæ Rufi* or *Pestilentiales*, or else *Communes*, are principall and chiefe: ℞. Aloes epaticke, two parts, Saffron orientall, Myrrhe, ana. part. 1. with white Wine, or with water of Scabious, make pilles, of which minister daily ℈.j. and more or lesse according to the age and strength of the patient. These pilles, because of the Aloes and Myrrhe in them, which do most resist putrifaction, they haue a maruellous efficacie & vertue against the infecting of pestilent ayre. Also you may vse these pils following: ℞. Aloes epatick, ʒ.iij. Myrrhe, ʒ.j. ß. Agarick prepared, ʒ.j. Saffron orientall, ʒ.ß. Bole armoniacke prepared, ℈.j. seede of Citron apples, ℈.ij. Mastick, ℈ ß. root of Pimpernell, ʒ.ß. with Rose water, make 13. pils of ʒ.j. of which minister one or two. Also you may vse that medicine that is commonly called *Electuarium de nucibus*: ℞ of Walnuts in number 20. of fat Figs in number 13. Rew, M.ij. of Wormwood, *Cotula fœtida*, and Scabious, ana. M j. root of *Aristolochia longa*, ʒ.ß. roote of *Aristolochia rotunda*, ʒ j ß. of Turmentill, *Petasitis*, and Pimpernell, ana. ʒ.ij.ß. leaues of true Diptain, M.j. of Laurell berries, ʒ.iij. of Harts horne burnt, ʒ.ij.ß. Maces, Myrrhe, Bole armoniack, true *Terra lemnia*, ana. ʒ.iij. Salt of the Sea, ʒ.j. ß. *Nux vomica* ʒ.ij. flowers of Bugloſſe, M.j. beate them all, and commixe them with ℔.ij. of clarified Hony, and make a liquid medicine like a Loch. Also this powder is very good: ℞. leaues of true Diptaine, ʒ ß. of the rootes of Zedoary, *Tunica*, Pimpernell, and Turmentill, ana. ʒ.ß. barks of the Citron apple, ʒ.iij. *Terra lemnia*, ʒ. vj. Bolearmoniack, ʒ.j. Myrrhe chosen, Aloes epatick, ana ʒ ß. Saffron, ʒ. ß Masticke, ʒ j.ß. Liquorice, ʒ.j. Scabious and Sorrell, ana ʒ iij. red Sanders, ʒ. j. scraping of Iuorie, and *Authera*, ana ʒ.ß. the bones of the Harts heart, red Corall, ana ℈.ij. seed of Purſlaine, grauy all finely, and make a powder. If you will, you may make of these, Lozenges, with Sugar, and waters of Roses and Scabious, and minister daily of them, ʒ j. or more, or lesse, according to age and strength. Also onely Bolearmoniacke taken with Vineger, is notably praised. Likewise *Theriaca*, *Mithridatum*, and such other are good, whereof there is plenty named of them that haue written of the Plague. We therefore here will make an end of speaking of this kind of euill.

Bloud-letting.

Purgatio.

Preseruatiues

Pilulæ communes.

Pilulæ.

Electuarium de nucibus.

Poluis.

The end of the fourth Booke.

THE FIFTH BOOKE, CONTAINING THE CVRING OF TVMORS WHICH HAPPEN ABOVE NATVRE.

CHAP. I.

¶ What that swelling is which happeneth besides nature, which commonly is called by this generall name Apostema: and the sifting out of the true definition, and of the diuision of the same, according to the opinion of the Neoterickes.

THose Tumours which haue their being besides nature, the later sort both of Phisitions and Chirurgians, and not they onely, but almost the vniforme consent of old writers, haue comprehended vnder this name *Apostema:* whereas indeed *Apostema*, both by *Galen* and other Grecians, hath bene reputed but as one kind of those swelling tumours which commonly are said to chance besides nature, which the Latines haue very fitly termed *Abscessus*, and the crew of yonger Phisitions do call it *Exitura*, deriuing the originall of the word from the interpreter of *Auicen:* of the which, as also of all other kinds we will intreate particularly in his seuerall Chapter. Although, indeed, it hath pleased some of the later sort to make *Apostema* as the *species* or *differentia* of those tumours besides nature, appointing it to be diuerse from that which they call *Exitura*, and also from that other kind *Pustula:* for vnder the name of Apostemes, they will conclude and place those tumours onely which being lifted vp into a great bigneſſe, do fetch their procreation from the influence of naturall humours (as they terme them,) whereupon they call them *vera Apostemata*. Therefore when *Apostemata* is taken for the *genus*, comprehending vnder it all the tumours besides nature, by *Auicen* and his followers, it is thus commonly defined. An Apostеme is a disease compounded of three kindes of maladies, all aggregated in one bigneſſe. Which definition they do affirme to be essentiall, consisting (as they say) of *genus* and *differentia*, which do very sufficiently explane the nature of that which is defined, appointing this word disease to be the *genus*, and the other words which are annexed, do stand to manifest the difference of other the like infirmities which do happen by the composition and construction of the instruments: all which distinctions and diuersities, *Galen* doth recite in his Booke intituled, *De morbo & symptomate*. But these three kindes of sores, which in that swelling besides nature commonly called *Apostema*, do concurre as establishing the essence of one onely disease, are these: intemperature, which

Apostema.

Abscessus.

The common definition of Apostema.

Three kinds of diseases causing the essence of tumors besides nature.

they also call an euill complexion: immoderation, whereby they intend a ſiniſter compoſition: and the ſolution of that agreeing vnitie which nature affoordeth to euery bodie. To which three kinds, the Greekes haue aſſigned three oppoſite and fit termes, calling the firſt δυσκρασία, the ſecond ἄμετρία, the third συνεχὴς λύσις: but they bring alſo many other deſcriptions rather then definitions of this *Apoſtema*: for definitions I dare not terme them, when as they do not conuert with that which is defined, neither do they ſerue either to the ſufficient explication of his nature, or the conſtitution of his eſſence: which they very well knowing, are content to let them go vnder the name of accidentall definitions. One of them they haue deſumed and taken out of *Galen* his Booke which he wrote *De tumoribus præter naturam*. An Apoſteme or tumour beſides nature, is one of thoſe things which happening vnto the bodie, doth inflate that part which it occupieth, to the extremeſt dimenſion. This definition they haue extorted out of *Galen* his words, which he ſet not downe as an exquiſite definition, but as an ordinary aſſertion. You may faſhion (if you pleaſe) many ſuch definitions, as this for one. An Apoſteme is an increment exceeding naturall conſtitution. Or this: An Apoſteme is a tumour, in the which the parts haue departed from their naturall ſtate and habite in quantitie and bigneſſe. Whereas *Galen* in his *lib.* 13. *Therap. Meth.* hath theſe words: In this thirteenth part of our whole worke we will begin to diſcourſe of thoſe tumours happening beſides nature, in which the parts haue forſaken their naturall conſtitution by becoming more bigge: ſo that you ſeeing the ſlender weight of theſe definitions, muſt annexe this particle, *actiones lædens*, hurting the duties of the bodie: or thus, inducing an euident detriment to the actions; or elſe they will not be abſolute or eſſentiall: for euery tumour making diſtention, or ſwelling in length, breadth, or profunditie, beyond the ordinarie conſtitution of nature, either in all the bodie, or in any part thereof: or, euery excrement or greatneſſe exceeding nature, muſt not according to the vulgar acception be named either *Apoſtema*, or a ſwelling beſides nature. For (as *Galen* ſaith in his booke *De tumoribus præter naturam*) ſuch like augmentations may befall not onely to the diſeaſed, but alſo to the healthfull, as well in the whole bodie, as in any member of the ſame. For groſſe men although they be enlarged, and as it were diſtended both in breadth and profunditie, yet they haue not this diſtenſion beſides nature, but (as he ſaith) onely not naturally. For they haue not yet paſſed the bounds of nature, neither are the actions and duties of their part maimed or annoyed, which is the border of thoſe increments which are beſides nature: and thoſe tumours which abide in thoſe parts which are yet ſound and without the taſte of griefe, may well be ſaid to be aboue and beyond nature, but not beſides nature; as for example: if both the teats, or one of them onely, be marueilouſly increaſed, or inflated, yet ſo that his ſubſtance be free from all annoyance, this cannot appoſitiuely be ſaid to be beſides nature, but onely beyond nature. Therefore if you deſire an abſolute definition of this tumour which happeneth beſides nature, collected out of the writings of *Galen*, you ſhall thus define it. A ſwelling beſides nature is an increment ſurpaſſing the ordinarie habite of nature, bringing with it a maime to the actions thereof. But ſuch like tumours beſides

Accidentall definitions.

Definitio prima.

Secunda.

Tertia.

A perfect definition beſides nature, taken out of the writings of Galen.

sides nature are wont to be diuided into three kindes by *Guido* and those of his age, into impostumes, absceſſions or puſhes, and vlcers. Impoſtumes they call great tumors, in which the matter whereof it ſpringeth doth offend in plentie or quantitie. Puſhes are thoſe little tumours (which they call *Bothor*) in which, the ſubſtance whereof they ariſe is troubleſome rather in quality then in quantitie; yea and in them there lurketh a poiſonous venime (as they ſay.) But the Abſceſſions are thoſe tumors which the Latines call *Abſceſſus*, & of the Greeks may well be named ἀποσήματα, as we proued before: but let it be lawfull for euery man to impoſe what titles or names he will, ſo that (as *Galen* ſaith) they do not ſwarue or ſtray from the naturall meaning of the things themſelues. Therefore leauing all the ſcrupulous and ſcholer like contentions which ſome do vſe in the intreatie of this ſubiect, as impertinent to our purpoſe, I will orderly ſet downe the branches of all the tumours or impoſtumes (if ſo you wil terme them) which happen beſides nature: and firſt we will beginne with inflammation.

The diuiſion of a tumour beſides nature into his ſpecies, after the opinion of the later ſort.

Apoſtemata.

Puſtulæ.

Exituræ.

CHAP. II.

Of the difference of thoſe tumours which happen beſides nature.

THere be many and ſundrie differences of tumours beſides nature, which are commonly called by this generall name Apoſtemes: the differences whereof, of the later Chirurgians are obſerued, to proceed either from the ſubſtance of the ſore, or from the matter thereof, or from the accidents, or from the affected parts, or elſe from the efficient cauſes. The differences which they deſume from the ſubſtance, are ſuppoſed by *Auicene* and his ſect to be two, either the greatneſſe of the ſwelling, or the littleneſſe thereof. Amongſt the bigge tumours they do recken *Phlegmone* (which appeare commonly in the fleſhie parts, which are fit to be diſtended) and *Oedema*, *Eryſipelas*, and *Scirrhus*, which do all grow vp to a great bigneſſe and quantitie. Little tumours are called of them litle eminences or appearings, or breakings out called puſhes, which are commonly ſeene in the skinne and the vttermoſt parts of the bodie; as the Greekes leproſie, the ſcab, the ringworme, and ſuch other like, of the which we will ſpeake more largely hereafter. The matter of the aforeſaid tumours are the foure humours, as well naturall as not naturall, that is to ſay, fleame, melancholie, choler, and thoſe humours which are altogether beſides nature; ſometime the ſoundneſſe of certaine bodies, and ſometime a yellow or pale humour; the handling of all which differences we will referre vnto another place. The ſymptomates or accidents which are commonly incident to theſe tumors, are, griefe, heate, ſoftneſſe, hardneſſe, and ſuch like: from the which they will deriue ſome differences. But thoſe which they take from the members and from the affected parts, are *Opthalmia*, the inflammation of the eye, the ſquince, the inflamation of the throat, *Phyma*, *Phygethlum*, and thoſe inflammations which we terme *Glandulæ* and *Bubones*. But the efficient cauſes from the which certaine differences be borrowed, are congeſtion and fluxe, and *Criſes*, that is to ſay, iudgement thereof, which happeneth

The diuiſion of a tumour into his differences.

From whence the differẽces of tumours beſides nature are taken of the later ſort.

Subſtantiæ.

Materiæ.

Accidentiæ.

Pars affecta.

Cauſæ efficientes.

in diseases. There be also certaine other causes both internall and externall, whereof we will dispute more copiously and earnestly in that which followeth. But yet truely all diuersities and differences of these kindes of swellings chancing aboue nature, haue their beginning from the nature and substance (which prouoketh the swelling) of that which floweth, as witnesseth *Galen* in his booke which he wrote of Tumors aboue nature. Likewise in his second booke that he wrote *ad Glauconem cap.* 13. *Meth. med.* In which places he declareth, that the varietie of all swellings which are aboue nature, doth arise of the nature of that which floweth: for when (saith he) a flatuous matter hath more free accesse, then also the tumors are made more flatuous: but they are more like vnto *Phlegmone* when as bloud aboundeth: as likewise *Erysipelas*, when choler hath his course: and they also be more vexed with *Oedema*, when fleame or rheume descending from the head doth reigne. Also they be grieued with the disease *Schirrhosis*, when either a thicke or too cold humour is setled in some part thereof. Therefore (as *Galen* saith) all tumours do chance besides nature, which proceed either of humours, or of a flatuous and windie spirit, which is gathered sometime vnder the skin, sometime vnder the thinne filmes that couer the bones; sometime in the belly, sometime in the intrailes, oftentimes in the midst of these, and of the *Peritonæum*. The Greekes call it *Emphysema*, and *Auicen* termeth it a windie *Apostema*. If such swellings happen of humours, then they are either hote, or cold, or mingled together. Hote tumours come of the best bloud, that is to say, which is perfectly ruddie, and of a meane soundnesse and moderate qualitie: and then the Greekes call it *Phlegmone*, the Latines *Inflammatio*: or they proceed of yellow choler, or of burning and thinne bloud, or else of those things which be hoter then bloud or choler. They terme this euill *Erysipelas*, but these name it *Sacer ignis*. But cold swellings are prouoked either through thin fleame, and then the Greekes call it *Oedema*, but our Phisitions terme it *Laxus tumor*, the interpreter of *Auicen Vndimia*: or also it is caused through the humor melancholy, or through thicke, cold, and clammy fleame. They call this *Schirron*, the Latines *Duricties*, the Arabians *Sephirus*. And swellings sometimes do chance by reason of a late taking away superfluous bloud, as hereafter it shall be declared. Tumors are said to be mingled, when such kind of humors are tempered together: and if one maistereth the other, the name is giuen to the swelling from that humour which exceedeth in the mixture: as in bloud-ruling choler, we will call *Phlegmone* the principall to be *Erysipelatodes*: and also because melancholie gouerneth, *Erysipelas* is said to be *Phlegmonodes*. Now of other mixtures there is the like interpretation, both of *Schirrus Phlegmonosus* with *Phlegmone Schirrhosa*, and of *Oedema Phlegmonosum* with *Phlegmone Oedematosa*. And after this example you shall name the other tumours, although there chance commixtion of three or foure humours together at once. Moreouer, if the humours be of like force, and equally incorporate, so that the one cannot ouercome the other, then we will name the tumours by the coupling together of those humours which they stirre or raise vp. As if bloud be equally mingled with choler, that euill may be called, by reason of their ioyning together, *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas*, or (as *Galen* hath it) it may be termed a meane in the

From whence the difference of tumours aboue nature doth come.

Emphysema.

Calidi tumores.

Tumores frigidi.

Tumores serosi.

Tumores complicati.

One euill seemeth to haue affinitie with another.

the kind and nature of *Phlegmone* & *Eryſipelas*. Theſe truly be the chiefe ſwellings and tumors which are recited in *Galen* by the flowing of humours (that is to ſay) *Phlegmone*, *Eryſipelas*, *Aedema*, *Scirrhus*; whereunto innumerable other tumors exceeding the meaſure and bounds of nature, are reduced and comprehended, although they haue choſen to themſelues diuerſe names, according to their ſundrie cauſes. Therefore there pertaineth vnto a kind of *Phlegmone*, *Phygethon*, which is called *paruus*, (*Celſus* being the author) but of our men *Phyma* and *Tuberculum*: alſo it is named of the ſame *Celſus Terminthon*, of *Oribatius*, the kinds of *ſpecies* of *phyma*: but of *Aetius*, *phigethlum*: alſo they be called *Dothiens*, which *Celſus* calleth *Furunculi*, felons. Likewiſe *Gangræna* of ſome member, ἐκφύσις, that is to ſay, mortification, but not abſolute, and alſo *Sphaſelus* which is called of the Latines *Syderatio*, & of *Auicen*, *Aſcachilos*, *Carbunculus* alſo it is called of the Greeks *Anthrax*, whereof *Auicen* writeth in the Chapter *De pruna & igne Perſico*. But vnto *Eryſipelas* are referred *Herpetes*, which in kinde be two maner of waies, that is to ſay, *Miliares* and *Excedentes*, biting and gnawing, which the greeks do call ἐσιοματοι. He which expoundeth *Auicen* hath called both the kinds *Formicæ*, but he being deceiued with the liknes of the name, hath mixed them in the ſame Chapter by great ouerſight with thoſe *Verrucæ* which the Greeks call *Myrmeciæ*, the Latines *Formicæ*. *Celſus* ſeemeth to haue comprehended thoſe *Herpetes* vnder the name of *Ignis ſacer*: but the Chirurgians of later times haue numbred them among the cholericke puſtules, as they terme them. There commeth alſo of choler almoſt all thoſe diſeaſes called of the Greekes *Phlyctænæ*, and therefore they belong vnto *Eryſipelas*, whereof *Auicen* doth intreat in his Chap. *De veſicæ inflammationibus*. Vnto the tumours caused of fleame, that is to ſay, vnto *ædemata*, are referred certain tumors comprehended of the Greeks vnder the name *Apoſtema*, which be called of *Auicen*, *Nodi*, of *Haly Abbas*, *Selaa*, and *dubeleta phlegmatica*, of the Latines *abſceſſus*: wherof there be diuers kinds, according to the diuers matters cõtained in them. Moreouer in *Galen* there be three kinds of *Abſceſſus* chancing very often, whereof euery one hath borrowed his proper name of the Greeks: thoſe be *Atheromata*, *Stratomata*, *Melicerides*, which indeed be called after the likenes of bodies contained in thẽ, as we wil declare hereafter more at large. There is alſo a kind of *Apoſtema*, that is, of *abſceſſus*, wherein are other things contained, which do repreſent not onely the properties of humors, but alſo of certain ſound bodies: but theſe (ſaith *Galen*) chance very ſeldome, and of theſe we wil alſo ſpeak hereafter when we ſhall intreate of abſceſſions. But now vnto the ſaid kinds of *Abſceſſus* there appertaine certain names of tumors being deuiſed of the later ſort, and neuer as yet found out amongſt ancient writers, as *Teſtudo*, which is a ſoft ſwelling cleauing to the whole head of a man, and *Talpa*: the one ſeemeth to belong vnto *Atheroma*, the other vnto *Melicerides*. But vnto *Stratomata* doth belong a certain ſwelling without paine, which they call *nata*, or *napta*, whereof we will ſpeake in his place. Hereunto alſo do pertaine the euils called of the Greekes *Gangliæ*, of *Auicen*, *Glandulæ*, which do differ from the aforeſaid *Nodi*. There commeth alſo of fleame that which the common ſort call *Scrofula*, and therefore they are reduced vnto *ædemata*. Theſe be called of the Greekes *Chærades*, of the Latines, *Strumæ*. Notwithſtanding *Galen* in a certaine place

The chiefe tumors that are cauſed of flowing humours.

What tumours do aſſociate Phlegmone.

Eryſipetaloſe tumors.

Aedematoſe tumors.

Certaine new names of tumors giuen of the latter ſort of Phyſitions.

Teſtudo.

Talpa.

Ganglium.

Strumæ.

amongst the diseases named *Scirrhi*, doth take it for *Duities*. Also vnto *ædema* is referred in *Galen* that kind of *Hydrops*, which is named of the Greekes, *Leucophlegmatica*, & *hyposarca*. But the swellings or tumors which pertaine vnto choler, and which be comprehended vnder the said *Scirrhus*, are *Cancri*, which of the Greekes be called *Carnici*, and *Carcinomata*: Notwithstanding *Celsus* maketh a difference betweene *Cancer*, and *Carcinoma*, that he might say, that it did come and proceed by litle and litle of those things which do chance outwardly, and that it is ingendred within (some member being corrupted.) The same *Celsus* diuided *Cancer* into many parts or kindes, that is to say, into *Erysipelas*, *Gangræna* & *vlcus nigrum*: of this kind also is *Elephantus*, or *Elephantia*, or *Elephantiasis*, called of the common sort of Physitions *Lepra*, and of some, *sancti Lazari morbus*. Therefore the name of *Lepra* signifyeth with *Auicen* and with the vnlearned company, a most grieuous & deadly disease, when yet with *Gal. Paul. Aegineta*, & with other Grecians it is counted but a light griefe, not much differing from that which we call *Scabies*, which is called of the same writers *Psora*. Among this hard swelling kinde of tumours, are accounted the diseases called in the Latine tongue of the interpreter of *Auicen*, *Verrucæ*, which be swellings like vnto little hillocks appearing in the skin, whereof they haue this name, being called of the common sort *Porra*. To this kinde also may be referred *Myrmeciæ*, as if one should call them *Formiculæ*, & *Aerocordones*, which of our countrimen are termed *Pensiles verrucæ*, and *Clauus* also, which in forme is like to a hard round pillar called of the Greekes ἧλος, of *Auicen* they are called *Almismar*, *Thymion*, or *Thymon*, representing the knobby tops of the herbe Thime. *Auicen* seemeth also to haue giuen it this name *Fusium*, or (as another translation hath it) *Tarsecum*. Also among the diuers kinds of *Verucæ*, there be euils called of *Auicen Cornua*, so called, because they being very long, are turned againe crooked like vnto hornes. In like case also there be *Calli* which the Greekes call τύλοι, these are ingendred by meanes of the skin being obdurated and hardned through much labour. Vnto choler also there seemeth to pertaine this euill, which the Grecians cal *Dracontion*, the Latins, *Dracunculus*: according to the liuely similitude or likenesse of that name. *Auicen* calleth it *Venæ medeni*, *Haly Abbas*, *Venæ sanioſæ*: whereof *Paulus Aegineta* intreateth, *cap. vltimo lib.* 4. This disease is not very rife with vs. Besides these tumors which we now haue rehearsed, there chanceth other also, affecting oftentimes the superficiall parts of the body, that is to say, certain smal appearings, which they cal *Pustulæ*, and *Bothor*. Which although they differ both among themselues, and also from those tumors which we haue aboue recited, yet they are caused of the same humors, of the which also they are now called great tumors. Therefore they onely seeme to differ from them in respect of their greatnes and smalnesse. But that such little tumors (which truly a Chirurgion ought not to be ignorant of) might appeare most manifest, and easie to be conceiued of euery man, I haue thought it expedient, and a thing worthy the labour, to set downe in this place the names of them, both in Greeke and Latine, and also their barbarous title, with a certaine rude description thereof, as we haue alreadie done in the greater. Therefore, that we may enter into the matter it selfe, there are of the kinde of pustules or pushes, *Lepra*, so called of the Greekes, and retaining

Leucophlegmatica.
Scirrhosi tumores.
Cancer.
Carcinoma.
Elephantiasis.
Verrucæ.
Porra.
Myrmeciæ.
Acrocordones.
Clauus.
Thymion.
Cornua.
Calli.
Dracunculi.
Pustulæ.

the

the same title amongst the Latines, and *Psora* called of the same writer *Scabies*, being truly diseases very neare of affinitie among themselues: for there is roughnesse and sharpnesse of the skinne, with itching and pritching in the bodie, comming of the same humour, that is to say, of choler. Notwithstanding they differ in this, because *Lepra* doth consume the skinne with manifest scales somewhat deepe, as it were in a circle: but *Psora* doth onely hurt the outward part with diuerse formes, and doth vnloose a certaine scurfe of the bodie. Hitherto also doth pertaine that light infection of the skinne called of the Greekes *Lychenes*, of the Latines, *Impetigo*, in English the Ring-worme, and commonly of some (as *Manardus* reporteth) they be called *Volatica*. This chanceth by reason of the mingled putrifaction of wilde bloud being thinne and sharpe, with other that be thicke: and very often and easily it doth turne it selfe (*Galen* affirming the same) into the aforesaid euils, that is to say, into *Lepra* and *Scabies*, which they call *Psora*. Yet there are some which thinke, that that which the Greekes call *Lepra*, is called of *Celsus*, *Impetigo*. But truly seeing he doth write specially of *Impetigo*, appointing foure kindes thereof, *Libro quinto suæ medicinæ*, it is euidently apparent, that he meant some other thing by this word *Impetigo*, then *Lychene* amongst the Greekes, seeing that truly we neuer reade in any Greeke Author, that there were so many kindes of *Lychene* euer agreed of or acknowledged. Therefore if we will with *Galen* speake properly, *Lepra*, and *Lychene* or *Impetigo*, cannot be one and the same euil: otherwise the same should be changed into it selfe. That I may therefore draw the whole matter into few words: when the skinne is lightly infected with an onely roughnesse and itching, that is called in Greeke *Lychene*, but in Latine *Impetigo*: but when the griefe waxeth worse, it changeth the name together with the forme. But if *Lychene* doth cause manifest scales, and doth pierce the skinne somewhat deeply, it is properly called *Lepra*. But if it be stretched out onely by the outward *superficies*, and doth cause brannie or scalie bodies, it is called *Psora* of the Greekes, of vs it is called properly *Scabies*. Although this word *Scabies* doth extend very farre commonly also among the Physitions of late time, who do name all the euill of the skin to be *Scabies*. But they speake very improperly: for the pure and true *Scabies*, so called of the Latines, is without all doubt that disease which is called of the Greekes *Psora*, of *Auicen* also *Albara* and *Morphea*, cleane contrarie to the opinion of some. For that which is said of him and almost of all the Physitions of Affricke to be *Albara*, is named of the Greekes and of *Celsus* also *Leuce*. But amongst them it is called *Morphea*, among the Greeks *Alphos*, in which disease the whole flesh is not affected, but onely the externall parts of the bodie, euen as though (as *Galen* saith) it were set about with certaine scales. But these *Alphi* (as it is in *Galen*) in their kinde are of two sorts, that is to say, white, which come of fleame: and blacke, which proceede from a melancholicke humour. But these things we haue spoken of, being led by the consequence of things. For neither *Leuce* nor *Alphi* themselues are accounted amongst the tumours besides nature, but rather amongst the euils of the skin. Which things although they hurt very little, yet because they do dishonest and bring shame, they are wont to be for the most part a greater heauinesse

Lepra. *Psora.* *Lychenes.* *Foure kinds of Impetigo.* *Lepra.* *Psora.* *Scabies.* *Albara.* *Leuce.* *Alphos is of two sorts.*

and wearineſſe (eſpecially vnto women) then many other diſeaſes which truly do hurt, but yet they be ſecret. Both theſe euils, that is to ſay, *Leuce* and *Alphi*, *Celſus* hath comprehended vnder the name of *Vitiligo* (making three kindes thereof) although other Students of Phyſicke, turning Greeke into Latine, do conuert *Leuce* in al places into *Vitiligo*, which would more aptly agree, if it were put with this Epithet or addition, as to ſay, *Alba vitiligo*. *Vitiligo* therefore, if we wil comprehend it vnder any certain head or kind, is a filthy colour of the skin, proceeding of an euill habite of ſome part of the bodie, which could not well receiue any nouriſhment to it ſelfe. For this euill chanceth through the default of the nouriſhing facultie, whereof ſome do conſtitute two kindes, the one which doth infect the skinne onely with certaine markes, which do cleaue faſt vnto it like vnto little ſcales; the other which goeth in ſomewhat deeper, ſo that it toucheth the very fleſh, and coloureth the haires: for in it there ariſeth gray haires, like vnto a certaine kind of moſineſſe: this is gathered together of viſcous and glutinatiue fleame: but both of them do defile & ſtaine, either with their white, or eſpecially with their black colour. The firſt *ſpecies*, which is aloft and ſuperficiall, whether it be white or blacke, it is called of the Greeks, *Alphis*, by the ſame name, as before, becauſe it changeth the colour of the skinne, for ἀλφίτες (whereof ἄλφις is deriued) ſignifieth amongſt the ancient Greekes, to change. *Auien* calleth it *Morphea*. But the other kinde, which we haue declared to pierce ſomewhat deeper, is called of the Greekes, and of *Celſus* alſo *Leuce*, and of the reſt of the Latins *alba vitiligo*, of *Auicen*, *Albara*, *Haly Abbas* onely among the Arabians calleth it *Lepra*, a filthy diſeaſe which is hard to be cured, yet he doth not declare it to be pernicious and deadly, who hath not accounted it altogether as a light thing (as the Greeks affirme it) & litle differing from a ſcab: neither (as *Auicen* thought) pernicious and grieuous, but onely lothſome and filthy. Whereby we may coniecture, that little credite is to be attributed to wordes or names, vnleſſe the matter be throughly diſcouered. For one and the ſelfe-ſame word by varietie of Authors, hath enforced to vphold many diuerſe and different ſignifications, as in their Commentaries doth euerie where appeare. But we haue ſpoken by the way of the euils and defedations of the skinne, onely that the confuſion of things might be eſchued which happeneth by words miſ-vnderſtood. Therefore omitting theſe things, we will returne vnto our purpoſe, and with as much breuitie as we can, we will diſpatch the diſcourſe of the reſidue of ſwelling ſores, among which, beſides thoſe which we haue rehearſed and touched alreadie, are reckoned by the Greeks, *Ionthi*, *Epinyctides*, *Hidroa*, *Pſidraces*, *Exanthemata*, *Celſi papulæ*, and *Plinij mentagra*. *Ionthi* are little ſwellings, and thoſe hard, which ariſe in the outward skinne and *ſuperficies* of the face (as *Paulus* and *Galen* thought) proceeding from a groſſe humour, which are either reſolued, or elſe ripened by a litle matter which ſpringeth with it. The Latines call them *Vari*: *Galen* maketh mention *libro quinto*, *De medicam. ſecundum locos*, of an affect, which he calleth *Ionthoſus affectus*, which he ſaith is the foundation and beginning of *Elephantiaſis*, vnder the which diſeaſe he ſeemeth to comprehend the third and fourth kinde of that which *Celſus* nameth *Impetigo*. *Epynictides* (as *Celſus* ſuppoſeth) are Peſtilent puſhes, either of pale colour, or of a blacke colour

Vitiligo.

Small credite to be giuen to wordes or names.

Ionthi.

Epinyctides.

lour, or of a white hew, not exceeding the bigneſſe of a beane, ariſing either in the legs or in the feete. About them there is alwayes a very vehement inflammation, and when they are opened, there is found a very thick and clammy exulceration within. His colour is like vnto his humor: but the grieſe greatly ſurpaſſeth the bigneſſe of the ſore, which in quantitie ſurmounteth not a beane. They borrowed their title from the night, either (as *Celſus* thought) becauſe that in the night time they pricked and moleſted more grieuouſly, or becauſe they moſt cõmonly ariſe in the night. *Pliny* termeth them blewiſh puſhes, diſquieting eſpecially in the night time. The Arabians call them *Eſſere*, *Sere*, or *Saire*, which words explane the forenamed nature of the ſore. Thoſe which are called of the Greeks *Hidroa*, the Latines terme *Sudamina*, & *Plinie Papulæ ſudorum*, *Auicen*, *Planta noctis*, & *Almanſorus*, and *Albaſaphum*: whereby it cometh to paſſe, that *Epinyctis* doth much differ from *Auicen* his *Planta noctis*, although the Greek word *Epinyctis* doth draw his originall from the night. But theſe *Sudamina*, as *Galen* ſaith, *lib. 4. Aph. Aphor. 21.* are reckoned among thoſe kinds of puſhes or whelkes, which ſticking in the very *ſuperficies* of the body, do pricke and ſhoot, not vnlike to our common vlcers: and they come (as their name doth declare) by many bilious ſweats, which bite the skin, & make it to itch and pricke like vlcers. But this affect is common to boyes and yong men, and to thoſe which are cholericke, & in the time of heate; but it is ſo eaſie to be cured, that of it ſelfe (without any aide) it will heale, ripening with a white top. But *Auicen* thinkes, that theſe deſudations, by their deſcription, agree rather with *Celſus* his *Exanthemata*, then with *Galen* his *Sudamina*. But he who will obſerue the nature of the words, will thinke that *Auicen* his deſudations may well be the Greekes *Hidra*, which the Latines call *Sudamina*. But we muſt not follow the names ſo much among the Barbarian and Arabian Writers, but the genuine and ſincere deſcriptions of the things themſelues. *Pſydraces* or *Pſydraica*, are puſhes, which abiding in the very vttermoſt part of the skinne, are reſembled to bladders, excited by fire, which are called *Phlyctæne*. They riſe ſpecially in the head. *Pſizacion* is not truly read in *Celſus* for *Pſydracion*. Thoſe puſhes which grow in the skinne, firſt comming by thicke humours ſtuffed in the skinne, and are commonly called *Morbilli* and *Variolæ* of *Galen*, becauſe they ſwell, and waxe big, as it were the bud of a flower, they are called *Exanthemata*; but of *Hippocrates* (becauſe they do breake out of themſelues) they are termed *Ecthymata*. For ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄνθους whereof *Exanthema* is deriued, ſignifieth a flower, and ἐκθύειν (whereof *Ecthyma* cometh) ſignifieth to burſt out. *Pliny* calleth ſuch puſhes, whelks, and the corruptions of flegme. But theſe are of two kinds: for ſome of them are ſteep, and ſome go out into breadth. Thoſe which are ſteepe, do grow of a more thinne and hote humour, and do excite itch; but thoſe which are broad, do flow, and proceed from a more cold and thicke humour, and do not a whit procure itch. The firſt ſort, of the common Phyſitions are knowne by the name *Morbilli*: the ſecond by this name *Variolæ*. But the Frenchmen prepoſterouſly abuſing the names, haue called the low and broad kinde *Rubeole*, but the higher ſort *Variole*. *Hippocrates in libro tertio Epi.* doth diuide theſe kindes of puſhes into little and great *Ecthymata*, in calling the ſteeper kinde *Magni herpetes*, either becauſe (as *Galen* ſaith) they occupy a great place, or elſe becauſe they happen with a vehement gnawing.

Why they be called Epinyctides.

Sudamina.
Planta noctis.

Deſudationes Auicennæ.

Pſydraces.

Morbilli.
Variolæ.
Exanthemata.
Ecthymata.

For indeed these sometime appeare great in height onely, sometimes both in height and breadth. *Cornelius Celsus lib. 5. medicinæ suæ*, in his treatise of *Impetigo*, remembreth two kindes of whelkes: the one somewhat small, which if it be daily rubbed with fasting spittle, it waxeth whole: the other somewhat greater, wherein the skinne is made more sharpe, and is exulcerate, and groweth very vehemently, and looketh red, and is hardly cured. He saith, that this is termed of the Greekes ἀγρία, in Latine *fera*. But in both these kinds he confesseth, that there is lesse impediment or corruption then in *Impetigo*, so that he affirmeth, that euill whose cure is hard, except it be taken away, doth change and turne into *Impetigo*. The Frenchmen (if I may iudge thereof) do call both these kindes, but specially the first, *Dartræ*. For that euill beginneth to be very round, and after the same manner it commeth (as it were) into a circle, and creepeth slowly. Which whelkes or pushes do agree in all things to be those which are said of *Celsus* to be of the first kinde. Some do constantly affirme, that these whelkes, so named of *Celsus*, do nothing differ from *Lychene* among the Grecians, or the *Impetigo* among the Latines. And we haue read, that that onely Author among the Latines hath turned *Lychene* into *Papulæ*. *Mentagra* a Latine word vsed of *Plinie*, wherein he seemed in the beginning *libr.* 26. to haue altogether meant another thing from *Impetigo*, and that it was farre away a worse euill then that which the Greekes comprehend vnder the name of *Lychene*, although in his Physicke he hath interpreted sometime *Lychene* among the Greekes, to be *Impetigo*, and the like disease called *Mentagra*, he termeth also in the same place *Lychene*. Furthermore, the same *Plinie* reporteth, that this euill crept first into Italy in the reigne of *Tiberius Cæsar*, which grieue in all the time before was vnknowne to all Europe, much lesse vnto Italy. It was of so great filthinesse and corruption, that anie death was to be preferred or wished before it, and also of so great infection, that by the swift passage thereof, onely by kissing one another it infected the people, but chiefly those that were gouernours and rulers among them. This euill beganne almost at the chinne, for that it did chiefly affect and annoy, whereupon it tooke this name *Mentagra*. This perhaps is that scabbe, which certaine of the Frenchmen call *mala dartra*. *Galen* also seemeth to acknowledge this disease: for in his first booke *De medicam. compos. secundum locos*, he remembreth a most vile kind of *Impetigo* of the chinne, which (as he rehearseth out of *Crito*) prouoketh itching, it afflicteth also the patients, and bringeth them into no small danger. For sometime (saith he) it runneth ouer the whole face, and goeth vp to the very eyes, and it causeth the greatest deformitie of the bodie almost that can be: which description of *Impetigo* doth consent in all things with the *Mentagra* of *Plinie*. But they do greatly erre, which do thinke that this most contagious *Lychene*, called of *Pliny Mentagra*, is that disease which at this day commonly some do call *Gallicum malum*, some *Neapolitanum*, othersome not bearing any hate or enuie to their Countries, do call it *Venereum*. For this infection was altogether vnknowne to the ancient Physitions, and also of the former age: and first of all it crept into Neapolis, in the yeare after the incarnation of Christ 1493. at which time *Charles* the eight, the most inuincible king of France did ouercome and winne the Alpes, going about also to

Papulæ Celsi.

Dartræ Gallicæ.

Mentagra.

Plinie lib. 26.

Galen acknowledgeth Mentagra.

Morbus Neapolitanus, & Venereus.

inuade

inuade Italy; although not long before it had spread it selfe abroad through the countries of Spaine, as some report. Wherefore hauing as it were the originall and beginning from thence, it began to be called *Hispanica lues*, the Spanish pestilence: which plague being sent vpon the earth, as it were, by the iust reuengement of GOD (as we may thinke) for their filthie and abhominable whoredome forbidden of God, hath corrupted and ouerthrowne with the contagion thereof a great part of humane kind. For the same sickneſſe the magistrates and officers tasted of, the prisoners and captiues felt, the heads of their countries sustained, and the common people also were infected withall: so swift was the passage hereof from one to another: and now also it strayeth and wandereth through the countries of Spaine, France, Italy, & all Europe, to the great annoyance of the people. There are also certaine pushes besides these, rehearsed euen now out of *Auicen li.* 4. called *Glandosæ*, which do seeme to differ nothing from the disease called *Ganglion*, but in respect onely of the lesser or the greater. There is mention also made by the same *Auicen libro* 3. of certaine whelks, which he calleth in the same place *bothores iuncturarum*: and *in lib.* 4. he calleth them *almatim*, which, because he sheweth that they be blacke and resembling greene corne, they must doubtlesse be those which the Greekes call *Terminthi*, which a little before we accounted among the *species* of *Phyma*. These *Celsus* seemeth to compare vnto *vari*, which be spots in the face: who also iudgeth them to be called of the Greekes *heleodes*, that is, *vlcerosæ*, full of scabs or sores. These white and milkie pushes, so called of *Rasis* and *Serapion*, and of *Auicen*, *leuis bothor*, if their descriptions be throughly considered, they will seeme to pertaine vnto the whelks called of the Greekes *Ionthi*, which we in Latine haue named *vari*: although the selfe same remedies which *Auicen* hath set downe for them, be taught of *Dioscorides* for the disease *ephelide*, that is to say, for the roughneſſe and swartneſſe of the face, being caused by the heate of the Sunne. Hitherto we haue intreated of the differences of tumours aboue nature, which chiefly haue their residence outwardly aboue the bodie. Now let vs proceed to declare the causes of them.

Pustulæ glandosæ.

Terminthi.

Pustulæ albæ.

CHAP. III.

Of the causes of tumors aboue nature, appearing vniuersally on the outside of the bodie.

The causes of tumors besides nature.

THere are two causes of tumours chancing besides nature, agreed of among the later sort of Physitions and Chirurgians: that is to say, generall and speciall causes. Generall causes are these, the fluxe, which the Greeks call ῥεῦμα, and the congestion or heaping together of humors. Againe, by the same Writers there are appointed to be fiue causes in number of the fluxe, that is to say, 1. the strength of the repulsiue member: 2. the weakneſſe of the retentiue: 3. the abundance and plentie of matter: 4. the looseneſſe or fulneſſe of the pores of the body through the which the fluxe happeneth: 5. the straightneſſe of the repulsiue parts: 6. and the lower situation of the place retaining the fluxe. But these may be reduced into foure heads, as vnto the repulsiue member, the part that retaineth, the state of the humour that floweth, and the place or course through the which the flowing chanceth. But the fluxe is prouoked

Fluxionis causa.

Pars propellēs.

Particula excipiens.

Humor fluens.

either by the meanes of the expulsiue member, or becauſe of the fortitude of the expulsiue vertue, or by reaſon of the naturall knitting together that it hath with the retentiue member, or becauſe of the ſtraitneſſe of the particular pores: but ſome part receiueth the fluxe, becauſe it is either painfull, or hote, or ſomewhat weake, or ſeldome, and baſe, or ſetled in the neather roome. Furthermore by meanes of the humor there is a defluxion or flowing downe into ſome part of the body, becauſe it is in abundance ſuperfluous, of nature troubleſome, and of ſubſtance thin. But the ſpace or place is a cauſe of the fluxe, by reaſon of the largeneſſe of the paſſages, as of the veins, arteries and pores. But of congeſtion, (which is the other generall cauſe of tumours which chance aboue nature) there are aſſigned two cauſes, that is to ſay, the fault of the vertue nutritiue, and the imbecility of the vertue expulsiue. By which things we gather, that hote tumours happen for the moſt part through the defluxion of humours, but cold tumours are rather prouoked by their congeſtion. But after what manner a hote fluxe exciteth the tumour, *Galen* doth declare plainly and wittily, in that little booke which he intituled *Inæqualis intemperies*, writing after this manner: An hote deſcending of a fluxe (ſaith he) as ſoone as it hath once placed it ſelfe in the muſcle, firſt the great arteries and veines are filled and ſtretched out, then by their meanes the leſſer are diſtended, and ſo it proceedeth vntill it commeth to the leaſt of all. In them, when a fluxe is ſtrongly compact together, and can no longer be contained, part thereof iſſueth out through the extreme parts of them, and part is ſtrained out through the holes of the tunicles, and is ſpeedily ſent forth; and then thoſe void places are filled with the fluxe, which are betweene the beſt and chiefeſt bodies. Thus all things proceeding of the humour, do waxe hote in euery place, and alſo are ſtill powred forth. And theſe are the ſinewes, the bindings or ligamenrs, the ſmall filmes, the very fleſh, and beſides theſe, the arteries and veines, which truly being the principall, are diuerſly and many wayes afflicted aboue the reſt. For inwardly, by reaſon of the fluxe they are both made hote, and alſo are ſtretched out, and torne and pulled aſunder. And outwardly alſo, they are not onely made hote, but alſo are ſuppreſſed and made heauie. But the other parts of the body, ſome truly are onely made hote or kept downe, and ſome are affected with both. And this diſeaſe is called *Phlegmone*. Hitherto *Galen*. Therefore in ſuch kind of tumours chancing beſides nature, which are cauſed of the flowing of humours, ſomething already (at the leaſt way at the beginning, and before the fluxe did begin to ſtriue) is made & ingendred, and ſomething is yet to come, and reſteth in the generation. That which doth happen as yet, is the matter which went before, which as yet abideth in the fluxe: but that which is ingendred already, is the ioyned matter which hath already flowed, and is compact in the aggrieued place. Hereupon therefore there muſt be vſed a diligent care of the Phyſition in ſuch kindes of *Phlegmone* which as yet remaine in generation (as in all other tumors alſo and diſeaſes which are yet in beginning, neither as yet haue obtained perfection) as *Galen lib. 13. meth. med.* doth declare them to be knowne and perceiued, both by that which foreſeeth, & that which cureth: but theſe things pertaine to another kind of ſtudy. But it is conuenient that we ſet downe the ſpeciall cauſes of tumours which are aboue nature, to

Spatium.

Cauſes of congeſtion.

How an hote defluxion prouoketh a tumour.

There is a twofold declaration of all thoſe euils which are yet in begetting.

the

the which these three are commonly appointed: Primitiue causes, which we call both *Prægressæ* and *Euidentes*; and causes antecedent, which we name *Antecedentes*: and ioyned causes, which we terme *Coniunctæ* or *Continctes*. These be called of the Greekes προκαταρκτικαὶ, προηγούμεναι, σύνεκτικαί. The primitiue causes are said to be these, which while they do worke any disease, are separated, as a fall, a stripe, a blow, a bruise, a tumor, or a solution, or that euil which is cõmitted by admitting a dissolute diet. Antecedent causes, are those which of themselues are fit and materiall to beget any disease or affect, as are foure humours both naturall, and not naturall. Naturall humours are those which serue to nourish the body, and haue their being with the bloud, and are comprehended vnder the name of bloud. Which if they be sent out from the veines and arteries, they do suddenly congeale and gather together; whether they flow without the body, or do remaine stil in the place wherein they be contained. But they call those vnnaturall humours, which are found seuered from the bloud, with the which the body is nourished; and by reason of their corruption & naughtines by their owne nature are not nutritiue, the which do sometime grow, although they remaine in the aire which compasseth vs. And these, as it were by a certaine kinde of prouidence of nature, being destined and ordained for some vse, are demitted and sent into certaine receptacles, either into the vttermost parts of the bodie, and so ingender vnkind swellings, called *Abscessus*, or whelkes, scabbes, desedations and alterations of the skinne, and vnnaturall sweats: or sometime by an insensible aire inwardly infused they do excite sweatings. Sometime also they putrifie within, and beget Feauers. But such like (say they) are improperly termed humours, assuming to themselues the names of naturall humors. For they hold this opinion, that onely those iuyces which come from the liuer in the generation of bloud, and of nutrition and moisture, are properly to be termed naturall humours. Such are sincere and pure bloud, cholericke also, flegmaticke and melancholicke; by the which foure kinds all the parts of the body are generally nourished and maintained: some parts with a more pure, and (as I may say) a more bloudy humour: other with a humour more cholericke, other with a flegmaticke, and other with a melancholicke, as the nature of euery part requireth. Therefore all the humours are contained in the veines and arteries, the which may appeare by their varietie of colour and consistencie (as *Galen* hath expressed *in libro de atra bile.*) Furthermore, of those foure humours which are called naturall, foure speciall Tumours are ingendred, which are commonly called *Apostemata*. In the which the swelling is very bigge, and the matter doth offend rather in quantitie then in qualitie. They are called by their proper names, *phlegmone, erysipelas, ædema, scirrhus*. Of humours not naturall (as it pleaseth the later Physitions) do proceed *Abscessus*, which they also call *Exituræ* and *Pustulæ*, which they thinke cannot well be called Apostemes. To the which they will adde and reduce two other kindes also, flatuous and waterie, which proceed of a fluible substance, and are commonly called *apostemata ventosa & aquosa*, that is, windie and waterish apostemes. There be therefore sixe titles attributed vnto simple tumours, that is, *phlegmonosi, erisypelatosi, ædematosi, scirrhosi, flatuosi, & aquosi*. But the compound tumours are not called according to the concourse of humors,

Special causes of tumours & boue nature.

Prægressæ.

Antecedentes.

Which are said to be naturall humours.

Which are said to be vnnaturall.

What iuyces are properly termed naturall humours.

Of the foure naturall humours are ingendred foure lawfull and especiall tumors.

What tumors do come of vnnaturall humours.

(because a great many may happen in one disease) but they are named by the predominant humour especially, as we haue manifested heretofore, and will hereafter more plentifully in his owne place. But *coniunctæ causæ*, or *continentes* of those tumours besides nature which they commonly call *apostemata*, *pustulæ*, and *exituræ*, are matters and seuerall substances, which are found to be aggregated and stuffed together in the affected part, and which do yet remaine after they haue excited the swelling: and while they increase, the tumors also do greatly augment; and when they decrease, the tumours are diminished: and when their substance is vtterly spent and extinguished, the tumours also of themselues do fall away. And this cause, called *coniuncta* or *continens causa*, of all the maladies and sundrie dispositions of the bodie, is after this manner by *Auicen* defined, that when it is present, his disease alwayes accompanies him: and also when it is taken away, his disease also vanisheth. But for all this, some Physitions of our age, and those very well learned, do contend that *Galen* would admit but two causes, that is to say, an externall and an internall: or as they say now, a primitiue and an antecedent. Of the which, that (he saith) doth happen to the body outwardly, which altereth and changeth the same greatly, the which alwayes is separated vntill it hath established his maladie, as heate, cold, the biting of a Scorpion. But the internall hath his being within the body, and doth presently procreate the maladie, as are humours affected besides nature. But they do constantly affirme, that he neuer so much as dreamed of that which they terme *causa coniuncta*, when as according to his opinion, euerie affect which letteth and hindereth the actions and duties of the bodie, is a maladie it selfe, and not the cause of a maladie: and that *coniuncta causa*, which *Auicen* and his Sect haue inuented, according to their owne description which they assigne vnto it, is nothing but a certaine kinde of affect letting the execution of those duties pertaining to the bodie, which is the verie definition of a maladie it selfe. And therefore they proue, that it nothing differeth from a disease it selfe, which is wont to preiudice those actions which agree with nature. But because one and the selfe same opinion hath occupied all mens minds of this latter age, concerning this triple kinde of the causes of all such diseases, it shall not seeme altogether absurd, if that I throughout all this Treatise of mine, for plainnesse sake, shall diuide & distinguish these three causes into these three kinds and titles: I meane *primitiua*, *antecedens* and *coniuncta*. And thus much for the causes of tumours happening besides nature. Now the course of our Treatise doth exact that we should adde the signes and tokens of the same, if that before we shall intreate somewhat of the nature and generation of the *abscessus*. *Abscessus* therefore, called of the Greeks ἀποστήματα, and of the common Physitions *exituræ*, are called of *Galen* (*libro de tumoribus præter naturam*, & *secundo ad Glauconem*) dispositions, in which the parts of the body do depart one from another, which before did touch and meete: for the matter which doth excite these tumours, being thrust out without the flesh of the muscle, doth bring the parts out of their places, and maketh them part and seuer. Therefore saith *Galen*, there must of necessitie be a place voide in the middest, which borroweth either some flatuous, moist, or tempered, or mixed substance from the parts, which in length of time is altered into many

Coniunctæ causæ tumorum præter naturam.

What it is which is called continens causa.

Some thinke that coniuncta causa nothing differeth from the maladie it selfe.

What Abscessus Galen thinketh to be.

and

and sundrie circumstances. But there is a double kind of these *abscessus*: one is, when as the inflammation being turned into matter, the matter it selfe is packed vp together in a corner or hole: the other is, when as no inflammation proceeding or going before, a certaine humour, either vaporous, or else a substance mixed of both parts, is in some part collected together, which also happeneth two wayes: for either in the space lying betweene the seuered parts, such like substance is ingendred, or else it runneth into the parts themselues, and that either in the beginning, or else that way by the which those diseases happen called ἀποκάμματα, which (saith *Galen*) then do chance, when as humours which before haue infested and grieued some one part, do thence remoue, and are enforced into another. And this substance which begetteth this *abscessus*, worketh himselfe a place betweene the skinne and the flesh. And in time it doth flay off all the skinne, either because it is very vehement, or else because the plentie of matter doth putrifie, and so breake the skin. But if those humours with the which the space situated betweene the seuered parts is filled, do continue any more, they haue (as I said before) many alterations, and are changed into many substances, which do represent the properties not onely of humors, but euen of solide and hard bodies. For you shall find sundry matters within these spaces, some like vnto stones, some to grauell and sand, some to wood, some to coles, some to dirt, some to the foam of oiles, some to the dregs of wine: this varietie of substances some ignorant men haue thought to proceed from the force of incantation.

Two kinds of abscessus, Gal. lib. 14. Therap. meth. & lib. 2. ad Glauconem

ἀποκάμματα.

What things may be found in abscessus.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the signes of tumours besides nature generally appearing, together with the iudgements thereof.

TVmours besides nature, being resiant in the extremest parts of the bodie (the examining and speculation whereof doth appertaine to the Chirurgion) being surueyed by the iudgement of the senses, and the affected parts being touched and felt by the hands, are easily descried and knowne. For in euery part of the bodie there appeareth a certaine kind of increasing exceeding the naturall state, and distending aboue the measure of nature that part which it affecteth, and it letteth the duties or actions thereof, because either some humour, or some such substance proceeding of the humour, or which do sauour somewhat of the nature of the humour, or a vaporous spirit hath excited it, there also must needs happen a tumour besides nature. But the tumors which they call true Apostemes, are discerned by their swelling, by their paine, and by their heate, being stretched out more or lesse. But they are not counted to be true Apostemes indeed, which we haue termed *pustulæ* and *abscessus*, besides that tumor: which malady the Grecians call *cacoethia*, and also in the greater or lesser sequestration, *determinata*. But the signes of euery particular difference, and of their matter whereof they be ingendred, shall be declared in their due place, in that which followeth. In the meane time we will handle the simple differences of those tumours which are aboue nature, by the which the compound differences shall also be easily knowne. But we must not

General signes of tumours aboue nature.

Particular signes.

come vnto particular things, before we haue throughly discourſed of vniuerſall, for that order is wont to be obſerued in the inſtitutions of the Arts, neither truly vnworthily, or without cauſe. For thoſe vniuerſall and common things are more manifeſted vnto vs then particular, becauſe theſe particular things are more confuſed, and more mixed one with another, as *Ariſtotle* teacheth *lib.* 1. *Phyſicorum, ca.* 1. Let no man therfore marueil though euery where in this treatiſe of Chirurgery, we alwayes begin of more common things, and of thoſe which comprehend many things vnder them. But let vs returne to our purpoſe, and let vs proſecute the iudgements of tumours conſiſting aboue nature.

1. *Iudicia.* In the which firſt of all we muſt note, that all thoſe tumors which they call true Apoſtemes, (if we will credit *Galen* and *Auicen*) are greatly complicate and folded together, neither can any of them be eaſily iudged or found out to be pure and ſincere: for (as *Galen* ſaith) with *Phlegmone*, that is, with an inflammation coming of blond, there is ſomething chiefly mingled which doth preſerue the nature either of *Eryſipelas*, or *œdema*, or *ſcirrhus*: but chiefly *Eryſipelas*, becauſe it repreſenteth a kind of *Phlegmone*, or *Aedema*, or *Scirrhus*: and ſo conſider and marke in all the reſt of the tumors. But truly thoſe humors beſides nature which they terme not true Apoſtemes, are very often found ſincere and pure. But we will handle the cures of ſimple and ſincere tumors in thoſe things which follow, by the which the remedies alſo of compound and intricate tumors ſhall manifeſtly appeare. For I thinke it good to diſcourſe of all the kinds of tumours, and alſo to diſpoſe aright that which ſhall ſeeme ſuperfluous. For if a man ſhall know all the ſimple tumors, and learne after what manner they be compounded together, he ſhall be furniſhed ſufficiently to exerciſe himſelfe particularly in the reſt. But now let vs ſee other opinions and iudgements generally concerning the tumors themſelues. *Periods*, *paroxiſmi*, and the *criſes* of tumors beſides nature, do follow the analogie of the humours whereof they be conflated or ingendred, (*Guido* affirming the ſame) which analogie we here declare to be a propertie or proportion, a nature or a likeneſſe of ſubſtance, which they call *forma ſpecifica & occulta*, a ſpeciall and hidden forme. Such kind of tumors, eſpecially they which be wholſome, and which are cauſed of the flowing of humours, are diſtinguiſhed by foure times, that is to ſay, by their beginning, by their increaſing, by their ſtate, and by their declination. The ſigne of their beginning is, when the member beginneth to be ſtretched out, and when the beginning of fluxe is preſent, but yet with ſmall griefe. We may alſo iudge augmentation to be preſent, when we ſee the tumor to be raiſed like a heape or pile, and the place affected to be filled, and the ſymptomates which are wont to follow euery tumour to be manifeſtly increaſed. But the tokens of their ſtate is, when all the aforeſaid things, that is to ſay, the tumour, and the ſymptomates of the differences of euerie tumour hath his owne proper force and vigour, neither can they any longer admit any increaſing, but the matter cauſing the tumour doth degenerate and change it ſelfe into another kinde of ſubſtance. But their declination is then knowne to be preſent, when the pile of the tumour and the proper ſymptomates thereof are decreaſed and diminiſhed, or when the matter which prouoketh the tumour beginneth to be transformed into another ſubſtance. Therefore ſuch kind

Lib. de differ. morborum.

Foure kindes of tumors beſides nature.

1 *Principium.*

2 *Augmentum.*

3 *Status.*

4 *Declinatio.*

kinde of times do receiue their differences from three kindes especially, that is to say, from the essence of the tumour it selfe, that is, from the greatnesse or smalnesse, from the disposition of the matter, and from the accidents, which do very much alter the declaration of the cure. But these foure times, sometime do seeme to happen all together, because of the short hardnesse of euerie one of them, which almost cannot be perceiued, (as it chanceth in the venimous inflammations,) yet not mortall or deadly, which straightway do flourish and increase. Furthermore these kinde of tumours, which do chiefly happen thorow the influxion of humours, except they be hindered by repressing the matter that floweth, or except they lurke secretly within, either of their owne accord, or without any manifest cause, (the fluxe hauing recourse thither) it is necessarie that they should be comprehended vnder one of these foure, either vnder insensible exhalation or resolution, or vnder suppuration, or putrifaction, or induration and hardening. But of all these wayes the best and the most to be desired, is that which is made by an insensible dissolution, and next to that, that which commeth by suppuration or mattering. But that which is caused by induration and hardening, is said to be euill, and that which happeneth by the corruption of the affected part, is to be thought the worst of all, the which *Galen* doth insinuate *in libro de inæquali intemperie*, writing on this manner: Therefore of the two, we must of necessitie follow the one, either that the bodie be putrified and corrupted, because fluxion is predominant, or else we must grant that this putrifaction being resisted and ouercome, the muscle must returne to his naturall habite and constitution. Let vs therefore imagine that all fluxion is withstood and impeached, then you haue two meanes to cure it, either by digesting those humours which were in the affected part, or by dissoluing or loosening them: of these the dissolution is best. But in the concoction of the humours, these two things are specially required, viz. the perfect generation of the matter, and also his abscession into some space by it selfe. And a little beneath he addeth also these wordes: But if that fluxion do make the parts as it were subiect to it, then they do fall to so great an intemperature, that their ordinarie action perisheth, and in processe of time they are corrupted and putrified. Thus farre *Galen*. The tokens of dissolution and loosening of the humours are these: the softnesse of the sore, and the little throbbing and beating thereof. But the signes of predominant fluxion, and of the putrifaction of the part it selfe, are the blacke and blew colour, to which also sometime happeneth an odious stinch. But the tokens of a stony hardnesse of the tumor, are, the imminution of the tumour, and also the extreame hardnesse thereof. The notes and signes also of the egestion and lurking of the tumour, are, the sudden diminution thereof, which chanceth sometime by too much refrigeration and coldnesse, sometime by reason of a secret venime, which lurketh in the place. And the same sudden and often imminution of the tumour succeedeth commonly some feauer, and also other euill symptomates. And thus farre of the signes and tokens of those tumours which our common Physitions haue comprehended vnder this name *Apostema*. The tokens also of those tumours which we call *Pustule*, shall not be forgotten, when we shall haue occasion to handle

The times of tumors do take their differēce from three things chiefly.

Tumors aboue nature are cōtained vnder foure moodes.

Gal. lib. de inæquali intemperie.

Signes of dissolution.

Signes of putrifaction.

Signes of induration.

Signes of the regression and lurking of a tumor.

handle them. But the ſignes and tokens of the abſceſſes commonly called *Exituræ*, either thoſe which foreſhew their coming, or elſe thoſe which do manifeſt their preſence alreadie, are theſe. When thou ſeeſt (ſaith *Auicen*) pulſation and beating, or hardneſſe to haue continued a great time, and alſo that the griefe together with much heate doth augment, then you may imagine that the next euent that followeth, is, that the Apoſteme will be turned into matter and ſuppuration, and ſo conſequently to be an abſceſſion. But when thou findeſt that the place is ſoft, and that the griefe is ſomewhat aſſwaged, and the heate mitigated, and that one place of the tumour is ſupereminent aboue the reſt; and againe if by thruſting it with your finger, you ſhall perceiue a waterish inundation to ſubſiſt; and againe that the colour of his top ſhall waxe white, then you may well thinke that the tumour is mattered, and alſo that it is turned into abſceſſion. And therefore it is well iudged of *Hippocrates*, that Feauers did oftener happen when the matter was in ripening, then when it was alreadie come to his maturitie. Moreouer, the markes and tokens as well of the preſent abſceſſion, as alſo of the abſceſſion to come, are comprehended in theſe common verſes,

Signes of abſceſſion to come.

Signes of abſceſſion already preſent.

Apho. 47. li. 2.

Durities longa, pulſus, dolor, & calor aucti,
Signant pus fieri: ſed factum, dicta remiſſa,
Sub digitis vndans, albeſcens pars & acuta.

Which may be thus Engliſhed,

By hardneſſe long, by pulſe and griefe, and eke by heate increaſd,
We know that matter doth approch: but made we iudge indeed,
If that it yeeld to fingers weight, and whiteneſſe doth appeare,
——— and painfull be alſo.

But you muſt be very attentiue and vigilant in diſcerning and iudging of the matter it ſelfe. For the manifeſt knowledge of the matter and ſuppuration is ſometime withholden from the Phyſition, by reaſon of the thickneſſe of the skinne in the which it is included, (as it is proued by this Aphoriſme of *Hippocrates*:) Whoſoeuer is ignorant of the ſuppuration which is in the body, his ignorance proceedeth of the thickneſſe of the matter, or of the place wherein it is comprehended. And thus much for the ſignes of abſceſſions. Now of the iudgements of them, theſe thiogs are deliuered vnto vs of *Auicen* and his Sect. Abſceſſions which are planted neare vnto any ſtrong member, or vnto any iuncture or ioynt, and in thoſe places where there are moſt veines and ſinewes; and againe in a weake part, hauing gathered his debilitie by the defect of naturall heate, being indurate alſo and couered with a thicke skin, containing alſo thicke matter, and ſo the more ſlow in motion, the outward place being plaine alſo, and euen, not aſcending like a little hillocke, I ſay, ſuch a like ſore is greatly ſuſpected, and verie hardly and ſlowly ripened: and ſuch a one as is euery way by deſcription oppoſite and contrarie to this, is of good and laudable habite; for both ſoone and eaſily it mattereth, and oftentimes alſo (no outward medicine aiding or aſſiſting) of it ſelfe it gapeth and openeth. If therefore the abſceſſion do grow vp into a ſharpneſſe, and the ſubſtance of the matter be thinne, and the skinne not thicke or hard, of his owne nature and power it will expell and thruſt forth the conceiued humour without any

Apho. 41. li. 6.

Iudicia abſceſſuum.

What abſceſſions may eaſily be digeſted.

any forreine aide, vnleſſe a man by making inciſion will anteuert and preuent his voluntary opening. Such like abſceſſions are digeſted ſometime by breathing or wind (no ſolution being made ſubiect within the skinne,) but that happeneth when the matter is ſmall in quantity, good and thin, and not ſticking very deepe. But if there be any emiſſarie or way made into the tumour, either by Nature or by Art, the humour conceiued within doth breake forth oftener then digeſt. But that opening or apertion which is made by nature, is a great deale ſafer then that which is made by the hand. But if it be ſo that it muſt be mollified by Art, you ſhall ſafelier do it by a ſharpe pen knife or other cleare and bright inſtrument of yron, then by that medicine which they call *Ruptorium medicamentum*. And therefore (as before I ſaid) euery apertion which is made and enforced by Art, is worſe then that which Nature affoordeth of it ſelfe, becauſe ſuch like manuall openings to make the matter ranke, may perhaps turne into a *Fiſtula*. But when neceſſitie vrgeth, and when we cannot vſe a better remedie, we muſt boldly attempt that. And by this meanes you ſhall eſchue thoſe diſcommodities which before I named, if (when the matter ſo requireth) you do ſeaſonably make apertion, and by that meanes haſten the ripening of the other baggage which lurketh in the tumour. *Hippocrates* in his laſt Oracle of his firſt booke of Prædictions hath expreſſed the very notes & matks of the worſt matter, and of the beſt, ſpeaking after this manner: That matter is eſteemed beſt, which is of colour white, and euery way like it ſelfe, and ſoft and gentle to the toucher, and as little vnpleaſant to the noſe as may be. And that which is euery way contrary to this, is the worſt of all. But the tokens & ſignes of all the other humours and ſolide ſubſtance alſo which are included in theſe abſceſſions, ſhall be manifeſted and ſhewed in their particular Chapters, as they ſhall by conſequence and order enſue.

What abſceſſions may ſooneſt be ended through reſolution.

Abſceſſions are ſafelier opened with a penknife then with ruptorium medicamentum.

The notes of the beſt and worſt matter out of Hippocrates.

CHAP. V.

¶ *Of the generall method of curing all tumors beſides nature, but of thoſe eſpecially which proceed from the influxion of humours, as Apoſtemes, and Abſceſſions, commonly called Exiture.*

OF all tumours aboue nature, as well thoſe which are already ingendred, as thoſe which are not yet in generation, there is one common and principall order of curing (as it is in *Galen libr.* 13. and 14. *Method. med.*) namely that that which is aboue nature reſident in any member, and raiſeth the ſame into a tumour, ſhould altogether be emptied out. But thoſe which are yet in begetting, in them there is a certaine obſtruction of the humour that floweth to the aggrieued place, before the euacuation. In them therefore is required a diligent and ſingular care of the Phyſition, to declare the cure of them. But theſe common manifeſtations, according to the difference of the tumour it ſelfe, and the nature of the affected member, do very much differ and alter. For truly in all tumours alreadie ingendred, and in euerie part of the bodie, the euacuation of that which annoyeth and infeſteth, is in no caſe to be vſed and miniſtred, as *Galen* teacheth *libro ſecundo ad Glauconem*, and in the places aboue recited, which alſo ſhall manifeſtly appeare in that which followeth.

The common order of curing of tumours.

The common method of curing of tumors doth change according to the difference of the tumour, and the member affected.

But we must not cure those tumours with such remedies, which are yet but beginning and occupying euerie member, or emptie out that which is alreadie ingendred in them, but we are enforced (if we intend to follow the right order in curing) to vse sometime one remedie, sometime another, which is of force to stop the fluxe, and auoid out that which is ingendred, so farre forth as the kinde of the tumor and the nature of the affected member doth require.

The order of curing of tumors is chiefly taken from two things.

Galen therefore chiefly draweth the demonstrations of the cure of tumours aboue nature from these two things, viz. from the disposition it selfe or essence of the euill, and from the nature of the affected member. Moreouer the disposition of the euill (which we haue now in hand) or the essence thereof doth comprehend three things in it, according to the iudgement and consent of the later sort, that is, the quantity, the quality, & the matter or substance which prouoketh the tumour. By meanes whereof that chiefe and common declaration is changed, and from them is taken also the particular order of curing. For a great tumour is cured one way, and a small tumour another way. For the difference of them is knowne by their greatnesse and smalnesse (as some suppose.) And one way is a mighty *Phlegmone*, and another way a litle *Herpes* healed. Otherwise also is that tumour remedied which is caused by fluxe, and is yet in begetting, then that which is procreated through congestion, or is alreadie ingendred and congealed. Also a hote tumour, as *Eryſipelas*, is otherwise cured then a cold, as is *ædema* and *Scirrhus*. The quantitie therefore which in a tumour aboue nature varieth the cure, is either great or small. The qualitie is the fluxe, or (as some terme it) the deriuation and congestion. The matter thereof is the humour, be it either hote or cold. But in the nature of affected members foure things chiefly are to be considered, viz. their temperature, their forme or fashion, their situation or place, and their power and strength. To the which also may be added a fifth thing, which is, the facilitie (as I may terme it) and difficulty of the senses. Except you will with *Galen* comprehend and containe it vnder the last thing, which is the vertue and strength of the tumor. These things therefore also do much alter that generall order of curing, which is commonly obserued throughout all kinde of tumours aboue nature. It is therefore requisite, that in curing those tumours which chance besides nature, we remember all those declarations which are taken from them. For *Phlegmone*, or any other tumor which hath his abode in the fleshie parts of the body, is otherwise cured then those which are situated in the sinewy places: otherwise in the eye then in the knee or necke: and otherwise are the kernels in the throate cured, then those which are resident in other parts of the body. But to be short, the temperature, the fashion, the situation and the strength of the member that is affected and beset with the tumour, do change all those operations, which we shall attempt and proue in the cure: retaining still that generall inuention, which *Galen* hath taught to be alwayes taken from the disease. Therefore first we haue here decreed to set downe a common and generall method of curing of tumors aboue nature, especially of those which are caused through the influxion of humours, taking their manifestation from the affect or euill it selfe, nothing respecting the affected part. Afterward we will teach the vniuersall cure of them, but chiefly of inflammations, when as they shall

Foure things to be considered chiefly in the nature of affected members.

Libr. 2. ad Glauconem.

The order of handling that which follows.

shall degenerate and change into abscessions. Then moreouer, we will declare the particular order of curing all differences, especially of those which be simple, by whose proportion or analogie the cure of compound tumours shall easily be learned. And in the meane time, as the place shall require, we will rehearse out of *Galen* certaine things concerning the order of curing, which haue their assumption from the parts which are affected, and as it were besieged with a tumor: which thing being rightly weighed and considered, it shall be easie for any reasonable Physitian or Chyrurgian, by our certaine method and order, to cure all kind of tumours which are incident to any part of the bodie. We therefore imitating *Galen*, will draw the beginning of the cure of tumours which are said to be aboue nature, from the flowing of ingendred humours, and from the inuention of the cause of the verie euill, that so both the causes which excite the same may be preuented, and that which is alreadie in it may be taken away. Therefore by example and analogie of one difference of tumours which are caused through defluxion (for here we minde to intreate onely of them) we will vnderstand also other differences, which do grow through flowing of humours. And here we will set downe a briefe and compendious curing of one kinde of *Phlegmone*, which chanceth very often, and procureth feauers and other very dangerous euils and symptomates. But in this place, vnder the name of *Phlegmone*, our intent is not to comprehend euerie hote and flaming disposition which the Greekes call *phlogosis*, but that onely which proceedeth by the meanes of a bloudy fluxe, chiefly incident to fleshie and fat bodies, wherein is vehement paine and redneſſe appearing in the outward parts, and as it were a burning heate, a stretching out, and a striuing or thrusting, and when the euill is increased, there is sense of the pulses beating. For this inflammation with *Galen* and other Greeke Writers, as *Paulus Aetius*, and *Oribasius*, which do follow him as their best guide, we properly call *Phlegmone*. That we may therefore come to the matter it selfe, these are the verie words of *Galen*. The common ingendring of euery *Phlegmone* commeth by the influxion of bloud, and that more abundantly then was wont to happen to that member: for bloud doth flow very abundantly (sometime one or other member sending it foorth) and that part doth entertaine and receiue it, which beginneth to be affected with *Phlegmone*: but sometime that member which is afflicted doth draw it to it selfe. But the parts which send it foorth do driue out the iuyce, being either superfluous, by reason of the plentie thereof, or grieuous, because of the qualitie, or else because of both. But they which are attractiue, do draw or pull with a sickely heate or griefe. But to these are adioyned certaine helping causes, viz. the weakeneſſe and baseneſſe of the member, the fulneſſe of the conduits and passages through which the fluxe passeth, the straitneſſe also and narrowneſſe of the pores and expulsiue parts, and the inferiour places, as we haue alreadie declared. Therefore of all these, there are three inuentions of curing those tumours which haue their beginning of flowing, collected and gathered of the later sort of Chyrurgians. 1. The first is to turne away the fluxe, and preuent it altogether. 2. The second is to mitigate the griefe, and altogether to remoue that cause for the which the member entertaineth or also draweth the fluxe vnto it. 3. The

The finding out of the cause is the beginning of the cure of tumours aboue nature.

Phlegmone quid.

Galen. lib. 13. Meth. med.

The common ingendring of euery Phlegmone.

The helping causes of flux.

Three orders are set downe for the cure of those tumours which are caused through the influxion of humours.

third is, to emptie out all that humour that hath flowed in the aggrieued place.

Primus scopus. But how the first intention should be finished, *Galen* hath fitly taught, *lib. 3. Meth. med.* where he declareth vnto vs all the wayes to auert and turne away the fluxe, and the meanes to stop and inhibite *Phlegmone* which as yet remaineth in generation, writing after this manner: When humors are equally augmented amongst themselues (which the Greekes call *Plethora*) yea also when all the bodie is voide of excrements, and doth containe a mediocritie of iuycie humors, (paine and the heate of that member also wherein *Phlegmone* reigneth raising the flute) through the emission of bloud we helpe and remedie *Phlegmone* which now beginneth to rule. *Plethora* also is cured both with often bathings and with exercise, and also with much friction and rubbing. Furthermore it is cured by medicines that will digest, so that a feauer be not present, and besides all these it is helped through hunger, and a good diet, although the sicke be feuerous. But when the bodie is stuffed either with melancholie, or choler, or fleame, or with other clammie and viscous humours (which state of the bodie the Greekes call *Cacochymia*) the euacuation thereof must be laboured by a purgation, which is a fit remedie for euerie humour that reigneth. But of them we will speake more at large in their particular Chapters. Now *Antispasis*, that is, a reuulsion the contrarie way, is a common remedie against all these kinds of tumours, while the fluxe doth yet strongly preuaile, as in the beginning and increasing of the euill: but in the end of the state, and in the declination thereof, while the fluxe now remaineth and sticketh in the member, and the whole bodie is sufficiently emptied, the euacuation must be attempted, and fetched either from the affected part, or from that which is next adioyned thereunto. The second intention containeth remedies to prouoke sleepe, viz. which do mitigate paine, and also binde and preuent the fluxe. Moreouer it teacheth remedies which are able to loosen and dissolue the naturall pores, by the which the affected member is wont to be throughly purged. But the matter of all these shall be abundantly described hereafter. Now we will handle the third intention, which is perfited with such things as do euacuate the matter that exciteth the tumours from the affected place. And that matter is euacuated not onely by medicines that do euaporate and dissolue, but also by such as do repell and represse, such as the Greeks call ἀποπυστικὰ. And therefore, in the beginning of these phlegmonous tumours, and other whatsoeuer do deriue their beginning from the influxion of humors, we may rather vse repressing medicines, then those which do euaporate; except in certaine cases, of the which (saith *Guido*) *Galen* seemed to haue appointed foure. 1. The first is, when that such tumors be in cleane and pure members. 2. The second is, when the subiect thereof is venimous. 3. The third is, when the matter is thicke, and not pliable to repulsion. 4. The fourth, when it is very vehemently packed together. *Auicen* excepteth onely two cases, viz. when it happeneth in any cleane or pure part, or in any other place out of the which it is to be feared that the matter will flow to some principall part of the bodie. Some other appoint onely one case, other sixe, other ten, other nineene, other twenty three. But before we do establish any thing of this so doubtfull a case, we must know that there

Plethora quid.

Cacochymia.

Antispasis.

Secundus scopus.

Tertius scopus.

Cases in which we may not vse repelling or repressing remedies.

there be two kinds of repulsiues, both among the late Physitians and also the Arabians, that is to say, common, and proper. Common repulsiues are such as do inhibite all fluxe, keeping vnder and repressing the same, and that is done either by cooling it, or by thickning it, or else by stuffing it, that is, by reason of the thickneſſe of his substance, by shutting & occluding the pores and wayes whereby it should flow out, or else by confirming the parts affected. These things following do represſe fluxe by refrigeration and cold, Syngreene, Lettuce, *Psillium*, *Cotiledon*, that is to say, *Vmbilicus Veneris*, *Lenticula palustris*, *Caphura*. And these also do stuffe & stop the passages, *Farina* called *Volatilis*, the white of an eg, *Amylum*, *Gluten*, and the kinds of gums: to conclude, all such things as do refrigerate with ease and without biting. But those things which do confirme and roborate (I meane such as do restore the naturall temperature to the part affected) as oyle of Roses, *oleum Omphacinum*, oile of Mirtles, oile of Cammomil, *Absynthium*, Horehound, *Nux cupressi*, & such like things, which being applied do strengthen the affected part, & so do free it and defend it from imminent fluxe. But proper repulsiues are such, as when the humours do slide into some other part, do meet with the same, and do enforce them to retire againe. And these are to be vsed then when the member is growne thicke, as attractiue medicines are commonly applyed to thin tumors. Of these manie are of a cold qualitie, and many of an hote, but both sorts, that is, both hote and cold, are in operation astringent, and binding. The medicines represſing, which of nature are cold, are Vine leanes, Plantaine, Nightshade, *Dipsacos* viz. *Virga pastoris*, or *Bursa pastoris*, *Glaucium*, *Balaustium*, *Omphacium*, *Sumach*, *Terra cimolia*, commonly so called, and *Terra sigillata*, and others of that kinde. Those be the simples out of the which many compounds are made, as *Oxicratum*, the ointment of Bole, the ointment of *Galen*, and such like. But the hote repulsiues are, Alume, Cypresse nuts called *Galbulæ*, *Iuncus rotundus*, or *Odoratus*, called of the Greecians χίνα ἀνθ&, called also *Blatta bizantia*, *Lupinorum farina*, and certaine austere and sharpe wines, and many other such like things. But we will set downe the whole order of applying of repelling medicines in the beginning of fluxion, prescribed by *Guido* in two seuerall Prologues. In the beginning of all tumours which proceed from the influxe of humors, but specially of such humors as are phlegmonous, it will be auaileable to vse repulsiues, as they are called, these ten cases onely excepted, that is to say, when the tumour is in a fat member, or when it proceedeth of a venimous matter, or a substance which is very thicke, and so vnfit to be repelled: or else when the humour is vehemently packed in the affected part, and deeply also; if the tumour be inclined to suppuration, or descending from a primitiue cause, if it be in a plethoricke or full bodie, and verie weake, if it be seated next vnto a principall member: to conclude, if it happeneth with vehement griefe: for in these cases, we may better vse medicines which will mitigate the tumor and the paine, rather then such as shall repell and resist the humours. The second Prologue is after this manner: In the beginning of all tumours, but chiefly of those which are phlegmonous, common repulsiues are profitable (three causes onely excepted,) that is, if the tumour happē in those parts which are called *glāduloſa*, if they be enclined to suppuration,

Repellentia communia.

Repellentia propriè dicta.

Frigida repri-mentia.

Calida repel-lentia.

The first pro-logue of Guido in represſiue things.

Gal. 2. ad Glauconem.

The second Prologue.

tion or if they proceed of a venimous matter. And in all these cases, but especially then, when the humour doth stand, and when the fluxion consisteth, and is almost made a tumour, it is behouefull to dissolue and scatter the matter, applying to the swolne place *Diaphoretica*, not biting or sharpe, but milde and gentle, being moderatly hote and moist; but this must be done principally in the three last remembred cases, in the which we must endeuour to attract and draw the matter which is dispersed, to the head where the tumor most appeareth: and we must increase the tumour as much as we can, and so inhibite the course and fluxion of the mixed humors. Which truly we may sometime do, by vsing attractiue emplaisters, and oftentimes by fastening cupping glasses to the aggrieued place, (as *Auicen* teacheth.) Let this therefore be a generall rule of Art. In the beginning of all tumours which proceed of the influxion of humours, (those three excepted which were named a little before) onely pure repressiues are to be vsed. But in their increasing we must mingle with these repulsiues, some of those things which do dissolue and discusse. But in the state of tumors, yea and somewhat before the state, we must commixe repressiue medicines equally with discussiues: and when there is declination present, or the end of the state, we may lawfully vse onely resoluing and releasing remedies. To conclude, so long as the humour doth yet abound, we must labour to repell it, and driue it away: but if the fluxe doth still remaine, we must seeke to digest it. But if it dedendeth vpon both, that is to say, that partly something hath alreadie flowed, and cleaueth fast to the place; and partly something may yet abound and flow: then it shall be lawfull to vse commixed remedies, that is, partly those which can resolue and vnbinde, and partly those which are able to bring backe and repell. For contrarie diseases being gathered into one place together, we must vse also compound cures, as *Galen* saith. 13. *Therap.* Furthermore, all these things truly are to be vnderstood thus, as if a tumour aboue nature is to be dispatched and cured by resoluing medicines, or (that I may speake generally) by the way of resolution. But their cures, whereby we will finish all those intentions whereof we intreated before, according to their diuers matter that exciteth the tumor, shall be described and declared in their particular Chapters, as by consequence and order they shall follow.

Si tumor iam factus est.

Emplastrum. Cucurbitulæ. Artis canon generalis.

CHAP. VI.

Of the cure of abscessions generally.

Of the cure of tumors which are turned into abscessions, which they call Exiturę.

BVt if *Phlegmone*, or any other tumour doth degenerate and turne into *Abscessus*, the cure thereof in the beginning is finished and ended (as saith *Galen Libro* 2. *ad Glauconem*) by helps and remedies that do mitigate, which the Greekes call *Chalastica*, that is, by resoluing and remitting medicines: of the which nature and force is that medicine which is called of *Galen Tetrapharmacum*, being very soft, and prouoking sleepe: with the which according to the opinion of the same *Galen*, *Lib.* 13. *Therap* there must be commixed a little honie. But *Tetrapharmacum* consisteth of foure things, of the which there must be of euery one a little portion or quantitie, that is to say, of waxe, of rosin, of the gumme of the Herbe *Colophonia* which distilleth from the roote thereof, and of Bulles tallow. But in processe of time we must passe ouer vnto those

Tetrapharmacum.

thoſe things which are able to concoct and digeſt, or to ripen and bring to ſuppuration. But thoſe which are turned into another kind, that is, into another ſubſtance, and that altogether beſides nature, they are to be remoued and cured by the Art of Chyrurgerie. Moreouer, in remouing them according to the counſell of *Galen*, 14. *Therap.* it ſhall be requiſite to conſider, that among all the wayes and meanes whereby we intend to finiſh our purpoſe, we ſhould alwayes make choiſe of the beſt of them. The beſt meanes and wayes are declared and manifeſted vnto vs three manner of wayes: viz. By the ſhortneſſe of the time to cure in, by curing without paine, and chiefly by curing ſafely and without danger. Againe, that thou mayſt cure ſafely, there are three ſpeciall things diligently to be conſidered. The firſt and the chiefeſt is, that you throughly attaine to the perfection of your labour. 2. The other is, that if you cannot attaine to the ſame, yet at the leaſt, that you hurt not the ſicke. 3. The third is, that the euill or diſeaſe may not eaſily returne or come againe. By theſe conſiderations, if you will declare the beſt method of curing, you ſhall find in all theſe tumours before mentioned, when the cure is to be ended by the helpe of Chyrurgerie, and when by the force of medicines. But truly the ſtudie of Chyrurgerie in thoſe chiefly which now we do intreate of, that is, in thoſe tumors which are altogether aboue nature, doth tend to the killing and deſtroying of them, and doth wholly declare after what ſort they may be taken away. But if it cannot bring this to paſſe, the next counſell is, to transferre the euill, as we vſe to do in thoſe humors called *Hypochymata*, that is to ſay, the web in the eye. But that which is fetched from medicines, doth firſt tend vnto this end, that that which is aboue nature, may both turne into matter, and alſo into putrifaction: but this he appointeth in the ſecond place. Theſe things hath *Galen*. Therefore when the parts which are troubled with *Phlegmone* do beate very vehemently, ſo that now you begin to deſpaire of their cure (they being not yet mattered) all the ancient Chyrurgions (ſaith *Galen* 4. *Therap.*) do miniſter and apply ſuch kind of medicines which do ſpeedily procure matter: but before it be mattered, they vſe none at all. And although thoſe parts that are annoyed with *Phlegmone* be annointed with a Cataplaſme, which may both heate them, and moiſten them, & bring them to ſuppuration, yet the ſame doth not appeare by the firſt reaſon or way, that is, as the remedy and helpe of the euill, but as the mitigating & eaſing of the ſymptomat, that is, of the paine. For truly the remedies of *Phlegmone* are of a drying nature. And the ſame *Galen* addeth moreouer a litle after, that a ſhort and compendious cure of thoſe parts which are affected with *Phlegmone* is quickly ended and diſpatched, by remedies which can dry & vnbind, which truly doth altogether either remoue the affect, or elſe, if they leaue behind them ſome litle relict, which may turne to ſuppuration, it is needfull to vſe ſome other ſharpe medicine, which is able to bring out the matter; or if the skin about the tumour be thin, and you willing ſpeedily to eaſe the ſicke, you muſt neceſſarily vſe inciſion. And this truly is that which *Auicen* ſaith, namely, that the cure of an Apoſteme (as it is an Apoſteme) is the extraction and drawing out the ſtrange matter which raiſeth the Apoſteme. But to declare the remedies of them, wherewith it is expedient to draw and moue the matter, and to manifeſt other things alſo which

The beſt order of curing is declared three wayes.

1.
2.
3.

Ex lib. 4. Therap. meth.

Auicen.

When abſceſſiõs are chiefly to be cut and opened.

we ſpoke of a litle before, they are to be ſought out of their particular Chapters. Furthermore, the abſceſſion being alreadie come to ſuppuration, or changed, or ſtrongly compact together, if the matter or any other baggage therein contained, be not diſcuſſed and diſſolued, or if in conuenient ſeaſon, and while the occaſion is offered, it be not opened without the labour of the hand, you muſt make an iſſue by inciſion for that which otherwiſe will not be digeſted. But this thing chiefly is to be proued and enterpriſed, if there be feared any eroſion or gnawing to enſue, or any other danger; yea if neceſſity cõmandeth, it ought ſtraight way to be opened, and the matter to be drawne out as ſpeedily and ſafely as is poſſible, for the cauſe before alledged. But apertion is made more ſafely with a knife, then with burning and ſcalding medicines, if nothing do hinder it. And commonly ſuch kind of phlegmonous tumours, being alreadie turned into ſuppuration, are opened with a penknife. Moreouer apertion, or the letting out of the matter, ought to be done, by reaſon both of the abundance of matter there gathered together, & alſo of the affected place. But if any part of the mattered member ſhall ſeeme to be putrified and rotten, it is needfull to cut it off, to the forme or likeneſſe of an Oliue or Mirtle leafe, that it may heale the more eaſily. But *Galen* commandeth to auoid and eſchue alwayes any great inciſions, who did heale ſuch kind of mattered humors, both in the parts about the priuie members, and alſo in the armeholes, onely by inciſion (as he vſed chiefly to do) and by medicines that were of force to dry. Now if need ſometime required to cut off ſomwhat by reaſon of the plenty, not only of matter but alſo of the corrupted parts, he vſed no greater inciſion then the breadth of a great Mirtle leafe. For by wide & large ſections, when the member is brought vnto a ſcarre, beſides that it is made moſt filthie, it alſo becometh very weake, and vnfit to moue withall. But theſe kinds of ſections imitating the Mirtle leafe, are vſed in thoſe tumours eſpecially which do matter vnder the armeholes and about the ſhare. And in thoſe truly the lengths of them muſt be drawne ouerthwart, & not by the ſtraightneſſe or rightneſſe of the leg or body: for when we bend the leg or the arme, the skin naturally doth apply it ſelf with it. But in other places we alwayes almoſt do vſe ſimple inciſions. Now in this apertion or inciſion ſeuen things are eſpecially to be conſidered, according to the conſent of the later Chyrurgions. Firſt, that inciſion be made in that place wherein the matter is contained. The ſecond, that inciſion be made in the neather place of the tumour, that the mattered and corrupted filth may the better be voided out. The third, that it be made next the wrinkles & proceſſe of the muſcles. The fourth, that you do auoid and eſchue the ſinewes, veines, and arteries, as much as you can. The fifth, that all the matter be not brought out abundantly all at once, eſpecially in great abſceſſions, leſt by too much emptying out, and that ſuddenly, and alſo by the reſolution of the ſpirits, there follow weakneſſe and faintneſſe. The ſixt, that the place be handled and touched very gently, and with as litle paine as can be. The ſeuenth, that apertion being made, the place be wiped very cleane, and filled with fleſh againe, and brought to a ſcarre, after the manner of vlcers. But *Galen lib.* 13. *Therap.* warneth vs chiefly to marke two things in the inciſion of a ſuppurated abſceſſion, writing after this manner. 1. If at any time the abundance of matter exceedeth and ouercometh

A mattered tumor is more ſafely opened with a knife then with burning medicins. Lib. 13. *Ther.*

A ſection imitating the Olive or Mirtle leafe.

Great hurt cõmeth by wide inciſions.

Why mattered impoſtumes about the ſhare muſt be cut ouerthwart.

Seuen things to be diligẽtly marked in the apertion of an abſceſſion alreadie mattered.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.

Two things conſidered of Galen in the apertion of a mattered tumor.

cometh your medicines, neither do they seeme vnto you to be able to digest all the corruption: it is requisite to make an issue by incision for that matter which yeeldeth not to digestion, in that place especially where it is most high. 2. Moreouer in the incision also of another abscession which pertaineth vnto fluxe, and yet respecting both the kinds, you must not forget to cut and lanch that which is alreadie come to suppuration: and then applie some medicine thereto which can drie it without erosion or gnawing. But after the impostume is opened, you must vse remedies that be of a scowring and cleansing nature, and fit to purge the filthie vlcer, as are soft flaxe, or lint, and soft linnen, Emplaisters and Ointments which shall be spoken of in their particular Chapters. At the first time *Guido* did apply the yolke of an egge being thickened with Alume *Zuccarinum*, which medicine *Gulielmus à Saliceto* did also vse. But afterward you must come to the applying of *Mel Rosarum*, and *Mundificatiũ ex Apio*: and last of all, to *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, and *Ægyptiacum*, if the matter so require. But aboue, without you must minister ointments, as *Basilicon*, *Diachylon*, and *Diaphœnicon*, and other of that sort, which are appointed for vlcers. For when you haue cut an abscession, it must be cured after the manner of other vlcers. *Galen lib* 13. *Therap.* after the skin was cut in those phlegmonous tumours which chance about the armeholes and priuie members, he did fill the affected place with that medicine which the Greeks call *Manna*, which is, *Thuris purgamentum*: for this hath a light astriction or binding. But you must also (saith he) first asswage the lanced member, (as much as you see cause, first with foments, then with Cataplasmes, and straight after with some moistning medicine, or else with such as do not much drie, (all these being applied outwardly vpon the vlcer.) For in the very vlcer, both of *Manna* (as hath bene said) and also of those remedies which are taught and declared by vsing of lint, those things are first to be layed on which do moue and prouoke the matter, and afterward those that do purge and cleanse. After the applying of which things, if there remaine any hollownesse, you must minister such things as may fill the same: but if it fall out otherwise, you must vse things to bring it to a scarre. Moreouer if the sicke will not suffer incision to be made, either with some bright instrument, or with a penknife, by reason of the softnesse thereof, then the apertion is to be finished with burning medicines. For this purpose *Auicen* praiseth the seed of Line or Flaxe, leauen and Doues doung, which you may make more excellent and forcible, if you mingle them with a little soft Sope, or with the filthinesse that cometh of Mustard seed. But the medicine which is called *Ruptorium*, or *Causticum*, which is made of Lime and Sope, in this matter is most excellent, and obtaineth greatest fame. Hitherto haue we spoken of tumours aboue nature generally: now it followeth that we intreate of the particular differences of them as they follow in order.

Detergentiæ.

Ointments are to be applyed aboue a tumor that is opened.

The vse of Manna and Thus after the incision, & the vertue of thẽ.

The launced part must first be eased.

What things are to be layed to an vlcer.

Auicennas in fine tract. 1. Fen. 3. lib. 4.

CHAP. VII.

Of a true Phlegmone, and other tumours ingendred of bloud.

HAuing spoken generally of those tumours which consist aboue nature, it is conuenient that we intreate particularly of the differences of euerie

one of them, taking our exordium from *Phlegmone*, as a tumor which chanceth very often, and exciteth (as *Galen* saith) very dangerous symptomates. Therefore *Galen lib. 1. de morbu & symptomatis*, taketh *Phlegmone* two kind of waies. One way generally, after the manner of the ancient writers which were before his time, that is, for euery kind of inflammation of any member, or for any heating or burning, that is, for euery hote and flaming disposition, which the Greeks do properly call φλόγωσις. Another way, both with *Galen* and other late writers, it is taken for a true and pure tumour ingendred of bloud that is the best, and that also which retaineth but meane thicknesse or grosnesse. And this truly borroweth his name of the kind thereof, and of the Latins it is called diuersly, by reason of the kind, *Inflammatio*, of the Greeks absolutely, *Phlegmone*. But this after the mind and consent of the later sort is two fold, *videlicet*, *Vera & non vera*. A true *Phlegmone* is caused of good bloud, which is the best both in quality and substance or essence, but yet more abundant then naturally should happen to the member. But *Phlegmone* which is not a true & lawfull *Phlegmone*, is caused of naughtie and vnnaturall bloud. For bloud is a hote & moist humour, proceeding from a more temperate part of the very *Chylus*, which is a certaine iuyce that cometh of the meate in the first digestion; and it is two wayes, naturall and not naturall. Naturall bloud is a hote and moist humour, slender, and meane in substance, but of a very red colour; in sauour and taste, it is sweet, gentle and good. But that bloud is said to be vnnaturall, which differeth or digresseth from the former description of bloud, yet notwithstanding containing it selfe within the bounds of his breadth and largenesse; which if it doth once passe, it is no more to be called a bloud, but some other humor. But bloud doth chance to degenerate from his proper nature two kinde of wayes. The first way is (as they terme it) in it selfe, that is, in respect of it selfe, (his proper substance being changed without any commixion with another.) The second way is by another, or in respect of another; and yet it consisteth two wayes by it selfe, that is to say, either because the substance thereof is more thicke or more thinne then it ought to be; or because it is burnt, and that which is thinnest of it, is turned into melancholy; but that which is thicke into choler, and that without separation. But in respect of another, bloud becometh not vnnaturall, when as another humor is mingled withall. Which may happen many wayes, according as the diuers kinds of choler, fleame or melancholy may be commixed with bloud. By which thing it is manifest, that of bloud there are engendred foure kinds or differences of tumors aboue nature. First, of naturall and good bloud there is engendred a true *Phlegmone*: but of bloud which is corrupted through the admixion of other humours, there do grow three differences of that kind of *Phlegmone*, which is neither true nor lawfull; because that the three other humours, that is to say, fleame, choler and melancholy, may be easily commixed with bloud. Therefore if melancholy be mixed with bloud, it is called *Phlegmone Scirrhodes*: if choler (which then is conflated of both kinds) it is called *Phlegmone Erysipelatodes*: if fleame, it is termed *Phlegmone Ædematodes*. But of bloud, which is filthy and corrupted through the adustion and corruption of his owne proper substance, according to the manner of the thinnesse or thicknesse thereof, there are ingendred either Carbun-

Phlegmone taken two waies.

Phlegmone taken for Phlogosis.

Phlegmone also is taken for an inflammation coming of the best bloud.

Phlegmone duplex.
1. Vera.
2. Non vera.

Sanguis quid.

Sanguis quotuplex.

Bloud doth degenerate from his proper nature two waies

Foure differences of tumors caused of bloud.

Carbuncles, which are called of the Greeks *Anthraces*: or elſe *Gangræna* and *Sphacelus*, which we call Cancres. Of the which diſeaſes we will ſpeake hereafter in that which followeth.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Cauſes, Signes, and iudgements of Phlegmone.

THere are three cauſes of *Phlegmone*, as there are alſo of all other tumors beſides nature, which do chance through the defluxion of humors, *videlicet*: 1. *Primitiua*, which we call both *prægreſſa* and *euidens*: 2. *Antecedens*. 3. *Coniuncta*. Euident cauſes of inflammation are outward cauſes, as, beating, or belking, diruption, conuulſion, breaking or burſting a wound, a voluntary vlcer, a looſeneſſe, and other of that ſort which do prouoke fluxe by exciting paine in the affected member. The antecedent cauſe, is abundance of bloud, which is good and faultleſſe, as when the veines touch nigh together to the moderate repletion of the Arteries. For then is bloud prouoked (as a certaine ſuperfluous thing) to flow and deſcend to ſome member which is either weake or immoderately hote, or affected with paine, where it is thruſt, and abideth compact together, vnleſſe it be by and by repreſſed from the beginning, as we haue ſaid before in our generall Chapter: to the which we muſt therefore haue continuall acceſſe, that we may attaine to a more perfect knowledge of particular tumors, whereof we now intreate. The coniunct or continent cauſe, is the bloud it ſelfe, which is alreadie ſtuffed in the affected place. The marks or tokens of *Phlegmone* are the tumor, or the augmenting of the member aboue the naturall habite, vehement heate, ſo that the member ſeemeth to burne. There appeareth redneſſe in the outward parts, ſuch as is wont to come through bathes which are made hote either with the fire, or by ſome other meanes. There is extreme paine, vnleſſe the member hath altogether a dull ſenſe. There is alſo grieuous beating, and pulſation very vehement inwardly. There is alſo extenſion or ſtretching out of the member, which not onely we alone haue found out, but alſo the patient himſelfe may perceiue by his owne feeling. There is furthermore reſiſtance of the member if it be touched after the manner of extenſion. There be alſo other ſuch like ſignes, which do teſtifie that abundance of bloud is preſent in ſome part of the body. *Phlegmone* hath foure times 1. the beginning, 2. the increaſing, 3. the ſtate, and 4 the declination: except at the leaſtway, fluxe hath recourſe within, or it be ſtraightway repreſſed by repulſiue medicines. But when it ſhall lightly paſſe ouer theſe foure times, it is needfull either to reſolue and draw out the matter of it, or to bring it to ſuppuration, or elſe to putrifie and rot it, or to turne it into a *Schirrhus* and ſtonie hardneſſe. And truly the ſignes of all theſe are to be ſought out of the Chapter that intreateth generally of them: where the markes of all times, and the meanes to finiſh tumors aboue nature (which they commonly call *Apoſtema*) be declared and expreſſed. But *Phlegmone* is accompanied with many other euill ſymptomates which do alter and change the order of his cure, as are, vehement paine, which doth greatly occupie the ſenſible part, recourſe of the matter from the kernels (which the Greeks call *Adenæ*, and commonly they be called *Emunctoria*) to the internall parts. Alſo mortification of the affected

The cauſes of Phlegmone.

1. *Prægreſſa.*

2. *Antecedens.*

3. *Coniuncta.*

Signes of a true Phlegmone.

Foure times of Phlegmone.

Iudicia.

Symptomates which hinder the cure of Phlegmone.

affected member (which they call *corruptio esthiomenica*) proceeding of too much refrigeration, & of a strong compacting or stuffing of the matter which did cause the inflammation. Also a stony and almost an indissoluble hardnesse, commonly called *Sclirotica*, which proceedeth through a certaine ouerthwart and vntoward dissolution of the thinner humor. Wherefore in curing tumors which consist aboue nature, we must diligently oftentimes mark and consider how farre we meane to proceed in the matter, and what accidents may chance vnlooked for, that so we may chiefly insist and be occupied about that most, which appeareth and is most vrgent: which *Galen* hath admonished vs of very well *lib.* 2. *ad Glauconem*, and 13. *Therap.* speaking after this sort: In diseases whose resolution is difficult and hard, it is to be feared lest some remnant of them be left behind which is very hard. Wherefore in euery resolution, we must diligently consider into what thing euery tumour, whose cure is once begun, may be changed. For that cure which is attempted by medicines that do mightily drie, doth leaue very hard knobs, which are hard to remoue. Hitherto *Galen*. But the time requireth, that we now declare the cure of *Phlegmone*.

CHAP. IX.

The order of curing the Phlegmone caused of the defluxion of humours affecting the outward parts of the bodie.

The method of curing Phlegmone which is yet in generation.

SEeing that *Inflammatio*, which is called of the Greeks properly *Phlegmone*, doth ingender and grow through the influxion of bloud, happening more abundantly to some member then nature requireth, and fluxe also (*Phlegmone* being yet but beginning to reigne) is partly in begetting, and partly begotten alreadie, there must needs truly be a double consideration in the cure of the *Phlegmone* being yet but beginning, that is to say, to emptie out and auoide that which hath flowed alreadie, & to hinder & stop that which is now a flowing. Moreouer we shall stop flux, if we shall draw backe and repell the humor that floweth, if we will adde strength to the afflicted member, and if we shall seeke to remoue that which causeth the fluxe. We shall draw it backe, and bring it into a contrarie defluxion of the other humors, by bloudletting, if strength and age will suffer it; but if not, we shall do it by applying cupping glasses, or by vsing bindings and frictions, and by heating those parts that haue a direct passage to the affected part. We shall bring backe and repell fluxe, by ministring those medicines which are able to driue and turne the fluxe another way. We shall also remoue the causes that do bring or fetch defluxion to the member alreadie infected with *Phlegmone*, by confirming and strengthening the member, if it be weake, by vsing astriction if it be too loose, by cooling it if be too hot, as it is wont to be, by easing the paine if it be vehement, & by emptying the whole body with bloudletting, if it doth abound with bloud, and if it sendeth infection to the members: of al which things we will speake by and by. But we do empty out and auoid that which is flowed alreadie, and hath gotten it selfe into the affected part, not onely by those medicines which do digest, that is, which do discusse & dissolue, but also by those remedies which do bind together

By what meanes the fluxe is staied.

1. *Retractio.*

2. *Repulsio.*

3. *Causæ summotio.*

Vacuation of that which is flowed already Gal. Ther. 13.

together and refrigerate. And truly in Phlegmonous tumors now beginning, we muſt rather vſe (ſaith *Galen*) cooling and aſtrictiue medicines, then thoſe which do concoct and digeſt; and ſo much the rather, if that which floweth be not of a thicke ſubſtance. But if bloud be greatly compact together in that part which *Phlegmone* hath caught and taken vp, you muſt not apply any longer repercuſſiue remedies, as we ſaid before, but then it is conuenient to vſe thoſe which can digeſt. Alſo in an old and inueterate inflammation, which after the euacuation of the whole bodie, and ſome other fit cure, hath left behind it a certaine hardneſſe & blackneſſe in the mẽber: it is not vnprofitable (*Galen* alſo affirming the ſame) to take away the bloud by ſcarification. *Scarificatio.*

And theſe things haue we ſpoken briefly and by a generall method, concerning the cure of inflammations that do happen through the defluxion of humours, which the Greeks properly are wont to call *Phlegmone:* which things may be ſufficient to content a reaſonable Phyſition, and one which is exerciſed in this kind of ſtudie. But becauſe we haue taken in hand to write theſe things for the practitioners of Chyrurgerie, and not for the learned only, it ſhall not be amiſſe, neither any thing from our purpoſe, if after this generall and compendious method, we ſet downe more particularly thoſe things which not onely the ancient Phyſitions, but alſo the later ſort of Chyrurgians haue left behind them in writing. Therefore aboue the generall rule, as they terme it, the Chyrurgians of our age are wont to reduce the order of curing *Phlegmone*, vnto foure branches, or particular intentions: that is to ſay, into a iuſt obſeruation of a good diet. 2. the ſtopping of fluxe, or the turning away of the matter which went before, 3. the emptying out of the humour, which hath already entertained himſelfe in the member (which they call *Materia coniuncta.*) 4. and the correcting or amending of the ſymptomates. *Foure intentions in the cure of Phlegmone.*

The firſt intention therefore is made perfect by the due vſing or adminiſtration of ſixe things commonly called vnnaturall things, and by the vſing of thoſe things alſo which are ſaid to be annexed vnto them. And theſe things which are ſixe in number, called of the Phyſitions *Res non naturales*, (as hath bene declared from the beginning of this treatiſe) are, the aire, meate and drinke, mouing and reſt, ſleeping and watching, emptying and filling, the affections of the minde or the accidents. All which things (becauſe *Phlegmone* doth commonly prouoke feuers) ought to pertaine vnto coldneſſe and moderate moiſtneſſe. For which cauſes we haue thought good to ſet downe theſe precepts following. Let the ſicke be in a pure and cleare aire, and that ſomewhat cold. Let him keepe a thin diet, cold and moderately moiſt. Let him drinke ſmall Ale, or Beere, or other ſmall drinkes. But if a vehement feauer ſhall haue any acceſſe (which is wont often to happen) let him alrogether abſtaine from wine. Let him not exerciſe or moue that member which is beſet with *Phlegmone*. Let him be quiet as much as he can, eſpecially if there be very great abundance of humours in the bodie. Let him keepe a meaſure in ſleeping and watching: and let him ſhun ſleeping on the day time, ſpecially about noone. Let him diligently beware of drũkenneſſe & gluttonie. Let the belley be alwayes kept ſoft and ſoluble, and now and then let it be waſhed with Cliſters if need require. Let him flie anger, cryings out, & wrath, as deadly enemies. Let him abſtaine from venereous acts as a mortall foe. *The firſt intention is an order in diet.* *Res non naturales.* *Aer.* *Cibus.* *Potus.* *Motus.* *Quies.* *Somnus.* *Repletio.* *Inanitio.* *Animi pathemata.* *Venus.*

The

2. *The auersion of the fluxe is the second intention.* — *A veine is alwaies to be cut directly.*

The second order in curing *Phlegmone*, which is the turning away of the fluxe, is dispatched by letting of bloud, if strength and age do suffer. But in all members of the bodie, whether you intend to repell, that is, to draw backe againe another way, or to turne it from the place at the side, either straight ouer against the place, or directly forth, which is called in Greeke κατεσκευη, a veine must alwayes be cut, though there be great abundance: but directly, the right sides do answer to the right parts, and the left to the left. Therefore if *Ophthalmia* doth annoy the right eye, or the squinancie doth affect the right side of the throate, the shoulder veine, or some other in his place (if that doth not appeare) must be cut in the right arme, by and by at the beginning of the fluxe. But if a humor doth flow in the knee, you must cut a veine in the elbow, either the outward or the middle veine, except you meane to scarifie the other leg, or breake the veine asunder in it, as *Galen* counselleth in a certaine place. Therefore the election of cutting any veine, and the inuention to turne the humour another way, which *Hippocrates* calleth *Antispasis*, is manifested and declared by the affected part, and by the place or situation of the member that is to be cured, as *Galen* 13. and 14. *Meth. med.* and in other places, doth oftentimes teach. But that body which *Phlegmone* occupieth, not onely when it is plethoricke and full of humors, but also when the greatnesse of the euill doth exhort vs to it, though it be but meanly stuffed with humors, we must emptie and euacuate by letting of bloud, if we will follow the aduice of *Galen*, who *lib. 13 meth. med.* commandeth that it should be so, writing thus: Paine, and truly the heate of the member wherein *Phlegmone* hath setled himselfe, although the whole body be voide of excrements, do happen by reason of the fluxe. But then it is expedient to do it but meanly, that is, to draw forth bloud, and to make euacuation no further then it shall best agree with the age and nature of the patient. Further, you must haue consideration both of the time of the yeare, of the nature of the aire wherein the sicke remaineth, and also of the former custome of the man. Also these do profit not a little to draw backe the bloud that floweth to the affected part, walkings, frictions, and binding of the opposite member, but first chiefly the detraction of bloud, as hath bene said. Therefore if *Phlegmone* appeareth in the hands, the legs are to be exercised, bound & rubbed; if in the legs, the hands must be also so vsed. But these things belong more vnto the Physition then to the Chyrurgion.

The choice of bloudletting is declared of the afflicted part.

3. *The third intention is the euacuation of the humour already compact in the member.*

Repressiues in the increase, must exceed digestiues.

We now dispatch the third scope or intention, in the beginnings of *Phlegmone*, onely by applying repulsiue things to that member which laboreth with the inflammation, excepting these cases before rehearsed. For that which is filled with corrupted water, as *Galen* saith, is emptied out, not onely by those medicines which digest, but also by those which do binde and refrigerate: as be those which are called *repellentia* and *regerentia*, repulsiues and restrictiues. But in the increasing thereof at the present intention, that is, to emptie that which is flowed, and also to stop, that no more doth abound, you must ioyne digestiue medicines with repressiues, but yet so, that the abundance and strength of the one may preuaile with the other. But in the state they must equally be commixed together by euen portions, and somewhat more milde, in mitigating, remedies must be applied, if paine be vehement. But in the end and declination

declination of the state, it is requisite to euacuate by digestiues only that which is compact together, if that *Phlegmone* must be ended by resolution or discussion. If truly it doth turne into absceſſions, and that it cannot be that the gathering together and eruption of the matter should be letted, it shall be lawfull to vse medicines which can both matter, open, and cleanse the vlcer. Furthermore, those remedies which do drie, are profitable in the end of both the euils, that is, of *Phlegmone* and *Abscessus*, for they do altogether consume that which remaineth of the humour: but when incision is made in the absceſſion, which is alreadie come to suppuration, you must lay on such a medicine as may drie without erosion or gnawing, as hereafter shall be shewed. But in those phlegmonous tumours which now are but in the beginning, the most apt remedie to repell and driue backe, is *Oxicraton* in *Galen*, which the Latines call *Posca aquosa*. It is a mixture of water and vineger, so tempered together that it may be drunke: and then a sponge being wet and laid in this *Oxicratum*, must be applied to that part where *Phlegmone* is. But in stead of *Oxicratum*, by the counsell of *Galen*, we may take sharpe wine, or apply cold things onely to the parts which are about the sinewes. These are the words of *Galen*: In those parts which are about the sinewes, it shall be sufficient in the beginning of *Phlegmone*, to lay on a sponge dipped either in cold water, wherewith a little vineger is mingled, or in water onely, or in sharpe and soure wine. For the same purpose also this Cataplasme of the same *Galen* is very effectuall, made of Syngreene and the rindes of Pomegranates sodden in wine of *Rhu*, that is, *Sumach* and *Polenta*. This by restraining doth repell that which floweth, and by drying doth emptie out that which is contained in the tumor; and both wayes doth strengthen and corroborate the affected parts. The remedie hath bene described of the latter sort of *Auicen* after this sort as followeth, ℞. of the iuyce of Syngreene ℔ j. of wine that is thicke of substance, & sharpe in taste, ℔ ß. of Barley meale one quart, of the rind of Pomegranats, and *Sumach* powdered, ana. ℥. ß. boyle them, and make an ointment. There is also another which greatly auaileth for the same purpose, inuented of *Haly Abbas*: ℞. of *Santalum*, white and red, ana. ℥. iij. of *Memitha*, which is called *Glaucium*, ℥ ij. of *Terra cimolia*, and Bolearmoniacke, ana. ℥. j. ß. Let all be brayed into very fine floure or powder, and well searced, then dissolue them in the iuyce of Syngreene, or Purslaine, or Lettuce, & make a Liniment. Another also in the beginning of Phlegmonous inflammations, very common and much vsed, which is verie profitable for greene wounds, and bruses taken lately. It is made of the white of an egge, of oile of Roses, and of the distilled water of Roses, that is, of Rose water, wherein you must wet fine clothes, and lay them to the inflamed member, and let them be changed often. But there are many other medicines both simple and compound, which do profit in the beginning of *Phlegmone* to restraine and repell fluxe, which are to be sought out of other Authors which haue written of this thing. But these shall content vs for this time.

If Phlegmone do turne into absceſſions.

Repulsiues are to be vsed in the beginning of Phlegmone.

Oxicratum.

Lib. 13. Method. medendi.

Galeni Cataplasma, lib. 2. ad Glauc.

Fren. 3. lib. 4. tract. 1. cap. 3.

Haly Abbas Linimentum.

Aliud.

Among the remedies which in the increase of *Phlegmone*, being outwardly applied, do greatly helpe, oile of Roses is maruellously effectuall, (the Greekes call it *Rhodium*.) For this doth partly draw backe, & partly doth digest through the

Remedies to be vsed in the increasing of Phlegmone.

the vapour: bec auſe it perfectly holdeth a middle nature betweene the oyle and the Roſes. Therefore in oyle of Roſes there is a certaine aſtriction, which cannot (ſaith *Galen*) ouergo the weake parts of the tumour: but when they haue pierced ſomewhat deeper, it begianeth then to worke outwardly according to the ſtrength, both to thruſt together, to draw into one place, and to thicken greatly; whereby it commeth to paſſe, that in the augmenting of Phlegmonous tumours, oyle of Roſes is a moſt excellent and readie helpe. In the augmenting of *Phlegmone* there is another in *Auicen* very profitable. ℞. of the leaues of Mallowes, M. j. of Wormewood, Roſes, ana. ℥. ß. of Barley meale, ℥. j. oyle of Cammomill, quart. ß. Seeth them, and bray them together, and bring them to the faſhion of a ſoft Emplaiſter. Another of the ſame. ℞. of wine boyled either to the halfe or third part, (the one we call *Sapa*, the other *Defrutum*) quart. j. Roſe water, and Vineger, ana. quart. ß. Saffron. ℥. ij. Let them be a little heat ouer a ſoft fire, then ſtraine them, and dip a cloth in the liquor of that decoction, which you muſt apply to the phlegmonous member after the manner of an Epitheme. Moreouer ſuch kinds of remedies which are vſed in the increaſing of the inflammation, and haue their power and vertue commixed together of repreſſiue and digeſtiue medicines, ought ſeldomer to be remoued and changed, then thoſe which repell the matter, being miniſtred in the beginning of *Phlegmone*.

Lib. 3. de ſimp. medic.

Oile of Roſes a preſent remedie in the increaſe of Phlegmone.

Aëtius, in the vigor or ſtate of *Phlegmone*, and when there is vehement paine felt, hath ſet downe theſe remedies: as Mallowes mingled with a little bread, and with oyle of Roſes. Alſo Melilot boyled in the liquor called *Paſſum*, and applied with a little bread: of the like vertue (ſaith he) are Dates ſodden in *Paſſum*, and mingled with the bread and oyle of Roſes. Another alſo which digeſteth through breathing in the vigour of *Phlegmone* very effectuall. ℞. Pellitorie of the wall, Mallowes, ana. M. j, fine branne, the floure of meale, ana. pug. j. Fenugreeke, Dill, ana, ℥ ß. oyle of Cammomill, quart. ß. Let them be boiled in wine, and brayed together till they be well incorporated, and make an Emplaiſter. Another taken out of *Galen*, *lib.* 13. *Therap.* ℞. of the crummes of bread made of corne, ℔ j. ſteepe it in hote water the ſpace of one houre, then ſtraine it, and commixe therewith of the beſt honie, quart. j. and make it to the forme of a Cataplaſme. This doth diſſolue and mitigate paine. *Auicen* counſelleth to miniſter in the vigour of *Phlegmone*, *Vnguentum Baſilicon*, and that which is made of the iuyces thereof, called *Diachylon*: but the one is good to mollifie, the other to ripen and bring to matter; although notwithſtanding both of them do carrie with them a digeſting qualitie But theſe and other ſuch remedies, which are miniſtred to diſſolue that which is alreadie flowed, and to eaſe paine, becauſe they are of a verie moiſt nature, muſt be changed verie ſeldome. Furthermore, when as by the remedies before mentioned, the humour which is fallen into the member that is troubled with *Phlegmone*, is diſſolued and diſcuſſed, and the tumour together with the extention thereof is diminiſhed, and the griefe ſomewhat aſſwaged, then it is to be iudged that the diclination of the inflammation is at hand, at which time you muſt vſe onely diſcuſſiue things, as are wild Mallowes bruſed and annointed, Raiſins (the kernels being taken out) applyed with bread and a little honie, and

What things do helpe in the ſtate of Phlegmone.

Emplaſtrum Galeni.

What remedies muſt be vſed in the declination of Phlegmone.

Barley

Barley meale vſed alſo with honie. Alſo moiſt wooll, flaxe, a ſponge or ſome ſuch like thing, wet in hote wine, then ſtrained or wringed, you muſt miniſter it: for all theſe haue an excellent diſcuſſiue nature, and prouoke not paine. But if by reaſon of the ſtubburnneſſe & hardneſſe of the diſeaſe, the affected place doth containe too great plentie of matter, and that ſuch as reſiſteth reſolution, you muſt not by and by (as ſome do) breake forth vnto Chyrurgerie, that is, to make inciſion, or to ſcald it and burne it; but you muſt labour by all meanes poſſible, that the humour collected together may be digeſted and diſſolued by ſuch medicines as can worke this effect. For it is conuenient to attempt the digeſtion of the humor by ſuch medicines as can profit in that caſe, before you begin to cut the inflammation. But if the tumour will not yeeld to digeſtiue medicines, and no further hope doth remaine to diſſolue that which is compact in it, but the matter ſeemeth rather to pertaine vnto ſuppuration, you muſt come vnto thoſe things which can ripen and procure matter. And we hope that a tumour (althought it degenerate into abſceſſion) may through the vapour be digeſted, if the matter which exciteth the ſame be thinne and little, and fit to be reſolued: or if it remaineth not any thing deepely within, and the skinne of the affected member be thinne. But if the humour be plentifull, and thicke, and lurketh verie deepe, and the skin alſo thicke, exhalation or reſolution is not to be hoped for. Therefore you muſt come vnto thoſe helpes which can ripen and prouoke matter, of which ſort is this Cataplaſme, made of wheate meale, ſodden moderatly in water and oyle: for this (*Galen* being our author) doth ſpeedily bring to ſuppuration thoſe inflammations which will not yeeld to digeſtion, and it hath alſo a heate like vnto our heate, that is, temperate and meane; and by reaſon of the meale and oyle (which haue a certaine clammie and glewiſh propertie, whereby in ſtopping the pores they hinder the naturall heate of the member) it hath the force of an Emplaiſter: which two things are moſt required in medicines that do ripen and moue matter. There are ſome which do mingle with this Cataplaſme a little Saffron to colour it. But if a tumour, by reaſon of the thicke and viſcious humours which are ſtuffed in it be hardly brought vnto ſuppuration, this Cataplaſme doth notably helpe which is made of the decoction of the rootes of *Althæa*, and of figs that be ſweete and fat, which do reſemble the thickneſſe of honie, commixed with wheate meale, as followeth. ℞. of the foreſaid decoction, ℔ j of wheate meale ℔. ß. boile them throughly together, and bring them into the forme of a Cataplaſme. But if in ſtead of wheate meale, you vſe barley meale, or tible bread, which the Greekes call συγκόμισον, it more auaileth to diſcuſſe the inflammation then to bring it to ſuppuration, as *Galen* hath noted *lib. 2 ad Glauc.* There is another alſo exceedingly profitable to prouoke matter in the declination of *Phlegmone*, which is commonly vſed of the common Chyrurgians. ℞. of the barke of the roote of Marſh mallowes, that is, of *Althæa*, of the roote of Lillies, Grownſwell, called in Greek τριγάρον, leaues of Mallowes, ana. M j. wheate meale quart j. of the meale of Flaxe ſeed ℥. j. freſh ſwines greaſe, ℔. ß. Seeth the herbes in ſufficient quantitie of water, and bray them with the other things in a mortar, and make a Cataplaſme. But if (when the matter is gathered together and diſpatched) the abſceſſion where into *Phlegmone* is turned, doth not open

What reſolution is to be hoped for.

Plus mouentia.

Lib. 2. ad Glaucon.

Haly Abbas remembreth this Cataplaſme.

A common Cataplaſme.

open of the owne accord (the members now being free from the inflammation) you must go about to euacuate and emptie out the matter which cannot be digested, with a penknife, or some other instrument, or by some drawing medicine. Then you must bring the vlcer vnto a scarre, like vnto other vlcers, which you must do by cleansing the sore, by filling it with flesh, and ioyning it together, which at the last will cause a scarre. Moreouer, if the matter be thicke which bringeth foorth the tumour, and very disobedient to resolution and digestion, and be exceedingly compact in the passages of the flesh (as is wont to be in continuall inflammations which be naughtily cured, the thinne part of the humour being resolued, and the thicke part remaining still in the passages) then you must not be afraid to vse scarification, especially (as *Galen* admonisheth, *lib. 2. ad Glauconem*) when hardnesse, blewnesse, or blacknesse do appeare.

Symptomatis correctio.

The fourth inuention, which in the cure of *Phlegmone* was propounded to the Chyrurgian or Physition, is the correction and the remouing of the symptomates which do so suddenly come vpon the inflammation, and those are paine, recourse of the matter whereof the tumour is raised to the outward parts, putrifaction and corruption of the mattery member, and as it were a certaine stonie hardnes remaining behind, by reason of some mightie drying and digesting medicines. Therefore if vehement paine shall happen to the tumour, you must labour by all meanes possible to mitigate and aswage the same: becausse (besides that it weakeneth the strength, and hindereth the lawfull duties of the bodie) it prouoketh fluxe, and draweth bloud vnto it. If paine therefore do grieuously torment in *Phlegmone*, straightway you must lay on those medicines which can lenifie and ease the vehemencie of the paine without any hurt, as is this of *Galen*, which was made of the licour called *Passum*, of oile of Roses, and a little waxe mixed with them both: but this is to be taken in moist wooll, which hath much oile in it, and to be ministred cold in Sommer, and hote in Winter. Therefore such a medicine being tempered and applied, as is said before, doth rarifie, extenuate, digest, and euacuate: it maketh the humour that is sharpe, viscous, grosse, or plentifull, and which cleaueth to the aggrieued parts, to be equall, constant, and moderate; and it discussleth the thicke vapour which can finde no fit issue, and so it mitigateth paine: It bringeth no hurt with his heate, for it maketh dull or taketh away the heate of the oile of Roses. Whereby it cometh to passe that this remedy doth asswage paine without doing any hurt, and disprofiteth not the cuill, as hote water, oile, and wheate meale, which things in an inflammation that happeneth with paine, cannot be profitable (as *Galen* witnesseth.) For these do loosen and release through their heate and moisture, and do resolue the strength of the member, whereby it is made more weake, and more prone and apt to entertaine fluxe. To the same vse (that is, to allay the paine in *Phlegmone*) you may apply effectually oile of Roses, yolkes of egges, crummes of white bread steeped in hote water, and then straine them, and commixe them with oile of Roses. These also are a present remedy, Mallowes sodden in water, and mingled with branne and oile of Roses, or with oile of Violets. But *Auicen* in mitigating euery paine vseth Saffron, which he profitably commixeth

Dolor.

Lenifiers of paine in phlegmone.

Lib. 2. ad Glauc.

eth with asswaging medicines. Furthermore if the sharpnesse of paine be so great and vehement, that it cannot be eased with those things, which because they mitigate and lenifie paine, (the succors of nature being stretched out) are properly called *Anodyna & paregorica*, that is, prouokers of sleepe, and helpers of paine, you must passe ouer vnto those aides which we call *Narcotica*, that is, stupefactiues. Among the which we haue tried by daily experience, besides the authoritie of some Writers, that Henbane hath profited in this case maruellously, whose leaues you must take, and bake them in the hote embers, then mingle them with swines grease, and applie them to the place. This doth pacifie vehement paine, and bringeth Phlegmonous tumours vnto suppuration. But while you attempt this thing, you must haue a diligent care lest you apply too much moisture, because it is a thing which in the beginnings of inflammations, when fluxe aboundeth with great griefe, it is very pernicious (as we said a little before.) But if you feare recourse of the matter that exciteth *Phlegmone* to the inward parts, and that chiefly toward the principall members, you must cause it to come forth by some drawing medicines, or else by applying cupping glasses, which do draw vehemently from the inward parts. But if by reason of vehement drying and digesting medicines being rashly applied to the inflammation, the relicts of the tumor do turne into *Scirrhus*, you shall boile in water the rootes of wilde Cucumber (which is commonly called in Herbaries and shops *Cucumer asininus*) or of Briony, or of *Asarum*, seething them oftentimes alone by themselues (as *Galen* commandeth) and sometime putting to them fat figges. Then commixe Meale with water, to the which also put a little suet, either of a Goose or a Cocke; but if there be not plentie of these at hand, adde swines greace, and make Cataplasmes. This doth notably heale that scirrhous affect which through mighty drying and digesting medicines in the member which *Phlegmone* occupied, doth still remaine behinde: also the aforesaid Herbes together with the rootes of *Althæa*, being after moderate boyling well mingled with bread and suet, and then applyed, do discusse and dissolue such hardened tumours: as *Galen* doth plainely teach, *Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.* Therefore if you feare, that Phlegmonous tumours, which are scarcely digested through their vapor, neither yet are easily concocted, be turned into *Scirrhus*, you must alwayes commixe with digestiues those things which can mollifie and soften. Moreouer if any part of the mattering member shall putrifie, you must straight way cut it out, or else seeke to cure it by many deepe scarrifications: afterward you must sprinkle on it salt water, and then lay on it an Emplaister made of the meale of Beanes or Tares sodden in *Oximell*. There be other things also to be proued in this case, which we will by and by set downe in the cure of *Grangræna*. But now it shall be more profitable, if we comprehend the Chapters concerning the cure of such Phlegmonous affects, in some short sentences. And first we will begin to declare the summe of the cure of *Phlegmone*, being yet but beginning, and not yet vexing with any grieuous paine. 1. Let the whole body be emptied with conuenient purgations, and especially by letting of bloud, if nothing do let it. 2. Let the inflamed member be all to washed and annointed with such things as haue power to driue backe the flowing of the

Nota de Hyosciamo.

Recursus materiæ ad interiora.

Duritiies relicta.

Galens Cataplasme for hard tumors.

Putrefactio.

Galen lib. 2. ad Glauc.

1.

2.

3. humour. 3. Let the humour which is contained in the aggrieued place, be
4. emptied out by drying and digesting medicines. 4. Let the affected part, and
The summe of the cure of Phlegmone when it afflicteth with much paine. those also which are about it be strengthened and fortified. Now followeth the summe of the cure of the said *Phlegmone*, when it tormenteth with a more
1. 2. 3. grieuous paine 1. When as inflammation being caused through the defluxion of humours, doth vexe with great paine, you must mitigate the vehemencie of the same without any hurt doing. 2. Then, you must not minister those things which do strongly binde, or vnlooſen, through their heate and moisture, or resolue strength. 3. But you must apply to the inflamed place such helpes as by meanely binding can repell that which floweth, and euacuate that which
4. infesteth the infected member. 4. Apply to the tumour, a sponge dipped in sharpe wine or *Posca*, that so you may preuent the passage of the humour that
5. floweth. 5. If these things shall profit, and yet the matter appeareth not any where, you must vse soft and gentile Emplaisters and those especially, which are
6. made as remedies against fluxe. 6. Among those things which are of power to drie and repell the fluxe of bloud without paine, you must chuse the best, as is that resolution with oile of Roses, which is made of the stone *Chalcitis*: then
7. lay vpon it pure wooll dipped in sharpe wine. 7. But when matter appeareth in the member, you must often apply the foresaid Cataplasme, or that rather
8. which is made of Barley meale. 8. If the abundance of thicke matter doth exceede the medicines, so that there is no hope of resolution, you must make an issue for that which yeeldeth not vnto digestion, in that place especially where
9. it is highest. 9. After incision, you must drie the wound, if paine be not vrgent,
10. and cleanse it and scoure it without griefe. 10. If after incision paine be vehement, you must first asswage it with foments, then with a Cataplasme, straight after with some moist medicine, or with such a one as drieth not. 11. If the
11. member be still inflamed, lay on a Cataplasme made of a certaine pulse called Chittes, which doth emptie out and driue backe.

CHAP. X.

Of a Carbuncle, and a Cancre, and of the maladie named Sphacelus, all which they call sanguineæ pustulæ, that is bloud pushes.

De Carbunculo.
ἀνθραξ.
γαγγραίνα.
σφακελος.
Gangræna & Sphacelus do follow great Phlegmones.
The generatiõ & discription of a Carbuncle.

SEEING that we haue intreated abundantly, as much as pertaineth to a Chyrurgian, of *Phlegmone*, which is the first difference of inflammations, and most incident to mans body: it now remaineth that we speake first of *Carbunculus*, which is called in Greeke *ἀνθραξ*: next of *Gangræna*, the Cancre, and last, of *Sphacelus*; (which with the expounder of *Auicen* they commonly call *Esthiomenon*) for that hath his beginning of a bloudie fluxe, as *Phlegmone* hath, and doth prouoke a most sharpe feauer; but these are wont oftentimes to accompanie great *Phlegmones*, as *Galen libello de Tumoribus præter naturam*, and in many other places hath diligently noted. A Carbuncle therefore proceedeth of the flowing of bloud, which is blacke, thicke, filthie, burning, and exceedingly hote; with the which if there be mingled but certaine thinne humours, there are raised vpon the out side of the skinne whelkes or pushes

pushes, like things that be burned or scalded, and then this inflāmation is called *Carbunculus cum pustula*, the Carbuncle with the push, which euill doth happen very often. In the meane time notwithstanding it beginneth (although seldome) without push or pushes: but then is caused a crustie or hard vlcer. I say without push or pushes, because sometime there ariseth with this euill one onely push of some greatnesse, which being broken the vlcer is brought forth with a scurfe or scabbe: but oftentimes not one push alone doth breake out, but many little and slender ones, sticking thicke in the member like vnto the seeds of Hirse: which being burst forth, there doth likewise arise a certaine crustie vlcer, such as hot iron doth cause. But betweene their beginnings, before that the pushes do appeare, they trouble the member throughly. Now these scales or scurfe do sometime receiue an ashie or earthly colour, somtime blackneſſe, and in that place the skin cannot be eased, but it is as it were fastened to the inner flesh. The flesh also about it is brought to an exceeding hote inflammation, which the Greekes call *Phlogosis*, and is blacke in colour, and shineth after the manner of Lime or Pitch, as though there were a litle blacke commixed with a great quantitie of red. This colour is caused altogether of melancholie. And these truly are the signes and tokens of a Carbuncle drawne from the very effect it selfe, to the which may be added a very grieuous and vehement prine of the afflicted member, as though it were bound with strong chaines. They also which are thus affected, do necessarily fall into a Feauer, and that sooner then they which are troubled with *Phligmone Erysipelatosa*. But if any poyson doth lurke within (as oftentimes it chanceth) the sicke persons are miserably tormented with perbraking and continuall yomiting, together with want of appetite, and loathing of meate. There are present also with them quaking of the heart, panting or mouing of the stomacke, & an often fainting of courage. This euill is called properly of the Chyrurgians of our age, *Anthrax*, differing from *Carbunculus*, by reason of the malice and crueltie of the euill: When as in very deed ἄνθραξ, among the Greekes is the very same that *Carbo* or *Carbunculus* is among the Latines. Therefore it is superfluous to distinguish and to handle in diuers Chapters the signes and cure of them (which all Chyrurgians almost do vse at this time.) But these Carbuncles do chiefly arise of violent causes, killing the people suddenly, and they follow a pestilent Plague. Wherefore there is required a diligent heed or care about them, neither must they in any case be neglected. Moreouer, although ἄνθραξ, or euery Carbuncle be a sharpe disease, dangerous and contagious: yet the worst of all, and the most deadly, is that of *Auicen*, which doth arise in the purest places, and neare to the principall members. For it is to be feared, lest the venimous matter which exciteth the Carbuncle, do suddenly returne to the inward parts, and to some principall member: which if it shall happen, the sicke is in great danger of his life, especially if any euill signes shall bewray the same. But if the exhalation thereof be onely filthy and corrupted with abhominable poyson, it is enough to kill the man. If a Carbuncle chanceth about the stomacke, or about the cheekes, or iawes, it suddenly oftentimes (as *Celsus* saith) bursteth out the stomacke. And lesse deedly is that Curbuncle in *Auicen*, which appeareth first red, and then yellow, or of an Orange colour.

Carbunculus duplex.
Signes of a Carbuncle.
1. *Vlcus crustosum.*
2. *Some great whelkes, some small.*
3. *The colour of the crust either earthly or blacke.*
4. *The flesh blacke about it.*
5. *Grieuous paine.*
6. *A vehement paine.*
7. *Nausea.*
8. *Vomitus.*
9. *Want of stomacke.*
10. *Cordis tremor.*
11. *Animi deliquium.*
Indicia.
1. *When a Carbuncle is most deadly (the iudgement thereof being taken from the affected place)*
2. *Another iudgement taken from the affected place.*
3. *Iudgement of the colour.*

4. Iudgement of the accidents.

But if it waxeth blew or blacke, it killeth almoſt euery man, and there is none that is iudged more dangerous of the owne nature then it. If the accidents which are wont to accompanie this diſeaſe be very much remitted or releaſed, there is ſome hope of recouerie: but if they be ſtill more and more ſtretched out, and made more vehement, then truly the matter is in great deſpaire.

CHAP. XI.

Of the cure of a Carbuncle.

The cure of a carbuncle muſt be begun by bloud letting.

Galen lib. Method. med. 14. & ſecundo ad Glauconem, commandeth that the cure of a Carbuncle (hauing ſet downe a conuenient order of diet) muſt be begun with bloud letting by and by at the beginning) if none of thoſe things do let which are wont to forbid the cutting of a veine,) who alſo willeth to draw bloud euen to the fainting of the heart: for it profiteth much thoſe that be troubled with this euill. And this alwayes is to be marked, that the veine be ſtricken directly againſt the vlcer. But the choice of the veine is manifeſted vnto vs of the affected member (as we haue ſaid in the cure of *Phlegmone.*) Therefore in that matter, euen a skilfull Phyſition muſt take counſell of the Chyrurgian, who hath the knowledge to declare from what place and how much bloud is to be drawne out. The veine (as it behoueth) being

Vena è directo ſecanda.

Deepe ſcarification.

cut, if nothing (as I ſaid) do hinder you, it ſhall not be amiſſe to ſcarifie the ſaid tumour, vſing ſomewhat deepe cuts or wounds, by reaſon of the thickeneſſe of that malicious humour, that is, ſuch cuts as are ſomewhat deeper then ordinarie (as it pleaſeth *Galen.*) There are ſome, which would haue ſcarification made in the cruſtie or hard vlcer onely, and then they ſtraight way ſprinckle thoſe inciſions with hote ſalt water, that bloud might not meet together in them, and increaſe, but that it might be emptied out. Sometime they alſo apply ſome gnawing medicine, as Arſenicke, which in this caſe among the reſt hath the greateſt vertue: but ſome do miniſter to the ſcarified place horſe leeches, or bloud-ſuckers. But ſtrong repulſiues are in no wiſe to be vſed or applyed to the aggrieued member (although refrigeration be needfull, which indeed doth belong vnto the inflammation;) for you cannot ſo turne away the fluxe, or preuent the malice thereof, becauſe of the thickneſſe of the humour. And if at any time you ſhall do it, you ſhall find ſome other naughtie humour (as *Galen* ſaith) which is ſetled in the depth or inward parts of the body: but this humour muſt not be ſuffered to flow abundantly (the ſame *Galen* being our authour.) Therefore ſuch remedies are to be ſought for, as by a moderate repreſſion can digeſt or diſperſe the humour. Such truly is that Cataplaſme, both that which is made of Plantaine, and alſo that which is made of Lintels twiſe ſodden. But with this you muſt commixe crummes of bread which hath bene baked in an ouen. Let the bread (after *Galens* counſell) be neither altogether without Branne, nor very full of it. But this kinde of Cataplaſme is called of the latter ſort *Emplaſtrum de Arnogloſſa,* which they make after this ſort. Rx. of Plantaine, Lintels, bread baked in an ouen, of each a like portion, let them be boiled in water. To theſe *Auicen* putteth Gaules, who alſo for this purpoſe doth allow the Cataplaſme which is made of the two

Sprinkling of hote ſalt water.

Arſenicum.

Sanguiſugæ.

Flux in a carbuncle cannot be turned away, neither ought it.

Lib. 14. Ther.

A Cataplaſme good for a carbuncle.

Cataplaſma de Arnogloſſa.

A Cataplaſme of Pomegranates.

Pome-

Pomegranates ſodden either in Vineger, or in ſharpe or tart Water, and theſe they apply both to the affected member, and alſo to the parts about it. Of this minde alſo is *Paulus Ægineta*, who ſaith, that if you will plucke vp a Carbuncle as it were by the rootes, and diſſeuer it from hauing any ſocietie with the parts about it, you muſt ſeeth in Vineger a ſharpe Pomegranate cut in ſmall peeces: when the ſore is corrupted you muſt wipe it ſmooth, and cleanſe it with a linnen cloath, and when it waxeth drie, you muſt moiſten it with Vineger. Alſo the kirnell of the old filberd nut, or of the young, doth ripen and breake Carbuncles. But the beſt remedie for the parts lying about it, is the ointment made of Bolearmoniacke, of the oile of Roſes or Mertles, and of Vineger: which is vſed, becauſe the humour which hath flowed alreadie, ſhould not returne backe againe within. There are ſome which do draw, and allure the poyſon and malicious humour in a peſtilent Carbuncle, with ſucking or drawing it with cupping glaſſes, and with medicines that can bring the humour to the place which is beſet with *Carbo*. Which thing truly I would alſo counſell to do, if ἄνθραξ doth occupie the arteries, and the parts about the leſſer veines, and if the fluxe doth moue but ſlowly. But if it ruſheth or breaketh forth ſtrongly and aboundantly, the rage of the humour muſt be tamed and bridled by medicines that can moderately repreſſe (as of late we recited out of *Galen*,) leſt that there be cauſed too vehement paine through the fluxe that floweth ſo ſtrongly in the affected member, & ſo the euill be made more painfull and angrie. But vpon this harder cruſtie vlcer, eſpecially when the member is putrified, you muſt lay ſome ſtrong medicine, both which can greatly drie (but not that which can concoct or digeſt) and alſo which can moue the matter, (ſeeing that ſo you ſhall fauour the putrefaction of the member:) of this nature is that of *Andron*, *Muſa*, *Paſio*, or *Polyida*: and it muſt be waſhed in ſome ſweet wine, or in *Sapa*, by reaſon of the thickneſſe of the filthie humour. That Cataplaſme alſo which in *Galen* is made of the meale of Tares or Oximel, is rightly applyed, when as the vlcer is malignant and corrupted. But commonly the ointment called *vnguentum Ægyptiacum* is to be applied. But if theſe things do little profit, you muſt come vnto more ſharpe remedies, which haue euen a fierie force. Of the which kinde are theſe, the roote of *Dracunculus*, of *Ariſtolochia* broken and laid in Vineger, Lime, Arſenicke, yellow Oker, and other of this ſort, which do burne like fire. Theſe do profit ſufficiently, if they do throughly reſolue the corrupted member, euen from the quicke. This being done, whatſoeuer is corrupted and dead within, you muſt by and by pull away, and plucke it vp by the roots. But when after theſe gnawing medicines there followeth a ſcurfe or ſcarre, which is drawne euery way from the quicke fleſh, the wound truly, which is raiſed through them, muſt be diligently regarded, as in ſores that be burned. But being in extreame diſeaſes, as (*Hippocrates* ſaith) extreme remedies are perfectly the beſt: we are conſtrained ſometime (our medicines not preuailing with the euill) to roote out a malicious Carbuncle by actuall or manuall inſtruments (as they call it) that is, with a bright knife or ſome other ſuch thing. But the end of burning is, while there is ſenſe of paine euerie way, as *Celſus* hath taught very well. After theſe things the cruſt or ſcabbe which is vpon the

Paulus.

Nuxauellana.

Remedies to draw the poyſon in a carbuncle.

What muſt be applyed to a cruſtie vlcer.

A cataplaſme of the meale of Tares & Oximel.

Vnguentum Aegyptiacum.

Adurenia medicamenta.

When adуſtion muſt be vſed.

Finis adurẽdi

vlcers, must be resolued by such medicines as are meete for that purpose. But if the sicke shall refuse to suffer adustion, the helpe of some poore and base fellow is to be vsed, who by laying hold on the Carbuncle with his teeth, may quite extinguish and pull vp the same; as were in time past certaine people in Italie named *Psilli*, who did sucke their wounds which they receiued by the stinging of Serpents, and that without any harme taking thereby. Moreouer the Carbuncle being thus taken away, or consumed any other way, the hollownesse thereof (the inflammation now ceassing) must first be cleansed, and afterward being made pure and cleane, it must be healed with filling medicines (which the Greekes call *Synulotica*;) which when it is throughly filled, neither doth there remaine any hollow place at all in it, it is conuenient to vse those things which can bring it to a scarre, as in other vlcers. But if the euill do not rage very much, but shall seeme to offer vs truce and peace, it is ripened and opened (as *Auicen* saith) by applying Figs commixed well together with leauen and Salt. And when this Cataplasme or the like is layed too twise or thrise, the place is wont to appeare altogether blacke, and full of chinkes or clifts; and then the place is to be scowred and cleansed with mundificatiues made of *Apium*. That medicine also which is made of the yolkes of egges and of Salt, if it be often applyed, it ripeneth and openeth a Carbuncle (as *Theodoricus* writeth.) For the same purpose we vse commonly at this day that medicine which is made of Honie, Salt, Wheate meale, and the yolkes of egges. *Consolida maior*, that is, Comferie (which the Greekes call *Symphyton*) being brayed betweene two stones, doth heale *Anthrax* very maruellously (as they report,) and within the space of one day it quite destroyeth it, so that it needeth no other curing any more after; besides also it is a common helpe for other wounds. Some also do declare wonderfull things of *Scabiosa*, because that (being eaten, or drunke in wine) it thrusteth out internall tumours to the externall places, and it doth dissolue and discusse them without paine.

Psilli.

Maturatiuum Auicennæ.

Mundificatiuum ex Apio.

A common cataplasme vsed in Paru.

Consolida maior.

Scabiosa.

In the vlcers of a Carbuncle these do resolue the crusts of the scurfe, fresh butter, swines suet, and other fat things of that sort. For this purpose also this Emplaister following doth maruellously profit: for besides that it resolueth the scarre, that is, the crust, more speedily then the aforesaid things, it also asswageth the paine that is caused either of the sharpe and burning medicines, or of the bright instrument, and it mightily discusseth the malignous humour which exciteth the Carbuncle ℞. of Wheate and Barley meale, ana. ℥ iij. of the which make a solide Emplaister with the decoction of Mallowes, Violets, and the rootes of *Althæa*, and put thereunto of Butter, and swines suet melted, ana. ℥ ij. the yolkes of two egges, which must be put in when they are taken off the fire, and all these must be diligently commixed and incorporate together with the aforesaid rootes and herbes; which must be well beaten and brayed together the one with the other, and then sifted through a searce. As concerning their diet, Epithemes, Cordials, and other of that kind, which are made to strengthen the heart, also euacuations, if they be needfull, do altogether pertaine vnto that part of Physicke which cureth with diet and medicines. Wherefore in ministring them, you must aske the aduice or counsell of some learned Physition. But commonly all men almost do vse *Theriaca*, which is

What things do resolue the crusts of vlcers

Theriaca.

wont

wont to be miniſtred to the greatneſſe of a Beane, made of the water of Scabious, or if a very ſharpe and vehement ſeauer be preſent, you muſt make it of Roſe water, or water of Bugloſſe: which the ſicke muſt take ſixe houres after meate. But becauſe we haue made mention before of the Trochiskes of *Andron*, *Polyida*, and *Muſa* (which *Galen* ſo greatly vſed) it ſhall not be amiſſe to ſet downe here the deſcription of them.

℞. of Cytrines, that is, of the firſt flowers or buds of Pomegranates, ℥.x. of Alume that may be cut, ℥.iiij. of Coperous or Vitriol, ℥.xij. of Mirrhe, ℥. iiij. of Frankinſence, *Ariſtolochia*, & Gals, ana. ℥.viij. of Salt ammoniack, ℥.iiij. *Andronis Trochiſcus.*

℞. of Pomegranate rindes, ℥ vj. of Mirrhe, ℥. viij. of Alume that may be cut, ℥. v. of Frankenſence, ℥ iiij. of Coperous, ℥. iiij. of the gall of a bull, ℥. vj. Let theſe be taken in ſweet wine. *Polyida Paſtillus.*

℞. of cut Alume, ℥.iij. Frankinſence, ℥.iiij of Myrrhe as much, of Coperous, ℥ ij. of the flowers of Pomegranates, ℥. xij of buls gall, ℥. vj. *Aloes*, ℥. viij. Take theſe in ſharpe wine. *Polyidæ paſtillus alius.*

℞ of cut Alume, *Aloes*, Mirrhe, Coperous, ana. ℥. vj. of Saffron and of the dregs of the oile of Saffron, ℥. iij. of the flowers of Pomegranates, ℥. iiij. Let them be taken in *Mulſum* made of *Falernum*. *Muſæ trochiſcus.*

CHAP. XII.

Of Gangræna and Sphacelus.

GALEN *lib* 2. *ad Glauconem*, calleth them Cankers, which by reaſon of the greatneſſe of the inflammation be made and changed into mortifications, yet they be not throughly ingendred and alreadie confirmed. The force and tyrannie of this euill is ſo outragious, that except it be remedied verie ſpeedily, the affected member doth eaſily repreſent the habite of death, that is, it doth very readily draw together the extinction and quenching both of life, ſenſe, and mouing. But when the member is ſo corrupted and ſo feeble, that it is altogether without ſenſe, and as it were dead, ſo that whether it be ſtriken, or cut, or burned, the ſicke feeleth it not, then the Greeks call this euill no longer *Gangræna*, but *Sphacelus*, the Latines *Syderatio*, the latter ſort call it *Eſthiomenon*: which name alſo they giue vnto *Gangræna*. But *Auicen* calleth it *Eſthiomenon*, when as the corruption thereof doth paſſe to the continuall parts, which terme the Grecians do vſe in another order. Some call this affect ſometime *Herpeta Eſthiomenon*, ſometime very improperly, *Cancer vlceratus*. But this affect chanceth alſo to the bones, when as the fleſh being beſet & compaſſed about with them, bringing forth and ingendring filthy & ſtinking corruption, doth infect them with this horrible poyſon, and conſumeth them with moſt corruptible rottenneſſe. Therefore when as the member ſhall together appeare void of life, ſenſe, & mouing, you muſt by and by pare it to the quicke as neare as you can to the ſound fleſh. *Sphacelus* therefore differeth from *Gangræna*, becauſe the one doth grow vp in the bones, (as we haue declared) and not in the fleſh and the veſſels of the bodie onely: but the other cometh not to the bones; notwithſtanding it is one kind of *Sphacelus*, but it borroweth a proper & ſingular name beſide the cõmon terme. This kind of corruption being

What a Canker is, and whence it hath his beginning.

Gangræna peſſimus tyrannus.

Sphacelus.

Syderatio oſſium.

The benümed member muſt ſtraight way be pared.

perfect in the affected part, and altogether depriued of sense, is called commonly in France *Ignis Sancti Antonij*, in another place, *Ignis Sancti Martialis*. But this mortification of the members, or the extinguishing and destroying of the life in them, chanceth three wayes. One way, when as the member can no longer receiue the life that is sent to it from the heart through the Arteries, by reason of the dissoluing of the mixture and consent of the affected member. Which mixture and harmonie of the member is dissolued and destroyed, either because of too much cold (as sometime it happeneth in sharpe and boisterous winter) or by reason of immoderate, rash and vnaduised refrigeration of the inflammation, or else because of the exceeding and vnmeasurable vehement heate, and poyson of the inflammations, and malignant vlcers (as they call them.) Another way *Gangræna* and *Sphacelus* are caused, when as the life being gotten into the member, is choaked and stopped, as it oftentimes happeneth in great inflammations, which sometimes do close vp and stop the veines, arteries, and pores of the skin, that there the spirits (the breathing forth of the vapourous streames, and the drawing in of the aire, being altogether hindered) are strangled and choaked. The third way these mortifications, and destroyings of life are caused in the members, when as the passage and flowing of the vitall breath from the heart to some member is letted and forbidden: and that happeneth either by reason of a vehement and strong binding, or else because of some bruise receiued in those passages and pores through the which the breath is carried. To conclude, *Gangræna* and *Syderatio*, which the Grecians call *Necrosis* and *Sphacelus*, do chance vnto mens bodies, destroying either the member or the vitall facultie, or the naturall heate and temperature of the body. But the signes of *Gangræna* and *Syderatio*, *Galen* in his litle treatise of tumours aboue nature, declareth to be these. First truly that flourishing colour is extinguished in them, which is wont to be in phlegmonous inflammations: then paine and beating of the pulses, that is, the mouing of the arteries, which is felt of the sicke, do depart a little aside, yet their naturall disposition is not altogether ended, but their sense altogether dead and mortified. Whereupon the member straight way appeareth blacke, and it is very soft and full of corruption, it breatheth out a filthie sauour, and it is like vnto a dead thing without life. Whereby it commeth to passe, that when it is touched with the finger, it easily yeeldeth very deeply, neither after doth it rise vp againe or returne, but the skin appeareth as though it were separated from the flesh. But this mortification of the affected member (which the Grecians call *Gangræna*, is of so great crueltie and madnesse (as *Paulus* saith) that except you presently seeke a remedie for it without all delay, the affected member soone perisheth, and then it inuadeth the other parts that be next vnto it, and killeth the man. But it (as *Celsus* reporteth) it yet hath but small power, but is now in beginning, it is not very hard to cure, especially in a young mans bodie, and so much the rather if the muscles be sound and whole, if the sinewes be not hurt, or smally affected. But when this euill hath taken deepe roote, and is turned againe into *Sphacelus*, it is vncurable, and verie many do dye of a cold sweate.

Ignis Sancti Antonij.

Three causes of mortificatiõ

1. *What things do dissolue the mixture of the member.*

2.

3. *Signes of Gangræna and Sphacelus.*

1.

2.

3.

4.

Indicia. lib. 4.

Lib. 5.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the cure of Gangræna caused of great inflammations, and of the destroying or curing of Sphacelus, which is ingendred of Gangræna.

BEcause the abundance of bloud doth ingender a Canker, the order of the cure thereof must be straightway attempted by a plentifull and copious euacuation of the corrupt bloud, which is packed together in the affected member. But in the meane season, you must not neglect those things which shall seeme to belong vnto diet, medicines, cutting of a veine (if need require) and strengthening of the heart, in which things the Chyrurgian must take the aduise of some learned Physition, who knoweth how to instruct him therein (as the matter shall require.) But there must be great plentie of that congealed bloud (which causeth mortifications) drawne out from the affected part, either in the veine that is cut, if it appeareth any thing full and swolne about the same member, or in the whole skin of the part affected, together with his substance either kept downe and made obedient, or cut or diuided by many deepe scarifications. Some to this end do apply horse-leeches, and they do open a little the veines that be next the sore; but those deepe and often sections or scarifications are much more effectuall to cure that euill. But because of the greatnesse of the Canker, we vse great sections, or often incisions (which we call scarifications) the one, when the euill is more rotten, the other when it onely beginneth to rot. For the greater the euill is, the greater remedy it requireth (as euery man may know.) But when you haue drawne out bloud abundantly by those deepe flashes or cuts, you must wash the place with salt-water, that the thicke bloud which otherwise would abound there, may be brought forth. Then you must apply some medicine that can let and dissolue puttrifaction, as is the meale of Tares or Darnell (which the French men call *Yuraria*, because it doth prouoke drunkennesse after the manner of wine:) or if there be scarcity of them, you must vse the meale of Beanes with *Oximel* and *Syrupus acetosus*. It shall be profitable also to wash the scarified place twice a day with hote vineger, but especially with *Mulsum*. For these by reason of the drinesse, do consume the filthinesse and corruption, and do cleanse it; but because of their coldnesse they do challenge of putrefaction that which is not yet defiled and corrupted. But when this feruent heate is now abated, and the furie of the euill somewhat remitted and slaked, you must lay aboue vpon the sore that ointment which is commonly called *vnguentum Aegyptiacum*, made of Verdigrease, Alume, Honie, and Vineger, of each a like quantitie commixed and boiled together. This doth stop putrefaction and resolue it: and it doth discouer also the puttified and corrupted humour from the sound and whole parts, and it doth cause it to fall and perish. Moreouer it procureth a crust or scarre, and preserueth and defendeth the whole parts from any infection. But if you will apply a more strong and effectuall medicine, mingle Salt with the aforesaid things: or if the euill shall increase yet more and more, minister some of the Trochiskes before mentioned, being throughly brayed & beaten together

Emptying of corrupted bloud.

After scarificatiõ you must wash the place with salt water.

Medicines putrefactiues.

Vnguentum Aegyptiacum.

Burning Trochiskes.

together, and then washed in Vineger and Wine: as that either of *Andron*, or *Polyida*, or *Musa*, or one of those which are called of the latter sort *Calidicon*, *Aldaron*, or that made of *Asphodelus*, which by reason of the burning force do separate the corruption from the sound parts. In this matter before all other things *Arsenicon* is praised and allowed of, which they call *Sublimatum*, *purum* or *correctum*, which must be dissolued either in some powder or in wine, and taken in linnen or cotten (which the Frenchmen call *Coton*,) and so applied betweene the sound and corrupted member: for this doth straightway stay the euill, and that truly without paine. But if necessitie requireth, you must diuide the good from the euill with a certaine instrument called a probe, or slice. But in ministring medicines (that the matter may be handled more without care) you must be diligent to know the nature of the sicke bodie (as *Galen* hath well taught vs saying:) If the body be rusticall and hard by nature, it requireth very vehement medicines: but if it be tender and soft, it requireth more gentle and mild medicines. Infants also or children, and they which loue to liue at their owne pleasure in idlenesse, must haue gentle medicines ministred to them. Moreouer the nature of the parts which are euill affected must be regarded as well as the whole bodie, when you do either cut off, or cut about that which is putrified and corrupted. For there are some sores, which very quickly do come to matter and corruption, if they be negligently cured: and some very slowly: some also do slowly feele the force and benefit of medicines applyed, and some very soone.

Arsenicon. Sublimatum.

Lib. 2. ad Glauc.

When adustion is to be vsed.

If the Canker turneth into Sphacelus.

Lib. 2. ad Glauc.

Lib. 4.

Remedies that can loosen the crusts from the seared members.

Furthermore if (notwithstanding these burning medicines) the euill shall yet remaine, you must burne that place which is betweene the whole and corrupted member. But all these remedies are wont sometime to profit nothing at all, and then this is the onely helpe, although (as *Celsus* saith) it be a miserable helpe, that is, to cut off the member, which by little and little waxeth dead, that so the other parts of the body may be without danger. For that which is once corrupted, euen with touching, it doth infect and corrupt that part which is whole and sound, after the manner of poyson. But if at any time you shall cut off this putrified and dead member, or shall lance off that which is corrupted in any member euen to the sound flesh, then by the counsell of *Galen* for more quietnesse sake, you must seare or burne with some bright instrument that member, which as a roote is ioyned to the whole and sound body, for so you shall quickly stay the flowing of bloud, and debarre corruption. Now adustion being done and ended, you must vse the iuyce of leekes, or (as *Paulus* saith) you must apply salt with the leekes, or some of those remedies which we haue spoken of a little before. For these do dry and bind the corruption, and do also stop the fluxe of humours. But when by vsing these remedies, rottennesse or corruption shall seeme to ceasse: that the crusts and scutfe may soone fall away, you must vse a Cataplasme made of bread, or barley meale, or wheate meale boyled in *Hydraleon*. Also that medicine which they call *Cephalicum*, annointed with hony. These through their cleansing or scouring, do resolue the crust from the flesh which lyeth vnder it. Moreouer that medicine which is called *Tetrapharmacum*, and that also called *Macedonicum*, by mouing and mollyfying the matter, do bring the scurfes from the parts that lye vnder them,

them, as all other things do, which do bring the sores vnto suppuration. For these remedies do both mollifie, and ripen or end the matter vnder the crust, which matter doth resolue it: (I meane that matter which lyeth betweene the crust and the flesh.) Bread also beaten and brayed in *Apium*, or *Ocinium*, thorough their cleansing doth mightily draw the crusts from the whole parts without erosion or gnawing; of the like vertue also is *Iris*, or the roote of *Panax*, or of *Aristolochia*, or of *Acorus* mixed with Honie. But they are commonly wont to vse Butter or some other annointing thing to resolue the crusts. But when the crust is fallen off, they wash the place with Vineger, and apply this Plaister following, which is rehearsed by *Gulielmus de Saliceto*. ℞. Honie, ℔. ß. raw yolkes of egges, three or foure, of Barley meale, ℔ ß. mingle these together, and bring them to the forme of an Emplaister. But two or three dayes after, that the mundification or cleansing may be the better accomplished, you may adde to this Emplaister, of chosen Mirrhe, ʒ. x. But in tender and yong bodies for the separation of the crust, and detersion of the filthy corruption, the meale of Tares mingled with Honie, or Frankensence (which was vsed of *Galen*) doth abundantly suffice. These things being rightly ordered, such kind of vlcers must be brought vnto some soundnesse of health with such kind of medicines as can draw together the flesh, & procure a scarre: the Grecians call them *Synulotica* and *Epulotica*. 1. Emptie out abundantly the corrupted bloud, which is stuffed in the affected member. 2. After scarifications or sections, wash the affected member with salt water; then lay on a medicine appointed for corrupted sores 3. When the furie of the euil is somewhat slaked, minister *vnguentum Ægyptiacum*. 4. If the euill will not yeeld to these remedies, seare with a bright and hote iron that place which is betweene the filthy and corrupted member. 5. But if all these things shall nothing helpe, and now *Gangræna* is changed into *Sphacelus*, cut off that member very speedily which is so perished euen to the whole, so that no filthinesse remaine behind. 6. When you haue cut off that which is putrified, you must vse some hote burning instrument, that so you may the more quietly pull vp euen the very roote of the euill. 7. After exustion, minister the iuyce of Leekes, and other such things as do drie, bind, and stop fluxe. 8. Make great speed to resolue the crust or scurfe by vsing burning medicines, or some hote instrument from the subiect places (for then there is wont to follow abundance of bloud.) 9. When rottennesse or corruption is ceassed, and you feare no more the flowing of bloud, apply those things which can draw off the crust. 10. When the crusts or scurses be fallen from their places, you must vse the same cure as in other places.

Butyrum.

Emplastrum Gulielmi à Saliceto.

Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

The summe of the cure of Gangræna & Sphacelus.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.

1. First appoint a thinne and cooling diet for them which are vexed with *Gangræna* and *Sphacelus*. 2. If nothing do let it, turne away the fluxe by letting of bloud: and draw it out abundantly, if it flow plentifully. 3. Purifie the bloud with the medicine which is called *Catholicon*, or with the blacke pith of *Cassia fistularis*, or with the decoction of *Tamarindi*, of Hoppes, and Fumitorie. 4. Let the sicke take *Theriaca*, and other of that kinde, which are able to defend the heart (which is the fountaine and beginning of life) from those corrupted and filthy smelling fluxes, which are mounted vp from the putrified members.

Aphorismes pertaining to a Physition.

1. 2. 3.

4.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Eryſipelas and other tumours cauſed of Choler.

Fleame in the generation of humors is next vnto bloud.

ALthough fleame in generation of humors, doth follow next vnto bloud, & there be greater abundance of that humour in the body, next vnto bloud, then of other humours, yet becauſe tumours aboue nature proceeding of choler (which they commonly call cholericke apoſtemes) do in many things greatly conſpire and agree with bloudie tumours, it followeth (after the determination of *Phlegmone*, and other tumours conſiſting aboue nature, which proceed of bloud) that we now ſpeake of thoſe ſwellings which are cauſed of choler, and are called of the Greekes by this generall name *Eryſipelata*, but of the ancient Latines *Ignes ſacri*. *Eryſipelas* therefore is the branch or bud of cholericke fluxe moſt abiding about both the skinnes, that is, both about that which outwardly couereth all the parts of the body, and alſo about that filmie and thinne skin which inwardly compaſſeth the internall parts. But oftentimes alſo it occupieth ſome of the fleſh that lyeth vnder it, as *Phlegmone* (which is the iſſue of bloudy flux moſt incident to fleſhy bodies) doth alſo poſſeſſe ſome of the skin. Therefore when very thin choler or hote bloud, which is thin alſo in ſubſtance, (called of the latter ſort *Cholera naturalis*, but of *Galen* χολὴ ξανθὴ) is ſpread abroad ouer the skin onely, nothing moleſting the fleſh vnder it, and yet ſomewhat raiſing the mẽber into a tumor with a languiſhing inflammation and yellow redneſſe, and altogether doth yeeld when it is touched; this affect is properly called of *Galen*, a true and exquiſite *Eryſipelas*. But this is for one conſideration, or (as they ſay) it chanceth vniformely, and without vlceration. *Auicen* calleth it *Spina*. But when an humour of bitter choler ſhall be more thicke and ſharpe, then that it can returne againe naturally, it doth exulcerate or fetch off that little outward skinne which the Greekes call *Epidermida*, and ſometime that exulceration of the skin in proceſſe of time pierceth ſomewhat deeply, ſo that it toucheth the inner fleſh vnder it, and then that affect is called alſo *Eryſipelas*, but with vlceration, which (as *Galen* ſaith) is all one with *Herpes*. But if it be neither a cholericke fluxe, nor a bloudie humour, but equally congealed of them both, it is not then *Eryſipelas* onely, but *Galen* termeth it a diſpoſition throughly commixed with *Eryſipelas* and the inflãmation. But of that which is predominant in the mixture, is the title giuen to the euill. For when bloud ruleth, it is called *Phlegmone eryſipelatoſa*: but when choler raigneth, terme it *Eryſipelas phlegmonôſum*. But when neither hath ſuperioritie, but the accidents of them both appeare equall together in power, then that euill ſhall be called a meane betweene *Phlegmone* & *Eryſipelas*. Now alſo of the other mixtures, there ſhall be the like interpretation, that is, if much choler be mingled with a thin and ſmall humor, either of fleame or melancholy, it ſhall be called *Eryſipelas ædematôſum* or *ſchirrhoſum*. Moreouer when we ſpeake ſimply of choler, or of a bilious humour, after the manner of *Galen* and other Phiſitions, we meane pale choler, yellow, and bitter, and not that which is ſoure and blacke. And this is called of others, *naturalis & certa cholera*, hauing his generation of bloud that is thin and hote. But melancholy we neuer abſolutely do terme choler, but alwaies with an adiection of the humour

Eryſipelas quid.

Eryſipelas exquiſitum. Epina.

Eryſipelas cũ vlceratione.

Eryſipelas non legitimum.

Medium vitium.

Bilis.

mour, wich ioyneth the cholour of the name. Choler therefore, which is called of the Greekes χολὴ, and commonly *Cholera*, is a hote and drie humour, proceeding of the thinner and hotter part of *Chylus*, or thinne and hote bloud (as we said alate.) And this is two maner of wayes according to the diuision of the new Physitions, that is to say, naturall choler is a hot and dry humor, in substance thin, of colour yellow, or red, declining vnto a certaine colour like Orenge tawnie, but in tast very bitter, and sharpe or soure (as some vntruly haue affirmed.) Vnnaturall choler is said to be that, which doth degenerate from the aforesaid bilious humours, and yet it keepeth it selfe within the bounds of his circuite, which if it doth once passe or go out of, it is now not to be accounted choler, but rather some other humour. But this (I meane choler) doth happen to transgresse the limits of his libertie or circuit two wayes. 1. One way (as we may say) by it selfe. 2. The other way by admixtion with other. By it selfe and in it selfe it is also two-fold. 1. One way, when as that naturall choler doth putrifie, and is burned within, and that is called *Adusta per putrefactionem*, that is, burnt through putrefaction. 2. The other way, when as vnnaturall choler called *Vitellina*, is throughly concocted euen with a fierie heate, in the liuer, or in the stomacke, or in the veines; and it is made of the colour of leekes, which they also call *Prassina*, or it is caused to be rusty or cankred, which truly are extreame griefes. But vnnaturall choler, or choler aboue nature, through admixtion, is caused, when as another humor doth come vnto it extraordinarily. And this truly happeneth many wayes For if thin and wateriſh fleame be mixed with it, it is made yellow, and like vnto Saffron; if thick and vicious fleame be commixed therewith, it is made like to yolkes of egs. but if burned melancholy be ioyned therewith, it is made *bilis adusta per admixtionem*. And so after *Auicens* minde and iudgement, there are sixe kindes of naturall choler; with *Haly Abbas* foure onely; for he maketh no mention at all of two kindes of adusted choler. But *Gal. 2 de virtut. naturalibus* saith, that there is no choler besides nature, but that which is *vitellina*, very like both in colour & thickneſse to the yolkes of egs: for he saith that *porracea* & *aruginosa bilis* are ingendred oftentimes in the stomacke, of naughtie and corrupted humours, by reason of crudities or rawnesse of meates and drinkes, as are, the herbe called Bete, Onions, Colewortes. And also sometime, when these things are not well digested, it ingendreth in the very veines, by reason of sickneſse, or some other euill disposition By these things therefore is gathered, that there are foure kinds or differences of inflāmations ingendred of choler (which commonly are called cholericke apostemes;) that is to say, of true, sincere, and laudable choler (which we call thinne and hote bloud) is ingendred that kinde of inflammation, which *Galen lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, calleth a true and exquisite *Erysipelas*, which is as it were a passion of the skinne onely: in Greeke it is called ἀκριβὲς ἐρυσίπελας. But of vnnaturall choler, being mixed with other humours, there do arise three other differences, *Erysipelas Phlegmonôdes*, *Erysipelas ædematôdes*, and *Erysipelas Scirrhôdes*. And of choler which besides nature is caused of adustion, by reason of thinnesse or thickneſse of the substance thereof, there are ingendred either *Herpetes esthiomeni*, that is, *exedentes*, which are of the same kinde with those *Erysipelata* which do chance with vlceration,

Bilis flaua duplex.

Not naturall.

Choler doth digresse from his owne nature.

Bilis Vitellina.
Porracea.
Prassina.
Aeruginosa.

Crocea.

Auicene.
Haly.

Foure differences of inflammations coming of choler.

Verum Erysipelas.

Three vnlawfull Erysipelas

Herpes exedens.

Phagedæna. Cancri vlceratio.

ceration, or there are ingendred *Phagedænæ*, which do somwhat deeply gnaw the flesh, together with the skin, & there are caused exulcerate cankers, & other such gnawing euils: there are also ingendred *Cacoëthe*, that is, malignant vlcers, which are called of the late Chyrurgians *Pustulæ corrosiuæ*. Therefore in such kinde of humours, that is truly the most thinne, which raiseth the exulcerated *Herpes*: and that most thicke, which prouoketh the Canker. Then that which pertaineth vnto thicknesse, occupieth the next place, which doth ingender *Phagedænæ*, as *Galen* hath noted *Lib. 14. Meth. med.* The causes of a true *Erysipelas*, as also of a true *Phlegmone*, are three, *Prægressæ*, which are called also *Primitiue*, 2 *antecedentes*, and *coniunctæ*. But *Erysipelas* is seldome caused of any primitiue cause: notwithstanding violent frictions, the applying and ministring of attractiue medicines, do often times excite and cause the same.

Causæ veri Erysipelatis.

CHAP. XV.

Of the signes and tokens of a true Erysipelas.

Signes of Erysipelas.

THe markes and tokens of a true and exquisite *Erysipelas*, are gathered and knowne by conferring the same with *Phlegmone*, according to the doctrine of *Galen*, 14. *Therap.* and 2. *ad Glauconem*: whereby it plainly appeareth, that a true and lawfull *Erysipelas* is a certaine *Species* of *Phlegmone*, that is, of an inflammation as it is generally taken. The signes therefore of *Erysipelas* are these, a red colour to behold, declining somewhat to yellow, which yellowish colour doth easily yeeld to touching or handling of it, that is, by thrusting it downe with the fingers, and then it slideth in againe, a small tumour rather remaining in the skin, then descending deeply, vehement heate causing a more vehement feauer then that which is ascended of *Phlegmone*: for *Erysipelas* is farre away more hote then *Phlegmone*. No great or strong breaking of the pulses, which is the proper symptomate of a great *Phlegmone*. A biting and pricking paine without any extension, as it chanceth in *Phlegmone*, and many other like signes which do signifie the dominion and rule of choler. But that which pertaineth vnto the iudgement hereof, *Erysipelas* doth chiefly lay hold on the face, and beginneth commonly in that part of the nose which is commonly called *Lepus*; then straight way it spreadeth ouer the whole face, and that through a double occasion, that is, for the thinnesse of the skinne, and lightnesse of the choler. But in the vncouering or laying naked of any bone, *Erysipelas* is a sodaine and maruellous disease, as *Hippocrates* writeth *Lib. 7. Aphorisme* 19. that is to say, it is an euill symptomate, if the flesh lying round about the naked bone doth seeme to be occupied of *Erysipelas*, but this, as *Galen* witnesseth, chanseth very seldome. Againe, the same *Hippocrates* writeth in the Aphorisme following, that of *Erysipelas* there commeth corruption, suppuration, together with the disease, which things (saith *Galen*) neuer do chance to *Erysipelata*, except it be to them which are very malignant. A true and lawfull *Erysipelas* hath foure times or seasons, as other tumours also aboue nature haue: the signes whereof are to be sought out of those things which went before. An exquisite *Erysipelas* is seldome ended by suppuration, but chiefly through an insensible transpiration or resolution. There happen sometime in *Erysipelas* certaine symptomates, which oftentimes by reason of their greatnesse do exceed the very cause of the euill it selfe, and therefore they do hinde

A yellowish rednesse yeelding to the finger, a small tumour, vehement heate. Small pulse. Pricking paine. Indicia.

der the order of the cure, that is, they do change and peruert the method of curing (as hath also bene said before in *Phlegmone.*) Moreouer also *Erysipelas* followeth the mouing of a Tertian feauer, with whose matter it hath a certaine analogie and proportion: for the matter of them both is a cholericke humour. But it is not good to driue or turne *Erysipelas* from the outward parts to the inward, but contrariwise from the inward members to the outward parts, as *Hippocrates* hath written, *Lib. 6. Aphor.* 25. But those *Erysipelata* which do arise about the head, do put vs to more trouble, which (as *Paulus* saith) are wont to be so dangerous, that except they be holpen with some effectuall remedie, they somewhat strangle and choke the sicke. *Hippocrates* also writeth, that *Erysipelas* is very mortall and deadly, if it chanceth in the wombe of a woman with child; for *Erysipelas* being thus ingendred in the wombe, the child of necessitie dieth. For truly a sharpe feuer (as *Galen* saith in his commentaries) oftentimes destroyeth it without inflammation.

Erysipelas followeth the order of a tertian feauer.

Erysipelata about the head are very hard to be cured.

Erisipelas in the wombe of a woman killeth the child.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the cure of Erysipelas.

SEeing that *Erysipelas* (as also *Phlegmone* whereof we intreated a litle before) is a hote affect, and ingendred of the defluxion of humours, the method of the whole curing thereof shall also be two fold; that is to say, refrigeration, and euacuation. And as in *Phlegmone* the order of euacuation doth surmount and ouercome the method of refrigeration, so in *Erysipelas* refrigeration is more needfull then euacuation; for the one doth trouble and molest in quantitie, but the other (which is *Erysipelas*) in quality. Therefore *Erysipelas* must be greatly cooled and little emptied, whereas contrariwise an inflammation ought to be plentifully euacuated, and little refrigerated. Although there be a common Chapter and summe of curing both effects, (as *Galen* saith) that is, the vacuation of the troublesome humour: and therefore after that *Erysipelas* hath bene cooled, we vse those medicines which can digest or discusse. Furthermore that we may attaine vnto this vniuersall method which we haue said to be twofold (I meane refrigeration and euacuation of the noysome humour,) it shall not be amisse, if we declare this cure by foure other particular orders after the consent of the Chyrurgians of our time. The first scope consisteth in the right obseruation of a good diet. The second concerneth the auersion of the humour that floweth to the affected member, which they call *Antecedens materia.* The third consisteth in the emptying out of the humour which hath flowed alreadie into the diseased part, which they also call *Materia coniuncta.* The fourth and last is busied and occupied about the correction and keeping backe of the euill symptomates that may happen thereunto. We shall easily dispatch the first scope, if the applying of all those things which they call *Res non naturales*, shall belong vnto moistnesse, and to coldnesse, as is a feauer Tertian; seeing that *Erysipelas* hath his beginning of choler, which is of a hote and drie temperature. Therefore chuse and prepare an aire as neare as you can, that is somewhat cold and moist. In Sommer let the sicke be in a very cold house somewhat within the ground, that is windie, and towards the North. But if there be no such place to be had, and the aire be very hote, make it readie for him

Two generall orders in the cure of Erypelas.

Foure particular intentions of curing Erysipelas,

1.

2.

3.

4.

Three vnlawfull Erysipelas Herpes exedens.

him your selfe by Art. Powre cold water verie often out of one vessell into another, sprinkle the pauements of the house daily with water that is altogether vcie and cold. Spread vpon the floore Roses and Violets, Vine leaues and branches, Sallow boughes, and other flowers and buds which are of a cold and moist facultie. Let no great companie of men come into the parlour or place where the sicke abideth. Let him eschue all fat, sweet, sowre, and hote meates. Let him eate Lettuce, Gourds, Purslaine, Sorell (which they call *Acetosa*) Rice, and other things of that kinde, which do thicken and refrigerate bloud. Let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let his drinke be Ptisan broth, or Barley water. Let him keepe a temperate diet. Let his bellie be alwayes soft and soluble. Let him abstaine from all exercise and mouing, especially that which is vehement and immoderate. Let him eschue angar, contentions, and all vehement motions and perturbations of the mind, as mortall enemies. Let all things be cleane and handsome about him. Let him refraine from carnall copulation. And let these things suffice concerning the first cope. But we shall also bring to passe our second intent about the cure of *Erysipelas*, if by conuenient euacuation we take away the humour which is left behind in the bodie. Therefore in a true and lawfull *Erysipelas* (not necessarily as in *Phlegmone*) we must draw bloud out of a veine, but we must also purge the bellie downward with some medicine which can expell choler, (called of the Greekes *Cholagogon*) if that the affect be great, and the bodie doth seeme to abound with choler. Therefore when *Erysipelas* doth accend and kindle feauers, and those more vehement then *Phlegmone*, those medicines which are exceeding hote, as the iuyce of *Scammonium* (called of the new Greekes *Diacrydion*) and that also which is commonly called in the shops *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, are in no wise meet or conuenient for this disease, and therefore you must vse either Rewbarbe, or that potion which of *Rasis* is called *Aqua Tamarindorum*, which is made as followeth. ℞. Damaske prunes, xxiiij. *Tamarindi* that be new, ℥.x. of broken Sugar, quart. ß to the which things to make them more effectuall, you may adde Rewbarbe that is well washed. But if the euill be very little and small, these medicines called *Cholagoga* shall not neede, but it shall be sufficient to vse at that instant some sharpe clyster, (as it pleaseth *Galen*.) But in a phlegmonous *Erysipelas* your labour shall not be frustrate, if you shall begin the cure with bloudletting (if nothing do let it.) For that kind of *Erysipelas* doth often lay hold on the face; whereupon *Paulus* commandeth, that by and by in the beginning you must cut a veine in the elbow, especially chusing in it the shoulder veine. But if that do not appeare, you must take that which is most obiect to the sight. And if any thing do hinder the detraction of bloud, he commandeth to vse a purgation made of some medicine which is dedicated and appointed to driue out choler; yet *Paulus* doth not contend with *Galen*: for whereas *Paulus* hath commanded to cut a veine in that *Erysipelas* which doth rise about the head and face, he meant that of a phlegmonous *Erysipelas*, which verie often molesteth the face: but *Galen* speaketh of a lawfull *Erysipelas*, wherein he vsed no detraction of bloud. But in *Erysipelas œdematòsum* or *scirrhòsum*, you must vse a purgation which hath a mingled & manifold force, that is, which can purge, partly choler, partly fleame, or a melancholy humor.

Cibus.

Potus.

Motus. Animi affectus. Venus.

Secundus scopus.

2. ad Glauc. In a phlegmonous Erysipelas it is good to let bloud.

And

And truly in all these things the aduise of some wise and learned Physition is to be asked, from whose counsell and decree the Chyrurgian ought not in any wise to swerue or digest. And let this be sufficient, that once you haue bene admonished, that the Chyrurgian ought not to attempt any thing at all in those things which belong vnto purging and bloud-letting, without the counsell and warrant of some cunning Physition, except sometime necessitie shall compell him, and when no Physition is readie at hand. The third intention is finished and performed by cooling and repelling medicines in the beginning of the fluxe, excepted those causes which we haue mentioned in our generall discourse. But the beginning being passed, and fluxe now remaining, you must emptie that which cleaueth fast vnto the member, and is compacted therein, by applying outwardly digistiue or euaporatiue medicines, that is to say, through the transpiration and breathing through to the sense. But of all these kinds of tumours thus consisting aboue nature, there is a double euacuation. (*Galen Lib. 4. Therap*) one of repulsiues to the other parts, the other of outward digestiues, through that vaporous breathing which doth flie the sense. But because *Erysipelas* doth afflict and molest not onely in quantitie, but also in the verie qualitie, by reason of the vehement inflammation, it doth require a more often and greater refrigeration then *Phlegmone* doth. Therefore after the emptying of the whole body (as we haue said a little before) we will vse repressiue remedies, cooling as is conuenient the afflicted member, or that part which sustaineth the skinne: especially when *Erysipelas* is engendred without any manifest cause. But the end of refrigeration is the mutation or change of the colour: for that which is a pure *Erysipelas* doth by and by rest and ceasse with this; but that which is not pure, but after a sort Phlegmonous, if you shall refrigerate it much, it maketh the skin blacke and blew: but if you shall desist from seeking to change the colour, it waxeth black, especially in an aged body: so that some of those refrigerated tumors cannot perfectly be healed, no not with digesting medicines, but that some scirrhous tumours will remaine behind in the member. It is farre better therefore (saith *Galen*) when you see the colour of the affected member altered, to passe ouer from refrigeration and moderating helpes vnto their contraries, that is, vnto dissoluing or digesting and drying remedies, before that the member be altogether blew or blacke. But you must alwayes beware and take good heed, that those things which be annointed, be verie liquide and moist, and that they be often changed, and that those things which be applyed, be often washed with sponges dipped in some liquor: for the great heate of the member quickly bursting forth into a vapour, doth dry vp these things. But amongst those things which carrie with them a frigerating and repelling force, verie conuenient for this affect, *Auicen* chiefly praiseth among simple remedies the sprinkling one of cold water. But *Galen* commendeth the iuyce of Nightshade, of Syngreen, of Purslaine of *Psillii*, of Henbane, of Lettuce, of *Vmbilicus veneris* (which herbe is called of the Greekes *Cotylidon*) of Endiue and Succorie, of fenne Lintels, of Gourds, and other of that sort. Also that cerate made of very cold water, which containeth foure times as much of oyle of Roses with white waxe. ℞. oyle of Roses with oyle of vnripe Grapes made without salt,

In phlebotomy and purging, the Chyrurgia must be taught by the Physition.

Tertia intentio.

Hic Guido deprauatè citat Gal.

How much Erysipelas is to be refrigerated.

Lib. 14. Ther.

Materia refrigerantium ex Gal.

Ceratum.

which being made very ſoft and pliable in a mortar, ſprinkle on cold water as much as you thinke good, with the which if you commixe a little Vineger that is thin and very cleare, you ſhall make the medicine more excellent and more effectuall. Moreouer all theſe things muſt be miniſtred cold, and often changed, before they be any thing dried or withered. It profiteth alſo very much & that preſently, to annoint the member annoyed with *Eryſipelas*, with Ceruſe onely, or mingled with Vineger and *Lycium*, or with *Terra cimolia* or with potters clay, with Nightſhade, or with *Spuma argenti*, with oyle of Roſes, and with *Acatia* with vineger. To this purpoſe alſo this compound following helpeth much. ℞. iuyce of Plantaine, ℥. j. oyle of Roſes, ℥. iij. *Litharg yri nutriti*, ℥ j. *Ceruſæ lotæ*, ℥. iij. of womans milke, ℥. ß. Let all be commixed together, and brayed in a leaden mortar, and make a Liniment. But *Litharg yrum* and *Ceruſa* ought firſt to be beaten and then the oyle and iuyce aforeſaid muſt be powred on them ſoftly by little and little, vntill they be throughly incorporated together the one with the other. But if you deſire greater coolers, you may cõmixe with theſe and other remedies before recited (according to *Paulus mind*) a little *Opium* or *Cicuta*, or Mandrake. But I thinke it good to abſtaine from applying either of them or the like, which are of a ſtupefactiue nature, except great neceſſitie doth moue you thereunto. But when the inflammation of the affected member is ſomewhat abated, and the heate of *Eryſipelas* ſlaked, *Galen* (before any blewneſſe did appeare through refrigeration) did vſe to diſſolue the humour gotten into the member (which they call *coniuncta materia*) by laying on a Cataplaſme of Barley meale, or of *cruda Pelenta* (called in Greeke ὦμὴ πόσις) and of other things before mentioned in the order of curing *Phlegmone*. For euen as the ſignes of *Eryſipelas* were deſumed and knowne by the analogie of the tokens of *Phlegmone*: ſo alſo the remedies of the cure of *Eryſipelas* are to be fetched from the proportion of the remedies of healing *Phlegmone*. Furthermore of ſuch kind of medicines which haue a diſſoluing & breathing qualitie, very neceſſarie in this euill, there are very many, both ſimples and compounds, rehearſed of *Paulus Ægineta*, *lib. 4. cap.* 21. and of *Ætius*, *lib.* 14. *de re Medica*. But now it ſhall be ſufficient to rehearſe among ſo many, one onely remedie, which of all the reſt ſeemeth in my opinion to be moſt excellent, ℞. of the tender leaues of *Althæa*, ℔. j. boyle them in *Hydrelæum*, and being well boyled, bray them well together, putting thereunto of oile of Roſes ℥. iij j. *Argenti ſpumæ*, and *Ceruſæ*, ana. ℥. ij ß. againe plaine or ſmooth thẽ with the iuyce of Coriander, or Syngreene, or Nightſhade: then put thereunto a few crummes of bread, and annoint them after the manner of an Emplaiſter. But if peraduenture blewneſſe ſhall not occupie the place (the skin being cut before) you muſt lay a Cataplaſme aboue vpon it, and ſprinkle the place abundantly, as *Galen* hath commanded, with hote water: for it doth digeſt and waſh the wound. Alſo water and ſalt brine in the meane ſeaſon ſhall auaile to nouriſh or cheriſh the place, when it is ſomewhat thicke and groſſe, which things do ſcoure and cleanſe the thickneſſe thereof. The fourth intention of the cure of *Eryſipelas*, which is the correction of the accidents, is perfected (as we haue ſaid in the cure of *Phlegmone*) when as we ſhall returne and driue backe the recourſe of the matter, induration, and corruption together with the paine and

A compound medicine.

Euacuation of the ioyned matter by euaporatiues. ἐξαμβλύσις.

Hydrelæum is a mixture of water & oyle.

Si liuor iam locũ occuparit.

Quarta intentio.

the

the heate. For these symptomates are wont to happen as well vnto *Erysipelas*, as vnto *Phlegmoue*. Moreouer the best remedie to asswage paine and vehement heate, is made of leaues and roots of Henbane, which you must roll vp in tow and seeth them with Prunes: then commixe them with the ointment commonly called *Populeon*, or with Swines greace (as is said before in the cure of *Phlegmone*.) But if *Erysipelas* shall chance to be exulcerated, you shall cure it with applying *Vnguentum album* or *Vnguentū de Lythargyro*, with the which if you shall commixe a little *Scoria*, which is the drosse of lead molten in the fire, you make the remedie most excellent and effectuall. But it shall be more profitable to comprehend the whole order of the cure of *Erysipelas* in some short sentences, after the manner of an Epilogue, that those things whereof we haue spoken before somewhat at large, may take the deeper roote in our minds and memorie. For this cause therefore we haue taken out of *Galen* these seuen Aphorismes following, which summarily do containe the whole cure of *Erysipelas*. 1. In an exquisite *Erysipelas* make no detraction of bloud. 2. If the bodie be full of choler, and the affect be great, purge the bellie downeward with the medicine of *Cholagogon* 3. If the disease be little & small, and the body without choler, vse no medicine to purge choler, but content your selfe with some sharpe clyster. 4. When you haue purged the whole body (as you must) annoint the affected in the beginning with medicines that can moderatly represse and abundantly refrigerate, euen to the changing of the colour. 5. When you see the colour of the aggrieued member altered, and the heate of *Erysipelas* slaked, and the inflammation ceassed, you must passe ouer from refrigerating and adstrictiue medicines before that the member be throughly blew or blacke, vnto their contraries, that is, vnto digestiues, or discussiues & drying remedies. 6. Those *Erysipelata* which are caused of vlcers, and other manifest causes, you must scarifie, and afterward apply a Cataplasme of Barley meale. 7. If *Erysipelas* be not exquisite or true, but phlegmonous, you may let bloud without fearing any thing, specially if bloud do abound in the body.

A remedie to mitigate paine and heate.

If Erysipelas be exulcerated

Seuen Apher. out of Galen concerning the whole cure of Erysipelas.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Tumours which do associate Erysipelas, as Herpes both Miliaris and Exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians cholericke pushes.

De Herpete.

THOSE tumours aboue nature which haue any societie with the aboue mentioned *Erysipelas*, or any way do seeme to pertaine thereunto (for that they haue their proceeding of vnnaturall and hidden choler, that is, which is not mingled with other humours) both the latter sort of Physitions and also of Chyrurgians, do call *Mala cholericæ pustulæ*: But the Grecians, as *Hippocrates*, *Galen* and *Paulus*, do call them *Herpetæ*, which word doth almost sound and agree with the Latines, as *Malum quod serpit*, the creeping euill. For ἕρπω in Greeke, is all one with *serpo* in Latine, whereupon ἕρπης is called *serpens*; yet *Herpes* doth not perfectly signifie among the Physitions *Malū quod serpit*, but a certaine kind of disease whereof we now intreate: therefore the creeping euill extendeth and stretcheth further then *Herpes*; for *Phagedænæ* are also called

Pustulæ cholericæ vulgò appellatæ Herpetes.

Formica Auicennæ. *serpentia vlcera*, creeping vlcers. But *Auicen* called all these kind of pushes *Formicæ*, and *Galen* numbreth them among inflammations, but *Celsus* seemeth to comprehend them vnder the name of *sacer ignis*. *Lib.5.cap.28.*

When Herpes is caused. *Herpes* therefore is caused, when yellow choler, vnnaturally alone, and secret, that is to say, which is commixed with no other humour, doth flow into some member, and there remaineth: whose substance if it be any thing thicke and sharpe, it exulcerateth the whole skin, euen to the flesh which lyeth vnder it, and then this euill is called of *Hippocrates* and other Grecians, ἕρπης ἐσθιόμενος, but of the Latines *Herpes exedens* or *depascens*, an eating or feeding *Herpes*; and it is called

Two kinds of Herpes.

1. ἕρπης ἐσθιόμενος. *i. exedens, vel depascens.*

14. *Therap.* of *Galen*, by this absolute name, *Herpes*. But if choler be somewhat thinne, and not so thicke and hote, it exciteth small whelkes outwardly in the superficies of the skinne (for that it doth not onely as it were burne but scald) like vnto the seed of Millet or Hirse: by reason of which similitude and likenesse, the affect is then termed of the Latines *Miliaris herpes*: but of certaine of the Grecians after *Hippocrates* time, it was called for the same reason

2. κέγχρια, *siue Herpes miliaris.*

κέγχρια: for κέγχρις in Greeke, is called *Milium* with vs. And this kind of spices of *Herpes* (*Galen* witnessing the same, *lib.2. ad Glauconem*) doth borrow his name or title of the generall word, seeing that the same *Galen* calleth it *Herpes*

Lib.14. Ther.

simply and without addition. Notwithstanding in another place by the name of *Herpes*, *Galen* calleth it *Herpes esthiomenos*, that is, *exedens* as afterward shall be said. But this kinde doth not altogether cause the vlcer, as the other doth which is called *exedens*, but as hath bene said, it exciteth little small pushes to the likenesse of *Milium*, which pushes in processe of time, when they are broken out, do turne vnto an vlcer. Therefore not without great reason or cause

Ex Paulo & Gal.

did *Oribasius* and certaine other also before *Galens* time, iudge and thinke, that in this kind of euill, there was mixed with choler some thinne fleame, which did bring forth those little pushes, whereupon it was called of some *pustulosus*

Lib. de tumoribus præter naturam.

Herpes. But the other which is called *Esthiomenos*, is not so mixed with fleame, but seemeth to be a pure choler infected with no other humour: and therefore it chanceth with erosion, which continually affecteth the skin, whereupon this name is attributed vnto it. For *Esthiomenos* is all one with *erodens* or *exedens*. And truly this euill is of one and the same kinde with a pustulous and exulcerate *Erysipelas*, from the which notwithstanding it somewhat differeth by reason of the thinnesse of that bilious humour (whereof both of them do take their beginning.) That is that which *Galen* testifieth in these words: It is (saith he) a very thinne humour which raiseth *Herpes*, and so thinne truly, that it passeth through not onely all the inward members, which are euery where of a

Lib.4.Metho. medendi.

The cholericke humour which causeth Herpes is very thinne.

fleshie substance, but also through the very skin, euen vnto the outward little skin (which is called of the Greekes *Epidermida*) which onely because it stayeth there, it both gnaweth and feedeth on: but if it should also pierce through this, after the manner of a sweate, it should in no wise excite any vlcer; for that is a common thing vnto vlcers which do arise of a biting humour, which vlcers they call *Spontanea*, because the humour which causeth them is stayed, and tarieth still in their going out or issue: hitherto *Galen*. When he nameth *Herpes* simply and without any addition, he meaneth *Herpes esthiomenos*, as it is easie to be knowne by the ioyning together thereof, by the signes and cure; and so

in

in that place it borroweth his title of the generall word, when it is simply and absolutely called *Herpes*, as in that little booke *de Tumoribus præter naturam*, where the same *Galen* writeth thus of that same kind of *Herpes* word for word; *Herpes* also feedeth and gnaweth vpon those parts which are about it, but the exulceration is of the skin onely. But almost all the barbarous sort of Chyrurgians, euen those of late time, do comprehend both these kinds of *Herpes*, viz. *Miliaris* and *Exedens*, vnder this title of *Formicæ*, to whom both in this thing, and in many other also, *Auicen* first gaue the occasion of error; who being deceiued by the likenesse of the name, because the Greeks call *Myrmeciæ*, that is, *Formicæ*, a certaine kind of *Verrucæ*, hath through a maruellous ouersight, euen in the same Chapter, confounded those *Verrucæ* with *Herpetes*. *Guido* notwithstanding maketh a difference betweene *Herpes* and *Formica*, and confoundeth the name of *Formica* sometimes with *Verrucæ*, which the Greekes call *Myrmeciæ* and *Acrochordonæ*, sometime with *Herpes exedens*, which (I meane *Herpes comedens*) is sometime named of the same *Guido Herpestes*, somtime absolutely *Herpes*, who also thought this *Herpes* to be nothing else but a pustulous and vlcerated *Erysipelas*, when this notwithstanding, as we haue alledged out of *Galen*, doth differ from the other by reason of the thinnesse of the humour. For that choler which exciteth *Herpes*, is thinner then that which causeth an vlcerate *Erysipelas*. Furthermore *Erysipelas*, which chanceth with vlceration, doth not onely occupie the skin, but with it also it annoyeth some part of the flesh vnder it. But *Herpes*, whereof we now intreate, layeth hold on the skin onely, & exulcerateth it. Therefore although these euils are of one and the same kinde, (as *Galen* thought) yet they are not altogether one, neither are they alike. Those whelkes also which the interpreter of *Auicen* and the vnlearned companie of Physitions do terme *Morbili*, *Hippocr lib. 3. Epidemiarum* hath comprehended vnder *Herpes*. But these *Morbili* are caused of a more thin and slender matter, then those pushes which are commonly called *Variolæ*. For these (as *Auicen* writeth) proceed of bloud, but the other are caused through the admixtion of choler & bloud. But if any man do long or desire to know what name the ancient Physitiõs did bequeath vnto these pustulous vlcers, we haue declared that in Latine they are called of *Plinie*, *Papulæ*, and sometime *pituitæ eruptiones*, flegmaticke eruptions, but in Greeke of *Hippocrates lib. 3. Epidemiarum*, *Ecthymata*, of *Galen*, *Exanthemata*. But the signes, iudgements and causes of both kinds of *Herpes*, may sufficiently be knowne by those things that went before. It remaineth therefore that we now declare the cure of them. In curing these euils called *Herpetes*, (as in other such like voluntary vlcers which haue their originall of a biting and vehement humour) three intentions are to be obserued and marked. The first is, that the confluxion of the humour vnto the affected part be stopped and letted. The second is, to make euacuation, of that, whatsoeuer is flowne already into the aggrieued member, and sticketh fast in the same. The third is, to heale the vlcer. We do finish our first intent, by purging the whole body with some medicine that can bring forth the humour whereof the euill doth grow, and when the body is throughly emptied by repressing & driuing backe the humor that floweth. Therefore in *Herpes exedens* we must vse some medicine which can prouoke choler downward, seeing (as

Herpes exulcerateth onely the skinne.

Auicen confoundeth myrmeciæ with herpetes.

Herpes Esthiomenos and Erysipelas vlceratum, are all one.

Morbili sunt ex Herpetum genere.

Variolæ.

Papularum eruptiones.

Ecthymata.

Herpetum curatio.

Three things to be marked in the cure of Herpes.

1. 2.

3.

Primus scopus.

Herpes requireth the medicine Cholagogon.

we haue ſaid before) a pure and ſincere billous humor doth procreate this euil. It hapneth therefore that in reſpect of the emptying of the whole body, *Comedentes Herpetes* muſt be cured like vnto *Eryſipelata*. Therefore becauſe it is a thin and wateriſh humor which cauſeth this euill, *Galen* hath ſufficiently declared to mollifie & ſoften the belly gently, or to prouoke vrine with thoſe things which can moderately cauſe the ſame. But in the other kind of *Herpetes*, which by reaſon of the ſimilitude which it hath with *Milium*, we haue ſaid to be called in Greeke *Miliaris* and *Cenchria*, there is required ſome remedie which is of a mixed faculty, that is, which can purge forth both choler and fleame. For ſome haue thought, and that not without great reaſon, (as *Galen* ſaith) that in this euill there is ſome fleame commixed with choler. Furthermore that humour which aboundeth in the body and cauſeth this euill, being emptied out (as it is required) you muſt apply thoſe medicines which can repreſſe & keepe backe the flowing of the humour; for then miniſtring of them ſhall be more without danger, and more conuenient alſo, ſeeing that (as *Galen* ſaith) if one do thruſt backe but a little portion of the vicious humour, which after conuenient purging remaineth yet in the body, to the bowels and great veines, it will not cauſe any ſenſible euill at all, that can be felt. But if the quantitie of the humour be great, it ſometime coucheth it ſelfe in ſome principall member, whereas through the force of the purging nature, the whole body is not euacuated, either by purging downeward, or by vrine, or by the skin, which includeth the whole body. But repreſſiues and repulſiues be not onely thoſe which do bind, but alſo thoſe which can refrigerate without any aſtriction. Of which nature are theſe, Lettuce, Knotgraſſe, fenne or pond Lintils, Purſlaine, Endiue, Syngreene, and other of that ſort, which were very conuenient alſo for *Eryſipelas*. But thoſe medicines which beſide their cooling, are alſo apt by nature to moiſten *Herpetes*, eſpecially *depaſcentes*, do in no wiſe require, but they do onely admit thoſe refrigeratiues which can alſo greatly drie vp. For thoſe remedies which haue but a meane and weake force to coole and drie, as is Nightſhade, are not ſufficient for them. Therefore by *Galens* counſell you muſt in the beginning lay vpon them the yong tender buds of the Vine Bramble leaues, of *Rubum caninum*, and Plantaine. After apply alſo with theſe Lintels, ſometime Honie & Barley meale. Alſo miniſter that Cataplaſme *ſine Semperuiuo*, which is appointed for thoſe phlegmonous tumours which proceed of fluxe; for it doth repell that which floweth, and it dryeth vp that which is contained in the affected member, and it ſtrengtheneth the parts about it. The beginning of the being paſt, this remedy auaileth greatly. Make a Cataplaſme of the rinds of Pomegranates ſodden in wine, and of *Rhu* or *Rhoe*, that is of the ſeeds of the ſhrub *Coriarium* (which of the late Phyſitions is called *Sumach*) and of the meale of Barley. But by this Cataplaſme you ſhall very wel accompliſh the ſecond intention or ſcope of curing *Herpes*, becauſe it is of ſufficient power to digeſt that which is flowed already into the affected place: for it appeareth euidently, that thoſe remedies which haue a repreſſing faculty, ought to exceed in the generation of the vlcer; but when the vicious humour doth ceaſſe to flow any more into the affected part, then thoſe medicines are requiſite which do digeſt. As concerning our third intent, which declareth the

Herpes miliaris requireth a remedie which can purge both choler and fleame.

Reprimendi tempus.

Lib. 14. Therap.

Repreſſiues are not to be vſed if the humour be plentifull.

Reprimentium materia.

Theſe remedies which do coole & moyſten are not meete for herpes exedens.

Repreſſiues meete for herpes exedens.

Cataplaſma. Sumach.

Theſe things do accompliſh our ſecond intention.

cure

cure of the vlcer, it behoueth you briefly to know these things following, viz. That euery vlcer whether it cometh of the owne accord, or be caused of some accidentall cause, doth desire to be dried vp by some medicine (as *Hippocrates* saith) that is not sharpe, byting, or vehemently prouoking, except, when the vlcers be malicious and full of corruption; for such euils (saith *Galen*) require more sharpe medicines, and those which haue euen the power of fire, as is *Mysos* and *Chalcitis*, and *Arsenicum*, and Lime, and *Sandaracha*, and other things of that kind, which burne as hote as fire. Those places therefore that are exulcerated in *Herpes exedens*, must be tended with Pils, and Trochisks, written for the cure of *Herpes* in those bookes which are called *Pharmaceutici*: which remedies, when necessity compelleth vs to vse them, must be throughly washed in *Passum* or in some other sweete wine, or if sweet wine be not ready at hand, in thin and somewhat sharpe wine, which is not too old (that is, which for age hath no sharpe tast) or else in *Posca aquosa* (which they call *Oxycratum*) *Paulus* in *Herpes* which annoyeth vnder the skin, vseth these remedies; the scowrings of Lead steeped in the iuyce of smooth Rew, or a Cerate of Mirtles in stead of Rew. Another of old wooll, washed and burnt about a torch, ℥ xij. ß. of Waxe, ℥ xxv. of the scourings of Lead, ℥ j. of Goates tallow trimmed and washed with water, ℥ xxv. of Mirtles, ℥ v. But for those *Herpetes* that do gnaw and bite vehemently called *depascentes*, he chargeth to vse this remedie. ℞. of the rind of sweete Pomegranats, ℥ vj. *Argenti spuma*, ℥ vj. of washed wooll cleauing to the torch or to some sweete wood, and that burnt, ℥ iii. of Waxe, ℥ xii. of Ceruse, ℥ viii. of Frankinsence, Alume scissible, ana ℥ i. let them be steeped in wine or in oile of Mirtles. But now the vlcers being of long continuance, those Trochiskes abouesaid, and other such like medicines which are appointed to cure *Herpetes*, must be washed neither in sweet wine nor in *Posca aquosa*, but rather in wine that is somewhat sharpe, especially in that which is blacke, and if that be not to be had, you must vse white wine. But those medicines which are most effectuall and most meete at that time, when the vlcers be inueterate, are the Pils of *Musa*, *Andron*, and *Polyida*, whose descriptions are set downe in the end of the cure of *Carbunculus*, and those Trochiskes also, which of *Auicen* and the latter sort of Physitions are called *Calidicon* and *Aldaron*. But those *Herperes* which do onely exulcerate the outward skin, as they be which we haue called *Miliares*, must in no wise be enioyned to any of those medicines before rehearsed (if we will credit *Galen*) for they be very vehement and do greatly drie. But those medicines whatsoeuer they be, which haue the nature and force of *Glaucium*, that is, of *Memytha*, shall suffice these vlcers, and you must wash them with this, but specially with water. But if these things shall nothing auaile, you must also commixe Vineger therewith. Also if you annoint it with iuyce of Nightshade, or Plantaine, you shall helpe it greatly. Hitherto haue we spoken of *Herpes*. Now because in that which we haue said, we haue not as yet touched by the way any thing concerning the euils called *Formicæ*, which both the Arabians, and the latter sort of Physitions do erroneously, as we haue said, confound with *Herpetes*: this place doth require that we set downe a few words, both of them and of other tumours, and increasings appearing in the skin, which the Latines call *Verrucæ*.

The cure of the vlcer in herpes is our third scope.

Euery vlcer must be dried vp.

Lib. 2. ad Glau.

How exulcerated places must be looked to.

Posca.

Remedies take out of Paulus.

Aliud.

Ad herpetes depascentes.

For inueterate vlcers.

What is to be done in pustule miliares if they turne into an vlcer.

Lib. secundo ad Glauconem

Of the euils called Formicæ, and of other differences of Verrucæ.

Verrucæ. Porra.

THose little tumours, or low swellings, which are seene to appeare in the skinne like little hillockes, the Latines haue fitly called *Verrucæ*; for *Verrucæ* signifieth properly the highest part of a mountaine or hill: but the common sort call them *Porra*, Leeks, because sometime they haue certaine threads lying betweene them not much vnlike vnto the rootes of Leeks. The Greeks haue no name wherein they may comprehend all those kindes of *Verrucæ*, but they do call a certaine kind thereof by proper names, which be these, μυρμηκία, ἀκροχορδόνες, ἥλους, θύμιον. *Verrucæ* therefore of them be called *Myrmecia*, which are of a large foundation, and as it were sitting iust to the ground, and when they be touched, they are felt painefull like vnto the biting or stinging of an Ant; whereupon their name is giuen vnto them: for the Greeks do call μύρμηκα, *Formica*. Wherefore the Latins applying the name thereof to the Greeke word haue called *Formicæ*, *Verrucæ*, & for their forme and fashion, *Sessiles Verrucæ*. These euils, saith *Celsus*, *lib.* 5. do grow either in the palmes of the hands or in the soles of the feete: but these take deeper roote, and are lower and harder then a wart, and do cause greater paine: and they seud forth more store of bloud, and they scarce at any time exceed the bignesse of a Hop. But *Acrochordon* is a *Verruca* that is as it were hanging, & of a more narrow foundation, that is, a certaine round bignesse or growing vp in the skin which hath the foundation, that is, the neather part, very straight to the skin. It is so called because it seemeth to hang as though it were tyed with a string. By this difference therefore *Acrochordones* are distinguished from *Myrmecia*, because they are very small at the neather end next the skin, but at the other end are very large & broad: contrariwise *Myrmecia* (as hath bene said) are of a large foundation, but at the other end they are very small and slender. But these oftentimes are equall together with the skin, and *Acrochordones* do alwayes appeare aboue the skin, (as *Gal.* 14 *lib. de morbis curandis* hath manifestly declared.) Beside these things *Acrochordones* (as *Celsus* saith) do grow vp thicke and many together, and do most trouble children, and oftentimes they fall againe suddenly, and sometime they cause but meane inflammation: there are some also which are turned into corrupted matter, but they seldome passe the greatnesse of a Beane. They be called of *Auicen*, *Claui*, but the Latins do terme *Claui*, *Verrucæ albæ*, because they be like to the round heads of nailes. These do chiefly happen in the fingers, and the soles of the feete, where they do cause great paine: the Greekes call them ἥλοι, but *Auicen*, *Almismar*. These be often caused of a bruise, and sometime otherwise. But *Thymion* or *Thymon*, in English a wart, is called of *Celsus* and of the Greeks *Verruncula*, a little hillocke, appearing aboue the body, which at the neather part next the skinne is very small (as *Acrochordon* is) but aboue it is more large: it is also somewhat hard, and very sharpe in the top, which doth represent the colour of the floure Thyme, whereupon the name is giuen vnto it, and also it is easily spread abroad. Oftentimes it giueth forth some bloud, and is almost as great as an Ægyptian Beane,

Seſſiles Verrucæ.

Acrochordon penſilis verrucæ.

The difference between Acrochordon and Myrmecia.

Clauí.

ἥλοι.

Almiſmar.

Thymion.

Thymij magnitudo.

seldome

seldome bigger, but sometime lesser: sometime there groweth vp one alone, sometime many other, either in the ankles of the feete, or in the hands, or in the soles of the feete. But the worst *Thymia* of all are in the filthie parts of the bodie, where they do commonly bleed. *Auicen* seemeth to haue named this kinde of *Verruca*, *Tusium*, or (as another translation hath) *Tarseum*. Of this kinde of *Verrucæ* be those euils also, which *Auicen* called *Cornua*, not much differing from the other sorts, but that they be somewhat long, and are turned crooked againe, like vnto hornes. The euils called *Calli* (called of the Greekes Τύλλοι) do not much differ from the aforenamed *Claui*, but that they be of themselues without griefe and nothing painfull, and of the colour of the skin wherein they are resident; neither do they ingender of themselues or of their owne accord, but of the hardnesse of the skin caused by labour.

Thymia in obscœnis pessima.

Cornua.

Calli Tylmoi.

CHAP. XIX.

The iudgement and cure of Verrucæ.

AMoug all these euils *Acrochordon* and *Thymion* are oftentimes (as *Celsus* reporteth) ended, and do heale of themselues, and the lesser they be, the sooner they be ended. But *Myrmecia* and *Claui* do scarre at any time ceasse without curing. If *Acrochordon* be cut off, it leaueth no roote behind it, and therefore it groweth not againe. But where *Thymion* and *Clauus* be cut off, there riseth vp vnderneath a little round roote, which descendeth downe somewhat deepe into the flesh, and there abiding, it doth cause the aforesaid euils to grow againe. *Myrmecia* doe hold fast with verie broade rootes; and therefore they cannot be cutte off without great vlceration. It is profitable to cut off *Clauus*, and then sprinkle it ouer with hoate water; for so it doth waxe soft and tender without any more ado: and it doth bleed, it oftentimes dyeth and ceasseth. It is also taken away, by cleansing it round about, & by laying on it Rosin mixed with the beaten powder of *Lapis molaris*. But the other kindes (as the same *Celsus* affirmeth) must be cured with hote medicines. Now the fittest remedie for the other euils, is that which is made of the dregs of wine; and that medicine is good for *Myrmecia* which is made of Alume and yellow Oaker. *Paulus Ægineta lib 4 cap* 15. rehearseth very many remedies, which doth take away and vtterly abolish these *Verrucæ*, especially those which be *Sessiles* and *pensiles*. Of the which kinde are *Elaterium* (which is the iuyce of wilde Cucumbers) rubbed on with Salt, the barke of Frankensence with Vineger, rathe ripe Figges, which are ripe before their time, with Vineger, meale and *Nitrum*. Also the iuyce of *Tythymalus*, in English Spurge, the head of the fish *Smaris* salted and burnt, the rust of some mettall with quicke brimstone, that is, which is not throughly burnt in the fire, the leaues of *Ocymum* with shoemakers bleach, (which, the Greekes call *Chalcanthum*) the water of the greene twigges of the Vine burnt in the fire, sheeps dung with Vineger, goates gall annointed, the fruite of the great herbe *Heliotropium* applyed by it selfe, or ministred with wine. Rew with *Nitrum* and Pepper, *Nitrum* with the vrine of a yong boy not yet accusto-

Acrochordon, Thymion. Lib. 5. Myrmecia. Clauus.

Myrmecia. The cure of Verrucæ out of Paulus.

Aqua ex sarmentis distillans.

Stercus bubulum.

med with venereous acts, oxes dung miniſtred in Vineger. But theſe which we haue mentioned as remedies for the extirpation of *Myrmecia* and *Acrochordones*, are greatly alſo effectuall for thoſe euils called *Clauꝰ* and *Thymia*. They do vſe alſo the head of a Liſard to take away *Myrmecia*, *Acrochordones*, and *Clauꝰ*. There are ſome which do boile the heades of ſalted fiſhes in that water which diſtilleth out of greene branches, while they be burning: which they

Lacertæ caput.

do declare to be a moſt excellent remedie for the aforeſaid euils. Other ſome to extinguſh theſe diſeaſes, do make a Liniment of the ruſt of braſſe, (which of the late Phyſitions is called *Viride æris & flos æris*) of Brimſtone, and of the diſtilled water of Vine branches. And this is the onely method of curing which they are wont to vſe in racing out of *Verrucæ*, that is, by gnawing and ſcalding medicines. But this one thing is moſt diligently to be obſerued in adminiſtring ſuch kinde of medicines, which *Celſus* doth admoniſh vs of in his fift booke: namely, that thoſe parts which are about the euils, ought to be couered with leaues, leſt they alſo be exulcerate; for which cauſe ſome do annoint the places about the diſeaſes, with ointment of Bolearmoniacke, with *Terra ſigillata*, with Roſe water and Vineger. Furthermore we aboliſh *Acrochordones*, *Myrmecia*, and *Thymia*, not onely with theſe aforeſaid burning medicines, but alſo with the fleame of fire, or with ſome hote inſtrumẽt rightly

Other orders of curing.

applyed to them. Oftentimes alſo we cut them off But ſometime we do take them away and vtterly deſtroy them, by a ligature cunningly made and prepared for them, (as it hapneth in that true diſeaſe called *Ficus*) or elſe by ſetting too the foreteeth, as ſome at Rome in *Galens* time were wont to do But if you ſhall apply fire or ſome hote inſtrument to *Verruca*, you muſt prouide that a plate of Iron or ſome ſuch thing, being bored through, be made ready

How Verrucæ are ſafely burned.

for the burnt ſore, the hole whereof muſt ſo fitly comprehend the ſame, that none of the skin about it may be ſeene. Aduſtion being now made, you muſt reſolue the cruſt with Butter, or with ſome other annointing medicine. Afterward you muſt cure the ſore like vnto other vlcers. But how *Myrmecia*, which

The cure of Myrmecia being equal with the skinne.

do not appeare out of the skin, but altogether equall therewith, ought to be brought forth and cut off, *Galen* teacheth verie well *lib.* 14. *Metho. Med.* where he maketh mention of one in his time at Rome, who deuiſed a new

A new cure of Myrmecia out of Galen.

order to cure theſe *Verrucæ*; firſt he brought out the euils by applying his lips vnto them, or by ſucking them, and then (which did ſeeme maruellous) he plucked them from the roote; afterward ſetting too his foreteeth, he vtterly de-

Another cure of Myrmecia, Lib. 14. *Meth. Med.*

ſtroyed them. But *Acrochordones*, appearing aboue the skin, he ſtraight way bit off with his teeth, and ſo quickly diſpatched them, *Galen* alſo ſetteth downe another double manner to cure theſe euils ſaying: But a Chyrurgian being ſomewhat exerciſed in manuall practiſe, may eaſily cut off theſe *Verrucæ*, both

Scalprum.

with that inſtrument made to the forme of a Mirtle leafe, and with that alſo

Scolopomacherion.

which the Greekes call *Scolopomacherion:* this alwayes prouided, that the ſore be kept and ſeparated from the skin or parts about it. We alſo bring forth

Another cure inuented, by a quill.

Myrmecia, by laying ſome ſtrong and ſtiffe quill about the compaſſe or circle thereof, the hollowneſſe of which quill muſt be equall with the thickneſſe of *Myrmecia*, that it may pinch it round about in euery place, which being afterward turned about the ſore, and enforced downeward, it will quickly bring

foorth

forth the whole *Myrmecia* together with the very roote; but you muſt marke, that the very end of the quill which ſhall cut it in a circle, ought to be not only thin and ſlender, but alſo ſharpe & ſtrong. The quill therefore of an old Cocke, or rather of an Eagle is very fit for this purpoſe. But you muſt cut it off onely towards the roote, ſeeing the hollowneſſe of the other part of the quill may eaſily comprehend *Myrmecia*. And truly by this abſceſſion, if it be done cunningly, you ſhall learne great Art. Hitherto ſpeaketh *Galen*. But the vlcer which remaineth (*Verruca* being thus taken away) muſt be filled vp and brought vnto a ſcarre, as other vlcers be.

Prima ſcitè radicem verſus abſcindenda.

CHAP. XX.

Of Oedema, and other cold, flegmaticke, and flatuous tumours.

HAVING ſufficiently intreated of thoſe tumours which are engendred through hote humours, we are now againe determined to handle thoſe tumors which haue their originall of a cold matter, taking our exordium from that euill which of the Græcians is called *Oedema*. For as *Eryſipelas* is cauſed of a cholericke fluxe: ſo *Oedema* proceedeth of a flegmaticke humour. *Oedema* therefore (*Galen* defining the ſame) is a certaine looſe and vnpainfull tumour: or it is a certaine thinne ſwelling without paine, riſing of a flegmatick humour that floweth into ſome member of the body, ſo that the ſame *Galen in lib.* 14. *Ther.* thought of *Oedema*, that it was a diſeaſe and no ſymptomate. For truly we know (ſaith he) that *Oedema* doth come otherwiſe then of the flowing of a flegmaticke humour, that is to wit, of a flegmaticke humour or vaporous ſpirit, gathered into ſome member, and ſometime engendred in the ſame, as in the legges and feet, which are troubled with a corrupted water running vnder the ſkinne, and with the euils called *Phthoe*, and *Cachexia*, which are euill habites and deformities of the body. For in thoſe dangerous diſpoſitions, *Oedema* is an accidentall ſymptomate of that affect which oppreſſeth the man, that is, an accident neceſſarily following, which requireth no ſeuerall or proper cure (as afterward ſhall appeare.) *Oedema* (as *Phlegmone* and *Eryſipelas* alſo) is diſcerned of the Chyrurgians by two differences, that is, by the true, or vntrue or vnlawfull *Oedema*. A true *Oedema* cometh of naturall choler, which truly is nothing elſe but a raw bloud not throughly digeſted, which is found in a lumpe of bloud, very fit to nouriſh flegmaticke members. An vntrue and vnlawfull *Oedema*, proceedeth of vnnaturall fleame. That we may not deale here n any thing obſcurely, naturall fleame is a cold and a moiſt humour, in ſubſtance crude or raw, in colour inclining to a certaine whiteneſſe; but in taſt, and (if I may ſpeake it) in ſmell, it is ſweet and pleaſant: vnnaturall fleame is that which doth degenerate and differ from that fleame before deſcribed, and yet it keepeth it ſelfe within the bounds of his circuite and liberty, which if it ſhall once paſſe, it is then no more to be called *Phlegma* or fleame, but ſome other humour. But this fleame chanceth to degenerate from his owne proper nature two manner of waies. One way is (as they ſay) in it ſelfe, when in his own naturall and proper ſubſtance it is changed, without any admixtion with any other humour, which truly hapneth very often; for it is turned either into a waterish

Oedema quid.

Oedema eſt ſymptoma.

Oedema duplex.

Verum.

Illegitimum.

What fleame is

What & after what ſort, fleame doth degenerate from his owne nature.

wateriſh ſubſtance, or into a flatuous ſubſtance, or into a very thin matter, and then it is called *Phlegma aquoſum, flatuoſum*, or *tenue*: or it is turned into a thicke and viſcous ſubſtance, which maketh the fleame very groſſe & clammy, and through a greater, or (as we ſay) through a further induration, it is cauſed to looke like a Plaiſter, or like glaſſe; or it doth putrifie and is altered, and then it is made both ſalt, nitrous, and corroſiue. The other way vnnaturall fleame is cauſed through admixtion, that is, when as ſome other humour doth happen to come vnto it extraordinarily: as for example, either bloud, or choler, or melancholie. If bloud be commixed with fleame, it is ſweet: if choler be mingled therewith, it is cauſed to be ſalt: if melancholie, it is made ſoure and ſharpe. There are therefore eight kinds of naturall fleame after the opinion of *Auicen*. *Haly Abbas* appointeth foure onely. But *Galen* (ſaith *Guido*) ſeemeth to aſſigne vnto it onely two kinds, that is, ſalt and ſoure, although in his ſecond booke of the differences of feauers, and in his ſecond booke *De locis affectis*, and in many other places alſo he maketh mention of the fleame called *Vitreum*, which oftentimes doth ioyne it ſelfe with ſoure fleame, by reaſon of that affinitie and acquaintance that it hath with it. By theſe things therefore it is gathered, that of fleame there are ingendred eight *ſpecies* or differences of tumours beſides nature. For, firſt of fleame that is naturall cometh a true and a lawfull *Oedema*. Secondly of vnnaturall fleame, by reaſon of admixtion, there proceed three other differences of tumours, becauſe that three other humors may be commixed therewith; and theſe be they, *Oedema phlegmonôdes*. *Oedema eryſipelatôdes*, and *Oedema ſcirrhôdes*. Thirdly of vnnaturall fleame, through the alteration of his naturall ſubſtance, there ariſe foure other differences of tumours. For firſt of windy and vaporous fleame doth come that tumor, which of the Latines is properly called *Inflatio*, but commonly among the Phyſitions it is termed *Apoſtema ventoſum*, a windie apoſteme. Secondly, of wateriſh fleame there proceedeth a wateriſh apoſteme. Thirdly of raw, thicke, & groſſe fleame, there are ingendred thoſe tumours which ſome do call *Leues nodi*, and there are alſo ingendred flegmaticke abſceſſions, which they do commonly call *Exituræ phlegmaticæ*. But theſe are called of the interpreter of *Auicen*, *Dubelet frigida*, of which ſort are theſe, *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, and *Melicerides*: *Ganglia* alſo, which be called of *Auicen*, *Glandulæ*, & other of that kind which ſhall be ſpoken of in that which followeth. Now of hard or rather of indurated, and (as I may ſay) of caked fleame, there do ariſe all thoſe hard knots, which are moſt found in the ioints and thoſe euils alſo called *Strumæ*, which are commõly called *Scrofulæ*. Fourthly of corrupted & putrified fleame there do come *Fiſtulæ*, & other vlcers which they call *Scrufuloſa*. The cauſes of *Oedema*, as alſo of other tumors beſides nature are threefold. Firſt, primitiue cauſes are theſe: a fall frõ ſome high place, a ſtripe, a naughty diet. Secondly, antecedent cauſes, as the abundance of a flegmatick humor running downe into ſome mẽber of the body. Thirdly, *coniunctæ cauſæ* is the very fleame which is already ſtuffed in the member that is beſet with a tumor. The ſignes of *Oedema* are theſe, a looſe and ſoft tumor, which yeeldeth to the weight of the finger, and is hollow after the maner of a caue or den, and riſeth not vp againe at the remouing of the finger, but retaineth the very footſtep or marke of that which preſſeth it. There

Galen appointeth two kinds of fleame.

8. Differences of tumours beſide nature coming of fleame.

Three cauſes of ædema.
1.
2.
3.

Signa ædemata.

is

is felt very ſmall paine, or almoſt none at all; very little heate, a very white colour or (as ſome will haue it) a meane betweene whiteneſſe and paleneſſe, and other ſuch like ſignes, whch doth teſtifie the dominion and power of fleame. *Oedema* (as other tumours alſo) hath foure times, the beginning, the augmenting, the ſtate, and the declination of the tumour. This kind of tumour is moſt cured by reſolution, or exhalation, but ſeldome by ſuppuration, verie often by turning and changing them into knots or kirnels called *Nodi*, or into other increaſings (as they call them) which are termed of the Grecians *Apoſtemata*, but of the Latines *Abſceſſus*. But the markes and tokens of the ending and finiſhing of theſe kinds of tumours are handled before in our generall diſcourſe of tumours. Theſe œdematous tumours are rather excited in the winter time, then at other ſeaſons, for then very much fleame is gathered together in mens bodies. Thſe tumors alſo do greatly and verie often trouble old men, and them which be giuen to gluttony. *Indicia.*

CHAP. XXI.

Of the cure of Oedema cauſed of a flegmaticke humour flowing into ſome member.

BEcauſe *Oedemata*, after the manner of other tumours, are raiſed through the fluxe of humours into ſome member, the ſcope and order of their cure ſhall be alſo twofold. 1. The one is, to diſſolue the ſubſtance of thoſe humours which now do ocupie the member. 2. The other is, to withſtand and reſtraine the fluxe. And as the one ſcope doth excell the other, ſo the remedies of their cure muſt be commixed together the one with the other, either ſomewhat plentifully or ſomewhat ſparingly. When therefore the order of reſtraining ſhall ouercome that which counſelleth vs to vſe euacuating and digeſting remedies, the force of reſtrictiues muſt be augmented. But when there is more need of euacuation then of reſtriction, the nature and vertue of digeſtiue or diſcuſſiue and drying medicines muſt of neceſſitie excell in the mixture. Moreouer both the plentifull fluxe, and the ſmall deale of matter in the affected part, doth tell vs, that in the mixture the vertue of reſtrictiue medicines muſt be more effectuall, and of greater force. Contrariwiſe you muſt vſe a greater meaſure of drying and digeſting medicines, when matter aboundeth in the member verie plentifully, and the fluxe verie little. But in an old and inueterate *Oedema*, and that which is alreadie ingendred, you ſhall not vſe any longer this order of curing which hath a mingled power, but you ſhall apply ſuch things as can diſperſe and diuide the matter. Which thing is alſo diligently to be obſerued in all other continuall vlcers. But *Oedema*, which is an euill ſymptomate following other dangerous effects, as leaneneſſe of the body, the Dropſie, and an euill habite of the body, which the Grecians call *Cachexia*, doth deſire no proper peculiar, or ſeuerall cure (as we haue before mentioned) for it cannot be cured but by expelling that euill effect wherof it firſt groweth. Yet ſomewhat is to be admitted out of it, if it doth debilitate the ſtrength or increaſe the chiefe affect, or elſe hinder the cure. It ſhall therefore be ſufficient (if it ſhall need any cure) to rub diligently the ſwelling place, ſometime with *Curandi œdematis ſcopus duplex cum adhuc gignitur.*

The order of curing an old œdema.

Oedematis vt ſpecialis eſt curatio.

Oxyrhodinum

Oxyrhodinum, sometime with oyle mingled with Salt, or else with *Oxyrhodinum* and salt. For this kind of friction doth slake the tumour, and mittigateth the paine, if it be prouoked through [illegible] much distention (as sometime it chanceth:) *Oxyrhodinum* doth stay the fluxe, oyle with salt hath power to digest and emptie out that which is compact in the member. But *Oxyrhodinum* with salt, doth partly digest and drie vp, and partly restraine and stop the affluxion of humours But our generall method being before declared, let vs turne our pen to declare the proper and particular order of curing a lawfull *Oedema*, which hath his beginning of the flowing of thinne fleame: which method, according to the opinion of the Chyrurgians of our time, doth consist of foure things, (as hath bene said of *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas*) that is to say. 1. In a iust order of diet. 2. In preparing of the flegmaticke humour, which they call *æquatio*, an equall deuision, and in purging the same. 3. In represling, dissoluing and drying vp the humor that is flowed already, and now doth ocupie the member. 4. And last of all, in correcting and remouing the symptomates or accidents which do follow *Oedema*. These therefore are the foure particular intentions whereby we dispatch those two generall orders before mentioned. The first intention therefore is perfected or finished by the due and iust vsage of sixe vnnaturall things, which shall be well and fitly applyed to the sicke body, if they shall all decline vnto heate and drinesse, with a certaine attenuation or diminishing.

Foure particular orders to be kept in curing a lawfull Oedema.

Prima intentio.

Aer.

Potus.

Cibus.

Therefore chuse and prepare a thinne and drie aire. Let him take for his drinke wine that is fined, and cleane from dregs, cleare, white, or somwhat red, which they call Claret wine, which in his kind must be excellent good, and allayed a little with water. Let his bread be very well baked, and well handled. Let him eate the flesh of sheepe, or the flesh of the birds of mountaines, & of the plaines, and those rather rosted then sodden. Let him vse sparingly fat brothes, potherbes, and other fat meats. Let him abstaine from things that be vnleauened, raw, and verie moist. Let him not eate of any kind of pulse or cheese, nor of vntimely and vnripe fruits, nor of fishes (except they be those that liue in grauellie places, and those also either rosted or boyled in wine.) Rosted meates generally are better then sodden, and better then those things also which the industrie of the Baker can prouide. Let him eate little, and drinke lesse. In all his diet let him eschue lecherie and gluttonie. If the bellie be bound, loose it with Figs, or with *Carthamus*. Take therefore fiue or sixe drie Figs, and fill them with the pith of the seed of *Carthamus*, and eate them either in the morning, or before dinner. Let the body be exercised moderately, if so be the affected member can permit the same without hurt. Let his sleepe be little and short. Let him altogether auoid bathing, and all other moistning things. The second intention is accomplished by preparatiues or by remedies equally deuiding (which they commonly call digestiues) and by medicines which can euacuate that flegmaticke matter wherewith the body of the sicke doth abound. There ore you must giue him some kind of *Oximel*, which can cut, and diuide, and purge forth the fleame that lurketh in the bodie. Afterward the matter going before the expulsion being thus prepared, at the appointment of some cunning Physition, must be emtied out with some medicine that can purge fleame, called *Phlegmogogon*. But if (saith *Guido* out of *Cauliacus*) abundance be

Somnus.

Balneum.

Secunda intentio.

be present in the body, you may safely open a veine, but yet not without the aduice of some expert Physition. But in a plethoricke and full bodie there are scarce at any time seene any *Oedemata*, especially those which be lawfull; for fleame doth not abound in it more plentifully then other humours do. Therefore it being simple and alone, not commixed with others humours, it can seldome flow into any part of a plentifull bodie; wherefore letting of bloud especially in a lawfull *Oedema*, may seeme to be nothing profitable. The third intention is finished in the beginning by applying repercussiues, and not by those remedies which by binding vehemently with their naturall coldnesse do repell and driue backe, but by those which haue power to drie greatly, and digest well, which they call prouokers of drinesse and resolution: but in the increase by vsing discussiue remedies somwhat more forcible. And in the state thereof, especially about the end, the fluxe being alreadie stayed, by pure medicines, and by those which do verie strongly digest and resolue. But in the declination by consuming and drying helps, if the cure be to be dispatched by resolution. But if it doth degenerate and turne into abscessions which they call *Exituræ*, it shall be cured by ripening medicines, and by other helps which are set downe for the cure of Abscessions. Moreouer, repressing remedies endued with a drying digesting nature, which do profite in the beginning of *Oedema* coming of the influxion of a flegmaticke humour, are comprehended vnder three speciall rules. The first is out of *Galen l b. 14. Therap. & 2. ad Glaconem*, where he saith, that if *Oedema* doth consist of a flegmaticke humour, flowing into some member, a sponge wet in water wherein is a litle vineger, shall sometime abundantly suffice. But these must be so well tempred and commixed together, that they may either be drunke, or that they may not haue much vineger vpon it. But you must bind the sponge to the place, beginning at the neather part, and ending aboue. Let the sponge be verie new. And if there be not a new to be gotten, you shall cleanse and scoure the old verie diligently, by washing it in *Nitrum* and *Aphronitrum*, and in lye. *Auicen* commandeth, that in stead of a sponge, you sometime apply a double linnen cloth or some such like thing. The second rule is mentioned of *Auicen* himselfe. ℞. *Baurach* of the decoction of water, that is, of Salt peter, or of the some of Salt peter, of Ashes, of Vineger, of each as manie as shall suffice. The third rule, is discribed of *Razis* after this manner. ℞. *Aloes*, Mirrhe, *Licium*, *Acatia*, *Sief*, *Memitha* that is, of *Glauciũ*, of *Cyperus*, of *Crocus Orientalis*, of Bole armoniack, of each a little quantie; powder them, and commixe them with the iuyce of Coleworts called *Brossice* and with Vineger, and make an Emplaister. Further more those remedies which were of late rehearsed, do also helpe much the increasing of this œdematus tumour, if you do put vnto them a good quantity of Vineger, and a little Alume, especially in strong bodies, which hath a hard skin, and when as *aquosita Posca* shall not availe. Therefore if *Oedema* doth not ceasse or rest with these helpes mentioned a little before, when you bind it too againe, you shall commixe a little more Vineger, that the *Posca* may be the stronger; or you shall lay on a little Alume, and apply a new Sponge: for this doth helpe as an excellent medicine, & doth long continue very effectuall, and with the substance it drieth the affected member. If there be no plentie of new sponges,

Tertia intentio.

Remedies to be vsed in the beginning of Oedema.

1. *Posca aquosa.*

2.

3. *Emplastrum Razis.*

Remedies to be vsed in the time of increasing.

Lib.14. Ther. & 2.ad Glau.

ſponges, it is better (ſaith *Galen*) to vſe that which the common ſort call *Lychnion*. But aboue all things let it be ſoft, which kind is vſed at *Tarſis*, where of if there be any plentie: you may boldly vſe: for you ſhall trie it to be more profitble then the vſing of ſponges, but let it be wetted in *Poſca*, and a little Alume therewith. Then (as it is ſet downe alreadie) let it be bound to, and let the binding begin at the neather parts & end aloft. Let the binding be meane and ſmall, as in the ſetting of a bone. But truly the firſt caſting about of the ſwathing band, which muſt begin beneath, ought to be tyed ſomewhat ſtraight; but all the reſt muſt be ſlacked by little and litle, but yet not ſo, that any part of the binding be looſe. Now the remedies which are miniſtred after the vigour of the ſtate, when the fluxe is ſtayed, and in an vniuerſall declination (if *Oedema* doth require reſolution) are wont alſo to be deſcribed and contained vnder a threefold rule; 1. The firſt is of *Auicen*, which is a ſponge dipped in lye of the aſhes of the figge tree, of the vine, and of the holme, which is a kinde of oake; apply theſe to the member, for truly in them there is great power and vertue both to drie and cleanſe. 2. The ſecond is of *Brunnus*, which *Theodoricus* alſo vſed. ℞. of Alume, Brimſtone, Mirrhe and Salt; of each a like quantitie: commixe all theſe with oyle of Roſes: and with vineger, and make a Liniment, which it doth drie more ſtrongly then the former remedie. 3. The third is of *Auicen* likewiſe, whoſe diſcription is this that followeth ℞. of cowes dung, ℔.ß. of *Olybanum*, of *Styrax*, of *Vſnea*, that is, of the moſſe of trees, which is called of the Græcians *Bryon*, of *Calamus aromaticus*, of Spicknard, of Wormwood, ana ℥.ß. apply all theſe with vineger, and with the decoction of Coleworts, and make an Emplaiſter. And this truly is the way to cure *œdema* which is finiſhed by reſolution. But if they do not yeeld vnto digeſtion, but do come vnto ſuppuration, you may apply, and that verie profitably, *Vnguentum è ſuccis* called *Diachylon*, and the ointment eſpecially which *Rogerius* was wont to make. To the ſame purpoſe alſo this Emplaiſter following is verie effectuall. ℞. Mallowes, branke Vrſine, or *Hircina*, which is called *Acantus* and *Acanta*, roote of *Althæa*, roote of Lillie, roſted Onions, Snailes, leauen, Linſeede ſodden and kneaded, and mingled with ſwines greaſe, or with butter; bring them into the forme of an Emplaiſter, or rather of a Cataplaſme. Another for the ſame purpoſe very effectuall. ℞. of the iuyce of Elder, or Walwort, (which our late writers do call *Lapatium acutum*) of *Leniſticum*, or *Liguſticum*, and of Fenel, of each of them as much as you thinke good, yet of an equall weight; boyle them with *Dialthæa*, with hony, oyle, and butter, and of them make a Cataplaſme. The Apoſteme being ripe, do not tarrie till it open of the owne accord, for that happeneth ſeldome, or peraduenture neuer; but let apertion be made with ſome hote iron, or ſome burning medicine, wherewith the matter may be purged out, according to the maner and forme before expreſſed. Then let the filthineſſe be cleanſed out & wiped away with that ointment commonly called *Vnguentum Apoſtolorum*, or with a mundificatiue of *Apium*, and with the iuyce of Wormewood, or with this ointment following which doth draw and cleanſe the thicke and groſſe matter. ℞. of *Galbanum*, of *Ammoniacum*, of Roſin, *Terebinthina*, Pitch, of bullocks tallow, of oile, ana. a like quantitie: diſſolue the gummes in vineger, or let them melt or boile vpon

Remedies for the ſtate and declination.

1. *Spongia aqua lixiuia imbuta.*

2. *Linimentum.*

3. *Emplaiſtrum Auicennæ.*

Vſnea quid.

Concoquentia ſeu maturantia.

This is giuen by Theodoricus.

Apertio.

A mundificatiue ointment which is attributed to Dinus.

vpon the fire with the reſt, and make an ointment. Afterward let it be cured like vnto other filthy vlcers. But we diſpatch our fourth intention, according to the nature and quality of the accedents that change very ſuddenly, as if paine doth happen, it muſt moſt eſpecially be mitigated, by applying moiſt oyle of wooll (after the doctrine of *Auicen*) or by boyled Wine, or by a cerate made of the oile of Cammomil, of the oile of Wormewood, of the oile of Spike, and of Waxe. But if hardneſſe be preſent, it muſt be diſſolued and mollified with the marrow of the bones of bullockes, or with Harts marrow, or with ſome ſuch like thing, as hereafter ſhall be ſaid. But *Galen* in an inueterate *Oedema* did annoint the ſore with oile, and then miniſtred a ſponge dipped in Lye, & binding it ſomewhat iuſt or ſtraigte, did perfectly cure the euill. *Quarta intentio.* *Li. 2. ad Glau.* *Oedemata diuturna.*

Now it remaineth that we ſet down the ſumme of the cure of *Oedema*. 1. Firſt therefore vnto an *Oedema*, which is a ſymptomate happning & coming ſuddenly with other diſeaſes (as the Dropſie, leannes of the body, and that euill called *Cachexia*) apply ſuch medicines as can diſcuſſe & dry vp without griefe. 2. Therefore rub the ſwolne place diligently with *Oximel*, or with *Oxyrhodinū*, or with oile & Salt, or elſe with *Oxyrhodinum* and Salt: for by this friction you ſhall both mitigate the paine (if any be cauſed through diſtention (& remit the tumour alſo. 3. But to an *Oedema* that cometh of the influxion of thin fleame, if fluxe doth not yet ceaſſe, apply thoſe medicines, which partly digeſt and partly conſtraine and reſtraine. 4. Therefore bind a new ſponge, or ſome other dipped in Lye, or wetted firſt in alayed *Poſca*, eſpecially in ſoft and tender bodies, and if (the tumours doth poſſeſſe the members of the body) binde about them ſoftly ſome ſwadling band from the neather part to the vpper, as we vſe to do in ſetting of bones. 5. But if by theſe remedies the tumour doth not ſlacke or yeelde, put a little Alume with *Poſca*. viz. with *Oxycratum*. 6. But if the affect ſhall be of any continuance, you muſt not vſe any more thoſe remedies which haue a mingled faculty (that is to ſay, digeſting and reſtraining) but rather digeſtiues. 7. Therefore the member being firſt annointed with oyle, you muſt miniſter a ſponge (as we ſaid) dipped in ly, & bind it with ſwathing bands ſomwhat iuſt & ſtrait. *Capita curationis ædematis.* 1. 2. *Oedema morbus.* 3. 4. 5. 6. *Oedema inueteratum.* 7.

CHAP. XXII.

Of Tumours aboue nature, which the Latines call inflations, but they are commonly called windy Apoſtemes, Apoſtemata ventoſa.

IT is now very requiſite for vs to diſpute of the Tumours called *Inflationes*, whoſe cure is diuerſe from the cure of *Oedema*. For they (as *Galen* ſaith, *lib.* 14. *Therap.*) haue their originall of a phlegmaticke humour, and therefore do yeeld vnto touching and handling, and our fingers being layed thereon do deſcend ſomewhat deepely into them. But inflations do come of a flatuous ſpirit gathered together, breeding ſometime vnder the skinne, ſometime vnder the thin filmes which are compaſſed about with the bones, or they do ſhut in and include the muſcles, or elſe ſome part of the bowels. Furthermore ſometime there is alſo not a little of the humour gathered together in the belly and in the inward parts, and alſo in the middle ſpace of them and of the *The difference between inflatio & ædema.*

Lib. 4. the *Peritonæum*, as in that kind of water (saith *Paulus*) vnder the skinne, which euill we call a Tympanie: These also differ from *Oedemata*, because they being touched with the finger do not retaine any marke, and they do giue a sound like a tabour, and also because sometime they are contained in a sensible hollownesse, and that oftentimes verie great. The cause of these kinds of inflations, is the weakenesse of the naturall heate, which is placed in a flegmaticke matter to prouoke windinesse. For truly heate may take vp such a vapour of a moist substance, but it cannot diuide nor discusse it. For euen as (saith *Galen*) we see in outward things, that a very cold constitution (especially when the Northwind bloweth) doth make the aire very calme, and a very hote constitution in sommer maketh the aire pure and cleare, but the middle constitutions do cause clouds, so it happeth in liuing creatures. For heate, neither by extreme weakenesse, nor yet by vehement strength can beget wind, but when it getteth a meane betweene these affections. For this vapour is holden in some place (as *Auicen* saith) either because of the thickenesse of the member, or of the grossenesse of the vaporous spirit. Which thing also *Paulus* after the opinion of *Galen* witnesseth in these words: saying, that the thickenesse of the members, and the grossenesse of the spirit or vapour, doth cause that the same vapour is not dispersed abroad.

Inflationum causæ.

Lib. 6. de morbis & symptomat.

Lib. 4.

Inflationum notæ.

The signes of inflation are these; a tumour not yeelding to any touching or handling: it appeareth very cleare and bright, and when it is beaten on, it giueth a sound like vnto a Bottle, or Tympanie. Moreouer there is felt oftentimes windinesse throughout the whole bodie; sometime running this way, sometime that way, which causeth extensiue paine. But concerning the iudgements and opinions hereof, a flatuous or vaporous spirit, which is not dissolued and dispersed, doth procure many discommodities. But a breathing and windy vapour, coursing vp and downe within the body with paine and great anguish, is greatly to be feared, because it doth seeme to be drawn from some venimous matter. But now seeing these three things, viz. the moist matter, the imbacility of the naturall heate, and the thickenesse of the pores of the bodie, do concure together to the generation of *Inflatio* (as hath alreadie bene declared) the order therefore of the cure thereof shall be this; first, to strengthen the substance of the heate, to extenuate the vapour and flatuous matter, and to preuent or open the thickenesse of the pores of the body (wherein this vaporous spirit gathered now together, is contained.) Now we make perfect and finish the two latter things, that is, the rarifying of the thicke body, and the extenuation of the grosse vapour, by one & the same kind of medicines, which is, by vsing those remedies which do profite to the extenuation of the members, and by applying those helpes, which can heate either more or lesse according to the inflation of the afflicted members, according to the thickenesse or thinnesse thereof, and according also to the grossenesse or thinnesse of the vapours. For according to the difference of these things, the power or facultie of those medicines which are ministred, ought to be intended and remitted. The thin parts therefore, and the vapour or spirit which is not very thicke, are but meanely to be dealt withall: but the grosse members, and that vapour which cõtaineth much thicke matter, do require medicines which may greatly extenuate

Inflationum prognostica.

Inflationum curatio.

extenuate and heate them. But if the ſubſtance of naturall heate ſhall periſh or diminiſh, it muſt be repaired againe, regarding the greatneſſe of the loſſe thereof. But if it ſhall be altered, you muſt bring it vnto a certaine mediocrity. But if griefe ſhall there vexe or moleſt the ſicke, you muſt haſten vnto thoſe helpes which can mitigate paine. Very well therefore haue the Chyrurgians of our age declared, that the cure of inflations (which they call *Apoſtemata ventoſa*) is diſpatched by three intentions. The firſt conſiſteth of a iuſt and due obſeruation of diet. The ſecond of a good concoction or digeſtion; and the third dependeth of the diſcuſſing and diſperſing of the windy ſpirit, which is aſſembled in the member. Therefore let the inſtitution of diet be after this manner. Firſt of all you muſt abſtaine from all groſſe, viſcous, raw, flegmaticke and windy meates: as are, ſweete meates, all kinde of pulſe, raw fruite, Rape roots, Cheſt nuts, and other things of that ſort, which do ingender a flatuous vapour. You muſt vſe hote and drie things, and thoſe remedies alſo which can attenuate and diſſolue windineſſe, as is bread made of Barley with a little Salt and Commin ſeed. Let the patients drinke be ſmall Ale or Beere. Let him vſe the decoction of Cicers mixed with Onions. Let him take *Apium hortenſe* (which is commonly called *Petroſelinum*, Parcely) Calamint, Rew, Commin. Let the fleſh which he eateth on, be rather roſted then ſodden, and eſpecially the fleſh of birds (as hath bene ſaid in the former Chapter.) But now, that you may diſpatch the ſecond intention, you muſt ſtrengthen and corroborate the vertue concoctiue with ſome ſweet and odoriferous ſauours, and by confections, and electuaries appointed for this purpoſe, as be theſe, *Diacuminum*, *Diacalaminthe*, *Aromaticum roſatum*, and this decoction following which they call *Drageta*. ℞. of Anniſe, of Fennell, *Cornus*, *Daucus*, Commin, of Laurell berries beaten together, ana. ℥. j. of Liquorice, Galingale, white Ginger, ana. ℥. ß. of Cloues, Cubebs of long Pepper, ſeed of Rew, ana. ℥. ij. of Anniſe ſeed couered ouer with Sugar, ℥. ij. of Sugar. ℔. j. ß. make a powder. But outwardly let the ſtomacke be annointed with oile of ſpike, of *Coſtum*, and oile of Rew: or make an Epitheme of thoſe things which can diſcuſſe wind, and which are appointed to helpe concoction, and let it be applyed to the ſtomacke. But theſe things do rather appertaine vnto Phyſicke then vnto Chyrurgery. The third intention is accompliſhed by applying ſome medicine which hath a double vertue, that is, which can both concoct, digeſt, and moderately bind, neither will increaſe paine. But to the perfecting of theſe things, there are appointed three manner of remedies in *libro* 14. *Therapeut.* The firſt is mentioned of *Galen* in theſe words: In the arteries (ſaith he) and in the muſcles which are vnder the skin, or vnder the filmes which do couer the bones, when *Inflatio* is riſen, if it be without griefe, ſome liquor applyed to the thinneſt members ſhall profit greatly, of the which nature is lye miniſtred with a new ſponge. But if griefe doth alſo trouble him, you muſt annoint the member with ſome oyle which hath power to mitigate and remit the paine. Theſe diſeaſes happen through a ſtripe or bruiſe, when as either the muſcle or the filme which compaſſeth the bone, is bruſed or hurt, vpon which filme that goeth about the bone, the aforeſaid ſponge muſt be layed. The ſecond rule is deſcribed alſo in the ſame place af-

Three intentions of curing inflations.

Prima intentio.

Cibus.

Potus.

Secunda intentio.

Drageta helpeth digeſtion.

Tertia intentio.

ter this sort: But vnto the muscles (for they sometime are painefull) you must apply some medicine which can mitigate paine in greater measure, so that to them you must apply not onely Lye alone, but you must put into it both *Sapa*, and also a little oyle. But it shall be more profitable in the beginning not to apply Lye, but to vse *Sapa* with Wine, and a little Vineger, and to put to them a little oyle, which things when they are mingled together, it is good to heate them, and lay on vnwashed wooll (which they call *succida*) dipped in them. But if there be no plenty of such wooll, then the oyle of wooll is to be vsed with the former mixture; but if neither oyle of wooll be at hand, you shall commixe very well some cerate, which is made of the oyle of wooll. For the bruised muscles must needs be lenified with some medicine which hath a double strength, that is, which can both concoct, digest, and moderatly bind. But if the medicine containeth no astriction, it increaseth sometime *Phlegmone*, and especially in those bodies which are plethoricke and full of humours. Being mindfull therefore of these three indications already declared (that is, of concoction, digestion, and moderate astriction) in the muscles which are inflated by meanes of some bruise or stripe when great paine doth afflict, you shall the rather vse a more mitigating medicine, and you shall greatly resist paine, by vsing more Oyle and Wine, whose force I know to be mighty, when as paine together with the inflation doth speedily hasten to an end. And truly the time is the shorter, if you minister those things which haue a strong and mighty effect, as are these, Lye and Vineger, and next after them Wine hath a mighty operation. As often therefore as you mind not to asswage paine, you shall cast into the mixture, a greater quantity of Lye and Vineger. Againe when you intend to repell and driue backe, you must put in more of Wine then of other things, which wine shall be more effectuall for this purpose if it be blacke and sharpe. But if you please to digest, you shall minister the greater quantity of Lye. But if you shall mingle Vineger with them, the mixture shall be profitable both wayes, because that Vineger hath a double and mingled faculty. But when the muscle is not pained, you may lawfully for want of Lye vse *Aphonitrum*, but it must not be grauelly, but rather fomie. The third rule is an Emplaister made of the filthines which is wiped from the bodies of men that wrastle, & of vnslaked Lime, boyled together with water and Wine. These are the words of *Galen lib.* 14. *Therap.* But those inflations (saith he) which through negligence are inueterate and of some antiquity you shall apply to them those helpes which are made of Lye (as hath bene said before:) and secondly you shall minister some Emplaister. But I will declare also the example or order how to prepare these things. First, the filthinesse which commeth from mens bodies must be heat, and throughly strained, that it may be cleane and pure: then againe take the Lime, which must be brayed as small as meale, and sprinkle it in the vessell where the filthinesse is, and temper it together to the thicknesse of clay. That medicine is also very good for the inflations which is made of *Sycomorus*, and other remedies of that sort do greatly helpe also. But if this flatuous spirit, which causeth the inflation shall be smokie, wicked, corrupt, and excited of a venimous matter, with intollerable paine, and vehement heate, running vp and

Sapa.

Lana succida.

Oesipus.

Ceratum ex tesipe.

Prolixiuio Aphonitrum.

Formula tertia.

How an old inflation must be handled.

If the windy vapour shal be venimous.

and downe in the members of the body, no more safe or better counsell can be giuen, then that (when it is resident in some particular member) that member must be straightway bound beneath and aloft, and in the midst the tumour be opened with a razor, or with some hote instrument, so that the venimous vapour may easily come forth. Afterward the gaping wound must be filled with Aloës, and with Bolearmoniacke dissolued in the oyle of Roses and Vineger. But within three or foure dayes after, you must fill vp the wound with flesh, and bring it to a scarre. But in such venimous inflations, a very thin diet must be obserued, and the bodie must be emptied with some purging medicine. And if you minister *Theriaca* to the sicke, it will helpe him greatly. Now there remaineth the summe of the cure of a flatuous tumour, which we mind to declare in these words following. First, confirme and strengthen the weake substance of heate that is in the affected member, restore the same againe, and when it is altered bring it into some mediocritie. Secondly, extenuate the vaporous and windy humour which raiseth the tumour. Thirdly, open the thicke pores of the skin, and of the whole affected member, with medicines that are effectuall for the thinnesse of the members: afterward seeke to discusse the flatuous vapour. Fourthly, (but according to the difference of the affected parts, and according to the thicknesse of the flatuous vapour, or thinnesse of the medicines which are applyed,) intend and remit aswell the matter as the faculty & vertue of them. 5. Furthermore, if such a vaporous tumour shall chance with griefe and with inflāmation (as it happneth in the muscles which through some bruise are stuffed out with wind) apply in the beginning mitigating medicines: but in processe of time, vse such remedies as haue power to dissolue, increasing by little and little the plentie thereof. Sixtly, inflations which through negligence are inueterate, first annoint them with Lye, and then lay to some plaister, which one mollifie, dissolue and discusse them.

Victus ratio.
Theriaca.
The summe of curing a flatuous tumour.
1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a tumour caused of a thin substance, which they call aquosum Apostema, that is, a wateriſh Apostem.

IF fleame doth vniuersally abound throughout the whole body, that kind of disease (which is a wateriſh humour running betweene the skinne and the flesh, called *Leucophlegmatica*) doth accompanie the same, as *Galen* hath noted in his sixt booke *de Symptomatum causis*. But when this flegmaticke humour doth flow in one onely member, there is engendered *Oedema*: for so they call a loose tumour, which is without paine. But if wateriſh excrements do abound, they are wont to bring the Dropsie (which they call *Ascites*) which if they shall couch themselues in one onely member, they do raise in it *Phlyctæ*, that is to say, pushes or whelkes. Furthermore the latter sort of Physitions haue bene accustomed to call this kind of wateriſh tumour, *Aquosum phlegma*, as also they do terme that humour to be fleame which floweth in the feete and legges of them that are troubled with the Dropsie, and aboundeth in the leane parts of the body, and in other members, which do labour of an euill habite (which the Græcians call *Cachexia*.) And these kinds of tumors which do pro-

Leucophlegmatia.
Serosum incrementum.
Phyctænæ.

ceed of wateriſh fleame, or of the aforeſaid ſerous increaſing, they do alſo call vnlawfull and vntrue *œdemata*. But in thoſe dangerous diſpoſitions or diſeaſes, they call it *Tabes*, which name *Hydrops* and *Cachexia* do require: but *œdema* (as hath bene already declared out of *Galen*) doth not deſerue the name of a diſeaſe, but of a ſymtomate, for that it truly needeth no particular or ſeuerall cure. For the onely rubbing of it with *Oxyrhodinum*, or ſometime with Salt and Oyle, or with Salt and *Oxyrhodinum*, doth ſtop it, and many other things of that kinde do worke the like effect. But the cauſe of theſe tumours are theſe, the altering of the vertue or facultie of the members through a cold and corrupted intemperature of the bodie, and the naughtineſſe of nouriſhment declining to aquoſitie; as you may eaſily gather out of the ſixth booke *de Symptomatum cauſis*. The ſignes and iudgements are almoſt all one with a true *Oedema*. Yet they differ in this, becauſe in the wateriſh tumours the tumor is more looſe then in a lawfull *Oedema*: and therefore it doth not ſo reſiſt touching, neither doth it ſound like winde, but rather as water, and it doth ſeeme to ſhine after a ſort, when one holdeth it againſt the light. Now concerning the iudgements of this kind of tumour, there is no doubt but that a wateriſh tumour proceedeth of a greater coldneſſe then a flatuous tumour doth, as *Galen* declareth in the eleuenth Commentarie of his fourth booke of Aphoriſmes. But it ſeemeth (ſaith he) that a wateriſh *Hydrops*, which they call *Aſcites*, is engendered of great coldneſſe, but a *Tympanie* of the leſſe cold which diſeaſe is named of *Hippocrates*, a drie water running betweene the skinne. For a moiſt ſubſtance cannot be changed into a flatuous vapour without ſome heate. Moreouer wateriſh tumours do happen oftener in the feet, in the ſtones and cods, in the head and in the ioynts, then any other parts of the body, both becauſe ſuch a kinde of humour doth readily ruſh into thoſe patts, and alſo becauſe heate is very meane and little in them, for becauſe they be farre off from the hotteſt members. And as a flatuous vapour is ſeldome found without a wateriſh humour: ſo a wateriſh or ſerous humor is ſcarce contained at any time in any member without a windy ſpirit. Hitherto we haue ſpoken of the generation, the cauſes, ſignes, and iudgements of a wateriſh tumour: now we will ſet downe the cure thereof. Seeing that theſe wateriſh tumors are cauſed (as we haue ſaid alreadie) of the flowing of a ſerous humour, there needeth no other meanes, ſpecially no other generall order to cure them, then that method which we haue expreſſed alreadie in the cure of other tumours, which are engendered of the influxion of humours into ſome member. The order therefore of remedying ſuch kinde of tumors in the beginning ſhall conſiſt of two points, that is to ſay, firſt to empty out that which is flowed, and ſecondly, to ſtoppe and inhibite the fluxe of the humour. Wherefore, as in all other diſeaſes, which are yet but in begetting, ſo alſo in theſe affects, the Phyſition muſt be carefull and diligent, as well in curing them, as in foreſeeing the danger following, that is, both to remedie the diſeaſe and prouide for the fluxe. The firſt order therefore is ſubiect to that part of the Arte of Phyſicke which cureth the diſeaſes: but the ſecond belongeth to that part which preuenteth the diſeaſe to come. But that we may proſiue, and diſpatch this double and generall method, it is neceſſarie to recite fiue other

Lib. 2. ad Glauconem, & 14. Therap.

Cauſa.

Signa.

Iudicia.

Aſcites is cauſed of more cold thē Tympanites.

What parts theſe tumours do moſt occupy.

Aquoſi tumoris curatio.

Curatio duplex.

other particular intentions, expreſſed of *Guido* out of *Cauliacus* for the cure of a wateriſh tumour, in this manner and order as followeth. The firſt conſiſteth in a iuſt inſtitution and obſeruation of a good diet. The ſecond in the helping and furthering of concoction. The third in purging out the wateriſh humor by the belly. The fourth in bringing out the wateriſh humour through the paſſages of the vrine. The fifth and laſt conſiſteth in the euaporation and drying vp of that wateriſh humiditie which is compact and contained in the aggrieued member. But becauſe the foure firſt intentions do rather pertaine to the Phyſition then vnto the Chyrurgian, for whoſe profit we haue taken this worke in hand, and alſo becauſe they may ſufficiently be knowne by thoſe things which went before, I haue ſet downe the cure in the 33. Chapter of my third booke: and am determined to handle in this place the laſt intention onely, which requireth ſome new intended remedies. The firſt intention therefore is ended with thoſe medicines which can drie vp, and reſolue thoſe wateriſh and ſerous humors which are contained in the affected member. But of thoſe remedies there are commonly ſet downe three rules or orders. The firſt is out of *Galen. lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, and *lib. 14. Method. medendi*; which is made of *Oxyrhodinum* and Salt (as hath bin before declared.) The ſecond is out of the ſame author, which is a new ſponge dipped in Lye: and to this purpoſe ſerue thoſe remedies alſo which we haue before ſet downe for the cure of *Oedemata*: with the which helpes (that they may drie vp and diſcuſſe the more ſtrongly) you muſt commixe *Aphonitrum*, Alume, and Brimſtone. The third rule is a certaine emplaiſter deſcribed of *Auicen* for the cure of *Scrofulæ*, which emplaiſter he attributed to *Galen in libro ſuo de compoſitione medicamentorum κατὰ γένη*. And this emplaiſter (as he ſaith) within one weeke at the moſt, and oftentimes within three dayes, doth reſolue all the hardneſſe of the euill. But although this emplaiſter cannot be found in the booke before rehearſed to belong vnto *Galen*, notwithſtanding we may vſe the ſame very fitly to the diſſolution of a wateriſh and flatuous hardneſſe: whoſe deſcription out of *Auicen* is this that followeth ℞. of Muſtard ſeed, of Nettle ſeed, Brimſtone, *Spuma maris*, *Ariſtolochia rotunda*, and *Bdellium*, ana. ℥ j. of Ammoniacke, old oile and Waxe, ana. ℥ ij. But if the hardneſſe of the tumour be not diſcuſſed by this emplaiſter, you can deuiſe no other more excellent or more preſent remedy, then to open with ſome inſtrument; and then to cleanſe and ſcoure it, and afterward to cure it after the manner of other filthy vlcers. The ſumme of curing a wateriſh tumor is this. 1. Appoint ſuch a diet to the ſicke as can attenuate, heate, and dry vp. 2. Let him vſe a moderate exerciſe of his bodie: let him eate and drinke little: let him not ſleepe much, let him oftentimes prouoke his belly and bladder to auoid excrements. 3. Take heed that he digeſteth his meate well, and that he begetteth not windineſſe. 4. Purge out the wateriſh humour, wherewith the whole bodie of the ſicke doth abound, by the belly and by the pores of the vrine. 5. Drie vp and digeſt through breathing that ſerous humour which is included in the affected member. 6. But if it cannot thus be diſcuſſed, put ſome penknife, or ſome other hote inſtrument into the tumour, if it occupieth the arteries, and open it in that place where it is moſt inclined downeward, that ſo the humour may the more eaſily come

Fine particular intentions in curing a wateriſh tumour.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

1.

2.

Auicens Emplaiſter to diſcuſſe wateriſh tumours.

Capita curationis aquoſi tumoris.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.

7. forth. 7. Euacuate the humour which did cause the tumour, by some emissarie, and then without delay dispatch all other things which do pertaine vnto the cure of other corrupted vlcers of the like nature.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the diseases called Glandulæ, Nodi, and Strumæ, together with other Abscessions, which they call Phlegmaticæ excrescentiæ.

Enumeratio abscessuum pituitosorum.

GANGLIA so called of the Grecians, *Chærades*, that is, *Strumæ*, which they also call *Scrofulæ*, *Bronchocèle*, which they name *Bocium*, and *Hernia guttaris*, *Melicerides*, *Steatomata*, and *Atheromata*: also *Testudo*, *Talpa*, *Nacta* or *Napta*, which names giuen to tumours were inuented of the late Physitions, & are not to be found among ancient writers. Those tumours also which *Auicen* calleth *Fugillæ*, and *Nodi*, and *Vulgaris Bubo*, together with many other tumours of that kind, in what part soeuer of the body they do grow, they haue their generation of fleame, and for that cause are iustly referred vnto phlegmaticke tumours. But although certaine of the aboue named Abscessions do degenerate into a stony hardnesse, and into scirrhus diseases, yet the roote & the originall beginning of them for the most part is fleame, (as *Auicen* declareth:) yet we will not deny, but that some other humour may sometime be commixed with fleame, whereof such kinde of Abscessions do come, and so there do grow vp those Abscessions which are both compound and of another kinde. But our intent is to speake here of simple Abscessions onely, by whose proportion or analogie the knowledge of compound tumours shall appeare most euidently: for the one must alwayes be referred vnto the other, as it were vnto certaine rules or canons (as we haue said elsewhere.) Therefore all the aforesaid tumours are comprehended vnder the kind of phlegmaticke Abscessions, or (that I may speake after the manner of the common Chyrurgians) vnder the *genus* of phlegmaticke increasings, which diseases haue certaine speciall differences among themselues (as it shall afterward appeare.) For *Glandula* (as *Guido* thought) tooke his title of the likenesse of *Glans* an acorne, which forme he doth seeme to vnderstand in this place. This *Glandula* (saith he) is euery where soft, one alone, moueable and disseuered from the other parts lying about it, oftentimes growing in the cleane and pure parts of the body. But *Glandulæ* in *Auicen* doth breed either in the hand, or in the foote, or in some other place ioyned to the sinewes and cords of the body, and these *Glandulæ* he would not haue destroyed, lest the sicke thereby should fall into *Spasmos*, the crampe. They do happen also in the palme of the hand, and in the forehead, as *Auicen* saith, who also calleth them sometime *Glandulosa Apostemata*, sometime *Nodi*: for he doth intreate of those euils very rashly in diuerse Chapters, as in his Chapter *de Nodis*, euen vnto the end, and in his treatise *de Glandulis*. Therefore *Auicens Glandulæ* do seeme to be diuers from *Guido* his *Glandulæ*, and *Ganglia* among the Grecians to be all one with *Auicen* his *Glandulæ*, which thing *Paulus* his words next following do plainly testifie

Simplicia sunt regula compositorum.

Glandulæ Auidonis.

Auicens glandulæ are al one with Ganglia.

Ganglium

Ganglium (saith he) is a gathering together of the sinewes, which is caused of some stripe, or of wearines, and that in many parts of ỹ body, especially in those which are alwayes mouing, as in the midst of the hand and in the feete. *Ætius* saith, that it seldome possesseth the elbow and the head, and it doth seldome also arise voluntarily. And againe the same *Paulus lib. 6. cap. 39.* declareth what *Ganglium* is, how it doth grow, in what members chiefly it doth arise, & what signes or tokens do accompanie it, confirmeth those very words which we spake before, saying *Ganglium* is a conuulsion of the sinewes, caused of some blow, or of labour, chancing for the most part in the ioynts of the hand and of the armes, and in the ankles and ioynts of the feete, although also it ariseth in other parts of the body. These are the signes of *Ganglium*, the tumour is all of one colour, resisting touching or hãdling, & without paine, but if you do thrust it any thing violently, it is felt painfull, being not deeply rooted, but lying vnder the very skin next the sides: but again, if you prouoke it by force, it doth so neither before nor after. Hitherto speaketh *Paulus Aegineta de Ganglÿs*, now we will discourse of other flegmatick tumors. Those Abscessions which the common sort call *Scrofulæ* are nothing else but hard kernels contained within the litle filmes, *videlicet Glandulæ*, chiefly appearing in the necke, the harmeholes, and in the parts aboue the priuie members, where *Glandulæ* are placed by the vessels of the body that lye vnder them: yet sometime (although seldome) they are caused by meanes of the flesh of the same places, which through a certaine kind of affinity is turned into the nature of *Strumæ*, and is increased by the addition of matter (as it pleased *Leonidas*.) The Latins call them *Strumæ*, but the Greeks *Chærades*, either truly because of the stones called *Chærades* growing in the sea, or else because of those beasts called Sowes, that bring forth a great companie of pigges at once (for these euils do rise vp many together) which beasts are often infected with that disease. For *Scrofæ*, that is to say *Sues*, haue thicke and glandulous neckes, & commonly they be strumous & full of kernels. But *Celsus* saith, that *Strumæ* is a tumour, wherein vnder the congealed place there do arise certaine things like *Glandulæ* of matter and bloud. But these do not onely possesse the necke, but also the nostrils, the priuie parts of the body and the sides. The Chyrurgian *Meges* declareth also, that he hath found them in the paps of women. *Paulus* also speaketh thus of them: *Strumæ*, saith he, do arise in the forepart of the necke, or in one part or other both at once, either two or more: but all are included within their filmes, as *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, and *Melicorides*. *Lupia* (saith *Guido*) is soft and round like vnto a Hop, and chiefly chuseth his place in hard and dry places of the body, as in the eye lids, and in other sinewy members; the Frenchmen call it commonly *vne Loup*. Therefore if the description and cure of it, (which shall be afterward handled) be conferred with the description and cure of *Ganglium* amongst the Greekes, the diseases will appeare not much different or vnlike: but they do greatly erre, which do make this euill called *Lupia*, to be all one with that disease called *Lupus*. For *Lupus* is a malignãt vlcer quickly consuming the neather parts, but specially annoying the thighes and legs, & it is very hungry like vnto a wolfe (whereof it seemeth to receiue his title) eating vp the flesh that lieth next vnto it, which without doubt is of the kind of *Phagedænæ*. Diseases

Signa Ganglÿ

Scrofulæ.

Chærades Græcorum.

Sues.

Struma Celsi.

Lib. 6.

Lupia.

Lupus morbus.

therefore are farre diuerſe among themſelues the one from the other, al-

Nodi. though in name they be ſomewhat acquainted. *Nodus* (as the knot of a rope) is ſaid of the ſame *Guido*, to be round, hard, and abiding in one and the ſame place, growing eſpecially about the ſinewie place of the body. But *Auicen*

Auicẽnæ nodi. in a certaine place, defineth *Nodi* to be *dubeleta frigida*, and he compareth this name with *Steatomata*, which are called *adipoſi* and *adipini Nodi*, fat kernels; and with *Meliceridæ*, which are called *mellitij Nodi*; and with *Atheromata*, which conſiſt of a certaine kind of matter like vnto a pulſe, which the Greekes call *Athera*. But becauſe theſe three kinds of abſceſſiõs, that is to ſay, *Steatoma*, *Meliceris*, and *Atheroma*, are moſt incident to mens bodies, and *Galen* maketh mentiõ of them in very many places, we think it conuenient (hauing here gotten ſo fit opportunity) to treate of them plainely, to declare their nature, and their markes, whereby they may be knowne, and in what things alſo they do

Atheroma. differ and diſſent, and wherein they do alſo conſpire and agree. *Atheroma* therefore is a tumor of one and the ſame colour, and without paine, containing within the filme or ſinewie tunicle a ſoft humour like vnto *Athera*, that is, a kind of pulſe which is made of boyled meale. Sometime alſo in *Atheromata* together with a ſoft humour, there are found certaine ſtonie and hard ſubſtances and other things like vnto ſmall peeces of Brimſtone: oftentimes, there are found in them certaine things like vnto the chewed bones of a henne, and like vnto haires wound vp together. This tumor *Atheroma*, appeareth in forme and figure very long, and ſomewhat eleuated in height, which being preſſed with the fingers, by reaſon of clammiſhneſſe and thickneſſe of the humour, doth ſlowly yeeld or go backe, and the fingers being remoued it doth ſlow-

Meliceris. ly alſo returne againe. And *Meliceris* is a tumor which is void of paine alſo, but yet it is round, wherin the humor which is alſo included in ſome ſinewy tunicle, (which they call *Cyſtis*) is found ſomewhat thinne, repreſenting the ſubſtance of hony whereupon ſome of the Latines do call it *Mellifauium*, a hony combe. *Miliceris* therefore doth differ from *Atheroma* in faſhion, and in ſubſtance of the humor; for both the forme is more round, and the ſubſtance of the humor more ſlender. This hony tumor therefore is further extended then *Atheroma*, and by preſſing it with the fingers it doth ſpeedily giue place, and when the fingers are remoued, it doth with the like celeritie returne to the former

Steatoma. place. But *Steatoma* is a tumour alſo beſides nature, all of one colour, and very gentle to be handled; in the beginning truly it is very ſmall, but in proceſſe of time it increaſeth and becommeth more copious, wherein is contained a humour very like vnto tallow, which is alſo comprehended vnder the filmes of the body. This is diſtinguiſhed from *Miliceris* and from *Atheroma*, by reaſon of the hardneſſe thereof, for it is both full and plentifull; and it doth ſo reſiſt touching, that it will in no wiſe yeeld to the thruſting of the fingers. But let vs now proceed to declare other kinde of Apoſtemes which are almoſt re-

Teſtudo. duced vnto theſe three whereof we haue now intreated. *Teſtudo* (ſaith *Guido*) is a great Abſceſſion, very humerall, ſoft, and of a broad faſhion, after the manner of a target, (whereupon it receiued the name) which euill if it groweth (ſaith he) in the head, it is called *Talparia* or *Talpa*: if in the necke, it is called *Bocium*: if in the ſtones, *Hernia*: but ſometime it is found with matter, or with

certaine

certaine scales, or with a *Fistula* accompanying it. But *Testudines* and *Talpæ*, amongst the ancient Physitions, had neither any proper name, nor yet once intreated of. But some of our dayes do define *Testudo* to be a soft tumour, or not greatly hard, yet somewhat big, in the which is contained a grosse matter lying hid in a certaine tunicle, which doth so cleaue vnto the whole head of a man (for it is a disease incident to the skin of the head) that oftentimes it corrupteth the same. This euill (no doubt) is to be accounted among the number of Abscessions, and comprehended vnder *Meliceris* or *Atheroma*, but it rather seemeth to incline vnto *Meliceris*: but *Talpa*, because it containeth a white matter is rather referred vnto *Atheroma* then vnto *Meliceris*: Notwithstanding *Guido* affirmeth, that it is a kind of *Testudo*, yea also that it is *Testudo* it selfe (as we said of late) as *Hernia* also and *Bocium*, which he also nameth: but these affects haue borrowed their diuerse names according to the varietie of the place wherein they are found. But that which the common sort call *Bocium*, the Greekes (fetching their title or name euen from the very depth) do properly call *Bronchocêle*: we call it *Herniam gutturis*, whereupon they also call them *Gutturosi*, which do labour of that disease *Bronchocêle*, is a great tumour chancing in the necke, verie round, betweene the skin and the wind pipe, wherein there is included, sometime dead flesh, sometime a certaine humour like vnto hony, or fat, or sodden meale, or water. Sometime also (as *Celsus* saith) there are found in such tumours certaine haires mingled with little bones. *Nacta* (as *Guido* writeth) is a great tumor, full of flesh like vnto the flesh of a mans buttocks of diuers formes and greatnes, as are Melons & Gourds, & therefore it borroweth sundrie names according to the variety of the fashion & member wherein it is placed. Moreouer this tumour which of the latter sort is called *Nacta* or *Napta*, is voide of paine, except peraduenture it be so great, that by the continuall drawing of the parts of that mẽber, it bringeth some griefe to the parts about it. This also is of the number of Abscessions, & doth pertaine vnto *Steatomata* (as we haue said before in enumeration of tumors besides nature. *Bubo* (saith *Galen*) is a disease of the soose members, or of *Glandulæ* (which the Greekes call *Adenæ*) that is to say, a simple inflammation. Wherefore *Guido* hath either vnfitly here rehearsed it among the number of flegmatick abscessions, or else he vnderstandeth some other matter then *Galen* doth. But *Bubones* which are caused through a fall from some place, or by other vlcers & diseases, are without any danger: but those which are wont to happen in pestilent feauers, are the worst of all (whether they inuade the thighes, or the nostrils, or the necke. *Fugillæ* (saith the interpreter of *Auicen*) is of the kind of glandulous Apostemes, and this terme (saith he) is appropriated vnto it, because it is a disease chancing behind the eares. By the which discription it may easily be coniectured, that *Fugillæ*, so called of *Auicen*, is that tumour, which is called of the Greekes *Parotis*, that is a glandulous disease growing vnderneath the eare. But some do thinke *Fugillæ* to be all one with *Bubo*: but then *Bubo* is farre otherwise taken of them then of *Galen* and *Paulus*, which is (as they say) a tumour that is deeply planted and rooted, and oftentimes not compassed with any skin or filme: it is very hard also, after the manner of the euils called *Scrofulæ*; & in that signification (as I iudge) is *Bubo* taken of *Guido*, because he doth register

Talpa.
Bocium.
Bronchocêle.
Nacta.
Nacta or Napta is referred vnto Steatoma.
Bubo.
Fugillæ.
What Bubo is with Guido and other late Physitions.

The differẽces of flegmaticke abſceſſions.

regiſter *Fugillinus Bubo* amongſt the nũber of flegmatick abſceſſions. But there are now found out verie manie titles giuen to theſe kinds of phlegmaticke abſceſſions. But we ought not greatly to ſtand vpon the names of them, ſo that we know and vnderſtand the only differences of them, becauſe it falleth ſo out, that according to the diuerſitie of their names, their cures and iudgement do varie. Therefore of ſuch kinds of abſceſſions, ſome truly are included within a certaine skin or tunicle (which they call *Cyſtu*) and ſome are deeply planted in the fleſh: ſome haue a ſlender foundation, or ſmall roote, and ſome againe are verie large and broad. Alſo ſome are eaſie to be reſolued, and ſome are farre otherwiſe: ſome great and ſome little. Some alſo do come vnto ſuppuration, and ſome do not. To conclude, ſome tumours are ſcalie, fiſtulus and cancerous, but ſome do admit or ſuffer none of theſe things. The cauſes of theſe kindes of tumours are threefold, *videlicet*, 1. Primitiue cauſes, as a fall, a ſtripe exceſſiue or inordinate liuing, and an euill diet. 2. Antecedent cauſes, as are vnnaturall humours, eſpecially thoſe which be flegmaticke and true *Oedemata*, which do degenerate into abſceſſions. 3. *Coniunctæ cauſæ*, which are the diuerſe ſubſtances; and properly the matters of euery abſceſſion contained in the affected member. But in theſe kinds of tumours there are contained certaine humours, which be either ſerous or wateriſh, as is vrine, putrified and corrupt, or filthy, or dirty: or elſe humours like vnto hony, or ſodden meale, or vnto fat. But there are ſometime found within theſe abſceſſions, phlegmaticke, and wateriſh, and glandulous fleſh, ſometime alſo ſtones, ſand, ſhels, wood, coales, and other ſuch like ſolide ſubſtances. Notwithſtanding theſe three kinds of tumours do moſt frequent mens bodies (as we haue ſaid before,) whereof euerie one hath borrowed in Greeke his proper title: as *Atheroma*. *Steatoma*, and *Miliceris*, which are thus called by reaſon of the ſimilitude of the ſubſtances contained in them. For there is another tumour amongſt theſe, like vnto tallow, or ſome other fat thing, another like vnto honie, another like vnto a thinne kinde of meate, which they call *Athera*, The ſignes and iudgements of ſuch kinds of tumours, which belong vnto fleame, may eaſily be found out by their diſcriptions and differences before declared. But the marke whereby we may know whether they be couered with any veile or not, is this; there is moueableneſſe and vnconſtancie of the filme or skin called *Cyſtis*, which the ancient Phyſitions haue named *Tunica*, and there is a ſeparation of the skinne: but when they be ſurely fixed, that is, abiding in one place, and do cleaue faſt to the fleſh, it is an euident token that they are garded about with no filme or tunicle at all. Furthermore, thoſe tumors which are new and tractable, may eaſily be diſcuſſed, but they which be hard and inueterate, can in no wiſe be reſolued. Redneſſe, paine, and increaſing of heate, do declare that thoſe abſceſſions will either come to ſuppuration, or elſe degenerate into a fiſtula or a canker *Strumæ numeroſæ*, which do affect the outward member, and do often change their place, wandring here and there about the body, with a certaine extraordinarie heat, do teſtifie and declare very plainly, that they will beget and breed thoſe inward diſeaſes called *Chærades* as *Arnaldus* hathnoted in a certaine place. Thoſe remedies therefore, which are outwardly applyed to them, do profite little or nothing. But theſe diſeaſes (as

Of the cauſes, ſignes & iudgments of the aforeſaid tumours.

Cauſes of tumours which pertaine vnto fleame.

The matter of flegmaticke abſceſſions.

14. Therap.

Signa.

Note abſceſſus velamento incluſi.

Iudicia ab ſceſſumpetuitoſorum.

Arnaldus à Villa noua,

Auicen

Auicen thought) are increaſed and do multiply by ſome fall, or ſome hurt or bruiſe in the bodie. Now theſe ſtrumous tumours are greatly helped by vſing purging medicines, diureticall potions, and Electuaries, (as they call them) which can dry vp. Alſo the change of aire doth greatly auaile in yong children. But children, by reaſon of their exceſſiue eating and immoderate diet, and the ſlendernes of bodie, are very often annoyed with *Strumæ*. But old men by reaſon of the contrary cauſes are ſeldome troubled therewith. Moreouer they which haue a narrow forehead, and ſtraight temples, and great cheeks, are ſubiect to *Strumæ*: for in ſuch the matter is readily brought down to the neck, as one *Henricus* among the number of the late Phyſitions hath noted very wel. But *Strumæ* (as *Celſus* ſaith) are wont commonly to weary Phyſitions, becauſe they procure feauers alſo, neither do they at any time ripen eaſily, and they are cured either with ſome hote inſtrument, or with medicines, and oftentimes they do riſe vp againe beſides their ſcarres, and a long time after they require medicines againe: and moreouer it ſo cometh to paſſe that they remaine in the fleſh a long ſeaſon. The inciſion and corroſiuing of ſuch tumors is greatly to be feared about the bellie, the necke & the ioynts, by reaſon of the affinity and knitting together of the veines, the arteries, and the ſinewes, and alſo of the internall capacitie. In the inciſion alſo of great Glandule, it behoueth greatly to eſchue that veine which lyeth at the roote of them, and doth bring nouriſhment vnto them. For oftentimes it bringeth great profuſion of bloud, whereupon there enſueth ſtraightway no ſmal danger. Theſe euils called *Strumæ*, do greatly differ among themſelues, but in greatneſſe, nature, place, beginning, multitude, and ioyning together of the veſſels (as *Ætius* hath gathered out of *Leonidas*.) Therefore little *Strumæ* are ſooner and more eaſily cured then the great, euen as the gentle tumours are more tractable then thoſe which are inflamed. Noiſome *Strumæ* cannot be remedied; for ſeeing all ſuch diſeaſes called *Strumæ* are cancerous, and do ſtuffe vp the veſſels of the body, while they are curing, they muſt needs bring the danger of profuſion of bloud, beſides that alſo they are found very deepe in the fleſh, and therefore they cannot any way be cut off. For a malicious and hurtfull *Struma* doth poſſeſſe the beſt veſſels, that is, the greateſt veines and arteries (which are called *Carotides*) euen as though it ſhould hold by certaine rootes. The ſuperficiall *Strumæ* are more eaſie to be cured then the internall, by reaſon of their place, and thoſe are curable which do happen in the necke, where yet you muſt be very diligent to eſchue the loud and great ſinewes: for many by cutting *Strumæ* about the windepipe, and by cutting other ſinewes, haue cauſed the ſicke all the time of his life after to remaine ſpeechleſſe. For beſides the exciſion of that ſinew, the great veſſels being laid bare and cooled in the cure, do hurt the duty of the tongue. For the multitude of *Strumæ*, it appeareth that one alone may eaſilier be cured then many together. And concerning the manner of their riſing, it is manifeſt alſo, that they which hang downward are a great deale ſooner healed, then they which are planted in the fleſh. Thus much of *Strumæ*, which *Ætius* hath recited out of *Leonidas*. The cure of theſe kinds of abſceſſions, which haue their originall of fleame, is of the late Chyrurgians appointed to be twofold, that is to ſay, 1. Generall, and vniuerſally common

In what ages and bodies Strumæ do reigne.

Celſus.

Magnitudo Strumæ.

Natura.

Locus.

Multitudo.

Ortus.

Duplex abſceſſuum pituitoſorum curandi ratio.

common to all. 2. particular, which is proper in euery difference. Therefore our generall methode of curing these tumours shall be, to appoint such an ordinarie and conuenient diet to the sicke, as that the matter which causeth such abscessions be not heaped vp together in the body, and by all meanes to preuent and turne away the antecedent matter (as they call it) which now is gathered together in the sicke body, lest at length it be vnited to the ioyned cause, that is, vnto the matter which now bringeth the disease. But we shall accomplish the first intention of our generall cure, if the sicke do diligently obserue that kinde of diet, which is prescribed in our former Chapters (this one excepted) which is, that they ought to keepe a very thinne diet, and that which is more conuenient to deuide thicke and clammie humours. Therefore if they will follow the counsell of *Auicen*, let them eschue all those meates which are of a grosse iuyce, the drinking also of cold things, too much satietie and immoderate fulnesse, and those things also which procure vomite and abhorring of meates. But they must abide as much hunger as can be. They must chiefly procure good digestion, and auoid a moist house, that is either situated in low valleys, or in fennes, or frequented with corrupted waters. Let his drinke be wine that is excellent and of the best, or else let it be water of Alume, or of Brimstone: for such kind of minerall waters, especially those which do represent in tast the dregs of wine, do not onely diminish and discusse these inward stumous and flegmatick abscessions, but those also which do outwardly affect the superficiall parts of the body (as *Arnaldus* affirmeth.) But we do perfect the other part of our former proceeding, that is to say, to turne away the antecedent matter, lest it be mingled with *coniuncta materia*, by soure kinds of euacuations, that is, by some medicine to purge fleame downeward, & sometime by letting of bloud, also by those things which can prouoke vrine, and last of all by those remedies which can through their vapour both resolue and digest the humour which is gathered together in the inward parts of the bodie. To purge the bodie downeward, the powder of *Turbith* is greatly commended, which is made thus in *Auicen* ℞. of *Turbith*, Ginger, and Sugar, of each a like portion: but he taketh thereof two Drachmes, and affirmeth also, that (besides that it doth resolue grosse fleame) it doth neither heate, nor violently wrest the inward members. But *Razes*, who was very bold in declaring and vsing purging medicines, made this kinde of powder, in his ninth Chapter *de doloribus Ventris ad Almansorem*, of twenty parts of *Turbith*, of ten of Ginger, and thirty of Sugar, and ministred of it at one time, ℥.iij. *Benedicta* also and *Hierapicra*, and *Pilulæ de Agarico*, and *Pilulæ maiores de Hermodactylis* do greatly helpe these diseases. To prouoke vrine, *Guido* out of *Cauliacus* was wont to vse this potion following, which (he saith) he gathered out of the writings of many Physitions. ℞. of *Scrofularia*, *partes* iij. of *Phylipendulæ partes* ij. of Pimpernel, Mouseare, *Tenacetum*, of red Coleworts (which of some are thought to be *Brassica maruciua*) of *Rubia maior*, ana. part. j. of the root of *Aristolochia*, of *Spathula fœtida* of the roote of Radish, ana. part. ß. put them altogether, and boile them in white wine and bony vntill halfe be consumed, then streine them, whereof euery third day in the morning let the sicke take three ounces, and let it be drunke hote. But in the applying of all these remedies,

Victus ratio.

Aquæ alumi-nosa vis.

Antecedentis materiæ euacuatio.

Vacuantia per aluum.

Puluis Turbith.

Razes.

Hierapicra.

Prouokers of vrine.

Potio Guidonis è Cauliaco.

remedies, (as also for bloudletting, if at anytime it be required) the counsell of some learned Physition is to be vsed, who may prescribe both the qualitie, quantitie, and vse of them. But to resolue through breathing, and to digest the humour which is gathered together in the depth of the body, and doth excite inward Glandule, (which also are the causes of outward diseases) *Galen lib.* 14. *Therap.* willeth vs to minister *Theriaca, Athanasia, Ambrosia*, and that medicine also which is made of *Cretica Calaminthe*, the Greeks call it *Diacalaminthes* whose compositiõ is to be sought out in *Lib.* 4. *De sanit. tuen.* Many other helpes are appointed for the cure of these absessions, as potions, electuaries, and oiles, which are cast into the eares. There are also very many remedies called *Empirica*, consisting in practise, described, and celebrated of the ancient Physitions; the vse whereof I do not allow, and therefore I thinke it good to pretermit the declaration of them in these our Commentaries. Notwithstanding this one thing I stedfastly affirme, that the Christian King of France is indued as it were by inspiration with so wonderfull a gift, that with the onely laying on of the hands he can restore them which be diseased with *Strumæ* or *Scrofulæ* to their perfect health againe. King *Edward* also (as histories do report) was wont maruellously to cure Strumous persons onely by touching them, which gift immortall doth come as it were by inheritance to the Kings that succeed. For the Kings of England at this day, by laying on of hands, and rehearsing certaine ceremoniall prayers, do heale *Strumæ*. And these things truly are generally spoken in all the absessions before mentioned. Now those things which follow do concerne the particular and proper method of curing euery difference: which methode is made not onely diuerse, but also it is changed both by the substance of matter whereof they haue their beginning, and by the quantitie of them whether they be great or small, and by the nature also of the affected member, and of the whole body. But the continuance of time, although it declareth not the cure, yet sometime it sheweth vs, and it doth insinuate the quality of the disposition thereof, (as *Galen* hath set downe *lib.* 4. *de morbis curandis.*) Therefore although many indications and intentions of their cure may be gathered and learned by those things we haue spoken before, yet for our present purpose, we haue reduced them into sixe points, which we haue expressed in these sixe canons following. The first whereof is after this manner: imprimis, let those flegmaticke absceſſions that are soft and small, (which are commonly called *Lupiæ*, & of the interpreter of *Auicen*, *Glandulæ*) if they be seated in the strong parts of the bodie, and because they are not yet inueterate, haue their thin *Cystis*, that is, their filme to couer them, let them I say, be appeased, suppressed, consumed, and afterward dried vp. 2. Mollifie, discusse and consume the great absceſſions which be not greatly hard nor inueterate, after the manner of œdematous tumours, whereof we haue before intreated. 3. Ripen, open, and cleanse such flegmaticke, corrupted, and vlcerous apostemes, which do pertaine vnto suppuration. 4. Those *Strumæ* which are not cured by the former remedies, and yet are moueable, gentle, tractable, and obedient, cut them off, and draw them out. 5. Those which are vnmoueable, deeply rooted, inwardly planted, and wound about the veines and arteries, and broad at the roote within, corrosiue them about, and cleanse

Quæ per halitum digerant.

The Kings of France do cure Strumæ by applying the hands.

What things do alter the particular cure of absceſſions flegmaticke.

Tempus quid insinuet.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

them

them throughly, 6. Those which are fastened but to a thin and slender roote, bind them about and plucke them out. The first canon, according to *Auicen* his opinion is perfected after this manner, if when you do consume and suppresse vehemently these soft and little abscessions (which *Auicen* doth call *Glandulæ*, and the new Physitions *Lupiæ*) you do lay on a plate of lead made fit for the tumour, and bind it very strongly in the middest, lest it slide from the place: for this doth digest these kinds of tumours. First therefore let *Lupia* be softly rubbed with the hand vntill it waxe somewhat hote, vntil it be after a sort softer then it selfe. Afterward let the affected member be surely layed hold on with the hands, and let it be so often, and so vehemently striken, with the bottome of a saucer, or with some other solide thing, that it may be disseuered, and that the inward *Cystis* thereof (which is the filme wherein it is included) may be rent and broken, and so the matter therein contained may be dispersed: which thing being done, apply the plate of lead vpon the place, and let it be bound very strongly with a swathing band that hath two ends, neither let it be remoued for the space of nine or ten dayes, but let the plate be of that greatnesse (as it was said of late) that it may answer to the proportion of *Lupia*. But there are some which before the application of any plate of lead do minister this ointment, made of burnt lead, of the barke of the Elder tree, or of the Figge tree, with oyle and vineger. Other do first vse an Emplaister made of Aloës, *Acatia*, Mirrhe, *Olibanum*, *Sarcocolla*, putting to them a little vineger, or the white of an ege, as much as shall seeme sufficient to commixe with the rest. *Henricus* was wont to lay vpon them little flakes (as he and many other Chyrurgians of that sect do call them) made of flaxe, dipped in the white liquor of an eg, with salt & alume *Zuccharinum* vnthicked. Moreouer *Philagrius* almost after the same manner was wont to cure *Glanglia* (as it is in *Ætius*) which diseases are tumors vnequall (as we said before) speaking after this sort. We denie (saith he) the labour of the Chyrurgians, that is, bloudletting in *Ganglia*, especially if they chance in the hands, or in the feete; but we must cure them onely by medicines. For we annoint them by the fire with Ammoniack, which must be made pliant to the thickneſſe of an Emplaister: afterward we apply a plate of lead equall for the tumor; and lest it should slide away from the place, we bind it in the middest with straight bands. But a few dayes after, when we know that *Ganglium* is mollified, we take away the bands, and (not saying any thing to the sicke) while the place is yet hote, we fasten the thombe of our right hand vpon *Ganglium*, and laying fast hold on the member with our other foure fingers we violently breake it, and so *Ganglium* is presently dissolued. Hitherto *Philagrius*. Therefore by this our order of cure, it may easily be gathered, that *Lupia* amongst the late Physitions, *Auicen* his *Glandulæ*, and *Ganglion* among the Greeks, is all one disease, which the former description of them doth also manifestly declare. *Archigenes* in this disease, commandeth to lay on lime with the fat of a goose, and with Rosin, *Terebinthina*, which is the right Turpentine. The same *Archigenes* also did oftentimes vse that medicine made of the stone called *Lapis Achates*, as *Paulus* reporteth. But *Oribasius* vsed very often this medicine, ℞. of Ceruce, *Resina piceæ*, old oyle, ana. ℥ j. of Ammoniacke, *Thymiama* and *Galbanum*, ana. a like quantity,

Compressio & attritio.

Lupiæ curatio

Lamina plumbea.

Vnguentum Rogerij.

Ganglij curatio ex Philagrio.

Lupia & ganglion is al one euill.

Archigenes lib. 4.

Oribasius his medicine to mollifie Ganglia.

quantity, of waxe ℥.iiij. The same medicine is to be seene in *Ætius*, but the quantitie doth vary in certaine things, as thus, ℞. of Ceruse, old Oyle, and *Resinæ piceæ*, ana. ℔.j. of Waxe, ℥. ij. of *Ammoniacum*, *Thymiama*, and of *Galbanum*, ana. ℥. i. boile the Ceruse with oyle till it lose his staining facultie, then bray the Ammoniacke, and cast it into the Ceruse with the oyle, afterward cast in the *Resina picea* and the Waxe, and last of all the *Galbanum*, which first must be made very soft and tender. Moreouer that famous Physition of Greece, I meane *Oribasius*, did not apply any plate of lead, as *Philagrius*, *Auicen*, and other late Chyrurgians were accustomed, but he did lay and bind vnto *Ganglium*, a thicke round peece of lead like vnto a wherue, which doth hang vpon womens spindles to make them turne round, which was more large and ample for the disease. For truly, saith he, with the weight thereof, it doth more speedily dissolue the euill. Therefore in the cure of *Ganglia*, it is far better to vse such mollifying and discussing medicines, then the diligence of the Chyrurgian (with excision of the tumours,) especially when they do grow in the legges, or in the armes, or in the principall parts of the body. For it is to be feared, that if they be cut off, the member is made lame and vnperfect. But those diseases which do occupie the head or the forehead, may safely be cured with the hand, that is, may be cut off or pulled vp by the roots. Therefore diuide the outward skinne with a penknife, and then (if the tumours be small) lay hold on the foundation of them with a paire of pinsers, or some such like instrument, and cut them off from the roote. But if they be great, thrust them through with a booke, and lift them vp and wind them round about, vntill you haue plucked and drawne them foorth: last of all, sew vp the sides or brims of them together, and vse those medicines which are appointed for bloudy vlcers. But these things belong vnto the fourth canon. The second canon (because I will be silent in those medicines which are appointed for flegmaticke and œdematous tumors, which we haue described already, and yet together with these remedies following, they be very profitable and expedient for these Absessions whereof we now intreate, and also for all kind of *Hernia*) is finished by the applying of a certaine Emplaister, which is described of *Galen libro sexto de compositione medicamentorum κατὰ γένη*: which Emplaister (as he himselfe testifieth) doth digest through breathing, and doth repell *Phlegmone*, and is effectuall against the diseases called *Strumæ*, *Pani*, and *Parotides*: it is auaileable also against the goute, and it benefiteth many other diseases. The Emplaister is this. ℞. of old oyle, ℥. 1co. *Spumæ argenti*, *Picis siccæ*, ana. ℥. 50. of *Ladanum*, ℥ 52. of *Ærugo rasa*, ℥. 8. of *Galbanum*, ℥. 4. let *Argenti spuma*, which they call *Lithargirum*, be braied and boiled in the oile, and when they are somewhat thickned together, put in the Pitch and the rust of the scourings of brasse, commonly called verdigreace, then the *Ladanum*, and *Galbanum*. Afterward powre them into a mortar, and bray them and mollifie them, and reserue them to your vse. Some to make it haue a good colour, and to looke somewhat brown, do commixe with them also the offal of brasse, ℥. viij. for otherwise it would be very blacke. This Emplaister is found otherwise described in *Guido* his commentaries, vnder this forme. ℞. of old oile, ℥. xii. of the scourings of brasse, ℥. xiiii. of dry Pitch, ℥. vi. of *Ladanum*, ℥. iii. of

Verticillum plumbeum.

Ganglionum per Chyrurgiã curatio.

Secundus canon.

Discussion by digestiues.

Emplastrum.

Diachylon. *Lithargirum*, ℥. xij. of *Galbanum*, ℥.iij. For the ſame purpoſe *Diachylon* alſo which is called *commune & ireatum* doth profite much, whereof you muſt take one pound, and commixe therewith the powder of the roote of Ireos, ℥.j. The ſame effect hath that *Diachylon*, called *magnum Meſues*, whoſe deſcription ſhall afterward enſue. Some counſell vs for the digeſtion of theſe abſceſſions to apply vnto the aggrieued place, the old dung of a Goate with hony and vineger, which muſt be heat ouer the fire vntill they be well incorporate together, and then brought to the forme of an emplaiſter: alſo an emplaiſter made of Fenugreeke, of the ſeed of flaxe, and of coleworts, with the ſcraping of the roote of *Althæa*, which medicine (if there be any hope of ſuppuration) doth ripen it notably: *Haly Abbas* alſo for the ſame purpoſe doth greatly commend this emplaiſter following. ℞. of Beane meale, and Barley meale, ana ℥ v of the roote of Liquorice, of the roote of *Althæa*, and pitch, ana. ℥. x. of white waxe, gooſe ſuet, ana. ℥. x. bray them, and mingle them together with old oyle, and with the vrine of a child that hath not yet tried Venus ſports, and ouer a ſoft fire make an emplaiſter. Another out of *Auicen* which *Guido* vſed. ℞. of Oxes dung ℥.ij. of the root of Coleworts, of the roote of Capers, of the fiſh called a ſhrimpe, of fat Figges, ana. ℥ ß. of Hops and *Bdellium*, ana. ℥.ij. of Vineger, hony, Sowes tallow, of the dregs of old oyle, of each as much as is ſufficient, whereof make an Emplaiſter. *Brunnus* approueth this remedie, following, whoſe opinion *Theodoricus* alſo doth confirme. ℞. of Ammoniacke, *Bdellium*, *Galbanum*, of each a like quantitie: ſteepe them three daies in Vineger, whereto (when they be diſſolued) you may adde of ſmall bran as much as ſhall ſuffice, and make an Emplaiſter. *Rogerius* was wont to vſe this remedie for *Strumæ* (which they commonly call *Scrofulæ*,) ℞. of the roote of brakes of Daffadil, or of Walwort (if you pleaſe) of each as much as you thinke good, let them be boyled in the beſt wine, and then brayed in a mortar, and adde to them a little quicke brimſtone, and make an Emplaiſter. *Guido* his maiſter *in Monte Peſſulano*, hath often tried this emplaiſter to be moſt effectuall, which is made of xij. Snailes (which they alſo call *Limaces*) boiled in wine or in lye made of aſhes, commonly called *clauelata*. But that which is more profitable, he did miniſter euery day to the ſicke to be eaten one Snaile, either drie or otherwiſe prepared, and as they terme it, made ready to chew. *Paulus* alſo was wont notably to diſcuſſe *Strumæ* with vnſlaked lime, ſteeped in hony, or in the filthineſſe of mens bodies that doth ariſe either in exerciſing themſelues, or in bathes, or elſe in oile, or Sowes greaſe. The like vertue, ſaith *Ætius*, hate the filthineſſe of exerciſing places ſcraped from the walles, which muſt be well beaten together and ſpread vpon a linnen cloth, and applyed after the manner of an Emplaiſter. For the ſame purpoſe this helpeth effectually. ℞. of lime and *Nitrum*, ana. a like portion, of *Cardamomum* and Fenugreeke, foure times as much, with hony, and apply it after the manner of a mollifying plaiſter. Alſo the meale of bitter Hops boiled and annointed with *Oximel* doth diſcuſſe *Strumæ*. For the ſame purpoſe alſo Oxes dung boiled in vineger and annointed, doth notably auaile, which being applyed after the manner of a Cataplaſma, doth marueilouſly diſſolue all hard and ſcirrous tumours. Rath ripe Figges alſo, eſpecially of the wild

Stereus caprinum vetus.

Haly Abbas emplaſtrum.

Emplaſtrum Auicennæ.

Brunni & Theodorici emplaſtrum ad ſtrumas.

Rogerij emplaſtrum.

Emplaſtrum præceptoris Guidonis ex limacibus.

wild fig tree, applyed with Hogs greaſe, do diſcuſſe all kinds of tumors. Therefore by this our method of curing, you ſhall heale all kind of *Strumæ* which are but newly begun, & not yet inueterate, as well in children as in them which cannot abide manuall practiſe, euen by the applying of ſuch medicines as can diſſolue, and digeſt, & diſcuſſe. But firſt you muſt labour to mollifie and afterward to diſſolue, or elſe vſe ſome medicine of a double quality, which can worke both theſe effects together, of which kind are all thoſe remedies almoſt which are before deſcribed. Now if digeſtiue medicines ſhall nothing preuaile in theſe Abſceſſions, they muſt be either brought vnto ſuppuration, or conſumed, or elſe cured by Chyrurgerie, (as it ſhall be ſaid hereafter. But here we muſt not omit that thing which is recorded of ſome very diligently: namely: that they which are d ſeaſed with *Strumæ*, & with any leproſie, are maruellouſly holpen by the vſing of Vipers & Serpents, and by drinking of the gumme called *Laſer*, euery day faſting to the quantitie of a cich peaſe. Therefore caſt the dead Serpent into a pot, and ſtop the mouth thereof very iuſt with ſome plaiſter, and ſet it in the fire, then take the aſhes of the burned Serpent, and mingle them with the like quantitie of Fenugreeke, and vſe them in wine. For this doth excellently helpe them which be ſtrumous. Alſo in them that labour with *Strumæ*, you muſt prouide that the belly be made ſoluble, and a ſlender diet obſerued: you muſt daily prouoke vomiting, & indeuour to purge fleame vpward: you muſt drie the head, and apply Cataplaſmes to the forepart thereof, which can raiſe vp litle puſhes in the skin, as is, the root of Capers, with *Polenta*, and other ſuch like things. And you muſt vſe purging medicines and fine powders that be of like vertue. We alſo do generally diſpatch the declaration of the third rule, by the vſe of the former remedies: for all mollifying and reſoluing medicines, if they find any place of matter diſobedient vnto reſolution, they doubtleſſe do ripen the ſame matter, and bring it to ſuppuration, eſpecially if the ſaid matter be gentle and tractable, or commixed with bloud. But *Haly Abbas*, that he might bring theſe kinds of Abſceſſions vnto maturity, miniſtred a plaiſter made of Barley meale, pitch, and *Olibanum*, & of the vrine of a yong child, all well incorporate together. But *Auicen* to repreſſe the vehemency of the heate, willeth to commixe the decoction of Coriander with the aforeſaid vrine. But if theſe things do nothing helpe, and there be required a more effectuall remedie, take of Myrrhe part j. of *Licium* parts ij. and mingle them with the aforeſaid decoction. This medicine vnder written, doth bring *Strumæ* vnto ſuppuration, which medicine is recorded of *Paulus Ægineta*, *lib.* 4 ℞. of Myrrhe, ℥.x. of *ammoniacum Thymiama*. ℥.vij. of *Viſcus quercinum* ℥.viij. of *Galbanum*, ℥ iiij. *Propelis*, ℥ j beate them in a mortar. But when theſe Abſceſſions be ripe, and brought vnto ſuppuration (which you ſhall eaſily perceiue by theſe tokens of matter) they muſt be opened & cleanſed with that ointment cõmonly called *Vnguentum Apoſtolorum*, which is an ointment of great efficacy in malignant and vlcerated *Strumæ*. To this purpoſe alſo the ointment called *Vnguentũ Aegyptiacum* is very profitable, & the *Emplaſtrum de ſuccis* (which they call *Diachylon* & *Diapalma*, which the Greeks cal φοινικον whoſe deſcriptions are to be found in other places. But if theſe Abſceſſions ſhall poſſeſſe any member, wherein there ſubſiſteth any putrifaction: and cor-

The vſing of vipers and ſerpents doth maruellouſly helpe them which are ſtrumous.

3. Tertij Canonis declaratio Suppurantia, ſeu maturantia.

Pauli medicamentum ad ſtrumas ſuppurandas. Detergentia.

Vnguentum Apoſtolorum. Vnguentum Ægyptiacum Diachylon. Diapalma.

ruption of the bones, or any euill symptomate shall haue accesse to them, they must be cured after the manner of vlcers, with which they haue some affinity and acquaintance. Concerning our fourth canon, you shall cure gentle obedient, superficiall, and curable *Strumæ*, very cunningly and shortly, after this sort. First, command the sicke to lye downe: for that when he sitteth his heart will quickly faile him. When he is thus layed, bind his legs surely together, and tye them to the bedstead, and charge the seruants about him to hold his head very hard. Then cut the skin that compasseth the tumour, either with a right or a little ouerthwart section, but that incision which is drawne ouerthwart in the necke is altogether vnprofitable, because in it the vessels and sinewes are extended right forth. But you shall not cut the whole thickneesse of the skinne hastily at one time without ceassing: for our mind is to vse no violent thing in this our worke. And truly in little tumours, that is, in small *Strumæ*, make but a simple incision, or diuide them with a small line: but in great Absceſſions cut the skin to the forme of a Myrtle leafe: then those vessels which are vncouered (as the veines and arteries) put them softly and easily aside. After these things, distend & stretch out the sides of the section, or the edges of the diuided skin with pinsers, or with other such instruments, and plucke out the filmes within, either with your fingers, or with some other instrument appointed for that purpose, and so by litle and litle picke out *Strumæ*, where it appeareth bare and vnfolded from the tunicles. But if *Strumæ* shall be wound about the vessels, you must handle the cure with great attention, lest through negligence there followeth a copious profusion of bloud. Therefore in dispatching this cure draw one onely side of the section at once with the pinsers, and so by little and little separate it with the point of a penknife from the other parts thereunto adioyning: and when you haue drawne & loosed the connexion on the one side, do the like also on the other side, and then cut out the whole foundation or groundworke, because of the sinewes and vessels lying vnderneath. But in those *Strumæ* which do chance about the armeholes, and about the priuie members, you must make an ouerthwart incision, by reason of the doubling of the skin. Moreouer, in that section which is made in *Strumæ* that possesse the necke, you must haue a singular care, lest either the arteries, which they call *Carotides* or the quiuering sinewes be touched and hurt. But if by the cutting of any vessell when you make incision, the profusion of bloud doth delay and hinder your worke, either take vp the vessell with a small cord, or (if it be not very great) cut it quite off, (as *Paulus* counselleth) or else, (if it bursteth not out with great violence) apply such remedies as are appointed to stanch the bloud. Afterward returne againe vnto your enterprised labour. Therefore when the foundation of *Strumæ* is brought into a narrow roome, cut it cleane off cunningly and handsomely, and then put in the forefinger, and search the place diligently, whether there be any other *Strumæ* thereunto adioyned or not: which (if there be any found) you must also draw forth after that manner which we haue before expressed. Moreouer you shall easily represse a meane fluxe of bloud by applying those things which haue power to drie vp, as flaxe, sponges, or liniments made of cotton, infused in cold water, or in Vineger, or in a mixture of both, (which they call *Oxycraton*) & afterward

4. *The way to cure and destroy Strumæ, out of Albucasis and Leonidas.*

ward wrong out. But if the section shall continue without bloudshed, fill it vp with the powder of Frankensence, and applie liniments, and for the longer preseruation of the liniments, binde to wooll dipped in wine. But if any full veine worthy the speaking of be conuexed within the root or bottome of *Glandula* or *Struma*, or some such like tumour, it is not conuenient to cut it off at the verie ground, but to take it vp and bind it with a small cord, that it may fall out of it owne accord, peece by peece without danger. In which fall the cure must be followed with liniments: but the cord must be of some matter which will not easily putrifie, as are those threads which are called *Serica*, or small lute strings: for those bands which do quickly rot, do soone fall from those members whereunto they are tyed. But if when the worke is finished, some of the skinne which couereth the matter of the former Abscessions, or some other strange thing shall remaine behinde, *Albucasis* willeth it to be drawne out first, by filling the wound with cotton, or with some other like thing dipped in salt water. But *Guido*, to draw out those reliefts which remained behinde, did fill vp the gaping vlcer, first with the white of an egge, and with Alume sprinkled ouer it, afterward with *Vnguentum Ægyptiacum*, or with some of those corrosiuing medicines which are described in the Antidotarie. Moreouer in all these operations, you must apply such medicines as can lenifie paine: but amongst all other things, we do cõmonly lay on flaxe dipped in the white of an eg, and in oyle of Roses: You shall finish the scope of our fift rule after this sort: breake the skinne with some burning hote medicine according to the greatnesse of the abscession: But while you attempt that thing, you must giue diligent heede, lest that the scalding medicine do touch the other parts lying about the tumours. You shall notably dispatch this labour, by applying some hote medicine made of lime or Sope, which things do happily execute their effects within the space of twelue houres: but though they remaine somewhat longer, yet there will ensue no danger or discommoditie thereby. The skinne therefore being thus broken by some burning medicine, and the cruft procured in the place thereof, you shall deuide the tumour with a straight line all along through the middest of the cruft, but you must make incision somewhat deeply, almost to the very quicke, and then lay vpon the cut or gaping wound, a liniment striked with some consuming or eating medicine, as is, the powder of *Asphodelus*. Moreouer although many do apply a great number of medicines in these abscessions, yet Arsenicke in this case obtaineth the preheminence, so that a man know how to vse it aright. But the certaine quantitie of vsing the same cannot be described (as *Galen* hath noted in *libro tertio Therapeut.*) It is not therefore to be vsed rashly, because it is a medicine vehement and violent without measure, exciting feauers, and procuring many other vicious symptomates. Besides that also the minister ing of a small quantitie doth performe a maruellous and almost an incredible effect: notwithstanding the common measure or quantitie thereof, is the medietie of one graine of wheate in a strong bodie, and in those members which are farre off from the principall parts: but in weake natures, and in those places which are situated neare vnto the principall members, a lesse quantitie must be applyed. But to be short, it is better, and

What is to be done, if a veine be annexed vnto Struma.

Cords made of silke.

Albucasis.

Corrosio & mundificatio.

Causticum ex calce & sapone.

Arsenicum.

Quantitas Arsenici.

more safe, to minister a little at once and often, then at one time to applie an immoderate quantitie. The operation or effect of Arsenicke remaineth three whole dayes, in all which time the sicke must vse the diet of them that are feuerous. But the affected member, & the parts lying about it both for the owne defence, and to stop the flure (which immoderate heate may cause) ought to be annoynted, and all to washed with the oyntment called *Populeon*, with water also, or with the iuyce of Nightshade, and with vineger, and with other refrigerating remedies of the like kinde. But when you are certainly assured, that *Glandula* is destroyed and wasted away (which you shall know by the hardnes and swelling of the procured crust) then the crust must be resolued euen from the quick, by washing it with butter & by applying a litle wheat meale thicked together, and by some other fat and vnctuous thing that is not salted, as swines grease, and such like. But when the crust is fallen from the tumour, if any thing either of *Glandula*, *Lupia* or *Struma* do yet remaine behind, it must be fetched out with some gnawing medicine, as with powder of *Asphodelus*, with *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum*, or with some such like thing. But if there remaineth nothing behind, it must be brought vnto a scarre after the maner of other vlcers.

Quando crusta à vino resoluenda.

6. *Ligaturæ & exulsio.*

But now that we may also accomplish the intention of our sixt canon, these abscessions which haue verie narrow bases or foundations, must be fast bound either with a cord of silke, or with horse haire, and they must be bound dayly more and more, either with the former bands, or with other new cords, vntill they appeare verie drie, and voluntarily do fall away of their owne accord, (as we haue said of those Abscessions which are deeply planted, and folded about the great vessels.) But the band must be ayded with some consuming & drying medicine. The paine also must be asswaged with the white of an egge, with oyle of Roses, with *Vnguentū Populeon*, or with some other remedie that can mitigate paine. But when the cord shall fall off alone of it owne accord, the tumour must be cured after this manner which we haue before expressed. And thus much generally concerning those abscessions which vniuersally consist aboue nature, especially of them that haue their originall of fleame. Now we haue here thought it conuenient to set downe the proper & particular method of curing *Melicerides*, *Steatomata*, and *Atheromata*, which diseases are alwayes & often incident to mens bodies, and do comprehend vnder them other certaine kindes and differences of tumours besides nature, called of the late Physitions after certaine new titles and names, which among the ancient sort were neuer heard of, as *Talpa*, *Testudo*, *Nacta*, and other of that kind, which we haue expressed in our former chapters: in those three kinds of Abscessions which do most frequent mens bodies, (I meane in *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, & *Meliceris*) there is one generall order of their cure, namely that the matter which is contained in the tunicle which they call *Cystis* may be discussed, or that the whole tumour together with the very tunicle may be consumed by medicines, or taken away by section. But some of those tumors require a threefold method of curing, as those which containe a more liquide humour, as is *Melicerис*. Some againe are cured two wayes, as *Atheroma*, which is destroyed by section, and consumed by medicines. But *Steatoma* can neither be discussed nor consumed, but it is cured by the onely labours of the hand, that is, by section

Curatio Atheromatis, Steatomatis & Meliceris.

How many wayes these Abscessions may be cured.

section onely. Moreouer of medicines which in these affects haue power to discusse and dispersse, you shall find plenty among those remedies which we before haue set downe for the cure of *Strumæ*. But *Paulus* doth particularly and properly discusse *Melicerides* with that medicine, which containeth of pressed Grapes (the kirnels being taken out) xx. of the scourings of Brasse, ℥. iiij. which medicine must not be applied before the member be nourished with foments. Another Emplaister appointed for *Melicerides*, which *Aetius* reported vnto *Leonidas*. ℞. of pressed Grapes (the kirnels being detracted) ℔ j. of Comin seed beaten very small, ℥ vj. of *Nitrum* ℥ iij. bray altogether in a mortar, and bind them to the tumour. Another discussiue medicine expressed of the same writer, very profitable against *Melicerides*. ℞. *Salis ammoniaci*, of the scourings of siluer, and of Ceruse, ana. ℔ j. of Waxe *Terebinthina*, *Chalbana*, *Opoponax*, ana ℥ j. of *Rubrica sinopica*, ℥. vj. of Vineger, ℥. vij ß. boyle the scourings of siluer, Ceruse and Salt beaten very small all together, then cast in the *Rubrica sinopica*, which first must be steeped in Vineger, and melt them together. last of all, when they be all boyled together and cold, commixe therewith *Opoponax* and *Chalbana*, both dissolued in Vineger, and conserue them to your vse. But if in such kind of Abscessions you mind to wast the humour by applying of gnawing medicines (which the Græcians call *Septica*) it is expedient first to vncouer them (as also in *Strumæ*) by hote burning medicines applyed to the skinne, whereof (saith *Paulus*) the best remedie is that which consisteth of quicke Lime, that is, which is not yet quenched with water, of Sope, and of the ashes of Lye that are made in a stillatorie. There is another more diuerse remedie which may be kept a long time. ℞. of vnslaked Lime, ℥. iiij. of *Sphecie*, that is, of the burnt dregges of Wine, Liquide *Nitrum* parched in the fire, ana. ℥. ij. of *Minium* or *Rubrica sinopica* ℥. j. Let them be brayed with the distilled ashes of Lye, and when you haue brought them to the thicknesse of liquide Honie, heate them thrise ouer the fire, that it may be of a meane substance, and lay on *Pixu plumbra*, with the distilled Lye aboue, lest it dry vp too soone. Therefore first breake the skinne that is beset, with such medicines as can procure a crust: but when the crust is fallen off, applying consuming remedies, among which this remedy following doth notably wast without gnawing & byting. ℞. of the offal of brasse, ℥. iiij. of *Sandaracha*, that is, of red Arsenicke, and of *Helleborus niger*, ana. ℥. ij. apply them with oyle of Roses. Another remedie very effectuall for the same purpose. ℞. of a burnt Hedgehog, of *Testa sepia*, and of Orpine or Arsenicke, ana. an equall portion, commixe them with oyle of Roses. But the parts which lie about the tumour and are adiacent thereunto, let them be first annointed with Ceruse and oyle. But if we purpose to cure these kinds of Abscessions by making incisions, that is, by Chyrurgerie, truly in that method of curing (whether it be a mealy humour, or a hony, or a fat humour, or of what substance soeuer it be, which is contained in them) we must obserue one onely and principall intention, namely to take away the tunicle wherein the tumour is included.) But in enterprising the same, we must be verie attentiue and wary (as we haue said before of *Strumæ*) that we rashly hurt not and teare in peeces the filme or tunicle, whereupon the humour which was contained therein,

Lib. 4. Curatio per digerentia.

Lib. 15.

Curatio per exedentia. Lib. 4.

A medicine to wast without byting.

Curatio per Chyrurgiam.

gushing out plentifully, doth both hinder our operation, and some portion thereof also remaineth still behind. For if (when the tunicle is diuided, and the humour issued) the tumour shall sinke downe, the tunicle will hardly be plucked away and cured. But if any remnant of the humour be left behind in the Abscession, it is to be feared that the disease will grow againe (as doth *Struma*) when as any portion thereof sticketh behind. But if any such thing doth happē, it is not expedient to sew together the Abscession, but to draw out the relicts thereof, either with those consuming medicines which we haue before expressed, or by some such like remedies. Now, if *Steatoma* hath a verie broad top, and a very narrow and slender foundation, then (setting aside all other superfluous medicines) you must cut it vp quite euen by the very roote; for so the labour of the Chyrurgian shall be quickly ended, the vlcer made plaine and equall with the other parts, and the cure shortly dispatched.

Aetius li.15.

CHAP. XXV.

Of hard and scirrhus tumours, engendred of melancholie.

WE haue hitherto discoursed of those tumors which are caused of bloud, choler, and fleame: of *Verrucæ* also, and of those abscessions which are excited through a watērish humor, and a flatuous vapour: of those Apostemes also which haue their beginning of a flegmaticke substance, and of other tumours generally consisting aboue nature. Now it remaineth that we intreate of those Abscessions which do proceed of a melancholicke humour, as are *Scirrus*, indurated and cancerous tumours, which they call *Cancerosi*, *Apostemosi*. To *Scirrus* therefore (as also to *Phlegmone*, *Erysipelas*, and *Oedema*) there is assigned of the late Chyrurgians, a double difference, which notwithstanding is comprehended vnder the same title, *videlicet*, *Scirrus verus*, *& Scirrus non verus*. But a true and lawfull *Scirrus* is said to proceed of naturall melancholie. Also naturall melancholie is the dregs of good bloud, and as it were a certaine slimie superfluity, and very grosse bloud, whose colour is blacke, but the taste thereof sharpe and soure (as it is not vnknowne to them that do vomite the same:) it is lodged in a certaine bloudie corner, wherein all the humours are contained, and appointed of nature to nourish the melancholicke members. But an vnlawfull *Scirrus*, after the opinion of the late Chyrurgians, is that which is engendred of vnnaturall melancholie. And vnnaturall melancholie is that which differeth from the former description of the naturall humour, and yet it keepeth within the precincts of his libertie, which if it shall once pretergresse (they say) it is no longer to be called melancholie, but some other humour. But melancholie (to enter into the generall definition thereof) is a cold and drie humour, proceeding (as *Guido* saith) of a verie grosse portion of that which we call *Chylus*. But of vnnaturall melancholie there are commonly appointed foure differences. 1. The first is, when as that melancholicke humour which is called naturall, and doth daily engender in the bodie, euen when a man is in perfect health, is in his owne proper essence, burned, putrified, and become exquisite melancholie. For that

Scirrus duplex.

Melancholia naturalis.

Scirrus illegitimus.

Melancholia non naturalis.

Differentiæ 4. non naturalis melancholiæ.

that (as *Galen* saith) is engendred of a blacke humour that is vehemently burnt, and it glistreth like vnto Lime or Pitch. But this is soure, and being powred vpon the ground, it is hote like Vineger, and it riseth vp like leauen. It is also very vnpleasant to all creatures liuing, so that neither mice nor flies will tast thereof. It sheweth likewise like vnto abundance of Salt, wherein no liuing thing can vphold his life, as the sea which is said to be dead. Furthermore this blacke kinde of choler is then ingendred, when as that slimie bloud (which we haue said to be naturall melancholie) doth continue long in the bodie, and is purged out neither by any sensible or secret effluxion, but is transformed, corrupted and rotten. For truly this humour (saith *Galen*) when it waxeth vehemently hote, either because of the corruption thereof, or because of a burning feauer, it causeth melancholie: which truly is cold, because it resembleth the nature of the earth, but yet it is not void of heate, as is ashes and vineger; and when it is purged downeward (as it happeneth sometime to them which are diseased with *Dysenteria*) it appeareth more glistering and more blacke then that thicke and blacke bloud which we do call a melancholious humour. 2. The second *Species* or difference of vnnaturall melancholie is that which commeth through the adustion of other humours, as that which proceedeth of choler vehemently burnt, which is of so great malice and rancour, that it raiseth the earth, and lifteth it vp on high, after the manner of exquisite melancholy. But the flies also do abhorre it, as in a true melancholie. If bloud also or fleame shall be vehemently heated in the bodie, and burnt, there is also called a melancholicke humour, which *Auicen* because of the adustion, termed to be vnnaturall: but these two last kinds, which do come of the adustion of bloud and fleame, *Auicen* hath thought to be very mild and gentle: yet *Galen* writeth, that the kinde of melancholie which is engendred of burnt choler, is a great deale more dangerous then that which hath his generation of grosse bloud, which is like vnto the dregs of Wine in the bottome of a vessell or in proportion resembling the dregs of oile; for this is more gentle and mild, yea and especially when as it tarrieth not long within the body with any abundant heate exceeding nature. But before it be changed into exact melancholy, it passeth first into a yellowish forme, secondly into a leekie substance, and thirdly into a rusty colour. 3. The third *Species* of vnnaturall melancholie is that which borroweth his originall of a certaine stony concretion, as when through the ignorance of vnskilfull Physitions or Chyrurgians, *Erysipelas*, and those inflammations which the Græcians call *Phlegmone*, or any other tumours proceeding of naturall humours, are too vehemently cooled and bound by the applying of extraordinarie medicines: or else when those medicines which do mightily draw and digest, are ministred to the same tumours. For then (the whole substance which was very small in them, being dispersed) the grosse matter which remaineth, being exceedingly dried, will resemble the hardnesse of a stone, and be conuerted into a melancholious humour. 4. The fourth difference of vnnaturall melancholy ariseth, when as some other humour is mixed with naturall melancholy: which thing while it happeneth it is made sweet, and doth waxe mild, vntill such time as one burnt choler or other be commixed therewith; for thē it waxeth sharp, and

Lib. 4. Apho. Lib. 14. Therapeutices.

2. *Melancholy cometh by the adustion of other humours.*

Com. 29. lib. 3. prædict. Hip.

3. *Bilis atra per congelationem (vt vocant) & indurationem.*

4. *Melancholy through admixtion of other humors.*

bitter, & is made partaker of immoderat gnawing. We may gather therefore by our former words, that the 4. differences of tumors aboue nature do proceed of melancholy: for first, of naturall melancholy (which we haue said to breed daily in sound bodies) there is caused a true and lawfull *Scirrus*, called of the Arabians *Sephiros*, of the Greekes σκίῤῥος and σκίῤῥος ἀκατέργαστος, that is, *Scirrus* or *Scirrus non exactus seu non exquisitus*, which kinde of tumour truly is very hard and void of paine, but yet not altogether insensible: *Auicen* calleth it *impurus*. Yet *Galen lib.* 14. *Meth. med.* pardoning them which do contend about the names of tumours, calleth it a tumour conflated of a melancholious humour, and then properly *Scirrus*, when as notwithstanding it is expert of any feeling or sense: but if it be not yet made altogether insensible, it is rather to be called a schirrous tumour, then *Scirrus* it selfe. Secondly, of vnnaturall melancholy through the admixtion of other humours there do grow three other differences of tumours, that is to say, *Scirrus phlegmonôdes*, *œdematôdes*, and *erysipelatôdes*, which diseases are here rehearsed for one onely difference. Thirdly, of vnnaturall melancholy caused through a certaine stony hardnesse and concretion, there is engendred an exquisite *Scirrus*, hard, and voyde of sense and paine: it is called of *Auicen purus*, which euill admitteth no cure. Fourthly of vnnaturall melancholie through deustion, are all these kinds of cankers ingendred, as well vlcerate as not vlcerate: of the which kinde is *Scirrus cancrosus*. *Scirrus* therefore properly is a tumour very hard and without paine, but yet not altogether without feeling, proceeding of a naturall melancholy, and vncorrupt humour; which definition the late Chyrurgians haue assigned thereunto. The causes of *Scirrus*, as of other tumours besides nature, are three. First primitiue, as is an euill diet ingendring and gathering grosse and melancholicke bloud. Secondly antecedent, as a melancholike humour collected in the body, which is drawne from the spleene (whose dutie it is to purge the liuer from that grosse and muddy bloud) and yet is not expelled without the body (as it ought to be) Thirdly *Coniuncta causa*, is the melancholike humour it selfe, compacted in the affected member. The signes of *Scirrus* his presence (as *Guido* reporteth) are these, a hard tumor, and mighty resisting, a middle colour betweene a red and a blacke, which is a browne colour. This *Scirrus* when it happeneth in the parts of the body, many of the Physitions (as *Galen* saith) do call it *Pelidnon*, that is to say, blacke and blew. Moreouer if the affected member hath any manifest veines appearing in it, you shall see them puffed vp and swolne by the meanes of thick and blacke bloud, such as is sometime purged downeward in them which labour with the disease of the liuer, but then it is called *Scirrus impurus & cancrosus*. For these signes which *Guido* doth here ascribe vnto *Scirrus*, do properly agree with the signes of Cancer, as *Galen* writeth 14. *Meth. med.* And truly they may very fitly be attributed vnto *Scirrus*, if this one thing be excepted, namely, that *Scirrus* hath not such swelling and full veines as Cancer hath, except *Scirrus* (as we haue said before) chance to be *cancrosus*: for *Scirrus* doth oftentimes degenerate into Cancer, and that not without great cause, seeing that both proceed of one matter, that is, of a melancholicke humour. The proper signes therefore of a lawfull *Scirrus* are these, an hard and stony tumour, very obstinate and resisting touching

Foure differences of tumours caused of melancholy.

Verus scirrus non exquisitus

Scirrus phlegmonôdes, œdematôdes, erysipelatôdes.

Scirrus exquisitus.

Scirrus cancrosus.

Scirrus proprie quid.

Causæ 3. Scirri legitimi.

Signa.

14. Meth. med.

Guido not as Cancri tribuit Scirro.

ching, wherein there is present a very dull sense. There do appeare many other signes which do testifie the dominion of a malancholy humor in ỹ body. Such tumors as are truly *Scirri*, in their beginning and first conception are wont to appeare very small, but in processe of time, they do grow and increase by little and little, and become great and mighty, whereof some do annoy one onely member, but other some of the said tumors do leaue that member which they did first infect, & afterwards do passe ouer into the possession of another, which thing when it happeneth, then *Auicen* calleth the euill *Ferinos*. Furthermore, these kinds of melancholious humore if they be lightly handled, they are commonly cured by resolution; oftentimes they continue indurated and hard, and many times (which is worst of all) they degenerate and change into *Cancer*. *Iudicia Scirri* *Ferinos.*

But now we will procecute the absolute cure of these kinds of hard tumors aboue nature, which are called true *Scirri*, and not *exquisiti*, by three speciall intentions. The first precribeth a conuenient order of diet. The second admonisheth to take away the antecedent matter, which is readie to procure the disease. The third warneth vs to enterprise the vacuation of that coniunct matter (as they call it) which now causeth the euill. Therefore to speake generally) you must appoint to them which are diseased with *Scirrus*, a sober and moderate diet, and such a one as declineth vnto heate and moisture in those things which they call *Res non naturales*, as before. Giue him therefore meates of good iuyce, and which can ingender good bloud. Let his bread be made of wheate, well kneeked, and baked in an ouen with a soft fire, and let it haue some leauen, and Salt as much as shall suffice. Let his drinke be small ale or beere, giue him rere egges, the flesh of chickens, capons, hennes, and the brothes of them. Let him also eate the flesh of Patriches, Phesants, Quailes, young kids, sucking calues, and of weathers of a yeare old. For pot-herbes, let him vse that which the Arabians call *Asparag*, but we somewhat altering the name do call it *Spinach*, also Lettuce, Hops, Borrage, Bugloss, & other herbes of that nature which can purge forth bloud and make it more pure. To conclude, let him flie and auoid all those things, which naturally do engender melancholike bloud, which things *Galen in libro tertio de affectu capite sexto* hath described vnto vs; as are, the flesh of Goates, and of Oxen, and of Buls, but especially the flesh of Asses, and of Camels, of Foxes and of dogs, of Hares also and of Bores. Furthermore, Snailes (if they be accustomed to be eaten) and the flesh of all terrestriall creatures seasoned with salt. The flesh also of fishes, as of Tunie, of the fish called *Balæna*, the sea Calfe, the Dolphin, the Dogfish, and of all kind of Whales. But of pot-herbes, Coleworts are wont onely to engender this kind of bloud. The buds also of trees, when they are seasoned either with Brine or with *Oxalme*, especially, of the tree called a Mastixe tree, of the Terebinth, of the Brier, and of the wild Eglantine brier (which the Greekes call *Cynosbatos*.) But of all kind of pulse, lintels chiefly are accounted amongst the number of melancholike meates. Bread also made of bran, and that which is made of Rie and of other corrupt and naughtie seedes, which other countries do vse in stead of corne. Moreouer, thicke and blacke wines are very fit to engender a melancholious humour: especially, if one drinking them aboundantly, doth by occasion keepe his bodie in great heate. *The cure of a true & lawfull scirrus, yet not exquisite, & growne into a stony hardnesse, altogether insensible.* *Three intentions.* *Victus ratio.* *Euchyma.* *Panis.* *Potus.* *Oua.* *Carnes.* *Olera.* *Carnes.* *Limaces.* *Pisces.* *Olera.* *Oxalme is made of vineger and salt.* *Leguminum panis.* *Typha.* *Venum.* *Caseus.*

Finally

Finally old cheese when as by chance it shall be exceedingly hote in the body, doth easily breed this kind of humour. These things haue we hitherto recited out of *Galen*. Furthermore you must diligently beware of meates that are burnt, rosted, and fried, which doth vehemently drie vp; of salt meates also, and those which are sharpe and sowre, as Onions, Garlicke, Pepper, Mustard, and of other things of that kind which do burne the bloud. You must also eschue anger, wrath, sadnesse, watchings, heauinesse, carefulnesse, and immoderate exercise. Quietnesse and tranquilitie of mind, with mirth and gladnesse is greatly to be desired: and you must diligently endeauour euerie day to emptie the belly. Hitherto concerning the first scope. 2. Now that we may accomplish that which our second intention doth propound, let vs somewhat consider the precept of *Auicen*, who willeth vs to euacuate the whole body both by bloud-letting, if too blacke and grosse bloud shall appeare, and also by some purging medicine, which can expell melancholy, as are those which follow out of *Mesua*; *Epithymum*, *Sene*, *Polypody*, *Fumus terræ*, which of the Græcians is called *Capnos* or *Capnios*, of the Latines *Fumaria*) *Lupulus*, and the herbe called *Volubilis*. Also *Cassia fistula*, *Myrabolani Indi*, *Lapis lazuli*, which the Greekes call *cyaneus*, the Romanes, *Cæruleus*, *Diacene*, *Diacatholicon*, *Hiera*, *Raphi*: all which things do purge forth melancholike humours. But these things which pertaine vnto Physicke do exceed the bounds of Chyrurgians. Omitting therefore the professors of the art of Physicke, we will haste to the third scope, which we shall verie speedily dispatch, if we labour to emptie out all that matter, which vnnaturally is compacted in the aggrieued member. Which truly is the generall and principall indication of all tumours which consist aboue nature: in which that leeky matter (as we haue said before) is not yet engendered. But this is the onely and proper way to euacuate them, about the which the Chyrurgian ought to be verie circumspect, and attentiue. For truly the matter of such kind of tumours, is naturally so malignant and stubborne, that it will turne into a stonie hardnesse if it be rashly resolued. Againe, if it be mollified more then is requisite, it is greatly to be feared that it will putrifie and corrupt, and that *Scirrus* will degenerate into *Cancer*. We must therefore in this case follow the counsell of *Galen* and *Paulus* (who wrote of this thing long before *Auicen*) namely, that in such scirrous affects, we must not apply any vehement, hote, and drying medicine, neither any thing else which hath the power onely to mollifie and moisten. For that tumour which hath a superfluous humour, it doth nothing at all dissolue: but that which hath a small fluxe it doth more dry vp then neede requireth. Hereupon *Auicen* did well admonish vs, to apply to these indurated tumours by turnes, sometime mollifying, and sometime digesting remedies. But because that order was verie tedious and hard to be done, it pleased *Galen* to vse for the cure of these euils, such medicines as had a mixed and double facultie; which deuise was more safe, and lesse dangerous. For by this meanes we shall both mollifie and digest the indurate and hard substance all at one time: yet in the beginning we must commixe something with them which can moderatly represse. For this purpose *Auicen* hath set downe many kinds of remedies, which because they are rather appointed for these *Scirrhi* which proceed of *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas* when they

Sanguinem adurentia.

Animi pathemata.
Exercitatio.

2. *Vacuatio materiæ antecedentis.*

3. *Vacuatio materiæ cõiunctæ*

Materia scirrhorum cautè tractanda.

Gal. 2. ad Glauc.
Medicines good for scirrhus.

they be exceedingly cooled (as we will declare in the chapters following) we will omit them, making choyce of that medicine which *Razis in libro septimo ad Almansorum* hath described, vsing notwithstanding at the beginning some equall repression of the flowing of humours (by applying some moderate repelling remedy.) The forme of the medicine is this. ℞. of *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacum*, and *Galbanum*, of each a like quantity: beate them in a mortar with oyle *de ben*, which the Greekes call *Balanum myrepsicum*, the Latines, *Glans vnguentaria*, or with oile of Lillies. Then take of the filth of Fenugreeke, of Lineseed, and Figges the weight of the former things: bray them all together till they be throughly incorporated the one with the other. *Galen* for this cure doth greatly commend the barke of the roote *Althæa*, which the common sort (saith he) doth call *Anadendro malache*, as though one would say *Arborescens malua*, melted with the fat of a goose or of a cock, and then beaten together, and brought into the forme of a Cataplasme. But if the tumour doth belong vnto suppuration, you must be verie warie, lest the affected member be incended or stirred vp with hote medicines, or by any other meanes, for so *Cancer* should easily be procured: but if the tumour be opened, and the substance thereof already turned into matter, you must vse the helpe of that ointment which is called *Diachylon*. Againe, if it shall degenerate into a stony hardnesse, you must straightway repaire vnto those remedies which shall be described in the chapters following.

Razis medicamentum ad scirrhos emolliendos & discutiendos.

Galeni cataplasma. Therap. 14.

If Scirrus will matter.

But now when as through the vnskilfulnesse and ignorance of Physitions, those inflammations which the Græcians call *Phlegmone* or *Erysipelata* are exceedingly refrigerated, or else rashly resolued, through the ministring of such medicines as can vehemently draw and digest by their vapour, then all that substance which is any thing thinne and slender in them, is dissolued, but that which remaineth behind, being as it were congealed together & maruellously dryed vp, doth take vnto it a stony hardnesse, and at the last commeth to that disease which is called of the Greekes *Scirrhus*. But it chanceth sometime, that some member is hardned through extension of the flesh which cometh by reason of winde or by some waterish humour (as we haue said before in our Treatise of flatuous and waterish humours.) Oftentimes also there ariseth vp in certaine members a stony hardnesse caused of the priuation of the moisture of the body, and through too much drynesse, as it happeth in the hardnesse of the ioynts, and in the pores of the body, when the goute or such like diseases do reigne. But here we will onely discourse of *Scirrhi*, or of other hard tumours, which haue their originall from *Phlegmone* or *Erysipelas*, or else from *Oedema*, when as they be often refrigerated and cooled, which tumours we haue termed not without some reason *Scirrhi ex coincidentia procreati*, that is, *Scirrhi* proceeding of an vnity, being as it were a double disease incident both at one time. The signes and tokens of an vnlawfull *Scirrhus* which is not exquisite or perfect are these: a hard tumour, scarce sensible, that is, as though it were without feeling and paine, perfectly representing the colour of the body, drawing his beginning from vnnaturall melancholy. This euill is not altogether incurable, and yet it admitteth no easie cure, neither is easily remedied. For that humour whereupon this euill gathereth his force,

Scirrus illegitimus & non exquisitus.

Quando generetur.

The causes of hardnesse in the parts of the body.

Scirrhi ex coincidentia procreati.

The signes of an vnlawfull Scirrus.

is

Indicia.

is clammish, glewish, and thicke, or (as *Galen* saith) a partaker of both kinds, which when it is stuffed in the hard members, it doth obstinately withstand resolution, and when the humiditie thereof is throughly resolued, then that which remaineth behinde is dried vp, and made as hard as a stone. But an exquisite *Scirrhus*, and such a one as is altogether insensible, doth not receiue any cure. But if it may be holpen any way, it must be done by some moystening medicine. That hardnesse also which cometh through too much exsiccation, and when the moisture of the body is cleane extinguished, is also incurable; for it is sufficient if you stoppe it, that the drinesse may proceed no further. But those *Scirrhi* also, wherein there do grow certaine haires, and which are great and very hard, and do resemble the colour of the bodie, are neither cured, nor yet changed at any time into any other disease, as *Auicen* hath declared.

Scirrus exquisitus curationem non admittit.

Scirri incurabiles.

Summa curãdorum scirrorum.

The common and generall declaration of curing these tumours, is in this order described, namely, to euacuate all that matter which vnnaturally is contained in the member. For the onely way of euacuation (as *Galen* hath noted *lib.*14. *Metho.med*) is this, euen to cleanse and draw out that corruption which stubburnly doth cleaue vnto the humour. But if any man shall assay to make euacuation by those medicines which do vehemently draw and digest, neither shall mollifie and soften with any drying and moistening remedies, the cure shall seeme to him within very few daies greatly to haue preuailed: for *Scirrhus* will manifestly appeare to be diminished, but that which remaineth of the disease will be incurable. For truly when the whole substance which is very thinne in the tumour, is digested or dispersed, then that which remaineth behind, is turned into a certaine stony concretion. For this cause therefore there is no medicine that doth vehemently heate or drie vp, meete and conuenient for these hard and scirrhous affects, but such remedies onely which can fitly both mollifie, and also digest, as are these things following: the marrow of a Hart and of a calfe, also Goates suet, Bulles suet, the tallow of a Lybard and of a Lion. Among the fat of birds, Goose grease is greatly commended, next that the fat of a Cocke and of a Phesant. Also *Ammoniacum Thymiama, viz. Suffimen*, perfume, *Galbanum*, and *Bdellium* of both kinds, but rather that which is called *Scithycum*, because it is somewhat moist. *Styrax* also which is something moist and fat. Moreouer the roote of *Althæa*, and of the wild Mallow, which groweth almost euery where, the leaues whereof must be moderatly boyled with Goose or Cockes suet, or if there be none of these at hand, you may vse Swines grease: these remedies are greatly profitable for this intention. But *Auicen* warneth vs not to commixe any Hogges tallow that is salted with the former things, and to vse Masticke, *Labdanum*, oyle of wooll, *Strigmenta gymnasiorum* (which they call the filthinesse of bathes) Asses dung, and the dregs of oile of Lillies, of oile of *Alchanna* which they call *Cyprinum*, and of *Cherua*, which of the Greeks is called κίνιχρα, but of the Latines *Recinium*. But that cure which is administred by Vineger is profitable for this euill, that is, for *Scirrhus* which is full growne, and when the member is prepared to receiue mollifying medicines, as *Galen* also hath declared: for truly saith he, the force of Vineger, if it be vsed moderatly and in due time, is very wholesome

Medulla cerui.
Adipes.
*Gal.*14. *meth. med.*

Anadendro malache.

Oleum recinii.

Vsus Aceti.

14. Meth. med.

wholesome in these diseases, because it doth deuide and resolue the grosse humors included in them: but if it be applyed immoderately and out of a conuenient season, it violently consumeth the thinner parts, and maketh that which remaineth behind to become very hard; also if it be vsed long, it will diminish and corrupt the very substance of the sinewes. For this cause therefore we must not very often nor at the beginning, nor any long time, apply those medicines to the great sinewes or cords of the body, which are compounded and made of Vineger. Wherefore *Galen* did cure the child of one *Cercilius*, who through too much cooling and vehement binding of *Erysipelas*, had a hard and scirrous tumor remaining in his thigh, after this manner. First, he annointed his thigh with *Oleum sabinum*, which of all oiles is most thin, in stead whereof they vse in these dayes *Oleum sambucinum*, oile of Elder, which the common sort call *Iasminum*. When he had thus washed and annointed the members, be applyed *Ammoniacum Thymiama*, which must be grosse and not very old, commixed with the aforesaid suets and marrowes. Afterward he annointed his whole thigh round about with verie fat *Ammoniacum*, dissolued in exceeding sharpe Vineger, and commanded the child to hoppe on the other legge, that so the more nourishment might be brought vnto it. By such medicines therefore as could release and mollifie the tumour, and by digesting or resoluing remedies also, and by the moderate and right vse thereof, he perfectly cured the child. But in those great sinewes and ligaments of the body, which are drawne together and couered with *Scirrhus*, you must vse Vineger after this sort as *Galen* councelleth vs: Take a stone and heate it very hote in the fire; and quench it in very sharpe Vineger: if it be possible, let the stone be that which we call *Pyrites*, but if there be no plenty thereof, take the stone called *Lapis molaris*, which the Greeks call *Mylites*: then let the affected member be holden ouer the hote vapour that riseth vp from the stone out of the Vineger, that it may receiue the steming vapour, which doth dissolue *Scirrhus*; and afterward lay on againe some mollifying medicine: yet the affected part must be euery day cuen from the beginning throughly annointed with oyle and not with water, which oyle must not be astrictiue in any case, but of a thin substance, as is oile of Sauine. But sometime you may boile in oile the rootes of *Althæa*, and of the wild Cucumber, and other things of that sort. By this method of curing, many men truly haue bene perfectly healed in a short space, so that some haue thought it (as *Galen* saith) to be done by the art of Magicke. By these things therefore it doth plainly appeare, that with that cure which we accomplish by mollifying remedies as well in the sinewes, as in the ligaments of the body, you must commixe some medicine that can cut, dissolue and deuide, among which number Vineger is chiefly the principall. Now as concerning other medicines which can mollifie the hardnes of these tumours, we haue spoken nothing, hoping that they may easily be gathered out of our former discourse. Now followeth the summe of the cure of *Scirrhus* tumors, which we haue drawn into a cõpendious forme hereafter ensuing. 1. That kind of *Scirrhus* which hauing all his humidity and moisture consumed and wasted, is growne into a stony hardnes, and is altogether distitute of sence, (as is that which *Galen* calleth *exquisitus Scirrhus*) of such a *Scirrhus* I say, attempt not the cure, but leaue it as an

Historia. Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

Oleum sabinũ.

Suffimentum.

The cure of scirrhus, sinewes, and veines, out of Galen and Paulus.

Lapis mylites.

Lapis pyrites.

Oleũ sabinum.

2. ad Glauconẽ

The summe of curing scirrhous tumours.

1.

euill incurable. 2. To *Scirrhus non exquisitus*, which is not altogether insensible, and yet scarce sealeth any thing, apply such medicines as carrie with them a maruellous heate, and a meane moisture, that is to say, which by mollifying, can also moderately digest. 3. Vnto such members as are infected with *Scirrus* minister no remedies which do vehemently digest, and immoderately drie vp, for in them their small humidity is quickly resolued, and then that which abideth still behind is dried vp and turned into a stonie hardnesse. 4. In hard and grosse members, which are annoyed with *Scirrhus* (as are the great vessels of the body) and in other places also, where the euill is inueterate, you must commixe such medicines as haue power to cut and diuide, as in Vineger, with those remedies which can mollifie and moderately digest. 5. Also command that this scirrhous member which is hard and grosse, or any other part besides, which is affected with *Scirrus*, be holden ouer the hote vapour of *Lapis molaris* burnt in the fire, and quenched in Vineger, and let this be done often. 6. Furthermore let the aggrieued member be euery day annointed with some thin oyle, wherein either the roote of the wilde Cucumber, or of *Althæa*, or greene and fresh Dill, or some such like thing hath bene boiled and infused. 7. Apply vnto the aforesaid scirrous members such medicines as can drie, diuide, and resolue the grosse humours moderately, that is to say, neither often, nor any long time, nor out of conuenient season, that is, not at the beginning of the disease, to preuent the vse of mollifying remedies. 8. To conclude, all such scirrous tumours as are not indurated and of a stonie hardnesse, let them be cured with such medicines as can fitly digest and mollifie. 9. Last of all commit the cure of a scirrhous spleene and a lapidous liuer, to the wisedome of the Physition.

2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of a Cancerous tumour, which they commonly call Cancer Apostematosus.

Cancer pertaineth vnto two kinds of diseases.

1.

2.

Of what humour cancer is engendred.

Cancer sine vlcere.

Cancer cum vlcere.

THe name and title of the disease called *Cancer*, amongst the Physitions and Chyrurgians hath diuerse and sundry significations: for the notifying or declaration thereof is extended vnto two kinds of diseases, that is to say, vnto a cancerous tumour (which they call commonly *Cancer Apostematosus*, as well that which is euident and appeareth in the outward members, as that which is hidden, and lieth in the inward and secret parts of the body, as in the hips, the roofe of the mouth, and in the pappes of a woman.) The other signification pertaineth vnto an vlcerate *Cancer*. But both these euils are engendred of melancholy, that is to say, of such a humour as resembleth the dregges of Wine, and the filthinesse of oyle, which thing *Galen libro decimo quarto Therapeutices*, and in his little booke, *De tumoribus præternaturam*, doth plainely testifie. Now this aforesaid humour, when it is quiet, milde, and gentle, it engendreth a secret or an inward *Cancer* without any vlcer. But if it hapneth to be sharp, fierce and malignant, it gnaweth the skinne, and causeth a Cancer with an vlcer. But here we will openly discourse of that kinde of Cancers which hath his residence in the outward parts of the body, and of that which is not

yet

yet exulcerate, which also sometime (as *Galen* affirmeth) is said to be a priuie Cancre. That Cancre therefore whereof we now intreate, is a hard tumour, vnequall, round, hauing the veines round about it swolne and puffed vp: it is blew or browne, and (as *Paulus* saith) it is more blacke in colour then an inflammation: it is also hote, but yet not so vehement as inflammations are; it sodainely increaseth, and greatly wearieth the sicke, and afflicteth them almost with a continuall griefe: in the Greeke it is called καρκῖνος, and καρκίνωμα, which title as well the Latines as the Græcians haue assigned to this disease of the fish called a Crabbe, because the veines about this euill are filled and stretched out, very like vnto the feete of Crabs, descending from the round compasse of their bodies. But some haue giuen it this name, because it is very hardly pulled away from those members which it doth lay hold on, as the sea Crab doth, who obstinately doth cleaue to that place which it once hath apprehended. Moreouer this tumor doth also represent the colour of a Crab, whose hew is very blacke. But the first beginnings of these Cancres are sometime so confused and so small, that the common sort may be ignorant thereof: for when they do begin, they do scarce resemble the greatnesse of a pease or of a beane. Wherefore it is no maruell (saith *Galen*) though the common sort do not know them, for they be like vnto the little rootes that arise out of the earth, which are not discerned but of skilfull husbandmen. But afterward they grow vp into such huge greatnesse, and do bring with them so vehement, great, and manifest symptomates, that a child may easily discerne them. Let no man therefore doubt of the name thereof, seeing all men with one consent do terme this kind of disease *Cancer*, because (as we haue said) the veines in this euill do swell on euery side, and are greatly stretched out, and they do represent the forme and likenesse of a Crab. A cancerous tumor (as we haue said before) is hard and vnequall, which by the touching of it doth plainely appeare. It hath a blew or browne colour, which is a meane betweene red and blacke, called of the Greeks πελιδνον. About the place where Cancer is lodged, there is felt a certaine beating or pulse, and as it were a pricking, sometime also (as *Celsus* saith) the tumour is asleepe, and as it were dead. It maketh the veines round about it to swell and rise vp, like vnto the Cancer in the armes. Oftentimes also in some they are secretly hidden, and when the place is touched, it is felt in some very painefull, but in othersome it is contrary. This tumour also is maruellously stout, and resisteth touching. Moreouer it hath in it a certaine strange and extraordinary heate. *Cancer* or *Carcinoma* generally is a grieuous and pernicious disease, for it can scarcely be healed any way, by reason of the grosnesse of the humour, neither can it be represled or discussed, neither will it yeeld to any purgation, though it be throughout the whole body. The malice also of this disease is so great, that it contemneth all gentle and easie remedies, putting forth but the middle finger to them, (as the prouerbe is) but it must be stirred and chafed, and ouercome with very vehement remedies (as we are wont to do in the euill called *Crabro*.) This disease is wont to happen in euery part of the body, but especially in the vpper parts, about the face, the nostrils, the eares, the lippes, and about the pappes of women, and those chiefly, which are not naturally purged of menstruis,

Cancroſi tumoris deſcriptio.

Cancri nomen à Cancro aquatico.

Cancri notæ per initia conſuſæ, & obſcuræ.

Lib.14. Therap.

Notæ Cancri euidentis non vlcerati.

Iudicia.

Lib.14. Ther.

Celſus lib.5.

Gal. lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

But Cancres do also commonly haunt men, whose accustomed purgings are suppressed through hemorrhoids growing in the fundament: for by them that grosse and thicke bloud (wherupon this euill taketh his first beginning) is wont naturally to be purged out. Moreouer when this melancholious humor, resembling in proportion the dregs of wine, doth descend and flow into any member, and there abideth compact together, it causeth sometime the disease called *Varices*, and sometime it breedeth a Cancre, as when the same is somewhat cooled. But when it is thrust out to the whole skin, it causeth that euill which they call *Elephans*. *Cancer* therefore is a certaine particular *Elephantiasis*, which the common sort call *Lepra*, the Lepry. But the thicker and the blacker the bloud is whereof Cancre proceedeth, the more dangerous will the disease be. Now when Cancre is full growne (as they say) and inueterate, it admitteth not any cure, except it be pulled vp by the roots, either by section or by adustion: but those Cancres which haue their constitution in the inward parts of the bodie, do not desire any such kind of cure, as the ancient *Hippocrates*, simply the Prince of Physitions, hath taught vs very well in the Aphorisme following: saying that it is not good to cure all inward Cancres: for when they are cured, they do soone perish againe, but when they are not cured, they remaine a long time. For experience hath taught vs, as *Galen* witnesseth in his commentary vpon this Aphorisme, that they which enterprise the cure of these Cancres either by section or vstion, do rather increase their fury then abate it, whereby they shortly destroy those men whom this euill hath attached. Those Cancres therefore are onely curable which do sticke in the outward part of the body, and which are exulcerate, and so do weary the sicke, that they willingly desire the diligence of the Chyrurgian: and these tumours also do consist in those parts, which a man may cut and seare off by the rootes. Now when I name the rootes of *Cancer*, I meane as *Galen* affirmeth, those veines which are full of melancholicke bloud, and which euery way are extended toward the places lying about the tumour. But of an vnulcerate Cancre there often proceedeth an vlcerate tumour, when as in processe of time the humour doth putrifie, and the disease is couched in the vessels of the body, or else when it is stirred and made worse by medicines vnaduisedly ministred. This exulcerate Cancre of all other is thought to be most vile, because it doth altogether resist the true cure, which attempteth and worketh all things to bring the sicke member vnto health; for this tumour, to cure it perfectly and absolutely, doth require gnawing, sharpe, and vehement medicines: howbeit by such remedies, as we haue said, it is the more prouoked and stirred to anger, & therefore it cannot be, that it should either be lenified, or cured by thē. It shal therefore be sufficient to hinder the increasing of vnulcerate Cancres, which as yet do occupy the outward parts of the body, especially those which be great and inueterate, withdrawing our skill from any perfect cure, which thing *Hippocrates* also admonished vs of in his former Aphorisme. For those tumours which do weary the sicke without exulceration, *Galen* also hath called them secret and inward Cancres, wherein both their vehement heate and their great pulse or beating, do threaten or foretell exulceration to ensue. The cure of a Cancre which is not yet vlcerate, but newly begun, hath three principall intentions.

Apho. 38. lib. 6

What Cancre must be rooted out, and what not.

An exulcerate Cancre worst of all.

What things do foretell exulceration.

Curatio cancri non vlcerati.

tions. 1. The first is to stop the generation of the melancholicke humor. 2. The second is to empty out the melancholious humour dispersed throughout the whole body. 3. The third is to digest the humour which possesseth the affected member, and to strengthen and confirme the diseased place. The first intention is finished by a iust and due obseruation of that kind of diet, which is before described in the Chapters *de Scirrho legitimo*. But among other things this is chiefly and principally to be obserued, namely, that such nourishments be giuen to the diseased, as haue vertue to refrigerate and moisten, and which do engender good and slender iuyce, as are these; the iuyce of Barley steeped in water and pressed, fishes of grauelly places, birds of all kinds, saue those which liue in fennie grounds, the yolkes of egs, but specially of rere egs, (which the Græcians call ῥόφητα) and other things of that sort. But if any extreme heate shall infect the aggrieued place, and yet without a feauer, you may safely giue him heifers milke, from the which the butter is taken, or else the whey of milke. Pot-herbes also which haue a coole and moisting nature, as Mallowes, Orach, Spinage, and when time serueth Gourds. Citrons also and Borage may be giuen him in meate. The second scope (which is to purge the whole body from that melancholy humor, whereof this euill proceedeth) is accomplished by the applying of purging medicines, which are appointed to euacuate melancholie, whereof you may find plentie in the Chapter of *Scirrhus*: among the which *Epythimum* (which the Romanes call *Inuolucrum*) as a present remedie, doth obtaine the preheminence, wherof you must take foure drammes steeped in the whey of milke, or in *Mulsa*, (as *Galen* cõmandeth *lib.* 14 *Meth. med.*) But this quantitie of *Epythimum*, or somewhat more, must be offered euery third day, that the melancholicke humour which is gathered together in the veines, and causeth the generation of Cancre, may by little and little be emptied and purged out, because it is impossible to euacuate all at one time. But we cannot alwayes prohibite the fluxe, lest afterward the like humour be engendred in the bodie, and compact together in the veines. The purging therefore of the antecedent matter must be attempted at the beginning, as it were by turnes, by the applying of some simple medicine: afterward (if the matter so requireth, and the ministring of simples doth little auaile) you may vse the helpe of some compound remedies, as is that medicine of *Galen* dedicated for the purging of melancholie, which consisteth of two & thirtie simples, or *Hiera Ruffi*, or *Hiera Auicennæ*, which is made of blacke *Helleborus*. But you must not desist from those former rehearled purgations, vntill the whole melancholious humour which is stuffed in the veines be brought out, and vntill the member which is beset with this cancrous tumour, be throughly reduced to his naturall state. But if nothing do let it, as age & strength, it shall not be amisse in these Cancres to let bloud, and then to purge (as we haue said before:) and if they be women, you must labour to purge menstruis, if they be not aboue fiftie yeares old (as *Galen* hath taught vs *lib* 2. *ad Glauconem*) This second indication (saith *Galen*) is the first and chiefe of all, for that which is put in the first place, doth rightly challenge the second degree. The generall manifestation therefore (saith he) of the cure of a Cancre, consisteth in the speedy emptying out of that humour whereof this euill groweth, and in the prohibition and

Primus scopus

Victus ratio tenuis sit & probi succi.

Secundus scopus.

Humoris melancholici vacuatio.

Epythimum.

Hiera Ruffi
Hiera Auicennæ.

Sanguinis missio.

Lib. 14. *meth. medendi.*

stopping thereof, and to foresee, (if it be possible) that this melancholious humour be not collected in the veines by the meanes of another. But if that thing cannot be brought to passe, you must euacuate the humour by turnes, now some and then some: and you must also endeuour to strengthen the member, left the abundance of the humours do plentifully flow vnto it. 3. The third intention, which is general to all such diseases comming of the flowing of humours, doth will vs to digest the humour which lurketh in the affected member, and to roborate the same, lest the humours abundantly haue accesse thereunto: moreouer you must appoint a conuenient time to repell that which is flowne, and that in the beginning, aswell in the very time of purging, as before; but now when the whole bodie is throughly purged, then may you lawfully endeuour to digest, and if there went before but a small & meane purging, then you must apply some remedie which hath a mixed facultie, that is to say, which can both represse and digest. Now, that we may iustly accomplish these intentions, we must make choise of those medicines which are of a meane force, and of a gentle qualitie, for such remedies are most conuenient for these diseases. For those which carry with them a weake and feeble power, do worke no effect (as *Galen* saith) but are easily ouercome: but such remedies as are strong and mightie, do vehemently either digest or thrust backe the thinne bloud which lyeth in the veines, but the grosse and melancholicke parts, which we haue likened before to the dregges of wine, they neither purge foorth nor represse, but rather do make them more obstinate and more hard to be dissolued and discussed. Therefore to cure these Cancres but yet beginning, you must vse medicines of a meane and moderate strength, which neither for their imbecilitie can be vanquished, nor for the vehemencie can mightily thicken the bloud. Furthermore you must apply (as it is said) such medicines as are gentle, and which do not gnaw or bite: because the malignity of the euill through such vehement medicines is stirred and prouoked, & made more fierce and sauage (as we commonly terme it.) But when the matter whereof these Cancres do come, is for the most part grosse, and thicke, and disobedient to resolution, and partener also with many other vicious humors, we shall deale sufficiently in this case (especially when we feare the danger of Chyrurgerie, & that the euill cannot otherwise be cured) if we by the vse of the former remedies, which are made of burnt & washed mettals (as *Galen* counselleth) shall stop and hinder their growing and increasing, especially if they be great tumors: or else after the opinion of *Auicen*, if we seeke to defend the frō vlceration. For the which intentions, *Galen lib. 2. ad Glaucon.* doth greatly commend the iuyce of Nightshade, & that medicine which is made of *Pompholygos*, or that which consisteth of *Chalcites* cōmonly called *Diapalma*. Therefore *Theodoricus* also for the same purpose, appointed the ointment named *Diapōpholygos*, which is made of oile of Roses, of white waxe, ana ℥ v. of the iuyce of red Pomegranats, & of Nightshade, ana ℥ iiij. of Ceruse washed, ℥ ij of lead burnt and washed, of *Pompholygos*, which is commonly called *Tuthia*, ana ℥ j. of Frankinsence ℥ ß. *Galen* also reporteth *libro primo de compositione pharmacorum secundùm locos*, which booke is entituled of the ancient interpreter *Myamis*, a certaine ointment inuented of *Apollonius* for vlcers appearing in the

Tertius scopus.

Quod aptum medicamētum cancris. Lib. 14. Ther.

Succi Solani, Diapompholyros. Diaphenicon seu diapalma Vnguentum Diapompholygos Theodorici.

the head which the Greekes call *Achorœ*: which oyntment he affirmeth to be very effectuall against the cancrous tumours. The medicine is this: ℞ of oyle of Roses, or of vnripe Olues, *Hemina*, which the Greekes call *Cotylæ*, viz. ℥ vij. ß which must be infused or put into a leaden mortar, and stirred vp and downe with a leaden ladle, or else brayed with a leaden pestill so long till it waxe thicke and blacke resembling the very colour of lead: then beate by it selfe *Lythargyrum lib.* 1. of Cerusse as much, and commixe them with the oyle, and make an ointment. Moreouer how great the force of lead is in all such cancrous dispositions, especially that which is burnt and washed, all men may sufficiently know, which haue had some experience thereof, and which haue studiously perused those things which *Galen libro nono de simplicium medicamentorum facultate*, doth write of lead, which he himselfe calleth in Greeke *Molybdos*. For this cancrous disease *Paulus* and *Auicen* do greatly commend the Emplaister made of sea Crabbes, especially if it be mingled with an equall quantity of the scourings of Brasse. Take therefore of sea Crabbes burned, and of the offall of brasse an euen portion, beate them to flower and strew thē vpon the tumour, or else lay on the ashes of the Crabbes with a seare cloath or cerate. But the same *Auicen* willeth to plucke vp these little cancres hard by the rootes, or else to cut them off, and then to wring and crush out the thicke bloud on euery side, and afterward seare the place with some hote instrument. For this doth dissipate the relictes of the matter, and consumeth them, it strengtheneth the member and stoppeth the fluxe of bloud. *Galen* also before *Auicen* his time, did allow that cancres might sometime be cured by Chyrurgery. But truly although *Galen* and *Auicen* do permit this manuall cure by Chyrurgery, yet to auoide the danger of immoderate fluxe of bloud and of vlceration, yea and of the life of the sicke, omitting those things, we ought to follow the prescript rule of curing, which is onely accomplished by gentle and milde medicines, as a more safe way and lesse troublesome, and to content our selues with that onely method: because that if such a cancrous tumour which is growne to a mightie bignesse, should be cut round about in those places which are ioyned to the whole parts, the danger of immoderate profusion of bloud would straight follow, by reason of the greatnesse of the vessell and wideneesse of the arteries, which parts (saith *Galen*) if you should take and bind them with cordes, the other members by reason of their neare acquaintance would be troubled and greatly grieued. Moreouer *Celsus* saith, that although *carcinomata* be cut off, and brought to a scarre, yet they will returne againe, and giue occasion of death. But if you intend to seare off the roots of this euill, yet truly you cannot do this neither without hurting of the next parts, especially if you make exustion neare vnto the principall members. Great Cancres therefore, and those which are inueterate must neither rashly be burned with any instrument, nor cut off with a penknife, but rather handled gently and mildly (as we haue said before.) For many men not by the applying of any forcible or vehement medicine to take away this euill, but by the onely ministring of easie and gentle remedies, which can as it were please or delight, haue so hindered the tumours, that they could not attaine vnto any perfect age or ripenesse. Now followeth the

Appolenij medicamentum.

lead is maruelous in cancred tumours.

Paulus lib. 4. ex Archigene.

Lib. 14. Meth. med.

Chyrurgery not rashly to be vsed in cancres.

Lib. 5.

Capita curationis Cancri non vlcerati.

summe of the cure of *Cancer non vlceratus*, which is yet in beginning, and
1. doth occupie the outward parts of the body, briefly in these words. 1. Inprimis in a Cancre which is but newly begun, and which consisteth of no very thicke humour, nor causeth the veines to swell greatly, purge out the melancholicke humour which causeth this euill vniuersally throughout the whole
2. bodie. 2. If age and strength do suffer it, cut a veine in the elbow, and draw
3. out as much bloud as need requireth. 3. Afterward minister to the sicke such medicines as can purge melancholie downeward: in the beginning let them be gentle and easie, but afterward somewhat vehement, increasing their force
4. by little and little. 4. If the purging of menstruis in women before fiftie yeares of age, or if hemorrhoides both in them and in men be suppressed, that bloud aboundeth not at times now and then, you must prouoke them by all meanes possible. 5. In the meane time appoint vnto the sicke a thinne diet
5. which can engender good iuyce and cause no melancholicke bloud. 6. If you
6. cannot auoide it, but that a grosse and melancholious humour be gathered together in the veines, you must euacuate the same by turnes, both with simple and compound medicines. But these former Aphorismes do pertaine vnto the
7. Physition: now we wil declare the duty of a Chyrurgian. 7. Apply vnto the affected member both before purging, and in the very time of purging, such medicines as can repell, and driue backe: but when the body is vniuersally purged, then vse digestiue remedies, but let them be such as are of a moderate
8. strength and of a gentle nature. 8. Therefore minister to the aggrieued place iuyce of Nightshade, or the medicine made of *Pompholygos*, or that which consisteth of *Calcites*, commonly called *Diapalma*, and other remedies of that
9. sort. 9. But if by the art of Chyrurgery you dare enterprise the cure of *Cancer*, you must first (take the Physitions counsell) purge forth the melancholicke humour, and then cut the corrupted tumour cleane off, and suffer a good quantity of bloud to come forth, and wring the thicke bloud out of the adioyning parts, and afterward cure the disease after the manner of other vlcers.

The end of the fifth Booke.

THE SIXTH BOOKE,
CONTAINING THE CVRE OF THE DISEASE CALLED MORBVS GALLICVS.

(Syphilis)

CHAP. I.
Of the diuerse names of the griefe which I minde to speake of, and where it had beginning.

HAuing promised to write of all the infirmities in mans body, and now spying many faults in the first print and in the second, I will performe my promise, and amend the faults escaped in all the bookes, for the benefit of my countrey: and being preuented by the Printer, this Booke was left out, wherein is contained a grieuous paine and trouble, which doth reigne in all the world at this day, in great fury and raging manner: in so much that it spareth none of what degree or calling soeuer they be of, (if they seeke for it) be they Kings, Lords, or Ladies, it searcheth them. This griefe hath gotten many names, and so many as come to my memorie I will rehearse, and where they were first begotten. First, the Spaniards borrowed it of the Indians, and brought it home in stead of their gold, and afterwards *Charles* the eight, King of France, who was a man of great power, and delighted much in shedding of bloud, sparing neither man, woman, nor child; in so much that he spoiled a great part of Italy, and subdued the Dukedome of Millan, with great hurt, ruine and spoile to all the common wealth of Florence: and at the last he came to Rome and Naples with his whole hoast, spoyling all as he went with great crueltie: and for his hire, this disease began first to shew it selfe plentifully among his people, and specially because his souldiers were much giuen to venerie. The Frenchmen at that siege got the buttons of Naples (as we terme them) which doth much annoy them at this day. But the first finding of this grieuous sicknesse, was brought into Spaine, by *Columbus* at his coming home, so that all Christendome may curse the King and *Columbus*. This griefe at the first was so extreme, cruell and so mercilesse, that it molested those which were infected therewith, euen the head, eyes, nose, palate of the mouth, skinne, flesh, bones,

ligaments, and all the inward parts of their bodies. Then *Columbus* trauelled a-gaine, and brought with him litle gold, but all his men were well infected with this griefe: insomuch that the Phyſitions in thoſe dayes did not know what to make of the griefe, nor how to helpe the people. So for want of knowledge many were ſpoyled. After (as I told you before of the ſiege of Naples) the Spaniards for friendſhip they beare to the Frenchmen, ſent to them of their curtizans infected with this griefe, minding to let them haue ſome of their iewels, which they brought out of the Indian countrey. The Frencemen (not knowing their kind hearts) fel in loue with them, and (being raniſhed with their beauty) dealt with them to their great coſt and trouble to this day. Now to the variety of the names: Firſt, the Italians call it *Morbus Gallicus*, and ſome call it *Variolam Gallicam*, becauſe it firſt appeared amongſt the Frenchmen at the ſiege beforenamed. The French call it *Scabiem*, or *Morbum Italicum*, becauſe they had the victory, and for that they had this ſickneſs. And they alſo call it *Scabiem Hiſpanicam*, becauſe the Spaniards firſt brought it out of the Indies. The Germans call it *Menium*; why they ſhould ſo terme it I know not wel, vnleſſe *Menium* do ſignifie the priuie parts infected with this diſeaſe. Some of them call it alſo *Scabiem Hiſpanicam*. In Spaine they name it *Morbum Neapolitanum*: the cauſe I told you before. They of Naples call it alſo *Patnyſa paradneptur*, that is, the proper name at home in India. Some interpret it *Violentum morbum*, or thus; a great, foule and vehement diſeaſe. Other ſome call it *Pendenlagra*, becauſe it firſt infecteth the priuie parts both of men and women: and we in our country call it the French diſeaſe. But howſoeuer it be called it skilleth not, ſo that we know how to helpe it, which I mind to declare hereafter by Gods grace.

CHAP. II.

Of the ſignes.

BVt firſt I meane to declare the ſignes how you ſhall know thoſe that are infected with this griefe, and then the nature of this French diſeaſe; as by the effects following it may appeare; and after the cauſe thereof is ſhewed to be nothing elſe but that contagion, it reſteth that we now ſay ſomewhat of the ſignes, whereby you may vnderſtand and perceiue thoſe which are infected with this diſeaſe: and becauſe ſignes do proceede and are taken either of the nature of the affects, or of the cauſes of the ſickneſſe, or alſo of ſome ſymptomates or conſequents thereof; and becauſe it chiefly beginneth in the Liuer, and cannot be looked into, let vs not looke for any ſigne as *Analogia morbi*: for all ſignes that can giue certaine teſtimonie and ſhew thereof, are contained vnder the affects, and conſequently of the diſeaſe. Of theſe there be two ſorts, ſome are *Symptomates*, and ſome be *Morbi*, or affects of nature. *Symptomata* be theſe, falling of haires, ach in the head and members, and ſmall infection of the skin. Thoſe which I call *Morbi*, be moſt ſore and vehement vlcers, tumors of the ſhins, and other parts of the body, with puſtules, &c: which follow this diſeaſe, euen as the ſhadow waiteth vpon the Sunne. But becauſe long diſeaſes haue their times, to wit, beginning, increaſe, ſtate, and declination, and this French diſeaſe is one kind of long diſeaſe, great reaſon there is why it ſhould haue his diſtinct times, and according to the diuerſitie of thoſe times there happeneth

happeneth diuerſe *Symptomata*. For one kind of ſymptomates happen at the beginning of this diſeaſe: another kind to the ſtate or vigour, &c. And therefore I will diuide all ſymptomates into two ſorts, to wit, thoſe that follow and properly belong vnto this grief, beginning at thoſe which follow the ſame being inueterate & confirmed; and theſe next enſuing be of the firſt ſort Straight 1.
wayes after a yong man is infected, he feeleth in himſelfe a certaine laſſitude or wearines come vpon all his members without any outward occaſion, as walking, or mouing, &c. which ſort ſheweth this cruell diſeaſe, and happeneth vnto them which are moſt ſtrong and luſty before. There is perceiued alſo a lumpiſh heauines in the whole body, a dulneſſe, faintnes, lithernes, or ſlowneſſe to moue in all the members. The occaſion of this, is the infection of the naturall ſpirits, which are the immediate inſtruments of the faculties ſubſtaining and giuing liuelines to the whole body: by whoſe infection, the body waxeth more heauie and wearyſome then it was before. Moreouer, there is a certaine paine 2.
or ach, which wandereth throughout all the body and parts thereof. After this laſſitude of the body, the head aketh: and againe by and by it leaueth the head and goeth into the ſhoulders, and from the one ſhoulder into the other. Out of the ſhoulder it fleeteth into the legs, the one of them or the other, and in like ſort may it be ſaid of all other members. The cauſe of this is a certaine vapor which beginneth to riſe vp from the Liuer. The euill humor of this affect is not yet begotten, but by reaſon of that feruent heat of the liuer cauſed by infectiō, there is ingendred a certaine ſmall vapor, whereof do grow theſe wandering or
fleeting pains. Thirdly, when the diſeaſe hath begun, & hath a litle preuailed, the 3.
colour of the face is changed; you ſhall ſee the moſt beautiful, liuely, and cleane cōplexion of the skin, in three or foure dayes ſpace changed into a much worſe courſe then before; and what manner of motion this is, I cannot tell. But certes their face differeth not a litle from that it was before, the colour is altered, the liuely ſpirits in the eyes be changed, the mouth, lips, and cheekes ſometimes are changed from their naturall comlines. And marke you this (which may much further your iudgement and knowledge therein) there is vnder the eyes a wan-coloured or blewiſh circle, ſuch as appeareth in women when they haue their naturall purgation, or before it. Noting and finding theſe things in him, conſider with your ſelfe whether he paſſeth meaſure in drinking, in watching, or ſleeping, or haue vexed his mind with care; and if it happen not through one of theſe, then may you iudge he is taken with this diſeaſe. Fourthly, there is wont to 4.
breake out a notable heate in the palmes of the hands, and the ſoles of the feete, yea euen in the Winter time. This appeareth through vaporous ſpirits, taking their beginning of the Liuer, which being infected, the face alſo is affected, and the extreme parts or vtter moſt members are ſore diſtempered with heate. Fiftly, you may adde a drouſineſſe, or a diſpoſition to ſleepe of- 5.
tentimes interrupted: And this is cauſed through a turbulent vapour, which is increaſed through the infection and heate. Sixly, you may adde heauineſſe, 6.
and ſadneſſe of the mind: for though a pleaſant and merrie nature ſhould be infected with this diſeaſe, yet he ſhall ſtraightway be ſad, and giuing to penſiueneſſe, and euen grone therewith. This infection increaſing, burneth the bloud, which ſendeth vp troublous and noyſome vapours vnto the head,

7. and seate of the mind. Suenthly, the patient sometime hath a feauer, because of the heate which is about the distempered parts: but this seldome chanceth:
8. The eight is the appearance of some putrified matter, and this is *Signum Pathognomicum*, a signe to discouer the maladie. Therefore as oftentimes as you shall see this putrified matter, yet small in quantity about the priuie place, and know no occasion to haue gone before, you may pronounce it to be the Frēch disease. And what is the reason? This *caries* or matter cannot happen but of two causes: either because the corruption of the womans mattrice hath eaten and gnawne the fine skinne of the yard; or else because the contagion is communicated and imparted vnto the Liuer by the naturall spirits, and the Liuer expelleth those infected spirits and sanious matter vnto the priuie parts. Of this
9. *caries*, how it may be knowne when it cometh of *Morbus Gallicus*, and when it is caused otherwise, I will speake afterwards. In the ninth place succeedeth *Bubo*, and that not great, as thus; A yong man had to do with a woman, after which act there came vpon him a heauinesse of his members, and a sadnesse of the mind, and after two or three dayes there appeareth *Bubo parum*, that is to say, a small tumor in the armeholes or share, which is painefull, not growne to any greatnesse: this signifieth that the disease is yet gentle, and in the beginning, but the cause of this is the greatnesse by the purging places of the Liuer,
10. and therefore the Liuer disburdeneth himselfe by sending the disease vnto them, and hereof cometh *Bubo*. The latter signe of this disease at the beginning is *Gonorrhoia Gallica*, which bewrayeth vnto vs the nature of this Proteus. After the first coming of this disease, for the space of fortie yeares, there was nor ioyned with it *defluuium capillorum*: but the nature of this disease is to be changeable and diuers, for *Gonorrhoia Gallica* hath not bene seene aboue these fiue and thirtie yeares. Therefore we may looke for new and strange *Symptomates*, I pray God they be light and easie to be holden. Now how this *Gallica Gonorrhoia* is to be discerned from that which is not *Gallica*, I will hereafter declare, to auoid tediousnesse in this place. The cause of this *Gonorrhoia* is *labefactatio spirituum*, weakning and subuersion of the spirits which rule the naturall faculties or vertues of the testicles and spermaticke vessels, by reason whereof the strength of those parts, is dissolued: so that they cannot keepe their seed but it cōtinually droppeth forth. But now let vs speake of those signes which are appropriated to the disease in his progresse or confirmation: and first, of hard pustules in the whole body, and the same grieuous and deformed in the head and beard, sometime with sanious matter, sometime without it. And know you, the disease cannot be aboue the age of fiue or sixe monethes at the most when these *Symptomates* appeare. And if the disease beginneth in the Winter, it shall bring forth the crusts in the beginning of Somer: if it beginne in the Spring time, his crusts appeare in Autumme, &c.

CHAP. III.

Of the causes of the breaking out of Pustules.

1. AND the chiefe causes of this breaking out of pustules are these: First, be-
2. cause the matter infected is sent thither from the Liuer. Secondly, because the parts infected do not digest and expell (by way of transpiration) his excre-

ments

ments, and therefore they remaine in it still; and grow vnto crusts. The third signe of this disease confirmed, is callous vlcers about the priuy parts, which either be callous at the beginning, or become callous afterward: and therefore as often as you see the *caries* in the priuie parts healed, and that there remaine *Calli* or hardnesse about the place where it was, be you assured that this is *Gallicus Morbus* confirmed. Therefore I wish that you remember this, when you take in hand the cure; for those hardnesses be most manifest and certaine signes of this disease confirmed. The fourth is hanging downe of the *vuula*; the *vuula* hanging downe in the further part of the mouth, and if it do so, much moisture commeth to the mouth, by reason whereof happeneth *raucedo vocis*, a great hoarsenesse of the voice. Therefore open their mouth, when you shall heare them speake thus hoarsely, and you shall perceiue the *vuula* full of moisture, and (if the patient haue no catarrhe) say that it is *morbus Gallicus* confirmed. The cause of the humectation or moistnesse of the *vuula*, is the naturall spirits infected and changed, which is carried with the bloud of the veines, throughout the whole bodie, and because it is so infected and weakned therefore the function thereof is weake and feeble in the stomacke, and maketh euil digestion. Therefore the same stomacke aboundeth with fleame in the braine, and it doth not his function. Therefore in the braine there is engendred *Mucus*, that is, a skinned cold moisture in the veines, by reason of the weaknesse of the spirits, engendred of flegmaticke bloud, with vnnaturall humours. If they be afterward by accesse of heate adust, the disease becommeth very grieuous and vehement. No maruell therefore, if this abundance of moist humours fall to the *vuula*, and be pressed downe with moisture: and if the bloud be sharper, then the skals breake forth in the skinne, the rootes of the haires be consumed, so that they fall: it exulcerateth the mouth, the palate, and the nose: it perisheth the scalpe of the braine, and is the occasion of many other *Symptomates*. The cause of hoarsenes of the voice, is humidity and excrements which do stop and let the waies of the voice. Fiftly you may adde the tumours of the glandules in the further part of the mouth; and when you see this, be you out of doubt, that the infection of the disease is now confirmed. For the infected matter is now sent vnto the head, which is expelled by his *emunctory* places, that is, glandules. And sixthly, adde thereunto the corruption of the palate of the mouth, and of the teeth: and when you see these, looke not to any greater signes of the confirmation of this euill. In the seuenth place I put outragious and continuall paine, making the patient euen to crie out: this beginneth at the two and twentieth houre of the artificiall day, and continueth not fully vntill midnight; and these most orgueilous and extreme paines are caused of a very moist and maligne vapour, which riseth vp from the liuer, and from the excrements be acquired and gathered by euill nourishment in euery part, & especially aboue the *periostion*, that is, the rims which couer the bones of euery part. And in the eight place, I remember corruption of the bones in the head, and in the armes, before there appeare any vlcer. How may you know the bones to be corrupted, the skinne remaining whole and sound, I will hereafter shew. In the ninth place you may adde tumours *atheromatous*, that is, tumours which yeeld a tough flimie matter. These of some writers are

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

called *Bumbata* or *Gummata*, by a similitude take of trees. For in *Morbo Gallico* tumours do grow like the gummes which issue out of trees, and this happeneth either because the party himselfe is not well nourished, and heapeth vp vndigested excrements, or else because the Liuer communicateth and sendeth
10. vnto it infected matter. We may adde here in the tenth and last place maligne vlcers in all the parts of the body, which vlcerate the whole skinne, head, and all parts, through abundance of offensiue matter. To conclude, there succeed this disease sometime their effects, as *Asthma*, which when it is come vpon a patient, it declareth him to be past cure. Therefore neuer put such a one to paine by medicines or other meanes, for you shall neuer heale him. Now will I teach you in processe of time following, the wayes how to asswage and cure all the *Symptomates*, which although they be very hard and rebellious to remedy, yet I vndertake vnto you that I haue found out such wayes and meanes by medicines, as will assuredly, speedily, and without danger (as much as is possible) helpe and cure them, by Gods grace.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus.

NOw after we haue declared the names, nature, causes, and signes of this affect, it remaineth that we proceed and declare also the cure. And vnderstand you, that the wayes of curing thereof are manifold and diuers, because the nature thereof is not comprehended in any method of curing, but was alwayes opened by the experiments of Empericke; for *Hap* and *Hardy* haue giuen vs medicines against this disease. And because diuerse medicines haue bene found out by chance, therefore there be diuerse wayes of curing this affect, of the which one is light and easie, that is, great mouing and exercise of the body, which is in yong men, strong and lusty, able to endure sweate, either in wrastling, leaping, darting, dancing, or playing at tennise, or such like, hath bene a sufficient remedie for this euill in the beginning: for by it the heate so groweth, and the excrements thereby be so abundantly expelled, that the spirits be renewed and made more pure and apt to ouercome the infection: and therefore it is not to be maruelled, if by this meanes the Liuer sometimes purgeth himselfe, when the disease hath taken no deepe roote in him. Why doth *Febris putrida* ceasse and take an end without medicine? Because perdy, it is not in the sound parts of the body. But in *Febris hectica* the patients are healed by medicines alwayes which coole and moisten, because the affect consisteth in the sound parts. Semblable, in *Morbo Gallico*, when the disease is in the beginning, and not confirmed or fixed in the inward parts it is possible that the spirits may be restored of themselues; for this affect is in the spirits. Therefore to returne to our purpose, some indeed by procuring a great sweate haue bene cured, but this was in the beginning of the disease, in very strong bodies, and yet it hath not had in all such successe neither.

CHAP. V.

Of Fumigations.

THere is another way that Empericks haue vsed to cure this disease, and that is *per Suffumigia*. The Ancients cured indeed diuerse affects by suffumigations.

migations: but the Emperickes trying alwayes to helpe this affect, at length found out an excellent Suffumigation, *ex Cinabari*, yet this oftentimes hurteth: albeit it is counted amongst the wayes of curing this disease, and sometime doutlesse it healeth them,

CHAP. VI.
Of purging of Morbus Gallicus.

HAuing thus farre proceeded in this matter, we will now come vnto the first scope proposed, I meane euacuation of the matter present *in substantia*, wherewith is ioyned *feruor*, out of the which groweth a hote distemper and excrementous matter; first therefore naturall, and that whensoeuer you go about to cure this disease: for the verie Emperickes do that euer at the beginning of their cure. And because the present humors may offend either in quantitie, or in qualitie, or in both, you ought to vse diligent consideration therein. For if they offend in quantitie onely, first we must giue him a lenitiue medicine, either of *Cassia*, or *sirup. Ros. sol* and after that open a veine, that the ebullition of bloud in the liuer may so be tempered & asswaged. Secondly, abate and diminish the matter, which requireth first to be altered by medicines, and afterwards to be expelled. Thirdly for as much as the disease happeneth by contagion, which contagion infecteth the liuer, vnto the which as their fountaine all the humours haue their recourse, it behoueth reuulsion to be made from the inward parts vnto the outward, as in bloud letting it is. I ommit the greatnesse of the disease, which also indicateth Phlebotomy: but the three first onely we take as indications of bloud letting, and the veine that is to be opened is *Hepatica*, in the right arme, because it is direct vnto the parts affected. But vnderstand that somtime we may not vse this euacuation, because in the beginning of the disease (for the most part) the patient is wont to haue *Bubones*, which *Bubones* because they come from the Liuer, expelling the superfluous or vnnaturall matter vnto his emunctory place, if we should cut the veine the patient hauing them vpon him, we might haply thereby diuert and turne backe the matter againe vnto the Liuer, to the danger of the patient. So that in this case it is determined amongst learned men, that a veine ought not to be opened, lest the matter (as I said before) should be drawne againe vnto the Liuer, and the disease made more dangerous and painfull.

CHAP. VII.
Of the preparation of humors.

AFter the patient hath bene let bloud, as his strength may permit, the time well serueth to prepare his humours: and for as much as in the beginning of the disease, there is not alwayes the same mixture of humours that is in the end, in which there is *pituita* and *exusta materia*, this *pituita* ought to be prepared, first by those things which haue power to attenuate and scoure, and to open obstructions, of which medicines you shall finde plentie in the former bookes, for the auoiding of cholericke, flegmatick and melancholicke humors and mixt humors, and then let vs come to the cure.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the certaine and true medicine of the disease.

IN the cure of this disease, after euacuation is made, the state and temperature of the inward parts by conuenient meanes altered the bodie prepared by the medicines before sufficiently, and purged, and afterward confirmed, and comforted againe as before we haue declared: if we see the disease continue still, and not yeeld to all this ministration, we ought then to come vnto that which maketh the true and certaine alteration of the inward parts, and that of it selfe hath a knowne vertue, both to alter and restore the Liuer to his naturall estate: and this is the decoction of *Lignum Guaicum*, otherwise called *Lignum Indicum*, and *Lignum Sanctum*, which medicine was found out by chance, and confirmed by great experience to cure this disease, the patient obseruing a very slender diet, and drinking the decoction, in which there is a vertue to attenuate, and power to ouercome this disease.

CHAP. IX.

What sort of that wood is to be chosen as best for this purpose.

NOw sithence it is determined that for this purpose to vse this wood is best, it is necessarie to shew also the manner of vsing this wood, concerning which you ought to obserue these things. First what manner wood, and what
1. maner rind is to be chosen for the best. Secondly the preparation: Thirdly the
2. 3. way of giuing it. Fourthly the order of diet to be vsed in ministring it. First
4. concerning the election or choise of the wood, I say it is not to be doubted, alwayes to choose that which is of most vertue, and that is *Lignum sanctum*, which is yellowish and fatte, hauing no blacknesse in it: and if we cannot haue this, let vs vse *Guaicum*, whereof there is more plentie. Moreouer, in both kinds of this wood the meane sort is best: we may haue it of a tree that is old, or of a yong tree, or of a tree of middle age. I call that the meane sort, which is not altogether blacke, nor for the greater part white, neither slender, nor grosse. I choose this middle sort, because it hath more vnctuositie and oylishnesse in it then the other which is growne vnto age. For if the same vnctuositie doth more abound in the yonger wood, it is more inconcoct and excrementous. Moreouer, we ought to choose that which is best in respect of the disease, to wit, in a confirmed disease, the most vertufull and efficatious, as is *Lignum sanctum* of middle age: but if the disease be not so greatly confirmed, but light and easie, we may vse that which is of a more weaker operation, both in *genere* and *specie*. Furthermore, regard must be had also of the patient his age, for in an old bodie, the old plant is most conuenient: for one that is yong, and
5. strong, the middle sort is to be chosen. Fifthly, in choosing this wood, we must consider of the time of the yeare: for in a cold season, as in the Winter, we ought to vse the hotter, sharper, and bitterer kind, which we may iudge by our senses: in the Sommer time, that which is lesse sharpe, and least of all bitter, either of an old or yong tree. And the markes whereby we may discerne the best from the other, of the wood of the old tree, which hath in

it

it great quantity of blacknes, are these: it is very bigge, and hath a grosse and thicke rinde, which so cleaueth vnto the wood, that beneath it can with a knife be separated. For as often as you see the rinde to come easily from the wood, it hath bene moistned with salt water, and is of the worst sort. In the middle sort of this wood, all these things appeare in a meane. Besides this, I would wish you to rape a little of this wood, and if in so doing you perceiue not a smell proceed from it, you may be bold to say, that it is either very old, or else corrupt. The third signe to choose this wood by, is, if in raping it appeareth oylish, so that the dust thereof doth somewhat glister. Fourthly, you may tast of that you haue raped in you mouth, and if it biteth the tongue forthwith, and afterward yeeldeth a bitternesse, it is good. Fiftly, take and rape it, and if there appeareth in the substance thereof manifest pores and small holes after you haue raped it, and the superficies remaineth not equall and sound, it is of the worse sort: and if you make your decoction thereof, it is cleare, and neither bitter nor sharpe in tast. Sixthly, it ought to be chosen very ponderous & heauie. Seuenthly see that it be such as hath not the whitish colour enclining to dimmednesse, neither hauing the veines of the white part blacke, but greenish, and of dimme pale colour: for if it be otherwise, it is a token of corruption. The last proofe of this wood is, to boile the rapings thereof, and if the decoction be thicke, verie bitter, and sharpe, it is good. The signes of goodnesse in the rinde are these: First, that it be taken of a tree which is old, or of middle age, for that which commeth of a small bough is naught; and we know when it commeth of a middle age or old tree, for it hath great peeces, and large cauities. Secondly it is required, that the rinde be very thicke. Thirdly that it be very hard. Fourthly that on the inside it seemeth as it were blacke, sprinckled with an ashe colour: and this is the colour of the most excellent barke. If withall in breaking it appeareth blacke but not like vnto *Ebenus* be ye sure it is of the best sort.

CHAP. X.

Of the decoction of Guaicum.

THe wood being thus raped, we come to his boyling, which we call decoction. And touching that, we shall note that the common vse is, for euerie ounce of raped wood, to adde a pound of water. But truth it is, if we deale with a ladde or strippling of tender yeares, of hote complexion, and that in Sommer season, we must vse for euery ounce of the wood, to take one pound and a halfe of water. But the common custome is (as I said) for euery ounce of the said wood, to take one pound of water. Therefore in making the decoction we are wont to take one pound of the raped wood and twelue pounds of the water, except in the Sommer season when the sirupe cannot be kept: and then we take *Lignum*, ℥.vj. of water, ℔.vj. Also in the Winter time we take of the wood raped, ℔.j.ß. of water eighteene pounds. In the middle seasons or times betwixt both these one pound of the wood, & twelue pounds of water. But you must take and macerate or infuse the wood twelue houres before, or sometimes more, sometimes lesse while. Some infuse the wood in cold water.

but I like not that way: for if you marke the difference which is betweene the decoction made after the infusion of cold water, and that which is made after the wood is infused in hote water, you shall find the last far more sharper, more bitter, and more thicker. Therefore hardly let it be infused in water which is made euen seething hote. Moreouer, I wish that you stoppe your pot very closely, and set it in a place amongst Branne, couering it vp euen vnto the middle part in the said Branne: for by this meanes it long time retaineth his heate. Besides this, encompasse it round about with linnen clothes, that it may be perfectly macerated, and the decoction haue his requisite strength, and to be boyled in a vessell of stone, or of earth well glased within; those vessels of glasse are best of all. And note you furthermore, that this decoction may be made two diuerse waies, to wit, by drie fire, or in *Balneo Mariæ*, which is the more excellent way: for the decoction will be farre better, and worke better effect, and sooner. Also choose your vessell hauing as small a mouth as may be, and boile your liquor therein, the top being close stopped, and keepe it in boiling continually: let it boile till halfe be wasted, as the common vse is: some will boile it till three parts be consumed, to haue it drie more. This is the rule for boiling this decoction, which when it is boiled, sometime is suffered to coole before it be strained, and some straine it whiles it is yet boiling hot, that the wood make not the decoction thicke or grosse with his substance. I thinke it no matter whether it be cleansed hote or cold, and this is the making of this first decoction. The spume or froth thereof must be gathered for that purpose, which hereafter I will declare. The second decoction is made in this wise: we take the same wood (without macerating it any more) and boile it againe in the same quantity of water (as custome is) that it boile vnto the consumption of the third part: so that of twelue pounds, after boiling there remaine eight. But in the second decoction we vse to increase the quantitie of this water: for sometime we adde eighteene pounds of water, sometime fifteene, and this we are accustomed to do when we haue a patient that is giuen to drinke much. Secondly, we increase the *dosis* of the water, if it be in the Sommer season, for then the patients are compelled to drinke betweene dinner and supper. And this is to be drunke at dinner and supper, or (if need be) at any time of the day. Neuertheless ye shall vnderstand, some Physitions do giue the first decoction euen at dinner and supper also, and so they make but one decoction onely: but this vse is but rare, and when they will drie vehemently. One thing I must adde, which is this, that in leane and weake persons we vse to prepare this wood to be giuen with the broth of Veale, of a chicken, or a bird, so that the broth be not fat. It is boiled after the manner aforesaid: and this I thought necessary to let you vnderstand. Thus much may suffice the simple for making of these decoctions.

CHAP. XI.

Of making the compound decoctions of this wood.

THis *Guaicum* is boiled not onely single and by it selfe, (as I haue shewed before) but also diuerse other things in boiling are mixed and compounded

ded therewith diuerſly. Firſt I will declare vnto you thoſe decoctions which be made of this wood moſt ſingly; afterwards others, which becauſe they haue more things added vnto them, are called compound decoctions of this wood. The moſt ſimple or ſingle decoction is made of the rinde of the wood, and pure water onely. And this ſimple decoction the beſt Phyſitions do vſe, when they will make the decoction ſtrong. The forme of making it is this. We take the ſame quantity of the wood *Guaicum*, and the ſame of water which is declared in the chapter before, and we adde vnto the ſame the barke or rind of *Guaicum*, which hath no determinate quantities; for ſomtime we put 2. ſomtime 3. ſometime 4. ounces vnto one pound of the wood, and for halfe an ounce of the rinde we adde 4 pounds of water: as for example, admit the quantity of the wood be 1. ℔. the quantity of the rind, ℥ ij. the quantity of water ſhall be 16. pounds. But when we will haue the medicine of great operation & ſtrength, we take of the wood 1. pound, of the rinde, vj. ℥. of water, ℔. 18. we beate the rind into groſſe powder, & afterward ſteep it in the water 24 houres, then boile we it to the conſumption of the 3. part in ſuch wiſe as is ſaid of the ſimple decoction. In certaine places they prepare & make this decoction with wine: the forme of preparing it is this: ℞. *Guaici*. 1. pound, *corticis eius* halfe a pound, water ℔. 18. let theſe be infuſed together according to art, afterward boile them to the conſumption of 2. or 3. parts, ſo that 6. pounds onely of the decoction do remaine. This done, they adde thereto of ſtrong white wine, which they boile a litle, and then ſtraine it, and vſe it as before. Sometime it happeneth (by the weaknes or vice of the patient his ſtomacke) that the whole decoction is caſt vp againe: therefore that it may pierce the ſooner, we adde wine thereto, but if the patient can receiue and retaine it without wine, it were the better way. Yet haue we another decoction of this wood which is more compounded, which is this: ℞. *ligni Guaici*. ℔. j. *corticis eius* ℔. ß *aquæ* ℔. 18. theſe be infuſed according to art, then they boile to the conſumption of the 3. part: then we adde to it *Cardui benedicti*, which is much vſed, *Camedrios Betonicæ*, of each of theſe herbs a handfull. Againe they boile it euen till the one halfe be waſted: ſo that of the whole decoction remaineth no more then 6. pounds. Then we adde thereto againe of wine 3. pints, and after 1. walme or 2. boyling we cleanſe or ſtraine it. ℞. the ſame wood, the ſame rind, and the ſame water in quantity, infuſe and boile them after the ſame maner: then adde of Roſemary, *Fœniculi*, *Stœchados*, *Betonicæ*, ana. M. j. *Scine*, Anniſe, ℥ j. let theſe boyle to the conſumption of the halfe part, ſo that there remaine of the liquor but 6. pounds, and thereto adde 3. pints of wine, after the maner aforeſaid. Laſtly, we make it another way, as thus. ℞. the ſame quantity of the wood and rind whereof we ſpake before, and adde of the rootes of *Enula Campana*, of the roots of *Althea*, of the dry roots of *Ireos*, ana. ℥ j. of Maidenhaire, of Liquorice, *Stœchados*, ana. ℥ ß. Boile theſe together to the conſumption of halfe, then put vnto it three pints of wine, and ſo the decoction is made perfect by boiling, as is aforeſaid. And theſe be the formes and deſcriptions of thoſe decoctions which are vſuall with practitioners and others. They which vſe to miniſter theſe manner of decoctions, make no ſecond decoction, but prepare ſome other liquor for their dinner and ſupper at their diſcretion. I my ſelfe haue bin

wont in this decoction to put purging medicines, and ſpecially to thoſe which haue ſuch ſtomackes as cannot haue purging medicines. I haue vſed the foreſaid compound decoctions, but not alwayes, but eſpecially in cold griefes, as *Aſthma* & coldnes of the ſtomack, *Sciatica*, & Palſey, in Fiſtulaes, & other foule ſores and paines in the ioynts, and in affects of the feet coming of cold diſtemper: in theſe caſes I haue vſed the ſaid decoction with good ſucceſſe. But the moſt ſimple decoction, I ſay, doth beſt againſt *Morbum Gallicum*, ſo that there be no compound diſeaſe ioyned with it, then the compound decoctions are chiefly to be vſed according to the direction of them which do practiſe.

CHAP. XII.

Of the time conuenient to giue this decoction.

BVt at what time is this decoction to be giuen? Certes the moſt meete time is the Spring time; for although we require in the working thereof, heate, ſweate, and much digeſtion of excrements, yet the heate of Sommer is too great, the bodies are thereby reſolued and made faint. Therefore the middle Spring, & the beginning of Sommer is moſt conuenient. Next vnto the Spring is the Autumne; as for the Sommer and Winter they be ſeaſons vnfit for it, the one for his great heate, and the other for his exceſſe of cold. And if of theſe two I muſt needs chuſe one, yet I would rather chuſe the Winter; for in the Winter ſeaſon we may haue good fires, the chamber may be made cloſe and warme. Therefore concerning the time remember alwayes the Spring is beſt, the Autumne next, the Winter next, and the Sommer worſt of all.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the place where this decoction is to be giuen.

VVE may not conueniently giue this decoction in euery place. Our anceſtors the Phyſitions that liued before the laſt 40. yeares, were wont to keepe their patients in darkneſſe, as it were in a dungeon, for the ſpace of 40. daies, pining them euen vnto bones: and they did well, ſo cruell, ſo fierce, and outragious was then this diſeaſe. But now ſithence it is become more meeke and tollerable, Phyſitions ought not to deale ſo hardly with all. Therefore we keepe our patients in a chamber, where is ſomewhat drier ground, not open vnto the winds, the windowes cloſed in with paper or linnen clothes, the dores not altogether kept cloſe.

CHAP. XIIII.

What quantity of the decoction is to be taken at once.

IN meaſuring the quantitie we obſerue theſe things. Firſt, how great the affect is; for if it be great and rebellious, then muſt a great quantity of this potion be giuen; if the affect be not great, the quantity ſhould be leſſe. Vnto a child we miniſter a ſmaller quantity then to one of full growth. Alſo conſideration ought to be had of the complexion of the patient; if his temperament be hote, a litle quantity; if it be cold, a great quantity is to be giuen. If the ſtomacke be weake, we giue a very ſmall quantity; if the ſtomack be ſtrong, we giue a great quantity. This quantity is giuen (when it is large) by 2. ſirups, but when it is litle by one ſirupe only; our limits are frō ℥. iij. vnto ℥. x. In a child, from 4. vnto 6. ℥.

if

if he be strong & valiant of stomack, you may proceed to ℥.viij. In the strõgest person, the disease also being rebellious, we proceed not aboue ℥ x. and that quantity we seldome vse in any. Moreouer, you must obserue another rule, that is to giue a greater quantity alwayes of the sirupe in the morning then in the euening, because in the morning the stomack is empty: & in the night because of sleepe, the force thereof is greater. Againe this is to be obserued, in the 1. & 2. day we giue no more, but each day once of the day, which is in the morning, and likewise in the end of the diet. But after we giue the sirupe twise a day, to wit, morning and euening, at a certaine houre, without failing or breaking of time.

CHAP. XV.

How many dayes this decoction is to be receiued.

THe question hath bene to giue the decoction of *Guaicum* the space of forty dayes, because this *Morbus Gallicus* is *Morbus erronicus*, a lõg disease, requiring therefore a long cure. But this time serueth when the disease is in a meane betweene confirmed and beginning. If it be but *Morbus incipiens*, we scarcely prolong the vse of this decoction till the thirtieth dey, or the fiue and twentieth day; but when the disease is inueterate, we cast not to giue it in *Veratro*, vntill the 60. day. Whereby shall we know certainly when to leaue the vse of this decoction? Truly when we see that all *Symptomata* be ceassed and gone, and if they be ceassed at the sixteene dayes end, let vs leaue the vse of the drinke: if not, let vs continue it still, vntill the *Symptomata* be all gone: But if after we haue giuen it forty dayes, the *Symptomata* ceasse not, yet leaue not off as yet for all that, but continue it still, prescribing to the patient *victus nobilium*, and let him till an hundred dayes be expired drinke of the decoction, lest the disease returne, or be confirmed more. And ye shall vnderstand, there be two rebellious *Symptomates*, which if they remaine, hope you not for any perfect cure. The one sort of these be certaine callous and hard scarres, we English men terme them the buttons of Naples, for they be certaine scarres like indeed vnto buttons, and except the patient continue this decoction till these be perfectly cured, it is alwayes to be feared, that the disease will againe returne. The other rebellious *Symptomata*, is *Gonorrhoia Gallica*, which if it ceasseth not through the vse of the decoction or other medicine, of which I will speake hereafter, the disease also endureth. Therefore see that after forty dayes, yet they drinke one of the decoctions.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the time of giuing the decoction, and things to be obserued therein.

NOw coming to speake of the time of giuing this decoction, I say that the Physitiõs giue it in the morning before dinner, the space of three or foure houres, and for the euening after supper three houres. And if it so chanceth that we giue but one sirupe only, the time is not so much to be regarded. Moreouer, remember that the decoction ought alwaies to be taken very hot, to the end it may prouoke sweat: againe, that it ought to be receiued of the patient

lying in his bed. The sirupe being drunke, the patients do vse to sleepe vpon it, and this they must attempt to do, that it may the better be digested and distributed into the habite of the body.

CHAP. XVII.

Of things to be eschued of him that receiueth this decoction.

CHiefly *Venus* must be shut out of the doore quite, especially while this decoction is in giuing. Some by committing this act but once in this cure, haue failed of remedy through the same. There be diuellish women desirous to be handled & dealt withall, who will beautifie themselues, to inflame mens hearts to lust towards them; abandon these your company, and thrust them out of the doores and house: let none of that hue be seene in your diet; beware againe of perturbation and chafing of the minde, which to auoide, flie cards, dice, and all manner of games, which may prouoke anger, and nourish fraud and couetousnesse, which doth inflame the bloud & stirre cholericke humours.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of things to be corrected, or symptomates to be oppugned in this cure.

CErtaine accidents also in this cure are to be corrected and holpen, among the which, one is a certaine loathing of the stomacke, or dispositiõ to vomite, called of the Latines *Nausea*. This coming vpon the palate, letteth him to receiue his potion. This is resisted and helped by mixing pleasant things with the decoction, as is some pleasant iulep to be mixed with the decoction according to the humor which is the cause thereof: some hauing a hot stomack do abhorre it; therefore let them vse in the decoction cold waters, as *Cichory*, & such like, to make it more thin. Some cannot eate their bisket, in which case we permit vnto them good common bread, made of the best floure of the best wheat. Moreouer sharpe and grieuous paines are wont to happen vnto the patients after the fourth day, or the eight day of their begun diet, vntill the fifteenth day be past; which we endeuour to qualifie and lighten two wayes. First by perswading with the patient to sustaine them patiently, telling him it is the nature of working of the wood, and that they will soone be at an end, to his great commoditie and much comfort. Secondly, by fomenting the parts, and annointing thẽ, whereof I will speake more at large when I treate *de doloribus*. Another inconuenience that followeth this cure, is costiuenesse, and the patient commeth into lassitude or wearinesse: this is holpen by clisters giuen euery third day. Againe some do abhor clisters: vnto such we giue once in the day of the sirupe *cum duabus radicibus* or *mellis rosacei*. And if it be such a person as wil not be scoured by common *mel rosaceum*, then in stead thereof we adde vnto the sirupe *rosarum solutiuarum* ℥.j. Some vse to giue pils of Aloes, but *mel rosarum* in my iudgment is best. Also otherwhiles it happeneth that the patient fainteth or swoundeth; & this happeneth after foure and twenty daies, through the slendernes of the

the diet. Then grant him a large diet, as an egge euery day, morning and euening, or some other thing at your discretion. And otherwhiles the cause of this their faintnesse and swounding cometh, for that they are not nourished, or because they take little of their bisket, in which case (as I said) we helpe them with a draught of ale, or an egge reare. But if their stomackes will not digest bisket, let him haue good fine bread. And you shall know this weakenesse of the stomackes digestion by these signes: When either the said solutiue sirupe or clisters be giuen them, (if their stomacke be so weake) there is brought forth with it a great part of the decoction, yellowish somewhat resembling the colour of the yolke of an egge, and somewhat thicke or troubled, in the which ye may see crummes and small peeces of the bisket swimming whole. And when this appeareth vnto you, vse a remedie for it betimes, that is, permit vnto the patient a large diet, and let him haue a lesse quantity of the decoction, with which if you do mixe also some Iulep, it is the better. These be the *Symptomata*, and the meanes to remedy them by.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Excrements.

NOw am I come to that part of my Treatise wherein I haue to speake of Excrements. And concerning this matter, first you shall vnderstand, there be two kinds of Excrements, which are to be regarded and considered of. The one is *Excrementum siccum*, that is to say, the ordure, whereof I haue spoken. The other kinde of excrements whereby the body is purged, being of three sorts, is auoided sometime by vrine, sometime by sweat, sometime by purging medicines. Although (in this case) it be not necessary that the matter be purged, but that the inward affected part be altered, yet euacuation is good by the way of vrine: very good it were indeed, but no Physitions haue attempted that way. For (be it neuer so good) they haue thought it inconuenient to send such hote matter vnto the reines, especially if the patient haue *Gonorrhoia;* for then assuredly the disease shall be exasperated, and more hurt then commodity will thereupon ensue. To driue forth by sweat, Physitions do their diligence, for a large sweat dissolueth the matter of that disease. Some therefore do further and prouoke this sweating after the most simple and common way, that is, by couering the patient well with clothes, couering the patients head, by laying him in a hote bed, and giuing him his decoction warme to drinke (the head of the patient being couered, I doubt whether that will do hurt or nay.) I can commend it in such patients as haue not the head very hote and sweating already: also such as haue pustules, and do feare the shedding of their haire. Others take bread hote out of the ouen, and apply it to the backe and sides of the patient, that by the moist heate thereof, they might the more easily sweat. I like not this deuice, for the bread is infected thereby, & therefore this is not good. Some vse to lay a warme bricke sprinkled with wine or venuice, and wrapped vp in clothes, and this is a good commendable way, obseruing yet this rule for the vse thereof, that you omit it in such persons as haue *Rhagades* in their feet: in such you must lay no brick to their feet in any wise. The last way of voiding excrements, is to repell them by the siege. And the *Guaicum* potion is wont

ſometime to worke that effect, but ſometime it doth not. The moſt part of Phyſitions do (in this caſe) cõmend euacuation made with conuenient diſtance of time by purgatiue medicines: wherefore if very great euacuation be made by ſweats, let them euery eight day be purged: if they ſweate not plenteouſly, then purge them oftener, euery third or fourth day, in the name of God: and the purgations which we in this caſe do vſe, be according to the humors which do moſt abound, as ſometime with pils, with *Sena*, *Epithymo*, *Hermodactylis*: and ſometime with Electuaries, as *confectio Hamech*, *Diacatholicon*, and ſuch other like, as you may find plenty in the firſt and ſecond bookes, if you looke carefully in them for medicines for the purpoſe which you would haue auoided.

CHAP. XX.

Of Diet to be obſerued in this cure.

NOw are we come to ſpeake of the diet to be vſed while this decoction is in taking. This diet is ordained alwayes ſlender touching the quantity, and drying: and it conſiſteth in bisket, which we giue vnto the patient firſt and before other things, to the intent the meate taken after it might the leſſe moiſten, (and ſo it helpeth much to the cure of the tumours which belong to this diſeaſe) and alſo becauſe this bisket bread tarrieth longer in eating, and yet the patients appetite is ſomewhat ſtayed: and if the ſtomacke be very weake, permit him to eate common bread of the very beſt. His meate muſt be roſted and excellent good; Chickens, Rabbets, Mutton, Patriches, and ſuch like. And when he doth purge, let his meate be boyled that day: once, twiſe, or thriſe in the weeke let him haue to his ſupper bread and great Raiſins, as you like his ſtrength. Some do miniſter Corants, which I commend. But when the excrements of the body are daily auoided by abundance of ſweat, ſo that we may hope the patient ſhall that way be perfectly purged, then I thinke beſt to giue no purging medicines; for nature her ſelfe expelleth them to the skinne, to be euacuated that way by ſweate, whoſe worke ſhould by purgatiue medicines partly be hindered. If his ſweate be not ſufficient, then it is beſt to vſe purging, of what kind you thinke beſt (as before.) For his ordinary drinke at meales and other times, let him vſe the ſecond decoction, whereof let him take as much as he will. But do not you beleeue, the more they drinke the ſooner they ſhall be cured of this diſeaſe. And if they cannot drinke the ſecond decoction, we muſt ſuffer them to take ſome ale or beere, but let it not be very ſtrong in any caſe. The time of the diet being expired, we ought forthwith to obſerue whether the liuer be too hote yea or no: if it be ſo, then preſcribe a medicine to qualifie the diſtemper, as thus. Take conſerues of Roſes, of Borage or of Violets, or ſuch like, whereof you may find plenty in our former bookes.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the roote of China.

NOw haue we to treate of the roote of China, whereof ſome Phyſitions do make very great account, not onely for *Morbus Gallicus*, but alſo for the cure of *Phthiſis*, vlcers for the lungs, conſumption of the members. In *Lepra Græcorum*,

Græcorum, i. scabies; Elephantiasis, i. Lepra, proceeding of the melancholick humor; *Podagra* (in all which effects they vse it) the Spaniards do bring ouer this roote, but from what place I cannot learne, I could neuer attaine to trie the vertues thereof this way, but vse it profitably against the Dropsie: also to represse and temper the melancholicke humour, for bleare eyes comming of a hote distemper: moreouer, in an exceeding hote distemper of the stomacke and liuer. But in the cure of *Morbus Gallicus*, I will not vse it againe; for I haue proued it three or foure times, and could yet neuer bring any thing to good perfection: to finish their cures they take two pounds thereof.

CHAP. XXII.

The way of making the decoction of the roote China.

THe decoction is made in this wise: we take this roote and cut it in thinne peeces, afterward we take ℥. ij. thereof, and xij. pounds of cleare water: we heate the water, and infuse the China in it, for a whole nights space, or foure and twentie houres. Afterwards we set it to the fire, and boile it to the consumption of halfe, so that fiue pounds and no more remaine. We make but one decoction, which forthwith we cleanse, and spread out the said thinne peeces vpon a table, that they may be dried in the shadow, because they are reserued to vse againe. The decoction is kept warme in a pot, set either vpon the embers or the hote coales, for if it remaineth not luke warme, it waxeth sowre. But obserue that the decoction be made in a vessell with a very narrow mouth: and the same stopped exactly with corke, while it is in boyling. Of this decoction we giue in maner of a sirupe in the morning ℥ x. or xij in the euening as much. The stomacke liketh well thereof, for it is a pleasant drinke: sometime we permit the patient to drinke wine if he haue bene accustomed to wine, or else to common ale at his meate, if he be weake, or else not. Their diet is common bread of the best, and flesh both sodden and rosted in moderate quantity. No purging medicine is to be giuen before the end thereof, and so the decoction is daily made: for of two pound (which, as I told you in the end of the last Chapter, is the full *Dosis* of the roote) we take daily two ounces, and so the whole lasteth twelue dayes. Afterward we take againe of the same roote dried, and boile againe of the same euery day, ℥ iiij. and so it lasteth fiue dayes more, till the space of eighteene dayes be finished. Now if we will minister it longer, if need be, we do as before. *Diet.*

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the election of China.

IF you will chuse the best China, take that which is rough in colour and ponderous, not worme-eaten, nor corrupted. And be diligent in this, for among an hundred rootes, vnneath you shall find foure good; for commonly they haue two faults: one, that they be spongious and light, another that they be corrupt and worm-eaten. And if you can haue none without both these faults, (as few there are indeed to be found) rather chuse those that be eaten with

wormes, for that they are leſſe euill of the two. And ſpongious rootes ſoone putrifie, and haue in the decoction no ſtrength to profite the patient any thing at all. And this is the ſecond way or manner, whereby ſome Phyſitions endeauour to vanquiſh this euill.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of another manner of making of the decoction with Salſa and the wood, and without the wood, and ſometime with the barke.

I Haue alwayes obſerued and followed this rule: I take of *Salſa periglia*, ℥.iiij. of water, x. pintes. I cut the *Salſa periglia* into ſmall parts: afterwards infuſe it in hote water, by the ſpace of foure and twenty houres. When it is infuſed, it is boyled to the conſumption of the one halfe, afterward it is ſtrained, and this decoction kept for the ſirupe. Then we take the ſame *Salſa* againe, and put thereto of water fifteene pints, and without any more infuſion, we boile it vnto the conſumption of the third part: and this decoction is good to be drunke at dinner and ſupper. Truth it is, I ſometime make the decoction with wine, in this wiſe: The firſt decoction being made (as I haue before declared) I take of water fifteene pounds or pints, and the ſame quantitie of *Salſa*, and boile them together till halfe the liquor be waſted; then before I take the veſſell from the fire, I put thereto of white wine, not ſtrong, but pleaſant in drinking, one quart, and after it hath boyled a little, I cleanſe it out: and this wine I vſe to put vnto it when I ſee the patient not much infected, and ſo he may walke abroad if it pleaſe the patient; or elſe when his ſtomacke is much infeebled. Moreouer, ſometime I vſe to mixe the wood, and ſometime the rinde, and then I take of *Salſa*, ℥.iij. of the Guiacke wood as much, and ſometime of his rinde, ℥.ij. (but not both at once, very ſeldome.) Sometime I vſe the one and ſometime the other; after this forme. ℞. *Salſa*, ℥. iiij. *ligni Guaici*, ℥. iij. ß. or elſe of the rinde, ℥. ij. to which I put of water thirteene pints, and let them boile together till halfe be waſted. Againe to make their drinke for dinner and ſupper, I take of water eighteene pints, and boile it to the conſumption of the third part: when I vſe the barke, I take euen the ſame quantitie of water, although there be of it but ℥. ii. Now when it chanceth me to haue a patient very delicate, and therefore will not giue him theſe decoctions, in this caſe I boyle the *Salſa* in thirteene pints of water, vnto the conſumption of halfe: and when it is thus boyled, I haue a veſſell either of the raped *Guaicum*, or the powder of the rinde, which I beſt like of, and into it I cleanſe the decoction of *Salſa*, as hote as is poſſible; and ſo it is infuſed for thirteene houres, and then I ſtraine it, and thus I prepare this ſirupe. At dinner and ſupper, I giue onely the ſecond decoction of *Salſa*. The reaſon why I thus admixe them, is becauſe the decoction of *Salſa* doth little offend the ſtomacke, but ſometime it moueth the belly, therefore I mixe *Guaicum* therewith. Another cauſe why I mixe them, is to eradicate the diſeaſe, wherefore *Salſa* is needfull. Thirdly, when I haue one that hath had this diſeaſe long time, I vſe both *Guaicum* and *Salſa*, yea and ſometime the rind, but

but that I do verie seldome, and I vse this decoction in all points as the other in quantity and time. And sometime if the patient be very full of vlcers, I vse this decoction following; I take *Guaicum*, ℥ vij. of *Salsa*, ℥. iij. and infuse them in fourteene pints of warme water, foure and twenty houres; then boyle them vntill there be left seuen pints, and towards the end of the boyling, adde to of Liquorice, ℥.j. Raisins of the sunne, the stones picked out, ℥.ij. the rootes of *Consolida maior*, ℥.ij. ß. of the seeds of *Carduus benedictus*. ℥ ß and when it is cold straine it. This decoction take for the first morning and euening, ℥ viij. at a time warme, and euery morning procure him to sweate if it be possible. For the second decoction, take that which is strained, and adde thereto of fresh *Guaicum*, ℥. iij. of *Salsa*, ℥.j. put of water sixteene pints; let it infuse thirteene houres, and boile them to tenne pints, and adde in the end of the boiling Barley, ℥.ij. Liquorice and Raisins of the sunne, the stones taken out, ana. ℥ j. Violet flowers, ℥ ß. and then when it is cold, straine it, and drinke of it at his meate, and at any other time of the day, remembring to purge the body once in foure dayes, if there be need. And let him take this decoction thirtie dayes, or fiue and twentie dayes at the least, as you see cause, and as the vlcers do heale, remembring to wash or bathe the places grieued, morning and euening with the first decoction warme.

CHAP. XXV.

Of other faculties or vertues which this Salsa hath.

BVt you shall vnderstand, that this *Salsa* doth not cure and put away this *Morbum Gallicum* onely, but the same is good for many other affects, as in a Catarrhe or distillation from the head, being sharpe and salt, in Cancres not vlcerate, and in tumours which are hard to be resolued: and I haue found by mine owne experience, that it yeeldeth good effect in the cure of *Scrofulæ*, commonly called the Kings euill. I minister it in this wise: for the space of fortie dayes, I take of the powder of *Salsa*, and the powder of *Ruscus*, called of some *Bruschus*, of both a like portion, and euery day I giue of this powder, ℥.j. with white wine, or ale, as I see cause, and it cometh well to passe thereby, sometimes purging the bodie as I see cause, and let the patient go abroade at his pleasure. I haue proued this powder in the tumour of the spleene, but I adde thereto the iust quantitie of *Tamariscus*, which maketh it the better.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Suffumigations which some practitioners vse.

THis disease sometime is cured of practitioners by Suffumigations, otherwise called perfumes, which way of curing is not to be recommended amongst those wayes before named. The cause is this; often and many times sore inconueniences come thereupon, and it cureth not with so small danger to the patient. Wherefore, I haue alwayes held it the best (as much as may be) to shunne this way of curing, for as much as in some it is extremely euill and dangerous, as in leane persons, such as haue a hote and drie tem-

perament; also in those which haue streightnesse in the breast, either through obstruction of the vessels, or somewhat distilling from the head. Moreuer, it is pernicious vnto them which at any time haue spitted bloud: furthermore such persons as haue *Peripneumonia*, if they vse suffumigations, it costs them their liues. To be short, all such as are troubled with *Dysenteria*, or any other kinde of fluxe, ought to forbeare these suffumigations. I my selfe neuer vsed them, but in one case or two at the most, and maruell you not thereat, for I vtterly mislike of them. But I will speake a litle of suffumigations; they haue in them these faculties and strengths: First they open all the conduits of the body: for their nature is such, that immediatly they pierce the body, in piercing they alter it; they mundifie or scoure the inward parts, and first the heart. And the braine it selfe is altered, for by the lungs it is communicated vnto the heart, by the nostrils vnto the braine, as by the veines the same is also communicated vnto the liuer. And this appeareth by experience; for *Suffimenta* alwayes looseu the belly, and bring excrements vnto the bowels, euen as a purgation, therefore it must needes be that they pierce or penetrate.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the manner of perfuming of the whole body.

First, there is none so ignorant or foolish an Empericke, but he purgeth the body before the vse of these Suffumigations, by one, two or three purgations, with respect of the humour abounding, the habite of the body, and the sickneslle. And if the disease be confirmed and inueterate, the purgations ought to be strong; which rules of euacuation you may find before in their conuenient place, where we treated of purging the body, both in the beginning and the ending. And first to begin this worke with him, euen about that houre that the Sun riseth, they giue the patient a couple of rere egs, & straight after he hath eaten them, a sop of bread infused in Malmesey; then they let him drinke a litle quantity. Lastly, after all these, they let him take ℥.j. of *Saccharum rof.* and lye still after that a quarter of an houre. In the meane time they prepare a litle chamber which they make very hote, and therein they make a pauilion or tent, which is made of a thicke and close cloth; within the which they set a pot full of burning coales, and the patient himselfe also sitteth naked vnder this tent on a litle seate for the purpose. And they haue their things readie at hand, which by little and little they strew vpon the coales, and the smoake thereof being closely kept in, flieth about the tent, drying and drawing out of the body. And when that which they haue already cast vpon the coales faileth, and is gone, they strew on more, and that diuerse times, and there they let the patient continue (if he can) the space of a whole houre, or halfe an houre, as he can abide it. But let them alwayes take heed, so long as he is vnder the pauilion, that they talke with him and aske of him how he fareth; for sometime they swound and fall downe within the tent, which is very dangerous: and if he answereth very faintly, take him out in all the haste you can, then wrap him in a warme linnen sheete, and lay him in bed, and there couering him with clothes, let him continue there two houres space.

And

And this is the way which they vse or ought to vse: they vse to perfume them three dayes together, and rest one day; and then other three dayes, and so to nine dayes. Somtime we vse this Suffumigation more daies, euen as the disease requireth: for if we see that the palate of the mouth is exulcerated, or sore in the third day, and that the matter floweth out, forthwith we leaue off; or if a laxe cometh vpon the patient, we cease: yea though it be in the third, fourth, fifth, or sixth day. If once in the day, we vse suffumigation still, and that is in the morning, afterward dry vp the sweat, and let him eate his meate, and drinke thinne ale. In all other things, let his diet be at large, and at his pleasure, to his best liking.

A good signe to know the time to leaue off.

Diet.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Symptomata which sometime happen in this way of curing.

THis way of curing by Suffumigations is endangered to certaine euil *Symptomata*, as sometime laxe of the belly, sometime corruption of the roose of the mouth, sometime loosenes and shaking of the teeth All which are wont to follow the annointing with quicke siluer: and when we shall come to treate of that way of curing, we shall speake our mind concerning these *Symptomata*.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Suffumigations made of a matter benigne and harmelesse.

I Told you before that there are two sorts of Suffumigations; one sort is compounded and made of things gentle and benigne, another sort is made of things venimous and maligne. First, let vs speake of those which containe a matter benigne and voide of malice, amongst which this is: (the first forme of one which is mighty indeed of operation, but yet of the gentler sort.) ℞. *Thuris masculi, Aloes, Myrrhæ*, ana. ℥ j. *Cinamomi, Storacis siccæ, Spica nardi, Moschatæ*, ana. ℥ ß. *Ambræ vel Charabæ*, ℥ j. *Moschi* gra ij. These are mixed together and lightly beaten vnto powder, and with a little spoone it is strewed vpon hote burning coales. Another is described thus. ℞. *Santal. alborum, rubrorum & citrinorum*, ana. ℥ j. *Mucis moschatæ, Maceris, Squinanthi, Cariophyllorum, Camphoræ, Assari*, ana. ℥ ß. *Corticum mali apioli, siccatorum ambra*, ana. ℥ ß. They are mixed and beaten into powder, and with *Terebinthina* made into a paste, which paste is afterward diuided into round bals, which by little and litle are layed vpon the fierie coales. The third compositiõ being yet more strong in this. ℞. *Storacis siccæ, Belzoni, ligni Aloes, Gallæ moschatæ*, ana. ℥ ß. *gummi Hederæ*, ℥ j. *Ladani*, ℈ ij. *Squinanthi, Cinamomi*, an. ℥ ß. *Albi animæ Charabæ*, ℥ ß. *misce*. These are beaten, and with *Storax liquida*, made into a paste, which paste is made into little round bals, *vt suprà*.

1.

2.

3.

CHAP. XXX.

Of maligne Suffumigations.

MOrbus *Gallicus* is ouercome by Suffumigations, which piercing through the whole bodie, do drie the braine, the heart, the liuer, and the whole

habite: these be of two sorts; the one sort particular, the other common. Of which some be light and easie, some strong and vehement, some of a matter more benigne, some of a matter more maligne. Which they be that consist of a benigne matter, we haue declared in the former Chapter; now we haue to speake of the composition of those which do consist of a matter maligne. Of this sort I will set downe three in number which are now in vse, and the principall things in them be *Cinaberis artificialis, Sandaracha Græcorum,* and *Auripigmentum*; and these be those which (for as much as they be poisons) of their owne nature, do inspire a certaine venimous vapour into the body. But to be briefe, you shall vnderstand that the whole effect consisteth in *Hydrargyro*, or in some other matter of like nature vnto it, as is *Arsenicum, Sandaracha,* and *Cinaberis artificialis*, or *Præcipitatum*. These things be mixed with Aromaticks to strengthen the inward parts, for otherwise they should be much offended by them and hurt; and the chiefe of these Aromaticke things be *Resinæ* and diuerse kinds of gums. The first forme of this sort is this. ℞. *Cinaberis,* ℥ iii. *Myrrhæ, Thuris, Mastiches,* ana. ℥. i. *Aloes hepaticæ, Sandarachæ Arabum, Styracis siccæ, Belzoni,* ana. ℥. iii. These be beaten grosly, and thereof is made a powder, which is sprinckled vpon the fierie coales. The second forme is this. ℞. *Cinaberis,* ℥ iii. *Sandarachæ Græcorum,* ℥. i. ß. *Myrrhæ, Thuris, ligni Aloes, Ladani, Ammoniaci,* ana. ℥. i. These be beaten in grosse wise, and mixed with *Terebinthinæ*, and thereof are made small bals to cast vpon the burning coales. The third forme of maligne Suffumigations is this ℞. *Cinaberis,* ℥ iii. *Auripigmenti, Sandarachæ Græcorum,* ana. ℥ ß *Præcipitati,* ℥. iii. *Thuris, Aloes hepaticæ, Mastiches, Myrrhæ electæ, Belzoni, Styracis siccæ, Ladani, Ammoniaci,* ana. ℥ ß *Miscentur*. Of these make a grosse powder which is strewed vpon the burning coales. And these be the descriptions of those Suffumigations which haue a venimous faculty, and do expell by the malignity of their nature.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the cure by annointing with Quickesiluer.

THe first way that experience found out to heale this disease in Italy, was by *Argentum viuum*. For when this disease began to spread in that countrey, Chyrurgians attempting all things for the cure thereof, because they had read that Quicke siluer should be of great vertue against an old rebellious scab (for at the first coming in of this disease, it had alwaies vlcers ioyned therewith) they thought good to try that *Argentum viuum*, and that with good successe, for some thereby gathered great riches. Many fell into *Marasmus* by this annointing, many lost their teeth after it: some had the palate of their mouth rotted away, some had the bones of their head eaten, which so doth continue still; one hath his mouth in like sort, another his face set awry thereby. For if it healeth not, it driueth the whole channell of vicious humors into the head. I haue take in hand some, who haue bene annointed with this ointment three yeares before; and when they haue had sores (called *Gumata*) vpon their skinnes, whereby the bones haue bene discouered, I haue seene the *Argentum viuum* gathered within the place: for this cause I commend not this medicine. I haue vsed it sometime when I could not attaine my purpose, by the said waies of curing, called

Harmes following the vse of quicke siluer.

called *Regiæ*. I saw once a young stripling that had *Morbum Gallicum*, vpon whom all the aforesaid *Regiæ curationes* had bene practised, and he neuer the better therefore; yet he afterwards was cured by the wayes of annointing. Wherefore in such as haue rebellious affects, and are to be dispaired of, I vse it, when I haue proued all wayes, and all sorts of medicines before. And when I vse it, I obserue this order. First, to purge the humour that doth abound, and if the humours be mixt, then all the body: I giue the *decoctum Guaici* by the space of ten or twelue dayes, to strengthen the inward parts, as the head, braine, and liuer; and then the venimous medicine hurteth not so much. And after I haue thus prepared my patients, I annoint them in this sort. First three dayes if the symptomates do not appeare; then to foure, fiue, sixe, yea ten dayes, till I see the symptomates do appeare: then I annoint no more. Of these *Symptomata*, some happen commonly very much, other some very little: it commonly happeneth that after annointing, the patients haue their palate swelled and raw, their tongue growne bigger, so that sometime they can neither speake nor swallow downe any meate: their tongue is exceeding sore by reason of great inflammation, and such abundance of corrupt and stinking spittle flowing vpon it; all their teeth are loose in their head, and do shake, sometime they lose some of them. Finally, such a quantity of corrupt matter is gathered and brought to the mouth, that sometime the teeth are quite couered therewith. This medicine of his owne nature flieth altogether to the mouth and there seeketh to breake forth. In this case you ought to appoint the patient a diet of things easie to be digested, as some cullaze of dilicate flesh. Let the drinke which he drinketh be pleasant, and if he hath bene vsed to drinke wine let him haue it, and let his diet be large enough, of broth, and good store of fine bread in it, and so nourish him largely and plentifully: for the euacuation which he sustayneth is great, so that I haue bene compelled to cut the *Cephalica* veine for the swelling of the tongue.

CHAP. XXXII.

To correct the Symptomata which happen in the mouth in this day of curing.

AND amongst other things this also is to be obserued, as much as is possible to draw out the *Hydrargyron* which lieth soaked in the palate and the teeth. The way to do it is this: Let the patient hold and keepe in his mouth, a ring of fine gold, and draw it forth twise or thrise; and if it chance to looke white, lay it one the coales, and it will come to his colour as before: and then put it in and so keepe it at his pleasure. But if the patient haue great paine, we vse to wash his mouth with milke. If the paine continue, I vse Barley water and sirupe of Myrtle, or *Diamoron*, or *Nenuphar*, and sometime we vse *aqua Solani*, or Plantine. Sometime we vse of repercussiue iuyce, as *succus foliorum Rubi, foliorum Plantaginis*; sometime of the iuyce of Vine leaues. Sometime we vse Barley water, with *mel. ros.* sirupe *Myrti*, *Diamorum simplex*, to scoure withall the mouth. Another *Symptoma* yet followeth vpon this way

of curing, and that is, immoderate laxe of the belly; for sometime the patient voideth by the siege pure bloud, or strings of bloud, as we see in *Dysenteria*. In this case (if the patient his strength may well sustaine it) let vs not stay the fluxe, but moderate it, and cause that the excoriation of the bowels do not thereby increase. First by ministering clisters of milke, wherein hath bene quenched red hote gaddes of steele, or litle black flint stones; or by the iniection of the iuyce of Ptisan, or pure milke Sometime (the patient being weake) we come to the vse of astringent things, as *oleum Myrtinum*, or *oleum Omphacinum in clistere*, also the iuyce of Plantine, or of the hip Briar. Sometime we put in our clisters also *Bolus Armenus*, or *Lapis Hæmatitis*. Moreouer we vse altringent waters: sometime we open a veine, sometime we vse ligatures and other meanes or wayes of reuulsion: now if none of these *Symptomata* shall come vpon them, we nourish them with good meates (as it is said) and so end the cure.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the diuerse compositions of ointments which be vsed in this way of curing.

1. THere be diuerse kindes of vnguents: I will set forth but two of them, ℞. *oleum Petroleum*. ℥ ß. *olei Lumbricorum, olei Spicæ nardi, olei Tartari albi, olei Turpentini*, ana. ℥ j. *vnguentum Dialthææ, vngu. Marciaton, Axungia Toxsion, Storax liquida, Turpentini*, ana. ℥ ij. *Axungiæ porcinæ*, ℔ ß. *Armoniace, Opoponacis, Bdellij, Elimnij, Ladani, Styracis, Calaminthæ, Belzoni*, ana ℥ j.

2. *Tartari albi combusti, Aluminis combusti*, ana. ℥ iiij. *Vitrioli Romani combusti*, ℥ j. quicke siluer. ℔ j. *Minium*, ℥ ß. mixe all, and beate them in a mortar two houres at the least (if it be three it is the better) without ceassing. ℞. *Penguedinis gallinæ, Axungiæ porcinæ, Axungiæ vrsinæ*, an. ℥ iiij. *olei Liliorum albi, olei Laurini*, ana. ℥ ij. quicke siluer, ℥ viij. In this composition, the fattes are not melted at the fire, but the fi[illegible]mes cleane taken out, they are beaten in a mortar very diligently; then by litle and litle the quicke siluer is put into the mortar, and the medicine is wrought in the mortar, by the space of two or three houres at the least. Afterwards put in these powders: *Thuris Masliches, Myrrhæ, Ammoniaci, Styracis, pulueris Saluiæ, pulueris Stœchados, Lythargirij, Cerussæ*, ana. ℥ ß. Of these is made a very fine powder, which by litle & litle is put into the mortar, continually beating til all be well incorporated. Thus these two ointments be made, the first is strongest and best. If there be many vlcers, and at the fourth or fifth annointing commonly the *Symptomatæ* will appeare, they vse no more annointing.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Præcipitatum giuen by the mouth.

Diſis. FVrthermore you shall vnderstand, that some practitioners vse to cure this disease, not onely by annointing (whereof we haue spoken before) but by giuing *Præcipitatem* by the mouth. Some giue the common *Præcipitatum* so prepared: It is giuen in weight, gra. seuen, or tenne at the vttermost:

they

they mixe this quantity with medicines to alter the colour, that it may not be knowne. Some mixe it with *Aloes*, *Myrrhæ*, *Maſtiches*, gr. iij. Some mixe it with conſerues of Roſes, ſome with *Mithridatum*, and ſuch like. But there is a more ſafe curing then this, by *Turbith mineralis*, which the *Chymiſts* haue inuented in ſtead of *Præcipitatum*, which I better allow of, and it is very dangerous for the better ſort of men: of the which I mind to ſpeake hereafter as followeth. Firſt, the vſe of *Turbith mineralis* is betwixt graines xviij. and xx. grains, or xxv. graines at the moſt, after the ſtrength of the patient: they vſe it in this manner. Firſt they take the doſe as they themſelues beſt like, and mixe it with *Mithridatum*, one part or two as they will: ſome mixe with it conſerues of Roſes, ſo that there be not in all paſt ℥.j or ℥.j.ß. at the moſt. They make it into a ball: ſome make three or foure pils and gild thē, other ſome rolle it in powder of *Diambre* or ſuch like. The patients body muſt be prepared by ſome eaſie meane, and eate a light ſupper: let the patient receiue it early in the morning: after he hath receiued it, let him lie in his warme bed an houre at the leaſt, and ſleepe after it, if it be poſſible; then let him ariſe and apparell himſelfe warme, and ſit by the fire. Let his chamber be very warme, ſo that he may ſweate temperately. Within foure houres after he hath receiued the ſaid Bole, cauſe him to eate ſome warme broth, and let him not come out of his chamber till he be throughly whole or cured. Let his diet be very good warme meates. Two mornings next following giue him a little *Mithridatum* in clarified Mace ale, and cauſe him to ſweate an houre or two in his bed. The third morning next following, giue him the *Turbith* as before, and let him keepe the order aforeſaid: and if his mouth grow not ſore in the meane time, giue it him the third time in the third morning next following the ſecond time: do ſo till his mouth be ſore, then ſeeke in the former chapter to heale his mouth as is taught there. Thus haue you all the waies and meanes to helpe this pernicious griefe.

The doſis of Turbith mineralis.

Libri ſexti finis.

THE VII. BOOKE, TEACHETH THE FORME AND RVLE OF MAKING REMEDIES AND Medicines, which our Phyſitions do commonly vſe at this day, and to know after what ſort their proportion and quantity is diſtributed and noted, with the names of each medicine.

CHAP. I.

Of Suppoſitaries.

A Suppoſitary is a remedie, whole, long, and round which it put into the fundament, that it may auoid the pricking, and moue and prouoke the vertue expulſiue to the auoiding of the excrements, compoſt, or ordure. We do vſe Suppoſitaries eſpecially for three cauſes: the firſt is for bringing out ordure, which when it lieth in the right bowell, it requireth no clyſter. The ſecond is, when one or two clyſters haue bene put into the bodie, and do not come out againe at the fundament, as it doth chance in paſſions of the cholicke, then it is very perilous to put in other clyſters. The third cauſe is, when the ſicke perſon is ſo weake that he may better ſuffer a ſuppoſitarie then a clyſter. A ſuppoſitarie is made of hony that is boyled ſo long, till it doth waxe thicke and hard; oftentimes common ſalt is mixed with the hony: but if you will make it more ſharpe and quicke, take of ſalt Gemme, the dung of a Mouſe, Agaricke, or elſe *Hiera ſimplex*. ℞. a Suppoſitary made of hony, which if you thinke ſo weake that it will not moue the compoſt or ordure, adde too theſe following. ℞. to make a common Suppoſitary of ſharpe hony, *ſal Armoniacke*, ℥ ß. or of ſalt Gemme, ℈ ß. or of Mouſe dung. ℈. ß. or ℈. j. or of *Hiera ſimplex*, ℥ ß. Alſo make ſuppoſitaries of white ſope, tallow of beaſts, fat of bacon, candles, the ſtalkes of Beets, or Mercurie, or their roots annointed with oyle or hony, and ſtrewed with powder of ſalt, ſpecially for children and ſucking babes, for whom one corne of ſalt put in is ſufficient. ℞. Thime, or *Cyclaminum*, or Wormewood, or Sothernwood, ſtamped in a mortar. ℥ j. or ß. of boiled hony ſo much as ſufficeth, and make a ſuppoſitary. Suppoſitaries are good againſt the Palſey, made of Pellitory & Pepper, Napy (that is, a kinde of rapes called a Nauew) Cẽtorie, Bitumen, that is, a kinde of lime, the roote of *Panax*, Hyſope, *Galbanum*, mixed with dry Roſin, or Pitch and Waxe. Let a Suppoſitary be round, and 6. 7. or 8. fingers in length. We do vſe no Suppoſitaries to them which haue the hemorrhoids, or any other ſwelling in the fundament.

A ſuppoſitarie to bring forth the ordure.

A ſuppoſitary againſt the wormes called Lumbrici.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of making Nodulus.

NODVLI be those which are called of *Aetius* in Greeke προσθέτα; they are good for those which haue clefts and swellings in the fundament. These do auoid and take away the hardnesse of suppositaries, because sometime we are compelled to vse flockes in their steads. Their matter is the same that suppositaries be. ℞. Flocks mingled or beaten with hony, and put into the tuell: and truly that *Nodulus* is best and sweetest which is made of salt and the white of an egge in cloth or wooll, made in the forme of a Beane, and put into the tuell with a threed hanged at the end, that it may be drawne out againe.

CHAP. III.

Of making Pessaries.

A Pessarie is a medicine which is made of soft wooll, or such like thing, and it is put into the priuities of women. The figure or shape of it is like a suppositarie, but that it is longer & thicker, because it must be put into the womb. It is made of Waxe, or of cloth or cotton, or of lint first dipped and wet in an ointment, or in a medicine meete and conuenient for the cure. Afterward wind them in silke, and hang a threed thereunto, that it may be drawne out the more easily. It is put into the tuel and into the wombe to ceasse the inflammations and vlcers of them both. Priuatly it is put into the wombe to prouoke the menstruis and the secundine, or to stop immoderate fluxe of menstruis, or to mollifie the hardnes of the wombe, or to cure other diseases of the wombe. ℞. a pessarie dipped & wet in *Vnguentum rosarum*, and put it into the place. To this sometime is added *Opium*, that is, where the inflammation causeth great paine. *Opium* by his coldnesse maketh astoned, therefore his quantity ought to be small, as from halfe a scruple to a scruple, and let it be holden a little time, lest through his coldnesse the parts which are sinewie be hurt. It therefore may be holden halfe an houre. ℞. a pessarie dipped and wet in *Vnguentum Pompholygos*, put it into the tuell or into the matrice that is grieued. Pessaries to bring forth menstruis are made otherwise. The medicines are taken in silke cloth, that is as thinne as sindall, and let the forme and fashion be thicker, which may bring out with his powder, as thus ℞. *Hierapicra composita*, ℥ j. of *Euphorbium*, and the apple of *Coloquintida*, ana. ℈. ß. mixe them and make a pessarie. Annoint it with *oleum Nardinum*, or with the iuyce of herbes that prouoke menstruis. Such pessaries be made oftentimes of brayed herbes prouoking menstruis: as, ℞. Mercurie, Neppe, or Mugwort, or Sothernwood, M. ß. bray them, and rolle them in silke, and make a pessarie. If the menstruis haue endured with swelling and paine, first make a bath, for that doth mollifie and moist: the paunch ought first to be emptied, and the bladder to be voloden, because the matrice is in the middest betweene them: for these being filled, and pressing the matrice, the menstruis for ouermuch straightnesse may be retained and made slow in coming out. If immoderate menstruis do flow, do thus: ℞. a pessarie wet in *Vnguentum comitissæ*, and put it into the matrice: or thus: ℞. of Plantaine, or Knotgrasse, or Brier, of Mirtle, or other that can

To ceasse inflammation.

To dry vlcers.

To bring forth menstruis.

stop menstruis, M.ß. bray them, and roll them in silke, and make a pessarie.

To mollifie the hardnesse of the wombe. Pessaries mollifying may be made of the marrow of a Calfe, & a Hart, of Rosin, Terebinthine, fatnesse of a Goose, or porke, and of Gumme Armoniacke dissolued in water.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Clisters or Enema.

A Clyster or *Enema*, is a kind of medicine the which is cast and put into the bowels by the fundament, liquide and thinne, and it is profitable for eight things. 1. To mollifie the wombe restrained with hardnesse. 2. To prouoke the violence detestable and astonied. 3. To auoid any kind of humours. 4. To put away ventosities. 5. To cease dolours and paines. 6. To bind and restraine the bellie. 7. To make cleane vlcers of the guts or bowels. 8. To make sound the same. There may be also added to alter and change, as here followeth. ℞. of Lettuce, Scarioll, *Rostrum porcinum*, leaues of Sallow ana. M. j. flowers of Violets, and Nenuphar, of each a little handfull: make a decoction of one pound. In the straining let one ounce of *Cassia fistula* be dissolued, oyle of Violets, and of Nenuphar, ana. ℥ j. ß. Camphire, ϑ. j. and make a clister. ℞. the foure kinds of remollitiues, or mollificatiues, Pellitorie of the wall, ana. M. j. ß. the rootes of the Mallowes called *Althæa*, and white Lillies, ana. ℥ j. seede of Flaxe, Fenugreeke and Annise, ana. ℥ ß. of fat Figges, iiij. make a decoction of ℔ j. in weight. In the straining thereof dissolue therein of *Cassia fistula, mel Violarum*, and fresh butter, ana. ℥ j. oyle of Violets ℥ iij. and make a clister. If you will make a clister mollificatiue lacking the things aforesaid, do thus. ℞. oyle made warme ℔ j. and make thereof a clister, or thus. ℞. oyle and fresh butter, ana ℔ ß. and make a clister. ℞. the foure remollitiues, ana. M j. seede of *Carthamum*, ℥ j. of Annise, Fennell, and *Careum*, ana ℥ iij. and make a decoction of ℔ j. and in the straining dissolue *Hiera simplex*, or *Benedicta*, or *Diaphœnicon*, or *Electuarium de succo*, or *Electuarium Indi maioris*, ℥ ß of clarified hony, or iuyce of Squil, ℥ j. or common Salt, ℥ ij. or salt Gemme, ϑ. j. or ℥ ß. Many do adde to clisters, ℥ i of the iuyce of Beetes, which do moue and grieue the bellie, or iuyce of Beets and Coleworts, ana. ℥ ß. of common Salt. ℥ ii. or ℥ i. which bite and gnaw the belly, or lesse, but the iust weight must be as you coniecture to be easie or hard for the sicke. Also such a clister expulsing the detestable faculte or matter, may very well be made onely of hony, or hony with iuyce of *Squilla*, or other things decoct. And if that the vertue expulsiue be astonied and dull through the hardnesse of the ordure, then make a clister partly of mollificatiues, and partly of expulsiues aforesaid. Clisters which auoid humours are made so, that they varie according as the humours differ. For when the humour is grosse and cold, euill disposing the bowels, let it be made thus. ℞. the foure remollitiues, ana. M i. Cammomill, the tops of Dil, Origan, Calamint, Sotherwood, ana. M. ß. Annise, *Careum*, Comin, Ammeos, Seseleos, ana. ℥ ß. berries of Lawrell, seed of Rew, ana ℥ ii. make a decoction. In the straining dissolue *Catholicon*, and *Diaphœnicon*, ana. ℥ ß. or *Diaphœnicon*, or *Benedicta*, ℥ vi. or of both, ℥ ß. of red Sugar, and *mel Anthos*, ana. ℥ iii. ℥ ß. oyle of Dill and Cammomill, ana. quart. ß. or oyle of Rew, ℥ i.

A clister mollificatiue.

A clister prouoking & making voide the violence astonied.

A clister auoiding humours.

oyle of Dil, ℥ ij. or oyle of Lillies, ℥. ij. make a clyster. If vētositie be preſēt, adde Calmatiues, if paine be preſent, take a medicine releaſing griefe by procuoking ſleepe. as hereafter ſhall appeare by examples. If a cholericke and gnawing humour muſt be brought out with a cliſter, then let the cliſter be made of ſuch things as will aucid that humour, and mixe it partly with ſuch helpes as do ceaſſe inflammation, as thus ℞. Mallowes, Biſmallowes, Violets, Pellitory of the wall, Endiue, Succorie, Lettuce, Purſlaine, ana. M. j. and if there be ſo much need of coldneſſe, take the foure great cold ſeeds bruiſed, ana. ℥. iij. or ℥ ß. of whole Barley. p. j. make a decoction of one pound. In the ſtraining diſſolue *Caſſia fiſtula* and common Sugar, ana. ℥ j. the white of one egge or two, oyle of Roſes, or of Violets, or common oyle, quart j. make a cliſter. If ſuch a paſſion cometh of a melancholicke humour, make it thus. ℞. the foure mollificatiues, the leaues of Bugloſſe and Borage, the tops of Dill, *Lupuli*, and Fumitorie, ana. M. j. Melilot and Cammomill, ana. M. j. ſeed of *Carthamum*, and Polypodie of the Oke, ana. ℥. j. Anniſe, and Fennell, ana ℥. ß. make a decoctiō In the ſtrayning diſſolue *Hiera Ruffi*, which is not in vſe or *confectio Hamech.* ℥ ß or *Catholicon*, ℥ j. red Sugar, or *mel Roſarum*, or Violets, ℥. j. oyle of Dill, Lillies, and Violets, ana. ℥ j. make a cliſter. ℞. Mallowes, Biſmallowes Pellitorie of the wall, Origan, Calamint, Cammomill, the tops of Dill, ana, M. j. Anniſe, *Careum*, Comin and Fennell, ana ℥ ß. or ℥ vj. of Lawrell Berries ℥ iii or ℥. ß. ſeed of Rew, ℥. ii. or iii. and make a decoction. In the ſtrayning diſſolue *Benedicta*, or *Diaphœnicon*, or *Electuarium Indi maioris*, which we do not vſe here, ℥ ß. confection of Lawrell berries, ℥. iii or ℥. ß red Sugar, ℥. i. oile of Dill, Cammomill and Rew, ana. ℥. i. make a cliſter. Into theſe cliſters which put away ventoſities, oyle of Nuts is wholeſome to put in, and alſo (as *Galen* ſaith) *Vinum maluaticum Cretenſe*, may well be mixed with a cliſter as is aforeſaid. The ſignes of ventoſities and wind contained in the bowels, be often farting and noiſe in the guttes, becauſe it chanceth as often as burbles are broken in the bowels. Bowels wherein be burbles (as *Galen* teacheth *Particula 2. Aphoriſm. ſtrangulati vendum mortui, &c*) be cauſed of aire ſhut and encloſed with the humour. Cliſters to ceaſſe paines are made many wayes, for if the cauſe be an hote gnawing humour, the example is ſhewed afore by cold things, where he intreateth of a clyſter to auoide humours: if the paine be of a cold cauſe, take the ſame that is giuen againſt ventoſity laſt before: if the paine do come of moe cauſes, make a cliſter of many of thoſe things which are meete for the cauſes: and when the cauſe of the paine is not knowne, make it thus. ℞. flowers of Cammomill, Melilot, the toppes of Dill, ana. pug. ii. make a decoction in milke. In the ſtraining diſſolue therein white Sugar, becauſe the red is biting and pricking, ℥. i. ß. whites of egges ii. oyle of Dill and Cammomill, ana quart. ß and make a cliſter. Or thus. ℞. oile of Cammomill, Dill and Violets, ana. ℥. iii. caſt it in with a cliſter, and when we want ſuch oile, we make it of quart. iii. or ℔. i. of oile Oliue. ℞. milke ſodden, quart iii. or ℔. i. *Amylum ſiue Amydum*, halfe a dramme, or a dram at the moſt, Gumme Arabique, or Tragacanth, or both, a little burnt, ana. halfe a dram, or a dramme, or two drammes, Bolearmoniacke, and *Sanguis Draconis*, ana ℥. ii. oile of Roſes and Cammomill, ana. one ounce and an halfe: make

A cliſter to put & driue away ventoſities.

A cliſter to ceaſſe paine.

A cliſter reſtraining.

A Cliſter profitable against an hote humour gnawing in the bowels.

a cliſter. ℞. the iuyces of Plantaine, *Arnogloſſa*, that is, a kind of Plantaine, Knotgraſſe, and Purſlaine: let theſe iuices be cleanſed either by ſeething or reſidence; take of all theſe, or of one of theſe, as much as ſufficeth for a cliſter, adding of the powder aforeſaid, and with thoſe oyles make a cliſter. Note that when there is need, then you may make cliſters of thoſe herbes ſodden, or of the waters diſtilled out of them, adding Roſe water, as: ℞. the water of *Arnogloſſa*, of Plantaine, of Roſes, of Purſlaine, of Knotgraſſe, as much as ſufficeth, and diſſolue ſome of the aforeſaid things therein. It is to be noted, that ſometime there are put into the aforeſaid decoctions, ſeeds and fruits that be ſtipticke, to make hard, and to bind, ſo that they lacke ſharpneſſe, becauſe elſe they would pricke, prouoke and expulſe; therefore we can mixe together the ſeeds of Myrtle, Sorrell, of Purſlaine, Plantaine, Cypreſſe, *Cauda equina*, Horſtaile, and ſuch like. Moreouer note, that oile muſt neuer be put into cliſters, if the bowels be vlcerate, as they be in *Dyſenteria*, (which is a fluxe in the body) yet many do neglect that, not knowing that oyle is an enemie to vlcers (as *Galen* intreateth *tertio & quarto Methodi.*) Truly wine is a ſpeciall friend, the creame or curde of a Hare or of a Goate, in weight ℥ iij. *Sorbus*, Proynes, Medlars, Quinces, ana. ℥ j. more or leſſe, do reſtraine and bind ℞. of whole Barley, p. ij. of red Roſes and Cammomill, and Plantaine if paine be preſent, ana. p. j. make a decoction. In the ſtraining diſſolue therein *mel Roſarum*, ℥ j. the white of one egge or two, make a cliſter. Such a clyſter is to be giuen alwaies before cliſters reſtraining, binding and conſolidating by meanes whereof the thing is made prompt and eaſie. A cliſter conſolidating is made when the filthineſſe of the bowels is not purged and tried out, becauſe that is deadly: and therefore there needeth no cliſter, but that prognoſtication is ſufficient. ℞. of the iuyce of Plantaine, *Arnogloſſa*, and Purſlaine, ana ounces three, of Boleармoniacke, *Sanguis Draconis*, and *Amylum*, ana. dramme one and a halfe: or the tallow of a male or female Goate one dramme, or one ounce & a halfe, and make a cliſter. And becauſe Goates tallow cannot well diſſolue, but almoſt alwayes it congealeth and hardeneth together in the bowels of the ſicke, therefore it may be and ought to be diſſolued with a little oile of Roſes, and then it need not be feared for vlcers. Alſo ointments conſolidating (as is *Vnguentum album*) ſometime are made liquide and mixed, and ſpecially when the vlcers be nigh, or in the great guttes. Sometime in the ſtead of iuyces may cliſters be made of milke verie well for his whey portion, which doth reſtraine and conſolidate. Oftentimes both in theſe and in reſtraining clyſters, the whites of egges hard ſodden are diſſolued. And thus finiſheth the making and vſe of clyſters or *Enema*.

A Cliſter to ſcoure and cleanſe vlcers in the guttes

A clyſter conſolidating, that is, making ſound of vlcers.

CHAP. V.

Of making Syrupes.

A Syrupe is of medicines a iuyce with Sugar or hony molten therein, decoct and boyled vnto the meaſure of that Sugar. Practitioners do put a double vnderſtanding in ſirupes, that is, *ſimplex*, which is called vſuall; and *compoſitum*, which is called magiſtrall. Simples or vſuals be theſe, ſyrupes of Violets

Violets, of Roses, of Endine, of Nenuphar, of Maidendaire, of Wormewood, of Mints, *Oxymel squilliticum*, sirupe of Eupatorie, of *Epithymum*, and of *Byzantijs*. They are called simples, as well because they consist in one simple medicine, as also because they are ordained for one sickenesse and for one vse. *Syrupus compositus* which is called magistrall, is compounded of diuerse medicines being good for sundry diseases, as in example: if any man compound together sirupe of Wormewood and Stæchados, being taken in euen portions or quantity, there would come thereof a sirupe good for the stomacke, because of the Wormewood, and good for the head because of the Stæchados. A Syrupe is good and profitable to digest humours before a purgation, that they may the easier and better obey the purgation. Therefore they are vsed of many Physitions to be giuen before medicines, although we haue not read that old practitioners did obserue it, but they did commixe the digestion of humours wholly to nature. Looke the comment, *Aphorism. 9 Lib. 2.* When any man will purge the body, it behoueth to make it flowing. Truly *Hippocrates* would do thus, saying, that the concoct and digest matter ought to be healed and moued, and not the crude and raw matter. And *Galen ad Glanconem libro primo*, speaking of the cure of *Tertiana Notha*, would not haue Wormewood to be giuen till the seuenth day. Therefore it doth appeare for a truth that sirupes ought rather to be giuen for the humours left after a purgation, then for their digestion and coction. But many do obserue and vse, that humors being grosse and clammy, and viscous, may by sirupes that do attenuate, cut, and diuide, be prepared and made easie to auoiding and purging; they call this digesting of humours. Cold and cleauing humours are prepared with sirupes that be hote, cutting and scouring; as to digest rheumey matter, such as is a feauer quotidian, and to prepare it to the purging, ℞. the fiue rootes apertiue, made cleane, and tempered in vineger foure houres, ana ℥.ß. or ℥.iij. or the rinds of the fiue roots, Origan, Calamint, Hysope, Betony, and Germander, ana. M.ß. of Annise and Fennell, ana ℥.ß. of Raisins the stones picked out. ℥.iij. both the Stæchados, ana. p. j. make a decoction. In the strayning, dissolue of good honey quarts iiij. of white Sugar, ℥.iiij. make a sirupe perfectly sodden. Minister three spoonefull with double as much of water of Liquorice, or with Ptisan, or with water of Raisins or Annise. Humours that be moueable and thin, must be prepared to the auoiding and purging by sirupes that do make thicke and let the mouing, which humours if they be carried to the wayes of expulsion, or be kept and contained in the wayes and conduits by which an apt and ready expulsion may be made of them, then they may be auoided without any preparatiue. But if those humours be restrained and kept out of the places aforesaid, then they shall be rectified and remedied with cold sirupes, the making whereof doth follow.

A sirupe digesting of rheumy matter.

A sirupe against thinne and moueable humours.

℞. sirupes of Purslaine, Sorrell, Endiue, Nenuphar, of Ribes, of Barberies, of *Agresta*, of Quinces, of Roses, take of one of these or moe ℥.vj. minister it with double as much of well water sodden. There may also conueniently be made a Iulep in this wise. ℞ sirupes of Roses, Purslaine & Sorrell, ana ℥ j ß or ℥.ij. water of Roses, *Arnoglossa*, Succory, or Endiue, or Purslaine, or Sorrell, ana, ℥. ij. water sodden or burnt, specially if fluxe of the bellie be present,

A sirupe to make humors thicke.

Note. ℥. vj. make a Iulep clarified, and aromatized with ℥.ij. of Cinamon clect. Furthermore, if those humours do not make and cause fluxe of the belly, but being inflamed do begin a feauer, then neither sirupes stipticke nor waters are to be vsed, but rather cold sirupes lacking stipticity, as be sirupes of Endiue, Purslaine, Violets, of *Nymphæa* called water Lillies, of Maidenhaire. But if we do suppose that there ought to be a greater extinguishing and quenching, that the rotten matter may be driuen out the more easily, we do vse cold sharpe sirupes, as be *Syrupus acetosus simplex*, which is put in both causes, as well hote as cold: also *Oxysaccarum simplex* and *Syrupus de acetositate Citri*, and of Limons, which if the fluxe *Diarrhæa* be present, being raised and caused of such hote humours, then sirupes that be acetose and sharpe are not to be ministred, because they excoriate, rase, and slay: but sirupes of Ribes, Barberies, Quinces, and iuyce of Sorrell may be suffered and giuen, because they haue but meane sharpnesse and acetosity. But against hote humours, make potions of sirupes magistrall in this wise. ℞. Endiue that is yong, or new set, and not growne long, wash it not; *Adiantum*, Maidenhaire, Succory, Purslaine, Lettuce, Singreene, Scarioll, Plaintaine, of all, or of some of them, two or three, ana. M.ij. the foure great cold seeds, ana. ℥.iij. the roote of Succory, the roote of Sorrell, of Gramen, and Nightshade, that is, the lesse Sorrell, called *Solatrum*, ana. halfe an ounce, or ℥.iij. make a decoction, to which may be added the iuyce of the herbes afore written, cleansed so much, and halfe so much, or halfe as much more as the third part of the decoction. In one pound of the strayning dissolue Sugar Taberzet, ℥.vj. of wine of Pomegranates, ℥.j. ß. of vineger, ℥ ß make a sirupe clarified & aromatized with ℈ ij. of white Saunders, or red, or both, ana. ℈.j. But if thou wilt make the sirupe perfectly concoct and sodden, adde too Sugar, and let it be sodden to the perfection that it may be kept. The vse and ministration must be with double as much of some liquor, as water sodden, water of Liquorice, or the water of some of the herbes aforesaid distilled; yet I do not much praise and allow the vse of distilled water. But if the sirupe be not perfectly boiled (as is shewed in the first example) it must be giuen by it selfe, and without the administration of any thing else, neither shall the iuyces be put in, which should be put in, in a sirupe perfectly sodden. Like formes and vses may be made of sirupes, rubifying or digesting cold matter. Syrupe of *Epithymum*, sirupe of Fumitory, which is made two wayes: one way is of the onely decoction or iuyce of Fumitory, and then it is *Syrupus de Fumiterra simplex*: another way is according to the description of *Mesue*, and such a sirupe hath Myrobalanes, *Cassia*, and many other things: which sirupe is called compound for that cause: sirupe of Bugloss, sirupe of Borage, sirupe of Harts tongue, which openeth and looseth the stoppings of the spleene, and sirupe of Violets, because it moisteneth very much.

A sirupe for melancholie humours.

The simple medicines wherewith these sirupes are cõpounded be these: Borage and Bugloss, Fumitory, *Lupulus*, *Epithymum*, and such like that do help and aide the digestion of such an humor. Out of the aforesaid things may be made sirupes, potions, & Iuleps, decoct and boiled to the satisfying of these intentions and meanings. Oftentimes there be made sirupes laxatiue for the purging and auoiding of the matter that is rheumie and filthy, and also melancholicke

cholicke matter, when long continuing diseases be bred of them, partly to the digestion of raw matter or humours, and partly to the auoiding and purging of humours which be rotten, as in long feauers.

℞ the roote of *Apium*, Fennell and Parcely scraped and made cleane ana. ℥. iii. of Hysope, Origan and Calamint, ana M.ß. of seede of *Carthamum*, ℥ iii. of greene Polypody of the Oke, ℥.ii. of Annise, Fennell and Dill ana. ℥.i.ß. of Liquorice scraped, ℥. iii. of Raisins the stones pulled out, ℥ ß. of the three cordiall floures, ana p. i. make a decoction strained to ℔. i. or ℔.i ß. in the which infuse new trochiskes of Agaricke, ℥ i.ß. leaues of Sene cleansed, ℥.ii. after ten houres make a straining, wringing it strongly, whereto adde sirupe of Violets, *ſi rupi de Bizantijs*, & white Sugar ana. ℥.iiii. make a sirupe perfectly sodden and aromatizate with ℥ i. of Cinamon elect, and with one sirupe ☉. i. *Xyloaloes*. The dose of this sirupe by meanes of the things that are put into it, may be ℥ i.ß. which also the fourth or fifth day, may be giuen with double as much of hydromel, that is, water and hony sodden together, or *aqua Mulſa*, or of some other decoction. By like meanes may the laxatiues entring into this present sirupe be increased or diminished, by reason of the quantity making of the sirupes; for this present sirupe is ordained for 6. or 7. or more doses, therefore the forme and fashion of the proportions being kept, it may be made for 1.2.3. or moe doses. Moreouer by like reason a sirupe laxatiue is made for matter cholericke and filthy (as one would say) vitelline, the which causeth feauers hard to be eradicate and taken away.

A sirupe laxatiue against cholericke matter.

℞. the roots of *Apium*, and of Fennell cleansed, and scraped, and tempered in vineger one nights space, ana. ℥.ß. of Hysope, Maidenhaire, *Adiantum*, *Polytricum*, some call it wall-ferne, Harts tongue, Endiue, Succory, ana M.ß. or M.i. the 4. great cold seeds bruised ana ℥.ii. or ℥.iii. Raisins the stones pulled out, ℥.ß. the three cordiall floures. ana. p.i. make a decoction, in the which infuse Agaricke newly made in trochiskes, ℥ vi. the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥ i. in the strayning dissolue sirupe of Maidenhaire and Violets, ana. ℥ iii. of white Sugar, ℥. iiii. make a sirupe perfectly boiled, putting in the end of the strayning of it, ℥ ß. of Reubarbe elect infused as it ought to be, which thing after it be strayned, let it boile on a soft fire without flame or smoke, vnto the prefection of the decoction, the dose of it is, ℥.ii. or ℥ i.ß with double as much of the decoction of Endiue, and Succory, or Liquorice, or with double as much of whey made of Goates milke. This sirupe is for fiue or sixe doses. And if the first dose will not satisfie your intent, then you must dissolue somewhat therein that hath power to purge the humour that thou wouldest haue brought out: as for example, ℞. of the sirupes aforesaid, ℥ i ß. of whey made of Goates milke, ℥. iii. make a dose. And if thereof do not follow the effect that you looke for, adde thereto either of *Cassia fistula*, ℥.ß or of *Diaprunis laxatiuæ*, ℥. i. or ℥.ii. or *Diaphœnicon*, ℥. i.ß. or also some Reubarbe. You may also do the same in the example of the sirupe made to auoide rheume.

A sirupe against melancholie.

℞. of the iuyces of *Lupuli* (that is) Hops, and of Fumitory, but it is vnpleasant, of Bugloſſe, of Borage, and of sweet Apples cleansed, ana. ℥.ii. or iii. let them be twise cleansed, either by decoction & clarifying, or by residence of greene *cholie*. Polypody of the Oke, ℥.ii or iii. of fat Tamarinds, ℥.i. *Epithymum Cretenſis* put

in the end of the decoction, ℥. ij. of *Adiantum*. Harts tongue, and the three cordiall floures ana. p. i. make a decoction strained to quarts iii in the which infuse the leaues of Sene made cleane ℥ iii. make a straining, and mixe it with the aforesaid iuyces: afterward adde thereto sirupe of Violets, ℥ vi. sirupes of Bugloſſe, and Sugar, Taberzet, ana. ℥ iii. make a sirupe perfectly sodden, and Aromatizate with ℥. i. of Cinamon, and ℈ i. of white Ginger scraped. The dose is two ounces with water of Bugloſſe, or Hops, or Fumitory, or whey made of milke. And thus much of making sirupes.

CHAP. VI.

Of making Iuleps.

A Iulep doth not much differ from a sirupe, but that it is leſſe boiled then a sirupe is, and because also it is made without the permixtion of any other decoction with it, as sirupes are wont to haue when they are made. Iuleps are made either of water of infusion or distillation, or else of the iuyce of some simple medicine, as thus. ℞. of the water of infusion of Roſes, or the water of infusion of Violets, ℥. v. Sugar, ℥. iiii. boile it easily and make a Iulep: minister it with twise or thrise as much of sodden water made cold againe. Or thus. ℞. water of Roſes, ℥. viii. of Sugar ℥. iiii. boile them easily and make a Iulep. Or thus. ℞. the iuyce of Roſes, or the iuyce of Violets, ℥. vi. Sugar, ℥. iiii. boile them easily and make a Iulep. Likewise Iuleps may be made of other things that do either make warme or hote, or that do open and loose, or that do restraine and bind. But yet Physitions commonly do call a sirupe, dissolued in sodden water, a Iulep: saying, ℞. sirupe of Roſes, and the sirupe of Violets, or sirupe of Maidenhaire, or of any other sirupe, ℥. iii. of sodden water ℔. ß. mixe them together and make a Iulep.

CHAP. VII.

Of Dolis, siue Potio.

Dolis, otherwise called *Potus* or *Potio*, is a medicine laxatiue, dissolued in some kind of liquor, and giuen in drinke. There be of this many differences, because of the diuersitie of humours that they voide and purge. The simple medicines do purge and bring forth rhume or fleame, as be these, *Agaricke*, *Turbith*, *Carthamus*, *Colocynthis*, and other often sought out by *Mesua*. The compounds be *Diaphœnicon*, *in forma opiatæ*, *Diacarthami* in the forme of lozenges, *Electuarium de Citro*, *Electuarium Indum maius & minus*, *Benedicta*, and *Hiera simplex*, *Hiera compoſita*, and such like. But these be compounded not that they auoide onely one humour alone, but being mixed with another humor, as choler mixt with fleame or melancholy. Medicines are ministred in diuerse formes and fashions: as first in the forme of a potion, for one onely dose, or for one time, in the forme of a bole, whereof shall be spoken hereafter; in the forme of an Electuarie liquide, as *Opiatæ*: whole in forme, as lozenges, in the forme of sirups of Iuleps, also in the forme of powder and pils. ℞. *Diaphœnicon*, ℥. ß. or ℥. vi. if the sicke be strong, dissolue it with the water of the decoction of Liquorice, Raisins and Anniſe, as much as sufficeth. Make a dose with sirupe of Violets, ℥. vi. or ℥. i. or dissolue it with common strayning,

The forme of a potion.

ning, and make a dose, or dissolue it with Hydromel, or dissolue it with certain distilled waters, as waters of Hops, Bugloss, Succory, or such like; or dissolue it with the decoction or broth of a Chicken, or with the whey of milke, or thus: ℞ the three cordiall flowers, ana one handfull, of Proines Damascene, *Iuiubarum* and *Sebestien*, ana foure in number, Liquorice scraped, ʒ.i. ß Annise ʒ.i. make a decoction strained for one dose: in the which dissolue *Diaphœnicon*, ʒ. ß. or ʒ.vi. sirupe of Violets, ʒ.i. and make a dose. If you will adde to it another Electuarie laxatiue, take of one a quantity away, and adde to as much of another, as where it is said, take of *Diaphœnicon*, ʒ.vi. you may say take of *Diaphœnicon* and *Carthamum*, ana. three drams, and so likewise of other.

℞ Raisins the stones pulled out, ʒ ß. the seed of *Carthamum* and Polypody of the Oke, ana. ʒ ß. or ʒ.vi. of Annise, Fennell, and Liquorice scraped, ana ʒ. i. ß. leaues of Hysope, ʒ.i. make a decoction, in the which infuse Agarick newly trochiscate, ʒ i or ϑ. iiii. or ʒ. i. ß. In the straining dissolue *Diacarthamum*, or *Diaphœnicon* or *Benedicta*, ʒ. iiii. or ʒ. ß. sirupe of Violets, ʒ.i. and make a dose. These things auoid choler: iuyce of Roses, Violets, Tamarindes, Manna, *Diagredion*, that is, Scammony prepared, *Psillium*, Reubarbe and Myrobalanes. *Cassia fistula* purgeth as well choler as rhume: iuyce of Roses and Ireos do bring forth thin choler and yellow water. Compounds to auoid choler are these. *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, *Diaprunis laxatiuum*, *Diaprunis simplex*, trochiskes of Violets, which be seldome in vse.

The forme of a potion or dose, whose decoction doth auoid cartaine rheume and fleame.

Simples to auoid choler.

Compounds.

℞ of fat Tamarinds, ʒ.i. the three cordiall floures, ana p. ß. Liquorice scraped, ʒ i. ß. of Proines Damascene, number vi. make a decoction in a litle quantity of water, in the which let the Tamarinds be strongly wrung out. In the straying dissolue *Cassia fistula* that is new, ʒ.j or ʒ. x. make a dose. In the like decoction you may dissolue, ʒ. ß. or ʒ.vj of *Diaprunis simplex*, with ʒ j ß or ʒ.ii. of *Diaprunis* laxatiue. If it be feared that *Diagredion* will do hurt, and if the sicke be rich, in the stead of *Diaprunis* laxatiue may be dissolued, ʒ.i. or ϑ. iiii. or ʒ. i. ß. of Reubarbe. Take heed and note, that such a potion is good in cholericke feauers, and in these feauers in which the Frensie is feared; and truly it is excellent good, for by it is eschued the auersion, and also the refrigeration and the cooling. In stead of this present decoction and colature, medicines laxatiue may be dissolued in a common decoction, or with water of fruits, or with Hydromel, or with waters distilled either with Endiue, Succory, Hops, or with the broth of a Chicken, or with the whey of milke. ℞. Raisins the stones picked out, ʒ. iij. Liquorice scraped, and Annise seedes, ana ʒ.j. Proynes Damascene, in number vj. Tamarinds ʒ. ß. the three cordiall floures, Succory, yong set Endiue, ana. M. j. make a decoction boyled for one dose, in the which dissolue new *Cassia fistula* ʒ.j. or ʒ.vj. after the straining, infuse ʒ.j. or ϑ.iij. or ʒ i ß of Rewbarbe elect as it ought to be, of sirupe of Violets, ʒ. ß or ʒ.j. make a dose. Giue in the morning before dinner 5. or 6. houres, on that day he is leaft afflicted. If choler be mixed with fleame, by reason of that mixture, let such things as do loosen choler, and such things as dissolue rheume be mixed together. Spikenard which is wont alwayes to be ioyned with Reubarbe, is vnpleasant to the belly, for it looseneth oppilations and stoppings vehemently. Also it prouoketh vomit, and in women with child

The forme of a potion loosing and resoluing choler.

The forme of a common dose, in the beginning of cholericke feauers, especially in tertian feuers.

it prouoketh menſtruis ſtrongly. Therefore many do thinke that it ought not to be mixed with Reubarbe in medicines that are giuen to women with child, or to thoſe which be apt to vomite. For that cauſe if it be mixed, 3. or 4. graines are ſufficient for ℥.j of Reubarbe. For delicate perſons which do abhorre all medicines, make a doſe vnder the forme of a ſirupe for two or three times, or for one doſe after this ſort, ſpecially for Tertians exquiſite and dainty. ℞. Endiue yong ſet, and Succorie, ana. M.ß. the three cordiall floures, ana. p.ß. Liquorice ſcraped, ℥j ß. Proynes Damaſcene vj. in number, fat Tamarinds, ℥.vj. Anniſe, ℥ ß. make a decoction boiled to ℥ij. or elſe you may make a decoction for one doſe, in which diſſolue ſirupe of Violers, and Endiue, ana. ℥ vj. or ℥ ß. of white Sugar, ℥. j. the wringing and ſtraining of ℥. ij. of Reubarbe elect, infuſed as it ought to be without Spikenard, make a long ſirupe, that is as it were in the forme of an *Apozema* (which is a decoction ſo called of the Greekes, and vſed of them in ſtead of our ſirupes. Let it be boiled vpon the coales without any ſmoake long time together, wringing the Reubarbe ſtrongly, being bound in a peece of linnen cloth, clarifie it, and aromatizate it, and make a doſe of ℥. j. ß. it may be multiplyed for two or three doſes (the proportion of all being kept and obſerued.) But if you will make a ſirupe to laſt long, ſeeth it to the perfection, and of that ſirupe miniſter, ℥ j. ß. or ℥. ij. with whey of milke, or with the decoction that ſerueth for thy purpoſe. Alſo you may adde ſome Sene in the infuſion, eſpecially if you thinke choler aduſt doth reigne, or if you deſire a more full and quicke effect of the medicine: ℞. of young ſet Endiue, of Succorie of *Adiantum*, and of Harts-tongue ana. M.j. the foure great cold ſeeds, ana. ℥.iij. the ſeed of *Carthamum*, ℥ j.ß. Polypodie of the Oke, ℥.ij. fat Tamarinds, ℥.j. ß ſeede of Endiue, Scarioll and Liquorice ſcraped, ana. ℥. ij. of Raiſins the ſtones plucked out, ℥.ij. Proynes Damaſcene 12. in number, the three cordiall floures, ana. p.j. make a decoction of ℔.i. or ℥. viii. in the which infuſe the leaues of Sene cleanſed, ℥.i ß. Agaricke newly trochiſcate, ℥.i. In the ſtraining of the decoction diſſolue ſirupe of Violets, and Maidenhaire ſirupe, ana. ℥.iii. white Sugar, ℥.ii. make a ſirupe boiled vpon a lent fire, without ſmoke, putting vnto it the ſtraining of, ℥.vi. of Reubarbe elect, infuſe as it ought to be, make a ſirupe perfectly boiled and aromatizate with, ℥.ß. of Cinamon, & ℈ ii of Red Saunders, reſerue it in an earthen or glaſen veſſell. The doſe of the aforeſaid ſirupe ſhall be the fourth part of it (that is to ſay, ℥.ii.) the which may be diſſolued with whey of Goats milk, or water of the decoction of the common colature, or with the waters of the decoctions of diſtillations of Succory or Endiue. But *Igorreus* doth not allow diſtilled waters. And if the aforeſaid doſes do not ſufficiently moue the belly & cauſe it to be ſoluble enough, an infuſion may conueniently be added to the ſecond doſe, ℈ ii. or ℥.i. of Reubarbe elect, or ſome *Diaprunis laxatiue*, or *Electuarium de ſucco Roſarum*, as in example. ℞. of the aforeſaid ſirupe, ℥. ii. the ſtraining of two ſcruples of Reubarbe elect, or *Diaprunis laxatiue*, ℥.i. ℥. or ℥. ii. of whey made of milke, ℥ ii. or as much as is ſufficient, and make a doſe. It is to be noted that the aforeſaid ſirupe ought rather to be giuen and miniſtred to thoſe that haue *Tertianæ Nothæ* (that is, baſtardly Tertian feauers) rather then to thoſe that haue feauers exquiſite, dainty, and lawfull; for thoſe be of fewer

A doſe vnder the forme of a ſirupe for delicate folke.

A doſe againſt baſtardly feauers, eſpecially Tertians.

fewer fits, and be ended in a ſhort time. The other be long and of more fits, ſo that they remaine many times and often from one Equinoctiall to another. To this alſo the Tertians that be exquiſite and pure do come, and are cauſed of ſincere and good choler: and the feauers *Nothæ* and baſtardly do come of filthy and vile choler. Here note alſo that *Carthamus* and *Agaricke* which do auoid and purge rheume, the leaues of Sene which do purge melancholy, and alſo Rewbarbe, which do purge choler, may be put together to the aforeſaid ſirupe, whereby the matter that cauſeth feauers *Nothæ* of long continuance, is auoided and purged. Alſo note, that in one day, or in the third or fourth day, one doſe ought to be giuen, but more dayes muſt be let paſſe according to the doctrine of *Auicen de Cura Tertianarum Notharum*. Theſe do purge melancholy: Hops, Fumitory, *Epithymum Cretenſis*, Polypodie of the Oke, the leaues of Sene, *lapis Lazuli*, *Myrobalani nigri* or *Indi*, *lapis Armenus*, blacke Hellebore, and a thouſand other are to be ſoſt out of *Meſue*. The compounds that purge melancholy be *Catholicon* or *Diacatholicon*, *Diaſena*, *Cathartícon imperiale*, *Hiera Ruffi*, *Confectio Hamech*, *Pilulæ de Fumitoria*, Pils of *lapis Lazulus*, pils of the fiue kinds of Myrobalanes, of *Epithymum*, of Hellebore pils; whereof the doſe is ℥ j. We can or do ſeldome vſe the other compound medicines, for the bitterneſſe that they haue in taſte: All Electuaries (except *Catholicon*) be euill in taſting, and therefore they are confected, & made in forme of potiõs. ℞. Fumitory & the tops of Hops, ana M. j. ß. the three cordial flouers, ana. p. j. of Raiſins the ſtones picked out, ℥ iij. or ℥ ß of greene Polypodie of the Oke, ℥ iij. of *Cuſcuta*, & *Epithymum*, ana. ℥ iij. of Anniſe and Liquorice ſcraped, ana, ℥ j. ſ. make a decoction, in which infuſe the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥ ij. or ℥ iij. In the ſtraining of the decoction diſſolue, *Diacatholicon*, ℥ j. or ℥ x. ſirupe made of Violets, ℥ j. make a doſe. In this doſe ſirupe of Violets, and the cordiall floures are put in, that they may temperate the drineſſe of Sene and *Epithymum*. If we will more diligently purge melancholie we do put in *Hierapicra Ruffi*, whoſe doſe is, ℥ ß. in which Hellebore is cured, which is not in vſe at Paris. Or elſe take *confectio Hamech*, ℥ ß. the which is exceeding bitter for the plenty of *Coloquentida* that is therein. Remember and note, that medicines looſing and purging choler, or rather melancholy, may conueniently be diſſolued with the whey of Goates milke, or with the water of the decoction or infuſion of the things aforeſaid, putting in the doſe before written, as in example. ℞. of all thoſe or of part of thoſe good things which be written in the doſe aforeſaid, afterward make a decoction in the whey of Goates milke, and in the decoction infuſe the leaues of Sene, &c. And with ſome of the aforeſaid Electuaries confect and make a doſe according to the nature and ſtrength of the ſicke perſon: or thus. ℞. the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥ iij. infuſe them in the whey of Goates milke all one night, and in ſtraining of the decoction diſſolue *Catholicon*, ℥ j. or ℥ x. or ℥ j. ß. and make a potion. Note that *Epithymum* doth ſuſtaine and maintaine a decoction: and therefore we may write thus, ℞. *Epithymum Cretenſis*, ℥ j. let it boile with whey of Goates milke, afterwad ſtraine it, and wring it out ſtrongly, and with ℥ j. of ſirupes of Violets make a doſe, which if it ſeeme not to be ſufficient, adde to it ſome *Catholicon*. *Galen* doth counſell to take the potion,

Simples to purge melancholy humour

The forme of melancholie.

13. *Therapeut.* in which place he considereth, that Cankers, and all melancholike diseases ought to be taken heed of before hand, and to be eschued: but he putteth in but ℥ iiij. which drams do shew to be of no effect, because, (as I thinke) we haue not the good *Epithymum*, and therefore we take an ounce for the quantity, whereby the working of it may be the quicker and the better. All others do follow this sentence, which in their bookes of practises or abridgements haue remembred this against the *Elephantia*, which is commonly called the Leprie, and is now made for the cure of *Elephantiasis*. Many do thinke and iudge that the decoction of an old cocke is verie good and wholesome for diseases growne and begun, as well of melancholy, as also of rheume and fleame. The chiefe vse of it is against the paines of the cholike, caused of rheume, and partly of winde, and also against diseases of the breast, as difficulty in breathing, and moreouer against diseases of the ioynts caused of cold matter. It is prepared and made against the cholicke, caused partly of rheume, and partly of ventosity and wind. It is thus as followeth. ℞. of Hysope, Calamint, ana. M.j. Raisins the stones picked out, ℥ j. ß. of Annise, Fennell, and *Carui*, ana. ℥. vj. of the seed of *Carthamum*. ℥. ij of greene Polypodie of the Oke, ℥. j. the three cordiall floures, ana. p. j of the floures of Cammomill, p. ß. and make a decoction, putting altogether into the belly of an old Cocke, prepared as it ought to be; infuse in the end of the decoction, the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥. ij. ß. of Agaricke newly troschiscate, ℥. x. make a decoction of two pound, and reserue it to your vse. ℞. of the aforesaid decoction, ℥. iiij. sirupe of Violets, ℥ j. ß make a dose. Note that if the sicke person be strong and stubburne, there may be put in the dissoluing some *Diaphœnicon*, as ℥. j ß. or ℥. ij. or as much *Benedicta*. Take heed also, for Agaricke (as many do thinke and iudge) is suspected, and thought to be hurtfull to those that haue the cholicke; because that if the substance of it be throwne in with a clister, the lightnesse of his substance cleauing to the guttes, doth pricke them and grieue them, and doth prouoke a fluxe also, and oftentimes doth cause one to desire to sit long at the siege, because that it hath vertue and power to draw downe humours from the farre parts of the body; and therefore *Democritus* (as *Mesua* doth witnesse) called it *Medicinam familiæ*, the medicine of his familie or houshold. Therefore it may not well be giuen to those that haue paine in the bowels, because it maketh a fluxe that would not be vnlesse that caused, and therefore I counsell in such cases, to take away Agaricke. Furthermore note, that Cammomill may aptly and well be put into those decoctions, although the vse of it is rare, and seldome seene amongst Physitions, yet it is manifest, that the onely decoction of it in the broth of a Chicken or Capon, is excellent profitable against all inward griefes, and speciall for those which haue the Cholicke and the Frensie (as many haue proued it, to the great preseruation of their health.) The water of the distillation of Cammomill is ministred for the same purpose, but yet the decoction thereof is of more and better effect then the distillation of it. The bitternesse of the decoction may be mitigated with Sugar, if it be for dilicate persons. Also the decoction of a Cocke may conueniently be giuen for diseases in the breast and of *Dyspneas*, if medicines pectorall be decoct with it; as, ℞ of Hysope, of *Enula Campana*, of

The decoction of an old Cocke

of each the third part of a handfull, of Sauory the fourth part of a handfull, of horſehoofe, called *Vngula caballina*, which is an herbe called of ſome, litle Clote, whereof you may take a good handfull: ſeed of *Carthamum*, and greene Polypodie of the Oke, ana. ℥.ij. of Annice and Licorice ſcraped, ana. ℥ ß. roots of Ireos, and rootes of *Enula*, ana ℥.iij. or ℥ ß of fat Figs not putrified foure or fiue in number, of fat Dates, the skins and ſtones taken away, foure in number, of Iuiubes and Sebeſten, ana. twelue in number, of Raiſins the ſtones picked out, ℥.j. the three cordiall floures, ana. p j. make a decoction in the belly of an old Cocke that is hunted, prepared and dreſſed as it ought to be, putting into it at the end, of Agaricke and of the leaues of Sene, as much as you thinke will be ſufficient for your purpoſe: but note, that here Agaricke may conueniently be vſed and miniſtred. There are other medicines alſo which be made againſt all ſuperfluities in other formes, that is to ſay, in the forme of liquide Electuaries, that is, *ad formam Opiatæ*: or in forme whole, that is, like an Electuarie made in lozenges or in tables.

CHAP. VIII.

Of making Bolus.

BOLVS in Engliſh is called a morſell. It is a medicine laxatiue, in forme and faſhion it is meanely whole, and it is ſwallowed by little gobbets. It is made of diuerſe things, by reaſon of auoiding and purging diuerſe humours: but the plaineſt and ſimpleſt way of making it, is of *Medulla, Caſſia fiſtula*, new drawne out of a cane or reede, fiue drammes or an ounce, of Sugar ſo much as ſufficeth, and make a bole. But if it be feared that *Caſſia* will do hurt, as if great paine be in the bowels, whereby many times it prouoketh ſwounding, as ſome do that haue but weake and tender bowels: to ſuch *Caſſia* is not to be miniſtred, neither by bole nor by cliſters. And for that cauſe the ſicke perſon muſt be asked how he feeleth himſelfe before *Caſſia* be miniſtred vnto him. Truly many authors do thinke, that this hurt which *Caſſia* may bring, may be taken away, if there be added to it ſome graines of Barberies, or Sugar roſet: for they are of this mind, that through their ſtipticitie the belly and the bowels are ſtrengthened, and the paine impedite and letted, which *Caſſia* doth cauſe by his clammineſſe and mollifying ſoftneſſe. There be others that do mixe ſome laxatiue with *Caſſia*, that it may quicken the ſlowneſſe of his operation, & that it deſcending, may the ſooner ſlide away & be auoided. Boles chiefly are thus ordained and made, being very profitable remedies againſt the diſeaſes of the reynes ℞ *Medulla Caſſiæ fiſtulæ* dewly drawne, ℥.j. or ℥.x. the graines, that is, the kernels, of Barberies, ℈ß and with Sugar roſet, make a bole. Others do adde, ℈.ij or ℥.j. or ℥ ij. of *Diaprunis laxatiuæ*, or *Electuarium de ſucco Roſarum*: as in example following. ℞. *Medulla Caſſiæ fiſtulæ* newly drawne, ℥.vj. of *Diaprunis laxatiuæ*, ℥.ij. of Sugar roſet tabulate as much as ſufficeth, make a bole. Note that many, becauſe of the ventoſity which *Caſſia* doth engender in the bowels, they adde to the bole powder of Aniſe, ℈.j. or ℥.ß. which auaileth much. ℞. *Caſſiæ fiſtulæ* newly drawne out of a cane or reed, ℥ iij. or ℥.i. the ſoft matter of fat *Tamarindes*, ℥.i.ß of choſen Rewbarbe, ℥ ß. or ℈ ii. or ℥.i. Sugar as much as ſufficeth, make a bole. If the ſicke perſon be *choler*. *The forme of a bole purging*

poore, in ſtead of Rewbarbe, make a bole with ℥.ß. or ℥.vj. of *Caſſia*, and ℥.ij. of *Diapruuis laxatiuæ*, and with Sugar. ℞. *Catholicon*, ℥.j. or ℥.x. and with white Sugar make a bole: or thus ℞ *Catholicon*, ℥.ß. or ℥.vj. of *Confectio Hamech*, ℥.j. or ℥.j.ß. and with Sugar make a bole.

The forme of a doſe againſt melancholy.

CHAP. IX.

Of making Pils.

PILLES are miniſtred for the auoiding of euery humour: viz. againſt rheume or fleame reigning, and alſo againſt *cholera notha*, which is vile and filthy choler hauing dominion in man. *Pilulæ Aggregatiuæ* after the deſcription of *Meſua de Agarico, de Rhubarbaro; Stomachicæ de Hiera ſimplici, de Hiera compoſita* which reſpecteth the head; *Coccie* or *Cocchiæ*, which are ſo called of *Granis Cocci*, and not of the head, as ſome thinke; *Pilulæ aureæ Elephanginæ, Sine quibus, de Hermodactylis maior & minor, de Serapina, de Sarcolla:* Truly the foure kinds of pils laſt receited, are moſt appropriate and agreeing againſt corrupt and ſtinking humours: of the which vertue alſo be *Arthriticæ maiores & minores* when rheume reigneth, but theſe when choler reigneth in the diſeaſes of the ioynts: then alſo the pils of *Hermodactylis maior* and *minor* are dedicated and miniſtred. Pils that do onely void pure choler, and purge it, there are a thouſand to be ſouud, but many of them haue more reſpect to the auoiding of filthie and baſtardly choler, or that which is greatly mixed with rheume as *Pilulæ de Rheubarbaro, de Hiera ſimplici, Aggregatiuæ, de Agarico, Ante cibum, Imperiales.* In a manner the chiefe doſe of pils is one dramme and a halfe, of which make nine pils, and with ſome conuenient ſirupe, as ſirupe of Endiue, ſirupe of Maidenhaire, ſirupe of *Stachados*, or alſo with *Oxymel* or *Hydromel*, or with ſome other liquor.

CHAP. X.

Of making Apozema.

AN *Apozema* is a decoction of medicines gently made for the concoction and digeſtion of humours, or for preparation of them, and ſometime for euacuation and purging. It may be made diuerſe, and for diuerſe intents and purpoſes: as to make hoſe and to make cold, to make moiſt, and to make drie, to looſen and open, to reſtraine and bind, to attenuate and make thinne, to make groſſe and thicke, to prouoke menſtruis and vrine. Of medicines particular and conuenient, and of their rootes, fruites, & ſeedes (and other, as it ſhall ſeeme meete and expedient for your purpoſe.) In effect an *Apozema* doth not differ from a ſirupe, but in boiling; for ſirupes are wont to be boyled long, and to the perfection, but an *Apozema* is boyled eaſily and little. Therefore, ſirupes may be long kept, and Apozemes may be kept but a few daies. ℞. of Succory, Endiue, *Cuſcuta* and *Adiantum*, ana. M.ß. of the rootes of Sorrell, and of Gramen, ana ℥.ß. the foure great cold ſeedes made cleane, ana. ℥.j. of the three cordiall flowers, ana. p.j. make a decoction of ℔.ß. In the ſtraining diſſolue ſirupes of Violets, of *Syrupus aſetoſus*, or ſirupes of Limons, or alſo white Sugar. ℥.iij. and make an *Apozema*, and clarifie it, and aromatizate it with ℈.ij. or ℥.j of Cinamon elect for two doſes, likewiſe *Apozema* may be made againſt

The forme of an Apozeme againſt cholericke humours.

other

other humors, the matter and effect whereof must be sought out of the head of the sirupes. Note that in the confection and making of *Apozema*, for ℥.ii or at the most for ℥.iii of the decoction it is sufficient to adde, ℥.i. of Sugar or sirupe. Also there be made Apozemes laxatiue, as there be sirupes laxatiue, adding to laxatiue things in that decoction, or infusing them in it after the decoction is made. Looke in the title of sirupes for the example, for they be like them (this onely excepted as we said before) that an *Apozema* after the dissoluing of the Sugar or sirupe in it, ought not to be boiled any longer.

CHAP. XI.

Of making Mulsio.

MVLSIO is made of seeds cleansed, or of fruites, or of both sometime, to quench the thirst, and the inflammation of the breast and lungs, and against diseases of the reines and the bladder, or against *Ischuria*, that is, retention and withholding of vrine, and of the strangurie, that is, the voyding of humours by causing of vrine to issue out by drops with burning in the yard. ℞. of the 4. great cold seeds new and cleare, ana. ℥.iii. or ℥ ß of sweete Almonds blanched in cold water, ℥. i. beate all together in a stone mortar with wel-water first sodden, and make a decoction of ℔.i. and reserue it and keepe it in a glasen vessell. The aforesaid *Mulsio* is good against the burning of the vrine, or the strangurie, if ℥ iiii. or vi be giuen in the morning 3. or. 4. houres before dinner, and 2. or 3. houres before supper, the same quantity of the premisses, or a little lesse, with one Lozenge of *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, in which are put in the aforesaid seeds, and Gums, and many other things. But if in the aforesaid cases we thinke that there be greater need of infrigidation and cooling, mixe with your *Mulsio* the seeds of Purslaine, of Lettuce, and white Poppie. But in the diseases of the breast, adde too new Pine apples, sweet Almonds, & fresh Figges, that be not puttified, with one Lozenge of *Electuarium Diairis simplicis*, or *Diairis Solomonis*, let it be ministred straight way without delay. Also with the aforesaid *Mulsio*, there may conueniently be mixed some quantity of Sugar, or some sirupe apt and meete for the purpose (as *Raellius* was wont to make against the filthie matter, and corrupt bloud in the vrine of a man:) as thus. ℞. the seed of white Poppie and the foure great cold seedes of sweet Almonds, ana ℥ ß. stampe all these in a mortar with as much water of the decoction of Liquorice as sufficeth. In the straining dissolue the sirupe of Violets, of Maidenhaire, and of Myrtles, ana. ℥.i. make a *Mulsio* for two times, and let the grieued person take it in the morning foure houres before dinner.

The forme of Mulsio.

CHAP. XII.

Of making Powders.

A POVYDER is made of seeds, roots, and minerals, powdred and beaten finely, and Sugar put to them that they may be the more pleasant. Powders be ministred for many causes and intents, whereof their most common ministration is after meate to helpe digestion, or to stop and keepe downe vapors which ascend and are caried vp into the braine, or else for both causes,

A powder to help digestion.

as it often chanceth. ℞. the seedes of Annise, and Fennell, ana ℥ j. the seede of Citron, Cinamon, Liquorice, and Roses, ana. one scruple, of chosen Pearles and the scraping of Yuorie, ana. ℥. ß. of Sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a fine powder, whereof minister after meate one spoonefull: and looke what powder is so made to stop and keepe downe vapours, euen the same is good to helpe digestion, as is this that followeth. ℞. Coriander prepared, ℥. j ß. the scraping of Yuorie, red Corall, the horne of a Hart burned, ana ℈. j of Cinamon ℈ ß. of Sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a powder, which may be giuen after meate. Also they are good for many other things, as for wormes in children, for binding in the belly, and for strength, and against the plague coming of the owne proper matter. These powders are to be ministred before meate, some alone, some with wine or vpon tostes of bread wet in wine. Sometime they are giuen for the corroboration and strengthening of all vertues, in malignant feauers, and in great imbecillitie and weakenesse of strength. ℞. the scraping of an Vnicornes horne graines 4 5. or 6. the scraping of Yuory, of chosen Pearles, and of Harts horne, ana. gr. 6. seed of Citron, and *Carduus Benedictus*, ana gran. 4. and make a fine powder, which may be giuen with conuenient liquor, as with white wine, distillation restoratiue, water of Scabious, of Buglosse, or of some other like. And such powders for the most part are ministred about midnight, or early in the morning. There may also be made powders laxatiue, as is Diasene, and Diaturbith, and the powder of *Electuarium Diacarthami*, to the which ought to be added three times, or foure times as much Sugar; and they may be ministred being dissolued in the decoction of a Chicken, or of Liquorice, or of Ptisan. But yet these powders are seldome vsed among practitioners.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Electuaries, and Conserues: of Lozenges, and Manus Christi.

AN Electuary is ordained and made two wayes, that is, either liquide, as in *Forma Opiatæ*, or whole, as in tables of lozenges; or in fashion foure square and long, which they call *Manus Christi*. Electuaries truly are ministred to corroborate and strengthen, and for that cause they be called *Ionica*, as affoording strength to the members, that is to say, they roborate and strengthen the vertues naturall, vitall, and animall. If they be confect and made to strengthen the naturall faculties and vertues, then they must be administred to a fasting stomacke. If the vertue digestiue be weake through coldnesse, minister them after meate. But if any matter arise through moistnesse, then minister one houre or two before meate, that they may alter the temperature, and drie vp the vnwholesome substance. But if the vertue vitall requireth strengthening, you may minister them very well in a manner at all houres; but if you intend to strengthen the vertue animall, you may conueniently minister in the houre of sleepe or about midnight. The formes of Electuaries are in this order as followeth, and first, of a liquide Electuary which is profitable to strengthen the naturall vertue when the substance of the belly is made feeble by coldnesse and moistnes, ℞. of the powder of *Electuarium Aromatici maioris* (which *Gabriel* describeth)

An Electuary strengthening the naturall vertue.

scribeth) ℥.ij. powder of *Electuariũ aromaticũ Diacalamintĥi*, ℥.j. of Diatrion piperion, ℈.ij. of *Conserua Anthos*, that is, of flowers of Rosemary, & of Roses, ana. ℥ ß. of Sugar taberzet, ℥.j ß. of sirupe of Mints as much as sufficeth, make a liquid Electuary in *forma Opiatæ*, and minister it before dinner or breakfast an houre or an houre an halfe, or two houres: the dose is, ℥ ß. or rather ℥.ij. *Electuarium aromaticum rosatum* being ministred fasting, taketh away all corrupt and rotten humidities, and being ministred after meate, it strengtheneth the vertue digestiue. Now followeth the forme of a whole or hard Electuarie made in Lozenges, or fashioned like *Manus Christi*, against hote distemper of the liuer, and against obstructions of the same, as thus, ℞. of the powder of *Tria Sandolorum*, ℥. ij. the powder of *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ℥. j. of conserues of Succory and Roses, ana. ℥.j. ß. of Sugar taberzet or white Sugar dissolued in water of Succory, or Endiue, as much as sufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozēges of the weight of ℥.ij. or ℥ ij ß or ℥ iij minister one before meate. Many times conserues are not put in, but onely powders. The Apothecaries are wont for euery draghme of powder, to put to ℥ j of Sugar. But if you will make the Electuarie more strong, you may well take a draghme and a halfe of powder, for ℥.j. of Sugar. If the stomacke be troubled with the presence of melancholy abounding and flowing to it, either through the vice of the liuer that multiplyeth it, or by diseases of the spleene, as be stoppings which hinder the receipt thereof: then make an hard Electuarie, or in *forma Opiatæ*, with things following, as in example. ℞. of the powder of *Electuarium lætificans Galeni*, ℥. iij. the powder of *Electuarium Diamargariton calidum*, ℥ j. the powders of the Electuaries of *Aromatibus*, or of *Gemmis*, or *Diamoschi dulcis*, or *Diambræ* may be put in, seeing that they haue the same vertue: of conserues of Bugloss, and Borage, and Violets, ana. ℥ j ß. the barke of Citron seasoned, ℥ j. of as much white Sugar dissolued in water of Bugloss or Borage, as sufficeth; make an Electuary in Lozenges, or in little gobbets, or like *Manus Christi*, in weight ℥.iij. or ℥. ß. And if you will make it in the forme of a liquide Electuary, put to it twise or thrise as much more of the conserues, and some powder of white Sugar, or Sugar rosate, that is to say ℥.ij. as is shewed in the example aforesaid, with some sirupe hauing respect to the melancholicke humour; as is sirupe of Bugloss, or Borage, of Roses, of Harts tong, of *Epithymum*, of Fumitory, of which adde to as much as sufficeth: my meaning is, that it may be in a liquide forme.

An Electuary against hote distemper of the liuer.

An Electuary against melancholy.

An Electuary for the strong stopping of the liuer or the spleene, wherein there is danger of the Dropsie, or in the breeding of *Cachexia*, that is, a spice of consumption: such an Electuarie (I say) is made of the powders of the Electuaries, *Diagalangæ*, *Diacucumeris*, *Diacapparis*, *Dialaccæ*, and of conserues; which if you will commixe together, conserues of Succory may conueniently be mixed with them. Note also that Electuaries be made of Trochiskes, or of powder of Trochiskes, hauing respect to the disease, as in a hote cause take *Trochisci Diarrhodon*, Trochiskes of *Carolus*, Trochiskes of Bolearmoniacke, of *Terra sigillata* (specially if we would restraine or bind) Trochiskes of *Carabe*, if we would stop the fluxe of bloud. But if we would open or loosen the obstructions of the liuer or spleene, we must bring this to passe with Trochiskes of Rewbarbe, or of *Capparis*. Electuaries respecting the vertue vitall, if it be aggrieued

with cold, may be made of *Electuarium Diambræ, Diamuſci dulcis, Electuariũ de Gemmis*, and *Aromaticum nardinum, Aromaticum muſcatum, Aromaticum Roſatum maioris Gabrielis, Lætificans Galeni & Raſis, Electuarium Conciliatoris*, or Alkermes confection and making. Conſerues for the ſame intent be theſe: Conſerues of Roſes, Bubloſſe, Borage, Anthos, barkes of Citron, Ginger condite, Orenges condite, and other of that ſort. If the vertue vitall be wearied, and laboureth of heat, take the Electuarie *Roſata nouella*, *Electuarium trium Sandalorum*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*, vſe them often. Theſe be the conſerues that be good, conſerues of Roſes, of Violets, of Bugloſſe, and of Borage, and alſo of *Nymphæa* or *Nenuphar*, that is, water Lillies. If the cough be preſent, and if the humour contained in the breaſt be hote, flowing and thinne, if you will cauſe it to auoid and come forth, miniſter *Diatragacanthum frigidum*. if the humour be clammiſh and thicke, miniſter *Diatragacanthum calidum*, and *Diairis ſimplex*, or *Diairis Salomonis*. And if there be ſuſpition of venimous ſubſtance, then with the powders of Electuaries cold or hote, which do reſiſt poyſon, we do commixe Maces, and Muske, *Zedoaria*, Saffron, Cinamon, and *Xyloaloes* in cold cauſes. But in hote cauſes there may conueniently be mixed Pearles, Coral, Chriſtal, Roſes and *Camphora*. In cauſes mingled one with another, either hote or cold, by a certaine propertie, theſe do coroborate and ſtrengthen and defend, Pearles, ſeede of Citron, roote of Tormentill, *Tunici* and *Dictamus*, the bone of the Harts heart one in number, or if you will weigh it, ℈ j. or ʒ. ß. as in this example following againſt a peſtilentiall feauer. ℞ the powder of the Electuarie of *Diamargariton frigidum*. ʒ j ß. or white ſhining Perales elect and powdred in a marble mortar, ℈ j. of *Camphora* grain. ij. or elſe Trochiskes of *Camphora*. ℈. j or ℈. ß. the rootes of *Dictamus*, of Tormentill, and of *Tunici*, and the barks of Citron, ana. ℈. j of conſerues of Bugloſſe, Borage, *Nymphæa*, and Roſes, take of theſe either one, two, or three, or all, to the quantity of two or three dragmes: of white Sugar diſſolued in water of Roſes, or of Bugloſſe, or of Borage, as much as ſufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges, or make a liquid Electuarie in the forme aforeſaid. ℞ the three kinds of Saunders, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ana. ℈ j the bone of the Harts heart one in number, Sugar Roſate tabulate, of white Sugar diſſolued in Roſe water as much as ſufficeth, make an Electuarie, gild it with leaues of pure gold in weight, ʒ. ß. Alſo there be made Electuaries laxatiue againſt all ſuperfluities and diſeaſes, that together with the purging we may alſo ſtrengthen, as in example, againſt long diſeaſes coming of thume, or ſome clammy humor breeding the cough. ℞. *Caſſia* that is new ʒ. ij. ß. *Diacarthami*, ʒ. vj. new *Penidios*, and *Diairis ſimplex*, ana ʒ ß of conſerues of Violets, ʒ iij. of ſweete Anoiſe powdred, and powder of Liquorice, ana. ʒ. ß. ſirupe of Violets as much as ſufficeth: make a liquide Electuarie, in *forma Opiatæ*. The doſe is, ʒ j. or ʒ. x. or at the moſt ʒ j ß. the which may be miniſtred an houre, or an houre and a halfe (ſwallowing it) or he may take it foure houres before dinner, becauſe it may conueniently be giuen a little before meat, becauſe of the *Diacarthamum* which hath *Diagridium* in it. Alſo you may diſſolue it in the broth of a chicken, or in Ptiſan, or in a common pectoral decoction, and make a potion, and miniſter it foure or fiue houres

An Electuary for the vertue vitall.

An Electuary againſt a peſtilent feauer.

An Electuary for the vertue animall, in a hote cauſe.

An Electuary againſt diſeaſes of the breſt, and againſt the cough.

houres before meate. And this note, that you muſt appoint the wayes and meanes of the miniſtration of Phyſicke, according as you ſee the nature and condition of the ſicke perſon. Such Electuaries which may be brought into a powder, are made in Lozenges or Boles of laxatiue medicines that be pleaſant in taſte, the forme and faſhion whereof may be knowne in taking *Diacarthamum*, and *Electuarium de ſucco Roſarum*, after which faſhion you may make other very meete and ſeruing for your purpoſe.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of making Conditum, and Conſerua.

CONDITA be made as Electuaries be made, to ſtrengthen the might, and the primitiue and worthieſt members. They rather haue reſpect to the ſubſtance and matter or breathing, then to the beauty and ſoundneſſe of the fleſh. But foraſmuch as the weakneſſe of ſtrength, cauſeth ſores and diſeaſes to grow in their inſtruments, therefore it is miniſtred to thē that begin to recouer and wax ſtrong. ℞ *Conſerua Anthos*, that is, of Roſemary, conſerue of Borage, Bugloſſe, Maidenhaire, and Succory, ana. ℥ ij. the Barke of Citron condite, ℥ j. ß. the powder of *Electuarium pliriſarcoticō*, the powder of *Electuarium Ducis*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Triſandali*, ana. ℥ ß. the leaues of gold in number vj. of white Sugar as much as ſufficeth, & make a *Conditum*. Of the ſame powders of Electuaries is made a whole and an hard *Conditum*, as thus, ℞. the powder of *Electuarium Pliriſarcoticon*, the powder of *Dianthos*, the powder of *Ducis*, *Diarrholō Abbatis*, and *Triaſanduli* ana. ℈ ij. conſerues of Roſes & Succory, ana. ℥ j. white Sugar diſſolued in Roſe water, as much as ſufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges or morſels like vnto *Manus Chriſti*, of the weight of ℥ ij. In like proportion may condites or Electuaries be made to ſtrengthen all kind of vertues, as in example. If onely the vertue vitall be weake, then take Electuaries & conſerues either hote or cold, hauing reſpect to the vertue, according as the owne diſtemper or the cauſe of it deſireth. Now there followeth theſe hote Electuaries hauing reſpect to the vertue vitall: *Electuarium Diambræ*, *Diamargatiton calidum*, *Diamuſcum amarum*, *Diamuſcum dulce*, *de Gēmis*, *Letificans Galeni*. Cold Electuaries, *Electuariū Diamargariton frigidum*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, which be temperate, *Triaſandali*. Conſerues reſpecting both the diſtempers, that is, hote & cold: as *Conſeruæ roſarū*, *Boraginis*, *Bugloſſæ*, *Violarum*. Cold conſerues, *Conſeruæ Nimphææ*, *Violarum*. Hot *Condita* reſpecting the vertue vitall, as, *Cortex Citri conditus*, which may be miniſtred in both caſes, *Confectio de Cinamomo*, *confectio de Xyloaloe*, *cōfectio Alkermes*, which is cōmon to the Phyſitions: of *Mont. ſpeſſulari*, Ginger condite, peares condite, apples condite, & ſo for other. Hote Electuaries for the vertue animal be theſe, *Pliriſarcoticō*, *Dianthos*, *Diamuſcum dulce & amarum*, *Mithridatū* and *Triacle*, which be *opiatæ*, that is liquid. Hote conſerues reſpecting the vertue animall be theſe, *conſeruæ Anthos*, *Acori*, *Roſarū*, which is temperate, almoſt all *Opiatæ*, that is, liquid things, as *Mithridatum*, *Triacle & Aurea Alexandrina*. Hote Electuaries for the vertue naturall be theſe, *Diacalaminthum*, *Diacuminum*, *Diatrion piperion*, *Aromaticum roſatum maioris*, (which *Gabriel* deſcribeth) *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, which is very temperate, and neceſſarie in both cauſes,

A conditum to ſtrengthen all vertue and power.

Hote Electuaries reſpecting the vertue vitall.

Cold Electuaries.

Condits reſpecting the vertue vitall.

Hote Electuaries for the vertue animall.

Hote conſerues.

Hote Electuaries for the vertue naturall.

Note conserues respecting the vertue naturall. Note conserues *Diairis Salomonis*, or *simplex Dialacca*, and *Diacucurma*, the which are good against oppilations in the liuer, and against the Dropsie. Note conserues respecting mightily the vertue naturall be these: *Conserua Eringiorum, Conserua Satirij, Zinziber conditum, cortex Citri conditus*, meate of Quinces condite, Peares condite, and such like.

Cold Electuaries. Cold Electuaries be these: *Tria sandali, Diatragacanthum frigidum, Diarrhodon Abbatis, Diamargariton frigidum.*

Cold conserues. Cold conserues be these: *Conserua Violarum, Cichoræ, Nimphæa &c.*

A conditum against the hot distemper of al kindes of veines. ℞. the powder of *Electuarium trium sandalorum*, ℥. ij. the powder of *Diamargariton frigidum*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ana ℈ ij. conserues of Succory, and Violets, ana ℥. j ß. white Sugar dissolued in water of Endiue, or Succory, or Roses, as much as sufficeth. Make a condite in Lozenges, in weight ℥ ij. or ℥. iij. or thus: ℞ conserues of Succory, of Violets, of *Nimphæa*, and of Bugloss, ana ℥ ij ß. conserue of Roses, ℥. j ß. powder of *Tria sandali*, & of *Diamargariton frigidum*, ana ℈. iiij. the leaues of Gold viij. in number, white Sugar as much as sufficeth, make a condite: the dose is one siluer spoonefull. Many in these condites, where there is suspition of some venimous matter, as in pestilent feauers, or in swounding, they do adde to the seed of Citron, the seed *Carduus Benedictus*, the roote of *Dictamus*, and Tormentill: and for rich folke of the scraping of Vnicornes horne (although there is no author that maketh mention of it (but onely the opinion of the common people:) as for example, in the aforesaid *Conditum* take away some portion of the aforesaid Electuaries, that is to say, the third or fourth part, and then let it be in this order as followeth. ℞ of the seed of *Carduus Benedictus*, of the seed of Citron, of the roote of *Dictamus* and Tormentill, ana ℈ j or ℥ ß. two or three of these may be added. Furthermore Trochiskes are added to Electuaries and condites, as in example: to stop the fluxe, take Trochiskes of *Diacorallus*, *Diarrhodon*, of *Terra sigillata*, of Bolearmoniacke, and of *Carabe*. And to keepe the temperature of the heart, take Trochiskes of *Camphora*, of the which take as much in quantity as the powders of the Electuaries be, when there is no Sugar put into them.

Another for the same distemper.

CHAP. XV.

Of making Pasta Regia or Mazapane.

PASTA *Regia* is a confection, so called by the Physitions of late time, which is especially ordained for diseases of the breast, or to driue away the causes of leanesse: the forme and making whereof doth follow, being very effectuall against both the causes, that is, the diseases of the breast and the lungs, and against leanesse: as thus. ℞. sweete Almonds blanched, ℥. iij. of new Pines cleansed, and tempered ten houres in water of Scabious, or of *Enula campana*, or in some other meete for this purpose, ℥ ß of *Pistacium*, that is, a kinde of nuttes; let them be new cleansed, and tempered one day in some of the aforesaid waters, ℥. j. *Amylum, Diatragacanthum*, and of Gumme Arabicke, ana ℥. ß. of the meate of Dates, Prunes Damascene, and Sebesten, & Raisins, one or else more of these, to the quantity of one ounce, white Sugar dissolued in Well water, or in Rose water, or in water of *Enula*, as much as sufficeth; make a *Pasta Regia*, and cut it in fashion like a wafer

or

or else make it in litle gobbets. Also sometime the great seeds (the barks being picked off) are put into them.

CHAP. XVI.

Of making a Lohoch or Ecligma.

A LOHOCH or *Ecligma* is a medicine that must not be eaten or chewed, but it must melt in the mouth, and distill downe to the stomacke by litle and litle. It is good against diseases of the breast and the lungs, (as is) *Dyspneas Apneas*, short and hard breathings, sighings and coughes, whether it cometh by heaping of matter together, or by falling downe of some moist substance (as be catarrhes, and rheume, which chance oftentimes, ℞. *Electuarium Diairis Salomonis & Diairis simplex*, ana ℥.vj. Lohoch *de Pino*, ℥ i. conserue of *Enula campana*, ℥ ß. *Oxymel Scylliticum* as much as sufficeth. Make a Lohoch & let the sicke vse it with a Liquorice sticke, licking or swallowing a litle at once. If there be greater need of detersion and scouring, then there is of incision and cutting, you must augment and increase the quantity of the scouring receipts, & in stead of *Oxymel Scylliticum* put too Syrupe of Liquorice, or of Horehound called *Prassium*, or of Iuiubes, or else of Hysope: many do thinke sirupe of Hysope to be absterssiue, only for the saying of *Auicen*, which (as *Mesua* declareth) is vnlike to be true. Lohoch *compositum*, Lohoch *de Pino*, Lohoch *de caulibus*, *sanum* and *expertum*, Lohoch *de Scylla*, these may conueniently be ministred by themselues. But when a feauer is present (as in the pleurisie) then to auoid and bring out from the breast the materiall cause that floweth, and partly for the matter that is already flowne, we may make a Lohoch after this sort and fashion. ℞. of *Electuarium Diatragacanthi frigidi*, ℥.2. new Penidies, and white pils, ana. ℥ iiij. Syrupe of Violets, or of Iuiubes, or of both as much as sufficeth, make a Lohoch & vse it with a Liquorice sticke, swallowing it by litle and litle. If the matter be partly flowed, and partly flowing, you shall make a Lohoch to correct both after this fashion. ℞. *Electuarium Diairis simplex*, ℥ i. *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, ℥ vi. new Penidies, ℥ iii. Syrupe of Iuiubes, or Hysope, euen as you thinke good, the more to enforce the matter now flowed or flowing, and make a Lohoch. A Lohoch also may be made against defluxion or flowing of humours that be hote and sharpe, or gnawing, causing the cough: that the heate and gnawing of the humour may be stopped, and also that the thinnesse and subtilty thereof may be made thicke and grosse, and the parts to the which the fluxe commeth being subiect and obedient, they may be made safe from any document or hurt (as in example) ℞. *Electuarium Diatragacanthi frigidi* ℥ i. Bolearmoniacke washed in Rose water, ℥ ii. Trochiskes of *Terra sigillata*, ℈ ii. Syrupe of Poppy as much as sufficeth, and make a Lohoch. In stead of *Diatragacanthum* may be taken *Diapapauer*, or of each a like quantity. Also Trochiskes of *Carabe* in which is put some *Opium* may be added to them, if there be no cause that *Opium* be suspected to do hurt. These Lohochs be giuen against the Ptisicke in the houre of sleepe; *Electuarium Diapapaueris*, *Lohoch* of Poppy. All the pils of *Mesua* for this vse against diseases of Catarrhe and rheume, may be mixed and giuen the same houres, and for the same intent.

A Lohoch against rheume eõgealed together, clammish hard & thick.

A Lohoch in the beginning of the pleurisie where the matter floweth.

CHAP. XVII.

Of making Balneum, and Semicupium.

BALNEVM is a baine, the vse whereof was common and often among old practitioners, but now it is rare and seldome, and not at all vsed almost, except it be in certaine diseases, as in an vniuersall Goute, in the Palsey, and in consuming Feauers. But against the Goute and the Palsey naturall baines are conuenient, in the which, although there be penurie and lacke of things, yet we may make things artificially, and cunningly prepared, with boiling together in water, herbes, roots, seeds, floures, and also many mettals, as it shall seeme requisite for the disease. But *Semicupium*, which in Latine is called *Insessum*, is a particular bath, which is applyed for paines of the Nefresie, for the Cholicke, and for the Iliacke, so that they come not by reason of an impostume. It is profitable against diseases of the belly and wombe, for it is a conuenient aide and defence to prouoke menstruis, and to amend the distemper of the wombe. Now followeth the forme of *Semicupium*, when we would in the Nefreticke disease, haue the pores and passages of the body enlarged, and made soft and plaine, and also to ceasse the paine as thus: ℞. the rootes of *Althæa*, ℥. iiij. the leaues of *Maluæ*, *Bismaluæ*, and Parietarie, the floures of Cammomill and Melilote, the tops of Dill, ana M. ij. of Origan, Calamint, Betony, and Sothernwood, ana. M. j. seeds of Flaxe and Fennell, ana. ℥ ij. of cleane Branne. p. iiij. boile all these in a bag in sufficient water for a *Semicupium*. Note also that one who hath the Nefresie may enter a bath before he hath receiued a clister. If the paine of the Cholicke or the Nefresie seeme to come of much ventositie, or of a cold humour, which seemeth to haue need of calefaction, and attenuation or thinnesse, with incision and cutting; make a *Semicupium* thus. ℞. Origan, Calamint, tops of Dill, and of Cammomill, ana. M. iiij. Fenugreeke, Carawayes, Annise and Fennell, ana. ℥ ij. Laurell berries, ℥ ß. And if there be more sicknesses and causes wrapped in with the aforesaid griefes, you may adde too such medicines as be meete for your purpose, as if there be any need of mollifying & making soft, the leaues of *Malnæ*, *Bismaluæ*, Parietary, and Violets will worke that effect. If you iudge it necessary to make incision, or to open the pores and passages of the body, adde too of the roote of Spinach, *Bruscus*, and *Apium*; knit them in a little bagge and seeth them for a *Semicupium*. Likewise to prouoke menstruis, make *Insessus* or *Semicupia*, putting in medicines meete and apt to prouoke menstruis, as Mugwort, Sauein, Horehound, *Nux Cupressi*, and Iuniper berries; of all these there may be put in two handfuls.

The forme of Semicupium.

Aliud Semicupium.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Epithema or Fotus.

EPITHEMA is a medicine ordained to lay to the heart or liuer to coole it, & *Fotus* is a medicine nourishing or keeping warme. They are made for many intents & purposes, but chiefly to correct the hote distemper of the liuer, the making whereof is this as ensueth. ℞ the waters of Endiue, Succory, Roses, & Penniroyal, & Nightshade, ana. ℥ iij. of vineger, ℥ j. the powder of *Electuarii Triasandali*,

Triasandali, ℥.ij. or ℥.j. ß. mixe them for an Epitheme of the liuer with a felt, or a peece of linnen or woollen cloth, or a sponge infused in the aforesaid liquor, and laid against the liuer before meate an houre or an houre and a halfe. Also there is made for the same purpose the like decoction of the herbes, as is of the aforesaid waters. If there be stoppings of the liuer, together with his hote distemper, make an Epitheme after this sort. ℞. Succory both the roote and the herbe, yong set Endiue, Agrimonie (which is) Eupatorie, ana. M.j. floures of Succory, p.j. the foure great cold seeds, and little cold seeds, ana ℥.ß. of Cypresse, ℥ ij. of Lupins, ℥.iij. all the Saunders, ana. ℥.j. of Squinant, ℥ ß. the tops of Wormewood, M. ß. make a little bagge, and boile it in foure quarts of water, and one of wine, and a litle Vineger, with one onely great heate in an earthen vessell, and make a fomentation in the manner aforesaid: such an Epitheme is very good for diseases depending vpon oppilation or stopping, and misfortune coming by oppilation and stopping, as is a fluxe; and for him that is diseased in the liuer, and for those diseases for the most part which come and go by courses. Also it is good against consumptions, which cause distempers and stoppings of the liuer: moreouer against the beginnings of knobbes and kernels, to which (if they be come forth) there must be applyed mollificatiues, and things that do loosen and vnbinde. Also there be Epithemes that be made for many purposes of the stomacke: first to strengthen the stomacke that it receiue not the superfluities comming from other places, and then the Epitheme is made of stipticke things. Secondly to correct and amend the distemper of the stomacke. And thirdly they serue to ceasse the paines that are caused by the nature and condition of that griefe: ministring duely to the contrary of the matter, as the cause shall require. The making of the first intent, that the stomacke may be deliuered from flowings of humours to it, and may be preserued safely, that it shall not suffer inflammation, or course of euill humours. ℞. red Roses, p.ij. of Arnogloss and Plantaine, ana. M. ß the tops of Wormewood, M.j. the third part, all the Saunders, ana ℥.ij. red Corall, ℥.iij. put all these in a little bag, and make a decoction in sufficient quantity of water with a little Vineger, to which may be added a little Rhenish wine, and make a fomentation. Corall (although it be *Achymum*) yet it is not put into the decoction without great cause; for it profiteth naturally against all diseases of the stomacke, and therefore it ought rather to be beaten into powder. Epithemes for all other intents and purposes, may be described by particular and proper medicines, after the forme of the late described Epitheme. There be Epithemes good for the stomacke made of oile, as oile of Roses, Cammomill, Wormewood, Masticke, and Mirtles. Note that in all Epithemes, for what intent soeuer they be ministred, you must mixe something with them that may preserue and keepe the essence and strength of the member that the Epitheme is laied too, as *Galen* commandeth and teacheth in many places, to be obserued and done likewise in medicines taken inwardly. But *Epithema* and *Fotus* be all one. yet some do make a difference, saying that *Epithema* is onely that which is made of distilled waters and powders mixed together: and *Fotus* is a more generall thing, which is made of the decoctiou of any kind of herbes and rootes. *Epitheme.*

CHAP. XIX.

Of making Sacculus.

A drie bagge against the windie cholick or Tympanites.

SACCVLVS *videlicet* a little bagge. It is ministred for the same causes that *Fotus* be vsed for. It is made of herbes, flowers, seedes, and other such like things; they be layed to either drie, or else wet in some liquor. The drie be chiefly made of seedes and herbes: the wet must be first pressed before it be laid to the place. ℞. *Milij vstulati.* p. iiij. *Orobum* (which some thinke to be tares) and of leane Brawne, ana. p. ii floures of Cammomill, and the tops of Dil, ana. p. i. of Comin and Caraway, ana. ℥. ii of Laurell berries, ℥. iii. make thereof two little bags, and sew them into two linnen clothes, of a competent bignesse, and baste them throughly. Let them be so bigge that they may couer the belly, and let one after another be laied hote to the belly againe and againe.

A moist bag.

Now followeth the forme of a moist bagge for the digesting, mollifying, and dissoluing of raw humours, as thus. ℞. the flowers of Cammomil, p. ii. the tops of Dill, Melilote and Origan, ana p. i. Fenugreeke and flaxe seed, ana. ℥. i. the leaues of *Malue, Bismalue,* & Violets, ana M. ß make a little bag, or make two bags, and boile them in water or in cowes milke, and of the decoction make a fomentation with a sponge, or a felt, or woollen clothes, or two bags; let them be laid to the grieued places one after another. According to this forme, you may make and apply bagges, partly of things that can mollifie, and partly of things that can remoue and discusse, and lay them to knobs, kernels and hardnesse of the flesh But if the person be strong, take other remollitiues, or discussiues, euen as you shall finde the matter that causeth the hardnesse to require.

CHAP. XX.

Of making Scutum.

A Scutum against the cold distemper of the stomacke, with ventosity and other substance.

SCVTVM in English is a target or buckler. *Scuta* are ministred to the stomacke, and made for the same causes that ointments and Epithemes be. They are often made of the dry powder of medicines, to correct some distemper of the stomacke, and to adde strength to it. Furthermore they serue in stead of ointments or Emplaisters, when the patients do refuse and abhorre them for their tediousnesse. ℞. Mints, Marioram, and Wormewood dried, ana. p. i. or ℥. i ß. of Cloues, Galingale, and *Xyloales,* ana ℈. ii. of Comin and redde Corall, ana. ℥. i. make a powder, wherewith make a *Scutum* with a little cotton, sewed in betweene two little clothes, with stitchings betweene, and bands as it ought to be, let it be bound to the stomacke. Powders to *Scutum* ought not to be past an ounce and halfe at the most, many times an ounce or fiue drammes is enough.

CHAP. XXI.

Of making a Cataplasme.

CATAPLASMA is a plaister, &c. *Cataplasmata* be made of herbes, roots, seedes, and meale sodden in water or milke, with some greace or oile added to them as the matter requireth. *Cataplasmata* be made for diuerse intents, sometime to ceasse paines, sometime to resolue and bind, sometime to make ripe, sometime to mollifie or make soft, sometime to consume, and sometime

to dry vp humors and vapours. In commixed affects and cauſes, diuers intents and purpoſes are mixed together in *Cataplaſma*, as remollitiues with diſcuſſiues, and diſcuſſiues with ſuch things as ceaſſe paine, as the examples following ſhall declare. And firſt of the forme of a Cataplaſme for the cure of *Oedema* (which is a botch of flegmaticke matter, or an impoſtume without griefe) in the which euill it is neceſſary to haue remollition with diſcuſſion, or (as they ſay) reſoluing, looſening and ceaſſing of paine, as thus: ℞ the leaues of *Malua*, *Biſmalua*, and Violets, ana. M. j. or M. ß. the root of *Althea*, the roote of white Lillies, & the roote of Ireos, that is, Floure de luce ana ℥ ß. or ℥ i flowers of Cammomill, Melilot and tops of Dill, ana p. i. ſeed of flaxe, and of Fenugreeke, or rather meale of Flaxe ſeed, meale of Fenugreeke, and meale of Barley, ana ℥ ß. or ℥ j. or you may meaſure it by little handfuls; Comin, ℥ i. Laurell berries, ℥ ii. Saffron, ϑ. i. or ʒ ß. of Duckes greaſe, Gooſe greaſe, the marrow of Calues ſhankes, freſh butter, oile of Lillies, and oile of Ireos, ana. as much as ſufficeth; make a Cataplaſma. In this plaiſter are contained three intents and purpoſes: that is, mollifying, diſſoluing, and ceaſſing of paine, as may be knowne by the matter contained in it. The quantity of mollificatiues ought to be moſt, if there be greateſt neede of mollifying, and the quantity of diſſoluers ought to be moſt, if there need to be great diſſoluing, and ſo likewiſe of ceaſſing of paine. Therefore in the beginning of *Oedema*, as alſo in the beginning of euery abſceſſion or courſe of ill humours, you muſt commixe together with mollificatiues ſome repercuſſiue remedie, wherewith the member may be comforted. In the beginning of the augmenting, take moſt remollitiues, & feweſt diſcuſſiues. In the beginning of the augmenting & ſtate of the diſeaſe, take of both alike much. In the declination, take and apply onely diſſoluers and looſeners. In the making of this preſent plaiſter, you muſt put into it no ſtipticke thing: but if you do put in any, put it in at the beginning of the flowing of the humour. But what medicines they be that haue ſtipticke vertue, and which do comfort the member, and alſo which do mollifie, and diſſolue, you muſt ſeeke them in the tables of authors, as *Arnaldus* and *Sauanarola*, and ſuch like. Alſo there be plaiſters made without oyle or greace, as is that common thing of crummes of bread ſteeped in cowes milke, and a little ſodden together with whites of egges, oftentimes mixed with a little Saffron, as ten or twelue chiues. And this Cataplaſme we often vſe for the cure of the Goute.

CHAP. XXII.

Of making Emplaſtrum.

EMplaiſters are ordained and made for diuerſe purpoſes, and the making of them is common as well to Phyſitions as Chyrurgians. They are made of gummes, oiles, greace, and dry medicines, commixed with ſome ſufficient quantity of Waxe, or without Waxe, if that the materials can thicken, and gather together of themſelues. Emplaiſters are applied to all parts of the body, but chiefly to the ſtomacke, for the ſame cauſe that ointments, Cataplaſmes and *Scuta* are ordained. Now followeth the forme of an Emplaiſter for the ſtomacke when it is afflicted with a cold diſtemper, by reaſon of the flowing of ſome cold ſubſtance, as thus. ℞ *Ceratum ſtomachi confortatiui Galeni* ℥ ii. of

Galingale, Cloues, and red Coral, ana. ℥ ß of waxe dissolued, braied altogether in a mortar with oile of Masticke, or of Wormwood as much as sufficeth. Cõmixe them & make a plaister spread vpon leather like a buckler, with a double linnen cloth, well stitched and basted as it ought to be. Also an Emplaister may be made of simples for the aforesaid intents, in this manner. ℞. pure *Lapdanum*, ℥ vj. Masticke, ℥ ij. Frankinsence, ℥ j. Coriander prepared, red Corall, drie Mints, and Galingale, ana. ℈ ij *Xylo* Aloes, and Maces, ana. ℥ j. Turpentine, ℥ ij. waxe dissolued with oile of Spikenard, or Wormewood, or Masticke, or Roses, or of two or three of these, as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lumpe together, spread it vpon leather, and make it like a *Scutum* of double linnen with stitches and bands, and lay it to the stomacke as is requisite. Warne the Apothecarie to dissolue the Gummes with wine & oile, afterward let him commixe the rest without the vse of any fire, *Ceratum stomachi confortatiuũ Galeni*, is made of Roses, Wormewood, Masticke, Spikenard, waxe and oile of Roses. In hote causes and cholericke vomites, you may likewise make *Scuta* of cold simples, as of Mirtles, Coriander, Corall, Masticke which is temperate, *Pstdiæ*, *Balaustia*: also oiles of Roses, Mirtles, Quinces, & of Masticke. There are made Emplaisters for the liuer, for the allaying of euery distemper of it, to loosen the obstructions thereof, and to strengthen it also, as in this example following.

A plaister for the hot distemper of the liuer

℞. *Ceratum sandalinum*, ℥ ii. meate of Quinces, ℥ i. of Masticke, ℥ ß of Corall, ℥ i. of wax dissolued with oile of Roses as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lũpe, and spread it vpon leather, like the Moone when she is beginning to increase, with a double linnen cloth, and with bands, as it ought to be, and apply it to the liuer. Emplaisters also are made to ceasle paines, and partly to ripen Apostemes, and partly to resolue them, as in example, ℞. *Muscilaginis* of the seed of *Althæa*, Fenugreeke, and seed of Flaxe, ana. ℥ iii. Barley meale, ℥ iiii. oile of white Lilles and the fatnesse of a henne, ana ℥ ii. ℞. Butter, ℥ i. Saffron, ℈ i. the white of egges in number ii. boile the *Muscilagines* with a soft fire, and with the meale, and put in the whites of egges in the end. It doth soften and ripen all Apostemes congealed of a hote and cold matter, and it ceasleth their paine in what part soeuer of the body they be resident. If you will appropriate this Emplaister to all kinde of cold Apostemes, then adde to it *Ammoniacum*, *Bdellium*, *Storax liquida*, ana ℥ j and it will worke a maruellous and profitable effect.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of making Vnguenta.

VNGVENTA, in English oyntments: and those which appertaine vnto Physitions, are made to lenifie and asswage paine, to represent, shew, and assigne alteration and changing, to mollifie and dissolue knobbes and kernels, specially in the liuer, in the spleene, and in the stomacke. The vertue of oyntments for other purposes and for other members, belonging to surgery, the forme and making whereof is to be sought out of the Antidotaries. The forme of an oyntment to mitigate the paine of the stomacke caused of cold, or by the presence of some such like substance, is in this manner. ℞. oiles of Masticke, Spike and Wormwood, ana ℥ ß Cloues, *Xylo* Aloes, Maces, & *Calamus aro-*

An ointment for the stomach.

aromaticus, ana. ℈.j. *gallia muſchata*, ʒ.j. or ʒ.j ℈. if he be rich, becauſe of the dearteneſſe thereof, or new Waxe as much as ſufficeth, make an ointment for the ſtomacke, and a *Scutum* with cotton, and with bands, as it ought to be, and lay it vpon the ſtomack after the annointing. But to ceaſſe the paine in the ſtomacke coming of a hote cauſe; as of flowing of choler, which often chanceth in feauers, vſe this ointment. ℞. oile of Roſes, ʒ.j. oyle of Mirtles, or elſe of Quinces, ʒ. ß. white Sanders & red, ana. ℈ ij. or ʒ. ß. new waxe waſhed in Endiue water, or in Roſe water as much as ſufficeth, and make an ointment for the ſtomacke. And make a *Scutum* of cotton, and apply it to the ſtomacke after the annointing. In ointments we do exceed or paſſe the quantity of ʒ.j. It is alſo to be noted, that ſome do waſh oiles with the iuyce or the water of diſtillation of cold herbs in a hote cauſe, or in hote iuyces in a cold cauſe of diſeaſe. Moreouer note, that many do thinke, that there ſhould be no ointment nor cerate applied to the ſtomacke without Galingale, neither to the heart without Mace or Saffron, neither to the braine without *Spica Arabica*, nor to the liuer without *Spodium*, or Saunders, or Wormewood, or other ſuch like things, thinking verily the nature of the member to be preſerued with reſtrainers, but yet not alwayes in the forenamed medicines. For the law and method is to be kept in all cauſes of contrariety, which ſhould be broken in medicines, if Galingale were added to the aforeſaid medicine, becauſe Galingale is hote. For truly the nature of the ſtomacke is ſtrengthened ſufficiently by the commixing together of ſtipticke things which are put into the aforeſaid ointment, becauſe truly they be temperate in heate, as it appeareth by their nature. Now followeth an ointment very profitable for hardneſſe and knots of the liuer or ſpleene, wherewith thoſe two members are moſt in danger, in this forme. ℞. the roots of *Althæa*, and the rootes of white Lillies, ana. ʒ.j. leaues of *Maluæ*, *Bilmaluæ*, and Violets, ana. M.j. of the flowers of Cammomill, Melilot, and the tops of Dill, ana. M. ß. meale of Fenugreeke, of flaxe ſeed, ana. ʒ.j. gum. *Amoniaci*, called *Serapni*, ʒ.j. *Bdellium* that is ſoft and whitiſh, ʒ. ß. Turpentine, ʒ.iij. Gum of pine trees ʒ ß. *Storax liquida*, ʒ.ij. or ʒ.iij. the marrow of Calues or Harts ſhankes, if you can get it, Hennes greaſe, and Duckes greaſe, oyle of ſweete Almonds, and of Ireos, ana. ʒ j. ß. or ana. as much as ſufficeth. Diſſolue the Gummes with wine and a little vineger, and to the aforeſaid oiles, adde to new waxe as much as ſufficeth; then afterward take the ſaid greaſes, and powders, or meales, or herbes, firſt ſodden and braied, and mixe them all together, and make an ointment. If this ſaid ointment there be more things that do mollifie then there be that diſſolue, becauſe the matter of ſcirrhous knobs doth chiefly require the ſame. If you will miniſter the aforeſaid ointment for the hardneſſe of the liuer, you may adde to it of the branches of Wormewood, of Roſes, of Squinance, or of Spicknard to preſerue the ſtrength and nature of the member. If you will miniſter it to the Spleene, you may mixe with it ſome *Tamariſcus* barke, the roote of Capers, or ſuch like: if you miniſter to the hardneſſe of the ſtomacke, adde to Wormewood, red Roſes, *Calamus aromaticus*, Mints and Galingale.

Aliud.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of making a Liniment.

LINIMENTVM is an ointment that is soft and liquide, which hath in it little waxe or none at all. It is also made for the same vse that ointments be made for. The forme of a liniment to ceasse paine (as in the pleurisie) is after this manner. ℞. oyle of Commomill, and Capons grease, ana. ℥.ß. fresh new Butter without salt, ℥.ij. a little waxe washed, and make a Liniment.

CHAP. XXV.

Of making Frontale.

FRONTALE, or *Splenium*, be plaisters made to apply to the forehead, either to ceasse paine in the forepart of the head, or to cause and prouoke sleepe, or to ceasse paine in the head caused of a hote distemper, as it oftentimes chanceth in feauers. Against cold causes make a *Frontale* (as *Galen* teacheth) of red Roses steeped and soked in vineger, laid betweene two linnen clothes, of three fingers breadth, and in length from one eare to another: or make it for the same intent, after this fashion ℞. red Roses, p.j. ß flowers of water Lillies and Violets, ana p.i Betony, and Melilote, ana. p. ß. put all betweene two fine linnen clothes, (if the patient be rich) or beteene two course linnen clothes if he be poore: and make a *Frontale* well sewed (as it ought to be) for the forehead and the temples: if you will prouoke sleepe, adde to the foresaid *Frontale* the leaues of Lettuce, or new white Poppy, or of *Mandragoras* in the places & times that you may haue it, but there is but small store of these cold things. At all times you may put in the seedes of white Poppy, or the barkes of the heades of white Poppy, or Lettuce seedes, or Henbane seede, as in example. ℞ flowers of water Lillies, Violets, & Melilot, ana. p.j. flowers of Lettuce, or white Poppy, ana the 3 part of M.j. or of each of them. M.j. ß seed of white Poppy ℥.ij. Lettuce seed, Dil seed, and white Henbane seede, ana ℥.ß. bray al together and make a *Frontale* betweene the course or fine linnen clothes well sewed and basted in right order. To the former *Frontale* Melilot and Dil seed is added to comfort the braine, that it be not hurt with cold things. In the disease called *Cephalalgia* coming of a cold cause make *Frontalia* of hote herbes & flowers, as Sage, Rosemary, Cammomil, Betony, Briony, Melilote & such like. *Frontalia*, before they be layed to the forehead, are wont to haue some liqour powred vpon them, or to be aired with some vapour; as in example. ℞. the waters of Roses, Betony, and Balme, ana. ℥.j. of vineger ℥ ß. comm[illegible] them, and of the aforesaid waters, power a little portion vpon a burning [illegible], or some such like thing, & hold the aforesaid *Frontale* ouer the fleame & smoake of the said waters. The forehead is oftentimes annointed with many ointments seruing for the same vse and purpose that *Frontalia* do serue for, as in a hote cause, *Vnguentum Populeon*, *Rubea trochiscata* dissolued in water, is very meete for this purpose, & yet is seldome in vse with them at Paris. Many Physitions in the old time, in a cold cause did annoint with *Mythrydatum* and *Aurea Alexandrina*, & such like. In all causes (saith *Galen* 12. *libro Therapeuticis*) you may conueniently annoint with *Oxyrrhodinum*, which is made of oyle of Roses and fiue times so much vineger, as in example. ℞. oyle of Roses, ℥.j. vineger, ℥.ij. commixe them,

them, ſtirring them in a plate: or elſe thus in hotter cauſes, when as without foreſight the Frenſie will breed, then we commixe cold things as thus. ℞. oyle of Roſes, ℥.j. oyle of Nenuphar, ℥ ß. oyle of Poppy, ℥.iij. iuyce of *Salatrum*, or Lettuce, or white Poppy, water of Roſes and vineger, ana. halfe an ounce; commixe them together, ſtirring them very long in ſome peece of plate: and annoint the forepart of the head therewith, yea all the head if there be inflammation of the braine.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of making Cucufa, and Semicucufa.

CVCVFA is more for the cure of the euill called *Cephalalgia*, which is a paine of the heade coming of cold; and many times alſo to ſtop rheume, as in example: ℞. *Sampſucus*, that is, Marioram, Roſemary, Stæchados both of Araby, and yellow, ana. p.j. of red Roſes, p.j. drie Citron barkes, graines of Alkermes, ana ℥.iij. Maces, long Pipper, Quibibes and Cloues, ana. ℥.ß. Make a powder, & make a *Cucufa* betweene two fine linnen clothes, with a little cotten baſted betweene, or with flaxe, or ſcarlet ſcraped, and giue it according to the meaſure. And if the paine lyeth moſt in the forepart of the head, put moſt of the powders of ſpices in that place: likewiſe if it be in the hinder part, do ſo alſo, and if the *Cephalalgia* be in all parts of the head, then commixe them equally. But it is called *Semicucufa*, when we prouide but for one part of the head. If we will ſtoppe rheumes, then we mixe with it ſtipticke things, or we make a *Cucufa* onely of ſtipticke things, either cold or hote as the cauſe requireth. Therefore we make a *Cucufa* with *milium* burned, or not burned, Mirtles, Cypreſſe nuts & *Sandaracha* (commonly called vernice) viz. yellow Oker, the barke of Frankinſence, and ſuch other like ſtipticke things.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of making Suffitus.

S*Vffitus* (in Engliſh a perfuming) is made of drie things, to ſtop diſtillations which fall from the braine into the lower parts, and it is made of reſtraining medicines, as thus for example. ℞. red Roſes, p.j. Maſticke, ℥.ß. vernice, that is, yellow Oker, ℥.j. mixe them, and make a perfuming for the head; or thus: ℞. *milium*, p.j. red Roſes, p.ß of vernice and *Olibanum*, ana. ℥.ß. commixe them and make a perfume for the head. Note that when the diſtillation falleth to the lungs, and thereof cometh ſpitle, then take no perfume by the mouth, becauſe it ſhorteneth the breath, and letteth the ſpitting, and maketh the humours groſſe and thicke: but you muſt perfume the couering of the head, or elſe perfume ſome wooll, and apply it to the head.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of making Collyrium.

C*Ollyriũ* is a medicine that is miniſtred in a liquide forme to heale the eyes. Wherefore becauſe there be diuerſe euils in the eyes, the Collyries are made of diuerſe faſhions; for you muſt vſe one kind in the beginning of *Ophthalmia*, and another in the ſtate of it, and another in the declination thereof, as it is alſo commonly vſed in the inflammations of other members. Therefore

in

in the beginning you must make it of cold and stipticke repercussiues, as the whites of egges, the sappe of Quince seed, and *Psyllium*, and other things of like vertue: minister them alone, or else let them be first dissolued with conuenient waters, and afterward applied, as in this example following. ℞. the white of one egge, and stirre it with Rosewater, or Plantine water, or with water of Balme, or with all these waters, make a Collyrie, and put into the eye that is pained. Or thus ℞. the sappe of Quince seed drawne out with Plantaine water, or Rosewater, ℥.j. and mixe them with the white of an egge, and stirre it a long time with a spatter, and make a *Collyrium*. But if there be no paine nor redneſſe in the eyes, but a certaine vncleanneſſe which ought to be dried vp, then it is good to make Collyries of Tutty prepared, and of Aloes washed, and of *lapis Caliminaris*, and other such like things, which ought to be taken with some conueniēt liquor, except it rather liketh you better to put into the eye the powders of them: for so they drie vp and wipe away the filthinesse the cleaner.

A Collyrium in the beginning of Ophthalmia.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of making Nasale or Errhinum.

NASALE & *Errhinum* be medicines which be cast into the nose for many causes and intents, as to stop bleeding at the nose, to prouoke sneesings, to cause child-birth, or to bring forth the Secundine which is retained within after the birth, and furthermore it purgeth the braine. It may be made many wayes, as in drie powders, which must be snuffed or blowne vp into the nose; or it may be made liquide, and then you must annoint the nostrils within; or you may make it whole, and hard, and then it must be put vp into the nose. ℞. the haires that be in the Hares belly. p.ß the saw dust, or mosinesse of Willow, p.ß. Bolearmoniack, & *Sanguis Draconis* powdred, ana. ℥.j. cut the haires very small, and mixe them all together, and blow them vp into the nose, or dissolue them all with some stipticke water, or with the iuyce of some hearbe, or with the white of an egge, and adde to them also (if you please) *Balaustia*, or with rinds of Pomegranates, or *Acatia*, all powdred, and with a linnen cloath make a *Nasale*, and dip it in the aforesaid medicines, and put it into the nose. Sneesings are prouoked by drie powders, snuffed or blowne into the nose, which be sharpe and biting, as be these, Pepper, Pellitory, Staue sacre, and roote of floure de luce powdred. You may commixe the said things with some liquor: annoint the nostrils, or take cloath of silke wound vp together, and dippe it in the aforesaid liquor, and put it into one nostrill, or into both.

A Nasale to stanch bleeding at the nose.

A Nasale to prouoke sneesing.

CHAP. XXX.

Of making Apophlegmatismus.

APOPHLEGMATISMVS is a medicine which causeth one to vomite vp fleame: it prouoketh rheume out of the braine into the mouth, and it is good to purge the braine. Masticke is commonly vsed in this case, which being long holden in the mouth and chewed, it bringeth forth rhume and fleame. Also Sage leaues holden in the mouth do likewise purge rhume by the mouth. Also make *Noduli* of Pellitorie, Pepper, Staue sacre roote, of Ireos, and

and *Panax*, and hold them in the mouth. Furthermore take gargarismes of the same medicines. Also there are ointments made of the same things, wherewith the roofe of the mouth must be annointed, for they by reason of their heate and tartnesse, do draw fleame and rheumes into the mouth.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of making destillations restoratiue.

DISTILLATIONS be made to sustaine strength and might, when the sicke is so weake that he cannot digest any hard nourishment. Distillations are of a mixed kinde, that is to say, they are partly foode and partly medicines. They are made for many intents and purposes: for some be made to restraine, as in the fluxe of the belly; some to alter or change, as when they are ministred for seauers to refrigerate, or in cold diseases to make hote: and some do resist poyson and malignant humours, as in pestilent seauers. And they are made after this manner. ℞. conserues of Succory, of Roses, of *Symphytū*, that is, Comfery, of *Cornelu*, of *Maua*, & of Quinces, ana. ℥.ij. powder of Electuaries, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, & *Tria Sandali*, ana. ℥.ij. Trochiskes of *Carabe*, of Barberies, and *Terra sigillata*, ana. ℥ ß. of red Corall, & *Lapis hæmatitis*, ana ℥.j. water of the decoction of one Capon or of two, altered with Plaintaine, Knotgrasse Moleine, Lettuce, seed of Barberies, *Sumach*, & *Omphacium*. ℔.viij. put all together in a Limbecke with the flesh of two Chickens, or two Patriches, or of two turtle Doues, or of one Capon, or of more of these, and with the crums of one white loafe, or of two wet in Rose water, and make a distillation in *Balneo Mariæ* with a soft fire. ℞. of the aforesaid distillatiō ℔ ß. iuyce of Pomgranats ℥ j. or ℥ j. ß. Sugar roset ℥ ij Cinamon elect. ℥.j. straine them (as *Hippocrates* teacheth) through a fleeue, and let the sicke vse it euery houre. But if you will make a distillation to haue a cooling vertue, alwayes obserue the same order and portion that is spoken of before, and for the restraining conserues, adde to such as do coole, as conserues of water Lillies, of Violets, of Roses, Succory and balme, and likewise cold Electuaries, as *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*: also alter the decoction of the flesh with Lettuce, Sorrell, Purslaine, Scarioll, and such like. Moreouer you shall make a distillation restoratiue against malignant and pestilent seauers in this sort, ℞. conserues of Violets, water Lillies, Balme, Borage, & Bugloss, ana. ℥ ij barke of citron condite ℥ j roote of *Dictamus* & Tormentill, roote of *Angelica*, and roote of Gentian, ana. ℥ ß powder of *Electuarium Diamargaritō frigidum*, all the Saunders, Bolearmoniacke, Trochisks of *Camphora*, wood of Aloes, ana ℥ ij. scrapings of yuory, and Harts horne, Maces, Cinamon, Cloues, and seed of *Carduus Benedictus*, ana. ℥ j. of old triacle, ℥.iij. the water of the decoction of two Chickens, or of Capons altered with Sorrell, Scabious, Lettuce, Borage, Bugloss, quar. iij. put altogether in a glasen Limbecke, with the flesh of some things, and with the crummes of two white loaues infused in white wine, and make a distillation with a lent & soft fire, in conuenient order as is requisite. Another: or thus. ℞ of the aforesaid distillation ℔ ß *Syrupus de acetositate Citri*, ℥.ij. commixe them together, and let the sicke vse it euery houre.

A distillation restoratiue restraining.

Another.

A distillation restorative cooling, against malignant and pestilent seauers.

The end of the seuenth Booke.

THE VIII. BOOKE OF COMPOVND MEDICINES.

The Preface.

WE haue found by experience, that Noble men in times past which haue become famous in the practise and exercise of Physicke and Chirurgerie, haue bestowed chiefe care and great diligence to store vp for their vse (as treasures) certaine peculiar remedies for euery hard maladie both to increase and preserue the worthinesse and renownednesse of their good name, by the prosperous successe of their labours. The which remedies, although euery of them prouided to be made at home, and tooke them for secrets; yet notwithstanding in space of time and number of yeares, either by death, or intreaty, or for mony, or through change, or other manifold means, they haue bene made knowne and published. Whereupon others the rather minding the publicke vtilitie of men, thought good to gather togethr the dispersed compositions of medicines then euery where knowne, and endeauoured themselues to transferre out of the most famous authors, the best and most receipts into their bookes of Physicke. And by these meanes truly did Scribonius Largus, Actuarius, Nicolaus Myrepsus, *and* Nicolaus Præpositus, *make their workes. By this industrie it could not but come to passe, that out of diuerse Authors many receipts not much vnlike, were taken tending to one end, as sirupes of like effect and many medicines of* Aloe, *nor fewer of* Scammony *or* Colocynthide, *or* Turpetho, *all which differ onely in way of composition, or for the varietie of certaine simples. And softning and scouring Electuaries also there be many, whose chiefest force is of* Ærugo, *and which differ by a sole change of other simples, as is granted to euery authors iudgement. So then many things haue bene heaped together, the most part whereof haue bene to no vse. It were much better in euery kind, to choose out the best, the other vnprofitable and vnnecessary omitted. But euen in this heaping together of remedies, many diseases remaine*

remaine void of all helpe, for the which no fit remedies were inuented: for that diligent care which many haue to gather together euery where medicines (after a sort an imitator and follower of practicke) without choise or method had, doth apply neither fit remedies, nor medicines to the diseases, nor to the sensible griefe ioyned to the sickenesse, or to their causes, neither doth set downe the kinds of remedies according to the diuersitie of diseases: neither at any time weyeth what euery composition hath, either profitable or to no vse, neither pleasant or vnsauory; but receiueth and alloweth for the most part such receipts, as haue bene vsed of vnlearned men, commonly without regard of iudgement. And many of those likewise diuerse haue peruerted and depraued, euery man according to his iudgement, so that now there remaineth scantly any certaine kinde or trade of composition for Apothecaries, and that part of Physicke (as it is not ratified and established) which is most necessary for the cure of diseases: and whereas many haue iudged well of the reformation of that part, I haue done mine endeauour, that the composition of medicines might be set downe in writing according to Art, as the simples haue bene in the bookes before. And whatsoeuer of them were profitable and easie for practise, might keepe their old forme: and whatsoeuer were amisse, by vpright iudgement might be brought to better perfection, so that nothing were either redounding or wanting, necessary to take away the diseases affection, incident thereto, and cause thereof. Therefore I do not take out all the compositions vsuall in old writers, but the best onely: and oftentimes I put too new, to fill my worke with all kind of medicines, and I cut off many, which contained vnder those, make a confused heape: I haue kept their common names, but yet not with the same simples and doses euery where: for as much as certaine in many things were to be changed, to make the receipts more fit and pleasant for the cure of the malady. And at length, to do the Apothecaries pleasure, I haue sorted and set in one place the sirupes, in another the Electuaries, in another the potitions, and whatsoeuer else in their proper place, out of which they may be easily taken againe, and applyed to the practise and vse of curing.

OF SYRVPES.

Syrupus acidus simplex.

Syrupus acidus simplex: that is, the sharpe simple sirupe, doth prepare all humours, as well hote as cold, and with a certaine force doth attenuate them, doth withhold or restraine the corruption, doth mitigate the heate of choler, and asswage the burning of Agues and thirst, setteth at libertie, and scoureth the passages through the body obstructed, and doth piercingly enter into all parts, and also after a purgation it moueth sweate and vrine. ℞. *Aquæ purissimæ*, ℔. iiii. *Sacchari albi*, ℔. v. Boyle them so long as the cast vp a fome or skumme, and to the consumption of halfe the water: and then poure to them *Aceti vini albi*, ℔. iii. Boile them then againe to the thicknes of a sirupe.

In Syrupum acidum Scholia Guiliel. Plantij.

THe barbarous titles and names do apparantly argue, that sirupes and Iuleps, and many other as well simple as compound medicines, were the inuentions of the Arabians. But many yeares before them, the old Græcians had of the same matter, and for the same vse, their *Apozemata* (that is, decoctions, of water and herbes) in stead of sirupes, which because they were fitly applyed, as well to prepare the body as humours to purging, were of them termed *Propotismata*, as if you would say, potions before purging, because that according to the direct order of curing, they make a way for purging medicines. So *Galen* in *Mulso*, that is, wine and hony sodden together, and *Oxymelite*, that is, hony, vineger, and water boiled together, doth incoct *Origanum*, Hysope, Peniroyall, and Calamint, to the preparing of the body to be purged. And if he be an Author of credite, *Archigenes*, *Antonius*, *Musa*, and many other ancient Physitions did make such like sweete potions for sicke folke, of the iuyce of Cicory, Dill, Flowerdeluce, and Celidony, and such like herbes, tempered together with wine and hony by decoction for diuerse diseases of the Liuer and other parts affected. And *Dioscorides* did boile the roots, leaues, and tops of plants, and did straine the liquor boiled, and then ministred it either alone or else sweetned with *Mulso* or hony, or that they might be kept, did decoct it to the thicknesse of hony. So that these three, *Apozema*, *Syrupus*, and *Iulepus*, differ onely in the manner of conditure, that is, making them pleasant to the taste. For in *Apozemate*, because that vpon occasion suddenly and out of hand, for the most part, it is ordained to be disseuered into three or foure parts, to bring it to a seasonable sweetnesse, it shall be sufficient if he take the third part of Sugar or hony, or somewhat more then the third part of Sugar, in respect of the strained decoction and purified iuyce. But the sirups, to the intent they may be longer kept, require a perfect coction, and therefore it is meete to haue so much, or very little lesse Sugar or hony, as there is of the strained decoction or purified iuyce. But because the Iulep is more thinne, penetrating, and pleasant then the two before, it shall be sufficient enough if it haue the sixt part of Sugar, or in stead thereof the like quantity of a conuenient sirupe, so that there be somewhat more then the two parts of the Sugar

Sugar, in respect of the decoction prepared, or distilled waters. To all these potions made of decoctions and the iuyce of plants, and fruites, Sugar and hony be mingled, not onely for their preseruation, or for their sweetnesse and pleasantnesse in taste and sauour, but also for the proper force of hony and Sugar, which they impart vnto these decoctions. For sith these two be almost daily vsed, and familiar vnto vs, not onely for sauce, but also as meates, both wayes the potions to which these shall be mingled, do quicken and stirre vp the naturall strength astonied, or dulled, and languishing in sicknesse, and do comfort the naturall heate, which alone doth concoct and mitigate diseases; and by extenuating grosse matter, scouring slimie, and making a riddance of obstruction, they cause easie purgations. And these faculties come to the decoctions or potions by reason of the Sugar and hony, which decoctions notwithstanding of themselues do much auaile to diuerse vses, the commodities whereof I will declare in describing each of them, by obseruing that order which both the trade of compounding doth require, and the method of curing doth prescribe. For seeing the simple is by nature before the compound, and the right order of ministring medicines well, beareth by order one thing to be compounded and vsed before another, he beginneth first with those that are more simple medicines, & of such as by direct order of curing are vsed before others; minding to obserue the same order in all this booke, beginning with *Sirupus acidus simplex*, the sharpe simple sirupe. For in this place we speake not of *Apozemata* and Iuleps, but onely of such as are kept a long time of Apothecaries: and further, *Apozemata* agreeing to the diseases of euery part, haue bene handled before. And although *Condita*, commonly called Conserues, and of herbes and fruites certaine well seasoned iuyces, called of the Græcians ὀπτώληματα, be more simple then sirupes, and therefore might seeme the rather to be spoken of before; yet becaus for the most part they be ordained after purgations, to the keeping or getting of the strength of the parts, therefore my minde was to deferre them to another place, the method of curing so requiring. Now sirupes were inuented to haue in a readinesse so oft as occasion chanceth, becaus that herbes, and other roote, and fruites be not alwayes ready at hand, and sometime when they be at hand, necessitie so vrgeth, that there is no leysure to make of them *Apozemata* and Iuleps. In the first place the composition of sirupes is set downe, which are fit to prepare humours for purging: then after, such as be meete to purge the remnants of the parts, and to keepe or preserue their strength. And this generally of sirupes. Particularly the sharp simple sirupe was not to be made onely of vineger and Sugar, as other sharpe sirupes be, but also of water, to mitigate the strength and sharpnesse of vineger. Heed must be taken that in stead of white vineger, distilled be not put in, which being most sharpe doth pierce and pinch the other parts to no small annoyance of the receiuer. Heede likewise must be taken that no more quantity of vineger be put in: for this measure was thought meete and equall. But if any suspect the sharpnesse of the vineger, lest through his piercing cold, bodies of tender constitution, as of children, and specially of women, their wombe should be harmed, (for according to *Hippocrates*, vineger is noisome

to the wombe) they may when they vse it by mixture of some sweet or distilled water, or some meete decoction, make the sirupe more dilaied, or in stead of that vse *Oxysaccharum*, a sirupe of vineger and Sugar.

The sharpe compound sirupe is not here described, lest I should burthen the Apothecaries with vaine losse; for by putting too a portion of sirupes to rootes, it will be a compound seruing for the same vse. This was the purpose of the author, to propound the best compositions of all other to euery chiefe kind of disease, and cause that nothing should be wanting of remedie. But to take together a vaine and friuolous heape of medicines from all places, after the fashion of those which do fill papers vnconsiderately, with vnknowne and vnapproued remedies, I thought it too great a burthen for Apothecaries, and a worke not plaine, but full of confusion for students.

Syrupus è succo Limonum.

THe sirupe of the iuyce of Limons, doth losse extenuate & pierce then the sharpe sirupe, and yet the vehemency of choler and heate of the body and thirst it more aswageth, and doth more restraine the corruption of hote seauers, and the maladie of pestilent Agues; it defendeth likewise the strength of the mouth of the stomacke, and heart, and principall parts, it expelleth loathsomnesse, vomiting, defection of the mind, and swounding for feeblenesse, peculiarly it purgeth the kidneis, and prouoketh vrine. ℞. *succi Limonum* purified, and going through a woollen streiner without compulsion freely, ℔.vij. *Sacchari albi* Libræ v. Boile these with a soft fire into a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupe of Limons, *de Acetositate Citri* or of the sharpnesse of Citrons, of tart Pomgranates, *de Auranciis*, or of Oranges, of vnripe grapes, of the iuyce of Sorrel, of the iuyce of Barberies, and of *Ribes*, and all other tart or sharpe sirupes, be made of iuyces, which either by setling or by streining be made more cleare and pure. And to the iuyces is added like quantity of Sugar or somewhat lesse without mixture of any water: becausse the sharpe tartnesse of the sirupe is nothing noisome, but pleasant and comfortable to the heart: and it should be dilaied likewise with lesse Sugar (as in Iuleps) if the iuyces could be long preserued. There be some which purifie the iuyces by setting, or by setling them in the heate of the Sun, and fining them with the forming whites of egges, or else onely by wringing them out lightly, as in wine coming of the grapes, before they be pressed, called in Latine *vinum protopum*: and then with fined Sugar, that is boiled with the like quantitie of water, and after clarified, and at the last concocted to a Iulep, mixing by litle and litle the one with the other, they stirre them with a spatter vntill they come together, and become as one, or they boile it a little with Sugar throughly and well sod, or else with the best Sugar, such as the *Maderanum* is, they boile it so long, vntil the Sugar be melted and dissolued altogether. And thereof the sirupe of the iuyce of Limons, of Citrons, the sharpe simple sirupe, and the rosat Iulep become very white. As for the simple sirupe of Pomgranates, Barberies, of *Ribes*, of red vineger, to keepe the fineues of their naturall colour, must not so long for mixture sake be beaten together with a pestle. And this order of composition in the iuyces, chiefly of tart fruits, taketh place: for other iuyces of herbes,

of

of roots,&c. require more preparatiõ to the making of a ſirupe; for they muſt be boiled twiſe,once by themſelues almoſt to the conſumption of the 3. part: after, when they haue bene purified with ſtraining and ſetling, they muſt be concocted with the beſt Sugar to a ſirupe, otherwiſe they do ſoone corrupt, and become hoarie and mouldy.

The ſirupes that follow made of ſharpe iuyces are in force like to the former,as the ſirupe of the tart iuyce of Citrons, the ſirupe of ſharpe Pomgranates,the ſirupe *de Aurancijs*,the ſirupe of *Omphacio*,that is,vnripe grapes, the ſirupe of the iuyce of Sorrell. But peculiarly the ſirupe of ſharpe Citrons doth quench the heate of an Ague, and reſtraineth the corruption and malady thereof. The ſirupe of Pomegranates doth corroborate the ſtomacke, and the chiefe entrailes of a man, as the ſpleene, the liuer, the lungs,&c. it reſtraineth vomiting,& mitigateth ſwounding. The ſirupe *de Aurancijs* doth more comfort the heart,& is more pleaſant. The ſirupe *de Omphacio* doth more quench thirſt. The ſirupe of the iuyce of Sorrell doth allay choler,& open obſtruction, The ſirupe of *Ribes* is more ſweet in taſt,and more aſtringent. The way or order of making them all is alike,for in the iuyce of euery one of them purged, a little leſſe Sugar muſt be diſſolued,and theſe two put in a tinne veſſell, muſt be ſet on the fire,and boyled by litle and litle to a ſirupe.

Oxyſaccharum ſimplex.

Oxyſaccharum ſimplex, hath a mixed nature or force,both to attenuate, to abate, to dull, to corroborate or comfort, and is good againſt a diuerſe mixture of humours, and vnſtable agues ariſing thereof. ℞. *Succi Mali punici acidi*, that is, ſoure Pomegranates, ℥ viij. *Aceti*,℥ iiij. *Sacchari albi & puri* ℔ j.Boyle them to the thickneſſe of a ſirupe.

Plantivs.

Oxyſaccharum hath the ſame vertue that the ſoure ſirupe hath, but not in like force,ſauing it excelleth to comfort and roborate, and therefore the vſe thereof is more ſafer in diſeaſes chancing in Sommer, and tender bodies, then of the ſharpe ſirupe. Leſt ſo great varietie of ſirupes ſhould be retained in vaine, I omit *Oxyſaccharum compoſitum*, *Oximeli compoſitum*, and *Oximeli ſcyllitícum*,that is, made of *Scylla*; for when they are thought good to be vſed, the Phyſitions may make and preſcribe them ſpeedily and fitly, *Oxyſacchari*, ℥ j.*Sirupi maioris è radicibus*,℥ ij.*vel ſirupi Adianti*,℥ j.ß.

Oximel ſimplex.

Oximel ſimplex,doth extenuate groſſe humours,and doth ſcoure out ſlimy matter,doth open old obſtructions, doth expell from the cheſt thicke matter, and is good againſt *Aſthma*, that is, obſtructions of the lungs with fleame, whereof ariſeth ſhortneſſe of wind, and rebellious agues. ℞. *aquæ puriſſimæ*, *mellis optimi*,ana. ℔. iiij. Boyle them vntill with the exhaling halfe the water be conſumed,and then poure in of *Aceti acerrimi*, that is,very ſharp vineger,℔ ij.and let them be boyled againe by euaporation to a meete conſiſtence. That which is made more liquid,hath *aquæ puriſſimæ*, ℔.j.*mellis optimi*,℥ iiij.*aceti*,℥ j.ß.Let theſe be boiled by fomẽting out eaſily their corruptiõ.

Oxymel Scylliticum.

OXymel *Scylliticum*, doth more forcibly attenuate grosse matter, & is good for all things we haue spokē of; and it is made of Vineger of *Scylla*, which is put to hony boyled and clarified by soming, and sodde as the other, both become cōpound by putting too double portiō of the sirupe *è radicibus Maiorū*.

PLANTIVS.

Acetū mulsū. We haue lesse vse of *Oxymel*, that is, sweete vineger, then the ancient Physitions had, who then had not inuented the sharpe sirupe, which (the powder of cleansing onely excepted, wherein hony excelleth Sugar) hath other vertues not much inferiour to *Oxymel*, and besides other effects, is very good against agues. But sweet vineger which euery where is in vse in Apothecaries shops, is very vnsauory, whether it be full of the too much grossenesse, coming of ouerseething thereof, or of the too much sharpnesse which is not so much qualified and dulled with the mixture of our hony as of Sugar. For although you delay and dissolue that thicke *Oxymel* with sweet water, or some set decoction, yet you shall neuer make it so pleasant to drinke as the soure sirupe. That which is made by many, more thinner for present occasion, and is called *Galēs oxymel.* *Oxymel Galeni*, is more piercing into euery part, and more pleasant. For whereas for the little boyling it doth not thicken, but the thickenesse of the water is therein retained, which the thickenesse of the vineger doth further, and all the filthinesse of the hony partly by skumming, partly by clarifying is taken away: therefore it becometh most thinne and most cleare, especially if it haue bene made with white vineger, and white hony; and with the little sharpnesse of vineger, it becometh nothing vnpleasant to the taster: but it is found by experience, that by too much vse, and too great a draught thereof, the stomacke is annoyed, chiefly in those, whose mouth of the stomacke is by nature feeling and sensible. Wherefore there is no safe vse thereof in agues, whether you make it sowrer or sweeter. *Note of the best hony.* Choose good hony which is betwixt thicke and thin, most sweet and sharpe in taste, and therewith making a sweet taste, and biting the tongue, as it were, with pulling; in colour pale, or somewhat red and cleare, most fragrant and new, and which taken out and handled, for his clammie humour, is not disseuered or pulled into parts: heauie in weight or ponderous. Wherefore that which is in the bottome of the vessell is better then that which swimmeth aboue, and it doth cast vp litle skum in boyling. But in our daies there hath bene brought the white and sweetest hony, and aromaticke indeed, most liquide and fluent, and making a white and hard crust vpon it, out of *Lusitania*, or *Portugall*, and *Gedano* to *Antwerpe*, hony as good as either the *Atticke* or *Siculum*. But they counterfeit that hony (as many other things else) and forge another in stead thereof, by often washing and whiting; which deceit of theirs you may easily find out by the vnsweetnesse of smelling and vnsauorinesse of tasting. Then next, this both in goodnesse, and in colour, is the *Narbonense* hony; and in those regions also our countrey hony, that which cometh out of the combes freely, and is commonly called Virgine hony, is best. The worst hony by boiling is made better, and the vse of the skummed is alwayes fitter, except by long abiding in the stomacke it swell it, and become vehement hote, and augment choler. Hony is good for children that haue no wormes,

wormes, and for old men, for it causeth order and state, and stirreth vp and preserueth naturall heate, it prolongeth old age, and is euill for choleticke and young men, because it is easily turned to choler. *The vertues of hony.*

Syrupus è Cichorio.

Syrupus è Cichorio doth coole moderately, doth comfort all the *viscera*, that is, principall parts within, as the heart, liuer, and lungs, with an easie binding, and doth set at libertie the obstructions of the liuer, and other parts by scouring and opening; it doth quench choler, and maketh it meete for purgation: in the beginning of hote, pestilent, and vehement feuers, it is meet and wholesome. ℞. *totius Intubi agrestis*, that is, of the whole Cichory, ℥. iiij. *radicum Oxalidis graminis & Asparagi*, bruised ana. ℥ ij. *Lichenis, Eupatorij, Intubi satiui*, commonly called Endiue, *Seriolæ, Cicerbitæ, Lactucæ satiuæ, & agrestis, Adianti albi, Adianti nigri, Adianti simplicis, Saxifragi, Lupulorum Cassutha*, ana. M. j. Boyle them in x. ℔. of water, vntill it come to vj. In the strained decoction dissolue *Sacchari albissimi*, ℔. vj. and boile all these together to a clarified syrupe.

Plantivs.

Whereas the syrupe of *Cichory*, of the description of *Nicolaus Florentinus*, or *Gulielmus Placentinus* is oft in vse, & both their syrupes doth consist of a cõfused heap of simples, as wel cold as hote without order, & of Reubarbe, that it is hard to tell to what vse they may be applyed: not without good reason, the description is here changed & framed to those ends which be here expressed in the title, to the which neither of the other can be applied for the hot roots. If it be desired to be somwhat tart or sharp, there may be mixed to it the third part of *Acetosus syrupus*, or *Oxysaccharũ*; or if it must be somewhat hotter, or more piercing, as against many diseases heaped together, so much or halfe so much of the syrupe of roots: if reubarb must be at any time put to it, it rather seemeth meet to be put in thereto, at the time of vsing then making thereof, because the vertue of Reubarbe to spurge, both by boiling & long keeping, vanisheth away; and this syrupe made rather for preparation then purgation, and there is more strength of roborating in Reubarbe, then that well doth agree to a preparatiue potion. But neither in the time of ministring can Reubarbs commodiously be intermixed, *viz.* the grosnes of the syrupe hindering the operatiõ of purging, either by making it very litle or else none at all: & for the same thicknesse the syrupe it selfe is not so effectuall for those purposes, for which it was described, as if it were dissolued and made more sweete, with some conuenient decoction: therefore they worke not for any commodity of the sicke, but only of losse, which to euery pound of the syrupe do employ, ℥. j. of Reubarbe, and do not onely double and triple, but also mixe by measure foure or fixe times so much, contrary to the credite of all books, which for euery pound do bid & will onely, ℥. iiij. to be mingled. And they also be far wide which do affirme that this syrupe must be made of the only iuyce of Cichory, no otherwise then the syrupe of the iuyce of Citrin: for although therein they haue the truth, whẽ they accoũt a heap of cõpound simples contrary one to another, to be reiected in the composition of medicines, & therfore do refuse the compositions of *Gulielm. Placenti, & Nicola Floren.* of Cichory, as cõtrary, & made rashly, and

without reason, yet notwithstanding the composition of the iuyce of Cichory must not take place in stead of them, when as it cannot truly be ordained for that vse, to the which the sirupe of Cichory by experience is found to availe: for whether when choler must be prepared to purgation, or the stopping of the Liuer and other parts must be opened, or you haue occasion to coole, and moderatly roborate, as in the beginning of vehement & pestilent agues; which of these I pray you can this sirupe do or bring to passe, which first by much and long beating and hard straining is made thicker, and then after by it selfe boiled to the consumption of the 3. part, and after concocted with Sugar to the grossenesse of a sirupe, by euaporation hath almost lost all the vertue, as much almost becommed as meere Sugar? It is far otherwise in the decoction and iuyce of fruits, especially sharpe, as the iuyce of Oranges, Citrons, Limons, Pomegranates, and such like; for they shed their whole force vpon sirupes, whereas, neither by pressing their tenuitie, neither by concoction, they leese their facultie, as we haue noted in other places aboue. And decoctions because they haue the force of many simples, and for the water be more thin & fluxible, do not thicken, and leese their vertue in boyling: whereupon the sirupes consisting of these decoctions be more meet and amiable to prepare the body to purging; but they which be made of their iuyces after purgation (the body being now open and pliant) be better adiudged to those vses, which he (I thinke) doth repeate in describing euery one of them.

Syrupus Intubi domestici.

Syrupus Intubi domestici, doth allay choller, doth coole the Liuer, and purge and strengthen it, and cureth the laundies and diseases comming of the obstructions of the Liuer, very commodious after purgations: and when the matter of an Ague and other diseases is after a sort well and throughly digested. ℞. *Endiuiæ recentis, Seriolæ, Lichenis, Lactucæ, Agrimonij, Cicerbitæ, Hieracij*, ana. M. j. ʃ. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum*, ana. ℥. j. *Santali albi, & rubri, contusorum Rosarum rubrarum*, ana. ℥ ij. Boile them in viij. pound of water to the halfe; to the strained liquor put of white Sugar iiij. pounds. Seeth them together all againe, and skum and fine them as they boile, adde thereto of the iuyce of Endiue purged by setling ℔. j. Afterward of the pure iuyce of Pomegranates without dregs, ℥ iiij. Boile them all together to the height of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

The Author thought this sirupe of Endiue meet to be made and retained, although it were the inuention of an vncertaine Author, because it seemed to be described vpon good ground of reason, & therfore will be more effectuall then if it were made of the sole iuyce of Endiue, as many would haue it. After the body is purged, it availeth for all the diseases of the Liuer; and to purge the residents of cholericke maladies, & chiefly necessary for the scab and the itch.

Syrupus Byzantinus.

Syrupus Byzantinus hath a mixed vertue both to addresse & purge the Liuer and spleene, and that after purgation; for the yellow and blacke laundies, and the remnants of Agues especially good. ℞. *Succi Intubi satiri & Apij*, ana. ℔. ij. *succi Lupi Salictarij & Buglossi*, ana. ℔. j. In seething cleanse them till they waxe cleare, and make a sirupe with iij. pounds of Sugar.

PLAN-

PLANTIVS.

The interpreter of *Mesua* denieth the vse of sirupe *Bizantine* in Agues before the seuenth day; for commonly immediatly at the beginning of compoũd Agues, the Physitions vse *Strupus acetosus simplex*, which the decoction of Fennell, and the third part of hony roset. But after purgation, because it mightily scoureth the relickes of the diseases *Hepaticke* and *Splenaticke*, this sirupe *Byzantinus* is good to cure all maladies of both the forenamed intrals, which be hard to be dissolued, and rebellious to be cured, as the blacke & yellow Iaundies, especially by putting thereto sirupe *è radicibus*. The compoũd is omitted, because it doth depraue the force of the simple, and hath too much vineger.

Syrupus Scolopendrij.

Syrupus Scolopendrij doth extenuate, mollifie, and make fluent grosse and earthy melancholy, it openeth the stopping of the spleene, and doth abate the swelling thereof, and is specially good for malancholy Quartanes, and continuall agues. ℞. *Polypodij è quercu, radicum vtriusque Bugloſſi, corticis radicum Capparis, corticum Thamarisci, singu.* ℥ ij. *Scolopendrij veri*, M. iij. *Lupi salictarij, Cassuthæ, Capilli Veneris, Melissophylli, singulo* M. ij. *Coquantur in aquæ* ℔. ix. vntill there remaine, v. Put to the strained decoction, of white Sugar, ℔ iiij. Boile them to a fined and cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Sirupus Scolopendrij, the Author heare to this place hath referred well, & for great vse made, because there was no sirupe of the old Physitions description meet to prepare earthy & massie malancholy. The true *Scolopendrium* or Harts tongue is, *Asplenium Dioscoridis* and *officinarum Ceterach*.

Syrupus è radicibus.

Syrupus è radicibus doth scoure and extenuate, and prepare slimy and grosse fleame, it openeth the obstructions of the liuer, & all the other entrals: it asswageth swellings, taketh away the euill colour of vrines, prouoketh vrine, and doth quite make an end of agues hardly dissolued, and old diseaseases. ℞. *radicum Apij, Fœniculi, Petroselini, Ruſci & Asparagi*, ana. ℥ iij *radicum Capparis & Rubiæ*, ana. ℥ ij. *Coquantur in* ℔. x *hydromelytis diluti*, (that is dissolued) vntill they come to ℔. vj. and *cum saccharo*, ℔. v. make a cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be confected of roots two sirupes, one of the two rootes of Parcely and Fennell he omitted of set purpose as nothing effectuall, and easie to be come by, if need require, and thought meet to retaine the other fiue as of greater vertue; to which he hath vpon good consideration added the roots of *Capparis & Rubiæ*, that it might be more effectuall for diuerse vses. He omitted vineger, because for the most part it is desired without it; and if need require, a portion of the sharp sirupe may easily by prescript be mingled thereto & somewhat likewise it may be tempered with the mixture of other sirupes.

Syrupus Adiantinus.

Syrupus Adiantinus doth with a moderateheate easily and gently diuide and scoure all humours alike, in what part of the body soeuer they be, agreeable

ble to euery diſeaſe beginning, euery nature, age, region, and women with child. ℞. *Adianti albi*, M.iij. *Adianti nigri, Adianti ſimplicis, Saxifragi, Betonicæ, Pimpinellæ, Aſplenij*, ana, M.ij. *Coquantur ex aquæ* ℔.viij. vntill they cõſume to v. And in the preſſed decoction, diſſolue or melt *ſaccari albi*. ℔.iij. *millis optimi expurgati*. ℔.ß.

PLANTIVS.

Sith there is no artificiall deſcription extant of maidenhaire, this is commodiouſly entermingled amongſt the other which is compound of choſen ſimples auailing altogether to diuers effects by their temperature. Wherefore this ſirupe of all other for his manifold and diuerſe vſe, is of moſt operation, *polychreſtus*. i. very good for the diſeaſes of all parts, eſpecially of the breaſt, the liuer the ſpleene, the kidneyes, and all diſeaſes of the wombe in all ages and natures. And the prerogatiue alſo thereof is ſuch, that it doth make ſoluble whoſoeuer vſeth it any ſpace; and it doth not only prepare humours, but alſo purge them when they be prepared, & eſpecially groſſe fleame and cholour, as certaine new Phyſitions and we alſo haue obſerued in practiſe oftentimes: the which effect likewiſe the decoction *omnium Adiantorum*, but eſpecially the white hath, although contrariwiſe *Dioſcor.* teacheth that it bindeth. But they which do mingle either Raiſins or Liquorice with *Adiantis* into the ſirupe, do reſtraine the large and ample nature thereof for diuerſe vſes, to ſome peculiar effect, and by mixture dull the force thereof in extenuating & ſcouring. They ſhould therefore more fitly make this ſirupe of the ſole decoction of *Adiantinorum*, which might be reſerued as a common matter for euery kinde of griefe; & thẽ they might apply it as need required to the diſeaſes of this or that part. As for example, to the breaſt affected, with Raiſins and Liquorice decocted; for the liuer, with the decoctiõ of *Agrymony* or *Cichory*; for the ſpleneꝛ, *Aſplenij aut Tamariſci*; for the kidnies, ſuch things as prouoke vrine, and breake the ſtone. For ſo by a fit and meet decoction, the common nature of the ſirupe may likewiſe be applyed to ſome one part, and his ſtrength augmented which in the ſole ſirupe deſcribed is very much effectuall.

This cõpoſition of ſirupes haue bene meete to prepare bodies to purgation: now we muſt teach what ſirupes be good to purge the relickes of euery part.

Syrupus è Stœchade.

Sirupus è Stœchade is wonderfull good againſt cold diſeaſes of the braine, & nerues or ſinewes, as *Paralyſis*, j. the Palſey, *Epilepſia*, the falling euill, *Conuulſio*, the Crampe, *tremor*, j. quaking, & diſtilling out of the head when it lieth. ℞ *florũ Stœchados*, ℥.iij. *Thymi, Calaminthes, Origani*, an. ℥ j ß. *Saluiæ, Betonicæ, florum Roriſmarini*, ana. ℥ ß. *ſeminis Rutæ, Pœoniæ, Feniculi*, ana. ℥.iij. boile thẽ in x. ℔. of water till the halfe be conſumed: when the decoction is ſtrained, boyle it againe to a ſirupe with hony and Sugar, of each ij. pound, and condite it with Cinamon, Ginger, *Calamus aromaticus*, of each, ℥.ij. which being bound vp in a courſe cloth with open threeds, muſt be hanged in the ſirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Sirupus è Stœchade, becauſe it was not good in working for the head, he hath not without cauſe put certaine other things, as Sage, Betony, Roſemary, the ſeed of Rew, Piony, and Fennell, very profitable for the ſundry diſeaſes of the braine

braine and sinewes; otherwise I see not wherefore this sirupe ought much to be applied or ordained for the diseases of the braine, sith *Stœchas* which is the chiefe in this description, and is as it were the *basis*, that is, the ground of the sirupe, is rather *hepatica*, that is, good for the liuer, or *splenica*, that is, good for the spleene, then *cephalica*, that is, good for the head. For it is chiefly commended for the stopping of all the intrails, the which with his thin and hot substance it doth easily open, and with the other somewhat astringing earthy quality, doth corroborate all the inward parts. If you want *Calamus aromaticus* for to make it sweet in tast, in stead thereof may be vsed *Nux muschata*, which hath singular force to comfort the braine.

Syrupus Rosarum siccarum.

THe sirupe of dry Roses doth mitigath the hote diseases of the braine, it asswageth the thirst, strengtheneth the stomacke, causeth sleepe, and stayeth thin defluxiõs. ℞ *aquæ simplicis* ℔ iiij. in the which being made bloud warme soke xxiiij. houres red Roses dried ℔ j. & after this be strained dissolue therein white Sugar ℔ ij. this done, boile them to the substance of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Certaine Physitions thinke good to renew the infusion of dry Roses twise or thrise, to the intent (as they suppose) the force of the sirupe might be augmented: whereas notwithstanding one onely infusion is for that purpose as effectuall: for in three infusions it is necessary that great store of water be vsed, as for a pound of Roses, viij. pounds of water; otherwise with manifold maceration the water wil either be drunke vp, or with forcible straining wil become too thicke: and as for the vertue and strength of Roses, the sirupe will as much draw and drinke vp by one infusion as by many, as it chanceth by salt when it is dissolued in water. This sirupe is auaileable in euery fluxe of the belly, and it is of like operation in comforting and strengthening the parts of the body; in agglutinating vlcers, and in mundifying them mildly, both by it selfe, and also ministred with other things.

Syrupus Nymphææ.

THis sirupe of *Nymphæa* mitigateth the heate of the head, Frensies, and watchings, procureth sleepe, and lastly asswageth the sharpnesse of distillations ℞. *Florum Nymphææ recentium*, ℔ ß. *Florum Violarum*, ℥ ij. *seminum Dactucæ*, M. ij *semi lactucæ*, ℥ ß. Adde to these before the boiling, *Portulacæ*, ℥ ß. *& Cucurbitæ*, ℥ ß. Boile them in foure pound of water till one be consumed, and when it is strained, put thereto of distilled Rose water ℔ ß. white Sugar ℔ iij. and boile them to a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

The simple sirupe of *Nymphæa* is omitted as nothing commodious; and as for the compound sirupes, according to the description of *Franciscus Pedemontanus*, by reason of sundrie seeds, vineger, and the iuyce of Pomegranates, it is nothing conuenient nor commodious to worke these things, for which it is required. Wherefore vpon good occasion, here is described another very easie and profitable to those vses which are propounded in the description. The flowers of that *Nymphæa* which hath yellow flowers and white root, is to be preferred in the composition of this sirupe.

Sirupus de Papauere.

SIrupe of Poppy hath the same vertue that *Nimphæa* hath, but peculiarly it stayeth a grieuous cough, and such distillations as do exasperate the iawes and throate, ℞. *capitum Papaueris albi* not throughly riped and new, ℥. viii. *capitum Papaueris nigri recentium*, ℥. vi. *Aquæ cœlestis*, ℔ iiii. boyle them to the consumption of halfe, and put thereinto *Sacchari & Penidiorum*, ana. ℥. viii. Boile them to the consistance of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

In the simple sirupe of Poppy, there be fewer heads of the blacke Poppy put in, because it cannot so safely be vsed as the white: as for the compound sirupe of Poppy, hauing many lenitiue things, it is therefore omitted and not put in practise, because when necessitie requireth it may easily be prepared, by putting too this sirupe, or the sirupe of Iuiubes, or of Violets.

Diacodion.

D*Iacodion* as it procureth sleepe, so it abandoneth the destillation of the braine whithersoeuer it presseth, it staieth the *Dysenteria* and other fluxe of the belly. ℞. *capita Papaueris albi* meanely great and meanely ripe, *numero* xii. *Aquæ cœlestis*. ℔. ii. Boyle them to the third part, and when it is strained put thereto of the best *Sapa*, that is, new wine boyled to the third part, ℥. iiii. *Mellis optimi*, ℥. ii. Boile all these together: put in the end of the decoction, *Rosarum rubrarum, Balaustiorum, Acatiæ, Rhois culinarij tritorum*, ana. ℥. ii. *seminis Portulacæ, Coralli albi & rubri*, ana. ℥. j.

PLANTIVS.

Diacodion is brought into a better forme, seruing to stay distillations, by reiecting certaine vnnecessary and vnpleasant things. *Dios.* to the same purpose boileth the heads of Poppy alone in water to the consumption of halfe, and then putting thereto hony and the iuyce of *Hypocistu*, he reduceth it to the consistance of an *Ecligma*. As for the heads of the Poppy, they must neither be too greene, nor through drinesse too much voide of iuyce, but when they begin through a greene kind of ripenesse to rattle, they must be gathered for this composition. Whereupon they be termed of the Græcians Κώδιονες & Κώδια, that is, the whiskling heads of the Poppy. For that this composition through too much thickenesse may be vnpleasant to some, when it is to be taken, it may be dilayed with the decoction of Barley, or some other thing of like conueniency: and also if sleepe must be procured, or danger be imminent of a sharpe and thin fluxion of exasperation, both to stay and asswage that, you may lawfully augment the force of *Diacodion* with a fresh decoction of the seeds of Poppy, or with the thicke iuyce strained out of the decoction of Barley. Neither is it to be dread lest harme should betide to the body by Poppy, notwithstanding it be recorded by Authors to be cold in the fourth degree, sith that sundry nations do vse with meats after the fashion of herbes, the tender springs of Poppy, and do feed of an oyle pressed out of the seeds thereof: and in preparing dainties, they sprinkle the seeds thereof vpon tarts and cakes made to please the taste, without any annoyance or heauinesse through sleepe. And in such like order the Ægyptians vse to make the taste pleasant, *Oleum*

Sesaminum

Sesaminum & Sesamum: and *Petronius*, grounding vpon that custome vsed in the Latine tongue for an eloquent and pleasant oration and composition of words, to say, all his sayings and doings are as it were sprinkled with Poppy and *Sesamum*. For both the liquor of Poppy, called in Greeke *Opium*, and the iuyce wrung out of the leaues and heads, termed in Greek *Meconium*, consist not of an vniforme, but of manifold substance, one watery and very cold, another airy temperate, the third hote, bitter, and sweet smelling. The first is more apparent in greene and tender Poppies, the two last in dry. As for the *Opium* or rather *Meconium* which is brought to vse, it is altogether counterfeit, and through a secret quality is noysome, & therefore in no case to be vsed, though it be neuer so artificially corrected. For whereas *Opium* is by great labour in litle quantity confected of the milke of the seeds of wild Poppy, and *Meconium* without any trouble is abundantly pressed out of the leaues, the factors which seeke after gaine and lucre, may easily counterfeit *Opium*, or in stead thereof bring out of *Naples* and *Spaine*, *Meconium*.

Syrupus Violarum compositus.

THe compound sirupe of Violets doth mitigate a sharpe distillation, doth asswage hoarsnesse, grieuous cough and roughnesse of the arteries, doth ease the Pleurisie, and doth quench thirst. ℞. *Florum Violarum recentium*, ℥. ij. *seminis Cydoniorum, & Maluæ*, ana ℥. j. *Zizyphæ, Myxariæ*, ana. in number 20. *decocti Cucurbitæ vel seminis eius*, ℔. v. Boile them to the halfe, and with ℔. ii. of Sugar, compound them to a sirupe.

Plantivs.

In this compound sirupe there is nothing changed, because he thought it compounded artificially seruing commodiously by smoothing, chooling, moistening, against all the heate and roughnesse of the arterie, as also it appeaseth vehement burning of the vrine, and the vehement torments of the reines: for the herbe and leaues of the Violet boyled, haue a ripening faculty in them, the seed is good to purge choler in such wise as Rewbarbe doth: in the midst of the floure there is a thing somewhat yellowish, which is recorded to be helpefull for the *Angina* and the *Epilepsia* in children, if it be drunke with water. The flower of Violet and a simple sirupe made of it, by infusion once or twise, doth mitigate, asswage, and scoure scorching and shrape humours; and therefore is very necessary in a pleurisie, and bringeth vnder blark burnt choler, and the noysome vapors arising thereof, & thereby doth set at quiet the *Symptomata* arising thereof, namely, the headach, watchings, and dreaming, and expelleth the heauines of the heart, it temperateth hotter and dryer medicines, by mitigating them commodiously. Whereas then these qualities be singular, the sirupe confected of the infusion of fresh Violets, may be iustly registred amongst the sirupes seruing to many vses. This infusion wrung out of pleasant or well smelling Violets, dried somewhat in the shawdow, as it behoueth, and soaked in luke warme water, if it be boyled with very good Sugar to the consistency of a sirupe, may be kept the continuance of a yeare and more without any filth or corruption, to the vses before repeted and is to be taken both before and after purgation. As for those which reiterate the soaking of

the Violets and Roſes nine times in the decoction of the ſirupe of Violets and Roſes, they labour in vaine; for they cannot become leſſe effectuall in working, though they vſe (at the moſt) infuſion but foure times, as we will declare to Apothecaries in the forme of making medicines. As for the ſirupe of Liquorice, it ſeemeth nothing commodious, becauſe it is of little vertue, and for that it is contained in the ſirupe of Hyſope: and ſuch great variety of ſirupes bringeth rather confuſion then commodity to ſtudents.

Syrupus Zizyphorum, vel Iuiubarum.

Syrupus zizyphorum accompliſhed the ſame which the ſirupe of Violets doth, but with more efficacy both of them are conuenient in the beginning of the diſeaſe. ℞. *Zizyphorum num.* Lx. *Myxaria num.* xx *florum Violarum, Adianti albi, Hordei à cortice liberi, Glycyrrhizæ*, an. ℥ vj. *ſemi. Malue Cydoniorũ, ſemi, Papaueris albi, Melonum & Lactucæ, Tragacanthæ*, ana. ℥ iij. The ſeeds of *Cydoniorũ*, of Mallowes, & Tragacanth bound in a courſe cloth, muſt be boiled with the reſt in ℔ v. of water, to the conſumption of halfe, and then with ℔ ij. of white Sugar to the ſubſtance of a ſirupe.

Syrupus de Hyſſopo.

Syrupus de Hyſſopo by a gentle and light mitigation, doth purge and ridde the breaſt and lungs of all hote and cold maladies, doth concoct the ſpittle or fleame, and make it more eaſie to be auoyded, by attenuating and ſcouring it. And laſtly it is good as well for the aggrieuances, as approching or inclination of *Peripneumonia & Pleuritis*. ℞ *Hyſſopi arefacti*, ℥ j. ß. *radicum Polypodij quercini, Fæniculi, Glycyrrhizæ, ſemi. Carthami*, ana ℥ j *Hordei expurgati, Adianti albi*, ana. ℥ ß. *Paſſularum purgatarum*, ℥ j. ß. *Ficus ſiccas, Palmulas pingues*, ana. x. *numer.* Boyle them in ℔ vj. of water to the conſumption of halfe, and boile the ſtrained iuyce thereof into a ſirupe, with a pound and a halfe of hony, and *Sacchari*, ℔ j. ß.

PLANTIVS.

The deſcription of the ſirupe of Hyſope, remaineth vnuaried, ſaue in ſtead of the roote of Smallage, there is ſubſtituted the roote of *Polypodij*, and for the roote of Parcely, the ſeed of garden Saffron, which be much more fit and commodious. Certaine mitigatiues be abſtracted which be ſufficient enough in the ſirupe of Violets and Iuiubes, the rather to make the force of the ſirupe more ſcouring.

Syrupus de Praſſio.

SYrupe of Horehound cutteth mightily, attenuateth, ſcoureth, and purgeth the diſeaſes of the breaſt and the Liuer; it is excellent good againſt inueterate diſeaſes of groſſe and ſlimy fleame, as for *Aſthma, Tuſſis vetus, Empiemæ*, and alſo auaileable for *Peripneumonia* and *Pleuritis* already enclined. ℞. *Praſſii albi recentis*, ℥ ij. *Glycyrrhizæ, Polypodij quercini, radicum Apij & Fæniculi*, ana. ℥ ß. *Adianthi albi, Hyſſopi, Origani. Calaminthæ Stœbes, Satureiæ, Tuſſilaginis*, ana. ℥ vi. *ſemi. Antiſi, & Bombacis*, ana ℥ iii. *Vuarum paſſarum expurgatarum*, ℥ ii. *Ficus paſſus pingues*, x. *numer.* Boile them in viii. pounds of *Hydromel*, diluyed to the conſumption of the halfe; boile the ſtrained iuyce into a ſirupe with

with hony, ℔.ii. and white Sugar, ℔. ii. Season and sweeten it with an ounce of the powder of the roote of the Florentine flowerdeluce.

PLANTIVS.

The sirupe of Horehound seemed confused of so great a mixture of lenitiue, scouring, and cutting simples, that it was difficult to declare to what vse it serued; which may be also affirmed of many other sirupes, which be gathered out of diuerse Authors without any methode or reason. Wherefore fith before hath bene propounded the sirupe of Violets and Iuiubes, for moistening and sufficient lenitiue; and the sirupe of Hysope for scouring moderately, cutting and purging the diseases of the breast, the Authour thought it necessary vpon good ground, to annect this sirupe of Horehound, being of a very good deuiding and scouring facultie, thereby the rather to cure extreme and rooted diseases, which notwithstanding who will, may temper with the mixture of the other.

Sirupus Symphyti.

SYrupus *Symphyti* doth purge mildly and easily the quitture and filthinesse of consuming and vlcerated lungs, without feare of any issue out of bloud, and doth corroborate the lungs. ℞. *radicum & cymarum Symphyti maioris & minoris*, ana. M.iij. *Rosarum rubrarum, Betonicæ, Plantaginis, Pimpinellæ, Polygoni, Scabiosæ, Tussilaginis*, ana. M.ij. All being bruised fresh or greene, you must straine out the iuyce which must be boiled and skummed to ℔ iij. and make a sirupe thereof by putting thereto of white Sugar, ℔.ij.ß.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there was no sirupe yet extant at any time, or set out in vse for the consumed & purulent lungs: in so great scarcity this profitable sirupe of Comfery was vpon good ground of art here to be placed.

Sirupus è succo Buglossi.

SYrupe of the iuyce of Buglosse, doth especially comfort & cheere the heart, and maketh a riddance of the quiuering and swounding thereof, and is very good for melancholy and mad persons. ℞. *succi Buglossi defæcati*, that is, purified, ℔.iii. *Sacchari albi*, ii. Boyle them to the consistence of a sirupe.

The sirupe of the iuyce of garden Buglosse, of the iuyce of Violets, of the iuyce of Peaches, be all cordiall, and are made all one way.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing was to be changed either in the sirupe of wild or garden Buglosse, or in the sirupe of the iuyce of Violets, or in the iuyce of Peaches, or of the barke of Oranges: but there was great occasion to adde the sirupe of Mint, because there was none in vse which did make a riddance of the diseases of the heart, and take away the annoyance of pestilent and venimous diseases.

Sirupus è cortice Mali Citrij.

THe sirupe of the barke of the Orange, or Pome-citron doth renew and exhilarate the heart being heauy, and the trembling thereof of any cold cause, and driueth away sorrow. ℞. *corticum Citriorum Malorum recentium* infused or prepared in ℔. j. of water. Boyle them in vi.℔. of water till iiij.

be

be consumed, and with iij. ℔. of white Sugar make a sirupe, and condite it with gran. vj. of muske.

Syrupus Melissophylli.

SYrupe of Balmemint is of all other the best for the trembling and ouercasting of the heart, and of a peculiar power it abateth the malignitie of pestilent and venimous diseases, and maketh a riddance thereof. ℞ *radicum Dictamni, Pentaphylli, Betonicæ, Doronici, Romani*, ana ℥ ß. *foliorum Melissophylli, Stœbes, & Morsus florum Bugloss. vtriusque, & Rorismarini*, ana M. j. *Semi. Oxalidis, Citrij mali, Fœniculi, Attractylidis*, that is, *Cardui Benedicti, & Ocimi*, ana. ℥. iij. Boile them in ℔. iiij. of water, to the consumption of halfe, and being strained, put thereto ℔ iij of white Sugar, of the iuyce of Balme and Rose water, ana. ℔ ß. Boile all this into a sirupe, condited of Cinamon and yellow Saunders, ana. ℥ ß.

Sirupus è Menta.

SYrupe of Mint doth heate the stomacke moderately, and doth corroborate it with an easie adstriction, it helpeth concoction, abateth loathsomnesse, vomite, chincough, and lientery, ℞. *Succi Cydoniorum dulcium, succi Cydoniorum acidodulcium*, that is, tarty-sweet *succi Granatorum dulcium acidorum, succi Granatorum acidodulcium*, ana ℔. j. ß. Mixe these together, and infuse ℔. j. ß. of dry Mint in them xxiiij. houres, of red Roses, ℥ ij Boyle them to th halfe, and when they be strained, put to them ℔. iiij. of white Sugar; and to condite the sirupe, boile ℥. iij. of *Gallia muscha* bound in a cloth.

PLANTIVS.

In the greater sirupe of Mint, nothing was to be varied; neither was the other lesse sirupe to be set downe, for that it is comprehended vnder the greater: and in the sirupe of Wormewood nothing is to be changed.

Syrupus Absynthij.

THe sirupe of Wormewood either purgeth or consumeth the relickes in the stomacke, and doth recouer a chearfull colour, and get a stomacke to those that be recouered of a disease; it riddeth the liuer of weakenesse, and expelleth the laundies. Lastly it corroborateth all the instruments of concoction. ℞. *Absynthij Roma* ℔ ß *Rosarum rubrarum*, ℥. ii. *Spicæ nardi*. ℥. iij. Bruise them and infuse them xxiiij. houres in old and well smelling white wine, & the iuyce of Quince peares, ℔. ii ß. Boile them with a lent fire to the consumptiõ of the halfe, then boile them againe with ℔. ii. of white Sugar to the thicknesse of a sirupe.

Cydoniorum Miua, that is, the iuyce decocted to thicknesse.

CYdoniorum Miua, doth corroborate the stomacke and the liuer, furthereth concoction, procureth appetite, stayeth vomite and lientery ℞. *succi Cydoniorum defecati*, ℔ vj. Boile it with a lent fire to the consumption of the halfe, by soming little and little: then poure in of old and good red wine, ℔ iiij and white Sugar ℔ iiij. and boile them againe to the thicknesse of hony; condite it with one dramme and a halfe of Cinamon, of Cloues, and Ginger, ana ℈ ij.

PLAN.

PLANTIVS.

This *Mixa Cydoniorum* is a meane betwixt the simple and the compound, and hath the vertue of them both.

Syrupus Myrtinus, that is, of the Mirtle.

Syrupus Myrtinus corroborateth the stomack and the intrails, stayeth an old issue of the belly, all eruption of bloud, and euery distillation of the braine. ℞. *baccarum Myrtè.* ℥ ij. ß. *Santali albi, Rhois culinarij, Balaustiorum, baccarum Oxyacanthæ, Rosarum rubrarum,* ana. ℥ j. ß. *Mespilorum,* ℥ ß. Bruise them all, and boile them in viij. ℔. of water to the third part, and to the strained decoction put of the iuyce of Quince peares, and Pomegranates, ana. ℔ ij. Sugar, ℔ v. Boile them together according to Art.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus Myrtinus retaineth the old composition: and the sirupe *Byzantinus*, for that after purgation it scoureth all the relicks of the hepaticke diseases, may commodiously be referred to this place.

Syrupus Fumariæ.

SYrupe of Fumitory scoureth from bloud, salt and exust humors; it taketh away Itch, Scab, Tetters, Leprosie, and all the diseases of the skinne, asswageth maligne and fistulous vlcers, the Canker and *Elephantiasis*. ℞. *Endiuiæ, Absinthij Romani, Lupuli, Cassuthæ, Scolopendrij veri,* ana. M. j *Epithymi,* ℥ j ß. Boile them in ℔ iiij. of water to the consumption of halfe, and put to the strained decoction of the purified iuyce of Fumitory, ℔ j ß. *succi vtriusq; Bugloss.* ana. ℔ ß. *Sacchari albi,* ℔ iiij. Boile this sirupe to a good consistence.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be many descriptions of the sirupe of Fumitory, there seemeth none more fitte or more easie to be practised then this, to purge impure bloud.

The sirupe of the iuyce of both the Buglosses, of the iuyce of Violets, and the sirupe of Balmemint do also appertaine vnto the spleene.

Syrupus è Malis odorifenis.

THe sirupe of mellow apples, abateth the noysome vapors of melancholy, pacifieth and asswageth feare, sorrow and madnesse, and exhilarateth the patient. ℞. *succi Malorum acidodulcium fragrantium,* ℔ iiij. *succorum Violarum, Buglossi domestici & sylvestris, aquæ Rosarum stillatiuæ,* ana. ℔ j. Boile them together, skumme them and straine them, and adde thereto white Sugar ℔ vj. boile them vnto a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

It were ridiculous to haue the sirupe of apples onely made thereof, without addition of other iuyces seruing for melancholy or blacke choler.

Syrupus Althææ.

THe sirupe of the Water mallow, doth cleanse mildly and gently the grosse obstructing fleame of the kidneis, the slimie and purulent quitture, and their sandy grauell, without sensible heate: Furthermore it asswageth the heate of the vrine. ℞. *radicum Althææ,* ℥ ij. *Cicerum rubro.* ℥ j. *Passarum Vuarum*

expurgatarum, radicum Graminis & Asparagi, Glycyrrhizæ mundatæ, ana. ℥ ß. *Cymarum*, that is, the tender crops, *Althææ, Maluæ, Helxines, Pimpinellæ, Plantaginis, Adianti vtriusque*, ana. M. j. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum & minorum*, ana. ℥ iij. Boile them in vj. ℔. of water till ℔. ij. be consumed, and with ℔ iiij. of Sugar make it a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas the sirupe of water Mallowes or marsh Mallowes was tofore neuer described, and yet according to euery mans opinion there is great vse thereof, it could not more commodiously be made for the vses for which it is propounded.

Sirupus Raphani.

THe sirupe of Radish doth more forcibly scoure the kidneis and the bladder, breaketh the stone, forceth out grauell, and prouoketh vrine suppressed. ℞ *radicis Raphani domestici & syluestris*, ana. ℥ j. *radicum Saxifragi, Ruscі, Leuistici, Eryngij, Anonis, Petroselini, Fœniculi*, ana. ℥ ß *foliorum Betonicæ, Pimpinellæ, Pulegij, Cymarum vrticæ, Nasturtij, Crithmi, Capillitrichi*, ana. M. j *fructus Halicacabi, Zezypha*, ana. *numer.* xx. *sem. Ocimi, Bardanæ, Petroselini Macedonici, Seselios, Carui, Dauci, Lithospermi, corticum radicis Lauri*, ana. ℥ ij. *Vuarum passarum expurgatarum, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥ vj. Boile them in decent order in x. ℔. of water, to the consumption of foure, of the which with Sugar, ℔. iij. purified hony, ℔. ij. a cleare sirupe must be made: condite it with Cinamon, ℥ j. and *Nux muschata*, ℥ ß.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas no sirupe is found described to breake the stone, and expell grauell, this sirupe of Radish is substituted to great vse, which is aptly and conueniently compounded of these simples, which haue great facultie to breake the stone, with an intermixture of other lenitiue and scouring things.

Sirupus Artemisiæ.

THe sirupe of Mugwort doth prouoke mightily the suppressed floures, or auoiding more sparingly, which also the sirupe of *Adiantum* and Hysope doth but more mildly: this sirupe asswageth the strangling and ouercasting of the wombe. ℞ *Artemisiæ*, M. ij. *radicum Iridu, Hellenij, Rubiæ, Pæoniæ, Leuistici, Fœniculi*, ana. ℥ ß. *Pulegij, Origani, Calaminthes, Nepetæ, Melissophylli, Sabinæ, Sampsuchi, Hyssopi, Prassij, Chamædryos, Chamæpityos, Hyperici, Parthenij, Betonicæ*, ana. M. j. *sem. Anisi, Petroselini, Fœniculi, Ocimi, Daucis, Rutæ, Nigellæ*, ana. ℥ iij. Bruise them and infuse them foure and twenty houres in eight pound of *Hydromel*, till three be consumed, and then after boile it with Sugar ℔ v. into a sirupe, condite it with ℥ j. of Cinamon, and ℥ iij. of *Spicæ*.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas in the sirupe of Mugwort without consideration confounded, many things nothing apt for diseases of the wombe were contained, and sundry things which could not be got, or whose strength by boiling wasted, the Author cut off such simples as vnnecessary and vnprofitable, leauing onely the chiefest and best.

Purging

Purging receipts.

MEdicines prescribed for purgations of humours, although they be made in diuerse formes, yet it is much better then to reduce all into one place; orderly beginning at these which be most gentle.

Electuarium è Prunis.

THe Electuary of Proins is maruellous lenitiue, mollifying the costiue belly, purging mildly and gently sundry humours, very commodious in extreme heate of weather, and to all ages in burning of agues and thirst. ℞. *radicum Althææ, Polypodij è quercu, Passarum expurgatarum*, ana. ℥ ii. *Glycyrrhizæ mundatæ, sem. Cuici*, ana ℥ i *Maluæ, Violæ, Helxines, Mercurialis*, ana. M ii. Boile them in ten pound of water to the remnant of vi. In halfe of the strained decoction boile sweet Proines, Iniubes, Sebesten, ana. *numer.* xx. *Ficus passæ pingues numer.* x. Then let the pulpe passe through a sieue. In the other halfe of the strained decoction, boile *foliorum Sennæ mundatorum* ℔. i. ß. and this being strained, mixe it with the pulpe with *Sacchari & mellis expumati*, ana. ℔. ß. then boile them to the consistence of an Electuarie, sprinkling in the end *Cinamomi tenuissimè triti*, ℥ i. *Zinziberis*, ℥. iii. The dose is ℥. i. the whole composition is ℔ iii. The doses be about xxviii. or xx.

Solide Electuary è prunis.

The solid Electuary of Proines hath the same vertue. ℞ *Pruna dulcia numer.* x. *Maluæ, Violæ, Mercurialis, Helxines*, ana. M. i. *Polypodij è quercu, sem. Carthami, radicis Althææ, Passarum purgatarum, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥ ß. *foliorum Sennæ mundatorum*, ℥ x. Boile them in v. ℔. of water till ii. remaine, then presse it in a presse, put *Sacchari rubri*, ℔. i ß. boile them againe with a lent fire to the consistence of a solid Electuarie, in the end sprinkling powder *Electuarij Aromatici Rosati maioris ad* ℥. iii. make *tabellæ* in weight ℥. ß. The whole composition is about, ℥ xx. the doses be about xxx. Compound both these Electuaries together, and it will more forcibly purge from the furthest parts of the body all humours, especially both the cholers, in this order. ℞. *Electuarij è Prunis simplicis, & recentis & adhuc calentis*, ℔. i. in the which dissolue *Diadarydij*, ℥. iii. The dose is from ℥. iii. to ℥. ß. In one pound of the composition, the doses be about xxxii.

Plantij Scholia in purgantes compositiones.

AS the sirupes, so the compositions of purging medicins be taken out euery where without all art, and put in bookes of Physicke, so that you may find two, three, or more of like effect, nothing aptly applyed to the cure of diseases: whereof it is that the Author vpon good consideration, hath very much altered the compositions of purging medicines, the rather thereby to affoerd a conuenient and commodious receipt for euery malady. How much those receipts which he hath set downe, retaining the ancient names of antiquitie, do differ from the ancient receipts, or how much they be more auaileable for the proposed diseases, euery man may vnderstand by estimation had of the faculty of the simples. For whereas *Diaprunis* both sirupe and cõpound described *à Nicolao*, should greatly haue refrigerated and bene applyable

vnto agues, it containeth many vehement hote Aromates, which also in the compound doth exasperate it into the sharpnesse of Scammony.

Catholicum simplex.

Catholicum simplex doth deduce and purge from euery part of the body mildly and gently all humours alike, nothing noysome either to children, old folke, or women with child, whether with an ague or without an ague. ℞. *radicum Helenij, Bugloſſi, Cichorij, Altheæ, Polypodij quercini, ſem. Cnici contuſorum*, ana. ℥ ij. *Stœchados, Hyſſopi, Meliſſophylli, Eupatorij veri, Aſplenij, Betonicæ, Artemiſiæ*, ana. M ij. *Vuarum paſſarum expurgatarum*, ℥ iij. *quatuor ſem frigidorum maiorum, ſem. Ainſi, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥ iij. Boile all theſe according to art in x. ℔ of *hydromel* til vij. be remanent; in the ſtrained decoction macerate xij. houres *foliorum Sennæ mundatorum* ℔ j. ß. *Agarici albi*, ℔ ß. *Zinziberis*, ℥ j. Boile them a little, and in the preſſed liquor, diſſolue of the pulpe of *Sebeſtens*, ℔ ß *foliorum Sennæ mundatorum tenuiſſimè tritorum*, ℥ iiij. *Strupi infuſionis Roſarum pallidarum*, ℔ j. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔ ij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thickneſſe of hony, inſperſing in the end *Rheubarbari electi, Cinamomi electi*, ana ℥ j. *Santali citrini*, ℥ j. *Nucis moſchatæ*, ℥ ij. The doſe is ℥ j. the whole compoſition is ℔ iiij. the doſes be about 50.

PLANTIVS.

This may be truly termed *Catholicum*, that is, vniuerſall, for that it containeth medicines purging all humours, and very agreeable, eſpecially for all the inward parts, purging mildly and gently, it doth draw either nothing or very little from the extreme parts. But the greater *Catholicum* doth worke that effect forcibly and mightily, the compoſition whereof conſiſteth of all kinde of medicines which draw as well from the nigher as further celles, aptly confuſed and repreſſed. In the ancient *Catholicum* the Reubarbe is not fitly boiled, neither the *Caſſia*, which becometh ſharpe with the Thamarinds, and almoſt corrupteth the whole compoſition.

Catholicum maius.

Catholicum maius doth alſo draw the humours vniuerſally, and that more forcibly, not onely from the places nigh, but alſo farther off, without diſturbance of the body or loſſe of ſtrength ℞. *quatuor ſem. frigidorum maiorum mundatorum, ſem. Papaueris albi*, ana. ℥ j. *Tragacanthæ*, ℥ iij. *Roſarum rubrarum, Santali citrini, Cinamomi*, ana. ℥ ij. *Zinziberis*, ℥ j. *Rheubarbari ſelecti, Diadarydij*, ana. ℥ ß. *Agarici, Turpethi*, ana. ℥ ij. *Sacchari albi ſoluti in aqua Roſarum* in the which ℥ ij. of the leaues of Sene haue bene incocted, ℔ j. Let tables be compounded of weight, ℥ iij. The doſe is one table, the whole compoſition is ℔ j ß. the doſes be about 50.

Syrupus infuſionis Roſarum pallidarum.

Strupe of infuſion of white Roſes, doth eaſily draw from the principalleſt intrals thin choler & watery humors, cõuenient in caſie diſeales for children, for old folke, and ſuch as be enfeebled. ℞. *aquæ infuſionis Roſarum pallidarum*, ℔ v. *Sacchari expurgati*, ℔ iiij. boile them with a lent fire to the thickneſſe of a ſirupe: ſoke ℔ ii, *Roſarum pallidarum recentium in* ℔ vj. of tepide water twelue houres, and couer the veſſel; and in ſtead of this likewiſe, ſubſtitute

other

other fresh Roses; and these cast away, put in the water other new Roses, the third, fourth, eight, or ninth time, vntill the liquor haue imbibed much strength of the Roses, in which the Sugar must be dissolued. Neither truly the sirupe of bruised Roses, or of their iuice, will be effectuall as this. There is also made a sirupe (which draweth & purgeth likewise choler & water, & killeth wormes) of the floures of the Peach macerated in water, as I haue told you before.

PLANTIVS.

The sirupe *Rosarum pallidarum*, the Electuary of the iuice of Roses & *Diacydonion*, keepe their old order of composition without any manifest mutation, but in the Electuary of *Diacarthamus*: for that the adiection *Mannæ granatæ, Mellis rosati*, & *Sacchari gemenati* peruerted the perfect order of composition, the way of making it in this place is vpon good cõsideratiõ omitted.

Electuarium è succo Rosarum.

Electuarium è succo Rosarum doth draw forcibly from places farre distant, choler, thinne and aquous humours, very commodious and easie to be vsed for those which be troubled with the goute, in case they haue not a vehement ague. ℞. *Succi Rosarum siccarum recentium, Sacchari albi*, ana ℔. j. ß. Boile them into a solid Electuary with a lent fire, and in the end sprinkle *trium Santalorum, Mastiches, Cinamomi, exquisitè tritorum*, ana. ʒ. ij. *Diadacrydij*, ʒ. j. ß. *Caphuræ*, ℈ ß. make tables in weight, ʒ. iij. ß. The dose is one table, the whole composition is xxij. ʒ. the doses be about 70.

Diacydonion.

Diacydonion worketh the same that the Electuary of the iuyce of Roses doth, but more moderately & easily. ℞. *pulpæ Cydoniorum expurgatæ, coctæ & cribro transmissæ*, ℔. j. ß. *Succi Cydoniorum*, ℔ ß. *Sacchari albissimi*, ℔ ij. Boile them to the thickenesse of hony, sprinkling in the end *Cinamomi triti*, ʒ ij. *Zinziberis, Maceris, Caryophillorum*, ana. ʒ ii. *Diadacrydij*, ʒ. ii. The dose is from ʒ iii. to ʒ. ß. the whole composition is ℔. iiii. the doses be about 90.

Electuarium Diacnicu.

Electuarium Diacnicu, doth draw and purge from the furthest places fleame, and wheyish or waterish humors, and also choller, and is especially good for paine of the head, sinewes and ioynts. ℞. *pulueris Electuarij Diatragacanthæ frigidi, medullæ semi. Cnici, Hermodactylorum*, ana. ʒ ß. *Rosarum rubrarum, succi Glycyrrhizæ, Cinamomi*, ana. ʒ ii. *Turpethi*, ʒ. i. *Diadacrydij*, ʒ. ß. *Sacchari albi, aquæ Rosarum soluti*, ℔. i. make tables thereof the weight of ʒ. iii. ß. the dose is one table.

Diaphœnicon.

Diaphœnicon doth mildly purge choler, crude and slimie fleame, agreable and conuenient in compound and continuall agues, and diseases arising of crudity, and also for the chohke and flatulent paine. ℞. *pulpæ Palmularum mundatarum*, boiled in *Hydromel*, and fined in a siue, *Penidiorũ recentium*, ana. ℔. ß. *Amygdalarum expurgatarum*, ʒ iii. ß. Whẽ they be bruised and mingled all together, put into thẽ *mellis expumati*, ℔. ii. Boile them a little, and thẽ sprinkle *Zinziberis, Piperis, Maceris, Cinamomi, foliorum Rutæ siccorũ, semi. Fœniculi*

& Dauci, ana. ℥.ij. *Turpethi tenuissimè triti*, ℥.iiij. *Diadacrydÿ*, ℥. j.ß. The dose is from ℥ iij. to ℥. ß. the whole composition is about ℔. iiij. the doses about 130.

PLANTIVS.

In *Diaphœnicon*, *Palmulæ* be rightly soaked and boiled in *Hydromel*, for that the ancient infusion which was prescribed to be done three daies in vineger, procureth a horrible sauor: many things also be subtracted, as the seed of Louage, *pinei Nuclei*, *Galanga*, *Xyloaloe*, for that there were many of the same faculty and operation: and the quantity of Dates, Penidies, and other gentle medicines is augmented, that thereby the whole composition might become more pleasant and easie to be vsed.

Benedicta.

Benedicta draweth forth grosse and flegmaticke humours, and also serous from any part, it reuelleth the matter of the stone, & displaceth the stones themselues, abateth paine of the reines, is very good for cold natures, and in cold weather. ℞. *Turpethi*, ℥ x. *Diadacrydÿ*, *Hermodactylorum*, *Rosarum rubra*. ana. ℥.v *Charyophyllorum*, *Zinziberis*, *Saxifragi*, *semi. Apÿ*, *salis Gemmi*, *Galangæ*, *Maceris*, *Carui*, *Fœniculi*, *Acimorum*, *Asparagi & Rusci*, *sem. Milÿ solis quatuor semi. frigidorum maior. Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥ j. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔ j confect them according to art. The dose is from ℥. iij. to ℥. ß. the whole composition is almost, ℔. ij. the doses be about 50.

PLANTIVS.

The author hath vpon good occasion subtracted out of *Benedicta*, because it was too hote, and could not be easily and safely vsed in an ague, *Spicam nardi*, *Macropiper*, *Cardamomum & Crocum*; and hath placed in stead of those the foure greater cold seeds and Liquorice.

Confectio Hamech.

Confectio hamech purgeth blacke choler, and burnt choler, and salt fleame; it is a peculiar remedie for the Leprosie, the Canker, the Tetter, the *Elephantiasis* and *Psora*. ℞. *corticis Mirobalanorum citrinarum*, ℥.ij. *Cepularum*, *& nigrarum Violarum*, *Colocynthidis*, *Polypodÿ quercini*, ana. ℥.j. ß. *Absynthÿ*, *Thymi*, ana ℥ ß. *Anisi*, *Fœniculi*, *Rosarum rubr.* ana ℥.iij. Bruise them all and soake them in whey ℔.ij. then boile them to a pound, rub thē in your hand, & wring them. To the strained decoction adde the iuyce of Fumitory, the pulp of Proines & Raisins, ana ℔ ß *Sacchari albi*, *melis expumati*, ana ℔ j. Boile them to the thicknes of hony, sprinkling in the end *Agarici*, *Sennæ*, *tritorum*, ana. ℥.ii. *Rheubarbari triti*, ℥ i ß. *Epithymi*, ℥.i. *Diadacrydÿ*. ℥ vi *Cinamomi*, ℥. ß. *Zinziberis*, ℥. ii *semi. Fumariæ & Anisi*, *Spicæ nardi*, ana ℥.i. The dose is from ℥. iii. to half an ounce, the whole cōpositiō is ℔.iii. & ℥.viii. The doses be about 80.

PLANTIVS.

In the confection of *Hamech*, the Myrobalans be twise put in, to none effect, first in the decoction, and after bruised; Rheubarbe leeseth his strength and vertue, being boiled; *Cassia*, *Manna*, and *Thamarynd*: being boiled, do turne to putrifaction. The force of *Scammony* being boiled wasteth, and is not with facility mixed with others. Wherefore the author hath set downe a much more

conuenient

conuenient compoſition and eaſie to be vſed: this compoſition of all other is the beſt and moſt ſafeſt, for that in them the ſharpnes and feruency of *Turbith* and *Scammony*, is notably well abated, either by the mixture of pulpe of Proines or Raiſins, or by *Hermodactilu* and *Amygdalu*, or with Roſes and their iuyce or *Myrobalanes*. There be other receipts extant not ſo ſafe to be vſed as *Electuarium Indum vtriuſque*, *Electuarium Eleſchof*, *Electuarium de Pſillio*, *Diaturbith*. In the which the ſharpnes of *Scammony*, and other ſtronger medicines is little abated, yea rather by the mixture of the other hote things is quickned. Further, they containe nothing, or are of power to worke nothing, which other receipts here deſcribed do not bring to paſſe with ſucceſſe. Wherefore to take away the cauſes of all effects, theſe receipts be auaileable enough.

Hiera ſimplex.

Hiera ſimplex by purging choler and fleame from the ſtomacke, intrails, *Hypochondrium*, and meſentery veines impacted, and arridding forcibly and mightily of redundance, doth mildly helpe all diſeaſes proceeding of crudities and obſtruction of veines. ℞. *Cinamomi*, *Macerij*, *Aſari*, *Spicæ nardi*, *Croci*, *Maſtiches*, ana ℥. vj. *Aloes non lotæ*, ℥. 100. or ℔. j ß. *Mellis optimi expumati*, ℔. iiij. confect them according to Art: the powder alone is miniſtred from ℥ ij. to ℥ iij. but being receiued in hony from ℈. j. to ℥ i. ß.

Hiera Diacolocynthidos.

Hiera Diacolocynthidos which hath bene in ſtead of all other deſcribed of the ancient Phyſitions, by purging ſafely and gently all groſſe and viſcours humours, eſpecially blacke choler and citrin waters, it is eſpeciall good againſt the Palſey, quiuering Crampe, Goute, and inueterate diſeaſes of the nerues, and alſo for the Dropſie. Secondly for melancholy, *Mania*, *Epilepſia*, Scabbe, Leproſie, maligne vlcer, Cancre, and *Elephantiaſis*, which diſeaſes do expugne gentle medicines. ℞. *Stœcados*, *Marrubij*, *Camædrios*, *Hyperici*, *Scyllæ aſſatæ*, *Polis*, *Calaminthes montanæ*, *Cinamomi*, *Spicæ nardi*, *Epithymi*, *Polypodij quercini aridi*, *quatuor ſeminum frigido. maio. mundatorum*, ana ℥. i. ß *pulpæ Colocynthidis*, *Scammonij*, *Hellebori nigri*, *præparatorum*, ana ℥ ii. *Euphorbij præparati*, *Aloes*, *Myrrhæ*, *Ammoniaci*, *Opoponacis*, *Sagapeni*, *Caſtorei*, ana. ℥. i. *mellis cocti in ſucco Cydoniorum*, *& expumati*, ℔. i. ℥. iii. thereof are miniſtred; *Colocynthis*, *Scammony*, blacke *Helleborc*, and *Euphorbe*, being bruiſed, muſt be rubbed with oyle of ſweet Almonds, and then are two daies to be ſoaked in a muſcilage of *Tragacanthum* and *gumme Arabicke* drawne out of Roſe water, till they haue drunke vp the muſcilage.

PLANTIVS.

The ancient compoſition of *Hiera ſimplex* is retained, and nothing is altered thereof, ſauing *Xylobalſamum*, which we cannot come vnto. Many compoſitions do conſiſt of ſtronger ſimples, ſome of *Scammony*, as *Electuarium è Prunis*, *Diacydonion*, *& Electuarium è ſucco Roſarum*. Others beſide be compounded of *Turbith*, as *Diaphœnicon*: others be confected of *Hermodactylos*, beſides the two former, that is, *Turbith* and *Scammony*, as *Diacnicu* and *Benedicta*: others admit to their compoſition *Colocynthis*, as the confection of *Hamech*; others likewiſe do further take to their compoſition, *Helleborum nigrum*,

& Euphorbium: as *Hiera Diacoiocynthidos*, which is a peculiar remedy of certaine diſeaſes, but not vſuall. Hereby then it may be gathered, that there is no ſimple purging medicine practiſed or put in vſe, of which there is not ſome receipt extant, ſo that for ſuch purpoſe more are not requiſite.

Hydragogum minus.

HYdragogum minus, drawing out the water of Dropſie-ſicke perſons mildly without aggrieuance, may be ſafely vſed both of children, old folke, infeebled perſons, and women with child, whether they be aggrieued with an ague or without an ague. ℞. *ſucc. Roſarum pallidarum*, ℔ß. *Sacchari albi, Mellis optimi*, ana. ℥.xv. Boile them till they caſt a ſome and become thicke, and then put into them *ſucci radicis Ebuli*, ℔j *Paſſii ſicci, ſem. Fœniculi tritorum*, ana. ℥ ij. *Acinorum Ebuli & Sambuci*, ana. ℥.ij. ß *Cinamomi*, ℥.vj. *Macerii, Galangæ*, ana. ℥. iij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thickneſſe of honey, ℥ ß. thereof is miniſtred whey of milke, or decoction of Barley, or of Raiſins. It will be more effectuall by putting thereunto of the iuyce of wilde Cucumber, ℥.ß. or of the roote of wild Cucumber, dried and bruiſed, ℥.vj. or of the iuyce of the roote of our Flowerdeluce. ℔ß.

Hydragogum maius.

HYdragogũ maius of *Laur.* mightily expelling water, ℞. *Seri lactis*, ℔.ij. *Sacchari albi, carnis Cydoniorum ex aceto cocторum*, ana ℥ x. *Mannæ Calabrinæ*, ℥.v. Boile them with a lent fire to the thickneſſe of hony; when they be ready to be taken off the fire, put into them of the leaues of Laureoll prepared in vineger, and oile of ſweete Almonds, ℥.ij. It is miniſtred in the Doſe of ℥.ß.

The manner of preparing it, is in this wiſe, ℞. *Foliorum Laureolæ*, ℥ ij. macerare them foure & twenty houres in vineger of Pomegranates or Purſlaine, boile them ſoftly, ſtraine them, drie them, and bruiſe them, and then put into them of Roſe water, ℔ß. of the oile of ſweete Almonds, ℥.j.ß. Boile them againe vntill the water be conſumed, and the powder mixed with the oile remaining, is to be added to the conſumption.

PLANTIVS.

That there ſhould be nothing wanting in theſe receipts, in the laſt place he hath adioyned to the precedent receipts, certaine compoſitions to expell the Dropſie water, notwithſtanding more ſtronger ſimples, ſpecially *Scammony* and *Euphorbium* do purge; yet the Author his meaning was to haue ſome peculiar receipts extant of ſuch ſimples as haue a proper and accuſtomable vertue againſt ſuch redundancy of water, the one whereof is more gentle in working, the other of the leaues of Laureoll is more forcible in operation, which leaues tofore haue not bene applied to the compoſition of any thing: any man may make coniecture by the mixture of the ſimples, how fitly ſuch kinde of compoſitions be applyed to the expelling of ſuch water.

Vnguentum è Lathyride.

VNguentum è Lathyride ſofteneth & prouoketh the belly, draweth out vehemently the water of hydropicall perſons, aſſwageth the ſwelling or diſtention of the outward parts of the body betwixt the nauell and the priuities called *Abdomen*, all which redundancy it doth ſcoure downeward from the wombe

wombe, if the nauell and the lower parts of the belly, and the parts aboue the priuities and the thighes, be therewith annointed; and it ariddeth all such matter vpward by vomite, if the stomacke therewith be madefied. ℞. *Succi Lathyridis*, ℔. ß. *succi Esulæ*, ℥. iij. In the which dissolue *radicis Cyclamini*, ℥. ij. *Scammony*, ℥ ß. *granorum Recini & Lathyridis expurgatorum*, ana. ℥. j. ß. *sem. Fœniculi, Rutæ, Anethi, baccarum Lauri*, ana. ℥. j. Bruise them all, and macerate them a day in the iuice: after that take *Axungiæ*, ℥. viij. *& Ceræ*, ℥. iiij. liquefie them, and dissolue all the rest in them by litle and litle, and boile them with a lent fire vntill the consumption of the whole moisture, and vntill they all be come to the temperature of an ointment. If the same matter be boiled in ℥. xv. of oyle, to the consumption of the liquor, the strained oyle will retaine the same vertue. If either Gum Ammoniack, or Waxe, be concorporated with the same ointment to the consistency of an Emplaister, that will cause issue of the water, being laid vpon the belly, but not so forcibly.

Electuarium Diasaru.

Electuarium Diasaru doth by vomite expell all kind of humours about the stomacke and midriffe, not by a continuall insult, but hauing intermission, safely, and with facilitie to be vsed both of aged persons, and of women with child. ℞. *Syrupi Menthæ & Violarum*, ana. ℥. viij. Boile them to the thickneſſe of hony, after they haue boiled, (draw away the fire) insperse in *radicis Peponis arefactæ, semi. Raphani & Vrticæ*, macerated in Rose water, dried and pownd, ana. ℥. j. *radicis Asari contritæ, & Cretæ*, ℥. ij. *Cinamomi, semi. Fœniculi*, ana. ℥. iij. confect them to a liquide Electuarie, and let ℥. iij. thereof be ministred either out of Barley, *Mulsa*, or whey of milke.

PLANTIVS.

The Author seemed much to haue furthered Physicke by these last receipts, especially by that which is allotted to procure vomite, for that in no Authour there was any extant wherewith we might safely purge the humour vpward: whereas notwithstanding that kinde of euacuation is most necessary to the curing of any diseases.

Pilulæ è Hiera simplici.

WHereas tofore we haue applied Electuaries both liquide & consistent: so now let vs referre pils to all kind of causes and diseates. *Pilulæ è Hiera simplici* be confected with ℥. j. of powder tempered *cum melle rosato*.

Pilulæ stomachicæ.

Pilulæ stomachicæ, which taketh before meate, purge the stomacke, helpe concoction, carry the meate downe, and do mildly purge. ℞. *Aloes*, ℥. vj. *Mastiches, Rosarum rubrarum*, ana. ℥. ij. make them coherent with *syrupo Rosato*, or *Absynthij*.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be vj. descriptions extant of the pils of the stomacke, all (this onely receipt excepted) do hurt the stomacke, and cannot conueniently be vsed before meate, because they retaine in their confection Scammony and Turbith, wherewith the whole body (but especially the stomack) is much aggrieued

Pilulæ Ruffi, seu communes.

Pilulæ Ruffi, which be termed also *Pilulæ communes*, being often vsed, helpe concoction, and do not suffer any putrifaction of the meate, do preserue the humours and body from corruption, whereupon they do much auaile against the pestiferous ague. ℞. *Aloes optimæ*, ℥.ij. *Myrrhæ electæ*, *Croci syncери*, ana. ℥.j. mixe them with aromaticke wine.

Plantivs.

Taking by little and little, and as it were coaugmenting compositions from pilles which consist of sole Aloe, after he addeth other vnto them which consist of Aloe and Rewbard, and immediately such as do consist of Aloe & Agaricke, then such as be confected of Agaricke, Aloe & Rewbarbe. And of those he compoundeth other of Agaricke, Rewbarbe, Aloe, and *Senna*: to which in fine he hath annexed *Pilulæ fine quibus*, in the which beside the foure precedent, the vertue and infusion of Scammomy rather then the substance is contained. In confection whereof he hath withholden a portion of Myrobalanes, so that the portion thereof being retained, there would be some redundance especially with other so many astringent simples.

Pilulæ Assaieret.

Pilulæ Assaieret for that they containe more Aloe then *Hiera*, be more effectuall in working. ℞. *Pulueris Hieræ simplicis*, ℥.j. Aloes, ℥.ij. (or according to *Valerius Cordus*, ℥.ij. to whom I rather encline) *Mastiches*, or *Myrobalan. citrinarum*, ana. ℥.ß. reduce them to a masse with sirupe of *Stœchados*.

Pilulæ de Eupatorio.

Pilulæ de Eupatorio do purge choler mildly, and do arride the liuer of stuffing, and corroborate it, and are to be had in more price then the pils which be described to be made of Rewbarbe. ℞. *Succi Eupatorij*, *succi Absinthij*, *Myrabolani citrinæ*, ana. ℥ iij. *Rheubarbari electi*, ℥.iij.ß. *Mastiches*, ℥.j. *Croci*, ℥.ß. Aloes, ℥.v. *succi Endiuiæ*, in quantity sufficient to incorporate them.

Pilulæ Mastichinæ.

Pilulæ Mastichinæ, for that they containe Agaricke, do more forcibly purge choler and grosse fleame, then they which consist of sole Aloes. ℞. *Mastiches*, ℥.ii. Aloes, ℥.iiij. *Agarici trochiscati*, *pulueris Hieræ simplicis*, ana. ℥.j.ß. and incorporate them with Malmesey.

Pilulæ ex tribus, be confected of the simples by addition of *Rheubarbi selecti*, ℥.ij. *Cinamoni* ℥.ß. and incorporate them with sirupe of Cichory.

Pilulæ Imperiales.

Pilulæ Imperiales do mildly and moderatly purge out of the intrailes all humours, and therewithall comfort and strengthen them, ridde them of abstruction, and helpe the confection of all parts, seruiceable to nouriſhment. ℞. *Aloes optimæ*, ℥.ij. *Rheubarbari electi*, ℥.j.ß. *Agarici trochiscati foliorum Sennæ mundatorum*, ana. ℥.j. *Cinamomi* ℥.iii. *Zinziberis* ℥.ij. *Nucis muschatæ*, *Caryophyllorum*, *Spicæ nardi*, *Mastiches*, ana. ℥.j. moisten it with the sirupe of Violets, and bring them into a masse

Pi-

Pilulæ sine quibus esse nolo.

Pilulæ sine quibus esse nolo, do draw choler, fleame, and melancholy out of all parts of the body, but especially out of the head, eyes and senses: they asswage suffusion of the eyes, and preserue sight, they take away paine and noise of the eares. ℞. *Aloes optimæ*, ℥. xiiii. *Myrobalano. citri. Chepularum, Indarum, Rheubarbari, Mastiches, Absinthij, Rosarum, Violarum, Sennæ, Agarici, Cassuthæ*, ana. ℥.i. *Scammony*, ℥. vi. ß. dissolue the *Scammony* in the iuyce of Fennell as much as will suffice, and straine it through a cloth, and with the same iuyce incorporate the fine powders.

Pilulæ è Fumaria.

Pilulæ è Fumaria do extract bilious, salt and sharpe humours, and do correct what so is vicious or vnseemely in the skin. ℞. *Myrobala, citri. Chebulæ, & Indar.* ana. ℥.v. *Diadacridij* ℥.v. *Aloes*, ℥.ii. When all these be bruised, imbrue them in the iuyce of Fumitory, and permit them to dry three times, and in fine bring them to a masse.

Pilulæ Aureæ.

Pilulæ Aureæ be more effectuall in working then *Pilulæ è Fumaria*, for *Colocynthis* which they containe: they scoure the head, and senses, but especially the eyes, and recouer the quickenesse of sight, they expell bilious, and also flegmaticke humours. ℞. *Aloes, Diadacridij*, ana. ℥.v. *Rosarum rubra. sem. Apij*, ana. ℥ ii ß. *Sem Anisi & Fæniculi, Mastiches*, ana ℥ i. ß. *Croci, pulpæ Colocynthidos*, ana. ℥.i. *Muscilaginis gummi Tragacanthæ*, q. ß. and confect thereof a masse.

Pilulæ de Agarico.

Pilulæ de Agarico do mightily draw choler and slimy humours from all the parts of the body, but especially from the head and breast, peculiarly standing in stead against distillations and *Asthma*. ℞. *Agarici, Mastiches*, ana. ℥. iii. *radicis Iridis, Prassij*, ana. ℥.i. *Turpethi*, ℥.v. *puluer. Hieræ picræ*, ℥ ß *pulpæ Colocynthidis, Sarcocollæ* ana. ℥ ii. *Myrrhæ*, ℥.i. *sapæ quant. suff.* the rather to reduce them to a consistent substance.

PLANTIVS.

In the pils of Agaricke, there be orderly disposed all such excellent simples as auaile to draw out of the body grosse fleame, as well from the nigh parts as from the parts farre distant, in confecting whereof, the Author thought good to alter nothing.

Pilulæ Cocciæ.

Pilulæ Cocciæ do from all parts of the body purge choler, but grosse fleame more effectually, yet peculiarly out of the braine and nerues, whose diseases especially they do cure ℞ *Puluer. Hieræ simp* ℥. x. *pulpæ Colocynthidis*, ℥ iii. ℈.i *Diadacridij*, ℥. ii. ß. *Turpethi, Stæchados*, ana. ℥.v. and confect a masse of those with sirupe of *Stæchados*.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ Cocciæ, notwithstanding they do forcibly purge choler and fleame, yet they do not purge all humours at once, as those pils which be termed

Polychreſtæ, and commonly *Aggregatiuæ maiores*. The compoſition whereof differeth nothing from the ancient receipt, ſauing for reſpect of the doſe certaine ſimples be altered. The confection of thoſe pils is much more conuenient then *Pilularum decocto rebus*, or then the pils of fiue kinds of *Myrobalanes* which notwithſtanding containe the ſame ſimples. The deſcription therefore of thoſe pils in this place, ſeemeth vpon good occaſion to be omitted, for that they ſeeme to be contained vnder theſe, as *Pilulæ de Euphorbio* be comprehended vnder *Pilulæ de Hermodactylis*.

Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis.

Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis, do draw out ſerous or watetiſh humours mightily from the furtheſt parts, eſpecially from the ioynts, moſt agreeable in cold diſeaſes of the braine, nerues and ioynts. ℞. *Hermodactylorum*, *Aloes*, *Myrobalano. citri. Turpethi*, *Colocynthidis*, *Bdellij mollis*, *Sagapeni*, ana ℥.vj. *Caſtorei*, *Sarcocollæ*, *Opoponacis*, *ſemi. Rutæ agreſtis*, *& Anij*, ana. ℥ iij. *Croci*. ℥ j. ß *ſucci Braſſicæ*, *quan ſuffi.* to the confection of a maſſe.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis do retaine the ancient compoſition, and be of thẽſelues more effectuall againſt the inueterate diſeaſes of the ioynts, then thoſe which be termed, *Arthriticæ*, and more ſafely to be vſed then thoſe which be called *Fætidæ*, or which be confected *de Opoponace*, *de Sagapeno*, or *de Sarcocolla*, ſo that it were needleſſe to ſet downe their receipts.

Pilulæ Polychreſtæ.

Pilulæ Polycreſtæ be very auaileable againſt all diſeaſes of the head, the ſtomacke, the liuer, and other ſundry compound diſeaſes of the other intrals: for they draw out of theſe parts fleame and both the cholers. ℞. *Myrobalano. citri. Rheubarbari*, ana. ℥ ß. *ſucci Eupatorij*, *ſucci Abſinthij*, *Myrobalano. Chepularum*, *& Indarum*, *Agarici*, *Colocynthidis*, *Polypodij*, ana. ℥ ii. *Diadacrydij*, *Turpethi*, *Aloes*, ana. ℥. vi. *Maſtiches*, *Roſarum rubrarum*, *ſalis Gemmei*, *Epithymi*, *Aniſi*, *Zinziberis*, ana. ℥. i. confect them with ſirupe of Roſes: they be miniſtred from ℈. ii. to ℥. i.

Pilulæ è Lapide Cyaneo.

Pilulæ è lapide Cyaneo, do excellently purge blacke choler and fleame, eſpecially good againſt *Melancholia*, ſadneſſe, and madneſſe: againſt the Canker, *Elephantiaſis* and blacke Morphew. ℞. *lapid. Cyanei ablut.* ℥. vi. *Epithymi*, *Polypodij*, ana. ℥. viii. *Diadacrydij*, *Hellebari nigri*, *ſalis Indi*, ana. ℥. ii. ß. *Agarici*, ℥. viii. *Caryophyllorum*, *Aniſi*, ana ℥ iiii. *Pulueris Hieræ picræ ſimplicis*, ℥ xv. and confect a maſſe of them with the iuyce of Endiue or Succory.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ de lapide Cyaneo for the blacke Hellebore vſed, be more practiſed then *Pilulæ Indæ* which containe alſo Hellebore: wherefore he hath deſcribed thoſe, omitting others; and for that they be more effectuall againſt melancholike diſeaſes then *Pilulæ de lapide Armeno*, for that occaſion he omitteth them.

Pilulæ

Pilulæ è Thymelæa.

Pilulæ è Thymelæa do mightily draw out of the body ſerous humors & water of hydropicall perſons ℞. *foliorum Thymelææ exiccatorum & aceto maceratorum*, ℥ v. *Myrobalana flauarum* ℥ ß. *Myrobalanorum Cepularum*, ℥.iii. *Mannæ & Thamarindorum* diſſolued in water of Succory, ſo much as ſufficeth for the forme of pilles.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing is altered in *Pilulis è Thymelæa*, and to them is added certaine aptly confected of *Eſula*, and which are very effectuall to draw out water. I ſuppoſe he omitted as well *Pilulas Lucis maiores* as *minores*, for that they be confuſedly made of a great and vnneceſſary heape of ſimples, and for that *Pilulæ ſine quibus* be effectuall enough for the eyes hauing any affect.

Pilulæ ex Eſula.

Pilulæ ex Eſula do purge the wombe from the drop-ſicke water with great aggreuance, and therefore agree onely to ſtrong bodies, and then onely when they be free from agues. ℞ *corticis radicis Eſulæ minoris* macerated in vineger xxiiij. houres, and in the iuyce of Purſlaine, ℥.ij. *grana Kecini* purged and parched, xl. *Myrobalanorum cytrinarum*, ℥.j ß. *Chamedryos, Chamepityos Spicæ nardi, Cinamomi*, ana ℈.ii. bruiſe them all finely and incorporate them in ℥.j. of Tragacanth diſſolued in Roſewater, & ſo reduce them to a maſſe. They be miniſtred in the doſe of ℈ ij.

Pilulæ è Cynogloſſo.

Pilulæ è Cynogloſſo were not prouided to purge, but to ſtay diſtillations: whether they iſſue to the breaſt and lungs with a cough, or into the teeth or elſe where. ℞. *Myrrhæ*, ℥.vi. *Thuris maſculi*, ℥.v. *Opij, Hyoſciami, ſem. radicis Cynogloſſi aridi*, ana ℥ ß. *Croci, Caſtorei*, ana. ℥.i.ß. and confect a maſſe thereof with diſtilled Roſewater. They be miniſtred from ℈.i. to ℥.ß.

PLANTIVS.

Very fitly is *Caſtoreum* added in *Pilulis è Cynogloſſo*, which with Saffron hath ſingular vertue to correct the maligaitie of *Opium*, which before in this receipt haue bene inconſiderately omitted.

Pilulæ Ariſtolochiæ.

Pilulæ Ariſtolochiæ hauing great power to diuide & ſcoure, are very auailable againſt *Epilepſia, Paralyſis, Aſthma*, & veterated cough, the beginning of *Scirrhus* in the liuer & reins, *Nephritis*, ſuppreſſing of the flowers: it expelleth the child & Seconds; they be more meete in winter, & for moiſt natures whē the bodies be purged ℞. *radicis Ariſtolochiæ rotundæ*, ℥.i. *radicis Gentianæ, Myrrhæ electæ*, ana. ℥.iii. *Aloes, Cinamomi*, ana ℥.ß. *Zinziberis*, ℥.i. when they be all exquiſitely pownded, put in new oyle of ſweet Almonds. It is miniſtred in Doſe, ℥ i. ß. and the broth in which they be dilaied is all at once to be ſupped.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ Ariſtolochiæ be laſt of all commodiouſly added to the reſt, and be excellently deſcribed, becauſe they haue a great opening vertue. They may be made in ſuch forme that they may be drunke: but becauſe they be very bitter, they be more eaſily deuoured in the forme of *Catapotium*.

Of Antidotaries: And first of such as be made in a solide forme, by taking where- *of the principall parts of the body be com-* forted and strengthened.

Dianthon.

Dianthon doth comfort the infeebled braine, doth stay the distillations thereof, doth mitigate excessiue melancholy, and extreme sadnesse, it taketh away qualming and ouercasting of the heart. ℞. *florum Rorismarini,* ℥ ß. *Rosarum, Violarum, Glycyrrhizæ,* ana ℥. iij *Caryophyllorum, Spicæ nardi, Nucis muscha-tæ, Galangæ, Cinamomi, Zinziberis, Maceris, ligni Aloes, Cardamomi, Anisi, sem. Anethi,* ana ʒ. ij. *Sacchari albi, aqua Saluiæ, vel Betonicæ soluti,* ℔ j ß. make thereof an Electuarie in tables.

Electuarium pleres Archonticon.

Electuarium pleres Archonticon, doth maruellously comfort and strengthen the braine, quicken the senses, recouer the decayed memory, and is very commodious for such as haue the falling euill, & difficulty of breathing: it comforteth such as be sadde, or annoyed with *Melancholia*, or disturbed with idlenesse of the braine: it restoreth and recouereth such as be consumed through some long sickenesse. ℞. *Cinamomi, Caryophyllorum, ligni Aloes, Galangæ, Spicæ nardi, Nucis muschatæ, Zinziberis, Spodij, Scænanthi, Cyperi, Rosarum, Violarum,* ana. ℥. j. *folij aut Macerv, Glycyrrhizæ, Masticbes, Styracis, Calaminthæ, Sampsuchi, Balsamitæ, Ocimi, Cardamomi, Macropiperis, Myrtillorum, corticum mali Cytrij,* ana ℥. ß. and gr. vj. *Margaritarum splendidarum, Ben albi & rubri, Coralij, Serici combusti,* ana. gr. xviij. *Moschi.* gra. vj. *Caphuræ,* gr. iiij. *Sacchari albi, aqua Melissæ soluti,* x. or xij. times so much.

PLANTIVS.

Antidotaries be ordained to comfort and strengthen the parts principall: therefore he doth very fitly institute their compositions according to the order of the parts of the body, beginning at those which be good for the braine, and after annexing such as be meete for the breast and other parts.

Diatragacanthum frigidum.

Diatragacanthum frigidum is very commodious in all distempers of the lungs, and breast, and it is good for the *Peripneumonia*, and Pleurisie, a consumption and hote cough with an ague. Lastly, for the roughnesse and sharpnesse of the iawes and arteries. ℞. *Gummi Tragacanthi albissimi,* ℥ j. *Gummi Arab.* ℥. v. *Amyli,* ℥. ii. *Glycyrrhizæ, sem. Papaueris albi, quatuor sem. frigido. maior. corticis Liberorum,* ana ℥. i. *Caphuræ.* gr. v. *Penidiorum,* ℥. i ß. *Sacchari albissimi aqua violarum soluti,* ℔ i. Make thereof an Electuarie in *Tesseras.*

PLAN-

PLANTIVS.

Diatragacanthum is good for cold diseases, and hath the vertue of another composition called *Diapapauer*, which therefore was here vpon good occasion omitted.

Diaireos simplex.

Diaireos simplex doth by a mild attenuation aid the breast and lungs of all distempers, and it maketh more easie vttering of spittle, meete for hote diseases increasing, and such cold diseases as be not extreme. ℞. *radicis Iridis Florentini*, ℥. j. *pulueris Electuarij Diatragacanthi frigidi, Sacchari Candi*, ana. ℥ ß *Sacchari albiss. Hyssopi aqua soluti*, ℥. viij. compound thereof a solide Electuarie.

Electuarium Diaireos compositum.

Electuarium Diaireos compositum, auaileth much in hote diseases beginning to breake, and inueterate cold diseases, as the cough, *Asthma*, and hoarsenesse. ℞. *Radicis Iridis*, ℥. ß. *Pulegij, Hyssopi, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥. iij. *Tragacanthæ, Amygdalarum amararum, Pinearum, Cinamomi, Zinziberis, Piperis*, ana. ℥ j ß *sem. Lini, Althææ & Fenugraci*, ana ℥ ij. *Sacchari albissimi, aqua Tussilaginis soluti*, ℔. j. or ℥. xiiij.

PLANTIVS.

The compound Electuarie of *Diaireos* is here placed in stead of *Diatragacanthum calidum* and *Diapenidion*, and therefore they cannot here be put in but in vaine, and to the losse and hinderance of the Apothecaries. In this composition the Author did for *Caricis Passulis, Palmulis & Styrace*, which were vnmeete for this composition, ordaine *seminis Lini, Althææ & Fenugraci*, which do preuaile exceedingly in inueterate distempers of the breast.

Diacalaminthes.

Diacalaminthes doth attenuate rebellious and inueterate distempers of the breast and lungs, and the grosse and viscous humours in these parts. it doth scoure and cast out the same, dispatch winde, furthereth concoction and distribution of the aliment, and in fine prouoketh the floures, vrine and sweate. ℞. *Calaminthes montanæ, Pulegij, Petroselini, Seselios Origani*, ana. ℥. ij. *seminis Apij, cymarum Thymi*, ana. ℥. ß. *Leuistici, Piperis, Smyrnij*, ana ℥ j. *Sacchari albissimi, aquæ Violarũ aut Rosarum solut.* ℔. i. ß. make an Electuary

PLANTVS.

In this composition of *Diacalaminthes, Origanum* seemeth very aptly added. In the other simples the Author hath imitated *Galens* composition, and the weights and doses, saue onely in Louage and in Pepper: for the Author taketh of Louage halfe so much, and of Pepper the sixt part so much as *Galen* did, for that the whole composition is but the fourth part of that which is described of *Galen* in his fourth booke *De tuenda valetudine*. And whereas in other Electuaries before described, which were gentle and not vnpleasant either in

taste or taking, he receiued and tempered the powders with fixe or eight times so much Sugar, in this composition truly which is very hote and vnpleasant to be taken, he hath allotted a dose of twelue times so much. Further this composition of *Diacalaminthes* may stand for those which be termed *Diahyssopus*, and *Diaprassus*, which may by good right grow out of vse as vnnecessary, lest the multitude should be troublesome.

Diamargariton frigidum.

Diamargariton frigidum asswageth the burning heate of agues, fortifieth and comforteth the heart, and preserueth it from an infectious contagion, deliuereth the affected from qualming and swounding, and lastly abandoneth sorrow. ℞. *quatuor semin. frigidorum maiorum mundatorum, seminis Portulacæ, & Papaueris albi, seminis Endiuiæ, Oxalydis, & Cytrij, trium Santalorum, ligni, Aloes, Zinziberis, Rosarum rubrarum, florum Nymphææ, Buglossi, Violarum, baccarum Myrti, ossis de corde Cerui, Eboris, Doronici Romani, Cinamomi*, ana. ℥ j. *Corally albi, & rubri*, an. ℥ ß *Margaritarũ splendidarũ*, ℥ iij. *Ambaris, Caphuræ*, ana. gr. vj. *Moschi*, gr. ij. *Sacchari albi, aqua Buglossi vel Rosarum soluti*, ℔ ij.

PLANTIVS.

The rather that this Electuary *Diamargaritõ* might become more excellent and effectuall, the Author hereof ouer and aboue the vulgar description, hath added (being made of an vncertaine Author) the seeds of Endiue and Sorrell, *Cytrij Ebur, os è corde Cerui, Doronicum Rom.* and *Cinamomum:* all which be apparently good for the heart. There be diuerse Physitions which haue put into this Electuarie, certaine potions of precious stones, but yet to no vse, for that all what so is comprehended in the Electuary *de Gummis*, which at any time may commodiously be mixed in the description thereof, this Electuary containeth, except a few hote Aromates, and many cold simples, the rather to make a more safe vse thereof.

Electuarium de Gemmis.

Electuarium de Gemmis doth excellently comfort and strengthen the heart, and preserueth it in agues from maligne and pestilent putrifaction, doth release the affected of qualming, beating of the heart, and voluntary sadnesse, ℞. *Margaritarum splendidarum*, ℥ j. ß. *Saphiri, Hyacinthij, Sardæ*, that is, *Corneolæ, Granatorum, Smaragdi*, ana. ℈ ij. & gr. v. *Zedoariæ, Doronici, cortitum Citrij mali, Maceris, sem. Ocymi Caryophyllati*, ana. ℥ j. *Corallij rubri, Succini, Eboris*, ana. ℈ ij. ß. *Ben albi, Ben rubri, Caryophyllorum, Zinziberis, Piperis longi, Spicæ Indicæ, folij, Croci, Cardamomi maioris*, ana. ℥ ß. *trochiscorum Diarrhodon, ligni Aloes*, ℥ ij. ß. *Cinamomi, Galangæ*, ana. ℈ ij. gr. v. *foliorum Auri, foliorum Argenti*, ana. ℈ j. *Ambræ*. ℥ j. *Moschi*, gr. xv. *Sacchari albi aqua Rosarum solui*, ℥ xx. which is eight times as much as the rest of the receipt.

PLANTIVS

Electuarium è Gemmis, comprehendeth almost all the kindes of the hote Aromates, and they be not much dulled or restrained with the fragments of the precious stone. Therefore it were much better to take from this Electuary some part of the Aromates, especially *Ben album & rubrum, Cardomomi maioris, Piper longum, & folium*, which seldome can be gotten.

Electuarium

Electuarium Diambræ.

Electuarium Diambræ comforteth and fortifieth the heart, the braine & the principall parts, and quickeneth the naturall heate in old folkes, chiefly in feebled persons and cold natures, it doth not onely further the concoction of aliments, but also of cold humours, and driueth away all the coldnesse of the body and of the wombe, and therefore it is good for conception, ℞. *Cinamomi, Doronici Ro. Caryophyllorum, Macerij, Nucis, muschatæ, folij Galangæ*, ana. ʒ.iij. *Spicæ nardi, Cardamomi maioris & minoris*, ana. ʒ.j. *Zinziberis*, ʒ.j. ß *Santali citrini, ligni Aloes, Piperis longi*, ana. ʒ ij. *Ambaru*, ʒ i. *Moschi*, ʒ. ß. euery ounce of the powder is receiued and mixed with ℔. i. of Sugar dissolued in Rose water.

Plantivs.

Diambræ seemeth to consist of all kind of Aromates generally heaped and confused without any choise, as *Diacuminum*, and *Dianison, Diacinamomum, Diazinziber, Diatrion piperion, Diaxiloaloes, Diamargariton calidum, Diamoscu seu dulce, & Diamoscu amarum.* All which be vehemently hote, consisting of hote simples no whit represſed, so that all these seeme to be of like power and effect. Wherefore the Author omitting the rest, hath here placed the onely composition of *Diambræ*, which may supply the want of the rest, lest the student in Physicke should be ouercharged with multitude, and the Apothecary sustaine great losse. But in this composition which is vehemently hote, as the rest be in my opinion, it were best to take out of the receipt both the *Cardamomum* and the long Pepper, and to substitute in stead thereof *Rosarum rubra*, ʒ. iii. for otherwise it can scarcely be vsed in hote natures, when the weather is hote, and in hote seasons, in agues and other hote diseases; and the excessiue heate also of these simples hath bene occasion that the vse thereof hath bene vnpleasant, and that it hath waxen out of vse as vnprofitable, euen as *Diatrion piperion Galeni* and *Diacalaminthæ*. The Author therefore perceiuing this, hath vpon good occasion commanded, that the powders should be tempered in twelue times so much Sugar, thereby minding to make it more pleasant to the receiuer.

Puluis cordiacus.

Pluis cordiacus doth maruellously comfort and fortifie the heart, and preserue it from contagion in a pestilent constitution, and may be safely taken in a burning ague; and in hote weather, for that it is of a moderate heate. ℞. *radicum Tormentillæ, Dictamni, Tunicis & Scabiosæ, sem. Acetosæ, Endiuiæ, Coriandri præparati, sem. Citrij, Rutæ, Cardui benedicti*, ana. ʒ. i. *trium Santalorum, Ben albi, Ben rubri, Doronici Ro. ligni Aloes, Zedoariæ, Cinamomi, Cardamomi, Macerij, Croci, Rosarum rubra. florum Bugiossi vtriusque, florum Nimphææ*, ana. ℈. ij. *rasuræ Eboris, Spodij*, that is, *Eboris vsti, ossis è corde Cerui, Coralij albi, Coralij rubri, Succini, Margaritarum splendidarum, Smaragdi, Hyacinthi, Granati*, ana. ℈. i. *Serici crudi torrefacti, bolis Armeni, terræ Lemniæ*, ana. ʒ. ß. *Caphuræ, Moschi, Ambaru*, ana. gra. vi. reduce them to powder, and make thereof tables with eight times so much Sugar dissolued in Rose water.

Aromaticum Rosarum maius.

Aromaticum Rosarum maius, comforteth the stomacke, with a moderate heate, and furthereth the concoction of all the intrailes, correcteth crudity, consumeth vnnecessary humours, dispatcheth wind, and is most meete for such as stand in state of recouery of a sickenesse. ℞. *Rosarum rubra*. ℥ xv. *Glycyrrhizæ rasæ*, ℥ viij. *ligni Aloes, Santali citrini*, ana. ℥ iij. *Cinamomi electi, Macerij, Caryophyllorum*, ana. ℥ ij ß. *Gummi Arabi. Tragacanthæ*, ana. ℥ ij. ℈ ij. *Nucis muschatæ, Cardamomi, Galangæ*, ana. ℥ j. *Spicæ nardi, Ambræ*, ana. ℥ ij. *Moschi*, ℈ j. and make tablets with eight times so much Sugar.

PLANTIVS.

The vsuall composition of *Aromaticum Rosarum* the Author liked of.

Electuarium Diarrhodon Abbatis.

Electuarium Diarrhodon Abbatis, mitigateth the heate of the stomacke and midriffe, and yet notwithstanding furthereth their concoction, asswageth paine, and dispatcheth wind. ℞. *Rosarum rubrarum*, ℥ j. ß. *Santali albi & rubri*, ana. ℥ ij. ß. *Tragacanthæ, Gummi Arabici, Eboris vsti*, ana. ℈ ij. *Mastiches, Spicæ nardi, Cardamomi, succi Glycyrrhizæ, Croci, Xyloales, Caryophyllorum, Gallia muschatæ, Anisi, Fœniculi, sem. Ocymi, Acinorum Berberis, sem. Scariolæ, Portulacæ & Papaueris albi, quatuor sem. frigido. maiorum, Rheubarbari electi, Cinamomi*, ana. ℈ j. *Margaritarum, ossis è corde Cerui*, ana. ℈ ß. *Caphuræ*, gra. viij. *Moschi*, gra. iiij. make thereof tablets with eight times so much Sugar dissolued in Rosewater.

PLANTIVS.

From the Electuarie of *Diarrhodon*, the Author hath subtracted *Asarum*, for that it doth ouercome the stomacke, notwithstanding it be pownd lightly: and Sugar candie likewise, for that it hath no more efficacie or vertue then white Sugar. The Electuarie of *Diagalangæ*, notwithstanding it be commended of many against the crudities of the stomacke, yet it is not in vse for the excessiue heate: in place whereof if need so require, may be substituted *Diambras* or *Diacalaminthes*.

Electuarium Diatrion Santalon.

Electuarium Diatrion Santalon, correcteth the hote intemper of the liuer, and aridden it of the remnants of obstructing matter, cureth the laundies, it comforteth the liuer and stomacke. ℞. *trium Santalorum, albi, rubri, & citrini, Rosarum rubra*, ana ℥ iij. *Rheubarbari electi, Eboris vsti, succi Glycyrrhizæ, sem. Portulacæ*, ana. ℥ ij. *Gummi Arabici, Tragacanthæ, quatuor sem. frigido. maio. mundatorum, sem. Intubi*, ana. ℥ j. ß. *Caphuræ*, ℈ j. and eight times so much white Sugar dissolued in Rose water.

PLANTIVS.

Amylum is subtracted and exempted from the Electuary *Diatrion Santalon*, as vnnecessary; neither is the Electuary *Diacucubi* here repeated amongst the Electuaries, notwithstanding it be commended of diuerse against cold affects

fects and obstructions of the liuer, for that it hath no more effect then this Electuarie *Diatrion Santalorum*.

Diacrocu.

Diacrocu, which is also commonly termed *Diacurcuma*, dissolueth inueterate affects of the liuer and spleene, and maketh quite ariddance of rebellious obstructions, and an hard tumour lately begun. And lastly, it cureth ill habite of the body proceeding thereof, and the originall matter of the Dropsie. ℞. *Croci, Asari, Petroselini Macedon. Dauci, Anisi, sem. Apij*, ana. ℥. ß. *Rheubarbari, Mew, Spicæ nardi*, ana. ℥. vj. *Costi, Myrrhæ, Cassiæ lignea, Scœnanthi, Carpobalsami, radicis Rubiæ, succi Absinthij, succi Eupatorij arefacti, olei Balsami*, ana. ℥. ij. *Calami aromatici, Cinamomi*, ana ℥. j. ß. *Scordij, Scolopendrij, succi Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥. ij. and ten times so much white Sugar dissolued in Endiue water.

PLANTIVS.

Diacrocu containeth certaine rare simples and hard to be come by, as *Cassia lignea, Carpobalsarum*, and *Opobalsamum*; which notwithstanding if they be omitted, the receipt shall be as effectuall to the purpose wherefore it is instituted.

Dialacca maior.

Dialacca maior is more effectuall then *Diacrocu* against inueterate obstructions of the liuer and spleene, against an ill habite, and in the beginning of a Dropsie. ℞. *Laccæ præparatæ, Rheubarbari*, ana. ℥. iij *Spicæ Indicæ, Mastiches, stipitum Scœnanthi, Absinthij Roma. succi Eupatorij Mesuæ, Sabinæ, Amygdalæ, amararum, Costi, Myrrhæ, Rubiæ, sem. Opij, Ammeos, Fœniculi & Anisi, Asari, Aristolochiæ longæ, Aristolochiæ rotundæ, Gentianæ, Croci, Cinamomi, Hyssopi, Cassiæ lignea, summitatum Scœnanthi, Bdellij*, ana. ℥. j. ß. *Piperis, Zinziberis*, ana. ℥ j. *Sacchari albi* twelue times so much.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium Dialacca maior, Pleres Archonticon, and the exhilarating Electuarie, do retaine the old order of composition, for that they seeme to be more fit for such affects as they be ordained for.

Electuarium exhilarans.

Electuarium exhilarans, the exhilarating Electuarie, is falsely ascribed vnto *Galen*: it driueth away sadnesse, melancholy, and euill cogitations, it quickeneth all the spirits, it helpeth concoction, augmenteth naturall heate, and preserueth the receiuer from hoarinesse of haires. ℞. *florum Ocymi, caryophyllati, Croci, Zedoariæ Xylobalsami, aut ligni Aloes, Caryophyllorum, corticum cytrij Mali, Galangæ, Maceris, Nucis muschatæ, Styracis, Calaminthæ*, ana. ℥. ij. ß. *Anisi, scobis Eboris, Thymi, Epithymi*, ana. ℥. j. *Caphuræ, Moschi, Ambaris, Margaritarum splendidarum, ossis è corde Cerui*, ana. ℥. ß. *foliorum Auri & Argenti*, ana. ℈ ß. of white Sugar eight times so much.

Electuarium Diaspermaton.

Electuarium Diaspermaton refrigerating and comforting the kidneis, & the conduites of the vrine and seed, doth mildly purge them from all corrup-

tion of humours. ℞. *quatuor semi. frigido. maio. & mino. sem, Asparagi, Pimpinellæ, Ocymi, & Petroselini, granorum, Halicacabi*, ana ℥.ij. *Milij solu, Succi Glycyrrhizæ*, ana ℥.iij. *Cinamomi, Macerij*, ana ℥.ij. *Sacchari albi* eight times so much dissolued in the water of matrish Mallow.

Electuarium λίθων θρυπτικὸν.

Electuarium λίθων θρυπτικὸν, that is, *Lithon thrupticon*, asswageth the paines of the lungs, displaceth the grauell of the kidneis and bladder, easeth the paine of the kidneis, and redresseth the restraint of the vrine, and wasteth and breaketh the stone by litle and litle. ℞. *Spicæ nardi, Zinziberis, Cinamomi, Melanopiperis, Cardamomi, Caryophillorum, Macerij*, ana ℥ ß. *Costi, Glycyrrhizæ, Cyperi, Tragacanthæ, Chamedryos*, ana ℈.ij. *sem. Apij, Ammeos, Asparagi, Ocymi, Vrticæ, Cytrij mali, Saxifragi, Pimpinellæ, Cardui, Dauci, Fœniculi, Rosci, Petroselini, Macedoni Bardanæ & Seselios, Asari*, ana ℥.j. *lapidis Spongiæ, lapidis Lincis, lapidis Cancri, & lapidis Iudaici*, ana ℥.j. ß. *sanguinis Hircini præparati*, ℥.j ß. make thereof a powder, and temper it with ten times so much white Sugar, dissolued in water of Betonie: but when extremity of paine forceth, and vrine is restrained, the sole powder is ministred, *ex passo Cretico*, from ℈.ij. to ℥ j.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium Diaspermaton we haue read, described for many & sundry diseases, this notwithstanding which is very aptly compounded vnder the same name, seemeth to auaile much against the heate of the kidneis, the scalding of the vrine, and other affects to which it is assigned. These simples be withdrawne and expuncted out of that Electuarie, which they terme *Lithon tribon*, which in no place be found sincere and pure: and other astringing be added in their stead, which do hinder the breaking of the stone, & the displaying of the sand: sundry seeds and many stones, and the prepared bloud of the Goate is added, all which haue a singular power and force against the stone, and against all the *Symptomata* which arise thereof, and if in any respect the heate be feared, it may be tempered with *Diaspermaton*.

Electuarium Diacalaminthes compositum.

Electuarium Diacalaminthes compositum, doth mightily prouoke the floures and all purgations of the wombe. ℞. *pulueris Electuarij Diacalaminthes simplicis*, ℥. ß. *foliorum Prassij, Sampsuci, Melissophylli, Artemisiæ, Sabinæ, aridorum*, ana ℥.j. *Cyperi, sem. Rutæ & Rubiæ, Macerij, Cinamomi*, ana ℈ ij. and twelue times so much of white Sugar, dissolued in the water of Feuerfew or Pellitory of the wall.

PLANTIVS.

The compound Electuarie of *Diacalaminthes*, seemeth fitly added in the last place to the other Electuaries, for that there was no other meete receipt extant to purge the corruption of the wombe.

Of

Of moist Antidotaries.

Antidotus analeptica.

ANtidotus *analeptica* recouereth all the powers of the body enfeebled and wasted, it taketh away the griping of the heart, and the qualming and swounding, it restoreth the body extenuated either by profusiõn of bloud, or by an excessiue euacuation; it helpeth such as be consumed and wasted, for that it humecteth, nourisheth, strengtheneth, & comforteth. ℞. *Rosarum rubrarum, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana ℥.ij.gra.v. *Gummi Arabici, & Tragacanthæ*, ana.℥.ij.& ℈ ij. *Santali albi & rubri*, ana.℥ j. and ℈ j. *succi Glycyrrhizæ, Amyli. semin. Papaueris albi, Portulacæ, Lactucæ, & Seriolæ*, ana.℥.iij. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum, seminum Cydoniorum, seminum Maluæ, seminum Bomberis, seminum Violarum, Strobulorum, Pistaciorum recentium, Amygdalarum dulcium, pulpe Sebesten*, ana. ℥. ij. *Cariophyllorum, Spodij, Cinamomi*, ana.℥.j. *Croci*.gr.v. *Penidiorum*, ℥.ß. when they be all powned, temper them with sirupe of Violets.

PLANTIVS.

In the Antidotary analepticke, which they terme *Resumptiuam*, the Author thought good to alter nothing besides the order of the simples, and that for the graines of Barberies, *Pistacia* be put in the receipt.

Antidotus Diasaterion.

ANtidotus *Diasaterion*, augmenteth the genitall seed, procureth a lust to venery, and doth as it were quicken and reuiue the dull desire thereto: and it is a singular helpe and comfort against the imbecility of the kidneis and spermaticke vessels, whereby it auaileth much for procreation of children. ℞. *radicis Saterij recentis & solidæ, radicis Pastinacæ satiuæ, radicis Eringij, Nucis Indicæ, Strobulorum, Pistaciorum*, ana ℥ j ß. *Cariophyllorum, Zinziberis, Anisi, sem. Erucæ, linguæ auis quæ semen est Fraxini*, ana.℥.v. *Cinamomi, caudarũ Scincorum, semin. Bulbi*, ana.℥.ij.ß. *Moschi*, gr.v. *mellis optimi despumati*, ℔ iij. The rootes being bruised are boiled in hony, and tempered, and after *Nux Indica. Strobuli* and *Pistacia* being bruised are also put to them, and the other simples in the end being exquisitely powned.

PLANTIVS.

There be three compositions set downe of *Diasaterion*, but this is the most effectuall of all, and therefore may stand in stead of all the rest.

Antidotus è succo baphico seu grano infectorio.

ANtidotus *è Cocco baphica seu grano infectorio*, which the Arabians terme *kermes*, cheareth the heart, & driues away sorrow coming without occasiõ: it restraineth and bridleth *Melancholia & Mania*, and recouereth the decayed spirits & powers of the body. ℞. *succi Malorũ fragrantiũ, aquæ Rosarum*, ana. ℔ ij. *in quibus macera heris* xxiiij. *Serici staminis crudi*, ℔.j. Let it boile easily, and then straine it, and in the strained liquor, boile *granorum infectoriorum*, ℥ ij.

the decoction then will become red, in the which being strained, dissolue *Saccharí albi*, ℔ .j. ß. Boile them then againe to the thickneſſe of hony: in the end put in *Ambræ crudæ contuſæ*, ʒ ß. and when it is liqueſied or melted, ſprinkle in theſe powders, *Ligni Aloes crudi, Cinamomi*, ana ʒ.vj. *lapidis Cyanei loti & præparati*, ʒ i ß *Margaritarum non perforatarum*, ʒ ij. *foliorum auri puriſſimi*, ʒ.j *Moſchi* ϑ j.

PLANTIVS.

Antidotus è Cocco baphico, termed *confectio Alkermes*, cannot be ſafely prepared with ſilke already died, and as they terme it, *Karmeſino*; for that kind of ſilke vſually is not died without Galle, Alume and Arſenicke, which is altogether venimous, therefore this way of compoſition is much better.

Antidotus è baccis Lauri.

ANtidotus *è baccis Lauri*, doth mightily diſſipate wind through heat and tenuity, and is ſpeciall good as well for paine in the great guttes as in the ſmall. ℞. *foliorum Rutæ*, ʒ x. *Ammeos, Cumini, Nigellæ, Leuiſtici ſeminis, Origani, Carui, Amygdalarum amararum, Piperis longi, Mentaſtri, Dauci, Acori, baccarum Lauri, Caſtorei*, ana. ʒ ii. *Sagapeni*, ʒ ß. *Opoponacis*. ʒ.iii. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔.i.ß.

Philonium.

PHilonium miniſtred with *Opium* after ſixe moneths, doth take away vehement and grieuous paine, either in the great guts or in the kidneis, or in the Spleene, prouoketh ſleepe, ſtayeth diſtillation, aſſwageth cough, and reſtraineth ſpitting of bloud ℞. *Croci*, ʒ.v. *Pyrethri, Euphorbij, Spicæ nardi, Myrrhæ, Caſtorij*, ana. ʒ j. *Piperis albi, Hyoſciami*, ana ʒ.xx. *Opij*. ʒ x. *Mellis optimi expumati*, ℔.ij. the doſe hereof is from ϑ.i. to ʒ.i.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath preferred aboue the reſt this deſcription of *Philonium* approued both by authoritie of *Galen*, and by experience, for that this Alume is ſufficient to allay vehement torments, and yet notwithſtanding the Author following *Meſue* hath put in Myrrhe and Caſtorie (neither of which *Galen* improueth) that the mixture might the rather be the ſafer, for that they haue a peculiar vertue to correct *Opium*. If the maner of compoſition in this receipt be conſidered, the weight of *Opium* is almoſt twiſe ſo much as in *Philonio Romano*. The greater *Philonium* which they terme *Romanum* (for that it hath but halfe the weight of *Opium*) may be miniſtred in a double Doſe, namely from ϑ ij. to ʒ j.

Antidotus termed Requies.

ANtidotus termed *Requies*, without *Opium*, doth allay the extreme heate of burning feauers, aſſwageth thirſt, repreſſeth madneſſe, procureth ſleepe, and cauſeth eaſe ℞. *Roſarum, Violarum*, ana. ʒ iii. *corticum radicum Mandragoræ, ſeminis Hyoſciami albi, & Papaueris albi, ſeminis Seriolæ, Lactucæ, Portulacæ & Pſillij, Nucis muſchatæ, Cinamomi electi*, ana. ʒ i ß. *trium Santalorum, Spodij, Tragacanthæ*, ana ϑ.ii. *mellis optimi expumati triplum.*

PLAN-

PLANTIVS.

ANtidotus termed *Requies*, hath lesse *Opium* then any kind of *Philonium* or of *Opiatum*: yet it cooleth mightily through the mixture of other simples which be almost all cold; notwithstanding the vse thereof is scarcely safe, for that the *Opium* is not sufficiently corrected by mixture of hote simples. But if the composition be proued without *Opium*, truly it doth not little auaile to asswage the burning heate of agues, and dotage, thirst, and whatsoeuer *Symptomata* do proceed of the feauerous heate. The other compositions of *Philonium* are to be abandoned as nothing necessary, as both the Antidotary *Diolibanum* and *Athanasia*, and *Musa aenea*, *Requies cum Opio*, *Trifera magna*, & *Esdiæ magna*, of what Author soeuer it was inuented. For such compositions as haue *Opium*, if they be ordained to asswage paine, *Philonium* described by this Author may supply the want. But if it be ordained either to strengthen the principall parts, or to expell poyson and many other sundrie diseases, *Triphera magna*, *Esdiæ magna*, *Aurea Alexandrina*, and *Athanasia*, *Theriace* and *Mithridatum* may therefore stand in their stead. The confection *Anacardina* is also omitted, being flat contrarie to those which I haue repeated. For notwithstanding it be commended for many diseases, yet for the great exuperant heate thereof it is very dangerous, for that it doth speedily inflame the spirits and humours, and forthwith doth procure an ague.

Theriace diatessaron.

THeriace diatessaron is excellent good against Epilepsie, Conuulsion, Palsey, Crudities of the stomack, ill Habite, Dropsie, and other cold diseases. Further it auaileth much against venime receiued, against the biting of virulent beasts, and a pestilent constitution. ℞. *radicis Gentianæ*, *baccarum Lauri*, *Myrrhæ*, *Aristolochiæ rotundæ*, ana ℥ ij. and when they be very seriously pownded, receiue and mixe with *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔. ii.

Theriace Andromachi senioris.

THeriace Andromachi senioris preuaileth against the stinging of poysonous beasts, it helpeth the falling euill, the Apoplexie, the resolution of the bodie, *Cephalalgia*, *Asthma*, *Hæmaptoe*, aggrieuance in the stomacke, laundies, Dropsie, paines of the kidneies, colicke, goute, melancholicke and lunaticke men, and lastly the Leprosie: it expelleth the floures and a dead child: it maruellously comforteth and fortifieth the heart, the braine, the liuer, the stomacke, and the whole body, and preserueth it from a pestilent contagion ℞. *Trochiscorum scylliticorum*, ℥ vj. *Trochiscorum theriacorum*, *Magnatis hædicroi*, *Piperis longi*, *Opij*, ana. ℥ iij. *Rosarum rubrarum*, *seminis Napi syluestris*, *Scordij*, *Opobalsami*, *Cinamomi*, *Agarici*, ana ℥ j. ß. *Myrrhæ*, *Costi*, *Croci*, *Cassiæ lignea*, *Nardi Indicæ*, *Scænanthi*, *Thuris masculi*, *Piperis albi & nigri*, *Dictamni*, *Marrubij*, *Rheubarbari*, *Stœchadis*, *semi. Petroselini*, *Macedo. Calamites*, *Terebinthinæ*, *Zinziberis*, *radicis Pentaphylli*, ana. ℥ vj. *Pollij montani*, *Chamæpyteos*, *Styracis calamitæ*, *Mei*, *Amomi*, *Nardi Celticæ*, *Sigilli Lemnij*, *Phu Pontici*, *Chamædryos*, *foliorum Malabatri aut Macis*, *Chalcidis tostæ*, (which may be commodiously pretermitted) *radicis Gentianæ*, *Anisi*, *succi Hypocistchidis*, *Car-*

pobalsami, Gummi Arabici splendidi, sem. Fœniculi, Cardamomi minoris, Seselios, Acatiæ, Thalaspios, sem. Hyperici, Ammeos, ana ℥. ß. *Castoroi, Aristolochiæ longæ: Sentenuis, sem. Dauci, Bituminis Iudaici, Opoponacis, Centaurij minoris, Galbani*, ana ℥.ij. *mellis optimi expumati triplum, id est*, ℔.xiiij.℥.iij. *Vini optimi odorati*, so much as shall suffise to dissolue the liquors and iuyces. The greatest dose is ʒ.iiij. or ʒ ß. for ʒ j. of the powder, for ʒ.iiij of the composition containe gra.i. of *Opium*.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath therefore imitated the composition of Triacle set forth by *Andromachus* senior, in an Elegiacall verse, for that neither the number nor the weight of simples can in verse easily be changed. Certaine Authors afterward framed this receipt in other order of simples, and peraduenture more conuenient: to the which also the added Sothernwood and Gladine, and altered the doses of certaine simples, and therefore their receipt is not to be accounted so certaine. Wherefore without all controuersie we are to insist on this description onely. Whereas the Author doth admonish vs of *Chalcitide id est*, vst vitrioll not to be put into this composition, therein imitating *Valerius Cordus*, that seemeth very conuenient; for whereas that medicine, especially being burnt, is maruellous causticke, *escaroticum* and hurtfull to the intrailes, and hath bene experienced nothing to auaile for any externall disease, there is no cause why with so great inconuenience and vnpleasantnesse of taste, it should be admitted into this composition. For if it be (as some men thinke) therefore added to make the composition blacke, it ought not for colour sake, by taste and operation so much annoy the body. Finally by taking it away, the whole receipt will be more commodious, lesse sharpe and hote, and will become more pleasant to the receiuer.

Mithridatum.

Mithridatum doth nigheſt resemble the power of triacle, and is vsed against the same diseases with a great deale more facility and lesse extremity of heate, according vnto the description of *Andromachus*, allowed of *Galen* and other ancient Physitions. ℞. *Myrrhæ, Nardi*, ana ʒ.i. ʒ. ß. *Croci, Cinamomi, Scordij, Zinziberis*, ana ʒ.vii. ß *Opij*, ʒ iiii. graines. xxv. *Styracis, Seselios, Abrotani, Libanotidis*, ana ʒ.x. *Castorij* ʒ vii. ʒ.ß *Scœnanthi, Polij, Costi, Piperis longi, sem. Dauci, Scœnanthi, Galbani, Terebinthinæ*, ana ʒ.vi. ß. *Piperis albi*, ʒ.v. ʒ.vi. *Petroselini, seminis Nardi Celticæ, seminis Fœniculi, folij Indi aut Macerin, Gentianæ, Rosarum siccarum, Mei Athamantici*, ana ʒ. iiii. *Cassiæ lignæ*, ʒ.v. ß. *Thuris*, ʒ vi. ʒ.i. *succi Hypocisthidis*, ʒ vi. gra.xv. *Acori aut Calami aromatici, Phu Pontici, Sagapeni, fructus Balsami, Hyperici, Iridis, Acatiæ, Gummi, Cardamomi, Policini*, that is, ana ʒ ij. *terræ Lemniæ, lumborum Scinci, Cypheos, Opoponacis*, ana. ʒ.vi. *Thlaspy*, ʒ vi. ʒ.ii. *Anisi, Hyssopi, Camepyteos*, ana. ʒ.iii. *Opobalsami, Aristolochiæ rotundæ, Marrubij*, ana ʒ.i. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔.vii. ß.

PLANTIVS.

There be foure sundry and very diuerse compositions of *Mithridatum* extant, one (& that the greatest) is the inuention of *Nicolaus Mirepsus*, described by *Nicolaus Præpositus*, and vsed of all Apothecaries euery where; which euery man doth daily experience to be very effectuall against maligne and pestilent agues

agues, venime, vomites, crudities, lienteries, and many other diseases and whatsoeuer first Author or inuentor it had, it is now euery where much practised. The second is of *Democritus* an ancient Greeke Author, practised of *Auicenna*, and set out in the Apothecaries booke of *Nicolaus Præpositus*; which as it is found to be both in composition and in vse more facile then the other, so in vertue it is no whit inferiour to the same, but rather more excellent & effectuall against all maligne and contagious diseases. The third was described by *Andromachus*, and the fourth which *Galen* and *Ætius* and other Greeke Authors tooke out of the workes of *Antipater* and *Cleophantus* ancient Physitions. The two later be not much vnlike, for they consist of the same simples, notwithstanding placed in diuerse order, whose doses do differ in a certaine few halfe scruples onely, so that they two may seeme fitly to be applyed to the same vse: yet notwithstanding, because this last is somewhat more copious, compounded of 52. simples, and corrected and approoued according to the diligent iudgement of *Galen* it is to be esteemed the best of the rest, and most effectuall against the disease tofore repeated. Wherefore the Author hath repeated this onely, because he would haue it vsed onely of all Physitions, and therefore he hath altered the order of the simples, reducing into one place all such as were of one Dose, that thereby the Apothecaries might haue lesse labour in compounding and confecting the receipt.

De Trochiscis, seu Pastillis.

Trochisci è vipera.

Trochisci è vipera, which are vsed in the composition of the great triacle; the flesh of chosen and prepared vipers is boiled in pure water with greene Dill and salt, from the bones: then being taken out it is grinded on a marble stone, and it is sprinkled by little and little, with like weight of crummes of wheaten bread dried, powring in, in the meane time (if need so require) the owne broth of the vipers, and a little *Opobalsami aut Succidanei*, whereof Trochiskes be made the weight of ℥.j. and be diligently dried in the shadow.

Trochisci scyllitici.

Trochisci scyllitici be referred to the same composition of Triacle. ℞. *medullæ Scyllæ assatæ*, ℔. i. *farinæ Erui*, ℥. viii. and being well bruised they be tempered into *Trochiscos*, and be dried in the shadow.

Trochischi hedricoi.

Trochischi hedricoi be likewise applyed to the composition of Triacle. ℞. *Mari aut Balsamitæ, Amaraci, Asari, Aspalathi, Calami odorati aut Galangæ, Phu Pontici, Xylobalsami, Opobalsami, aut Succidaneorum, Cinamomi, Costi*, ana. ℥. iii. *Myrrhæ, folij Nardi Indicæ, Croci, Cassiæ*, ana. ℥. vi. *Mastiches*, ℥. i. so much wine of the best as sufficeth to the making of Trochiskes.

Trochiſci Cypheos.

Trochiſci Cypheos be requiſite to the compoſition of Mythridate. ℞. *palpæ Vuarum paſſarum, Terebinthinæ coctæ, Myrrhæ, Scænanthi*, ana ℥.j. ß. *Calami aromatici*, ℥ ix. *Cinamomi*, ℥ ß. *Edellij, Anicis*, that is, *Blattæ Byzantij, Spicæ nardi, Caſſiæ lignæ, Cyperi, Arcenthidum*, that is, *baccarum Iunperi*, ana. ℥. iij. *Aſpalathi*, ℥.ij. ß *Croci*, ℥.j. *melli exactumati & vini optimi*, ana. ſo much as is ſufficient to the tempering of Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS, *in Trochiſcos.*

There is no alteration made of the Trochiskes which be commended by the iudgement of all Authors, as auaileable to the great compoſition leſt that in the alteration of them there ſhould be ſomewhat changed in the greater compoſitions which be by vſe approued.

Trochiſci è Capparibus.

Trochiſci è Capparibus doth take away the hardneſſe of the Spleene, groſſe melancholy, and diſpatcheth winde. ℞. *corticum radicum Capparis, ſem. Agri*, ana ℥ vj. *Ammoniaci* ℥ ß. *ſem. Nigellæ calamitæ, ſucci Eupatorij, Amygdalarum amararum, foliorum Rutæ, Ariſtolochiæ Rotundæ, ſem. Naſturty*, ana. ℥.j. *Cyperi, Scolopendrij*, that is, *Ceterachi*, ana. ℥ j. receiue and temper the powders in *Ammoniacum* diſſolued in vineger, and make thereof Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

Trochiſci è Capparibus be very wiſely deſcribed, and yet notwithſtanding if you adde vnto them *Gummi Laccæ ſeu Caucami & Rubei tinctorum*, ana. ℥ j. they ſhall become more effectuall; neither be other Trochisks of *Lacca* to be admitted for this purpoſe, but that theſe of Capers be ſufficient enough againſt obſtructions, and inueterate diſeaſes of the Spleene.

Trochiſci de Eupatorio.

Trochiſci de Eupatorio do diſſolue the obſtructions and tumours of the liuer eſpecially, and doth cure daily agues ariſing thereof, the Iaundies, and beginning of Dropſie. ℞. *Mannæ electæ, ſucci Eupatorij*, ana. ℥.j. *Roſarum*, ℥. ß. and being all receiued and tempered with the iuyce of Agrimonie and *Manna* are to be made into Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

Trochiſci ex Eupatorio, be ſubſtituted alſo in ſtead of Trochiskes of Rubarbe and Wormewood, for that they be of great affinitie and like vertue.

Trochiſci Alkakengi ſeu Halycacabi.

Trochiſci Alkakengi ſeu Halycacabi do mitigate the exulcerations of the kidneis and bladder, difficultie of vrine ariſing of thoſe parts, and piſſing of bloud. ℞. *baccarum Halycacabi*, ℥.iij. *ſem. Cytrulli, Melonum, & Cucurbitæ mundatorum*, ana ℥.ij. ß *boli Armeni, Gummi Arabi, thuris, ſanguinis Draconis, Papauris albi, Amygdalarum amararum, ſucci Glycyrrhizæ, Tragacanthæ, Amyli, Strobulorum*, ana. ℥.vj. *ſem. Apij, Succini, terræ Lemniæ, ſem. Hyoſciami, Opij*, ana. ℥ ij. and with the iuyce of winter Cherries, make Trochiskes of theſe ſimples. There be other Trochiskes without *Opium* compounded like vnto theſe.

Trochiſci,

Trochiſci è Myrrha.

Trochiſci è Myrrha, do mightily bring downe the floures, and do cure the diſeaſe ariſing of their ſuppreſſion, and laſtly do expell the ſeconds, or a dead child. ℞. *Myrrhæ*, ℥.iij. *Lupulorum*, ℥ v. *foliorum Rutæ, Mentaſtri, Pulegij, Cumini, Rubeæ, Aſſæ fœtidæ, Sagapeni Opoponacis*, ana. ℥. ij. and of theſe be made Trochiskes with the iuyce of Mugwort.

Trochiſci è terra Lemnia.

Trochiſci è terra Limnia, do ſtay courſing and outragious humours, eſpecially being thin, do reſtraine the exceſſiue fluxe of the belly inwardly taken, and being outwardly applyed, they do ſuppreſſe profuſion of bloud, iſſuing either out of the noſe, or wombe, or Hemorrhoides, or any other part. ℞. *ſanguinis Draconis, Gummi Arab. Aſſali, Spodij, Acatiæ, Hypociſtidos, lapidis Hæmatitæ, Balauſtiorum, boli Armeni, terræ Lemniæ, Corallij rubri, Succini*, ana. ℥ ij. *Margaritarum, Tragacanthæ, Papaueris nigri*, ana ℥.j. ß. *ſemmis Portulacæ toſti, cornu Cerui uſti, Thuris Nucum, Cupreſſi, Croci*, ana. ℥.ij. and confect Trochiskes thereof with the iuyce of diſtilled water of Plantaine.

PLANTIVS.

Trochiſci è Ramich be ſubtracted of the Trochiskes of *terra Limnia*, for that they comprehend the greateſt part of them. Theſe Trochiskes *è terra Lemniæ* comprehend great ſtore of aſtringing and cooling ſimples, and therefore other aſtringing compoſitions be not requiſite. And ſith this receipt is of all other moſt effectuall and leſſe dangerous, all the other be ſuppreſſed, as *Trochiſci Ramich, Trochiſci Diarrhodõ, Trochiſci Oxyacanthæ, Trochiſci è Succino ſeu Carabæ, & Trochiſci è Spodio*, for that the compoſition of all thoſe is nothing apt nor neceſſary. The Trochiskes of *Diarrhodon* which do conſiſt of Roſes, *Spodion*, red and white Saunders, of Saffrõ and Camphire, may ſupply the place of theſe, eſpecially if they ſeeme to be vnpleaſant in taſte.

Trochiſci è Caphura.

Trochiſci è Caphura do aſſwage the heat of burning agues, the feruency of bloud and choler, the inflammation and hote intemper of the intrails, and whatſoeuer thirſt ariſeth thereof. ℞. *Roſarum rubrarum*, ℥. ß. *Spodij, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥.ij. *quatuor ſeminum frigidorum maiorum, Tragacanthæ, Gummi Arabi, Croci, Spicæ nardi Indicæ*, ana ℥.j. *Santali citrini*, ℥.ij ß *ligni Aloes, Cardamomi, Amyli, Caphruæ*, ana. ℥.ij. *Saccari albiſſ. Mannæ electæ*, ana. ℥ ij. *Muſcilaginis, Pſillij* depromed out of Roſewater, as much as ſufficeth to make Trochiskes.

Trochiſci Galliæ Moſchatæ.

Trochiſchi Galliæ Moſcatæ do maruelouſly corroborate the heart, the brain, and the other intrailes, and do giue a good ſmell to the mouth and the reſt of the body. ℞. *ligni Aloes crudi*, ℥. v *Ambræ*, ℥ iij *Moſchi*, ℥. j *Muſcilaginis, Tragacanthæ*, made in Roſewater, ſo much as ſufficeth for Trochiskes.

Trochiſci alyptæ Muſcatæ.

Trochiſci alyptæ Muſcatæ haue the ſame effect, either inwardly receiued, or by ſuffumigation, and further, atridde the body of difficulty of breathing ℞. *Ladani puriſſimi*. ℥ iij. *Styracis Calaminthæ*, ℥.j. ß. *Styracis rubræ*, ℥.j.

ligni Aloes, ℥.ij. Ambræ, ℥.j. Cathuræ, ʒ.ß. Moschi, ℈.ß. and distilled Rose water as much as need requireth.

Trochisci Bechici albi.

TRochisci Bechici albi, which also be termed Pilulæ albæ, do mitigate a sharpe distillation, and do asswage hoarsnes & continuall cough. ℞. Sacchari albissimi, ℔ j. Sacchari candi, Penidiorum, ℥.iiij. radicis Iridis Florentini, ℥. ij. Amyli, ℥.j ß. the muscilage of Tragacanth made in Rosewater, so much as sufficeth to the confirmation of Trochiskes.

Trochischi Narcotici.

TRochischi Narcotici being safely applyed, to asswage the paine of the head and teeth, do procure sleepe in the burning of feauers, do extinguish Erysipelas and inflammations, and being dissoued in other medicines, do mitigate the paine of the externall parts. ℞. Gummi Arabici & Tragacanthæ, Amyli, ana. ℥.ß Ceruſæ lotæ aqua Rosarum, ℥ vj Styracis, Calaminthæ, Myrrhæ, Castorij, Opij sapa soluti, ana ℈.iiij. Croci, ʒ.ß. and when they be all bruised they are to be receiued and mingled with the muscilage of Fleewort taking out of Rose water, and thereof confect Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath brought into the order of Trochiskes in the last place, Narcoticos Trochiscos against extreame torments, the composition whereof is verie apt, and the vse verie necessary, and the rather, because there be none extant which can serue for that purpose.

De Ecligmatis & conditis.

Ecligma è pineis Nucleis.

ECligma è pineis Nucleis, do extenuate and deterge grosse humors of the breast and lungs, verie conuenient and commodious against Asthma, difficultie of breathing, and inueterate coughes. ℞. Nucleorum pinearum recentium. ℥.xxx. pulpæ Palmularum, ℥. xxxv. Amygdalarum dulcium & amararum, Auellanarum assatarum, Tragacanthæ, Gummi Arabici, Glycyrrhizæ, Amyli, Capilli Veneris, Iridis Florentini, ana. ʒ.iiij pulpæ Passularum, butyri recentis, Saccari albissimi, ana. ℥. iij. mellis albi expumati, ℔.iij. fiat Ecligma. A wholesome and approued Ecligme more effectuall then the former against the same diseases. ℞. Cinamomi, Hyssopi, Glycyrrhizæ, ana. ℥. ß. Reripha, & Mixaria, ana ℥.xxx. numero: Vuarum passarum purgatarum, Ficuum aridarum, Palmularum pinguium, ana. ℥. ij. Fenugræci, ʒ.v. Capilli Veneris. M.j. sem. Anisi, Fœniculi & Lini, radicis Iridis, foliorum Calaminthæ, ana. ℥. ß. boile them all in ℔.iij. of water to the consumption of two, and boile againe the strained iuyce with ℔.ij. Penidiorum to the thicknes of honey, and then put in Pinearum expurgatarum, ℥. v. Amygdalarum dulcium mundatarum, Glycyrrhizæ, Tragacanthæ, Gummi Arab. Amyli, ana. ℥.iij. Iridis. ℥ ij.

Ecligma

Ecligma è Scylla.

Ecligma è Scylla auaileth against the same diseases. ℞. *succi seu mucoris Scillæ, & mellis optimi expumati*, ana. ℔.j. boile them to the consistence of an Ecligme.

Ecligma ad Asthma.

Ecligma ad Asthma is an Ecligma which of all other before propounded is most effectuall against *Asthma*. ℞. *Scyllæ assatæ* ℥ ß. *radicis Iridis, Hyssopi, Prassij, Marrubij*, ana ℥ j. *Myrrhæ, Croci*, ana. ℥.ß. with sufficient quantity of hony, let the compound Ecligma of *Scylla* be confected.

Many simples be condited with Sugar, that they may the longer continue with their full vertue, whereof some be whole, some be bruised: such as be whole be boiled in thrise so much Sugar vntill the whole moisture consumed, there remaineth the perfect consistency of a sirupe, as for example: *Acorus* is condited against the cold diseases of the braines and nerues, and to recouer their strength.

Zinziber is condited against the cruelty of the stomacke and slimy fleame in the lungs.

The roote of Bugloss is condited against the palpitation of the heart and qualming.

Peaches, fragrant Apples, the rind of the Citrine, be condited against *Cardialgia*, and *Melancholia*.

Quince peares, and *Diacydonion*, and Peares, be condited to strengthen and corroborate the stomacke.

Walnuts, *Myrobalani, Emblici & Cepuli*, and Nutmegs, being condited, do further the concoction of the stomacke, do get an appetite, and increase strength.

Cherries and the slips of Endiue, Purslaine and Lettuce condited, do refrigerate, asswage thirst, and procure appetite.

Barberies and Ceruises being condited, do allay thirst and the feruency of choler, and restraine fluxe of the wombe.

Satyrion and *Eringium* condited, do increase the seed, and stirre vp a desire to carnality, and further conception.

Conseruæ.

BVt such as cannot well be boiled, let them be bruised & mixed with twise so much Sugar, & so be set in the Sun, & conserued, and retaine the name of compound Sugar, as Iosacchar, Rhodosacchar. But of all other kinds of compound Sugar, these ought especially to be in a readines: Sugar of Rosemary, of the floures of Sage, of the floures of Betony, and of *Stæchados*, of the floures of Piony: for that they be especiall good against the cold diseases of the braine & nerues, to comfort and strengthen them against the Epilepsie and Apoplexie.

The Sugar of the flowers of Flouredeluce, of Maidenhaire and of the roote of Enula, doth mildly purge the breast, and ease the lungs.

The Sugar of Comfery doth ſtay ſpitting of bloud.

The Sugar of Violets, and the flowers of Bugloſſe doth refrigerate and cheare the heart.

Sugar of Roſes ſtrengtheneth the ſtomack, ſtayeth diſtillations, and reſtraineth eruption of bloud.

Sugar of the flowers of Cichory cooleth the liuer, and openeth the obſtructions thereof.

Further, there be ſundry medicinable iuyces reſerued to vſe, wherof ſome be ſimple & pure, others mixed with Sugar, which for that by boyling they come to the thicknes of *Sapa*, be therefore termed of the Arabians *Robuo*, that is, *ſapales*. Theſe iuyces being ſtrained, be permitted to ſettle vntill they wax cleare, and then the purer portion thereof is boiled to the thickneſſe of hony, and then is ſet in the Sunne, and ſo is kept. If Sugar be therewith to be mingled, it muſt be in weight halfe ſo much as the iuyce is.

Succus è Nucibus, termed *Diacaryon*, auaileth againſt ſharpe diſtillations and *Angina*, and hath of the iuyce of yong Walnuts, ℔. iiij. *mellis optimi*, ℔. ij. and be boyled to the thickneſſe of hony.

Succus è Moris, termed *Diamoron*, is good againſt the fretting vlcers of the mouth and iawes, and ſharpe diſtillations. ℞. *ſucci Maiorum domeſticorum*, ℔. ß. *ſucci Maiorum rubri, mellis optimi expumati*, ana ℔. j. *Sapæ*, ℥ iij. boile them to the conſiſtency of hony.

The iuyce of wild Plumbes be boiled vntill they become thicke, and then they be vſed in ſtead of *Acatia*.

Of Medicines applied outwardly, and firſt of Oyles.

Oleum Roſarum.

Oleum Roſarum doth quench inflammations and burning in the ſtomacke, it doth ſtrengthen, thicken and ſtay fluxes. ℞. *Gemmarum Roſarum rubrarum recentium*, bereſt of the prickes and bruiſed, *ſucci Roſarum*, ana. ℔. j. macerate them in ℔. v. of *oleum Omphacinum* which is without Salt, in veſſell of glaſſe cloſe ſhut; then ſet them ſeuen daies in the Sunne, after boile them three houres in a double veſſell, and the leaues being ſtrained and caſt away, put in new, and change them twiſe or thriſe: in fine, the leaues being againe ſtrained and caſt away, ſet it in the Sunne and boile it in a double veſſell vntill the iuyces be conſumed. If you want *oleum Omphacinum* without ſalt, the common oyle muſt be oftentimes ſtirred and waſhed in the iuyce of ſoure grapes.

Oleum Violarum.

Oleum Violarum quencheth heate, abateth hote inflammations, eaſeth the pleuriticke, and aſſwageth the diſeaſes of the lungs and breaſt: it is made of

of common oyle being cold, or of oile Almonds being new and vnsauorie, or which at the least is washed with cold water; then fresh purple Violets be put into the oyle in a vessell well couered, and be set to Sunne vntill tenne dayes, and euery third day the Violets be changed, and in the end dry Violets be put in.

Oleum Nymphæa.

Oleum Nymphæa doth more refrigerate, and doth especially asswage the heart of the kidneis, bladder and head; mitigateth madnesse, procureth sleepe: it is made as oyle of Violets, of the white flowers of water Lillies macerated in laued oyle, but it is set in the Sunne twenty dayes, in the which space the flowers be changed thrise.

Oleum Papaueris.

Oleum Papaueris worketh the same effect that *Oleum Nymphæa* doth, but more effectually and porperly, it appeaseth paine of the head, madnesse, and procureth sleepe. The flowers, leaues, and heades of white Poppie being bruised, be macerated in laued oyle; and it is made as *oleum Nymphæa*, yet it may be mingled in a double vessell: there be which do presse out the oyle of the seeds of Poppy, as out of Almonds.

Oleum Hyoscyami albi.

Oleum Hyoscyami albi is prepared in like order as oyle of Poppy, both by maceration and expression, and is as effectuall as oyle of Poppie for all the repeated purposes.

Oleum Mandragoræ simplex.

Oleum Mandragoræ simplix doth more apparently refrigerate, asswageth paine proceeding of inflammation, and procureth sleepe; it is confected of the appels of Mandrake bruised and macerated in oyle, and easily boiled as *oleum Nymphæa.*

Oleum Mandragoræ compositum.

Oleum Mandragoræ compositum, doth of all other most effectually refrigerate, & doth asswage the paines coming of inflammatiõ, and other agrieuances whatsoeuer: being annointed it doth mitigate the ach of the head, and frensie; and put to the nostrils, forthwith it procureth sleepe. ℞. *Olei* ℔. ii. ʃ. *succi pomorum Mandragoræ*, ℥. iiij *succi Hyoscyami albi*, ℥. ii. *succi capitis Papaueris albi.* ℥. iii. *succi Violarum succi Cicutæ tenerrimæ*, ana ℥ i. *Opij, Styracis, Calaminthæ*, ana ℥. ß. all which must be mixed together, and stand in the Sun ten dayes, and after be boiled in a double vessel vntil the iuyce be consumed: in the end the oyle must be strained and set vp vntill need require.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cidoniorum, refrigerateth, astringeth, is very good for the stomacke, intrails and liuer being feebled, for that by annointing it restraineth vomite, laske, and sweate. ℞. *Cydoniorum cum cortice & semine tusorum, succi Cydoniorum.* ana. ℔. ß. mingle them in a vessell of glasse, & poure in of *Oleum omphacinum*, ℔. i. ʃ. set them in the Sun fisteene daies, then boile

them foure houres in a double veſſell, and the Quince peare being ſtrained, other freſh are likewiſe to be incocted the ſecond time, and alſo the third time, vntill the humour be wholly conſumed. In fine, preſſe out the oyle, and keepe it to your vſe.

Oleum Myrtinum.

Oleum Myrtinum refrigerateth, aſtringeth, & comforteth, but properly the heart ſtomack, braine and nerues; it is made as *Milium* of the berries and leaues of Myrtle, by adding the iuyce alſo when they cannot be come by.

Oleum Maſtichinum.

Oleum Maſtichinum, doth by abſtriction corroborate the braine, ſinewes, ſtomacke and liuer, verie commodious againſt lientery, vomit, and crudi-tie. ℞. *Maſtiches*, ℥.iij. *aquæ Roſarum*. ℥ iiij *Olei omphacini vel roſacei*. ℔.j. Boile them in a double veſſell to the conſumption of the water. Wine in ſtead of Roſe water is put in, when as the wearineſſe of the vnluſtineſſe of the ſinewes is to be aſſwaged.

Oleum Menthæ.

Oleum Menthæ doth by annointing corroborate the ſtomacke and other parts, furthereth concoction with a moderate heate, and it is confected in this wiſe. The leaues of ſowne Mints bruiſed with the iuyce be macerated in oile of *Omphacinum*, ſet in the Sunne, boiled and oftentimes changed, as hath bene ſhewed in the oyle of Roſes.

Oleum Abſinthij.

Oleum Abſinthij doth moderately calefie and corroborate, doth further concoction, procure appetite, open obſtructions, kill wormes. The tops and leaues of Wormewood be bruiſed and macerated in *oleo Omphacino*, and it is abſolued as oyle of Mint.

Oleum Chamemelinum.

Oleum Chamemelinum, doth with an eaſie obſtruction corroberate the ſi-newes, and membranes, and doth excellently aſſwage paine, ℞. *foliorum Chamemeli recentium & tuſorum*, ℔.j. infuſe and macerate them in ſweete ma-ture oyle, and let them ſtand in the Sunne twentie of the Canicular dayes, and ſtraining and caſting away the leaues, reſerue the oyle.

Oleum Liliorum.

Oleum Liliorum aſſwageth the paine of the breaſt, ſtomacke, wombe, kid-neis, bladder, and ſinewes, & doth eaſe and concoct them. ℞. *florum*, *Li-liorum alborum*, *integrorum*, caſting onely away the yellow filaments, ℔.j. ma-cerate them in ſweete and mature oyle, and ſet them in the Sun twenty dayes. There is alſo another compound oyle made thereof, more effectuall to all the purpoſes which I haue tofore repeated, which receiueth *Maſtiches*, *Calamia-romatici*, *Coſti*, *olei Pyrethri*, *Carpobalſami*, ana. ℥.j. *Caryophyllorum & Cinamo-mi*, ana. ℥ ß. *Croci* ℥.iij. Bruiſe them all and macerate them in water foure and twenty houres. After let them boile a litle, and being taken from the fire, poure in of ſweete oyle, ℔.ij. of the leaues of Lillies, ℥.viij. ſet them forty dayes in the Sunne, then ſtraine out the oyle, and keepe it to your vſe.

Oleum

Oleum Leucoÿ lentei.

O*leum Leucoÿ lentei*, asswageth the paines of the breast, kidneis, sinewes, and ioynts. ℞. *florum Leucoÿ*, ℔. j. macerated in ℔. j ß. of sweete oile, set in the Sunne ten dayes changing the flowers thrise: and the oile expressed is kept, by putting thereto, if you thinke good, ℥ ij. of the drie flowers.

Oleum Iasminum.

O*leum Iasminum* worketh the same effect which *Leucoÿ* did, but more forcibly. Further it is an especiall mollifying and lenitiue oyle, it is made as the oyle of Lillies was of the flowers of Iasmine.

Oleum Anethinum.

O*leum Anethinum* doth moderately calefie and digest, asswageth paine of the head, and ach of the sinewes, procureth sleepe: it is made of the leaues of Dill, which be macerated in sufficient quantity of sweete oile, and set in the Sunne one day, or concocted in a double vessell, and the oyle being strained from the leaues is reserued.

Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium.

O*leum Amygdalarum dulcium*, doth mitigate paine, comfort the exasperated parts, especially the lungs and kidneis: it mollifieth dry and hard matter, and is very meete for such as haue the Hecticke feauer, and be consumed. It is made in this wise: Sweete Almonds being diligently purged, be much bruised, and then there is poured vpon them a litle Rose water: after put into a vessell, they are kept and fostered as it were in hote water, that they may become somewhat hote. Lastly put in a litle bag, they are presled in a presse, vntill the oyle issue out.

Oleum Lumbricorum.

O*leum Lumbricorum* doth mollifie with a moderate heate, and asswage paine, very conuenient for such as be bruised, & haue paine in the ioynts. ℞. *Lumbricorum terrestrium lotorum & præparatorum*, ℔. ß. *vini albi*, ℥ ij *olei dulcis*, ℔. ij. Boile them to the consumption of the wine and the washing of the Wormes, then straine the oile, and reserue it to your vse.

Oleum Irinum.

O*leum Irinum* doth concoct, extenuate, and dissolue, it asswageth paine of the liuer, wombe, and ioynts: it concocteth likewise the offending matter of the lungs and breast. ℞. *Radicum Iridis tunsarum*, ℔. ß *florum integrorum* ℔. j. *decocti*; or if you wish to haue it worke more effectually, take of the iuyce of another Flower deluce, ℔. j. *olei dulcis*, ℔. ij ß. boile them in a double vessel till the water euaporate: and straining the rootes and leaues, preserue the oile.

Oleum Rutaceum.

O*leum Rutaceum* calefieth and attenuateth grosse humours, dissipateth wind more forcibly then Dill, it auaileth against the Cholicke, Palsey, Crampe and coldnesse of the wombe and bladder. ℞. *foliorum Rutæ modici succorum, succi eiusdem*, ana. ℔. ß. macerate them three daies in, ℔. iij. of sweete

oile: boile them in a double veſſell vntill the iuyce be conſumed, and then ſtraining the Rew, change it three or foure times: in fine, reſerue the oile expreſſed.

Oleum Amygdalarum amararum.

Oleum Amigdalarum amararum doth mightily attenuate and diuide, doth diſſipate wind, eſpecially the noiſe of the eares, and openeth the obſtructions of the liuer and other intrailes by attenuating and deterging, it mollifieth hardneſſe, but eſpecially of the ſinewes; it is confected of bitter Almonds dried and purged, bruiſed and calefied in hote boyling water, and preſſed in a preſſe vntill the oile come our.

Oleum è Capparibus.

Oleum è Capparibus by extenuation & deterſion doth diſſolue euery hardneſſe and obſtruction, but eſpecially of the ſpleene; it aſſwageth the aggrieuances, and eaſeth euery diſeaſe of the ſame. ℞. *corticis radicum Tamariſci, foliorum Tamariſci, ſem. Agni, Scolopendrij ſeu Aſplenij, Cyperi*, ana. ℥.ii *Aceti, vini optimi*, ana. ℥. ii. *olei maturi*, ℔. i. boile them in a double veſſell to the conſumption of the wine and vineger, then ſtraine the oile, and ſtore it.

Oleum Nardinum.

Oleum Nardinum doth calefie, attenuate, digeſt and ſtrengthen, and as well the ſimple as the compound doth redreſſe the cold and flatulent diſeaſes of the braine, ſtomacke, liuer, ſpleene, kidneis, bladder and wombe. ℞. *Spicæ nardi*, ℥.iiii. *vini optimi, aquæ roſaceæ*, ana. ℥.ii. ß. *olei dulcis*, ℔.i. ß. boile them three houres in a double veſſell with no very quicke fire, vntill the wine and water do euaporate.

Oleum Nardinum compoſitum.

Oleum Nardinum compoſitiũ. ℞. *Spicæ Nardi*, ℥ iii. *Sampſuchi*, ℥.ii. *Xiloaloes, Enulæ, folij Maceris aut Calami aromatici aut Galangæ, foliorum Lauri, Cyperi, Scœnanthi, Cardamomi*, ana. ℥. i. ß. theſe being bruiſed poure into them *vini, aquæ roſaceæ*, ana. ℔.i. *olei dulcis*, ℔. v. macerate them foure and twenty houres, and then boile them in a double veſſell ſixe houres, ſtirring it now and then vntill the wine and water be conſumed.

Oleum Laurinum.

Oleum Laurinum is hote and extenuating, doth diſſipate the wind of the ſtomacke, the Cholicke, and diſſolueth cold diſeaſes of the head, intrailes, wombe, kidneis and ioynts. The ripe berries of Laurell be bruiſed and boiled a good ſpace in water, and the ſalt that ſwimmeth aboue the ſtrained decoction when it is cooled, muſt be gathered together and ſtored vp for oile.

Oleum Vulpinum.

Oleum Vulpinum attenuateth and ſomewhat digeſteth, it auaileth againſt the gout and all paines of the ioynts, at all times of the ſickneſſe. Boile a foxe vncaſed, and vnboiled cut into little gobbets, and in like portion of fountaine and ſea or ſalt water; and when it is boiled to the halfe, put in *Salu*, ℥. iii. *olei veteris puri*, ℔.iiii. *Thymi, Anethi, Origani*, ana. ℔. ß. Boile them till one

ioynt

ioynt fall from another, and till the consumption of the water, and then presse out the oile.

Oleum è Scorpionibus.

Oleum è Scorpionibus doth so forcibly extenuate, that being annointed vpon the loines, it is thought to breake & disturbe the stone in the kidneis, and being annointed vpon the share, or on the *peritoneum*, or iniected into the bladder. ℞. *radicis Aristolochiæ rotundæ, Gentianæ, Cyperi, corticum radicum Capparis*, ana ℥ j. Bruise them all and macerate them in ℔. i. ß. of oile of bitter Almonds, and set them to Sun twentie dayes: then boile them in a double vessell with a lent fire. In the end put in xv. Scorpions, and set them in the Sun againe xxx. dayes, then straine the oile, and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum Terebinthinæ.

Oleum Terebinthinæ is hote and extenuating, and more penetrating then Turpentine it selfe. Wherefore it doth mollifie and extenuate hard tumors, and doth take away cold diseases of the nerues and ioynts, and notwithstanding comfort and strengthen them. ℞. *Terebinthinæ lucidæ*, ℔. iiii. put it in a cucurbite of glasse and set it in sand, and by making a fire vnder it, by alchymie, first you shall distill out the water, secondly a moist cleare oile, and lastly a yellow oyle.

Oleum Recinium.

Oleum Recinium, which they call *oleum de Kerua*, doth mightily extenuate and digest, and therefore doth dissipate the paine and noise of the eares, doth scoure the issuing vlcers of the head, and riddeth the body of *Psora*, *Lepra*, and grisly scarres, and ministred in a clister, it bringeth out wormes and water: it is made thus. ℞. the seeds of the greater Spurge; being bruised, oyle is pressed out of them in such force and manner as out of Almonds.

Oleum Balaninum.

Oleum Balaninum doth dissolue paine and noise of the eares, doth wash away the speckles, pimples, spots, and blacke scarres, prouoketh the belly, and procureth vomite; it is made of *Balanum Mirepsica* which the Arabians cal *Been*, and it is burned, calcified, and oile is pressed out of the same in such wise as out of Almonds.

Oleum è Castoreo.

Oleum è Castoreo auaileth much against the cold diseases of the nerues and braine, against deafenesse and noise of the eares, and the extreme coldnesse of agues. ℞. *Castorei in aqua vitæ soluti*, ℥. i. *olei* ℔. i. boile them in a double vessell till the consumption of the third part.

Oleum Euphorbij simplex.

Oleum Euphorbij simplex worketh the same effect, but more forcibly, and put into the nostrils, it bringeth downe fleame. ℞. *Euphorbij*, ℥. ß. *Leuceij lentei, vini oderiferi*, ana ℥. v. boile them to the consumption of the wine.

Oleum de Lateribus.

Oleum de Lateribus which is also termed the Phylosophers oile, doth calefie, penetrate, and mollifie hard matter, resolue and dissipate cold humors, and easeth the Crampe, Epilepsie, Palsey, the Gout, and all cold affects of the ioynts and nerues; the making therof is in this wise. Breake an old red tilestone in litle peeces, burne those in hote coales, vntill they become altogether as hote as fire, then take them out and extinguish them in cleare old oile, and let them so continue vntill they be replenished with oile; after take them out of the oile, and bruise them into powder, and put the powder in a cucurbite of glasse: distill an oile thereof according to art, and store it to your vse.

Petroleum.

Petroleum, that is, naturall oyle of stones, is extreme hote and extenuating, penetrating, drying and digesting; it consumeth cold water whatsoeuer in any part of the body, it dissolueth the Epilepsie, Palsey, Crampe, paine of the sinewes and ioynts, of the spleene, kidneis, bladder, and all cold affects of the wombe. This oile cometh not by art but by nature, and in many places it issueth out of stones and rockes.

Plantivs in Olea.

The Author imitating the vsuall and ancient composition of oiles, thought good to alter nothing in them, neither was there any such necessity to alter them for pleasure of the affected, for that they be outwardly applyed: he made choice and hath set downe the most effectuall olies against all kinde of causes and diseases, with omitting the other which were of little vertue or seemed vnnecessary: for he accounteth *oleum Nymphææ Citrinæ* superuacuous, for that it is contained vnder the other: & *oleum Populeon*, for that *vnguentũ Populeum* is of greater vertue: & he omitteth likewise the oile of the other mandrake, *oleum Costinum*, *oleum de Piperibus*, and *oleum Maiorani*, and *Irinum compositum*, for that there be many other sufficient extant, which may be vsed with more facility, and yet haue a greater power to calefie, attenuate and digest.

Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans.

Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans is effectuall against *Phlegmonaes*, *Erysipelata* and Tetters, & against euery hote intemper. ℞ *Ceræ albæ* ℥ iii. *Olei rosati* ℔ i. and when they be molten in a double vessell, poure them into another, and by pouring cold water by litle and litle, and now and then changing, are to be tempered a good space: in the end, the strained iuyce of Housleek or of Sorrell is powred and tempered therewith, especially if it be applyed to affects not vlcerated; or else vineger affused, if the skinne continue hote and not exulcerated.

Plantivs *in Vnguenta.*

Notwithstanding *Galen* his refrigerating ointment according to the vsuall description hath neither the iuyce of Nightshade, nor Housleeke, yet by adiection of them it becometh effectuall against the affects which require refrigeration.

Vnguentum

Vnguentum Rosarum.

VNguentum Rosarum is applyed vnto the same affects, but truly it is not of such efficacie. The making thereof is in this wise. Swines grease purified from the membranes must be washed nine times in hote water, and as oft in cold water; then like weight of red Roses bruised must be mingled therwith, and so must stand seuen dayes to putrifie; then melt the grease with a lent fire, and straine it: and againe macerating so much of bruised Roses, seuen daies infusing together halfe of the iuyce of Roses, and oyle of Almonds sixe parts, then againe boile them with a lent fire, vntill the whole iuyce be sucked vp.

Vnguentum Populeum.

VNguentum Populeum asswageth Phlegmones, burning of agues, feruent heate of the head and kidneis, and annointed vpon the temples procureth sleepe ℞. *gemmarum Populi recentium.* ℔ j. macerated in ℔. iij. of fresh swines grease prepared, vntill all the simples which in order do follow may in Sommer be come by. ℞. *foliorum Papaueris rubri, foliorum Mandragoræ, foliorum Hyosciami, cymarum Rubi tenerrimarum, Solani, Lactucæ, Semperuiui maioris & minoris, Bardanæ, Violæ, Vmbilici Veneris,* ana ℥.iij. bruise them and mixe them with the grease and the buds of the Poplar, and after ten dayes infuse ℔ j. of Rose water. Boile them with a lent fire, vntill the water and whole liquor be consumed, then straine it, and presse it, and if need so require, boyle it againe vntill it come to the temperament of an ointment.

Vnguentum album.

VNguentum album refrigerating and mildly astringing, doth asswage inflammations and exustions, and doth allay the heate of scabbes and itch, and all out-breakings of choler. ℞. *Ceruse,* ℥.iiij. *Lythargiri,* ℥ ij. lay them in Rose water a good space, then cast away the Rose water, and put them in a mortar, and then by little and little poure into them so much Rose oyle as they can drinke vp, continually stirring and tempering them, vntill they appeare in forme of an ointment: in conclusion adde thereunto a little white vineger, and ℥.j ß. of Camphire.

PLANTIVS.

This kind of white ointment which is here described, is alone sufficient in stead of those which be termed *vnguentum de Lythargiro, Vnguentum nutritum, vnguentum de Ceruſa crudum & vnguentum de Ceruſa coctum,* which is termed also *Emplastrum de Ceruſa:* for this one ointment containeth the vertue of them all.

Vnguentum astringens.

VNguentum astringens, the astringing ointment, bringeth together the open parts of the body, doth compact the conduites and pores, doth intercept and driue backe fluxes, restraineth the going out of the mother, of the wombe, of the *anus,* and of the gut, and being applyed doth stay issue of bloud. ℞. *Gallæ immaturæ, nucum Cupressi, baccarũ Myrti, Balaustiorum, Malicorij, corticum Glandium, Acatiæ, Rhois, Mastiches,* ana ℥.j Bruise them all exquisitly, and macerate them about foure dayes in the iuyce of vnripe Medlars & *Sorborum*

immaturorum. Then dry them with a lent fire, and confect thereof an ointment with ℔.j. of oyle of Roſes often laued in Alume water, & ℥.iiij. of white Waxe

PLANTIVS.

This aſtringent ointment for that it is very forcible, and eaſie to be come by, it is to be vſed *pro vnguento Comitiſſæ* or any other aſtringent ointment.

Vnguentum Diachalciteos.

VNguentum *Diachalciteos* which they terme *Palmeum*, doth ſtay all fluxes lately begun, and doth reſolue ſuch as be inueterate, doth agglutinate maligne vlcers *& dyſepulotica.* ℞. *adipis Suillæ recentis ſine ſale & febru*, ℔ ij. *olei veteris, Lythargiri triti & creti*, ana ℔ iij. *Chalcitidos læuigatæ*, ℥. iiij. The greaſe and the oile be molten with a lent fire, and the Litharge and Vitrioll muſt be then caſt vpon them, ſtirring it continually with three greene boughs *Palmæ aut ſaltem Myrti, Sorbi* or *Meſpili*: & when it is come to the thickneſſe of a cerate, the tender boughes (cut in peeces) muſt be put in by litle and litle, as it is in boyling. Then boile it againe vntill it ſtaine not the fingers, and be come to the conſiſtency of an Emplaiſter.

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum Diachalciteos (according to this deſcription of *Galen*) is to be vſed in ſtead of thoſe foure which *Meſues* hath deſcribed, two vnder the title of *Vnguentum Diaphœnicon*, and the other two vnder the title of *Vnguentum palmeum.*

Vnguentum Diapompholygos.

VNguentum *Diapompholygos* refrigerateth, aſtringeth, and reſtraineth fluxe, filleth hollow vlcers, and bringeth maligne vlcers to a ſcarre. ℞. *olei roſacei*, ℥ x. *ſuccι Solatri*, ℥ iiij. *bulliant ad ſuccι conſumptionem: adde Ceræ albæ*, ℥. v. *Ceruſæ lotæ*, ℥.ij. *Plumbi vſti & loti, Pompholygis, Thuris*, ana. ℥ j. *coquantur in Vnguenti formam.*

Vnguentum rubrum exſiccans.

VNguentum *rubrum exſiccans*, the red drying ointmẽt worketh the ſame effect. ℞ *olei Roſarum*, ℔.j. *Ceræ alba*, ℥ v. *liquatis inſperge Lapidis Calaminaris, terræ Lemniæ, exquiſite tritorum*, ana. ℥ iij. *Lythargiri, Ceruſæ*, ana. ℥.iij. *Caphuræ*, ℥.j. boile them into an ointment.

Vnguentum Dialthæos.

VNguentum *Dialthæos* is of a moderate calefying, molliſying, humectiue and lenitiue vertue ℞ *Althææ radicum recentium & contuſarum*, ℔ ij. *ſeminis Lini & Fenugræci contuſorum*, ana ℔.j. *macerentur in aquæ* ℔ viij. *deinde leuiter coquantur, & exprimatur mucilago de hac*, ℔ ij. *& olei*, ℔ iiij. *bulliant dum mucilago ſit abſumpta: tum adde Ceræ*, ℔ ß. *Reſinæ*, ℔. ß. *Terebinthinæ*, ℥.ij. *percoquantur in vnguenti craſſitiem.*

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum Dialthæos ſimplex is here deſcribed, for that the compound through *Colophoniam, Galbanum*, and *Gummi Hederæ*, was too filthy, and there were other receipts extant of a more diſſoluing vertue.

Vnguentum

Vnguentum Resumptiuum.

VNguentum Resumptiuum dicti, hath great power mildly to mollifie without any manifest heate and therfore may be safely applyed to such as haue *Asthma* or *Hecticam febrem*, or Consumption, Pleurisie, or an Ague. ℞. *seminis Lini, Althææ & Fenugræci, Gummi Arabici, Tragacanthæ*, ana. ℥.ij. *macerentur & bulliant in* ℔.ß. *aquæ Rosarum.* Straine out the mucilage, and therein dissolue *adipis Suillæ, Gallinæ, Anseris & Anatis*, ana. ℥.ij. *Aesipi*, ℥.ß. *olei Violarum, Chamæmeli & Amygdalarum dulcium*, ana ʒ ii. *medullæ vituli, Butyri recentis, Ceræ albæ*, ana. ℔.ß. *coquantur in Vnguentum.*

PLANTIVS.

This ointment which is entituled *Resumptiuum*, is described so excellently well, that it is preferred before all the other which be compounded either to mollifie, asswage, or to relaxe. For neither the ointment *Diadipibus*, neither the double pectorall vnguent, and *vnguentum Philagrij*, neither any other hath bene at any time inuented more excellent to mollifie, and to the fore repeated purposes.

Vnguentum Agrippæ.

VNguentum Agrippæ doth not onely mollifie, but also mightily attenuate, diuide, and dissipate *Oedemata corporis*, cureth inueterate affects of the sinewes, easeth paine of the kidneis, and by annointing prouoketh the bellie, and thereby helpeth the Dropsie sicke. ℞. *radicis Brioniæ*, ℔.ij *radicum Cucumeris agrestis*, ℔.j. *Scyllæ*, ℔.ß. *radicis Ireos recentis*, ℥.iij. *radicū Filicis & Ebuli, Tribuli marini*, ana. ℥.ij. *tunsa omnia recentia macerentur diebus sex vel octo in olei veteris non randici*, ℔.iiij. *parum deinde feruefiant, & in expresso olei Ceræ citrinæ*, ℥.xv. *liquefiant in vnguenti consistentiam.*

PLANTIVS.

The Author doth vpon good occasion admonish, that in the ointment of *Agrippa* all the simples should be fresh, and that they must not be boiled much. For notwithstanding being crude, they haue a mollifying and attenuating vertue, yet by boiling that vertue perisheth and is lost: wherefore the Author did in another place very wisely command that no especiall effectuall cataplasme should be confected to mollifie scirrhous & hard matters, of these rootes bruised, and crude, with grease and waxe.

Vnguentum Aregon.

VNguentum Aregon, that is, the helping ointment, doth mightily extenuate and digest, and is very commodious against cold affects of the body, but specially of the sinewes, and is very conuenient against conuulsion, resolution, paine of the lungs, ioynts and great guts. ℞. *Rorismarini, Maioranæ, radicis Iari, Serpilli, Rutæ, radicis Cucumeris agrestis*, ana ℥.iiij. ß. *foliorum Lauri, Saluiæ, Sabinæ, Pulicariæ maioris & minoris, radicis Brioniæ*, ana. ℥.iij. *Laureoli*, ℥.ix. *foliorum Cucumeris agrestis, & Nepitæ*, ana. ℔.ß. *omnia Maio mense collecta & expurgata tundantur recentia, & macerentur diebus septem in olei optimi*, ℔. vj. *affusa aqua vitæ*, ℔.j. *Deinde coquantur dum contabescant & absumpta sit aqua, oleum percolatur, in quo Ceræ*, ℥.xvi. *liquantur, & adipis vrsini*,

olei Laurini, ana. ℥ iij. *olei Moſchelini*, ℥ ß. *Petrolei*, ℥ j. *Butyri*, ℥ iiij. *Agitando hipulueres inſperguntur*, *Maſtiches*, *Olibani*, ana ℥ vij. *Pyrethri*, *Euphorbij*, *Zinziberis*, *Piperis*, ana. ℥ j. *omnia vnguenti forma cocant.*

Vnguentum Martiatum magnum.

VNguentum Martiatum magnum is eſpecially good againſt cold affects of the braine, ſinewes and ioynts, againſt quiuering conuulſion, Palſey, and the gout, and is effectuall to mollifie hard tumours eſpecially of the ſpleene, ℞. *Ceræ albæ.* ℔. j. *olei.* ℔. iij. *Roriſmarini, foliorum Lauri*, ana ℥ iiij. *Tamariſci*, ℥ iij. *Rutæ*, ℥ iij. ß. *Ebuli, Sauinæ, Balſamitæ*, (that is, *Menthæ aquaticæ*) *Ocimi, Saluiæ, Polij, Calaminthes, Artemiſiæ, Hellenij, Betonicæ, Acanthi* (*quæ eſt vrſa Branchina*) *Aſpargulæ*, (*quæ eſt Aparine*) *Anemones*, (*quæ herba venti dicitur*) *Pimpinellæ, Agrimonij, Abſinthij, Flomi minoris*, (*qui & herba Paralyſis*) *Coſti herbæ hortenſis*, (*quæ herba dicitur ſanctæ Mariæ*) *cimarum Sampſuchi, Semperuiui minoris* (*quod Craſſula appellatur*) *Millefolij, Semperuiui maioris, Chamedryos, Plantaginis ſeu quinque nerui, Centauri minoris, Fragariæ, Quinquefolij, Tetrahit*, (*id eſt, herbæ Iudaicæ*) ana ℥ ij. ℥ ij. *radicis Althææ Cumini, Myrrhæ*, ana. ℥ j. ß. *Fenugræci*, ℥ vj. *Butyri*, ℥ v. *ſem. Vrticæ, Violarum & papaueris rubri, Mentaſtri*, (*ſeu Mentæ agreſtis*,) *Mentæ latiuæ, Oxylapati, Polytrichi, Cardiobotani*, (*id eſt, Cardui benedicti*) *Periclemeni* (*id eſt, Caprifolij, ſeu matri Syluæ*) *Maratri, herbæ Moſchatæ* (*quæ eſt prima Geranij ſpecies*) *Irifolij acetoſi* (*quod Aleluya dicitur*) *Scolopendrij* (*quod eſt Ceterach*) *Criſpulæ* (*id eſt, Bupthalmi* (*caphoratæ herbæ* (*id eſt, Abrotani*) *Styracis, Medullæ ceruinæ*, ana. ℥ ij *adipis vrſini, adipis gallinaceæ, Maſtiches*, ana. ℥ ß. *Thuris*, ℥ ij. *olei Nardini*, ℥ j. The herbes muſt be gathered in the month of May, and being freſh and greene, muſt be bruiſed and macerated ſeuen dayes in the beſt fragrant wine, and the eight day they muſt be boyled together, vntill the halfe be conſumed, and then the oyle muſt be powred in; then they muſt be againe boiled vntill the herbs be waſted and the wine wholly conſumed: after ſtraine and preſſe out the oile, in which (calefied againe) put, in the order preſcribed, *Styrax, Butyrum, Adipes, Maſtiches, Thus, oleum Nardinum & Cera*; and when they are diſſolued with continuall ſtirring, take them off the fire, and keepe to your vſe the ointment then concrete.

PLANTIVS.

Of *Vnguentum Martiatum* there be three deſcriptions deſcribed in other Authors, truly not very neceſſary againſt the cold affects of the ſinewes and other parts, ſith that *vnguentum Aragon* to ore preſcribed is effectuall enough againſt them: but whoſoeuer deſireth to haue this *vnguentum Martiatum*, let him follow this deſcription taken out of *Nicolaus Myrepſus*; and corrected.

Vnguentum Baſilicum minus.

VNguentum Baſilicum minus, which the ancient Phyſitions termed *Tetrapharmacum*, doth calefie, humect and mitigate paine, procureth atter, and is very commodious againſt increaſing Phlegmons. ℞. *Reſinæ, Picis, Ceræ*, ana. ℔. ß. and oile as much as ſufficeth.

Vnguentum

Vnguentum Basilicum magnum.

VNguentum Basilicum magnum worketh the same effect, and doth putrifie and fill vlcers, ℞. *Ceræ albæ, Resinæ, Seui vaccini, Picis, Terebinthinæ, Olibani, Mirrhæ*, ana. ℥. j. *quod satis est.*

PLANTIVS.

The Author thought good to alter nothing in these oyntments, namely *vnguento Basilico, Aureo, Apostolorum, Ægyptiaco & Aemulato*, but he corrected the vncertaine and depraued doses of the simples in *vnguento Citrino*; and he thought good to put in more *radicis Dracuntij* (which hath great vertue against the propounded affects of the skinne) then of Ceruse, or of any other simple. And in the order of composition he hath expressed a certaine manner of putting in the Orenges or Citrines, whose pulpe and iuyce is no lesse commodious against those malignities of the skinne, yea rather much better then the rinde.

Vnguentum Aureum.

VNguentum Aureum doth mildly deterge wounds, aglutinate and safely cure them. ℞. *Ceræ citrinæ*, ℔. ß. *Thuris Mastiches*, ana ℥ j. *olei non rancidi*, ℔ ij. ß. *Terebinthinæ*. ℥. ij. *Resinæ, Colophoniæ*, ana. ℥. j. ß. *Croci*, ℥ j. the Waxe is melted in oile, and the other simples being exquisitely bruised be put in to thē.

Vnguentum Apostolorum

VNguentum Apostolorum doth by detersion purge wounds and rebellious vlcers, and also fistulaes, wasteth fungious and dead flesh, and in stead thereof restore new. ℞. *Terebinthinæ, Ceræ albæ, Ammoniaci*, ana. ℥ iiij. *Opoponacis, floris Aeris* ana ℥ij. *Aristolochiæ rotundæ, Thuris masculi, Bdellij*, ana. ℥. vj. *Myrrhæ, Galbani*, ana. ℥ iiij, *Lythargyri*, ℥ ix *olei si æstas fuerit* ℔ ij. *si hyems*, ℔ iij. *Bdellium, Ammoniacum, Opoponax*, and *Galbanum* macerated in vineger, and dissolued with the other bruised simples to liquefied oyle and Waxe, and boiled and stirred into the forme of an ointment.

Vnguentum Ægyptiacum.

VNguentum AEgyptiacum doth more forcibly exterge then *vnguentum Apostolorum*, inueterate and fistuloos vlcers; doth exiccate and eate out (not without feeling of paine) excrescent and dead flesh ℞ *AEruginis*, ℥ v. *mellis optimi*, ℥. xiiij. *Aceti fortis*, ℥ vij. all these be boyled together vntilll the ointment become thicke and of purple colour.

Vnguentum ex Enula.

VNguentum ex Enula, which is called *Enulatum*, is maruellous effectual against the itch or scabbes, either drie or moist; and also against other filthinesse of the skinne, ℞. *radicis Enulæ ex Aceto coctæ, tusæ & tritæ*, ℔ j. *Axungiæ porci, olei*, ana. ℥. iij. *Ceræ nouæ*, ℥ j. *Argenti viui extincti, Terebinthinæ lotæ*, ana. ℥ ij. *Salis vulgaris bene triti*, ℥ ß. the Waxe and the grease be liquefied in oile, and to them is added *Enula*, and after Quicke siluer and Salt, and last Turpentine. It shall be with more safty vsed, if in stead of Quicke siluer, of thy iuyce of Fumitory and Limons, ana. ℥. j. be put in, and both of them must be had seuerall.

Vnguentum Citrinum.

VNguentum Citrinum, or more truly *Citreum*, doth represse pimples shooting out of the skinne, especially in the face, either by meane of choler or of salt fleame, and doth exterge speckles, tetters, blewnesse, filthy scarres, and rednes of the eyes. ℞. *Boracis*, ℥.ij. *Camphuræ*, ℥.j. *Coralij albi*, ℥ ß. *Amianti, id est Aluminis plumosi, Vmbilici marini seu Bellirici, Tragacanthæ, Amyli, Cristalli, Enthali, Dentali, Thuris albi, Nitri*, ana. ℥.ij. *Ceruſæ ex radice Dracuntij factæ*, ℥.j. *Ceruſæ vulgaris*, ℥ vj. *adipis Suillæ recentis, ſalis expertis & puri*, ℔.ß *ſeui Caprini*, ℥ j.ß. *adipis Gallinacei*, ℥.i. Liquifie the fattes in a double veſſell, then macerate in them and with a lint fire boyle two Oringes cut in small peeces; straine the fat, and then iniect thereto all the other simples finely bruised, and temper them with a splatter. Last of all let the *Borax* and Camphire finely bruised be strewed in, and after it hath boyled and become thicke, store it to your vse.

Of Emplaisters.

Emplaistrum Diachylon simplex.

EMplaſtrum *Diachylon ſimplex* doth mollifie the hard tumours of the Liuer, spleene and externall parts, and likewise dissolueth, and by litle and litle dissipateth any scirrhous matter, if it be applied in the beginning. ℞. *mucilaginum ſeminis Fenugræci, ſeminis Leni, radicum Althææ*, ℔.j. *olei veteris puri*. ℔. iij, *Lythargiri purgati atque triti*, ℔.j.ß. The Litharge must be dissolued in a mortar with oyle by litle and litle, vntill they be exquisitely mixed. Then boile them with a lent fire, and temper them still with a splatter vntill they become thicke. After put into them leasurely the muscilages depfomed, and boyle them to the substance of an Emplaister, and if need so require, that it should be more forcible in working, for euerie pound of simples put in ℥ j. of the roote of Floure-deluce pownd.

Emplaſtrum Diachylon magnum.

EMplaſtrum *Diachylon magnum* is more effectuall for all and euery the affects tofore repeated, for that it consisteth of more mollifying and digesting simples. ℞. *Lythargiri puri, triti, & creti*, ℔ j. *olei Irini, Chamæmelini & Anethini*, ana. ℥. viij. *mucilaginum ſeminis Leni, Fenugræci, Ficuum pinguium & Vuarum paſſarum, ſucci Iridis & Scyllæ, Aeſypi, Ichthyocollæ*, ana. ℥ xij.ß. *Terebinthinæ*, ℥ iij. *Reſinæ Pini, Ceræ citrinæ*, ana. ℥.ij. reduce them all to an Emplaister in like order as hath bene described in the simples.

Emplaiſtrum è mucilaginibus.

EMplaiſtrum *è mucilaginibus* doth also mightily mollifie and digest hard tumours, it doth ripen an abscesse of humours, and when it is burst, it scoureth the quitture and atture. ℞. *mucilaginum ſeminis Leni, Althææ, Fenugræci, & mediani corticis Vimi*, ana. ℥.iiij.ß. *oleorum Camæmeli, Liliorum, & Anethi*, ana.

ana ℥.j. *Ammoniaci, Galbani, Opoponacis, Sagapeni,* ana ℥.ß *Croci,* ℥. ij. *Terebinthinæ,* ℥ ij. *Ceræ nouæ,* ℥ xx. make an Emplaister in order before prescribed.

PLANTIVS IN EMPLASTRA.

The ancient Physitions haue described many mollifying Emplaisters, and foure of these they intituled vnder the name of *Dyachylon*, whereof these two be the best. And as for this Emplaister of the muscilages, it worketh more forcibly against all the aforesaid affects then that which is ascribed vnto the sonne of *Zacharie*; whereof the Author thought it not good to mention that.

Emplastrum è Meliloto.

Emplastrum è Meliloto doth mightily mollifie also and digest, and mitigateth paine, and is very conuenient in hard tumors of the stomacke, breast, and spleene, and the outretching *hypochondria*. ℞. *Meliloti,* ℥ vj. *foliorum (hamæmeli seminis Fœnugræci, radicis Althææ, baccarũ Lauri, Absinthij. Sampsuchi,* ana ℥ iij. *Cardamomi, Cyperi, Ireos, Spicæ nardi, Ammeos, Cassiæ ligneæ, seminis Opij, Anisi,* ana ℥.ij.ß. *Ammoniaci,* ℥ x. *Styracis, Bdellij.* ana ℥ v. *Terebinthinæ,* ℥ j ß. *Ficus pingues,* xij *seui hircini, Resinæ,* ân ℥ ij ß. *Ceræ,* ℥. vj *olei Maioranæ & nardini,* so much as sufficeth; make thereof an Emplaister: liquifie the Goates suet, the Rosin and the Waxe in oile, and put into them *Ficus pingues tritas & cretas*, then *Ammoniacum* and *Bdellium* dissolued in vineger, & lastly the powders of the other simples scraped.

PLANTIVS.

Emplastrum è Meliloto, è baccis Lauri, Ceroneum, & Oxycroceum seeme to be sufficient against all affects and paines which require digestion and resolution, so that other be not necessary, namely, neither *Emplastrum è Sinapi*, nor *varia Emplastra è fermento*, nor *Emplastrum ex Allijs*, nor the Emplaister which is imputed to *Aristarchus*.

Emplastrum è baccis Lauri.

Emplastrum è baccis Lauri doth maruellously asswage the torments of the stomacke, midriffe, intrailes, wombe, bladder, and other parts, especially taking their originall of any cold cause or wind. ℞. *Thuris, Mastiches, Myrrhæ,* ana ℥.j. *baccarum Lauri* ℥.ij. *Cyperi, Costi,* ana ℥ ß. *mellis colati* so much as sufficeth to thicken them. And some there be, that suppose it a maruellous Emplaister for the Dropsie, if the dose of *Cyperus* be ℥ j.ß. & ℔ ß. of dried Goates dung be put thereto.

Emplastrum Ceroneum.

Emplastrum Ceroneum doth mollifie the hardnesse of the spleene, doth release the cold affects of the wombe, and easeth the paines of the breast and shoulders proceeding of cold. ℞. *Picis nauali colatæ, Ceræ,* ana ℥.j. ℥ iij. *Sagapeni,* ℥ ij *Ammoniaci, Terebinthinæ, Colophoniæ, Croci,* ana ℥.j ℥.iij. *Aloes, Thuris, Myrrhæ,* ana ℥ j. *Opoponacis, Styracis, Galbani, Mastiches, Aluminis, Fenugræci, Styracis rubri. Bdellij,* ana ℥.iij. *Lythargiri,* ℥ j.ß. And the Amplaister must be made in this wise: *Sagapenum, Ammoniacum, Opoponax, Galbanum & Pix* must be liquified in wine and strained, then put too the *Colophoniam colatam, deinde Styracem, Mastichen, Thus, Myrrham, Bdellium, trita cretáque*. Forthwith inject

Turpentine, Alume, Lytharge and Fenugreek. The Emplaister which is made of this, is put into cold water, and wrought with the hands by addition of the powder of Aloes and Saffron, alwayes annointing your hands with oyle of Laurell, and thereof concinnate *Magdaleæ*.

Emplastrum Oxycroceum.

Emplastrum Oxycroceum doth mollifie and dissipate also euery kind of hardnesse, doth aswage and driue away the paine of the ioynts and the paine about the membranes of the bones. ℞. *Ceræ, Picis naualis, Croci, Colophoniæ*, ana. ℥.iiij. *Terebinthinæ, Ammoniaci, Galbani, Myrrhæ, Thuris, Mastiches*, ana. ℥ j ℥. iij. *Galbanum & Ammoniacum* must be liquefied and stirred in vineger: the Pitch must be strained and put thereto: after that the Waxe, forthwith *Colophonia* and the Turpentine, a little while after the Masticke and the Myrrhe. The Emplaister being decocted must be put in cold water, and being strained out, must be wrought with powder of Saffron, annointing your hand with oyle.

Emplastrum de Ianna.

Emplastrum de Ianna is maruellous effectuall in wounds and greene vlcers, it pacifieth an inflammation, it detergeth, agglutinateth and incarnateth, and also cicatrizeth. ℞. *Succorum Apij, Plantaginis & Betonicæ*, ana. ℔. j. *Ceræ, Picis, Resinæ, Terebinthinæ*, ana. ℔. ß. Let three of the simples be concocted in the iuyces, stirring them easily to the consumption of the iuyces, then take them off the fire, and put thereto *Terebinthina*.

Emplastrum Gratia Dei.

Emplastrum Gratia Dei consisteth almost of the same simples, & serueth to the same vse. ℞. *Terebinthinæ*, ℔. ß. *Resinæ* ℔ j. *Cere albæ*, ℥ iiij. *Mastiches*, ℥ j. *Betonicæ, Verbenæ, Pimpinellæ, recentium*, ana. M. j. Bruise the herbes, & boile them in white wine vntill they consume. Then straine out the liquor, in which concoct the Waxe, Rosin and Masticke, to an apt consistence of an Emplaister, and when they are taken off the fire, mingle with them the Turpentine.

Emplastrum Diuinum.

Emplastrum Diuinum is farre better against maligne vlcers, for it detergeth and consumeth quitture and corruption, and ingendreth new flesh, and bringeth them to a scarre. ℞. *Galbani, Myrrhæ*, ana. ℥ j ℥. ij. *Ammoniaci*. ℥. iij. ℥ iij. *Opoponacis, Mastiches, Aristolochiæ longæ, Æruginis*, ana ℥. j. *Lythargiri, olei communis*, ana ℔ ß. *Ceræ nouæ*, ℥ viij. *Thuris*, ℥ j ℥. j. *Bdellij*, ℥ ij. *Magnetis*, ℥. iij. The Lytharge by stirring is mingled with the oyle after it is boyled, vntill it become thicke. Then the Waxe cut in small peeces is added, which being liquified is taken off the fire, and forthwith be iniected *Galbanum, Ammoniacum. Opoponax* and *Bdellium* dissolued in vineger and wine, boiled and strained: after the powder, *Myrrhæ, Mastiches, Thuris, Aristolochiæ rotundæ, & Magnetis*, is sprinckled in: in fine, *puluis Æruginis*, lest that if it should be boyled any long space, the Emplaister become red.

PLAN-

PLANTIVS IN EMPLASTRVM DIVINVM.

These Emplaisters *de Ianna. Gratia Dei, & diuinum*, which be described against woūnds and vlcers be also sufficient enough, so that it were vnnecessary in this place to repeate any other. For *Emplastrum Oribasij duplex & Emplastrū Apostolorum* be all comprehended vnder this diuine Emplaister, all which serue to the same purpose, but yet with lesse efficacie.

Emplastrum ad Herniam.

EMplastrum ad Herniam. ℞. *Gallarum, nucum Cupressi, Psillie, Balaustiorum, Acatia, seminis Plantaginis, seminis Psillij, seminis Nastrtij, Cepularum glandium, Fabarum torrefactarum, Aristolochiæ longæ & rotundæ, Myrtillorum*, ana. ℥. ß. Bring all these to powder, and macerate them foure dayes in vineger of Roses, then torrefie and drie them. Then ℞. *Consolidæ maioris & minoris, Caudæ equinæ, Glasti, Scolopendrij, radicis Osmundæ regalis, & Filicis*, ana ℥ j. *Thuris, Myrrhæ, Aloes, Mastiches, Mummiæ*, ana ℥. ij. *Boli Armenæ lotæ in aceto, lapidis Calaminaris præparati, Lytharg'iri Auri, sanguinis Draconis*, ana ℥. iii. *Picis naualis*, ℔ ii. *Terebinthinæ*, ℥. vi. or as much as sufficeth to make an Emplaister.

PLANTIVS.

There be omitted here also other Emplaisters astringing and corroborating the stomack, kidneis and wombe, which be not in vse, and in stead whereof certaine other receipts be vsually ordained for present necessity, so that this number of Emplaisters and compositions seemeth enough, both to store the Apothecaries shop, & to cure the chiefe kinds of diseases, causes and symptomates; neither was it necessary to stuffe this Medicamentary booke with vnusuall and vnnecessary compositions, which cannot but vainely be repeated to make vp a confused number. And as for such compositions as auaile to their peculiar effects (because they be seldome put in vse) are described as conuenient and peculiar to the diseases and parts in the proper curation of euery part and disease.

The end of the eight Booke.

A GENERALL TABLE OF ALL THE PRINCIPALL MATTERS CONTAINED IN THIS VOLVME.

The Table of the first Booke.

Chap.		Fol.
1	OF paine in the head.	1
2	Of headach caused of heate.	2
3	Of headach caused of cold.	5
4	Of headach caused of drineſſe or moiſtneſſe.	6
5	Of headach caused of bloud.	7
6	Of headach caused of choler.	8
7	Of headach caused of fleame.	10
8	Of headach caused of windineſſe.	11
9	Of headach caused of the ſtomacke.	12
10	Of headach caused of drunkēnes.	13
11	Of headach caused of feauers.	14
12	Of headach caused of old paine inueterate in the head.	15
13	Of headach called the Migrime.	17
14	Of giddineſſe in the head called Vertigo.	18
15	Of the Frenſie.	21
16	Of the Lethargie.	24
17	Of the loſſe of memorie.	26
18	Of Carus or Subeth.	29
19	Of congelation or taking.	ead
20	Of profound ſleepe called Soper or Coma.	30
21	Of the loſſe both of mouing and ſenſe, called Apoplexie.	31
22	Of the Palſey in halfe the body.	33
23	Of the Palſey in one member only.	38
24	Of the falling ſickneſſe.	40
25	Of the Crampe.	42
26	Of the Mare.	43
27	Of Madneſſe.	44
28	Of Melancholy.	45
29	Againſt trembling and ſhaking.	48
30	Of the eyes in generall.	49
31	Of the Cataract, what it is, and how to helpe it.	50
32	Of the three kindes of Cataracts vncurable.	52
33	Of diſeaſes which chance to the eyes, by bloud, choler, fleame and melancholie, and their cures.	ead.
	Idem. The making of an excellent water called a Collyrium.	53
34	Of Pannicles.	54
35	Of the maladies in the eye proceeding of choler.	56
36	Of the infirmities of the eyes caused of melancholy.	57
37	Of diſeaſes hapning to the eyes by outward cauſes, as by blowes with ſtickes, ſtaues or ſtones.	59
38	Of diſeaſes which come by skipping in of ſtones or chips by chance into the eyes.	60
39	Of paine in the eares.	61
40	Of ſound or noiſe in the eares.	63
41	Of deafneſſe and ſlow hearing.	ead.
42	Of Impoſtumes breeding in the eares.	64.
43	Of vlcers in the noſe.	65
44	Of bleeding at the noſe.	66
45	Of diſtillation, rheume and hoarſeneſſe.	67
46	Of paine in the teeth.	69
47	Of teeth that be blacke and looſe.	70
48	Of vlcers in the mouth.	ead.
49	Of a ſtinking mouth.	71

The

The Table of the second Booke.

Chap.		Fol.
1	*Against inflammation of the Columella.*	73
2	*Of a loose Columella.*	74
3	*Of inflammation the tonsils.*	75
4	*Of malignant vlcers of the tonsils.*	76
5	*Of the Squinancy.*	77
6	*Of the Cough.*	79
7	*Of the Asthma.*	81
8	*Of the Pleurisie.*	82
9	*Of the inflammation of the lungs.*	84
10	*Of spitting of bloud.*	85
11	*Of spitting of matter.*	88
12	*Of the Ptisicke.*	90
13	*Of panting of the heart.*	92
14	*Of swouning.*	93
15	*Of lacke of milke.*	97
16	*Of abundance of milke.*	98.
17	*Of milke that is curded in the breasts of women.*	ead.
18	*Of inflammation of the paps in women.*	99

The Table of the third Booke.

Chap.		Fol.
1	*Of weakenes of the stomacke.*	100
2	*Of yelking and vomiting*	
3	*Of immoderate thirst.*	
4	*Of paine in the stoma*	
5	*Of inflammation of*	
6	*Of abhorring of m*	
7	*Of a doglike*	
8	*Of great fa*	
9	*Of euill*	
10	*Of wi*	
11	*Of y*	
12	*Of*	
13	*O*	
14		
15		

Chap.		Fol.
52	*Against bursting or ruptures.*	181
53	*Of stopping of Menstruis.*	183
54	*Of flowing of Menstruis.*	187
55	*Of Womans fluxe.*	188
56	*Of strangling of the womb.*	189
57	*Of falling out of the womb.*	192
58	*Of the mole in the matrice.*	193
59	*Of inflammation of the womb.*	195
60	*Of windinesse of the womb.*	196
61	*Of exulceration of the womb.*	197
62	*Of straightnesse of the matrice.*	198
63	*To take away barrennesse.*	199
64	*Of sore trauell in child birth.*	202
65	*Of the Sciatica.*	205
66	*Of the goute in the feete and ioynts.*	208.

The Table of the fourth Booke.

Chap.		Fol.
1	AN *exposition of feauers.*	213
	A table of feauers.	217
2	*Of one day feauer.*	218
3	*Of a Diarie lasting moe dayes.*	220
4	*Of a rotten feuer called Synochus.*	224
5	*Against continuall feauers.*	226
7	*Of a pure intermitting Tertian.*	230
8	*Against a bastardly Tertian.*	234
9	*Of a Quartaine feauer*	236
10	*Of a Quotidian feauer.*	239
11	*Of a feauer Hectick.*	240
12	*Of an Hemetrice feauer.*	243
[illegible]	*Of the Pestilence.*	245

[illegible]ke.

Fol.

[illegible]umors besides na-
[illegible]refaction. 278
[illegible]ly be dige-
270
[illegible] of tu-
[illegible]nside-
[illegible]cted
[illegible]he
[illegible]e

Chap.		Fol.
9	*The order of curing Phlegmone caused of the defluxion of humors affecting the outward parts of the bodie.*	282
	Foure intentions in the cure of Phlegmone.	283
10	*Of a Carbuncle and a Cancre.*	290
11	*Of the cure of a Carbuncle.*	292
12	*Of Gangrena and Sphacelus.*	295
13	*Of the cure of Gangrena.*	297
14	*Of Erysipelas and other tumors caused of choler.*	300
15	*Of the signes and tokens of a true Erysipelas.*	302
16	*Of the cure of Erysipelas.*	303
17	*Of tumors which do associate Erysipelas, as Herpes, both Miliaris and Exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians, cholericke pushes.*	307
18	*Of the euils called Formicæ, and of other differences of Verrucæ.*	312
19	*The iudgement and cure of Verrucæ* 313.	
20	*Of Oedema and other cold, flegmaticke and flatuous tumours.*	315
22	*Of the cure of Oedema caused of a flegmaticke humor flowing into some member.*	317
22	*Of Tumours aboue nature, which the Latines call inflations, but they are cõmonly called windie Apostems.*	321
23	*Of a tumor caused of a thin substance, which they call Aquosum Apostema, that is, a waterish Apostome.* 323.	
24	*Of the diseases called Glandulæ, Nodi, and Strumæ, together with other Abscessions which they call Phlegmaticæ excrescentiæ.*	328
25	*Of hard and scirrhous tumours engendred of Melancholy.*	344
26	*Of a Cancerous tumour, which they commonly call Cancer Apostematosus.*	352

The Table of the sixth Booke.

Chap.		Fol.
1	*OF the diuerse names of Morbus Gallicus, and where it had beginning.*	359
2	*Of the signes thereof.*	360
3	*Of the cause of the breaking out of Pustules.*	362
4	*Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus.*	364
5	*Of Fumigations.*	ead.
6	*Of purging of Morbus Gallicus.*	365
7	*Of the preparation of humours.*	ead.
8	*Of the certaine and true medicine for the disease.*	366
9	*What sort of that wood is to be chosen best for this purpose.*	ead.
10	*Of the decoction of Guaicum.*	367
11	*of the making of the compound decoction of this wood.*	368
12	*Of the time conuenient to giue this decoction.*	370
13	*Of the place where this decoction is*	

Chap.	Fol.
without the wood, and sometime with the barke.	376
25 Of other faculties or vertues which the Salsa hath.	377
26 Of suffumigations which some practitioners vse.	ead.
27 Of the manner of perfuming the whole bodie.	378
28 Of the symptomata which sometime happen in this way of curing.	379
29 Of Suffumigations made of a matter benigne and harmelesse.	ead.
30 Of making Suffumigations.	ead.
31 Of the cure by annointing with quicke siluer.	380
32 To correct the symptomata which happen in the mouth in this way of curing.	281
33 Of the diuerse compositions of ointments which be vsed in this way of curing.	382
34 Of Præcipitatum giuen by the mouth.	ead.

The Table of the seuenth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.
1 Of Suppositaries.	384
2 Of making Nodulus.	385
3 Of making Pessaries.	ead.
4 Of Clisters or Enema.	386
5 Of making Syrupes.	388
6 Of making Iuleps.	392
7 Of Dosis siue Potio.	ead.
[illegible]f making Bolus.	397
[illegible]king Pils.	398
16 Of making a Lohoch or Ecligma.	405
17 Of making Balneum, and Semicupium.	406
18 Of Epithema or Fotus.	ead.
19 Of making Sacculus.	408
20 Of making Scutum.	ead.
21 Of making a Cataplasme.	ead.
22 Of making Emplastrum.	409
23 Of making Vnguenta.	410
24 Of making a Liniment.	412
25 Of making Frontale.	ead.
26 Of making Cucufa & Simicucufa.	413
27 Of making Suffitus.	ead.
28 Of making Collyrium.	ead.
[illegible]king Nasale, or Errhinum.	414
30 Of making Apophlegmatismus.	ead.
31 Of making Distillations restorative.	415.

the eight Booke.

Syrupus è radicibus.	ead.
Syrupus Adiantinus.	ead.
Syrupus è Stœchade.	426
Syrupus Rosarum siccarum.	427
Syrupus Nymphæ.	ead.
Syrupus de Papauere.	428
Diacodion.	ead.
Syrupus Violarum compositus.	429
Syrupus Zyziphorum.	430
Syrupus de Hyssopo.	ead.

Syrupus

Syrupus de Prassio ead.
Surupus Symphyti. 431
Syrupus è succo Buglos. ead.
Syrupus è Cortici Citrij. ead.
Syrupus Melissophylli. 432
Syrupus è Menta. ead.
Syrupus Absinthij. ead.
Cidoniorum Mibæ, that is, thinner decocted to thickneſſe. ead.
Syrupus Myrtinus. 433
Syrupus Fumariæ. ad.
Syrupus è Malis odoriferis. ad.
Syrupus Althææ. ad.
Syrupus Raphani. 34
Syrupus Artemisiæ. ed.

Of purging receipts.

Electuarium è Prunis. 435
Catholicum simplex. 436
Catholicum maius ead.
Syrupus infusionis rosarū pallidarū. ead.
Electuarium è succo Rosarum. 437
Diacydonion. ead.
Electuarium Diacnicu. ead.
Diaphœnicon. ead.
Benedicta. 43
Confectio Hamecis ed.
Hiera simplex 439
Hiera Diacolocynthidos, ead.
Hydragogum minus. 440
Hydragogum maius. ead.
Pigmentum è Lathyride. ead.
Electuarium Diasaru. 441
Pilulæ è Hiera simplici. ead.
Pilulæ Stomachicæ. ead.
Pilulæ Ruffi. 442
Pilulæ Assaieret. ead.
Pilulæ de Eupatorio. ead.
Pilulæ Mastichinæ. ead.
Pilulæ Imperiales. ead.
Pilulæ sine quibus esse nolo. 443
Pilulæ è Fumaria. ead.
Pilulæ Aureæ. ead.
Pilulæ de Agarico. ead.
Pilulæ Cocciæ. ead.
Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis. 444
Pilulæ Polychrestæ. ead.
Pilulæ de lapide Cyaneo. ead.
Pilulæ de Thymeleæ. 445
Pilulæ ex Esula. ead.
Pilulæ è Cynoglosso. ead.
Pilulæ Aristolochiæ. ead.

Of drie Antidotaries.

Dianthon. 446
Electuarium Peres archonticon. ead.
Diatragacanthum frigidum. ead.
Deaireos simplex. 447
Electuarium Diaireos compositum. ead.
Diacalaminthes. ead.
Diamargariton frigidum. 448
Electuarium de Gemmis ead.
Electuarium Diambræ. 449
Pulvis Cordiacus. ead.
Aromaticum Rosarum maius. 405
Electuarium Diarrhodon Abbatis. ead.
Electuarium Diatrion Santalon. ead.
Diacron. 451
Diaglaca maior. ead.
Electuarium exhilarans. ead.
Electuarium Diaspermaton. ead.
Electuarium λίθων σπερμάτων. 452
Electuarium Diacalaminthes compositum. ead.

Of moist Antidotaries.

Antidotus Analepticæ. 453
Antidotus Diasaterion. ead.
Antidotus è Cocco baphico, seu grano infectorio. ead.
Antidotus è baccis Lauri. 454
Philonium. ead.
Antidotus termed Requies. ead.
Theriace Diatessaron. 455
Theriace Andromachi seniorís. ead.
Mithridatum. 456

De Trochiscis & Pastillis.

Trochiscus
Trochiscus
Trochiscus

Trochiſci Cypheos. 458
Trochiſci è Capparibus. ead.
Trochiſci de Eupatorio. ead.
Trochiſci Alkakengi ſeu Halicacabi. ead.
Trochiſci è Myrrha. 459
Trochiſci è terra Lemnia. ead.
Trochiſci è Caphura. ead.
Trochiſci Galliæ moſchatæ. ead.
Trochiſci Alyptæ muſchatæ. ead.
Trochiſci Bechici albi. 560
Trochiſci Narcotici. ead.

De Ecligmatis & Conditis.

Ecligma è pineis Nucibus. 460
Ecligma è Scylla. 461
Eclygma ad Aſthma. ead.
Certaine Condites. ead.
Of Conſerues. ead.

Of Oyles.

Oleum Roſarum.
Oleum Violarum 462
Oleum Nymphæ. ad.
Oleum Papaueris. 46
Oleum Hyoſciami albi. ead.
Oleum Mandragoræ ſimplex. ead.
Oleum Mandragoræ compoſitum. ead.
Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum. ead.
Oleum Myrtinum. 464
Oleum Maſtichinum. ead.
Oleum Abſinthij. ead.
Oleum Chamemelinum. ead.
Oleum Liliorum. ead.
Oleum Leucoij Lentei. 465
Oleum Iaſminum. ead.
Oleum Anethinum. ead.
Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium. ead.
Oleum Lumbr[illegible]um. ead.
Oleum Irinum. ead.
Oleum Rutaceum. ead.
O[illegible]arum. 466
ead.
ead.

Oleum Nardinum co[illegible]itum. ead.
Oleum Laurinum. ead
Oleum Vulpinum. ead.
Oleum è Scorpio[illegible]us. 467
Oleum Terebin[illegible]næ. ead.
Oleum Recini. ead.
Oleum Bala[illegible]num. ead.
Oleum è C[illegible]oreo. ead.
Oleum Euphorbij ſimplex. ead.
Oleum de lateribus. 468
Petreum. ead.
Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans. ead.
Vnguentum Roſarum. ead.
Vnguentum Populeum. ead.
Vnguentum album. ead.
Vnguentum aſtringens. ead.
Vnguentum Diacalciteos. 470
Vnguentum Diapompholygos. ead.
Vnguentum rubrum exſiccans. ead.
Vnguentum Dialtheos. ead.
Vnguentum Reſumptiuum. 471
Vnguentum Agrippæ. ead.
Vnguentum Aregon. ead.
Vnguentum Martiatum magnum. 472
Vnguentum Baſilicum minus. ead.
Vnguentum Baſilicum magnum. 473
Vnguentum Aureum ead.
Vnguentum Apoſtolorum. ead.
Vnguentum Ægyptiacum. ead.
Vnguentum ex Enula. ead.
Vnguentum Citrinum. 474

Of Emplaiſters.

Emplaſtrum Diachylon ſimplex. 474
Emplaſtrum Diachylon magnum. ead.
Emplaſtrum Muſcilaginis. ead.
Emplaſtrum è Meliloto. 475
Emplaſtrum è baccis Lauri. ead.
Emplaſtrum Ceroneum. ead.
Emplaſtrum Oxycroceum. 476
Emplaſtrum de Ianna. ead.
Emplaſtrum Gratia Dei. ead.
Emplaſtrum Diuinum. ead.
Emplaſtrum ad Herniam. 477
Aliud ad Herniam. ead.

FINIS.